

DCANS ID

Easy Search/ Table of Contents/ Precautions

Before Using the FOMA Terminal

Phone/Videophone

Manual for FOMA® SH903i

3G

MODE

'06.10



DoCoMo W-CDMA System

Thank you for purchasing the FOMA SH903i.

Make sure to thoroughly read this manual and the manuals for accessories before and during use to ensure proper operation. If any of the contents in this manual are unclear, please contact number listed in "For General Inquiries" on the back of this manual. The FOMA SH903i is designed to make your everyday life more convenient. Careful use will ensure a long service life.

Using the FOMA Terminal

- Because it relies on radio signals, the FOMA terminal cannot be used in places with no signal (such as tunnels, underground, or in buildings), in places with a weak signal or outside the FOMA service area. There may be times when the terminal cannot be used in the upper floors of a building even with no obstructions in sight. There may also be times when the signal is strong and you are not moving but the call is interrupted.
- Make sure not to disturb others when using in public places, places with many people or quiet places.
- Because the FOMA terminal uses electrical signals, it is possible for a third party to listen in on a conversation. However, the W-CDMA system automatically applies privacy to every call, a third party that tries to listen in only hears static.
- The FOMA terminal converts conversations into a digital signal and sends it to the other party over the radio. If the signal cannot be reconverted properly by such as moving to an area with a weak signal, the voice may not be heard correctly.
- Keep a separate memo and note information stored in the FOMA terminal. DoCoMo shall not be liable for any loss of content.
- The user hereby agrees that the user shall be solely responsible for the result of the use of SSL. Neither DoCoMo nor the certifier as listed herein makes any representation and warranty as for the security in the use of SSL. In the event that the user shall sustain damage or loss due to the use of SSL, neither DoCoMo nor the certifier shall be liable for any such damage or loss.

Certifier: VeriSign Japan K.K., Betrusted Japan Co., Ltd., GeoTrust Japan, Inc., RSA Security Japan Ltd., Secom Trust Systems Co., Ltd.

- This FOMA terminal supports FOMA Plus-Area.
- The FOMA terminal can be used only via the FOMA network provided by DoCoMo.

For First Time FOMA Users

If this is your first FOMA terminal, please read this manual in the order indicated below. This will give you an explanation of the preparation required to use the FOMA terminal and basic functions.

- 1. Attach the battery pack and charge (P. 38, P. 39)
- 2. Turn the power on, make initial settings and check your phone number (P. 43, P. 44, P. 46)
- 3. Check the roles of various parts of the FOMA terminal (PP. 24)
- 4. Check the meanings of icons that appear on the display (P. 28)
- 5. Check the operation of the menu (P. 31)
- 6. Check how to make/receive calls (P. 47)

Download the latest version of this manual from the NTT DoCoMo web page.

"User's Manual (in PDF format)" Download
 http://www.nttdocomo.co.jp/english/support/manual/index.html
 The URL and contents of this manual are subject to change without prior notice.

Using This Manual

This manual uses illustrations and icons to explain operations for proper phone use.

- Icons and screens that appear on the display have been set by default in accordance with the FOMA terminal color. (Kisekae Tool) @ P. 137
 - The explanations in this manual are based on the case when Kisekae Tool is set for the FOMA terminal color "Opal White".
- The screens and illustrations in this manual are shown as examples. The actual screens and illustrations may differ.

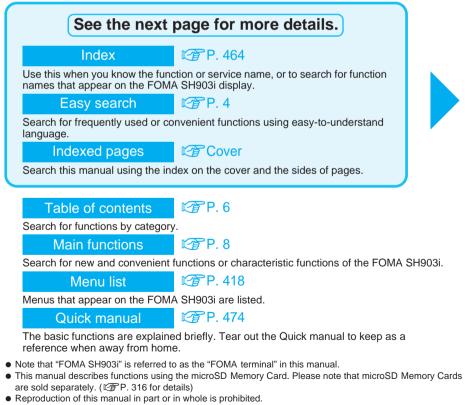
Notation of Operation Procedure and Keys

• This manual refers to keys as simplified icons.

| Actual key | Notation in this manual |
|--------------------------------------|--|
| Example) 1. | Refer to "Component Names and Functions" on P. 24. |
| • The notation and meaning of operat | ion procedure are shown below. |
| Notation | Meaning |
| Example) (for 1+ seconds) | Press 🝙 for 1 second or more. |

Searching This Manual

Use this manual to find explanations of functions and services. There are several ways to find information in this manual.



• The contents of this manual are subject to change without prior notice.

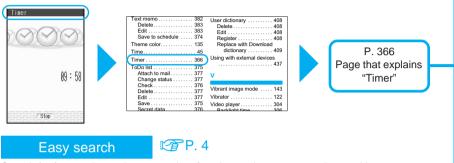
As an example, how to look up the Timer function using the Index. Easy search and Indexed pages are explained below.

(Content differs from actual pages in this manual.)

Index

P. 464

Use this when you know the function or service name, or to search for function names that appear on the FOMA SH903i display.



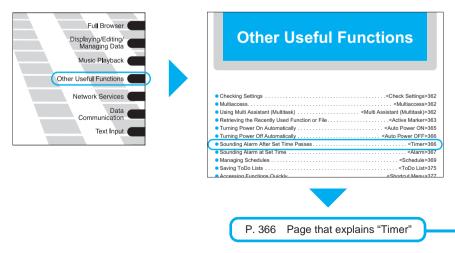
Search for frequently used or convenient functions using easy-to-understand language.

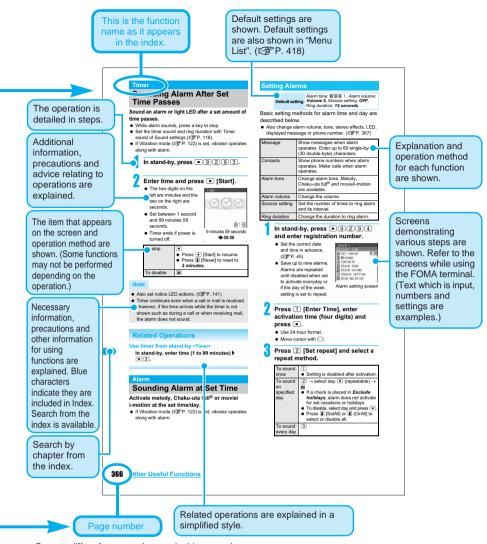
| (F | |
|----|--|

Indexed pages

Cover Cover

Search for functions going in the order of "cover" \rightarrow "beginning of the chapter" \rightarrow "description page". The beginning of each chapter shows a table of contents.





Content differs from actual pages in this manual.

Note

- Refer to "Menu List" on P. 418 for default settings.
- This manual refers to "microSD Memory Card" as "microSD Memory Card" or "microSD".
- This manual refers to "Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-αppli with IC card function" as "Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-αppli".

Viewing the display

- The explanations in this manual are based on default settings. The actual screens may differ depending on settings changed after purchase.
- When Flash movies and icons featuring animation effects are displayed, screens may differ from those described in this manual.

Easy Search

Use this feature to find operations for any function.

Changing the display

| Display features 28 Setting the clock 45 Changing stand-by wallpaper 126 | (Date settings) (Stand-by display) |
|---|---------------------------------------|
| Setting calendar in stand-by 127 | (Calendar display) |
| Changing the font width 143 | (Font style) |
| Keeping the display private 144 | (Private filter) |
| Changing the font size | |
| | (Font Size) |
| | |



Useful functions for making calls



| Notifying caller ID 46 | (Notify caller ID) |
|--|-----------------------|
| Talking with hands-free | (Hands-free) |
| Putting a call on hold while talking 51 | (Hold active call) |
| Switching between voice call | |
| and Videophone 51 | (Switch between voice |
| | call and Videophone) |
| Adjusting the volume of the other party's voice $\ldots66$ | (Earpiece volume) |
| | , |

When unable to take a call

| Setting the on hold guidance 67 | (On hold) | Msg answering |
|---------------------------------|----------------------|--------------------------------|
| Using Public mode | | |
| | Power OFF) | |
| Recording phone messages71 | (Record message/ | Msg answering |
| | Record memo) | Msg answering |
| Recording voice mail | (Voice Mail Service) | |
| | | interest Densis from TVTMT and |

Changing melody and illumination

| Select ring tone 121 | Personalizing the ring tone for the caller 100 (Select ring tone) |
|--|---|
| 1 Phone ring tone 皀 V.phone ring 着信音1 | Changing the ring tone |
| B Payphone ring tone User unset | Adjusting the ring tone volume 119 (Phone ring volume) |
| 5 Unknown tone | Silencing the keypad sound 120 (Key/Standby i-motion) |
| | Notifying incoming calls with vibration 122 (Vibrator) |
| | Setting Manner mode 124 (Manner mode) |
| | Changing the illumination color/flashing |
| | pattern |

Securing the FOMA terminal

| Saving terminal data, such as phonebook from unexpected loss 112, 114, 163 Keeping phonebook contents secret 113 Locking the FOMA terminal remotely in | | 'MI |
|---|------------------|----------------|
| case of loss | (Side key guard) | あまかせ0ック中です |
| Rejecting calls without caller ID | non-disclosure) | 20/11 Mm 10:05 |

* This service is a paid service that requires subscription.

Using the camera



| Turning on the picture light | (Picture light) |
|--|-------------------|
| Changing the image size 176 | (Select size) |
| Changing the shutter sound | (Shutter sound) |
| Saving directly to the microSD Memory Card 181 | (Switch phone⇔SD) |
| Showing shot images 296 | (Image Viewer) |
| | |

Using mail

Other features

Ra

E

| ar code reader Center the bar code | Saving battery power |
|---------------------------------------|---|
| Center the Dai Code | Scanning QR codes and bar codes 182 (Bar code reader) |
| @28@ | Using GPS function |
| | Using microSD Memory Cards |
| | Using the timer |
| E115mer | Setting the alarm |
| Press "scan" 10cm apart | Using the calculator |
| Light Scan Submenu | Using the mobile phone overseas 411 (Overseas use) |
| (SCAII ▼ | Updating the software |
| | Updating the security |
| | |

Frequently used functions are described in the Quick manual. (CPP. 474)

Table of Contents

| Using This Manual | |
|---|---|
| Easy Search | 4 |
| Main Functions of the FOMA SH903i | |
| Maximizing Use of the FOMA SH903i | |
| Safety Precautions (To Be Strictly Followed) | |
| Handling Precautions | |
| Intellectual Property | |
| Standard Parts Packaged with Unit and Main Optional Parts | |
| | |

Component Names and Functions, View the Display, Menu Selections, Supportbook, FOMA Card, Insert and Remove the Battery Pack, Charge the Mobile Phone, Battery Level, Power ON/OFF, Select Language, Initial Settings, Date Settings, Notify Caller ID, Own Number

Use Videophone, Make Calls/Videophone Calls, Switch Between Voice Call and Videophone, Redial/Received Calls, Chaku-moji, Send Own No./No Caller ID, Pause Dial, WORLD CALL, International Dial Assist, International Prefix, Sub Address, Reconnect Control, Noise Reduction, Hands-free, Answer Calls/Videophone Calls, Switch Between Voice Call and Videophone to Receive Calls, Any Key Answer, Set When Folded, Earpiece Volume, On Hold, Set On Hold Tone, Set Hold Tone, Public Mode (Drive Mode/Power OFF), Missed Calls, Record Message/Record Memo, Quick Message, Play/Delete Recorded Messages or Voice Memos, Chara-den, Set the Image to Send to the Other Party, Hands-free V.phone, Videophone Set, Change Videophone Settings, Notify Switch Mode, Packet Trans Arrival Action, Picture Memo

PushTalk, Send PushTalk Transmissions, Add Member, Receive PushTalk Transmissions, Add to PushTalk Phonebook, Use PushTalk Phonebook to Send PushTalk Transmissions, Delete PushTalk Phonebook Entries, Set PushTalk

Phonebook......95

Phonebooks Available on FOMA Terminal, Add to Phonebook, Add to FOMA Card Phonebook, Save to Phonebook from Redial and Received Calls, Group Settings, Search Phonebook, Edit Entries, Delete Entries, Data Security Service, Set Secret, 2-touch Dialing/2-touch Mail, Use Data Security Service

Sound/Screen/Light Settings 115

Sound Settings, Select Volume, Sound Playback, Vibrator, Quality Alarm, Ring Time Setting, Ring Output, Manner Mode, Original Manner Mode, Stand-by Display, Call/Receive Display, Send/Receive Display, Picture Call Set, Power Saver Set, User Set, Personalize, Personalize Menu, Kisekae Tool, LED Settings, Missed Call Notice/New Unread Mail Notice, Vibrant Image Mode, Font Style, Private Filter

FOMA Terminal Security Code, Change Security Code, Face Authentication, UIM Settings, Disable PIN Lock, Lock Functions, All Lock, Omakase Lock, Self Mode, Function Lock, Keypad Dial Lock, Multi Easy Lock, Multi Lock Auto-set, Side Key Guard, Show Call/Received, Secret Mode, Accept Calls, Reject Calls, Reject by Reason of Non-disclosure, Set Mute Ring Time, Reject Unknown, Data Security Service, Other Security Settings

Before Using the Camera, Shoot Still Picture, Shoot Movie, Change Settings for Shooting, Change Camera Settings, Send Message, Bar Code Reader, Character Reader (OCR)

i-mode, View Sites, Site Layout and Operation, My Menu, Change i-mode Password, Internet Access, Bookmark, Screen Memo, Save Image, i-melody, Download PDF, Kisekae Tool, Download Icons Collectively, Download Dictionary, Download Chara-den, Download ToruCa, Phone To (AV Phone To)/Mail To/Web To Function, Set i-mode, Message R/F, Receive Message R/F, Check New Messages, View Message R/F, Set SSL Certificates, i-motion, Download i-motion, Automatic Replay, i-motion Type, i-Channel, Show i-Channel, i-Channel Ticker, Reset i-Channel

6 Easy Search/Table of Contents/Precautions

| Mail |
|--|
| FOMA Terminal Mail Functions, i-mode Mail, Mail Menu, Compose/Send i-mode Mail, Deco-mail, Send Using a Template, Attachments, Save i-mode Mail, Auto Receive, Receive Option, Check New Message, Reply to i-mode Mail, Forward i-mode Mail, Add to Phonebook, Acquire Attached Files for Manual Reception, File Attachment, View Image in Mail, Save Template, Inbox/Outbox/Unsent Messages, Received/Sent Messages History, Mail Setting, Compose/Send SMS, Receive SMS, SMS Settings, Save SMS to FOMA Card, Delete SMS, Scan Message |
| i-αppli |
| i-αppli, i-αppliDX, Download, Run i-αppli, Auto Start, i-αppli To Function, i-αppli Stand-by, Manage i-αppli, Used by i-αppli, Use Various i-αppli Functions |
| Osaifu-Keitai/ToruCa |
| Osaifu-Keitai, iC Transfer Service, Start Osaifu-Keitai Compatible i-αppli, ToruCa, Retrieve ToruCa, ToruCa Viewer, View ToruCa List/Details Screen, ToruCa Settings, IC Card Lock |
| GPS Function |
| GPS Function, Position Location, Set Position Location, Use GPS Compatible i-αppli, Location Request, Location Notification, Location History, Use Location Information from Each Function, Use GPS Function |
| Full Browser |
| View Web Pages Designed for PC, Set Full Browser |
| Displaying/Editing/Managing Data |
| Image Viewer, Edit Image, Video Player, Edit Movie, Chara-den Player, Melody Player, microSD Memory Card, Contents Transfer Compatible, Copy to microSD, Backup/Restore, View microSD Data, Copy to the Phone, Manage microSD Memory Card, Manage Data, Ir Exchange, Send and Receive Data Individually, Send and Receive All Data Items, Use Ir Exchange with i-appli Software, Infrared Remote Control, iC Transmission, Send and Receive Data Individually, Send and Receive All Data Items, Voice Recorder, PDF Viewer, Manage PDF Files, Document Viewer, Manage Documents, BookReader, Use the Information in e-Book and e-Dictionary, Character Reader, Manage e-Book and e-Dictionary, Print Setting (DPOF), AV Output |
| Music Playback |
| Music, Chaku-uta full [®] Download, Save Music Data to microSD Memory Card, Manage Playlist, SD-Audio "Chaku-uta full" is a registered trademark of the Sony Music Entertainment (Japan) Inc. |
| Other Useful Functions |
| Check Settings, Multiaccess, Multi Assistant (Multitask), Active Marker, Auto Power ON, Auto Power OFF, Timer, Alarm, Schedule, ToDo List, Shortcut Menu, Owner Information, Voice Memo (During Call/Stand-by), Calculator, Talk Time/Cost, Text Memo, Earphone/Microphone with Switch, Set Auto Answer, Reset Settings, Delete User Data |
| Network Services |
| Network Services from the FOMA Terminal, Voice Mail Service, Call Waiting, Call Forwarding Service, Nuisance Call Barring Service, Caller ID Request Service, Dual Network Service, English Guidance, Service Number, Arrival Call Action, Set Arrival Action, Remote Control, Multi Number, Additional Services (USSD) |
| Data Communication |
| Data Communication, Before Use, General Flow to Prepare for Data Communication, AT Commands, CD-ROM, DoCoMo Keitai Datalink |
| Text Input 401 |
| Text Input, 5-touch, Save Phrases, Copy Text, Kuten Code Input, Register Words (User Dictionary), Clear Memory Terms, Download Dictionary, Quick Dictionary/Next Word Guess, 2-touch |
| Overseas Use 411 |
| Outline of International Roaming (WORLD WING), Services Available Overseas, Before Using Overseas, Make Calls at Your Country of Stay, Receive Calls, Network Search Mode, PLMN Setting, Operator Name Display, Roaming Guidance, Call Barring, International Services |
| Appendix/Using with External Devices/Troubleshooting |
| Menu List, Pre-installed Data, Dial Key Assignments (5-touch/2-touch), Symbols/Special Character List, Pictograph/ Emoticon List, Phrase List, Use the Calculator, Multiaccess Combinations, Multi Assistant (Multitask) Combinations, Service, Options and Accessories, Use with External Devices, Data Link Software, Troubleshooting, List of Error Messages, Warranty and After-sales Services, Software Update, Scan Function, Main Specifications, Specific Absorption Rate (SAR), Japan Export Control Regulation/Export Administration Regulation |
| Index/Quick Manual |

Index, Quick Manual

Main Functions of the FOMA SH903i

FOMA is the name of DoCoMo's service based on W-CDMA, which is recognized as a global standard for third generation mobile communications system (IMT-2000).

The World of i-mode

Use the i-mode terminal display to access i-mode, an online service used to access useful information from i-mode menu sites (programs) or i-mode supported sites, or easily send and receive e-mail.

i-mode (monthly fees apply)

i-mode is a paid service that requires subscription.

i-Channel

i-Channel is a paid service that requires subscription. Receive news, weather and other information graphically. Select a channel from the list to retrieve detailed information made with Flash (IPP. 190). IPP. 213

Chaku-moji

While making a call to the other party, display a message on their receive display. Since points of message and degree of urgency are previously sent, the call recipient can know the caller's points and feelings in advance by viewing the message.

PushTalk

Simply select the other party from the PushTalk phonebook and press the PushTalk key to communicate with multiple people at once (up to five including yourself). (27 P. 84

Mega i-appli, i-appliDX

Download i-appli from sites to play games and automatically update stock prices and weather information. Supporting large Mega i-appli lets you enjoy high-definition 3D games and long RPGs. With i-appliDX, use i-appli in conjunction with phonebook or mail information in the i-mode terminal.

GPS

The location information of the FOMA terminal is acquired using electric waves from GPS satellites. Based on the acquired location information, display the map or search peripheral area information of the present location, notify your location by attaching the information to mail or navigate to a destination (navigation i-αppli is preinstalled). In addition, the address link function, which starts GPS compatible i-appli using address information at sites, is supported. "imadoco-search" and "Keitai-Osagashi Service" are also GPS compatible, which makes it possible to utilize more accurate location information. "imadoco-search" is used when the third party checks the location information of the FOMA terminal owner from i-mode or a PC, and "Keitai-Osagashi Service" is used to acquire the lost FOMA terminal's location information with a PC. 178 P. 278

Location information may be sent to a searcher without any operation of the FOMA terminal when Location request menu is set to *Loc.provision:ON*.

i-motion compatible

Download and enjoy images and music from sites or the Internet. Set i-motion as Chaku-motion to use as ring tone or receive display. CPP. 211

i-mode Mail, Deco-mail Pictograph

Attach up to ten files (JPEG, ToruCa, PDF, etc.) in total of 2 MB to a message. Deco-mail/Deco-mail pictograph is available for i-mode mail. Create and send expressive mail by changing text color, character size and background color in message text.

International Roaming

Use the same FOMA terminal, phone number and mail address overseas as used in Japan. (Supporting 3G area only) Voice/Videophone calls, i-mode, i-mode mail, SMS and network services are available. (37 P. 412

Videophone

Talk with people far away while viewing images of them. The other party's voice is set to sound from the speaker by default. Begin your conversation immediately after the call is connected. Also, switch from a normal voice call to Videophone without disconnecting the call. 100 P. 48

ToruCa

ToruCa is an electronic card that can be retrieved with Osaifu-Keitai. Use as fliers, restaurant cards, coupons, etc. ToruCa is available from reader/writer, sites and QR codes. Easily share using mail, Infrared and microSD Memory Card. Moreover, exchange ToruCa using iC transmission by facing Osaifu-Keitai. Received ToruCa can be easily used by displaying on the screen or holding up to a reader/writer (external device). <u>ISP</u> P. 270

Osaifu-Keitai i-mode FeliCa Compatible

Download Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-αppli to deposit electronic money from sites to the FOMA terminal IC card and check your balance and usage history. Moreover, preinstalled i-αppli for "DCMX", a DoCoMo's credit service, turns your mobile phone into a convenient tool in your daily life by using it as "Osaifu-Keitai".

This terminal also supports iC transfer service that makes transferring data in the IC card easier when the FOMA terminal is changed into a new model.

3.2 Million Effective Pixel Camera and High-definition Display

3.2 million effective pixel CCD camera

(Recorded pixels: 3.2 million (main camera), 0.1 million (sub camera))

Shoot and play back still pictures and movies using auto-focus with the built-in digital camera. Multishot and shooting with frames are also available. Use the CCD camera (3.2 million effective pixels) or the CMOS sub camera (0.11 million effective pixels) to shoot images of yourself or to use Videophone. P. 166

A Wide Array of Functions

microSD Memory Card compatible

Supporting a minimum-sized memory, microSD Memory Card. Exchange data between FOMA terminal handset and microSD Memory Card. Save movies directly to the microSD Memory Card to shoot and play long movie files. Save the contents transfer compatible data to a microSD Memory Card and also music or images using a PC. 17 P. 316

Music playback function

Play i-motion/Chaku-uta full® continuously for up to approximately 250 minutes, SD-Audio data for up to approximately 50 hours, and WMA data for up to approximately 34 hours. Play, skip, and adjust the volume even with the FOMA terminal closed. P. 353

Active Marker

Easily access the function or file that was recently used. P. 363

Fix camera shake

Shoot still pictures/movies with the camera while camera shake is automatically fixed. 2 P. 179

Numerous Network Services

 Dual Network Service (monthly fees apply) P. 393

Voice Mail Service (monthly fees apply) P. 388

2.8 inch ASV High-definition Large **Display LCD**

Enjoy high quality view of shot still pictures and movies on the 2.8 inch wide screen. The wide screen also let you enjoy lively i-appli games. The light adjusting sensor adjusts the brightness of the backlight according to the detected surrounding light. This is useful for power saving purposes. 2 P. 133

Private filter

Change the contrast of the display to protect your important privacy. 144

Kisekae Tool

Personalize the menu icons and background images of Top menu, i-mode menu and mail menu, and also the stand-by display and ring tone with Kisekae Tool collectively. P. 137

Supporting navigation function

Display a map and peripheral area information of the destination on the display using the preset i-appli, "NAVITIME for SH". Alternatively, use as navigation to search the root to destination. P. 279

Supporting wide array of music distribution services

Play back Chaku-uta full[®] downloaded from sites. In addition, WMA (Windows Media Audio) data and SD-Audio data are supported. Download the music from various music stores to a PC and play them back on the FOMA terminal. P. 356, P. 358

One-touch Power saver mode

Switch the display settings to Power saver mode with one-touch operation and conserve battery power. P. 131

- Call waiting (monthly fees apply) 2 P. 390

Security Settings

There are various lock functions and security settings for the FOMA terminal.

- Secret mode P. 158
- Face authentication P. 148

- Lock functions P. 151 Multi easy lock P. 156 Omakase lock* P. 153
- Multi lock auto-set P. 156 Show call/received P. 157
- The FOMA terminal can be locked by request when it is lost. The lock can be disabled also by request. Refer to the back cover for details on inquiries.
- By using this service, phone book, still pictures, messages in the phone can be saved in the Data Storage Center, and the lost data can be restored from the data saved on the network when the phone is lost. In addition, the data saved on Data Storage Center can be edited and managed using a PC. The edited data can be reflected to the phone.

Refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode]" for precautions and details on the Data Security Service and the back cover of this manual for inquiries. This service is a paid service that requires subscription.

Omakase lock is a service to lock the handset by the request of the subscriber. Please note that the lock service can be applied by a request of the subscriber even if the subscriber is not a user of the FOMA terminal.

Maximizing Use of the FOMA SH903i

The functions of the FOMA SH903i are described below.

Videophone 🛛 🕼 P. 48

Face-to-face communication using the sub camera

Have conversations while looking at each other's faces.





Shoot live movies with the main camera

Use main camera and microphone to send image + voice of surroundings in real time.





PushTalk 🕼 P. 84

Simply select the other party from the phonebook and press the PushTalk key to communicate with multiple people at once (up to five including yourself).

PushTalk is useful when speaking to specific groups or conveying short information.

PDF Viewer/Document Viewer

PDF Viewer 2 P. 336

View PDF files on the FOMA terminal downloaded from sites or saved on microSD Memory Cards.



Chaku-moji 🛛 🞯 P. 55

Display a message on the receive display. Points and degree of urgency can be previously sent. Messages can be also checked on the received calls details screen.



Contents Transfer Compatible



Images, movies/i-motion, melodies and other data downloaded from sites, which has restrictions for output from the FOMA terminal, can be saved to a microSD Memory Card. (Some data cannot be saved.)

Also, i- α ppli data can be saved to a microSD Memory Card.

(Some software cannot be saved.)

AV Exchange

Viewing images on a TV screen C P. 350

Use a flat-plug AV cable (sold separately) to view Videophone, My picture, i-motion, Document Viewer, and i- α ppli images on a TV screen for all to enjoy. Also play still pictures as a slide show.

Sound extension: 3D sound, stereo twin speaker compatible @ P. 121

Enjoy i-αppli and melodies with dynamic stereo sound.

Document Viewer 1 P. 341

View Word, Excel, PowerPoint, text and image files (JPEG, GIF, PNG, BMP) saved in the microSD Memory Card on the FOMA terminal.



G-GUIDE Program Schedule Remote Control C P. 258

This convenient application combines a TV program schedule with an AV remote control. Download TV program information anywhere at any time, and easily check what programs are being shown at a particular time. Access information such as program titles, program details and start/end time for channels in your area.

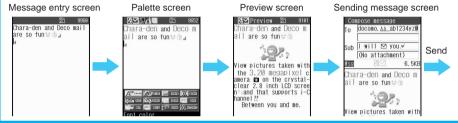
Programming your DVD hard disc recorder to record your favorite program is available through the internet. (The recorder must support remote programming. And the initial setting to enable this appli function must have been made.) Search programs using keywords such as program genre or TV personality name. Also operate TVs, VCRs and DVD players. (Some devices are not supported.)

| 877 | 1877 | ্পন | 18:1 | | Fild |
|---------------|-------------------------------|----------------|-----------------|---------|--------|
| | フャンル | やキーの | 7-1-10 | 番組後? | k ! |
| が人 | 740)A(2 8 1:57 1:12 - 1 | | 3476 トル (た | | EU. |
| 1.10K) 乳1方 | がた"番組 おおから | 祖表と AN GD! | ツモコン小語 | 能を招き | ¥ ! |
| 195 | マアン | コール / | | | |
| | 着ファイ しのワ | ル (西) シポイン | 8 | | |
| | 簡単7 | やつセス! | 102 | 1010 | 9 II |
| | | 00000 | | S C I I | 4. IKI |

The screen shown is only an example. Actual screens may differ. Program listings for vour area will be shown.

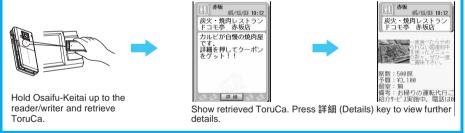
Deco-mail P. 222

Easily make Deco-mail from i-mode mail by changing text size/background color or pasting images. Also, create and send expressive mail by inserting Deco-mail pictographs, which are preinstalled, in message text.



ToruCa CTP. 270

ToruCa is available from reader/writer and sites. Easily share using mail, Infrared and microSD Memory Card. Retrieved ToruCa is saved in ToruCa of LifeKit menu.



i-Channel **『**了P. 213

Periodically receive updated information without performing operations each time. Press the i-Channel supported key to view the channel list. More detailed information is available here.



Safety Precautions (To Be Strictly Followed)

- Before use, read these "Safety Precautions" carefully and use your FOMA properly. Keep this manual in a safe place for future reference.
- These safety precautions contain information intended to prevent bodily injury to the user and to surrounding people, as well as damage to property, and must be observed at all times.

The following symbols indicate the different degrees of injury or damage that may occur if information provided is not observed and the FOMA terminal is used improperly.

| / <u>∧</u> Danger | This symbol indicates that "death or serious bodily injury may directly and immediately result from improper use." |
|-----------------------|---|
| <u>∧</u> Warning | This symbol indicates that "death or serious bodily injury may result from improper use." |
| ∕ <u>∧</u> Caution | This symbol indicates that "bodily injury and/or property damage may result from improper use." |

The following symbols indicate specific directions.

| Don't | Indicates a prohibited action. |
|-------------------------|--|
| No disassembly | Indicates not to disassemble the device. |
| No wet hands | Indicates not to handle the device with wet hands. |
| No liquids | Indicates not to use the device near water or get it wet. |
| D Instruction | Indicates that instructions specified are compulsory (must be followed). |
| Unplug | Indicates that the power cord must be unplugged from the power outlet. |

"Safety Precautions" is explained in the following six sections.

- Handling the FOMA CardP. 17

Handling the FOMA Terminal, Battery Pack, Adapters (Chargers), and FOMA Card (General)

🕂 Danger

Use only the battery packs and adapters (chargers) specified by the DoCoMo group companies for use with the FOMA terminal.



The use of devices other than those specified may cause the FOMA terminal, battery pack or other devices to leak, overheat, explode, catch fire or malfunction.

- Battery pack SH09
- Desktop holder SH11
- FOMA AC Adapter 01
- FOMA DC Adapter 01
- FOMA dry cell battery adapter 01 For information on other compatible products, contact a DoCoMo Shop or retailer.

Do not get the FOMA terminal, battery pack, adapters (chargers) or FOMA card wet.



Contact with water, pet urine, and other liquids may cause overheating, electric shock, fire, malfunction or bodily injury. Be attentive to where and how you use the handset.

Do not attempt to disassemble or modify. In addition, do not attempt to solder.



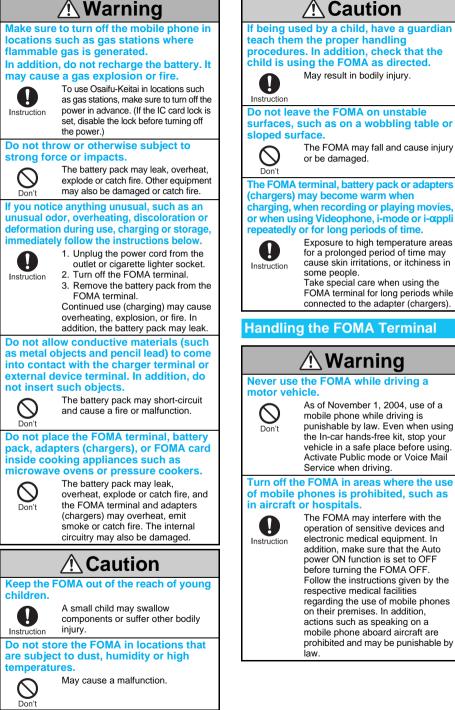
May cause accidents such as fires, bodily injury, electric shock or malfunction. In addition, the battery pack may leak, overheat, explode or catch fire.

Do not use or leave the FOMA terminal, battery pack, adapters (chargers) or FOMA card in locations subject to high temperatures, such as near a fire or heater, in direct sunlight, or inside a car on a hot day.



The FOMA may malfunction or become deformed. In addition, the battery pack may leak, overheat, explode, catch fire or suffer performance loss and a reduced service life. Part of the casing may also become hot and cause burns.

A Warning



Turn off the FOMA in areas where the use of mobile phones is prohibited, such as

The FOMA may interfere with the operation of sensitive devices and electronic medical equipment. In addition, make sure that the Auto power ON function is set to OFF before turning the FOMA OFF. Follow the instructions given by the respective medical facilities regarding the use of mobile phones on their premises. In addition, actions such as speaking on a mobile phone aboard aircraft are prohibited and may be punishable by

🗥 Warning

Turn the FOMA terminal off near high-precision electronic devices or devices that use weak electronic signals.



The FOMA may interfere with the operation of sensitive electronic equipment.

Take particular care with the following devices:

Hearing aids, implanted cardiac pacemakers, implanted cardioverter-defibrillators, or other electronic medical equipment. Fire alarms, automatic doors and other equipment controlled by electronic signals.

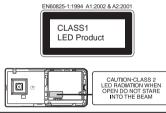
If you use an implanted cardiac pacemaker or implanted cardioverter-defibrillator or other medical equipment, contact the respective manufacturer or vendor to check whether the operation of the equipment is affected by signals.

Do not point the illuminated light directly at someone's eyes.



May damage eyesight. May also cause momentary sight loss or startle someone and cause an accident. Precautions:

The picture light source used for this product may emit the light over the safety level for eyes when operations such as undirected adjustments are intentionally made. Therefore, do not disassemble the terminal. The terminal must be repaired by the listed service stations.



CAUTION;

Use of controls, adjustments or performance of procedure other than those specified herein may result in hazardous radiation exposure. As the emission level from Mobile Light LED used in this product is harmful to the eves, do not

attempt to disassemble the cabinet.

Servicing is limited to qualified servicing station only.

A Warning

If you are using electronic medical equipment, do not put the FOMA in your breast pocket or in the inside pocket of your jacket.



Using the FOMA terminal in close proximity to electronic medical equipment may cause the equipment to malfunction.

Do not aim the Ir (Infrared) data port towards the eyes.



May cause eye injury. In addition, do not aim or direct the Ir data port towards another Ir device as this may cause the device to malfunction.

If you have a weak heart, take extra precautions when setting functions such as the Vibrator and Ring tone volume for incoming calls.



Various settings may have effects on your heart.

Instruction

If you hear thunder while using the FOMA outdoors, immediately turn it off and move to a safe location.



There is a risk of being struck by lightning and suffering electric shock.

Do not place the FOMA terminal on the dashboard or near the airbag where it could interfere with the airbag inflating.



If the air bag inflates, the FOMA terminal may strike you or others around you, resulting in bodily injury or damage to the FOMA terminal or other property.

During a call in which Hands-free is set, keep the FOMA terminal away from the ears.



This may cause hearing loss.

Instruction

1 Caution

Using the FOMA in an automobile may sometimes affect the electronic equipment in some vehicle models.



In such cases, stop using the FOMA, as this could impede safe driving.

as this could impede saf

Never place a magnetic card near or in the FOMA terminal.



The stored magnetic data in cash cards, credit cards, telephone cards and floppy disks, etc. may be erased.

Do not swing the FOMA terminal by its strap, etc.



The FOMA may strike you or others around you, resulting in bodily injury or damage to the FOMA or other property.

A Caution

Do not allow water or other liquids, metal, flammable material, or other foreign objects to enter the FOMA card port on the FOMA terminal.



May cause a fire, electric shock or other malfunctions.

Use of the FOMA may cause skin irritations such as itchiness, rashes or eczema in some people. If this occurs, immediately stop using the FOMA and seek medical treatment.

| Instruction | Part | Material | Surface treatment | |
|-------------|-------------------|----------|----------------------|--|
| Instruction | i-mode key | | | |
| | Mail key | | | |
| | Camera key | | | |
| | Phonebook | ABS | Chrome | |
| | key | ADO | plating | |
| | Multi-guide | | | |
| | key | | | |
| | Display | | | |
| | AV output/ | | | |
| | Earphone/ | | | |
| | Microphone | | Tin plating | |
| | terminal | | | |
| | External | | | |
| | connector Stainle | | | |
| | terminal | steel | | |
| | Charger | | Gold | |
| | terminal | | plating | |
| | Inside | | | |
| | microSD | | - | |
| | Memory | | | |
| | Card slot | | | |

Do not close the FOMA terminal on your fingers or objects such as the strap.



May result in bodily injury or cause a malfunction.

Use the FeliCa reader/writer function only in Japan.



The FeliCa reader/writer function in the FOMA terminal conforms to the domestic radio wave standards. Using the function overseas may result in punishment.

Handling the Battery Pack

Check the type of battery using the information printed on the battery pack label.

| Label | Battery type | |
|--------|--------------|--|
| Li-ion | Lithium-ion | |

🗥 Danger

Do not throw the battery pack into a fire.



The battery pack may leak. overheat, explode or catch fire.

Do not touch terminals with metallic objects such as wires. In addition, do not carry or store the battery pack with metallic necklaces, etc.



The battery pack may leak, overheat, explode or catch fire.

If the battery fluid comes into contact with your eyes, do not rub your eyes but immediately rinse your eyes with clean water. Then seek prompt medical treatment.



Battery fluid is harmful to your eyes and may result in loss of eyesight.

If you are having difficulty fitting the battery pack to the FOMA terminal, do not use excessive pressure to force the battery into place. Check that the battery pack is facing the correct direction before you attach it.



The battery pack may leak, overheat, explode or catch fire.

Do not puncture, hit with a hammer or step on the battery pack.



The battery pack may leak, overheat, explode or catch fire.

A Warning

If the battery pack is not fully charged after the specified time has elapsed, stop charging.



The battery pack may leak. overheat, explode or catch fire.

If battery fluid comes into contact with your skin or clothing, stop using the FOMA terminal immediately and rinse it off with clean water.



Battery fluid is harmful to your skin.

Instruction

\land Warning

If the battery pack leaks or emits an unusual odor, immediately stop use and move it away as far as possible from any flame or fire.



The battery fluid is flammable and could ignite, causing a fire or explosion.

ACaution

Do not dispose of used battery packs in ordinary garbage.



May cause fires or damage to the environment. Place tape over the terminals to insulate unnecessary battery packs, and take them to a DoCoMo Shop, retailer or institution that handles used batteries in your area.

Handling the Adapters (Chargers)

\land Warning

Take care not to short-circuit the charging terminal when connected to a power outlet or cigarette lighter socket. Also, take care not to allow any part of your body (fingers, etc.) to come into contact with the charging terminal.



May result in a fire, electric shock, equipment malfunction or bodily injury.

Place the charger and desktop holder on stable surfaces when charging. In addition, do not cover or wrap the charger or desktop holder with clothing or bedding.



The FOMA terminal may detach, overheat, or cause a fire or malfunction.

Never use the AC adapter, desktop holder or the DC adapter in humid or steamy locations such as a bathroom.



May result in electric shock.

Do not handle the cord and plug of the adapters (chargers) with wet hands.



May result in electric shock.

Warning

Do not touch the FOMA terminal or adapters (chargers) if you hear thunder.



There is a risk of being struck by lightning and suffering electric shock.

Do not use if the adapter's (charger's) cord or power cord is damaged.



May cause electric shock, overheating or fire.

If the fuse in the DC adapter blows, always replace it with a fuse of the specified type.



Using the incorrect fuse may cause a fire or malfunction. Refer to the respective manuals for information on the correct fuse specifications.

Always use the specified power supply and voltage.



Using the incorrect voltage may cause a fire or malfunction. When using overseas, use the overseas-compatible FOMA AC adapter 01. AC adapter: AC100V (To be connected only to domestic 100V outlets) DC adapter: DC12V/24V (for negative grounded vehicles only)

Wipe off any dust on the plug.



May cause a fire.

Instruction

Unplug the power cord from the outlet when not using for a long time.



May cause an electric shock, equipment malfunction, or fire.

Should water or other liquids enter the adapters (chargers), remove the plug from the outlet or cigarette lighter socket immediately.



May cause an electric shock, smoke emission or fire.

The DC adapter should only be used in negative grounded vehicles. Never use these adapters in positive grounded vehicles.



May cause a fire.

When plugging the AC adapter into the power outlet, make sure that no metallic straps or other metallic objects are caught between the plug and the socket.



May cause electric shock, short-circuiting or fire.

Instruction

Warning

Always pull the plug out of the power outlet or cigarette lighter socket before cleaning the adapters (chargers).



Don'f

May result in electric shock.

Do not place heavy objects on the power cords for the adapters (chargers).

May cause an electric shock or fire.

Always grasp the plug when unplugging the adapters (chargers) from the power outlet or cigarette lighter socket. Do not pull by the cord or power cord.



Pulling on the cord may damage the cord and cause an electric shock or fire.

Handling Mobile Phones near Electronic Medical Equipment

The safety precautions detailed here conform to the guidelines drawn up by the Electromagnetic Compatibility Conference Japan, regarding the protection of electronic medical equipment from signals emitted by mobile phones.

Marning

If you have an implanted cardiac pacemaker or an implanted cardioverter-defibrillator, always carry or use your FOMA terminal at least 22 cm away from your implant.



Electromagnetic signals may affect the operation of implanted cardiac pacemakers and implanted cardioverter-defibrillators.

Warning

Observe the following in hospitals or other medical facilities.



- Do not take your FOMA terminal into operating rooms, ICUs (Intensive Care Units) or CCUs (Coronary Care Units).
- Turn off your FOMA terminal inside hospital wards.
- Turn off your FOMA terminal even when you are in an area outside hospital wards, such as a hospital lobby, since electronic medical equipment may be in use nearby.
- Where a medical facility has specific instructions prohibiting the carrying and use of mobile phones, observe those instructions strictly.
- If Auto power ON function is set to ON, disable this function before turning off your mobile phone.

Turn off your FOMA terminal in crowded places such as rush-hour trains in case somebody nearby is using an implanted cardiac pacemaker or implanted cardioverter-defibrillator.



Electromagnetic signals may affect the operation of implanted cardiac pacemakers and implanted cardioverter-defibrillators.

Patients receiving medical treatment away from a hospital or medical facility (e.g. home treatment) who are using electronic medical equipment other than implanted cardiac pacemakers or implanted cardioverter-defibrillators should consult the respective manufacturers for information regarding the effects of signals on the equipment.



Electromagnetic signals may affect the operation of electronic medical equipment.

Handling the FOMA Card

Caution

Be careful when detaching the FOMA card (IC).



May cause injuries to your hand or fingers.

truction

Handling Precautions

General Notes

- Do not expose to water. FOMA terminal, battery pack, adapters (chargers) and FOMA Card are not waterproof. Do not use in humid or steamy areas such as bathrooms and avoid exposing to rain and other forms of moisture. If FOMA terminal is carried close to skin, perspiration may cause internal components to corrode and result in malfunction. Note that if problem is found to be due to moisture, handset and parts are not covered by warranty and in some cases may be irreparable. Even where repairs are possible, repair charges will be incurred since damage is not covered by warranty.
- Clean only with a soft, dry cloth (such as the type used for eyeglasses).

The surface of the handset's LCD has a special coating to improve the visibility of the color display. Forceful rubbing of LCD with a dry cloth may scratch LCD surface. Handle the handset carefully and clean using a soft, dry cloth (such as the type used for eyeglasses). Note also that LCD coating may peel off or stain if moisture or soiling is left on the surface for a long period.

Never use chemicals such as alcohol, thinners, benzene or detergents, as these agents may erase the printing on the handset or cause discoloration.

Occasionally clean connection terminals with a dry cotton swab.

Unclean connection terminals may result in poor connections and loss of power. Additionally, keep terminal clean with a dry cloth or cotton swab to prevent charge performance loss.

- Do not place the handset near an air conditioning vent. Condensation formed due to rapid changes in temperature may cause internal corrosion and lead to malfunction.
- Do not leave handset in a location subject to excessive force.

Carrying the handset in a tightly packed bag, or sitting on the handset in your pocket may result in damage to LCD or other internal components, which are not covered by warranty.

• Read the manuals supplied with the battery pack and adapters (chargers) carefully.

Notes About FOMA Terminal

- Using the handset close to landline phones, TVs or radios may affect the operation of such equipment. Move as far away as possible from such items before use.
- Keep a separate memo and note information stored in the FOMA terminal. DoCoMo shall not be liable for any loss of content.
- Do not put the handset in back pocket and then sit on it. Additionally, do not put handset where it may be subjected to excessive weight or pressure, such as the bottom of a briefcase. May cause malfunction.
- Do not close FOMA terminal on strap. May damage the handset and cause malfunction.
- Avoid using the handset in extremely high or low temperatures. Use the FOMA terminal within the range of a temperature between 5°C and 35°C and a humidity between 45% and 85%.
- FOMA terminal may become warm with continuous use or during charging. This is normal and not a malfunction.
- Do not leave the camera in direct sunlight. May cause discoloration or burn-in.
- A radio frequency-preventing sheet is attached on the back of the back cover. Do not peel off this sheet.

Handling Battery Pack

- Battery pack is a consumable product. Though usage time varies with use, change battery if battery level is extremely low even after fully charged. Purchase a new battery pack for specified handset.
- Always charge the battery before the first use or after not using battery for a long time.
- The usage time for a battery depends on the usage and deterioration of battery pack.
- Charge battery in areas where ambient temperature is between 5°C and 35°C.
- Store in a cool, well ventilated location that is not exposed to direct sunlight. If the battery pack is not be used for a long time, empty the battery, remove it from the FOMA terminal, place in a plastic bag in which the battery pack is contained or other container and store.
- Depending on usage, the battery may swell as it approaches the end of its service life but this will not cause problems.

Handling the Adapters (Chargers)

- Adapters (chargers) may become warm during charging. This is normal and not a malfunction.
- Charge the battery in the area with an appropriate temperature (between 5°C and 35°C).
- Do not charge battery pack in the following locations:
 - Close to landline phones, TVs or radios, etc.
 - Areas with high humidity or dust, or in areas exposed to strong vibrations
- Do not use DC adapter to charge battery when the car engine is not running. May cause car battery to run down.
- When using a power outlet with a feature to prevent the plug from being removed accidentally, follow instructions in the outlet user's guide.
- Do not subject to strong force or impacts. Also, do not disfigure the charger terminals or the terminal guides. May cause a malfunction.

Notes About FOMA Card

- Avoid using in extremely high or low temperatures.
- Always keep IC area clean.
- FOMA card may become warm during use. This is not a malfunction.
- Customer is responsible for malfunctions arising from inserting FOMA card into a different IC card reader/writer.
- To protect the environment, please take any unnecessary FOMA cards to your local DoCoMo Shop or retailer.
- Keep a separate memo and note information stored in the FOMA card. DoCoMo shall not be liable for any loss of data.
- Clean only with a soft, dry cloth (such as the type used for eyeglasses).
- Do not damage, touch haphazardly or short-circuit the IC. May cause data loss or malfunction.
- Do not drop or otherwise subject the FOMA card to severe impact. May cause a malfunction.
- Never bend or place heavy objects on the FOMA card. May cause a malfunction.
- Do not apply unnecessary force when removing the FOMA card.
- Do not apply unnecessary force when inserting card into the FOMA terminal.

Notes About Cameras

 If the FOMA terminal is used in a manner, which creates a serious public nuisance, the owner may be subject to punishment under legal and/or regulatory guidelines (such as nuisance prevention ordinance).

Please respect the privacy of others when using a camera-enabled mobile phone to shoot and send images.

FeliCa Reader/Writer

- The FeliCa reader/writer function in the FOMA terminal uses weak electric waves in the handling of which does not require a license of radio station.
- The frequency in use is the 13.56 MHz band. When another reader/writer is being used nearby, keep enough distance from it. Make sure that there is no radio station using the same frequency band in the nearby area.

Intellectual Property

Copyrights and Rights of Portrait

 Data with third party copyrights such as text, images, music and software that is downloaded or acquired via Internet web pages, shot by the FOMA terminal, or acquired from TV or other video cannot be duplicated, altered or publicly transmitted without rightful party's consent. Only duplicating, quoting, etc. for personal use is permitted under copyright laws.

Even if for personal use, filming and recording may be prohibited for demonstrations, performances and exhibitions.

Also, shooting another's image or posting another's image on Internet web pages without their consent may constitute a violation of one's right to their image.

Registered Trademarks and Trademarks

- "FOMA", "mova", "Osaifu-Keitai", "ToruCa", "PushTalk", "PushTalk Plus", "i-melody", "mopera", "mopera U", "FirstPass", "Chara-den", "Deco-mail", "Chaku-motion", "i-shot", "i-motion mail", "i-αppliDX", "i-motion", "i-mode", "i-Channel", "i-animation", "I/ケ・ホーダイ (Pake-Houdai)", "iD", "DCMX", "Short mail", "WORLD WING", "Public mode", "DoPa", "WORLD CALL", "Dual Network", "visualnet", "V-Live",
 "Security scan", "musea", "sigmarion", "My DoCoMo", "Family Wide Limit", the "i-mode" logo, the "FOMA" logo, the "i-αppli" logo, the "DCMX" logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of NTT DoCOMo, Inc.
- Toll-free number service name and toll-free number logo are trademarks of NTT Communications Corporation.
- Symbian This product includes software licensed from Symbian Software LTD.
 "Symbian", "Symbian OS" and other associated Symbian marks are all trademarks of Symbian Software Ltd.
 ©1998-2006 Symbian Software Ltd. All rights reserved
- ・キャッチホン (Call waiting) is a registered trademark of Nippon Telegraph and Telephone Corporation.
- NetFront and NetFront, are registered trademarks of ACCESS Co., Ltd. in Japan and other countries.
- This product is equipped with NetFront by ACCESS Co., Ltd. for Internet functions.
 NetFront is a registered trademark or trademark of ACCESS Co., Ltd. in Japan and other countries.
 Copyright © 1996-2006 ACCESS CO., LTD.
- Microsoft, Windows, PowerPoint and Windows Media are registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the U.S.A. and other countries. (The official name for Windows is Microsoft[®] Windows[®] operating system.)

- Microsoft Excel and Microsoft Word are product names of Microsoft Corporation in the U.S.A.
- Java and all Java-based trademarks and logos are trademarks or registered trademarks of Sun Microsystems, Inc. in the U.S.A. and other countries.
- QuickTime is a registered trademark of Apple Computer, Inc. in the U.S.A. and other countries.
- QR Code is a registered trademark of DENSO WAVE INCORPORATED.
- The microSD logo is a trademark.
- Powered by JBlend[™] Copyright 2002-2006 Aplix Corporation. All rights reserved.



JBlend and JBlend related trademarks JBlend are registered trademarks or trademarks of Aplix Corporation in Japan and other countries.

picsel

Document Viewer is powered by Picsel Technologies. Picsel, Picsel Powered, Picsel

Viewer, Picsel Document Viewer and the Picsel cube logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of Picsel Technologies and/or its affiliates.

 This handset features LCFONT, developed by Sharp Corporation, to make the LCD easier to view and read. LCフォント/LCFONT and ないのです。

are registered trademarks of Sharp Corporation.

 McAfee and VirusScan are registered trademarks or trademarks of McAfee, Inc. and/or its affiliates in the U.S.A. and other countries.

All other registered and unregistered trademarks herein are the sole property of their respective owners.

© 2006 Networks Associates Technology, Inc. All Rights Reserved.

● Gガイド, G-GUIDE, Gガイドモバ イル, G-GUIDE MOBILE and the G-GUIDE related logos are registered trademarks of



Gemstar-TV Guide International, Inc. and/or its affiliates in Japan.

- Multitask is a registered trademark of NEC Corporation.
- IrSS[™] or IrSimpleShot[™] are trademarks of Infrared Data Association[®].
- F e l i C a, which uses non-contact IC card technology, was created by Sony Corporation.
- F e l i C a is a registered trademark of Sony Corporation.
- is a registered trademark of FeliCa Networks.
- All other company names and product names are trademarks or registered trademarks of the respective companies.

Others

- This product includes modules developed by the Independent JPEG Group.
- Under the MPEG-4 Visual Patent Portfolio License, customers have licensed permission for the following use of this product to engage in non-profit personal use. Other uses are not permitted.
 - Encoding MPEG-4 standard video (henceforth referred to as MPEG-4 video).
 - Decoding an MPEG-4 video that a customer not engaged in personal commercial activities has encoded.
 - · Decoding an MPEG-4 video obtained from a licensed provider.

For details on other intended uses, contact MPEG LA. LLC.

- This product is licensed under the MPEG-4 Systems Patent Portfolio License for encoding in compliance with the MPEG-4 Systems Standard. An additional license and payment of royalties are necessary in the following cases.
 - · Data stored or replicated in physical media which is paid for on a title by title basis.
 - · Data which is paid for on a title by title basis and is transmitted to an end user for permanent storage and/or use.

Such additional license may be obtained from MPEG LA, LLC. Contact MPEG LA, LLC for additional details.

 This product is licensed under the AVC patent portfolio license for the personal and noncommercial use of a consumer to (i) encode video in compliance with the AVC standard (henceforth referred to as AVC video) and/or

(ii) decode AVC video that was encoded by a consumer engaged in a personal and noncommercial activity and/or was obtained from a video provider licensed to provide AVC video. No license is granted or shall be implied for any other use. Additional information may be obtained from MPEG LA, L.L.C.

See HTTP://WWW.MPEGLA.COM

● This product uses the Flash[®]Lite[™] technology of Adobe Systems Incorporated. Flash Lite and Macromedia are registered trademarks or trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated in the U.S.A. and other countries.

 Licensed by QUALCOMM Incorporated under one or more of the following United States Patents and/or their counterparts in other nations:

| | oountorparto in ot | nor nationo, |
|-----------|--------------------|--------------|
| 4,901,307 | 5,490,165 | 5,056,109 |
| 5,504,773 | 5,101,501 | 5,506,865 |
| 5,109,390 | 5,511,073 | 5,228,054 |
| 5,535,239 | 5,267,261 | 5,544,196 |
| 5,267,262 | 5,568,483 | 5,337,338 |
| 5,600,754 | 5,414,796 | 5,657,420 |
| 5,416,797 | 5,659,569 | 5,710,784 |
| 5,778,338 | | |

- Content owners use Windows Media digital rights management (WMDRM) technology to protect their intellectual property, including copyrights. This device uses WMDRM software to access WMDRM-protected contents. If the WMDRM software fails to protect the content, content owners may ask Microsoft to revoke the software's ability to use WMDRM to play or copy protected content. Revocation does not affect unprotected content. When you download licenses for protected content, you agree that Microsoft may include a revocation list with the licenses. Content owners may require you to upgrade WMDRM to access their content. If you decline an upgrade, you will not be able to access content that requires the upgrade.
- This product uses Adobe Reader from Adobe Systems Inc.

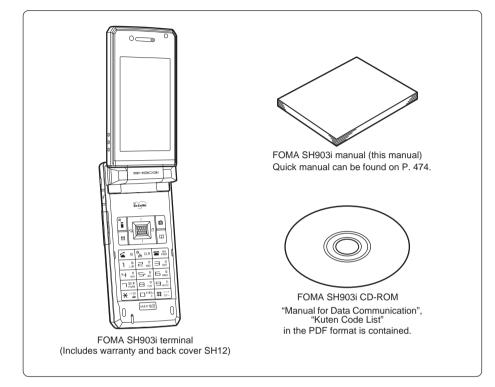
Copyright © 2006 Adobe Systems Incorporated. All rights reserved. Patents pending. Adobe, the Adobe logo and Reader are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated. Adobe and Adobe Reader are registered

trademarks or trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated in the U.S.A. and other countries. CP8 PATENT

- Windows[®] 2000 Professional is an abbreviation of Microsoft[®] Windows[®] 2000 Professional operating system.
- Windows[®] XP is an abbreviation of Microsoft[®] Windows® XP Professional operating system or Microsoft[®] Windows[®] XP Home Edition operating system.
- This manual refers to Windows® 2000 Professional as Windows 2000.
- This manual refers to Windows[®] XP Professional and Windows[®] XP Home Edition as Windows XP.

Standard Parts Packaged with Unit and Main Optional Parts

Standard package



Main optional parts

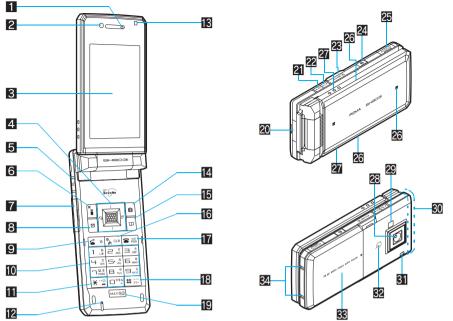


• Refer to P. 437 for details on other optional parts.

Before Using the FOMA Terminal

| Component Names and Functions | |
|--|-------------------------------------|
| • Viewing the Display | |
| Menu Selections | |
| Displaying the Supportbook | <supportbook>34</supportbook> |
| • Using a FOMA Card | |
| Inserting and Removing the Battery Pack | |
| Charging the Mobile Phone | |
| How to Check the Battery Level | <battery level="">42</battery> |
| • Turning the Power On and Off | <power off="" on="">43</power> |
| Switching Display to English | <select language="">44</select> |
| Making the Initial Settings | |
| • Setting the Date and Time | <date settings="">45</date> |
| • Sending Your Own Phone Number to the Other Party | <notify caller="" id="">46</notify> |
| Checking Your Phone Number | |
| | |

Component Names and Functions



Key illustrations are examples and may look different from actual keys.

The light adjusting sensor area

When Brightness (\mathfrak{BP} P. 131, P. 133) of Power Saver is set to *Automatic*, the sensor detects the light of the surrounding area and automatically adjusts the display brightness and keypad backlight. Do not cover the sensor area (\mathbb{H}) with a sticker. May interfere with the sensor.

1 Earpiece

- Emits the other party's voice.
- When in stand-by, listen to Record message/Voice memo using the earpiece.

2 Sub camera

Use to shoot own image (127 P. 166) or to send video shot during a Videophone call (127 P. 48) to the other party.

3 Display (1 P. 28)

- ▲ Multi-guide key (four-way key : and OK key •) (¹ P. 27)
 - Press to display and select Top menu, Redial, Received calls, Shortcut menu, Active marker (P. 363) as well as use these functions.

- In stand-by, press
 for 1+ seconds to set or cancel Multi easy lock. To disable, terminal security code is required.
 (12) P. 156)
- In stand-by, press for 1+ seconds to set or cancel IC card lock. To disable, terminal security code is required.
 (CF P. 276)
- In stand-by, press : for 1+ seconds to adjust earpiece volume. (P P. 119)

5 PushTalk key 🖻 (P)

- Press to use the PushTalk phonebook.
 (127 P. 88)
- Press to send PushTalk transmissions. Hold key to talk during PushTalk transmission. (27 P. 85)
- Press for 1+ seconds to enable/disable the side key operation. (PP P. 157)

🜀 i-mode/Guidance key 🔳 (🏹)

- Press to make or receive a Videophone call. (IP P. 48, P. 63)
- Press to use i-mode. (P. 188)
- Press to execute the function displayed at the lower left of the display in guidance.
 (12) P. 27)
- In stand-by, press for 1+ seconds to display the i-αppli screen. (P P. 254)

7 External connector terminal

Terminal for connecting external devices, such as an AC adapter, a DC adapter (127 P. 40), or a FOMA USB cable (sold separately).

8 Mail/Guidance key 🖾

- Press to use mail functions. (PP. 220)
- In stand-by, press for 1+ seconds to display a new mail message screen. (1) P. 220)
- Press to execute the function displayed at the lower left of the display in guidance.
 (12) P. 27)
- Press to switch between upper and lower case when entering text. (PP P. 405)
- Press for 1+ seconds in text input screen to display insert phrase screen. (PP. 406)
- Press twice to check new messages.
 (CP P. 231)

9 Start/Hands-free key 🝙

- Press to make or receive a voice call.
- Press for 1+ seconds during a voice call to turn Hands-free on and off. (CP P. 51)
- Press during a Videophone call to turn Hands-free on and off. (P. 79)
- Press during a PushTalk transmission to turn Hands-free on and off. (P. 85)

Dial/Text entry keys 1 to 9, 0

- Press to enter a phone number. (12 P. 48)
- Press to enter text. (PP. 402)

III X/Line break/Public mode (Drive mode) key ∑

- Press to enter an asterisk (¥), dakuten (°), handakuten (°) or a line break.
 (12) P. 403)
- Press for 1+ seconds to set or cancel Public mode (Drive mode). (127 P. 68)

12 Microphone

Sends out your own voice.

E Light adjusting sensor

The sensor detects the light of the surrounding area and automatically adjusts the display brightness and key backlight ON/ OFF. (27 P. 131)

🛿 Camera/Guidance key 🖻

- Press to use Camera mode. (PP. 170)
- Press to execute the function displayed at the lower right of the display in guidance.
 (CF P. 27)
- In stand-by, press for 1+ seconds to display Data box. (P. 296, P. 304, P. 354)

🖪 Phonebook key/Guidance key 🖂

- Press to use the phonebook. (PP. 96)
- In stand-by, press for 1+ seconds to display the phonebook entry screen.
 (LP P. 97, P. 103)
- Press to execute the function displayed at the lower right of the display in guidance.
 (CP P. 27)
- Press to change the type of text to be entered. (P. 404)
- In text input screen, press for 1+ seconds to use Internet-related phrases. (PP P. 406)

i i-Channel/Clear/i-αppli stand-by key (ch)

- Press to show the channel list.
 (© P. 215)
- Use to delete phone numbers and text. (P. 404)
- Press to return to the previous menu or page.
- Press when i-αppli stand-by is set and i-αppli starts. (CP P. 263)

🚹 Power/End/On hold key 🕿

- Press for 2+ seconds to turn the power on or off. (127 P. 43)
- Press to end a call or i-mode, or to put calls on hold. (P P. 67)
- Press to play or pause when animated GIF or Flash movies are set as the stand-by display. Press while setting i-motion to play or stop. (127)

🖪 #/Manner mode/Camera mode key 🖽

- Press to enter a (#), prolonged sound
 (-), touten (、), kuten (。), exclamation mark (!), question mark (?), or chuten (•).
- In stand-by, press for 1+ seconds to set or disable Manner mode. (P. 125)
- Press to switch between the main camera and the sub camera while shooting images. (27 P. 172, P. 175)

Multi/GPS/Supportbook key

 To activate Multi Assistant: Press while running an application to use the phonebook, mail or other useful functions. (CP P. 362)

- GPS positioning: In stand-by, press for 1+ seconds to position the present location.
 (CP P. 278)
- To view Supportbook: Press in stand-by to view Supportbook (preset). (CP P. 34)
- To save a shortcut in the Shortcut menu: Press for 1+ seconds when ↓ is on the screen to save a shortcut. (127 P. 377)

20 Infrared port

Use for the Ir exchange and Ir remote control. (127 P. 332)

21 Private filter/Zoom out key 🛓 (2)

- Switch Private filter to ON/OFF in normal position. (@P. 144)
- Zoom out while Camera mode is activated in viewer position. Keep key pressed to gradually zoom out. (PP P. 174)
- Turn up the volume during music playback with the FOMA terminal closed or in viewer position. Press the key for 1+ seconds to play the previous song/to return to beginning of the song.
 (LP P. 354, P. 359)
- When the FOMA terminal is closed in stand-by, press for 1+ seconds to turn on/ off the picture light. Press the other side key while the picture light is lit, wait approximately 30 seconds, or open the FOMA terminal to turn off the picture light.

22 Power saver mode/Zoom in key 🖲 (Eco)

- Press for 1+ seconds in stand-by to set the Power saver mode. When set to the Power saver mode, the Power saver set menu appears. (IPP P. 131)
- Zoom in while Camera mode is activated in viewer position. Keep key pressed to gradually zoom in. (127 P. 174)
- Turn down the volume during music playback with the FOMA terminal closed or in viewer position. Press for 1+ seconds to forward the song. (1) P. 354, P. 359)

E microSD Memory Card slot

Insert a microSD Memory Card. (CP P. 316)

2 Shutter key 🖻 (🙆)

- Use to shoot still pictures and movies. (© P. 171, P. 173)
- When the FOMA terminal is closed in stand-by, press for 1+ seconds to activate/ deactivate Music player. Play or pause the song during playback with the FOMA terminal closed or in viewer position.
 (Interpret P. 354, P. 359)

AV output/Earphone/Microphone terminal

 Connect a flat-plug earphone/ microphone with switch (sold separately).
 (IPP P. 383)
 When using an earphone plug



adapter (sold separately), an earphone/ microphone with switch can also be used.

 Connect a flat-plug AV cable (sold separately) to output audio and video.
 (Interpretent of the second second

Called LED/Charging LED

- Flashes when there is an incoming call. (127 P. 139)
- Stays lit while charging. (P. 39)

27 Speakers

- Emit ring tones and other sounds.
- Emit the other party's voice during hands-free voice/Videophone/PushTalk calls.

🔁 Main camera

Use to shoot an image of your surroundings (127 P. 166) or send a video of your surroundings shot during a Videophone call (127 P. 48) to the other party.

🖉 Picture light

- Provides extra light for shooting images in dark places. (P P. 175)
- Lights when the camera is activated or during shooting. (P P. 170, P. 171, P. 173)

🖸 FOMA antenna

An antenna is built in.

31 Strap ring

Attach a commercially available strap with the FOMA terminal closed.

🖸 FeliCa mark 🕗 (🖙 P. 269)

The IC card is included. (The IC card cannot be removed.)

Use Osaifu-Keitai holding the FeliCa mark up to the reader/writer (external device).

🕄 Back cover (🕼 P. 38)

Charger terminal

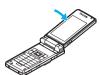
Terminal for recharging with the desktop holder. ($\ensuremath{\mathbb{CP}}\xspace$ P. 41)

How to Open the FOMA Terminal

To use the FOMA terminal, open it (normal position) or use it in viewer position. • When carrying, keeping the FOMA terminal closed as shown in the diagram for step 1 is recommended.

Normal position





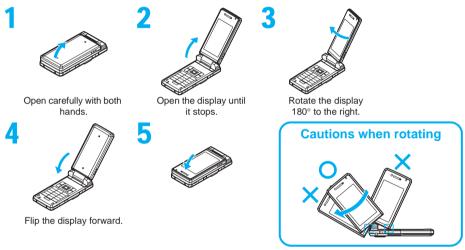
Open carefully with both hands.

Push the display back as far as it will go.

Viewer position

In stand-by, set to viewer position to automatically activate camera (still picture mode). To end Camera mode, press $\mathbb{P}(\mathbb{P})$ in the viewfinder screen.

• To rotate the FOMA terminal display from the normal position, bring the display back to where it stops midway (step 2 position) and then rotate it to the right 180°.



Note

 When rotating the FOMA terminal display, be careful not to hit the key surface, stoppers or the terminal. Also, do not rotate in the opposite direction or further than 180°. (See "Cautions when rotating" above.) May damage the key surface, terminal or stopper.

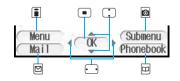
How to Use the Multi-guide Key and Guidance Key

Multi-guide key

Use the Multi-guide key (four-way key \therefore and OK key \bigcirc) to select and set menus that are shown. Move the cursor with \therefore and set the selection using \bigcirc .

Guidance keys

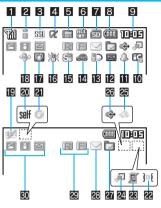
Use keys allotted to operate menu items of operation guidance that appear in the lower part of the display. (Allotted functions differ depending on the situation.)



Viewing the Display

The display allows you to check the current status after the power is turned on or while setting up functions. The display lights for a set period of time when a key is pressed. The default setting is 10 seconds. (\mathbb{CP} P. 131)





Icons that appear in the lower part of the display



1 Signal status 漰

Indicates the strength of the signal.

Strong - Weak

When (Out of service area) appears, the handset is outside the service area or in a place with no signal.

Signal icon can be changed. (BP. 134)

Indicates i-mode or Full Browser status.

3 SSL 题 (🕼 P. 189)

Indicates that an SSL-enabled site or Internet web page is currently being viewed. When SSD appears while using Multi Assistant, function such as i-mode, Full Browser, i-αppli or Software update is being used with Multi Assistant.

4 i-αppli (🖅 P. 254)

Indicates the i-appli status.

- **α** : i-αppli is running i-αppli stand-by is running
- i · αppli stand-by is set^{*}
- **dx** : i-αppliDX is being activated i-αppliDX stand-by is being activated
- i-αppliDX stand-by is set*
- Indicates that an i-αppli is set as the stand-by display, but cannot be used.

5 GPS display (12 P. 278, P. 283)

- Appears when location provision is set to Loc. provision:ON. Displayed until a location provision permission schedule ends if it is set.
- Appears while the handset is being positioned by GPS.

6 Restriction indicator (P. 151, P. 158) Indicates the status of the restriction settings.

- ® : Secret mode
- Secret data is being edited
- 📳 : Keypad dial lock
- : All locked
- E : Function lock is set
- 🐮 : Keypad dial lock and Function lock are set
- : Secret mode and Function lock or Keypad dial lock are set
- : Key guard is set

7 microSD Memory Card (P. 316)

Appears when microSD Memory Card is inserted.

- (gray): microSD Memory Card is inserted
- (pink) : Data on microSD Memory Card is being viewed

8 Battery level/Charging (P. 42)

(Ⅲ): Battery level
 (№) : Charging
 Indicates the status of the battery pack.
 Signal icon can be changed. (12) P. 134)

9 Clock display (🕼 P. 45)

Indicates the time that is set.

DIC card lock C (C P. 276) Appears when IC card is locked.

 Alarm/Schedule alarm/ToDo alarm (P P. 367, P. 371, P. 376)
 Appears when a Schedule alarm, ToDo alarm or alarm is set for that day.

😰 Record message 🔤 (🖙 P. 71)

Appears when Record message is set. When there are messages, **S** to **S** appears, indicating the total number of both types of messages. When there are three Record messages (voice calls) and two Record messages (Videophone), **S** appears.

Earphone/microphone connection (FP P. 383)

Appears if a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (sold separately) is connected when Auto answer for voice/Videophone call is set. Appears when Auto answer for PushTalk is set even if earphone/microphone with switch is not connected.

Public mode (Drive mode) 🚓 (🖙 P. 68) Appears when Public mode (Drive mode) is set.

15 Silent 🗐 (🐨 P. 119)

Appears when the phone ring volume is set to Silent.

16 Vibrator 🙀 (🖅 P. 122)

Appears when Vibration mode is set.

17 Manner mode 🚱 (🖙 P. 125)

Appears when Manner mode is set.

🔃 USB mode 🚸 (🖅 P. 324)

Indicates that the FOMA USB cable (sold separately) is connected.

FOMA card error

- Indicates the type of FOMA card error. I: Appears when FOMA card is malfunctioning or not inserted.
- Image: Appears when a card other than the FOMA card is inserted.

2 Self mode 🖽 (2 P. 154)

Appears when Self mode is set, and the handset cannot make/receive calls or PushTalk, send/receive i-mode mail or SMS. use i-mode functions or use Ir exchange.

21 PushTalk ((P. 84)

Appears during PushTalk transmission.

Ir exchange/External device

Appears during Ir exchange or when communicating with an external device.

- I: Appears when exchanging data with another device using the infrared exchange function. (P P. 330) Appears when sending data using infrared remote control. (1 P. 333)
- [] (green): Connected to an external device and transmitting packets
- (red) : Connected to an external device and sending/receiving packet data
- Connected to an external device and transmitting 64K data

28 Private filter 2 (127 P. 144)

Appears when Private filter is ON.

24 Shortcut menu 🛹 (🖅 P. 377)

Appears when the function can be added to the Shortcut menu.

 When the Shortcut menu appears, the Private filter icon does not appear even if it is set to ON.

💯 ToruCa (🖙 P. 272)

Indicates there is an unread ToruCa.

26 Hands-free (27 P. 51, P. 79)

- (red) : Hands-free active call
- (green): Connected to Hands-free compatible device
- When the Hands-free icon appears, the ToruCa icon does not appear even if there is unread ToruCa.

Storage status of i-mode center (CPP. 229)

Indicates the storage status of the i-mode mail at the i-mode center.

- Appears when mail is stored at the center.
- Appears when the center is full.

28 i-mode mail/SMS received 🖂 🔛 🌃 (CPP. 229)

Indicates the i-mode mail/SMS reception status. The status of the memory to store received mail is also indicated.

🖉 Message R/F icon

R (green) E (green) R (yellow) E (yellow) RERERERERE 🖻 (🕼 P. 206)

Indicates the reception status of the Message R/F and the storage status of the Message R/F at the center. However, the status may not always be indicated, even if messages are held at center.

🖸 Multitask (🖅 P. 362)

Indicates functions that are running.

- Four or more applications are
 - running
 - 📾 : Camera (OCR)

: Schedule

A : Text memo

: BookReader

Calculator

: Document

🗐 : ToDo

📾 : Camera (still

- E: Videophone (64K) 📲 : Videophone (32K)
- : Voice call : PushTalk/
- PushTalk phonebook
- 🕄 : Modem transmission (appears during data transmission.)
- Software update
- I: Receive Ir data
- 🖬 : i-αppli
- 🔳 : i-mode
- : Full Browser
- : i-Channel
- : Mail/SMS/Check new message
- 🖾 : Mail/SMS being composed
- : Message R/F

- Viewer ToruCa
- D: GPS
- Alarm C: Timer
- Image: microSD
- manager
- Ceneral settings
- I Record message/Voice memo
- : Show redial

- picture) 📾 : Camera (movie)
- 國 : Bar code reader : Voice recorder

- SD-Audio
- E : Phonebook Image: Data box
- Other icons

d call

Message Number of entries

Stock icon

Refer to respective pages for information on icons for the functions shown below.

- Videophone (P. 48)
- Redial/Received calls (2 P. 53 to P. 54) ToruCa (2 P. 272)
- Phonebook (127 P. 97 to P. 98)
- Message R/F (127 P. 206 to P. 208)
- Mail/SMS (P. 235 to P. 236)

Note

- microSD Memory Card is referred to as *microSD* or SD on the FOMA terminal. (P P. 316)
- Some of the screen shots in this manual have been modified or abbreviated.

Communities and a second secon

• The display for the FOMA terminal is manufactured using high-precision technology, but it may occasionally contain dots that fail to light or that remain permanently lit. This is not a malfunction.

Checking Notices with Stock Icon

Display messages such as xx missed call(s) or xx mail message(s) and stock icons when you miss a call or have a new mail. In stand-by, select stock icons to check notice details.

Stock icon

| lcon | Message | Details |
|------|---|---|
| 6 | xx missed call(s) | Appears when an incoming call is missed. Received calls list appears. (127 P. 70) |
| | xx mail message(s) | Appears when a new i-mode mail or SMS is received. Inbox folder list appears. (2 P. 229) |
| Ì | xx new ToruCa(s) | Appears when new ToruCa is received. ToruCa list appears. (@P. 271) |
| Ê | xx voice mail(s) | Appears when a new message is recorded at the Voice Mail Service center. The Voice Mail Service message confirmation screen appears. (17 P. 389) |
| Ħ | xx message(s) xx V.phone message(s) | Appears when there is a new Recorded message. Record message list appears and the message can be played. (127 P. 73) |
| MWND | Top menu | Top menu appears. (13 P. 32) |

When a stock icon appears in stand-by, press .

- When Zoom menu is selected, the displayed stock icon messages are partly changed.
 - Stock icons do not appear when playing i-motion set to stand-by or running i-αppli in stand-by.



Select a stock icon with : and press .

· Check notice details.

Al aloosed coll

After the details are checked, the stock icon and message disappear.

31 Operation guidance Received calls

Indicates the functions that can be used with kevs such as \blacksquare . \square . \blacksquare . \boxdot . \blacksquare and \square .

- - My picture of Data box (P. 297 to P. 298)
 - i-motion of Data box (2 P. 306 to P. 307)

Switching Between Displays

When Calendar is set in stand-by, press at to switch between the stand-by and the calendar. (CPP. 127)





• When the calendar is set to **1 month (Large)**, icons appear to the right of dates with schedule entries.

Stand-bv

Calendar (2 months down)

Menu Selections

Functions are set or registered after a menu appears.

- Menus can be displayed using the following methods.
 - Retrieve a function by entering a function number. (R P. 31)
 - Select a function starting from the Top menu. (12) P. 32)
 - Select a function from the Shortcut menu. (R P. 377)
 - Select a frequently used function displayed in large font. (Zoom menu) (C P. 33)
 - Select a function from the Submenu shown in guidance. (P. 34)
- This manual explains how to select menus based on the entry of function numbers.
- In the Top menu, the Shortcut menu, or the Zoom menu, press 🗐 [Menu] to switch menus. To show the menu previously used, press
 in stand-by.
- If i (MENU) and any of m. M. &. m. or m appears in stand-by, press . select i (MENU) with : and press .
- To reselect a function, press CLR and the previous screen reappears.

Retrieving a Function by Entering a Function Number

Functions can be retrieved quickly by entering a function number.

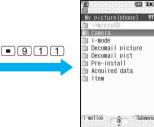
The first numbers in the function numbers are 1 through 8 for the setting menus, 91 for the Data box menu, 92 for the LifeKit and 93 for the Media tool menu.

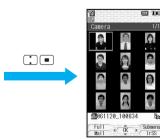
• Functions cannot be retrieved by entering function numbers from the Shortcut menu or the Zoom menu.

In stand-by, press (•), enter function numbers. Select a function using (•) and press (•).

Example: When retrieving My picture (main) using function number 911 to view the still pictures in Camera







Stand-bv

When My picture(Main) appears

When Camera appears

(III) (III)

Ω

Selecting Functions from the Top Menu

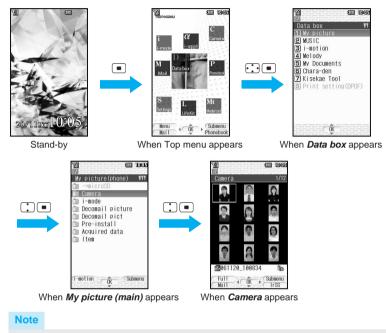
Use or set up functions categorized under nine menus.

(Refer to P. 418 to P. 425 when selecting menu and retrieving functions.)

• Icons can be changed. (Icon image settings @ P. 135)

In stand-by, press •, select a menu or an icon using 😳 and press •. Select a function using 🔅 and press •.

Example: When retrieving *My picture (main)* from the Top menu to view the still pictures in *Camera*



• Images on Top menu, i-mode menu or Mail menu screen can be changed. (127 P. 135, P. 137)

Selecting a Function from the Zoom Menu < Zoom Menu>

The Zoom menu displays frequently used functions enlarged. Use the Zoom menu to perform basic functions using an enlarged character display.

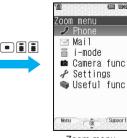
At the time of purchase, press • in stand-by and press • [Menu] twice to show the Zoom menu. Select a function using • and press •.

| Menu | Function | Screen | Ref. |
|--------|-------------------|--|--------|
| | View phonebook | Search phonebook | P. 107 |
| | Redial | Display one item | P. 52 |
| | Received calls | Display one item | P. 54 |
| Phone | Record message | Record/Play/ Function lock selection screen | P. 73 |
| | Add phonebook | Phonebook entry screen | P. 102 |
| | Own phone No | Own number screen | P. 46 |
| | Compose msg | Compose message screen | P. 220 |
| Mail | Receive msg | Check new messages | P. 231 |
| | All rcvd msg | Inbox | P. 235 |
| | All sent msg | Outbox | and |
| | All unsent msg | Unsent messages | P. 236 |
| | ិ Menu | iMenu | P. 188 |
| i-mode | All bookmarks | Bookmark list | P. 195 |
| I-mode | Screen memos | Screen memo list | P. 197 |
| | Last URL | Last URL screen | P. 189 |
| | Shoot picture | Still picture shooting screen | P. 171 |
| Camera | View picture | My picture (FOMA terminal handset) folder list of Data box | P. 296 |
| func | Shoot movie | Movie shooting screen | P. 173 |
| | View movie | i-motion (FOMA terminal handset) folder list of Data box | P. 304 |
| | Barcode reader | Bar code reader | P. 182 |

| Menu | Function | Screen | Ref. |
|----------|------------------|---|------------------|
| | Ring tone | Ring volume/Ring tone/Mail ring volume/Mail ring tone selection screen | P. 116 P. 119 |
| Settings | Stand-by disp | Stand-by display setting screen | P. 126 |
| | Talk time/cost | Talk time/cost confirmation screen | P. 381 |
| | Voice Mail | Voice Mail settings screen | P. 388 |
| | VoiceRec | Voice recorder | P. 335 |
| | Schedule | Calendar | P. 369 |
| Useful | Calculator | Calculator | P. 380 |
| func | BookReader | BookReader folder list | P. 344 |
| | Alarm | Alarm setting screen | P. 367 |
| | Text memo | Text memo list | P. 382 |

• When Zoom menu is selected, press 🗐, 🖾 and 🖂 in stand-by to show i-mode menu, Mail menu and Search phone book in Zoom menu.







Stand-by

- Zoom menu
- When Mail is selected
- \bullet When Top menu appears in the operation guidance, press $\fbox{}$ to show Top menu.
- Press 🖻 [Support] in Zoom menu to show Supportbook.

Selecting Functions from the Submenu

When guidance Submenu appears, press to show the functions (Submenu) that can be used in that screen.

Scroll through multiple pages in the Submenu with .

This manual explains how to select Submenus based on the entry of function numbers. However, some Submenus do not have function numbers. In such cases, select the function using : and press •.

(III) 190F

(1) or

 \Box

Example: When switching the image list to 20-part

Ô

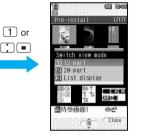




Submenu (Unavailable items cannot be selected.)



When My Picture setting is selected



When Switch view mode is selected



When 20-part is selected

Supportbook

Displaying the Supportbook

Supportbook (preset) is a simple operation guide on the FOMA terminal that uses BookReader. Use this function when unsure of operations. (P. 344)

For example, when composing a message with Multi Assistant, press with to use Supportbook (preset). (P P. 362)

- Useful tips and functions are explained to allow for rapid comprehension.
- Directly start functions that were looked up in Supportbook.

Example: When checking own address

In stand-by, press \mathbb{W} , select $\square \times - \mathcal{V}$ (Mail) and press \square .

• Alternatively, press [10] [Support] in the Zoom menu to show Supportbook.







A description appears below the title.

| Q 検索機 | 尡 |
|---|----------|
| 自分のアドレス確認 | FJ DA |
| < 使用シーン> < (使用シーン> < (他人に自分のアドレスをルえるとき、自分のメール ドレスを躍認したいとき と、カンタンに確認でき ゴ ゴ < コ < マット < マット < マット < マット | アなま、 |

Details screen

Related Operations

Start functions from Supportbook

In the Supportbook details screen, select the function to start **•** • **• • • • • •**.

Note

• Functions cannot be started from Supportbook when functions other than Supportbook are used simultaneously.

FOMA Card

Using a FOMA Card

A FOMA card is an IC card that records personal information, such as phone numbers. A FOMA card can store phonebook data and SMS. By switching FOMA cards, multiple FOMA terminals can be used for different purposes as needed.

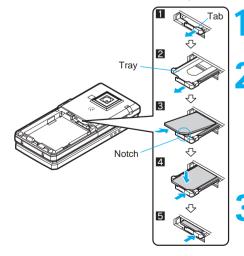
 If a FOMA card is not inserted, voice/Videophone calls, PushTalk transmission, i-mode, i-Channel, i-mode mail and SMS transmission, Message R/F reception and data transmission are not available on the FOMA terminal.

Inserting and Removing a FOMA Card

Refer to step 1 of "Turning the Power Off" on P. 43 to turn off the power, position the back facing upwards and remove the battery pack. Then insert or remove the FOMA card.

Inserting

Close and hold the FOMA terminal with your both hands when inserting the FOMA card.

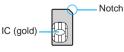


Hook a finger on the tab (11) and pull the tray out (22).

• Pull out the tray straight out until it clicks.

Hold the FOMA card with the IC facing down, put on the tray (3) and set (4).

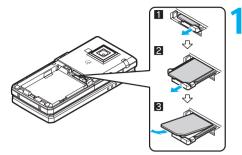
• Fit the notch of the FOMA card to that of the tray.



Push the tray all the way in (5).

Removing

Close and hold the FOMA terminal with your both hands when removing the FOMA card.



Hook a finger on the tab (1), pull the guide out (2) and remove the FOMA card (3).

• Do not allow the FOMA card to fall when removing it.

Note

- Inserting or removing the FOMA card forcibly may damage the card or deform the tray. Use caution.
- Refer to the FOMA card user's guide for more information on the FOMA card.
- If the FOMA card is inserted into another i-Channel supported terminal, i-Channel tickers do not appear. The i-Channel tickers are automatically shown when the latest information is received or the channel list is shown.
- Do not misplace the FOMA card once it is taken out.
- The FOMA terminal power may turn off if the IC area of the FOMA card is dirty.
- When the tray falls off, slide the tray in straight along the guide rail.

FOMA Card Security Codes

The FOMA card has a **PIN1 code** and a **PIN2 code**.

Both are set to 0000 by default but can be changed to a four- to eight-digit number by the user. (CPP. 150)

FOMA Card Restriction Functions <FOMA Card Restriction Functions>

The FOMA card has built-in restriction functions as security functions for protecting personal data and files.

- When the FOMA card is inserted into the FOMA terminal and data or files are retrieved using any of the following methods or when an i-appli is running, FOMA card restriction functions are automatically set in the retrieved data or files.
 - When a file such as an image, melody or PDF is downloaded from a site or Internet web page
 - When a site or Internet web page is saved as a screen memo (except screen memos that do not include images)
 - When i-mode mail with a file attached is received
 - When an i-αppli is running
- Data, files or software with FOMA card restriction functions run only when in use with the FOMA card inserted at time of acquisition. Display, play, attach to i-mode mail, run software, send data using Ir function and copy to microSD Memory Card can be executed.
- The following indicates the data for which FOMA card restriction is set.
 - Image in Deco-mail
- Chara-den Videophone picture memo
- File attached to i-mode mail
- Image or melody
- Screen memo
- Image in Message R/F
- Kisekae Tool • The following indicates the settings saved in FOMA card.
 - Own number SMS center
- PIN setting Language
- SMS expirv

i-αppli

i-motion

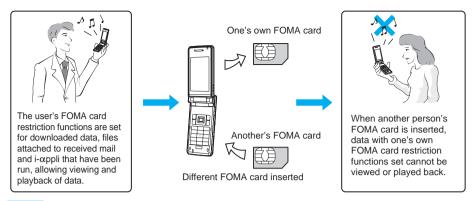
SSL certificates

Download dictionary

 The above operations cannot be performed if the FOMA card inserted at time of data/file retrieval or i-αppli startup is replaced with a different FOMA card.

Explanation that follows refers to the FOMA card inserted at time of data/files retrieval as "one's own FOMA card" and other FOMA cards as "another's FOMA card".

Before Using the FOMA Terminal 36



Note

- When one's own FOMA card is replaced with another's FOMA card, the data or files for which FOMA card restriction functions are set cannot be set as stand-by displays or ring tones.
- When a FOMA card is replaced with a different FOMA card, FOMA card restriction functions are activated and if data or file retrieved from a site is set as the stand-by display or ring tone, the setting is reset to the default. When one's own FOMA card is re-inserted, the setting returns.
 Example: When setting *Melody A*, for which FOMA card restriction functions are set, as a ring tone

When one's own FOMA card is taken out or is replaced with another's FOMA card, ring tone returns to default setting. When one's own FOMA card is put back, the ring tone returns to **Melody A**.

- FOMA card restrictions functions cannot be set for data received using Ir exchange or data transmission functions, and still pictures, Continuous mode images, or movies shot with the FOMA terminal.
- It is possible to move or delete data or files for which FOMA card restriction functions are set even when another's FOMA card is inserted.
- Running i-αppli by selecting highlighted text in i-mode mail display screen cannot be performed or retrieved when FOMA card restriction functions are set.
- If the FOMA card is replaced with another person's after i-αppli stand-by is set, the set i-αppli cannot be activated in stand-by, and the image set in stand-by display settings appears.

Differences in FOMA Card Functions

Note the following differences between FOMA card (blue) and FOMA card (green) used on the FOMA terminal.

| Function | FOMA card (blue) | FOMA card (green) | Reference |
|--|------------------|-------------------|-----------|
| Number of phone number digits available in the FOMA card phonebook | Up to 20 digits | Up to 26 digits | P. 103 |
| Client certificate operations for FirstPass | Not available | Available | P. 209 |
| Use of WORLD WING | Not available | Available | P. 412 |
| Service number | Not available | Available | P. 394 |

WORLD WING is a DoCoMo FOMA international roaming service that makes it possible to use the mobile phone number registered in Japan to make and receive calls while abroad. Use the FOMA card (green) together with a supported FOMA terminal to enjoy this service.

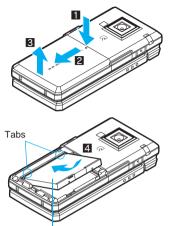
Note that the use of SH903i is limited to DoCoMo's 3G roaming service area. To use this service in GSM service area, prepare a GSM supported terminal.

Inserting and Removing the Battery Pack

Use the battery pack SH09 exclusive to the FOMA terminal.

Inserting the battery pack

Close and hold the FOMA terminal in your both hands before removing.



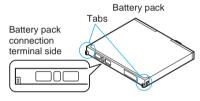
Lightly press back cover in the direction of the arrow (1) and slide approximately two mm (2).

2 Lift the back cover in the direction of the arrow (3) and remove it.



Insert the battery pack (4).

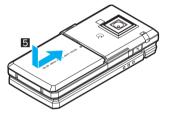
• The battery pack has tabs that make it easy to insert. Insert the battery pack with character side as the product name (SH09) facing up.



Reattach the back cover (5).

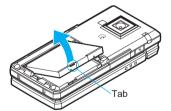
• Position the handset and the back cover as shown in the illustration and then press the back cover and slide into place.

Character side as the product name, SH09 facing up



Removing the battery pack

Turn the power off, close and hold the FOMA terminal in your both hands before removing.



Follow steps 1 and 2 of "Inserting the battery pack" on P. 38 to remove the back cover.

Remove the battery pack.

• The battery pack has a tab that makes it easy to remove. Press the tab with your fingers without placing too much force. Lift the battery pack to remove.

Note

- Using unnecessary force when inserting or removing the battery pack may damage the battery pack and connection terminal (charger terminal) on the FOMA terminal.
- Refer to the battery pack SH09 user's guide for details.
- Firmly close the back cover. If not closed firmly, the back cover may come off and the battery pack may fall out due to vibration.
- If the battery pack connection terminal side or FOMA terminal battery pack (charger terminal) is dirty, the FOMA terminal power may turn off. Additionally, the battery may not be sufficiently recharged. Wipe off any dirt with a dry cloth or cotton swab.

38 Before Using the FOMA Terminal

When using the battery pack for the first time or after replacing it, battery pack must be charged. Battery
pack is not fully charged at the time of purchase.

Charging the Mobile Phone

Cautions When Charging

The battery pack is not fully charged at the time of purchase. Be sure to charge the battery using the exclusive AC or DC adapter (sold separately) before use.

Estimated charge times and LED display

The following figures are estimated times for charging an empty battery pack with the FOMA terminal turned off.

| Charger name | Charge time |
|--------------------|-------------|
| FOMA AC Adapter 01 | 110 minutes |
| FOMA DC Adapter 01 | 110 minutes |

• Charging LED illuminates in red when charging and turn off when charging is completed.

- Check that the battery pack has been properly inserted when charging LED flashes red. The LED also flashes red when the battery pack has reached the end of its service life.
- The battery pack can also be charged with the FOMA terminal turned on. (The the on the display flashes during charging.)

When charging is complete, charging LED turns off and the the display changes to E.

 When the battery becomes warm, charging may automatically stop even if the battery has not been fully charged. Charging resumes after the temperature lowers to an appropriate temperature. While charging is stopped, charging LED turns off and battery icon on the display lights.

Estimated times of use when fully charged

| Criteria | Battery pack SH09 |
|-------------------------------------|---|
| Continuous stand-by time | 520 hours (at rest)/400 hours (when mobile) |
| Continuous talk (transmission) time | 140 minutes (voice call)/90 minutes (Videophone call) |

- Continuous talk time is estimated as the usage time at normal transmission signal strength, and continuous stand-by time is estimated as the usage time while moving with the FOMA terminal closed at normal signal strength. Talk and stand-by times may be reduced by about half depending on conditions including battery level status, stand-by display and Power saver mode settings, temperature and other environmental conditions, and signal strength (no signal or weak signal). Using i-mode reduces talk (transmission) and stand-by times. When i-Channel is subscribed, information is automatically received and updated. Talk (transmission) time and stand-by time will be reduced. Even if you do not make calls or use i-mode, if you shoot and edit images, compose i-mode mail, use a downloaded i-αppli, set a downloaded i-αppli as the stand-by display and AV output, and use SD-Audio or Music player, talk (transmission) and stand-by times will be reduced. Some i-αppli software may continue transmission even after downloading. To avoid this, set not to connect in advance.
- The actual usage time is a combination of stand-by time and talk time, and the longer the call duration, the shorter the stand-by time becomes.

Battery pack service life

- When the usage time of the battery pack is reduced to about half that of a new battery pack, consider this to be the end of the service life.
- The estimated service life for a battery pack is about one year. However, the service life may be shorter depending on the frequency of use.



 To protect the environment, return used batteries to NTT DoCoMo, any DoCoMo retailer, or a recycling agency.

Cautions when charging

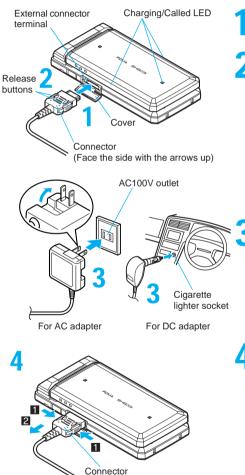
- Do not charge for long periods of time with the power left on. If the FOMA terminal is left on after charging is complete, the battery pack charge decreases.
 In such cases, the AC or DC adapter charges the battery again. However, depending on when the FOMA terminal is disconnected from the AC or DC adapter, the battery charge level may be low, the battery alert tone may sound, or the battery may only be usable for a short time.
- When the battery is empty and terminal is recharging, charging LED may not illuminate immediately.
- If the alert tone sounds and the power cannot be turned on, charge the battery for a while.

- If the battery empty alert is displayed and charging begins within 60 seconds of the alert tone, the status returns to normal.
- While charging, terminal may not turn on even when charging LED is illuminated in red. Charge longer and try turning power on again.
- Frequently recharging the battery when power is still remaining enough may shorten the life of the battery pack. It is recommended to use the battery to a certain level before recharging.
- The battery pack cannot be charged by itself.
- Avoid using features such as i-αppli while charging as this will lengthen charge time and may lessen the battery's service life.

Charging Using the AC Adapter/DC Adapter

[Read "FOMA AC adapter 01 (sold separately)/FOMA DC adapter 01 (sold separately) user's guide" carefully.]

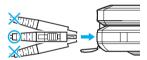
• Battery pack can be charged with FOMA terminal open and in viewer position.



(Face the side with the arrows up)

Open the external connector terminal cover.

- Check the direction (see diagram) of the AC or DC adapter connector and insert horizontally into the external connector terminal.
 - Check the direction of the connector, keep it parallel with the FOMA terminal and firmly push all the way in until it clicks.



For an AC adapter, lift the plug and insert into an AC 100V outlet. For a DC adapter, plug into a car cigarette lighter socket.

- Charge start sound is heard and charging LED illuminate in red. When a call is received while charging, the call is notified with set called LED color.
- When Charge end sound is heard and charging LED turns off, charging is complete.
 - When removing the connector, always hold the release buttons on both sides (1) and unplug it by pulling out horizontally (2). Pull by force may cause a malfunction.
 After removing the connecter, close the external connector terminal cover.
 - Pull the adapter out of the outlet or cigarette lighter socket if it will not be used for a long time.

Note

- Check the direction and angle (see diagram) of connector, such as an AC adapter, and connect carefully without
 using unnecessary force. Do not forcibly insert or remove. May cause damage to the external connector terminal.
- Do not forcefully pull the rubber covers on the external connector terminal. May damage the cover.
- Do not place objects near the FOMA terminal when charging. The FOMA terminal may be damaged. In addition, a display may be damaged when charged in the viewer position.

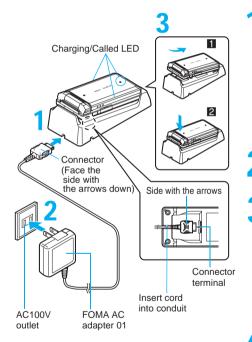
When using a DC adapter

- Do not use with the car engine shut off. May drain the car battery.
- The DC adapter and in-car adapter should only be used in negative grounded vehicles. (DC 12V and 24V)
- The DC adapter power is interlocked with the car ignition switch, but the interlock may not work with some vehicles. Make sure that the power is turned off before leaving the car.
- Note that even if the FOMA terminal is turned on, turning off the ignition or pulling the DC adapter out of the cigarette lighter socket will turn the FOMA off. To make a call or stay in stand-by, first disconnect the connector from the FOMA terminal.
- The DC adapter fuse (2A) is a consumable. For replacement, purchase a new fuse at a local automobile supply shop.

Charging Using the Desktop Holder

[Read "Desktop holder SH11 (sold separately) user's guide" carefully.]

• Battery pack can be charged with FOMA terminal open and in viewer position.



Face the side with the arrows of the AC adapter connector down and insert it into the connector terminal of the desktop holder.

- Keeping the connector parallel with the desktop holder, firmly push it all the way in until it clicks.
- The connection port for the desktop holder is on the back.

Lift the AC adapter plug and insert into an AC 100V outlet.

Place the FOMA terminal into the desktop holder.

- Place the FOMA terminal as shown in 1 on the left, and push in the direction of the arrow shown in 2 until it clicks.
- Charge start sound is heard and Charging LED illuminates in red. When a call is received while charging, the call is notified with set called LED color.

When Charge end sound is heard and charging LED turns off, charging is complete.

- Hold the desktop holder and lift the FOMA terminal out.
- Pull the AC adapter out of the outlet when left unused for a long period of time.

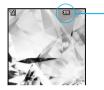
Note

- When Charge start sound is not heard (except when Charge start sound is set to Silent, Manner mode is set or when terminal is turned off) or when charging LED do not illuminate, check that the FOMA terminal is placed securely in the desktop holder.
- When placing the FOMA terminal in the desktop holder, be careful that the strap is not caught in between the handset and the desktop holder.

Battery Level

How to Check the Battery Level

Check the approximate battery level in the display.



- Eattery level is still sufficient.
- Eattery level is low.
- E: Battery is almost empty. Charge the battery.
- Eattery is empty. (Power will turn off soon.)
- Cal: Battery pack is being charged.
- When icons have been changed (P. 134), the above icons may differ.

Checking the Battery Level with Sound and Display

In stand-by, press \bigcirc 313.

- Graphic for battery level appears. (A different sound is heard for each battery level.)
- The battery level sound is heard at the volume set in Key/Standby i-motion. (PP. 120)
- Wait approximately two seconds or press CLR and the previous menu reappears.

| Graphic | | | |
|---------|-------------------------------|-------------------------|---|
| Sound | Three beeps | Two beeps | One beep |
| Status | Battery is sufficiently full. | Battery is running low. | Battery is almost empty. Charge the battery. |

If the Battery Runs Out

Battery empty. Unsaved data will be lost. Ending current operation

appears approximately 80 seconds before battery becomes empty. (Press

to clear the message.)



After approximately 20 seconds, an alert tone sounds. The screen on the right

appears, handset operations are disabled and power turns off after approximately 60 seconds.
During a voice/Videophone call, the alert tone sounds and Battery empty. Unsaved data will be lost.

- **Ending current operation** appears. The call is disconnected after approximately 20 seconds. At the same time, the screen above appears and after approximately 60 seconds, the power turns off.
- Alert tone does not sound when Manner mode or Public mode (Drive mode) is set. (Alert tone sounds during a call.)
- When (a) is pressed during a call, the call is disconnected. Turn off the power and recharge the battery.

Turning the Power On and Off

Turning the Power On

- Before turning the power on, check that the FOMA card is properly inserted. (17 P. 35)
- If the FOMA card is not inserted, Insert UIM and a FOMA card error appears. (IPP. 29)

Press (Power) for 2+ seconds.

| Auto | time cor | rection |
|------|----------|-----------|
| Date | | ON |
| | 2006/ | 11/20(Mon |
| Time | | 10:0 |

- The wakeup screen appears followed by the initial settings screen. Proceed to initial settings (IPP P. 44). If initial settings are not yet completed, the setting screen appears every time the power is turned on.
- If initial settings have been completed, the screen shown on the right appears when power is turned on. This screen is called the *stand-by display*.
- When *Enter PIN1 code* appears, enter the PIN1 code (CPP. 150).
- When We (Out of service area) appears, the handset is outside the service area or in a place with no signal. Move to a place where the icon disappears.



Stand-by screen

Note

• When a FOMA card is replaced with a new card, the terminal security code (four to eight digits) must be entered after turning on the terminal. If a correct terminal security code is entered, stand-by display appears. When a wrong terminal security code is entered five times, the power is turned off. (However, turning on the power again is possible.)

Turning the Power Off

1

Press (Power) for 2+ seconds.

 It may take some time for the power to be turned off. (The end screen appears on the display until the power is turned off.)

Note

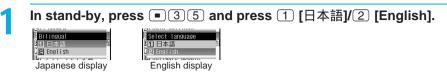
• Before connecting to an external device, make sure that all transmissions are complete and then turn off the FOMA terminal.

Select Language

Switching Display to English

Default setting 日本語

Switch display language between Japanese and English for functions, messages, and menu items.



Note

 If a FOMA card is inserted, settings are saved to the card. Select language settings are saved to FOMA terminal handset and inserted FOMA card. When each setting varies, the setting in FOMA card is prioritized.

Initial Settings

Making the Initial Settings

The initial settings screen appears automatically when the power is turned on for the first time. Each setting item can also be set from Menu. (When the initial settings are complete, the stand-by display appears.)

Date and time settings

- settings Change terminal security code
- PushTalk caller ID setting
 GPS location request
- Sof
- Key/Standby i-motionSoftware update
- When items that have not been set remain, the setting screen appears every time the power is turned on.

Set the date and time. (12 P. 45)

- In stand-by, press 8 to perform initial settings.
- Set date and time from 00:00 January 1, 2001 to 23:59 December 31, 2050.

Register a terminal security code. (P P. 147)

• The default setting is 0000.

Set the Key/Standby i-motion. (P. 120)

To sound the Keypad/Standby i-motion1To make the Keypad/Standby i-motion silent2



Set PushTalk caller ID. (P. 93)

• Select Send ID or No ID for PushTalk caller ID and press .

Set GPS Location provision ON/OFF. (283)

• Select *ON/OFF* and press •.

Set software update confirmation. (P P. 452)

- Select Yes and press •.
- Software update starts and checks to see if Software update is necessary.

Note

Canceling the initial settings

Press while setting. Date settings are set even if canceled.

Setting the Date and Time

Default setting Auto time correction: ON

Set the date and time on the FOMA terminal. Set to automatically correct the date and time.

• For overseas use, the settings are automatically corrected to the local date and time.

In stand-by, press • 3 4.

| Auto | time correcti | on ON - |
|------|---------------|------------|
| Date | 2006/11/20 | (Mon) |
| Time | | |

- When Limit settings is set to *Enable*, terminal security code is required to set date and time.
- Times appear in 24-hour format.

2

Select Auto time correction, press •, and select ON or OFF.

| To automatically correct date and time | Select $ON \to \blacksquare \to \blacksquare$ |
|--|---|
| To enter date and time | Select $OFF \rightarrow \bullet \rightarrow Date \rightarrow \bullet \rightarrow enter date \rightarrow \bullet \rightarrow Time \rightarrow \bullet \rightarrow enter time \rightarrow \bullet \rightarrow \bullet $ |
| | Alternatively, select numbers with If you make a mistake, move the cursor using and re-enter. |

Note

- The date and time that are set are saved even if the battery pack is removed, but if the battery pack remains removed for approximately two weeks or more or the battery remains empty, the settings may be reset. When this happens, set again after charging the battery.
- If the date and time are not set correctly, dates are not correctly recorded for Redial, Received calls, Record message (voice/Videophone calls), and camera image titles/shooting date. In addition, functions that use the clock, such as Auto power ON/OFF, Alarm, Schedule, SSL (authentication), i-αppli Auto start or starting i-αppliDX cannot be used properly.
- When setting reset notification for Limit settings and the date is set to the following month or later, **Reset** *time passed* appears in stand-by.

When Auto time correction is set to ON

- The FOMA automatically adjusts the time by connecting to the DoCoMo network's time information.
- When Auto time correction is set to ON, the time is sometimes not adjusted for a while. To activate Auto time correction, turn off FOMA terminal power and restart.
- Time is not adjusted depending on the signal status.
- Time may be off by a few seconds.
- When time correction information is received during overseas use, a message appears notifying that the corrected time is different from the previously received time if different. Select Yes and press
 ot start correcting time difference. Select No and press
 to not start correcting time difference. To correct time difference after selecting No, turn off the FOMA terminal power and restart.
- When time difference is adjusted overseas, the local time and date appear in **Redial**, **Received calls**, **Received messages histories** (excluding i-mode mail) and Received messages list, and **®** appears. The received messages are not displayed in order of the displayed time and date but the mail reception.
- If the date order display is set for the Outbox or Unsent messages, sent messages are saved in the order of sending.
- Time correction may not be performed depending on the overseas network.
- When Auto time correction is set to ON and time correction information is being received from an overseas network during overseas use, Japan time and local time appear (dual display). When Auto time correction is set to OFF, only manually set time appears.
- A time correction confirmation screen may appear after returning to Japan. Select **Yes** and press to start correcting time difference. Select **No** and press to not start correcting time difference. To retrieve Japan time after selecting **No**, turn off the FOMA terminal power and restart.

Sending Your Own Phone Number to the Other Party

Default setting Do not notify

Display your number (caller ID) on the other party's phone (display) when making a voice/ Videophone call.

- Handset number (caller ID) is important personal information. Be very careful about your caller ID setting.
- The Notify caller ID function is available only on compatible phone devices.

Set whether or not to send your caller ID using the methods below.

| | Method | Notify caller ID | Do not notify caller ID |
|-------------------------|--|------------------|-------------------------|
| To set up in advance | In stand-by, press •452 and enter the network security code (P P. 146) | Set to Yes | Set to No |
| To set up when | Add 186 or 184 before a phone number | Add 186 | Add 184 |
| making a call | Enter the phone number and select from the Submenu (\mathfrak{P} P. 57) | 021 | 022 |

- Notify caller ID cannot be set while I appears on the screen.
- To check the Notify caller ID setting, press •451 [Status request] in stand-by.
- Specifications made when making a call take priority over the Notify caller ID setting. If no specifications are made when a call is made, the Notify caller ID setting is followed.
- The method for making specifications when making a voice call is enabled for PushTalk. However, specifications are not made by adding 186 or 184. Refer to P. 93 for details on setting Notify caller ID for PushTalk.

Own Number

Own number

Checking Your Phone Number

In stand-by, press •0.

- If during a voice call, press 24. If during a Videophone call, press 1.
 - While Function lock is applied to phonebook, enter terminal security code and press •.
 - Refer to P. 379 for details on confirming, saving or changing owner information.

090xxxxxxx

Own number screen

Phone/Videophone

Making Calls/Videophone Calls

| | g Videophone |
|---|---|
| Mak | ng Calls/Videophone Calls |
| Swit | ching Between Voice Call and Videophone |
| | g Redial and Received Calls |
| | ng Chaku-moji |
| | ng Caller ID to Send/Not Send for a Single Call <send caller="" id="" no="" no.="" own="">57</send> |
| | ling Touch-tone Signals with Simple Operations |
| | ng International Calls |
| | ng International Call |
| | ng a First Number to Phone Numbers |
| | ng Calls with Sub Address Set |
| | onnecting Disconnected Calls Automatically |
| | ucing Noise Interference to Hear Calls Clearly |
| | g Handset in a Car |
| | wering Calls/Videophone Calls |
| | vering Calls/Videophone Calls |
| | ching Between Voice Call and Videophone to Receive Calls |
| | vering Calls by Pressing Any Key |
| | ing the FOMA Terminal to End/Hold Calls |
| | sting the Volume During a Call |
| | n Calls/Videophone Calls Cannot Be Answered/Could Not Be Answered |
| | |
| | • |
| Place | ng Calls On Hold |
| PlaceSetting | ng Calls On Hold |
| PlacSettSett | ng Calls On Hold |
| Plac Setti Setti Usin | ng Calls On Hold |
| Place Setti Setti Usin Usin | ng Calls On Hold |
| Plac Setti Setti Usin Usin Che | ng Calls On Hold |
| Place Setti Setti Usini Usini Che Reco | ng Calls On Hold |
| Plac Setti Setti Usin Usin Che Reconstruction | ng Calls On Hold |
| Place Setti Setti Usine Usine Chee Reconstruction Reconstruction Reconstruction | ng Calls On Hold |
| Plac Setti Setti Usini Usini Che Reccional Play | ng Calls On Hold |
| Plac Setti Setti Usin Usin Che Recc Play Cha | ng Calls On Hold |
| Place Setti Setti Usin Usin Che Reconstruction Play Cha Setti | ng Calls On Hold |
| Place Setti Setti Usin Usin Che Reconstruction Play Cha Setti Setti | ng Calls On Hold |
| Place Setti Setti Usini Che Reccional Play Cha Setti Setti Setti | ng Calls On Hold |
| Place Setti Setti Usini Che Reccional Play Cha Setti Setti Cha | ng Calls On Hold |
| Place Setti Setti Usin Che Recc Play Cha Setti Setti Cha Setti Cha Setti | ng Calls On Hold |
| Place Setti Setti Usin Che Recc Play Cha Setti Setti Cha Setti Setti<td>ng Calls On Hold</td> | ng Calls On Hold |
| Place Sett Sett Usin Che Recc Play Cha Sett | ng Calls On Hold |

Using Videophone

Make calls while viewing each other's image.

- Videophone transmits at 64K (kbps) or 32K (kbps).
- Connection charges for digital transmissions are the same whether transmission speed is 64K or 32K.
- Send a Chara-den or still picture as substitute image to the other party instead of images shot with your camera and make or receive calls. (RPP. 74. P. 77)
- Digital transmission fees are incurred even when a Chara-den or still picture is sent/received as substitute image in place of a camera image of oneself.
- Videophone images can be displayed on a TV screen. (PP P. 352)
- Make international Videophone calls using "WORLD CALL". DoCoMo's international telephone service. (
- Videophone communication is available only between terminals compatible with DoCoMo Videophone.
- DoCoMo Videophones comply with 3G-324M*1, as defined by the international 3GPP*2 standard. Connection is not available with Videophones using other standards.
- *1 3G-324M: International standard for Videophone systems for third-generation mobile Videophones.
- *2 3GPP (3rd-Generation Partnership Project): A regional standardization organization to establish the common technical specifications for third-generation mobile telecommunication systems (IMT-2000).

Viewing the Screen During Videophone Calls



• The screen shown is only example. Actual screen may differ.

- Main screen: Other party's camera image (default)
- 2 Sub screen: Your camera image (default)
- 3 Appears during Videophone call
 - Appears when transmission speed is 64K.
 - : Appears when transmission speed is 32K.
- 4 Brightness of your camera image: 6 En l ы ±0 +2 -1
- 5 Send image icon
 - Appears while sending camera image.
 - Appears while sending still picture as substitute image.
 - Appears while sending an image from My picture of Data box.
 - III : Appears while pausing camera image.
 - E : Appears while sending Chara-den in Full action mode.
 - : Appears while sending Chara-den in Part action mode.
- 6 Hands-free icon
 - (red) : Hands-free in progress
 - (green) : USB hands-free in progress
- 7 Receive image icon
- Appears when shooting and saving images of the other party.
- 8 Call duration: Displays up to 9 hours 59 minutes 59 seconds. If it exceeds 9:59:59, the counter restarts from 0:00.
- Earpiece volume icon: 1 (Volume 1) to 1 (Volume 10)
- III Hands-free icon
- 🖸 (red) : Hands-free in progress 🛛 🖾 (green) : USB hands-free in progress 11 DTMF mode icon
 - 🛯 : ON
 - 🔤 : OFF

Note

 The display brightness during a Videophone call follows the setting of User set in Power saver set. When Videophone in **Display light time** is set to **Same as normal**, the brightness is adjusted to the setting of Brightness. When **ON** is set, the brightness is adjusted to Brightness 2.

Making Calls/Videophone Calls

Check that there are sufficient battery and signal strength.

- When B appears, the handset is outside the service area or in a place with no signal. Move to a place where the icon disappears.
- Calls may be interrupted even when the signal is strong (appears) and you are not moving.
- To talk while viewing each other's image during a Videophone call, use the flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (sold separately) (2 P. 383) or use Hands-free (2 P. 79). The default setting is ON for Hands-free V.phone. Hands-free is available when the call starts.

48 Phone/Videophone

In stand-by, dial the phone number starting with the area code.

Always dial the area code, even when the number is in the same area.

| | ium | o to | Quick Sche | dul | |
|---|------|------|---------------|-----|--|
| | Calo | cula | tor e | etc | |
| _ | ouri | | | | |
| | | | | | |
| | | | | | |
| | | | | | |
| | | | | | |
| | | | | | |

| | Enter other party's number (090-XXXX-XXXX, 080-XXXX-XXXX) (11 digits). |
|-----|---|
| PHS | Enter other party's number (070-XXXX-XXXX) (11 digits). |
| | |

 Enter up to 80 digits for phone number. When the number exceeds 13 digits, it appears on two lines. When the number exceeds 26 digits, the last 26 digits appear in two lines.

090XXXXXXXX

- When a mistake is made while dialing, press CLR to erase the last digit. Press CLR for 1+ seconds to delete all digits and stand-by reappears.
- Refer to P. 58 when making an international call.

Press () [Phone]/ [[V.phone].

- Outgoing calls of Videophone
- Dialing videophone

Docomo Taro

090XXXXXXXXX When name and still picture are saved in the phonebook

- Unlike ordinary telephones, mobile phones send call tones in short beeps before the standard ring tone.
- Phone number and name appear if saved in phonebook. Image also appears if set in advance.
- When the other party is busy, there is a busy signal. Press (a) to disconnect and try again later.
- When a guidance message plays requesting the caller ID, the other party has set Caller ID Request to Activate. Set the caller ID and make a call again. (CTP. 46, P. 57)

Voice calls

- Calling appears while calling.
- 🖻 appears in the upper part of the display during a call.
- Videophone calls
- Dialing videophone appears while dialing.
- Refer to "Viewing the Screen During Videophone Calls" on P. 48 for view types during a Videophone call.

Talk when the other party answers the phone.

Videophone

Connected to videophon press 🐔 key to

45 u(⇔ ON • Press 2 during a voice call and 2 during a Videophone call to view your phone number.

Videophone calls

• The following operations are available during a Videophone call.

| To send a substitut Videophone call | te image during a | The still picture or Chara-den set as substitute image appears. (2 P. 77) |
|--|-------------------------------|---|
| To send touch-tone signals | While sending camera image | Enter numbers to send |
| <dtmf mode=""></dtmf> | While sending Chara-den | $\textcircled{0}7 \rightarrow \textcircled{1} \rightarrow \text{enter numbers to send}$ |

Press 🕿 to end the call.

Note

- During a call, approximate call duration appears on the screen. When the call duration exceeds 9:59:59, the display resets to 0:00.
- The FOMA terminal may become warm after continuous use. This is not a malfunction.
- Do not cover the internal antenna area when making a call.
- Close operation is followed if the handset is switched to the viewer position during a call.

Voice calls

 Calls can be made even when steps 1 and 2 are reversed. If no operations are performed for five seconds after dialing, the call is made.

Note

Videophone calls

- Videophone calls cannot be made to emergency numbers (110, 119, and 118) from the FOMA terminal.
- When the other party answers, **Connected to videophone press Solution key to enable/disable hands-free** appears. Digital transmission fees are incurred from this point.
- Videophone call is not connected when placed to an unsupported handset. If Redial voice call is set to ON, the number is automatically redialed as a voice call. In such cases, voice call charges are incurred. Note that this operation may not work if a call is placed to an ISDN synchronous 64K, PIAFS access point or an ISDN Videophone that does not support the 3G-324M standard (PP P. 48) (as of October 2006), or if an invalid phone number is dialed by mistake. In addition, charges may be incurred.
- It is recommended that 64K transmission speed be used when making Videophone calls to compatible FOMA terminals. Use 32K transmission for connecting to devices such as PHS phones that cannot use 64K due to network conditions. (127 P. 81) If a 64K Videophone call is made to a 32K area, transmission speed is automatically switched to 32K and redialed.

| Set speed when dialing | Redial voice call | Dialing order |
|------------------------|-------------------|--|
| 64K | ON | $64K \rightarrow 32K \rightarrow voice call$ |
| 04K | OFF | $64K \rightarrow 32K$ |
| 32K | ON | $32K \rightarrow \text{voice call}$ |
| 52K | OFF | 32K |

- When sending own image from a location with little light, noise such as white lines increase. Also, direct sunlight or strong light from lamps may darken or distort images. Use Videophone under suitable lighting conditions.
- If Call waiting is subscribed to, the number is recorded in Received calls and *xx missed call(s)* appears in stand-by when a voice/Videophone call is received during a Videophone call.
- During a Videophone call, i-mode mail and Message R/F are held at the i-mode center. After a Videophone call, i-mode mail or Message R/F held at the i-mode center can be retrieved by performing Check new message. However, SMS are received automatically even during Videophone calls.
- When the sending/receiving of audio or video fails, the Videophone call is not automatically restored. Make the Videophone call again.
- When a Videophone call is started, Redial voice call is not performed.
- Videophone calls are counted toward V.phone talk time. (P. 381)
- Voice calls or i-mode operations cannot be performed during a Videophone call.
- When connected, the earphone/microphone is used for a call, regardless of Hands-free V.phone.

When the Videophone call does not connect

• When the Videophone call does not connect, a message explaining the reason appears. The other party's actual conditions may vary depending upon the type of phone and network service subscriptions.

| Message | Reason | |
|--|---|--|
| Check number, then redial | A call is made to unused phone number. | |
| Busy | The other party is engaged in a call.* | |
| Your call is being forwarded | The other party's handset is set to forward Videophone calls. | |
| Out of service area/power off | The other party is outside the service area, or their mobile phone is turned off. | |
| Set Caller ID to ON | Connected without notifying caller ID. (When calling V-Live or visualnet.) | |
| Redial using voice call | The other party's handset is set to the Call forwarding service and the forwarding destination does not support Videophone. | |
| Busy with packet transmission | The other party is performing a packet transmission. | |
| Connection failed | Appears in cases other than those listed above. | |
| Upper limit has been exceeded. Connection failed | Upper limit that has been set by payment plans with limit function (Type Limit or Family Wide Limit) has been exceeded. | |
| Please make your call from the i-mode web page | A Videophone call is directly made to the V-Live which should be accessed after connecting to i-mode. Access a site run by the contents provider and view it by making a Videophone call from the link. | |

The message may appear during a packet transmission depending on the other party's terminal.

Related Operations

Use hands-free <Hands-free>

During a voice call, press 🕥 for 1+ seconds.

During a Videophone call, press 🕥.

- To disable during a voice call: Press 🕥 for 1+ seconds.
- To disable during a Videophone call: Press <a>.

Place calls on hold <Hold active call>

- 1 During a call, press **1**.
 - Alternatively, press for a Videophone call.
- 2 To resume voice call, press . To resume Videophone call, press . .
 - For Videophone, press to send a substitute image and answer the call.

Select Multi number and make a call <Sel Multi number>

- 1 In stand-by, enter a phone number \triangleright (a) (4).
- 2 Select Multi number ▶ ▶ ≤ [Phone]/ [[V.phone].

Note

Using Hands-free

- Appears during hands-free operation.
- Speak from 20 to 40 cm away from the mouthpiece. When the surroundings are noisy, sound may break up and the call may not be satisfactory.
- When using Hands-free outdoors or in a location where surroundings are noisy, use the flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (sold separately).
- Cannot be operated when receiving a call.
- Increasing earpiece volume may make conversation difficult. In such cases, press , and lower the volume.
- Hands-free is disabled when a call ends.

Hold

- The hold tone plays through the speaker. Hold tone does not sound from the FOMA terminal when Manner mode is set.
- The other party hears the hold tone, and the call is placed on hold. For Videophone calls, the image set in Hold image is sent to the other party. The image is sent to the other party with Hold superimposed.
- Calls stay on hold even when the FOMA terminal is closed. Set when folded does not apply.

Selecting Multi number

• Those subscribing to Multi number can select a saved Multi number and make a call. (127 P. 395)

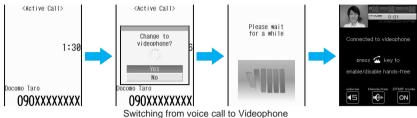
Switching Between Voice Call and Videophone

Switch between voice call and Videophone for placed calls.

- V.phone appears for voice calls and Phone appears for Videophone calls at the lower right of the display in guidance and call can be switched. (Available with models that support switching between voice call and Videophone.)
- Notify switch mode (P. 82) must be set to Indication ON for the other party's FOMA terminal.
- Received calls cannot be switched. Have the other party switch.

Press 🖾 [V.phone] during a voice call, select Yes and press 🔳.

- Alternatively, press 5 [Switch to v.phone] during a voice call.
- To switch from Videophone to voice call, press 🖾 [Phone] or 🖻 6 [chg to voice call] during a call.
- Select No and the voice call screen reappears.
- Switching takes approximately five seconds. Switching may take more time depending on signal status. While switching, *Please wait* appears and a guidance message is played.
- The call switches to Videophone and your image is sent to the other party. During a Videophone call, the call switches to voice call.



 Switch between voice call and Videophone is possible as many times as necessary during a call. When switched, call duration resets to 0 seconds.

Note

- Calls may not be switched from voice call to Videophone nor from Videophone to voice call and may be disconnected depending on signal status.
- Switching is not included in the talk time and charges are not incurred.

Switching from voice call to Videophone

- The other party's camera image does not appear if the other party selects to not show image.
- A voice call in progress cannot be switched to a Videophone call while another screen is displayed from the Submenu or Multi Assistant, or the call is on hold.
- When performing packet transmissions, disconnect packet transmission before switching to Videophone.
- When the other party is performing packet transmission, **Unable to switch** appears and voice call continues without switching to Videophone call.
- Hands-free V.phone is **ON** by default. (PP P. 79) If a call is switched to Videophone, Hands-free is activated regardless of call status.
- Hands-free is not available while *Please wait* is shown.
- Calls received with Call waiting cannot be switched from voice call to Videophone call.

Switching from Videophone to voice call

- When switching to a voice call, Unable to switch may appear and switching is disabled depending on the other party's FOMA terminal status. (IPP P. 82)
- When switching to voice call from Hands-free Videophone call, Hands-free is disabled.
- A 32K Videophone call cannot be switched to a voice call.

Redial/Received Calls

Using Redial and Received Calls

Redialing Previously Called Numbers <Redial>

The FOMA terminal keeps a record of the 30 most recent phone numbers to which calls were made (including PushTalk).

- When 30 calls are exceeded, phone numbers are erased starting with the oldest.
- If the same number was called multiple times, only the most recent is recorded. However, each call is
 recorded if PushTalk transmission is sent to multiple parties or the call is made using the PushTalk Plus.



In stand-by, press \bigcirc (\Box).

| Redial | 01/03 |
|---------------|-------------|
| 11/20 10:58 | ₽ M1 |
| Docomo Taro | |
| ■ 11/20 10:55 | M2 |
| Keitai Hanako | |
| 11/20 10:39 | MO |
| 090XXXXXXXXX | |
| | |
| | |
| | |
| | |
| | |
| Redial lis | st |

- Phone numbers and dates are listed starting with the most recent redial numbers.
- When time difference is adjusted overseas, the local time and date and the appear.
 Name appears if saved in phonebook. If the same number is saved in the
- phonebook, the name with the smallest memory number appears.
- For PushTalk, the other party's name or the PushTalk group name appears.

Types of calls

B: Videophone call : International call No icon: Voice call

- C C : PushTalk (When transmitted to one person)
- R : PushTalk (When transmitted to multiple people)

Image: PushTalk (Using PushTalk Plus)

M0 to M2: Multi number outgoing call (Only when Multi number is set)

| To show the redial details screen | Select a phone number \rightarrow • |
|--------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| To switch to the received calls list | • |

2

Select phone number and dial.

| Voice call | (|
|------------|---|
| Videophone | $\blacksquare \rightarrow \blacksquare$ |
| PushTalk | |

- Call is placed to the displayed phone number.
- When 184 or 186 are added to the phone number, the call is saved as a separate dial.

Note

- If a call is switched between voice call and Videophone, the type of Redial is decided by the original call type.
- Refer to "Show Call/Received" on P. 157 for details on the Redial/Show received calls.
- Press 𝔄 (𝔅^k) or
 to call all parties when using Redial for PushTalk transmission made to multiple people. Voice/Videophone calls cannot be made.
- When the redial display for Show call/received is set to OFF, the history is saved but Redial does not appear.
- Press 📱 in the redial list screen to show the sent messages list. (12 P. 241)

Redial Submenu

| Items in the redial list screen | Items in the redial details screen | Explanation | |
|---|---|--|--|
| 1 Add to phonebook | Add to phonebook Saves phone number in the phonebook. | | |
| 2 Delete | Delete one | Deletes a saved Redial. (CPP P. 53) | |
| | 3 Caller ID setting Sends caller ID/Does not send caller ID when calling | | |
| Add prefix setting Selects a prefix or makes an international call. | | Selects a prefix or makes an international call. | |
| | Sel Multi number Selects a phone number saved in Multi number. (CPP. 3 | | |
| | E Videophone set | Switches view mode or sets connection speed. | |
| | Chaku-moji Composes a message, selects a message or displays messages. | | |
| Compose message | Compose message | Composes a message. If the mail address is not saved in the phonebook, the outgoing number is entered for the address. | |
| ⊡1 Create schedule | ⊡1 Create schedule | Saves phone number and redial date in the schedule. | |

Related Operations

Delete redials/received calls <Delete>

- 1 In stand-by, press ⊡ (□) (Redial)/⊡ (*□) (Received calls) ▶ select a phone number.
- 2 Press @ 2 1 [Delete one] ▶ Yes ▶ •.
 - To delete all redials/received calls: Press 22.

Related Operations

Note

• If all redials are deleted, Chaku-moji Sent messages are also deleted.

Making Calls from Received Calls

The FOMA terminal keeps a record (Received calls) of the 30 most recent phone numbers (including PushTalk) received.

• When 30 calls are exceeded, phone numbers are erased starting with the oldest.

In stand-by, press ⊡ (*❑).

- Phone numbers and dates are listed starting with the most recent Received calls.
- When time difference is adjusted overseas, the local time and date and heta appear.
- Name appears if saved in phonebook. If the same number is saved in the phonebook, the name with the smallest memory number appears.

Types of history

- Calls that were answered or put on hold
- : Calls that left a recorded message

Received calls list

8 M2.4

20 0

11/20 11:12 090XXXXXXXXX

11/20 11:04 Docomo Taro

> Calls that were not answered or were forwarded to a forwarding number or Voice Mail Service center, calls that were rejected because of Reject calls (IPP. 160), Accept calls (IPP. 158), Reject unknown (IPP. 162), Reject by reason of non-disclosure (IPP. 161), Public mode (Drive mode) (IPP. 68)

Types of calls

- 🔊 : Videophone call 🛛 💀 : 64K data communications 🛛 🔕 : International call
- No icon: Voice call 🧳 : Chaku-moji

O G : PushTalk (When transmitted to one person)
 O G : PushTalk (When transmitted to multiple people)
 O NⅢ : PushTalk (Using PushTalk Plus)
 M0 to M2: Multi-number received (Only when Multi number is set)

| When xx missed call(s) appears in stand-by (Missed calls) | In stand-by, press • \rightarrow select $\textcircled{P} xx missed call(s) \rightarrow$ • The most recent Received calls appear. (\textcircled{P} P. 70) |
|--|--|
| To display the received calls details screen | Select a phone number $\rightarrow \blacksquare$ |
| To switch to the redial list screen | |



Select a phone number and dial.

| Voice call | ٤ |
|------------|---|
| Videophone | $\blacksquare \rightarrow \blacksquare$ |
| PushTalk | |

Note

- Refer to P. 53 for details on deleting Received calls.
- Even if a call is switched between voice call and Videophone, the received call type depends on the way the call was answered.
- Calls cannot be made from Received calls while Keypad dial lock is set.
- Press 𝔄 (𝒫^t) or to call all parties when using Redial for PushTalk transmission made to multiple people. Voice/Videophone calls cannot be made.
- When Function lock is applied to the phonebook, only the phone number appears. When Function lock is disabled, the name registered in the phonebook appears.
- When Set mute ring tone is set to ON and Missed call history is set to OFF and a call not saved in phonebook is received, if the call is disconnected during mute seconds duration or is disconnected due to weak signal strength, the number does not appear in Received calls. Press @ (2) [Display all] in the received calls list to show such calls.

Note

- When the call could not be answered, press (2)(2) [Ringing time] in the received calls details screen to see the ring time of the caller. A ringing time of 0:00 appears when a call is rejected due to Accept/Reject calls, Reject unknown, Reject by reason of non-disclosure and Public mode (Drive mode) settings. Ring time does not appear for items with 2 (calls that have been answered or disconnected while on hold).
- When a call is received from a caller using Dial-in, a number different from the caller's Dial-in number may appear.
- When Show received calls of Show call/received is set to OFF, the call is recorded but Received calls history does not appear.
- Press in the received calls list to show the received messages list. (
 P. 241)
- If a call is made from Received calls of Chaku-moji, the received Chaku-moji will not be sent.
- For a received call with Chaku-moji, the message contents are displayed on the received calls details screen.

Received calls Submenu

- The following operations are available as in the Redial submenu. Refer to "Redial Submenu" on P. 53 for details. Add to phone book Delete Create schedule ■ Compose message
- Display on the screen can be set if a call not saved in phonebook is received but disconnected during mute seconds duration or forwarded when Set mute ring time is set to ON and Missed call history is set to OFF.

| Items from received calls list | Items from received calls details screen | Explanation |
|--------------------------------|---|--|
| □ Display setting | Display setting | Performs Display all/Limit display and Ringing time. |

Chaku-moji Setting Chaku-moji

What Is Chaku-moji?

Send a message (Chaku-moji) at the same time when making a voice call or Videophone call to display it on the other party's ringing phone and to previously tell the points.

Save the Chaku-moji message in advance. Set if Chaku-moji is displayed or not when it is received.

- Send up to 10 single/double-byte characters, pictographs or symbols.
- Charges are applied to the sender side. Not applied to the receiver side.
- Ahead of the Chaku-moji messages on the send and receive displays. A appears.
- Chaku-moji appears only while a call is received (calling). When the call is answered, Chaku-moji disappears.
- Compatible models: 902iS series, 903i series, SH902iSL, P702iD, SH702iS, D702iF and
- N902iX HIGH-SPEED

Receive display when Chaku-moji is received

For voice call



For Videophone call





Urgency R Docomo Taro 09022222222

• The message contents of received Chaku-moji can also be checked in the received calls details screen. (127 P. 54)

Editing and Setting Chaku-moji Message

Saving the Chaku-moji message <Create message>

Save up to ten Chaku-moji messages.

2

Select a number, press 📱 [Edit], enter a message and press 🔳.

• To check a saved Chaku-moji message, select a number and press .

Enabling/Disabling Chaku-moji display <Message display>

Default setting With caller ID

In stand-by, press •572 and select Chaku-moji display method.

| Message display | To display all | 1 |
|---|--|---|
| 1 Display all 2 Saved in phonebook | To display ones only from callers saved in the phonebook | 2 |
| 3 With caller ID 4 Hide all messages | To display ones only from Notify caller ID callers | 3 |
| | To not display | 4 |

Dialing with Chaku-moji Message <Chaku-moji>

In stand-by, enter the other party's phone number and press 6 [Chaku-moji].

• Refer to P. 110 when calling with Chaku-moji from the phonebook.

Select a Chaku-moji message.

| To create a new message | $(1) \rightarrow$ enter a Chaku-moji message $\rightarrow \bullet$ |
|--|--|
| To select from saved Chaku-moji messages | $(2) \rightarrow$ select a Chaku-moji message $\rightarrow \bullet$ |
| To select from Sent messages | 3 → select a Chaku-moji message → ● To delete one Sent messages entry, select a Chaku-moji message and press @1. To delete all Sent messages entries, press @2. |

3

Press 🝙 [Phone]/ 🗓 [V.phone].





 If Chaku-moji reaches the recipient, *Transmission completed* appears and transmission charges are incurred.

Note

- The ten most recently sent messages are recorded as Sent messages.
- Even if a call is shorter than the set ringing time of the Set mute ring time, Chaku-moji is displayed and charges are applied.
- Depending on the signal strength, sending results may not be displayed even if the other party has received Chaku-moji. In this case, charges are applied.
- For overseas usage, Chaku-moji cannot be sent/received.
- On Redial voice call, Chaku-moji used when Videophone was dialed will be automatically sent.
- Chaku-moji does not support PushTalk.

- When the call recipient is in the following setting, Chaku-moji does not appear and transmission charges are not incurred even if dialed with Chaku-moji.
 - When the recipient's terminal does not support Chaku-moji
 - When a call is received from numbers rejected by the message display settings

In addition, when the call recipient is in the following setting or status, the send results do not appear on the sender side display. (Chaku-moji is not recorded in Received calls on the receiver side.)

- When outside the service area or the power is turned off
- When Public mode (Drive mode) is set
- When the answering duration for Record message is set to 0 seconds

Send Own No./No Caller ID

Setting Caller ID to Send/Not Send for a Single Call

To not send caller ID

Enter a phone number, press 2 [No caller ID] and press [Phone] or 🔋 [V.phone].

To send caller ID

Enter a phone number, press 2 1 [Send own no.] and press 2 [Phone] or 1 [V.phone].

Note

- Alternatively, make calls by setting caller ID from Submenus in the Phonebook, Redial or Received calls details screen.
- When a phone number is entered after entering 186 and 22 [No caller ID] is pressed, caller ID is sent.
- If **186** is selected from Select prefix after entering a phone number, caller ID is sent.
- When a phone number is entered after entering 184 and 21 [Send own no.] is pressed, caller ID is not sent.
- If 184 is selected from Select prefix after entering a phone number, caller ID is not sent.
- When 184 or 186 are added to a phone number, the call is saved as a separate dial.

Related Operations

Add 186 (To notify caller ID)

Press 186 ▶ enter phone number ▶ ≤ [Phone]/ [[V.phone].

Add 184 (To not notify caller ID)

Press 184 • enter phone number • 🝙 [Phone]/

Note

Sending caller ID for a single call

• This function is available regardless of the network service's caller ID setting.

Pause Dial

Sending Touch-tone Signals with Simple Operations

Use pagers and services such as ticket reservations and bank balance inquiries, with simple operations by saving the combinations of phone numbers and messages (numbers) in the phonebook.

Enter a phone number in phonebook (The step 3 on P. 98), press in and enter the number to send.

- Press 🗋 to enter a pause **P**.
- Enter the number and press 한 to add more numbers.
- Press
 and enter the other phonebook items.
- Refer to "Basic Saving Operations" on P. 97 for details.

Sending Messages Using Touch-tone Signals

Make a call from the phonebook with a touch-tone signal.

- Refer to P. 107 to P. 110 for details.
- When the call is connected, the numbers after *P* appear on the screen.
- 2

Press **[1]** [PB send] at the appropriate time to send.

- \bullet The numbers after ${\it P}$ are sent with touch-tone signals.
- When multiple numbers separated by *P* are saved, press 🗐 [PB send] for each number.
- Some equipment may not be able to receive signals properly.

Sending Touch-tone Signals Using the Dial Keys During a Call

Send touch-tone signals one at a time during a call by pressing the dial keys.

Make a call and when the call is connected, press the corresponding numbers on the keypad.

- The number is sent as a touch-tone signal.
- Enter 80 digits or more when sending a message using touch-tone signals. (Deletes entered digits from the beginning.)

WORLD CALL

Making International Calls

"WORLD CALL" Is DoCoMo's International Calling Service

WORLD CALL is an international calling service available from DoCoMo mobile phones. "WORLD CALL" is registered when FOMA services are registered. (Registration for "WORLD CALL" is optional.)

[Calling Method] 009130 ➡ 010 ➡ Country code ➡ Area code (city code) ➡ Other party's phone number ➡ <a>

- The calling method shown above can be saved on the FOMA terminal handset phonebook.
- For area codes that begin with 0, omit the 0 when dialing. (However, include the 0 when calling Italy.)
- Call to about 240 countries and regions worldwide.
- "WORLD CALL" charges are billed with the monthly mobile phone charges.
- Subscription and monthly usage fees are free.
- Check an estimate of the most recent call duration on the display. (PP. 381)
- When using phonebook, Received calls or Redial, 009130010 is automatically added to make calls.
- Change in procedures for making international calls Because "MY LINE" service is not available for mobile communications, WORLD CALL also cannot be used with "MY LINE". With the offering of the "MY LINE" service, the dialing procedures for international calls have changed. The former dialing procedure (procedure listed above without 010) cannot be used.

58 Phone/Videophone

- For further details on WORLD CALL, contact the number listed in "For General Inquiries" on the back of this manual.
- To make an international call through a company other than DoCoMo, contact the representative companies directly for instructions.
- Some payment plans may not be available.

When calling Videophone compatible specific overseas 3G mobile phone customers, use "International Videophone" by making the call in Videophone mode after the dialing method above.

- Refer to the DoCoMo web page for information on available countries and providers.
- Depending on the other party's international Videophone terminal, the image that appears on the FOMA terminal may be distorted, or connection may not be possible.

Int'l Dial Assist

Setting International Call

Automatically Adding International Call Access Code/Country Code <Auto Conversion>

Default setting Int'l prefix conv: ON, Country code conv: ON

When making an international call from Japan, enter + before dialing the overseas number to automatically place the international call access code. When making an international call to Japan, use the phonebook to automatically convert the first **0** in the phone number to the country code.



Setting Numbers Other Than WORLD CALL <Int'l Prefix>

Default setting WORLD CALL 009130-010

Save up to ten international access call access codes used when international calls are made from Japan.

In stand-by, press •6932, select ------ to save a new number and press •.

| To change a saved number | Select a number $\rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow \blacksquare$ |
|--------------------------|---|
| To delete a saved number | Select a number \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Yes \rightarrow \bigcirc |
| To set Auto prefix | Select a number → • • 3 • appears to the right of the name. • Perform the operations over to disable Auto prefix. |

Enter a name and press •.

• Enter up to 14 single-byte (7 double-byte) characters.

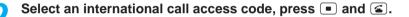
Enter a prefix and press .

- Press ① for 1+ seconds to enter +.
- Up to 16 digits can be entered.

Selecting an international access code <International Call>

Enter only the country code, area code (city code) and the phone number to make international calls.

In stand-by, enter the country code, area code (city code), other party's phone number and press [32] [International Call].



Related Operations

Make a call from phonebook

In the phonebook entry details screen, press @422 select an international call access code \blacktriangleright \bullet \bullet .

Make a call from Received calls or Redial

In the Received calls or Redial details screen, press @42 select an international call access code \blacktriangleright \bullet \blacktriangleright \blacksquare .

Setting Country Codes <Set Country Code>

Save up to 30 country codes to make international calls from overseas.

• 22 country codes are available by default.

In stand-by, press <a>6
6
6
6
8
8
8
8
8
9
8
8
9
8
9
8
9
8
9
8
9
8
9
8
9
8
9
8
9
8
9
8
9
8
9
9
8
9
9
8
9
9
8
9
9
8
9
9
8
9
9
9
9
9
9
9
9
9
9
9
9
9
9
9
9
9
9
9
9
9
9
9
9
9
9
9
9
9
9
9
9
9
9
9
9
9
9
9
9
9
9
9
9
9
9
9
9
9
9
9
9
9
9
9
9
9
9
9
9
9
9
9
9
9
9
9
9
9
9
9
9
9
9
9
9
9
9
9
9
9
9
9
9
9
9
9
9
9
9
9
9
9
9
9
9
9
9
9
9
9
9
9
9
9
9
9
9
9
9
9
9
9
9
9
9
9
9
9
9
9
9
9
9
9
9
9
9
9
9
9
9
9
9
9

To change a saved country code Select a number $\rightarrow \bullet \rightarrow \uparrow$ To delete a saved country code Select a number $\rightarrow \bullet \rightarrow 2 \rightarrow \text{Yes} \rightarrow \bullet$



Enter a country name and press .

• Enter up to 14 single-byte (7 double-byte) characters.

Enter a country code and press •.

• Up to 6 digits can be entered including +.

Setting a First Number to Phone Numbers

Default setting 009130-010

Save up to five prefixes, including international call access codes, to place at the beginning of phone numbers. The numbers are also available when calls are made from phonebook, Received calls or Redial.



In stand-by, press • 6 9 1, select ----- to save a new number and press •.

To change a saved numberSelect a number $\rightarrow \bullet \rightarrow 1$ To delete a saved numberSelect a number $\rightarrow \bullet \rightarrow 2 \rightarrow Yes \rightarrow \bullet$

Enter a prefix and press .

• Press ① for 1+ seconds to enter +.

• Up to 16 digits can be entered.

Calling with Prefixes <Select Prefix>

In stand-by, enter the other party's phone number and press (3) (1) [Select prefix].



Select a prefix, press

and

Related Operations

Make a call from phonebook
 In the phonebook entry details screen, press @421 ▶ select prefix ▶ ● ▶ ▲.
 Make a call from Received calls or Redial
 In the Received calls or Redial details screen, press @41 ▶ select prefix ▶ ● ▶ ▲.

Sub Address

Making Calls with Sub Address Set

Default setting ON

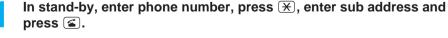
Using sub address allows calls to be made to specific terminals when calling an ISDN terminal.

• A sub address is a number assigned to a terminal when there are multiple ISDN terminals for a single ISDN line. It is used in selecting contents for V-Live.

In stand-by, press
$$\bullet$$
 6 9 2 and 1 [ON].

Making calls with sub address set

Ask the other party for their phone number and sub address.



• If *X* is entered at the beginning of a phone number or after *184*, *186* or a prefix, the numbers after *X* are recognized as the phone number.

Reconnect Control

Reconnecting Disconnected Calls Automatically

Default setting Alarm on (high)

• Reconnect control is also available for PushTalk transmissions.

In stand-by, press \bullet 612 and select an alarm tone.

| To set alarm to high | 1 |
|----------------------|---|
| To set alarm to low | 2 |
| To set alarm to off | 3 |

Note

- The amount of time that can elapse to reconnect varies depending on signal strength. The estimated time is approximately ten seconds.
- The other party hears no sound until the call is reconnected (up to ten seconds). Charges are incurred for this duration.

Noise Reduction

Reducing Noise Interference to Hear Calls Clearly

It is recommended that this function be kept set to ON.

Default setting ON



Note

 Noise reduction processes sound to make conversations clearer. Sound quality may vary depending on surrounding noise and tone of the voice.

Hands-free

Using Handset in a Car

Use the FOMA in-car hands-free kit 01 (sold separately) to connect hands-free devices such as car navigation to the FOMA terminal, and make/receive voice calls from the device. Refer to the user's guide of each product for more details. Use a FOMA In-car hands-free cable 01 (sold separately) for the in-car hands-free kit 01 (sold separately).

Note

- Functions such as display settings, ring tones and Public mode (Drive mode) call functions follow the FOMA terminal settings for incoming calls.
- If a hands-free device has sound enabled, the device plays a ring tone even when the FOMA terminal is set to Manner mode or *Silent*.
- When a Videophone call is made from the Phonebook or Redial, the transmission speed follows device settings. When the speed is not set, Videophone calls are made at 64K.
- When a Videophone call is made or received using a hands-free compatible device, a substitute image is sent to the other party.

- When FOMA terminal sound is enabled, Set when folded is followed if the handset is closed during a call. If device sound is enabled, the call continues when the FOMA terminal is closed regardless of Set when folded.
- Record message settings are followed even when the handset is connected to the device.
- Some handset functions may not be available depending on device characteristics and specifications.

Answering Calls/Videophone Calls

Voice calls

Videophone calls

When receiving a call, verify it using ring tone, called LED, vibrator, etc.

 When receiving a Videophone call, use the flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (sold separately) (27 P. 383) or use Hands-free (27 P. 79) to talk while viewing each other's image. The default setting is ON for Hands-free V.phone. So when the call starts, Hands-free is available.

When a call is received, the ring tone sounds and the called LED flashes.

Incomina Videophone screen

Incoming videophone

090XXXXXXXXX When the name and still picture are saved in the phonebook

Chaku-moii

Incoming videophone

- When Chaku-moji is received, the message appears. (1 P. 55)
- When the caller does not send caller ID, a non-disclosure reason message appears.

• When caller ID is sent, the phone number appears. If the other party's name and

• When Picture call (still picture or movie/i-motion) is saved in the phonebook (CPP. 100), the name, phone number and image appear on the screen. (The image for Phone ring tone is prioritized when i-motion is set as Phone ring tone.)

phone number are saved in the phonebook, they appear on the screen.

⊘Urgency. Docomo Taro 090XXXXXXXX When Chaku-moii is received

Press 🕥.

Refer to the following for key operations while receiving a call.

| On hold (🕼 P. 67) | (1) | Record message*/Forward calls/ | 0 |
|------------------------|------------------|--------------------------------|---|
| Quick silent (BP. 125) | (#) | Auto forward/Call rejection | |
| | | | |
| Manner mode (P. 125) | (for 1+ seconds) | (for only Videophone calls) | |

- Record memo for Videophone calls.
- For Videophone calls, all key operations except those listed above are not available even when Any key answer is set to ON.



Videophone screen

• Incoming v.phone appears while receiving a call.

They do not appear if the caller does not send caller ID.

• Calling appears while receiving a call.

User unset, Payphone or Not support (P. 161)

When FOMA terminal is closed

| Quick silent | B ((|
|------------------------|----------------------|
| Manner mode (🕼 P. 125) | (b) (for 1+ seconds) |

Voice calls

• Calls can also be received with Any key answer. (
P. 65)

Videophone calls

Calls can be answered with your image. The other party's image appears in the main screen and your
image taken with the camera appears in the subscreen. When images are not received from the other
party, a black screen appears.



Note

- Calls to the FOMA terminal cannot be made from phones with no direct outside line, such as an internal building phone.
- Set mute ring time can be set to delay ring tone sounding until set number of seconds pass when a call is received from an unregistered number or a number without caller ID. Reject unknown can be set to prevent callers not registered in Phonebook from being connected.
- When a Videophone call is received during a voice call, the Videophone call can be received depending on the subscription status of network services such as Call waiting. When the Videophone call is answered, the current voice call is disconnected.
- Save a specified phonebook in a list and set Reject/Accept calls.
- Use Notification of Voice Mail Service to receive notification of missed calls when the handset is turned off
 or outside the service area. An SMS is received after returning to the service area or when power is turned
 on. If a call is received from a person saved in the phonebook, the person's name appears in the message.
- Close operation is followed if the handset is switched to the viewer position during a call.
- When a call is received while in **Public mode** (Drive mode), the ring tone does not sound, and the called LED does not flash. The call is saved in **Received calls**.

Videophone calls

- The type of substitute image to be sent can be set in Substitute image.
- If a Videophone call is received from the Videophone compatible model when Voice Mail Service is set to
 Activate VoiceMail, the call is connected to Voice Mail Service and message recording is activated after the set
 ringing time passes. Answering during the set ringing time connects call without connecting to Voice Mail Service.
- Even when **Call forwarding service** is set to **Activate** on the receiver side, the Videophone call is not forwarded if the set forwarding destination is not set to a device that supports Videophone and conforms to the 3G-324M standard (127 P. 48). Check forwarding destination before setting.

When a call is received during editing

 If a call is received while editing phonebook, i-mode mail, SMS or a Chaku-moji message, editing is temporarily suspended. When this happens, edited data is automatically saved. When the conversation is finished, the screen before the call was received reappears and editing can be resumed. However, characters that are in the process of being converted and not confirmed may not be saved.

When a call is received from a saved Multi number

• A Multi number name appears to the right of Calling/Incoming v.phone when a call is received.

When using the flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (sold separately)

- When a Videophone call is received while the flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch is connected, pressing the switch for 2+ seconds will answer the call with your image when the FOMA terminal is open, and with the set substitute image when the FOMA terminal is closed. Switch between substitute image and camera image during a call. (IPP P. 77)
- When Set auto answer is set to ON and the flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch is connected, after the specified ring time, the substitute image is automatically sent. Switch between substitute image and camera image during a call. (IPP P. 77)

When the handset beeps during a voice call indicating an incoming call

When any of services such as Voice Mail, Call forwarding or Call waiting is subscribed to and Set arrival act is set to *Activate* while Arrival call act is set to *Answer*, the following operations can be performed when the handset beeps during a call.

64 Phone/Videophone

| Call forwarding Service | Press I [Forward calls] to forward the call to the set forward number. (P P. 390) |
|-------------------------|---|
| Voice Mail Service | Press 🗐 3 [Auto forward] to forward the call to the Voice Mail Service center. (1 P. 388) |
| Call waiting | Put the current call on hold and answer the incoming call. (CPP. 390) |

Switching Between Voice Call and Videophone to Receive Calls

The caller (other party) selects to switch between voice call and Videophone.

The call recipient cannot switch. (Available with models that support switching between voice call and Videophone.)
 Notify switch mode (IPP P. 82) must be set to *Indication ON* for the recipient's FOMA terminal.

The caller switches between Videophone and voice call during a call.

Switching takes approximately five seconds.
 Switching may take more time depending on signal

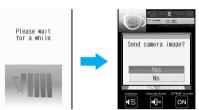
appears and a guidance message is played. Switching from voice call to Videophone • When the caller switches to Videophone call, a

message is played and the screen on the left appears before switching. Proceed to step 2.

Switching from Videophone to voice call

 When the caller switches to voice call during Videophone call, a message is played before switching. Start conversation in voice call.

status. While the call being switched, Please wait



Switching from voice call to Videophone

9 Select Yes and press **•**.

Switching from voice call to Videophone

- Your image is sent to the other party.
- Select No to not send own image. Camera Off appears on the other party's screen.

Note

• A Videophone call in progress cannot be switched to a voice call while the call is on hold or during AV output. Switching is not available either while the FOMA terminal is closed.

Any Key Answer

Answering Calls by Pressing Any Key

Default setting ON

Set Any key answer so that calls can be answered with the keys other than the ones normally used.

| | Normal | Any key answer |
|------------|---------|---------------------------------------|
| Voice call | | 0, ¥, 1 to 9, ●, ∴, ∎, ⊠, ⊠, ⊂, ⊂, ∞. |
| Videophone | ه, ا | - |
| PushTalk | ه, 🖻 (| 0, ¥, 1 to 9, •, 1, 10, 1, clr, with |

• Refer to P. 51, P. 67 for details on being resumed/started while on hold.



In stand-by, press \bullet 6 3 1 and 1 [ON].

Closing the FOMA Terminal to End/Hold Calls

Default setting Phone/Videophone: Finish call, PushTalk: Speaker phone

1

In stand-by, press <a>6 <a>6 <a>7 and select a close operation.

| Phone/Videophone | 11 | To set to Hold sound (with hold tone) |
|------------------|----|--|
| | 12 | To set to Finish Call |
| | 13 | To set to Silent (without hold tone) |
| PushTalk | 21 | To set to Finish transmission |
| | 22 | To play the other party's voice through the speakers |

Note

- When set to Hold sound, hold tone plays. Hold tone can be changed (P. 67). For Videophone calls, the image set in Hold image is sent to the other party.
- When set to Silent, hold tone does not sound. For Videophone calls, if the Substitute image is a still
 picture, the still picture is sent to the other party. Chara-den is sent to the other party if set.
- When set to Hold sound or Silent, open the FOMA terminal to resume the call.
- If a device such as a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (sold separately) is connected, the call can continue while the handset is closed, regardless of *Hold sound*, *Silent*, or *Finish call* settings.
 For Videophone calls, the set substitute image is sent to the other party. Open the FOMA terminal to send camera image to the other party. (IPP P. 78)
- For voice/Videophone calls, if the earphone/microphone is disconnected while the FOMA terminal is closed, the call will become mute when *Silent* or *Finish call* is set, or the call is put on hold when *Hold sound* is set. The call resumes when the earphone/microphone is reconnected or the handset is opened. For PushTalk, if the earphone/microphone is disconnected while the FOMA terminal is closed, the call can be continued through the speaker whether set to *Finish call* or set to *Speaker phone*.
- For PushTalk, when **Speaker phone** is set, open the FOMA terminal to retrieve the transmission status of **Hands-free PT**.

Earpiece Volume

Adjusting the Volume During a Call

Default setting Volume 5

Select from ten earpiece volume levels during a call.

- If earpiece volume is raised for a call, noise may occur depending on the surroundings. Use at an appropriate volume.
- The volume remains at an adjusted level even when the handset is turned off or the battery pack is removed.

| Earpiece volume Volume 5 | Refer to P. 119 for details on adjusting the earpiece volume when in stand-by. Alternatively, press 2 during a Videophone call. |
|-----------------------------|--|
| Earpiece volume screen | |

After adjusting the volume, press
 or
 or
 or wait approximately two seconds and the previous screen reappears.

Placing Calls On Hold

Place voice/Videophone calls on hold which cannot be answered immediately.

• The other party is charged for the call while on hold.

While a ring tone is sounding, press 🕿.

- When a voice call is received, the other party hears the hold tone (EP P. 67), and the call is placed on hold.
- When a Videophone call is received, the other party hears the hold tone (IPP P. 67), and the On hold image set by your FOMA terminal is sent to the other party with **On hold** superimposed.
- To disconnect a call while on hold, press (a). (The call is saved in Received calls.)
- When the other party disconnects the call while on hold, the call is saved in Received calls.

Press < when ready to answer.

• For Videophone, press to send a substitute image and answer the call.

Set On Hold Tone

Set on hold tone 1 On hold tone 1 2 On hold tone 2 3 Original

Setting On Hold Tone

Default setting On hold tone 1

Set the on hold guidance that the other party hears.

- Select On hold tone 1 (Japanese), On hold tone 2 (English) or recorded voice memo.
 - On hold tone 1 ... ただいま電話に出ることができません。そのままお待ちになるか、しばらくたってからおかけ直しください。

On hold tone 2 ... I can't take your call now. Please hold the line for a moment or call me back later, thank you.

In stand-by, press <a>1 <a>1 <a>8 <a>1 <a>8 <a>1 <a>8 <a>1 <a>8 <a

| 181 | To set the guidance language | 1: Japanese/2: English |
|-----|---|---|
| | To set after recording voice memo | $31 \rightarrow \text{record} \rightarrow 2$ [Play] → select memo → $\boxed{\bullet}$ • Press • to abort recording. |
| | To set recorded Stand-by voice memo | (3) (2) \rightarrow select memo \rightarrow (1) |
| | To apply Function lock to voice memo | $\begin{array}{c} \hline 3 \hline 3 \rightarrow \text{enter terminal security code} \rightarrow \hline \bullet \rightarrow \hline 1 \\ \hline \bullet \text{ To disable Function lock: Press 2}. \end{array}$ |

To play back, select On hold tone 1 or On hold tone 2 and press .
 Press is to stop playback and the previous screen reappears.

Set Hold Tone Setting Hold Tone

Set hold tone 1 Hold melody 1 2 Hold melody 2 3 Original Default setting Hold melody 1

Set the hold tone that the other party hears.

• The hold tone plays at the same volume as the earpiece volume.

In stand-by, press <a>1 <a>1 <a>8 <a>2 <a>a <a>a <a>b <a

| 182 | To set Hold melody | 1: Hold melody 1/2: Hold melody 2 |
|-----|--------------------------------------|---|
| | To set after recording voice | ③ 1 → record → ② [Play] → select memo → i Press i to abort recording. |
| | memo | Press I to abort recording. |
| | To set recorded Stand-by voice memo | $(3) \textcircled{2} \rightarrow \text{select memo} \rightarrow \textcircled{i}$ |
| | To apply Function lock to voice memo | $(3)(3) \rightarrow$ enter terminal security code $(\bullet) \rightarrow (1)$ \bullet To disable Function lock: Press (2). |

To play back, select Hold melody 1 or Hold melody 2 and press . Press to stop playback and the previous screen reappears.

Using Public Mode (Drive Mode)

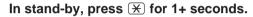
Public mode is an automatic answering service used to ensure manner in public places. When a voice call is received, the caller hears a message indicating you are driving or otherwise unable to speak (on the train, bus, in a movie theatre, etc.) and the call is disconnected.

- Activating/Deactivating Public mode is only available in stand-by. (Available even when I is showing on the screen.)
- Calls can be made normally in Public mode.
- This function is not available during data transmissions.
- A message requesting caller ID is played when **User unset** calls are received while Caller ID Request is set to **Activate**. (The Public mode message is not played.)

In stand-by, press K for 1+ seconds.

- Public mode is set and appears.
- A message stating the owner of the phone is driving or is in a place that does not allow mobile phone use is played to the other party.
- If Manner mode is also set, Public mode setting is prioritized.

Disabling Public Mode (Drive Mode)



Public mode is disabled and a disappears.

When Public mode (Drive mode) is set

A ring tone does not sound when a voice/Videophone or PushTalk call is received. *xx missed call(s)* appears and the call is saved in Received calls. (ICPP. 52)

- When a voice call is received, the caller hears a message indicating that you are driving or otherwise unable to speak and the call is disconnected. When a Videophone call is received, Public mode video guidance is played to the other party and the call is disconnected. If the handset is turned off or in a place with no signal, the guidance for outside service area plays.
- The FOMA terminal will not vibrate when i-mode mail, SMS, or Message R/F is received even if Vibration mode is set. Although a ring tone does not sound, the message is received automatically, and received mail icon appears.
- When data transmission is received, vibrator, ring tone and called LED do not activate.
- An incoming PushTalk is automatically disconnected and *Connection failed* appears on the caller's display. Driving mode status can be notified to all connecting members if 3+ people have participated.
- If Location provision is set to 許可 (Always allow) for usage settings of each service when location information provision, supported by GPS function, is requested, a confirmation screen for location provision is displayed, the GPS positioning screen appears, and the location is provided after GPS positioning. However, Location provision/accept, Location provision/notify, vibrator or called LED does not operate. When Location provision is set to 毎回確認 (Always choose) for usage settings of each service, location information is not provided.

When a call is received while Public mode (Drive mode) and various services are set

| Service | When a voice call is received | When a Videophone call is received |
|---|--|---|
| Voice Mail Service (IBP P. 388) | A ring tone does not sound, a message indicating that you are driving or otherwise unable to speak plays, and the caller is connected to the Voice Mail Service center. The call is saved in Received calls.*1 | Public mode video guidance is not played to the other party and is connected to the Voice Mail Service center. |
| Call forwarding Service (ICF P. 390) | The call is not connected, a message indicating that you are driving or otherwise unable to speak plays, and the call is forwarded to the set destination. The call is saved in Received calls.*2 | The call is not connected and forwarded immediately. However, if the forwarding number is not a 3G-324M (127 P. 48) compliant Videophone, the call is disconnected. The call is saved in Received calls. |
| Call waiting (F P. 390) | A ring tone does not sound and the caller hears a message indicating that you are driving or otherwise unable to speak and the call is disconnected. The call is saved in Received calls. | A ring tone does not sound. The Public mode video guidance is played to the other party and the call is disconnected. The call is saved in Received calls. |

| Serv | ice | When a voice call is received | When a Videophone call is received |
|--|----------------------------|---|---|
| Nuisance Call Barring Service (when a call is received from a barred number) (@ P. 392) | | The call is not connected, call rejection message is played to the other party and the call ends. The call is not saved in Received calls. | The Call Rejection video guidance is played to the other party and the call is disconnected. The call is not saved in Received calls. |
| Caller ID When the Request caller ID is Service not sent (PP P. 393) | | The call is not connected, caller ID request message plays and the call ends. The call is not saved in Received calls. | The Caller ID request video guidance is played to the other party and the call is disconnected. The call is not saved in Received calls. |
| | When the caller ID is sent | A ring tone does not sound and the caller hears a message indicating that you are driving or otherwise unable to speak and the call is disconnected. The call is saved in Received calls. | The Public mode video guidance is played to the other party and the call is disconnected. The call is saved in Received calls. |

*1 The message is not heard when Voice Mail Service ring time is set to **0** seconds and the call is immediately connected to the center. The call is not saved in Received calls.

*2 The message is not heard when Call forwarding Service ring time is set to *0 seconds* and the call is immediately connected to the destination. The call is not saved in Received calls.

Note

• Even if the alarm time arrives in Public mode, the alarm does not sound. Called LED and vibrator are not activated.

Public Mode (Power OFF)

Using Public Mode (Power OFF)

Public mode (power OFF) is an automatic answering service used to ensure manner in public places. Set Public mode (power OFF) to play a message for the caller indicating that the power is off and you are unable to speak (in a hospital, airplane, train near the priority seats), and the call ends.

- In stand-by, press $\times 25251$.
- Public mode (power OFF) is set. (Nothing changes in stand-by.)
- When a call is received while Public mode (power OFF) is set, a message indicating that the owner of the phone is currently in a place that does not allow mobile phone use is played.

Disabling Public mode (power OFF)

In stand-by, press $\times 25250$.

• Public mode (power OFF) is disabled.

Checking Public mode (power OFF) setting

- In stand-by, press $\times 25259$.
- Check the current setting.

When Public mode (power OFF) is set

Public mode (power OFF) remains set until disabled. Setting is not canceled when the power is turned ON. The Public mode (power OFF) message is played when the handset is outside the service area or in a place with no signal. When a call is received, a message indicating that the owner of the phone is in a place that does not allow mobile phone use is played and the call is disconnected. An incoming PushTalk is automatically disconnected and **Connection failed** appears on the caller's display. Members are notified that the owner of the phone is not a participant in the call when 3+ people have participated.

When a call is received while Public mode (power OFF) and various services are set

| Service | | When a voice call is received | When a Videophone call is received |
|---|--------------------------------------|--|---|
| Voice Mail Service (ICP P. 388) | | A message stating the owner of the phone is in a location in which the handset must be turned off is played and the call is automatically connected to the Voice Mail Service center.*1 | The Public mode video guidance is not played to the other party and is connected to the Voice Mail Service center. |
| Call forwarding Service (IC了 P. 390) | | A message stating that the owner of the phone is in a location in which the handset must be turned off is played and the call is forwarded to the set destination. The Public mode (power OFF) guidance setting follows Call forwarding Service guidance settings. (IPP P. 391)*2 | The call is immediately forwarded without playing the Public mode (power OFF) video guidance. If the destination does not support Videophone calls, the call is disconnected without forwarding. |
| Nuisance Call Barring Service (when a call is received from a barred number) (127 P. 392) | | The Call Rejection guidance is played to the other party and the call is disconnected. | The Call Rejection video guidance is played to the other party and the call is disconnected. |
| Caller ID Request Service | When the caller ID is not sent | The Caller ID request message is played and the call is disconnected. | The Caller ID request video guidance is played and the call is disconnected. |
| (☞ P. 393) | When the caller ID is sent | The Public mode (power OFF) message is played and the call is disconnected. | The Public mode (power OFF) video guidance is played and the call is disconnected. |

*1 The message is not heard when Voice Mail Service ring time is set to *0 seconds* and the call is immediately connected to the center. The call is not saved in Received calls.

*2 The message is not heard when Call forwarding Service ring time is set to **0** seconds and the call is immediately connected to the destination. The call is not saved in Received calls.

Missed Calls

Checking Missed Calls

If an incoming call is not answered, *xx missed call(s)* and the number of missed calls appear in stand-by. (Missed Calls)

- When missed calls are checked or I is pressed for 1+ seconds, *xx missed call(s)* disappears.
- Missed calls are also indicated by LED. (P. 142)



When xx missed call(s) appears in stand-by, press •.

● Alternatively, press • (+) to check Received calls. (☞ P. 54)

Select 🕾 xx missed call(s) and press .

Received calls 01/01 • 8 appears next to missed calls.



Select a phone number and press .

- Missed call details appear.
- Use the same operations as Received calls to make calls and check other entries in Received calls.

Recording Messages When Calls Cannot Be Answered

Set Record message to record messages when a call cannot be answered. When a voice call is received, a voice message is played and the caller's message is recorded. When a Videophone call is received, a reply image is sent and the caller's message and image are recorded.

- Record message is not available when the FOMA terminal is turned off or outside the service area. This function is convenient when used in conjunction with Network Voice Mail Service.
- Record up to three Record messages for voice calls (about 15 seconds each). Voice memos recorded during a voice call or in stand-by are also included in these three Record messages for voice calls.
- Record up to two Record messages for Videophone calls (about 15 seconds each).
- The number of recorded messages appearing in stand-by is the total number of Record messages for voice/ Videophone calls.
- Record message cannot be set or disabled in Manner mode.

Setting Record Message/Record Memo

In stand-by, press <a>6 <a>6 <a>1 (ON].

Record message



- Record message is set. Press a to return to stand-by and appears.
 - When a message is recorded, an icon appears to show the number of messages. Example: A (for one message), A (for two messages), etc.
 - When there are three Record messages (voice calls) and two Record messages (Videophone), m appears and Record message does not respond when a voice/Videophone call is received. Delete unnecessary messages to reactivate Record message.

Note

- For Voice Mail Service, record up to 20 messages of three minutes each. When Voice Mail Service is set, messages are saved at the Voice Mail Service center even if there are three Voice memos.
- Refer to P. 73 for details on playing and deleting Record messages.
- When Record message is set by Record message settings or Manner mode settings, Record message will
 automatically answer.
- The reply image for Record messages for Videophone can be set in Videophone reply image.

Disabling Record message

In stand-by, press <a>651 and <a>2 [OFF].

• Record message is disabled. Press 🝙 to return to stand-by and 🔤 disappears.

When Record Message/Record Memo Is Set

When a call is received, Record message is activated after set answering duration (\bigcirc P. 72).



Voice call reply message



Msg ansv

Videophone replay message

- When a voice call is received, the caller hears a voice guidance.
- When a Videophone call is received, after *Preparing* message. *Please wait* appears, the reply image for Record message (Videophone) appears. When a Videophone call is received, the caller hears a reply message and sees a reply image.
- Press S to answer a call while playing a replay message, recording sounds or movies. Press to answer a Videophone call with a substitute image sent.

2

Record the caller's message.





Voice call record message

Videophone record message

- The indicator is an estimate.
- After the message is recorded, the previous screen reappears.
- While a message is recorded (voice call), the caller's voice can be heard through the earpiece. (When Manner mode is set, caller's voice cannot be heard through the earpiece.)

The caller hears a beep when recording starts.

- While a message is recorded (Videophone), the other party's image does not appear on the screen but is recorded.
- Record message (voice call) may not be saved if three seconds or less.
- When a call is answered while a message is being recorded, the voice or Videophone message is recorded until the call is received.

Note

- Saved contents may be lost due to malfunctions, repairs or other handling of the FOMA terminal. DoCoMo shall not be liable for any loss of content. It is recommended that a memo be kept of contents for Record message (voice/Videophone calls).
- Recording may be cut off depending on signal strength.
- During Record messages (Videophone), the reply image set on your FOMA terminal is sent to the other party with *Record message* superimposed.
- During recording, calls from a third party cannot be answered. The third party hears a busy signal.
- Messages that indicate outside the service area, changed phone number, Voice mail starting, etc. cannot be recorded.
- Record message is not available when Public mode (Drive mode) is set.

Related Operations

Set the message response time <Answering duration>

In stand-by, press \bullet 6 5 2 \bullet enter answering duration (three digits: 000 to 120 seconds) \bullet \bullet .

• To set response time for Record message immediately started: Enter 000 seconds.

Set reply messages <Reply message>

- **1** In stand-by, press **•** 6 5 3.
- 2 Select the type of messages ▶ .
 - To record original message: Press 3 1 > record > 2 > select memo > 1.
 - To set original message: Press 3 2 ▶ select memo ▶ .
 - To play/stop message: Press 🔳.

Set the still picture for Videophone record message <V.phone reply image>

- In stand-by, press <a>6 <a>7 <a
 - To check the still picture: Select still picture **>** .

Note

Answering duration

- Answering duration applies to Record messages for both voice calls and Videophone calls.
- The default setting is 13 seconds.
- Cannot be set to the same time as Auto answer.
- When Record message is set simultaneously with Voice Mail Service or Call forwarding Service, the priority will depend on the set ringing time.

To prioritize Record message, set answering duration shorter than for Voice Mail Service or Call forwarding Service.

Note

Reply message

- The default setting is *Reply message 1* for Reply message.
- Reply message 1 and Reply msg 2(Eng) are preset. Reply message 1 ただいま電話に出ることができません。 ピーッという発信音のあとに、お 名前とご用件をお話しください。

Reply message 2 (Eng) I can't take your call now. Please leave your message. thank you.

- Returns to default setting when original reply message is deleted in "Deleting Recorded Messages or Voice Memos" (P. 74).
- Press

 to abort recording.

Videophone reply image

- Use JPEG or GIF images saved in My picture of Data box that are set to QCIF: 176×144 (W×H). (Animated GIFs are not available.)
- Still pictures that are restricted for output from the FOMA terminal are not available.
- The default setting is テレビ電話代替.

Quick Message

Recording Messages When Incoming Calls Cannot Be Answered

Record a message for an incoming voice/Videophone call when Record message is not set.

During an incoming call, press 7 for 1+ seconds.

- Alternatively, press 1 [Record message] during an incoming voice call. Recording starts after a voice guidance is played.
- During an incoming Videophone call, press 2 [Record memo] as an alternative. After Preparing message. Please wait appears, the reply image for Record memo appears and recording starts.
- Refer to P. 71 for details on Record messages.

Play/Delete Recorded Messages or Voice Memos

Playing/Deleting Recorded Messages or Voice Memos

Play or delete recorded messages and voice memos (during call and in stand-by).

Playing Recorded Messages or Voice Memos

The Playback volume follows the Earpiece volume (P. 66) settings.

• Refer to P. 380 for details on recording voice memos.

In stand-by, press • 9 2 9 5 and press 2 [Play].

• Alternatively, press 7 for 1+ seconds in stand-by, and press 2. When xx message(s) xx V.phone message(s) appears 3 Function lock • In stand-by, press •, select •, press • and press 2.

• mappears next to memos that have not been played.



2 Play

- Types of message/memo : Voice memo during call
- Phone type S: Videophone call

No icon: Voice call

- : Record message
- Memo list
- : Voice memo in stand-by

Phone/Videophone 73 Continued on next page



Select memo and press • [Play].

Indicator



Record message

for voice calls

- The indicator is an estimate.
 - Name and number do not appear for User unset calls and voice memos in stand-by.
 - Press

 to stop playback. Memo list appears, press
 again to play from the beginning during playback. Select a memo and press
 to play other memos during playback.
- Playback of recorded messages and voice memos automatically stops when a call is received.
- Playback of recorded messages and voice memos automatically stops when alarm sounds at set alarm time.
- When Show received calls is set to **OFF**, the memo list does not appear and recorded messages and voice memos cannot be played or deleted.

Deleting Recorded Messages or Voice Memos

In memo list (P. 73), select a memo and deletion method.

| To delete one | $\textcircled{0}1 \rightarrow \textbf{Yes} \rightarrow \blacksquare$ |
|---------------|---|
| To delete all | $\textcircled{0} 2 \rightarrow \textbf{Yes} \rightarrow \blacksquare$ |

Related Operations

Lock Recorded message and Voice memo <Function lock> In stand-by, press • 9 2 9 5 • 3 • enter terminal security code • • • 1.

Chara-den

• Refer to P. 310 for details on Chara-den.

Sending Chara-den as Substitute Image <Change Send Img>

Default setting Dimo

During a Videophone call, send a character to the other party in place of a camera image.

1

During a Videophone call, press 🕲 3 3 [Chara-den], select a folder, press 🔳, select a Chara-den and press 🖹 [OK].

If Chara-den is already set as substitute image (P. 78), press is [Subst img] during a Videophone call to send the image. When a Videophone call is received, press is [Subst img] to answer the call with Chara-den.

Note

- When DTMF mode is set to **ON**, the Chara-den key operations become unavailable because of the **touch-tone signals** sent with the dial keys.
- To switch to テレビ電話代替, delete Dimo and perform Reset settings.

Preset Chara-den

The following Chara-den are preset.

Dimo

Dimo is capable of showing emotions such as happiness and anger, and can perform various body actions.

Full-action mode action list

| Number (key operation) | Action | Number (key operation) | Action |
|---------------------------|---------------|---------------------------|-----------------------|
| 1 | 笑う (Laugh) | 6 | NG |
| 2 | 泣く (Cry) | 7 | サメ (Shark look) |
| 3 | 怒る (Angry) | | 博士風メガネ |
| (4) | こんにちは (Hello) | 8 | (Doctor-look glasses) |
| 5 | OK | 9 | ガーン (Oh my God) |

• Press ① to abort action.

• Dimo does not support Part-action mode.

キャラ (女性) Woman

This character is a Japanese businesswoman. She can perform a variety of actions such as expressing happiness and distress, waving her hands and tilting her head.



Full-action mode action list

| Number (key operation) | Action | |
|---------------------------|---------------------|--|
| 1 | 喜ぶ (Happy) | |
| 2 | 怒る (Angry) | |
| 3 | 哀しむ (Sad) | |
| 4 | 投げキッス (Blow a kiss) | |
| 5 | 驚く (Surprised) | |
| 6 | ゴメン (Apology) | |
| 7 | 恥ずかしー (Embarrassed) | |
| 8 | ずっこけ (Whoa ho ho!) | |
| 9 | バーン! (Bang!) | |

• Press ① to abort action.

Part-action mode action list

| Number (key operation) | Action |
|---------------------------|--|
| 11 | (右腕) 手を振る (ループ) (Wave right hand (loop)) |
| 12 | (左腕) 手を振る (ループ) (Wave left hand (loop)) |
| 13 | (顔) うなずく (Nod head) |
| 14 | (右腕) おいでおいで (ループ) (Beckon with right hand (loop)) |
| 15 | (左腕) おいでおいで (ループ) (Beckon with left hand (loop)) |
| 16 | (顔) 左右プルプル (Shake head sideways) |
| 17 | (顔) 右に傾ける (Tilt head to the right) |
| 18 | (顔) 左に傾ける (Tilt head to the left) |



■ キャラ (男性) Men

This character is a Japanese businessman. He can perform a variety of actions such as nodding his head, laughing and raising his hands.



Full-action mode action list

| Number (key operation) | Action |
|---------------------------|---------------------|
| 1 | うなずく (Nod head) |
| 2 | 笑う (Laugh) |
| 3 | 怒る (Angry) |
| 4 | 驚く (Surprised) |
| 5 | 悩む (Worried) |
| 6 | 携帯電話 (Mobile phone) |
| 7 | 決めポーズ (Last posing) |

Part-action mode action list

| Number (key operation) | Action |
|---------------------------|------------------------------|
| 11 | 右手を上げる (Raise right hand) |
| 44 | 右手を下げる (Put right hand down) |
| 33 | 左手を上げる (Raise left hand) |
| 66 | 左手を下げる (Put left hand down) |
| 88 | 通常ズーム (Normal zoom in) |
| 99 | ズームアップ (Zoom in) |

• Press ① to abort action.

Switching Chara-den During a Videophone Call <Change Chara-den>

Switch to send a different Chara-den during a Videophone call.

While sending Chara-den as a substitute image, press @ 31 [Change Chara-den], select a folder, press , select Chara-den and press [] [OK].

Switching Between Full-action and Part-action <Change Action>

Switch between full-action and part-action while displaying Chara-den.

• Modes are switched between full-action and part-action.

Making Chara-den Perform Actions

Make Chara-den perform actions.

- Alternatively, enter the action number by pressing 1 to 9 to have the character perform an action.
- For preset Chara-den actions, refer to P. 75.
- In Full-action mode, express emotions such as 笑う (laughing) and 怒る (angry).
- Change to Part-action mode to move body parts, jump and dance.
- Perform different actions together in Part-action mode.
- Some Chara-den move the mouths, synchronizing with sound from a microphone.
- For others, actions may not be available.
- Depending on the Chara-den, some actions are performed automatically.

While sending Chara-den as a substitute image, press ☑ [Action], press , for 1+ seconds or press ◙ 3 [Action list].



| To perform action | Select an action \rightarrow \blacksquare | |
|--------------------|---|--|
| | To end action: Press ①. | |
| To display details | | |

Setting the Image to Send to the Other Party

- Use JPEG or GIF images saved in My picture of Data box that are set to **QCIF: 176x144** (WxH). (Animated GIFs are not available.)
- Still pictures that are restricted for output from the FOMA terminal are not available. Images shot with the FOMA terminal are available regardless of File restriction. (Images shot with picture memo are not available.)
- Still pictures saved onto a microSD Memory Card are not available directly. Copy to the Acquired data folder in My picture of the FOMA terminal handset.

Changing Image to Send During Call <Change Send Img>

Change the image to send during a Videophone call.

During a Videophone call, press (3) [Change send img] and select image to send.



 Press I [Subst img] during a Videophone call to send the substitute image set by Substitute image. Press I [My side] to return to the self-portrait.

| To send the self-portrait | | 1 |
|---------------------------|---------------|--|
| To send a | Still picture | $\textcircled{2} \rightarrow \text{select folder} \rightarrow \textcircled{\bullet} \rightarrow \text{select still picture} \rightarrow \textcircled{\bullet}$ |
| substitute | Chara-den | $3 \rightarrow$ select folder $\rightarrow \bullet \rightarrow$ select Chara-den $\rightarrow \bullet$ |
| image | | |

• This setting is disabled when a Videophone call ends.

©Disney

Related Operations

Zoom in and zoom out <Zoom in/Zoom out>

- **1** During a Videophone call, press \bigcirc or \bigcirc .
- 2 Press 🖸 (zoom in) or 🖸 (zoom out).
 - Press \square for the maximum zoom and \square for the minimum zoom.

Switch between main camera and sub camera <Main/sub camera>

During a Videophone call, press \square or \square \square \square \square .

Send a still picture from Data box <File playback>

- During a Videophone call, press (34) select folder (1) select still picture (1).
- To send own camera image: Press 🗐 or 🗐 3 1.

Adjust brightness <Brightness>

During a Videophone call, press if for 1+ seconds (brighter) or ... for 1+ seconds (darker).

Note

Zoom in/Zoom out

- Set up to 18 zoom levels for the main camera and two zoom levels for the sub camera.
- Zoom is not available while substitute images are being sent.
- Zoom is not available for the other party's image.
- When the cameras are switched or a Videophone call ends, zoom is disabled.

Main/Sub camera

- Returns to the sub camera after a Videophone call ends.
- If the battery level is (1) or less or if the camera area gets hotter, **Unable to use the main camera at the moment** appears and the main camera becomes unavailable. The main camera in use switches to the substitute image. The sub camera cannot be switched to the main camera.
- When DTMF mode is set to **OFF**, press (III) to switch the cameras.
- During a Videophone call, Auto focus is not available even when the main camera is being used.

Brightness

• 🛃, 🖬, 📾, or 🛃 appears in the upper part of the display.

Note

- Brightness is reset after a Videophone call ends.
- Brightness cannot be adjusted while a substitute image is being sent.

Changing Substitute Image When Making a Call <V.phone Image>

Enter a phone number, press 651 [V.phone image] and select an image to send.

- To call from the redial details/received calls/phonebook entry details screen, press 6 1.
- The setting is only enabled for one time.

| Self-portrait | |
|---------------|--|
| Substitute | $2 \rightarrow$ select folder $\rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow$ select Chara-den $\rightarrow \blacksquare$ |
| image | ● To check Chara-den, select Chara-den and press . Press œ and the previous |
| | screen reappears. |

Setting a Substitute Image <Substitute Image>

Default setting Dimo

- Set a still picture or Chara-den (2 P. 310) as the substitute image during a Videophone call.
- Use JPEG or GIF images saved in My picture of Data box that are set to **QCIF: 176x144** (WxH). (Animated GIFs are not available.)
- Still pictures that are restricted for output from the FOMA terminal are not available.



• To check image, select an image and press •. Press • and the previous screen reappears.

Note

- Press 📱 during a Videophone call to send the set substitute image.
- While sending a still picture as substitute image, the still picture is sent to the other party with Camera OFF superimposed. If Chara-den is set, Camera OFF does not appear.
- Substitute images are sent in the following order.

| | Priority (high \rightarrow low) |
|-------|--|
| Image | Set substitute image in the phonebook \rightarrow Set substitute image in the Videophone setting |

Related Operations

Change On hold and Hold images <On hold image/Hold image>

- **1** In stand-by, press **•** 6 4 2.
- **2** For On hold image settings, press 2.
 - To set On hold substitute image: Press 3.
- 3 Select folder ▶ ▶ select image ▶ :

Note

The default setting is テレビ電話代替 for both.

Setting Outgoing Image Quality <Visual Preference>

Default setting Normal

Set the quality of the image sent during a Videophone call.

In stand-by, press <a>6 6 4 5 and select an image quality.

| al preference | ● To set during a Videophone call, press | | |
|------------------------|---|-----|---|
| rnal I Prefer img qual | | 1 | To place emphasis on shape and color |
| refer motion spd | Normal | 2 | To create a balance of clarity and movement |
| | Prefer motion spd | (3) | To place emphasis on movement |

Note

Visua 1 Pr 2 No 3 Pr

- The image quality setting during a Videophone call is only temporary. When a Videophone call is ended, the image quality returns to the quality set in stand-by with •6.45 [Visual preference].
- Image quality settings for the sender and receiver during a Videophone call differ.

Hands-free V.phone

Setting Hands-free Videophone

Default setting ON

Set whether to automatically switch to Hands-free for Videophone calls. When Hands-free is set, hear the other party's voice through the speaker and talk while viewing their image.

- Please use in a place where it will not disturb others.
- Speak from 20 to 40 cm away from the mouthpiece. When the surroundings are noisy, sound may break up and the call may not be satisfactory.

In stand-by, press \bullet 6 4 7 and 1 [ON].

To Turn Hands-free On and Off During a Call

During a Videophone call, press

- Press 🕥 to turn the Hands-free on and off.
- Image: spears during the hands-free operation.

Note

- When using Hands-free outdoors or in a location where surroundings are noisy, use the flat-plug earphone/ microphone with switch (sold separately).
- If sound breaks up during a Hands-free call, lower earpiece volume.

Videophone Set

Setting the Image During Videophone Calls

Change the image displayed during Videophone calls.

• The following items can be set. Refer to P. 77 and P. 80 for setting details.

| Item | Setting details | Default setting |
|---------------------------|--|-----------------|
| Brightness | Adjusts the brightness of camera image in five levels. | ±0 |
| Display setting | Changes both party's display method. | Show me small |
| Subscreen display setting | Sets the location of the subscreen. | Upper left |
| Lighting | Sets the light duration for the display for a Videophone call. | Always ON |
| Self-portrait | Sets self-portrait to Reverse off, Reverse on, or Pause. | Reverse on |

Setting the Videophone Display <Display setting>

- Videophone display settings remain even after a Videophone call ends.
- Select from the following four settings.









Show me small

During a Videophone call, press 251 [Display setting].

- Alternatively, press •643 in stand-by.
- 2 Select a display method and press
 .

Setting the Videophone Subscreen <Subscreen disp>

- If the subscreen is set to *Lower right*, the call duration, brightness and sent/received image icons appear on the lower left.
- The subscreen position setting remains even after a Videophone call ends.
- Select from the following two settings.





Upper left

During a Videophone call, press 652 [Subscreen disp].

• Alternatively, press • 6 4 4 in stand-by.

Select a display location and press .

Related Operations

Set light <Lighting>

- 1 During a Videophone call, press 654.
 - In stand-by: Press 26413.
- 2 Press 2.
 For Same as normal: Press 1.

Send own image as still picture <Pause>

During a Videophone call, press 351.

• To undo: Press 📱 or 💷.

Set own image as normal image <Reverse on/off> During a Videophone call, press 2352.

Note

Lighting

- If Same as normal is set, the duration is what was set by normal of Display light time.
- Note that increasing light duration shortens the continuous stand-by time.
- The setting for Lighting remains even after a Videophone call ends.

Self-portrait (Pause, Reverse on/off)

- The image appears in normal orientation to the other party regardless of settings.
- Paused camera image can also be sent.
- Reverse on reverses image orientation as if viewing in a mirror. Reverse off returns image to normal.
- While substitute image is being sent, Self-portrait is not available.
- While paused, your image is sent to the other party with *Inactive* superimposed.
- Self-portrait is reset after a Videophone call ends.

Changing Videophone Settings

Switching Transmission Speed to 32K <Connection Speed>

Default setting 64K

Switch to 32K transmission for connecting to devices such as PHS phones for which 64K cannot be used due to network conditions.

Enter a phone number and press 6 5 2 [Connection speed].

• To call from the redial details/received calls details/phonebook entry details screen, press 62.

Press 2 [32K] and 🔳 [V.phone].

- appears.
- The setting is only enabled for one time.



Redialing as Voice Call Automatically <Redial Voice Call>

Default setting OFF

If a 64K Videophone call is made to the other party in a 32K area, the transmission speed is automatically switched to 32K and redialed.



• If Videophone communication is started, Redial voice call is not performed.

Note

- If a call is redialed as a voice call, voice call charges are incurred.
- Note that Redial voice call may not work if a call is placed to an ISDN synchronous 64K, PIAFS access point or an ISDN Videophone that does not support the 3G-324M standard (PP P. 48) (as of October 2006), or if an invalid phone number is dialed by mistake. In addition, charges may be incurred.

Setting to Switch Between Voice Call and Videophone

Default setting Indication ON

This setting lets the other party know whether the FOMA terminal can be switched between voice call and Videophone.

- When Notify switch mode is set to Indication OFF, the other party cannot switch the call.
- Notify switch mode cannot be changed during voice calls, Videophone calls or outside the service area.



In stand-by, press • 6 4 6 and select the notify setting.

| To activate | $1 \rightarrow \textbf{Yes} \rightarrow \bullet$ |
|-------------------|--|
| To stop | $2 \rightarrow \text{Yes} \rightarrow \bullet$ |
| To check settings | 3 |

Packet Trans Arr Act

Selecting Actions for Incoming Videophone Calls During i-mode

Default setting V-phone priority

Set actions for Videophone calls received during packet transmission.

 Videophone calls, during PushTalk transmission, Software update, Pattern definitions update or data transmission using packet transmission, are rejected.



In stand-by, press <a>6 <a>6 <a>8 <a>8 <a>8

| Videophone priority | 1 | Answers incoming Videophone calls. |
|------------------------------|---|--|
| Packet transmission priority | 2 | Rejects incoming Videophone calls. |
| Voice Mail | 3 | Automatically connects to Voice Mail Service. |
| Call forwarding | 4 | Automatically connects to Call forwarding Service. |

- V-phone priority setting does not automatically end packet transmission unless the Videophone is answered. (The packet transmission is disconnected when the call is answered.)
- To set to Voice Mail or Call forwarding, registration for the respective service is required.

Picture Memo

Saving Other Party's Image as a Still Picture

During a Videophone call, take a still picture of the other party.

- When Display Setting is set to *Me*, Picture memo cannot be selected.
- The shot size applicable to still picture is **QCIF: 176×144** (W×H).

During a Videophone call, press (ⓐ) (ⓐ) [Picture memo] and press (■) [ⓑ].

- While still pictures are being shot, your image is sent to the other party with Recording superimposed.
- Shutter does not sound.
- The still picture is recorded and *Saving* appears.
- The picture is saved to the *Camera* folder in My picture of Data box.
- The picture cannot be output from the FOMA terminal.

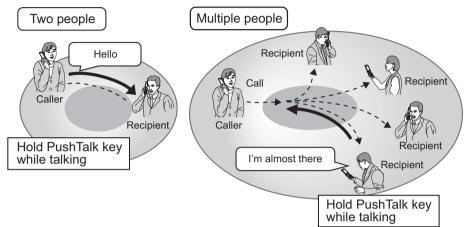
PushTalk

| PushTalk | |
|---|---------------------------|
| Sending PushTalk Transmissions | |
| Adding a Member During PushTalk Transmission | <add member="">86</add> |
| Receiving PushTalk Transmissions | |
| Adding to PushTalk Phonebook | shTalk Phonebook>88 |
| Using PushTalk Phonebook to Send PushTalk Transmissions | |
| Deleting PushTalk Phonebook Entries | |
| Setting PushTalk Send/Receive Options | <set pushtalk="">93</set> |

PushTalk

Press the PushTalk key, recall PushTalk phonebook entries, select the other party and press the PushTalk key again to easily communicate with multiple people at once (up to five including yourself). Transmission fees are incurred each time the key is pressed and transmission is sent. Voice can only be transmitted while the key is pressed. Other members can only listen while someone is speaking. 903i series allows adding the other party or calling a disconnected party again. Information about the members, such as who is currently speaking, is indicated on the screen. PushTalk is useful when speaking to specific groups or conveying short information.

 Compatible models: 902i series, 902iS series, 903i series, SO902iWP+, SH902iSL, N902iX HIGH-SPEED, P702i, P702iD, SH702iS



PushTalk Plus

Use PushTalk Plus to access a phonebook saved on the network and to communicate with up to 20 people (including yourself) at once. In addition, enjoy other useful functions such as checking the status of other members with more convenient use than PushTalk. Subscription is required to use PushTalk Plus. • Refer to the PushTalk Plus guide provided at the time of subscription for details of the service.

PushTalk transmission screen layout

| 1 Publici k transmission Publici k transmission 3 Friend J 4 Docono Taro X Obsorrectar 4 Keitai Akik Calling Keitai Akik Calling Keitai Akik Calling | ①: PushTalk in progress ② Speaker's name: Name of the person who is currently speaking (Phone number when not saved in phonebook) Myself: When you are the speaker (has the right to speak) No display: Nobody is speaking ?: When the speaker is not identified Name appears if saved in the FOMA terminal handset phonebook. Image also appears if phonebook Picture call is set. If the call is transmitted from PushTalk Plus, the name saved in the network phonebook appears, and the image does not appear even if Picture call is set. ③ Group name: Group name saved in the PushTalk phonebook or the network phonebook appears. ④ Members: Name appears if saved in the FOMA terminal handset phonebook. If the call is transmitted from PushTalk Plus, the name saved in the network phonebook appears. ④ Members: Name appears if saved in the FOMA terminal handset phonebook. If the call is transmitted from PushTalk Plus, the name saved in the network phonebook appears. Phone number appears for unregistered participants. ⑤ (red): Hands-free in progress ⑤ Status of members: Transmission status of each member is shown. When a status changes while connected, a tone indicating that the user is connected or disconnected (leaving PushTalk) sounds and the status shown changes. ● Scroll bar appears when all members. ⑦ Connected: Participating in PushTalk. ⑤ Disconnected*: No reply, the other party has ended PushTalk, the other |
|--|--|
| | |
| | party is out of the service area or the other party has power turned off. |
| | 9 Driving*: The other party has Public mode (Drive mode) set. |
| | Calling*: Ringing the other party. |
| | * Appears only when PushTalk transmission is in progress with three or more participants. |

Sending PushTalk Transmissions

Use packet transmissions and press the PushTalk button to communicate easily. Have conversation one on one or with multiple people.

- Only one person can speak at once. Press 🖻 (P) to get the right to speak.
- Voice can only be transmitted when granted the right to speak. When granted the right to speak, other people's voices are inaudible.
- PushTalk charges are incurred for the caller while (P) is pressed and right to speak is being granted.
- Save PushTalk phonebook entries to easily communicate with those members.

In stand-by, dial the phone number.

- Alternatively, use one of the following methods.
 - From the PushTalk phonebook (© P. 90)
 - From the FOMA terminal handset phonebook (P. 107)
 - From Redial (© P. 52)
 - From Received calls (CP P. 54)
 - Using Phone To function (1 P. 201)

Press Press

• Of flashes at the upper left of the display while dialing.

M) Dialing PushTal

- When the other party replies, a tone indicating that the user is connected sounds,
- 090XXXXXXXX
- Ights and the PushTalk transmission screen appears. • To switch to hands-free on and off, press (4), Switching is not available while (P^h) is pressed.

PushTalk dialing screen

Press 🗹 (P) when speaker's name is blank. When *Myself* appears, speak while pressing $\mathbb{P}(\mathbb{P})$.

- A right-obtained tone sounds when the right to speak is granted and *Myself* is shown for the speaker's name.
- An error tone sounds if $\mathbb{P}(\mathbb{P})$ is pressed while another person is speaking.
- Release
 P(P) when finished speaking. A right-released tone sounds.

Press (a) to end the transmissions.

The number of times the right to speak was granted is shown and the stand-by display reappears.

Note

- When the caller disconnects the transmission, all participants are disconnected.
- PushTalk calls cannot be made to emergency numbers (110, 119, and 118).
- There is a time limit when speaking. If the right to speak keeps obtained for a set time, a tone indicating that the speaking time is over sounds and the right to speak is terminated.
- PushTalk is not available during voice calls, Videophone calls and data transmission.
- i-mode transmission is disconnected if PushTalk transmission is sent during i-mode.
- When Set PushTalk arrival action is set to Answer, press at to end PushTalk transmission and answer voice calls received during PushTalk transmission. Refer to "Selecting Actions for Incoming Calls During a Transmission" on P. 93 for details on Set PushTalk arrival action.
- When a voice call is received while a hands-free call is in progress, hands-free is disabled if the voice call is answered.
- i-mode is not available during PushTalk transmission.
- PushTalk is automatically disconnected when no one speaks for a set amount of time.
- When the PushTalk sender has set PushTalk caller ID setting to Send ID, phone numbers for the caller and all members are notified. If set to No ID, No ID appears for the speaker and members fields on the handsets of all the members who received the transmission. The phone number is important personal information. Be careful when sending caller ID.
- Approximate number of times the right to speak was obtained appears when PushTalk transmission is ended. 999 is the maximum value that appears. When exceeded, *** appears.

Send PushTalk transmissions from Received calls/Redial

In stand-by, press \bigcirc b select the received calls history b P (P).

In stand-by, press \bigcirc > select Redial > \bigcirc (\square).

Return to a PushTalk conversation with multiple members after disconnecting

When a PushTalk call for multiple members is answered and PushTalk is disconnected, or when a PushTalk call cannot be answered, the transmissions can only be rejoined by calling the member from the Received calls if the PushTalk transmissions are still in progress. • If the PushTalk transmission has been ended, a new transmission is sent from you.

In stand-by, press \bigcirc b select the received calls history b P (P).

Add Member

Adding a Member During PushTalk Transmission

When a PushTalk sender is Myself, add a member during PushTalk transmission.

- When calling from PushTalk Plus, a member cannot be added.
- Even if a member is added during transmission, it is not recorded in Redial Calls. It is not recorded in Received Calls on the other party's terminal that has been already in transmission.

Press 🖻 1 [Add member] during PushTalk transmission.

 Alternatively, press I [Add member] during PushTalk transmission to add a member.



PT member list ✓Docomo Haruko ✓Docomo Taro ✓Keitai Akiko ✓Keitai Hanako



Select an adding method and send the transmission.

| 1/1 | To select a member from FOMA terminal handset phonebook | $\boxed{1} \rightarrow \text{select a name} \rightarrow \boxed{\bullet} \ [\text{Dial}]$ |
|-----|---|--|
| | To select a member from PushTalk phonebook | ② → select a name and $\overline{\bullet}$ (repeatable) → $\boxed{0}$ [Dial] |
| | To enter directly | $3 \rightarrow \text{enter phone number} \rightarrow \texttt{I}$ [Dial] |

Add up to five members including self as many times as necessary.

When a member is selected from PushTalk phonebook

- The number of members that can be added at once is up to five followed by the next conditions.
 - When a member is selected from the PushTalk phonebook: Three
 - When a member is selected from the FOMA terminal handset phonebook or directly enter a number: One

Note

- When the other party on the PushTalk transmission uses a model which does not support the Add member function, the other party's terminal may operate as follows:
 - When a member is added, the added member does not appear and a tone indicating that the member is connected does not sound.
 - When an added member speaks, ? appears for the speaker field.
 - When an added member leaves PushTalk, a tone indicating that the member is disconnected does not sound.

Note

- When a PushTalk sender has set PushTalk caller ID setting to Send ID, the sender and all members' phone numbers are sent to all the members including the added members. If set to No ID, No ID appears for the speaker and member fields on the handsets of all the members including the added members. However, when the other party on the PushTalk transmission uses a model which does not support the Add member function, the added members do not appear on the other party's screen regardless of the caller ID setting.
- When Function lock is applied to the phonebook, a member to add cannot be selected from the FOMA terminal handset phonebook or PushTalk phone book. Adding a member by direct input is not available while Keypad dial lock is set.

Receiving PushTalk Transmissions

When PushTalk is received, ring tone sounds and called LED flashes.

Press 🖻 (р) or 🕥.

- A PushTalk call can also be received with Any key answer. (CP P. 65)
- A call is answered with hands-free if the FOMA terminal is closed. The operation follows Hands-free PT if the FOMA terminal is opened. (127 P. 91, P. 94)
- O at the upper left of the display lights and the PushTalk transmission screen appears.
- Transmission procedures are the same as for "Sending PushTalk Transmissions" on P. 85.

PressTto end the transmissions.

Note

- When <u>Set auto answer</u> is set to **ON**, received PushTalk calls are automatically answered with hands-free. However, calls are not answered automatically even if Set auto answer is set to **ON** while in <u>Manner mode</u>.
- PushTalk cannot be placed on hold.
- To accept or reject calls from specified callers, set Accept calls, Reject calls and Reject unknown. The settings are common with voice/Videophone call. However, they are not applied to transmissions from the PushTalk Plus.
- PushTalk calls received during a voice call, Videophone call or data transmission are not connected. During a voice call, the call is recorded in Received calls and *xx missed call(s)* appears in stand-by. During a Videophone call or data communication, the call is not recorded.
- When a Videophone call, 64K data communication or different PushTalk call is received during PushTalk transmission, the call is recorded in Received calls and the PushTalk transmission is continued. When Set PushTalk arrival action is set to Answer, press to end PushTalk transmission and answer voice calls received during PushTalk transmission. If Set PushTalk arrival act is set to other than Answer, the call is recorded in Received calls and the PushTalk transmission is continued.
- When i-mode arrival act is set to PushTalk preferred, i-mode transmission is disconnected and PushTalk is connected if PushTalk is received during i-mode. When set to i-mode preferred, PushTalk is not connected nor recorded in Received calls. The default setting is PushTalk preferred.
- When a PushTalk call is received while Public mode (Drive mode) is set and the handset is turned on, the call is not connected but is recorded in Received calls and xx missed call(s) appears in stand-by. Driving appears for the status on the other member's transmission screen. The message does not appear if the other party is one person.

Key operations while receiving a call

| Style | Disconnected | Quick silent (1 P. 125) | Manner mode (I P. 125) |
|--------|----------------------|-------------------------|------------------------|
| Open | 8 | Ħ | (for 1+ seconds) |
| Closed | (b) (for 1+ seconds) | d) 🖻 | - |

Adding to PushTalk Phonebook

Entries saved to the PushTalk phonebook are also saved to the FOMA terminal handset phonebook.

Save entry to the FOMA terminal handset phonebook and save the name, reading and one phone number to the PushTalk phonebook. Save entries already saved in the FOMA terminal phonebook to the PushTalk phonebook. Up to 750 entries can be saved in the PushTalk phonebook. (IPP P. 96)

Entry items

| lcon | Item | Details |
|------|--------------------------|--|
| 2 | Name | Enter name. Enter up to 32 single-byte (16 double-byte) characters. |
| R | Reading | Reading is entered automatically. Can be edited. Enter up to 32 single-byte characters. |
| Ŕ | PushTalk group | Save the entry to a PushTalk group. Groups 1 to 9 are available. Group names can be changed. |
| 8 | PushTalk phone number | Save phone number for PushTalk. |

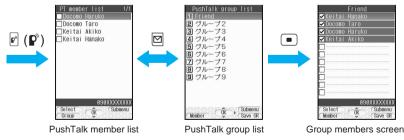
In stand-by, press $\mathbb{P}(\mathbb{P})$ and press $\mathbb{P}(1)$ [New] in the PushTalk member list screen ($\mathbb{P} P. 88$).

Select a saving method and save phonebook entry.

| To select from phonebook | → select name → ● When multiple phone numbers are saved, select a phone number to use for PushTalk and press ●. |
|-----------------------------|---|
| To enter directly | ② → enter name → ● → enter phone number → ● → select phone number type icon → ● → ● → ● FOMA terminal handset phonebook name entry screen appears. Refer to P. 96 "Adding to FOMA Terminal Handset Phonebook" for details on saving methods. When multiple phone numbers are saved, select a phone number to use for PushTalk after saving to the FOMA terminal handset phonebook and press ●. |

PushTalk phonebook

Select a group from the PushTalk group list screen or select members from the PushTalk member list screens to send a transmission to the members saved in the PushTalk phonebook. Press [Member]/ [Group] to switch between the PushTalk group list screen and the PushTalk member list screen.



Registering to PushTalk Group <Group>

Set groups in the PushTalk phonebook to easily call all members of a PushTalk group. (Save up to 19 members per group. Up to four people can be called simultaneously.) Set up to nine groups. Edit default group names ($\mathcal{J}\mathcal{V}\mathcal{I}\mathcal{I}^{1}$ to $\mathcal{J}\mathcal{V}\mathcal{I}\mathcal{I}^{2}$).

Creating a new PushTalk group <New group>

To create a new group, delete an already registered group from $\mathcal{I}\mathcal{W}-\mathcal{I}1$ to $\mathcal{I}\mathcal{W}-\mathcal{I}9$ in advance. (CFP. 92)

1

In the PushTalk member list screen (@P. 88), press 1 [New group].

• In the PushTalk group list screen, press 11.



Enter PushTalk group name and press •.

• Enter up to 20 single-byte (10 double-byte) characters for a PushTalk group name.

Related Operations

Edit PushTalk group name <Edit group name>

- In PushTalk member list screen, press <a>[5]
 In the PushTalk group list screen: Select group
 In the PushTalk group list screen: Select group
- 2 Edit group name ▶ •.

Registering to PushTalk group <Add PushTalk group>

Save PushTalk phonebook entries that are already saved as PushTalk members.

In the PushTalk member list screen (P. 88), select name and press i [Select].

• When nothing is checked, only the entry at the position of the cursor is selected.

Press 4 [Add PushTalk group].

- **3** Select PushTalk group, press **•**, select location to save to and press **•**.
 - If the selected location already has a member saved, the member is overwritten. The same phone number cannot be saved more than once to the same group.
 - Selecting a save location is not necessary if multiple members are selected in step 1.

Related Operations

Register to PushTalk group from PushTalk group list <Add PushTalk group>

- In the PushTalk group list screen, select group ▶ □ or @13.
 In the group member screen: Press □ or @23.
- 2 Select member and press
 (repeatable)

 .

Editing PushTalk phonebook entries <Edit data>

Change phone numbers and groups of saved PushTalk phonebook entries.

In the PushTalk member list screen (P. 88), select name and press 2 [Edit data].

Select item, press and edit.

- Other phone numbers saved to the FOMA terminal handset phonebook entry are available.
- $\bullet\,$ To change groups, select the group to change, press $\boxdot,$ check the save list and press $\boxdot.$



Using PushTalk Phonebook to Send PushTalk Transmissions

Call from the PushTalk phonebook. Save members in the PushTalk phonebook in advance.

Sending from PushTalk groups

Transmit to up to four people at once.

In stand-by, press 🖻 (P) and select the other party.

| To select group (to send PushTalk transmissions to all members of the group) | |
|--|--|
| To select multiple members from a group | Select group with :→ ● → select name [[Select] (repeatable) (□ → ♥) When nothing is checked, only the party at the position of the cursor is selected. |

2

Press 🖻 (₽).

- Transmission procedures are the same as "Sending PushTalk Transmissions" on P. 85.
- When transmission is sent with five or more members saved in a group, *Exceeds max number of simultaneous calls* appears. Select up to four members and send transmission.

Selecting the other party and sending a transmission

Select the other party from the PushTalk member list screen and send a transmission.

In stand-by, press 🖻 (P).

 \bullet If the PushTalk group selection screen appears, press \boxtimes [Member].

Select name and press 🔳.

 Alternatively, enter reading to search. The cursor moves to the closest entry after each character is entered.

🍳 Press 🖻 (₽̀).

Related Operations

Receive transmissions automatically <Set auto answer> In the PushTalk member list screen, press @ 6 1 ▶ 1.

Change arrival actions <Set PT arrival act>

- In the PushTalk member list screen, press 62.
- To connect to Voice Mail Service: Press 1.
- To connect to Call forwarding Service: Press 2.
- To reject calls: Press 3.
- To answer calls: Press 4.

Set the ring duration <Ring time setting>

- 1 In the PushTalk member list screen, press 63.
- 2 Press 1 benter duration of ring tone (two digits: 01 to 60 seconds) be.

Set the operation when the phone is folded during PushTalk transmission <Set when folded>

- In the PushTalk member search screen, press 64.
- To end transmission: Press 1.
- To play the other party's voice through the speakers: Press 2.

Send members' numbers <Caller ID setting>

In the PushTalk member list screen, press 6 5 1.

Switch to Hands-free when PushTalk transmissions start <Hands-free PT> In the PushTalk member list screen, press @66 ▶ 1.

Note

Set auto answer

- The default setting is OFF.
- When a call is received with Auto answer, the call is automatically switched to hands-free. Auto answer is not available while in Manner mode.
- The Set auto answer in the PushTalk phonebook is linked with the Set PushTalk (P. 385) in Set auto answer. Setting one of them to **ON** switches the other to **ON**.

Set PT arrival actions

- The default setting is Answer.
- To set to Voice Mail or Call Forwarding, subscription to the respective service is required. If Voice Mail or Call Forwarding is set without subscription, a voice call is set to Answer.

Ring time setting

- The default setting is **ON**.
- When calls are not answered within the set duration in a transmission with multiple people, **Disconnected** appears on the other members' transmission screens.
- Ring time setting cannot be selected when Set auto answer is set to ON.
- The Ring time setting in the PushTalk phonebook is linked with the PushTalk ring time setting in the Ring time setting (IPP P. 123). Setting one of them to **ON** switches the other to **ON**.

Set when folded

- The default setting is **Speaker phone**.
- Select to end the transmission or activate speakers when the FOMA terminal is closed.
- The Set when folded in the PushTalk phonebook is linked with the Set PushTalk in the Set when folded (2 P. 66). Changing one of them changes the other.

Caller ID setting

- The default setting is No caller ID.
- Regardless of the Notify caller ID setting, when the PushTalk sender has set PushTalk caller ID setting to Send ID, the sender and all members' phone numbers are sent to all the members including the added members. If set to No ID, No ID appears for speaker and members fields on the handsets of all the members including the added members. However, when the other party on the PushTalk transmission uses a model which does not support the Add member function, the added members do not appear on the other party's screen regardless of the caller ID setting.

Hands-free PT

- The default setting is **ON**.
- The setting is switched to hands-free regardless of Hands-free PT if the FOMA terminal is closed.

Network connection

• A PushTalk Plus subscription is required to use the network connection.

Deleting PushTalk Phonebook Entries

In the PushTalk member list screen (P. 88), select a member and press 3 [Delete].

- When the PushTalk group list screen appears, press 🖾 [Member].
- Member selection is not necessary for Delete selected, Delete all in group and Delete all.

Select deletion method.

| To delete one phonebook entry | 1 |
|---|---|
| To delete entries collectively | ② → select member ● (repeatable) → 圖 ● Press Ĩ [SelAll] or Ĩ [CIrAll] to select or disable all. |
| To delete all entries in a group created in the FOMA terminal handset phonebook | $\textcircled{3} \rightarrow \text{select group} \rightarrow \textcircled{\bullet} \rightarrow \text{enter terminal security code} \rightarrow \textcircled{\bullet}$ |
| To delete all PushTalk phonebook entries | $4 \rightarrow \text{enter terminal security code} \rightarrow \bullet$ |

3

Select a deletion method for the FOMA terminal handset phonebook, select *Yes* and press •.

| To only delete from PushTalk phonebook | 1 |
|---|--|
| To also delete from the FOMA terminal handset phonebook | Entries are deleted from FOMA terminal handset phonebook and PushTalk phonebook. |

Deleting PushTalk Groups < Delete>

In the PushTalk group list screen (P P. 88), select group and press 2 [Delete].

• When the PushTalk member list screen appears, press 🖾 [Group].

2

Select a deletion method, select Yes and press .

| To delete one group | 1 |
|----------------------|---|
| To delete all groups | 2 |

Deleting Members from PushTalk Groups <Delete from Group>

In the PushTalk group list screen (P P. 88), select group and press .

• When the PushTalk member list screen appears, press 🖾 [Group].

Select member, press (a) 1 [Delete from group] and select a deletion method.

| To delete one member | $1 \rightarrow \text{Yes} \rightarrow \blacksquare$ |
|--------------------------------|--|
| | ② → select member ● (repeatable) → 圖 → Yes → ● ● Press Ĩ [SelAll] or Ĩ [CIrAll] to select or disable all. |
| To delete all members in group | $ (\mathfrak{I} \rightarrow Yes \rightarrow \bullet) $ |

Setting PushTalk Send/Receive Options

Set the following items.

| ltem | Setting details | Ref. |
|--------------------|--|--------|
| Caller ID setting | Caller ID setting Set to send own and group member's phone numbers when sending PushTalk transmission. | |
| Ring time setting | Set the duration to sound the PushTalk ring tone. | P. 123 |
| Set auto answer | Set to automatically answer PushTalk transmissions. | P. 385 |
| Set PT arrival act | Set actions for voice calls received during PushTalk transmissions. | P. 93 |
| i-mode arrival act | Set to receive/reject PushTalk transmissions received during i-mode transmissions. | P. 205 |
| Hands-free PT | Set whether to automatically switch to Hands-free when PushTalk transmissions start. | P. 94 |
| Set when folded | Set <i>Finish call</i> or <i>Speaker phone</i> (other party's voice is heard through the speakers) to engage when the FOMA terminal is closed during a transmission. | P. 66 |
| Set mute ring time | Set the number of seconds to delay the start of ring tone for calls from unknown callers and calls with no ID. This setting applies to both voice/Videophone calls. | P. 162 |
| Reconnect | Set to automatically reconnect when a transmission is disconnected due to signal conditions. This setting is applied to both voice/Videophone calls. | P. 62 |

Sending Own and Member's Phone Number <Caller ID Setting>

Default setting No ID

In stand-by, press •661 and 1 [Send ID].

Note

 Regardless of the Notify caller ID setting, when the PushTalk sender has set PushTalk caller ID setting to Send ID, the sender and all members' phone numbers are sent to all the members including the added members. If set to No ID, No ID appears for speaker and members' fields on the handsets of all the members including the added members.

However, when the other party on the PushTalk transmission uses a model which does not support the Add member function, the added members do not appear on the other party's screen regardless of the caller ID setting.

 When multiple caller ID settings are set/operated simultaneously at the time of PushTalk transmission, caller ID is prioritized in the following order.

| | Priority (high $ ightarrow$ low) | | |
|-------------------|---|--|--|
| Caller ID Setting | Caller ID is set when calling \rightarrow PushTalk caller ID setting is set | | |

Selecting Actions for Incoming Calls During a Transmission <Set PT Arrival Act>

Default setting Answer

In stand-by, press <a>66 <a>2 and select an arrival action.

| Voice Mail | 1 | Automatically connect to Voice Mail Service. |
|-----------------|---|---|
| Call Forwarding | 2 | Automatically connect to Call forwarding Service. |
| Call Rejection | 3 | Reject calls. |
| Answer | 4 | Select to continue PushTalk transmission or end and answer the incoming voice call. |

• To set to Voice Mail or Call Forwarding, subscription to the respective service is required. If Voice Mail or Call Forwarding is set without subscription, a voice call is set to Answer.

Setting PushTalk Hands-free Operation <Hands-free PT>

Default setting ON

Set whether to automatically switch to Hands-free when PushTalk transmissions start. • The setting is switched to hands-free regardless of Hands-free PT if the FOMA terminal is closed.

In stand-by, press \bullet 6 6 3 and press 1.

• To disable: Press 2.

Phonebook

| Phonebooks Available on FOMA Terminal | |
|--|-------------------------------------|
| Adding to FOMA Terminal Handset Phonebook | <add phonebook="" to="">96</add> |
| • Saving to FOMA Card Phonebook | FOMA Card Phonebook>103 |
| Saving to Phonebook from Redial and Received Calls | |
| Setting Groups | <group settings="">105</group> |
| Making Calls from Phonebook | <search phonebook="">107</search> |
| Editing Phonebook Entries | <edit entries="">111</edit> |
| Deleting Phonebook Entries | <delete entries="">112</delete> |
| Saving (Restoring/Updating) Phonebook to Data Storage Center | er |
| | <data sec.="" service="">112</data> |
| Hiding Private Numbers | <set secret="">113</set> |
| Calling and Sending Mail with a Few Key Strokes <2-to | ouch Dialing/2-touch Mail>113 |
| Using Data Security Service | |

Phonebooks Available on FOMA Terminal

Use FOMA terminal handset phonebook and FOMA card phonebook. Save items such as names, phone numbers and mail addresses for FOMA terminal handset and FOMA card phonebooks.

The FOMA terminal also features a phonebook exclusively for PushTalk.

FOMA Terminal Handset Phonebook, FOMA Card Phonebook and PushTalk Phonebook

• Entries saved in FOMA card phonebook are available even if your FOMA card is inserted into other FOMA terminals. To use phonebook on other FOMA terminals, save numbers in FOMA card phonebook.

| FOMA terminal handset phonebook | | FOMA card phonebook | PushTalk phonebook | |
|-------------------------------------|--|--|---|--|
| Number of entries | 750 | DoCoMo FOMA card: 50 | 750 | |
| Number of characters for name | Up to 32 single-byte (16 double-byte) characters | Single-byte alphanumerics: up to 21 characters Double-byte, mixed single-byte/double-byte or single-byte katakana: up to ten characters | Up to 32 single-byte (16 double-byte) characters | |
| Reading | Up to 32 single-byte characters | Single-byte alphanumerics: up to 25 characters Double-byte, mixed single-byte/ double-byte: up to 12 characters | Up to 32 single-byte characters | |
| Group settings | 20 groups | 11 groups | Nine groups (PushTalk group © P. 88) | |
| Icon | Phone number: seven types Mail address: four types | - | - | |
| Memory numbers | 000 to 749 | - | - | |
| Phone number | Three per entry (Up to 2,250 phone numbers can be saved in the phonebook.) | One per entry | One per entry | |
| Mail address | Three per entry (Up to 2,250 mail addresses can be saved in the phonebook.) | One per entry | - | |

- : not available

 In addition to the above items, save one entry per item for the following data in the FOMA terminal handset phonebook.

Postal code

- Postal address
- Location info
- Birthday
- Memo

- Select ring tone
- Mail ring tone
- Called LED color
- Called LED pattern
- Mail/Message LED color
- Mail LED pattern
- Image (Picture call)
- Substitute image

Add to Phonebook

Adding to FOMA Terminal Handset Phonebook

Register frequently used phone numbers, names and mail addresses to easily access when calling, or sending i-mode mail or SMS.

- Add still pictures, movies/i-motion, etc. shot with camera to phonebook entries. When a call is received from someone with an image in their phonebook entry, their name, phone number and image appear.
- Save to PushTalk phonebook when saving to the FOMA terminal handset phonebook.

Entry items

| 🎗 (Not registered) | lcon | Item | Details | Reference |
|--|------------|---------------------|--|-----------|
| R (Not registered) ▲ (Not specified) | 2 | Name | Enter name. | P. 98 |
| 🕿 (Not registered) 🕿 (Not registered) | R | Reading | Reading is entered automatically. Can be edited. | P. 98 |
| 雷(Not registered) 引(Not registered) | <i>9</i> 2 | Group | Entries can be sorted in groups. | P. 99 |
| ∰(Not registered) ∰(Not registered) 〒(Not registered) | đ | Phone number | Save up to three numbers. Select from one of seven icons for each phone number. | P. 98 |
| □ (Not registered) ▷ (Not registered) ○ (Not registered) ○ (Not registered) | <u>G</u> | Mail address | Save up to three addresses. Select from one of four icons for each address. | P. 98 |
| ■ (Not registered) ∞ OFF | 두 | Postal code | Enter postal code. | P. 99 |
| 鄙(Not set) ♪Select ring tone | •= | Postal address | Enter postal address. | P. 99 |
| (Not set) J [™] Mail ring tone (Not set) & Called LED color (Not set) | Þ | Location info | Enter location information (date of positioning, latitude, longitude, geographical coordinate system, positioning level). | P. 99 |
| Called LED pattern (Not set) | ۲ | Birthday | Enter a birthday. | P. 99 |
| ⊯Mail LED color (Not set) | | Memo | Save memos. | P. 100 |
| Mail LED pattern (Not set) Picture call set | ▣ | Secret | Keep privacy by hiding phonebook entries. Set to keep phonebook entries private. | P. 100 |
| (Not set) ♥ Substitute image (Not set) | 83 | Secret code | Enter secret code specified by the other party. Use when sending mail. | P. 100 |
| Page ▲ (OK) Page ▼ FOMA terminal | 4 | Select ring tone | Differentiate callers using specific ring tones or Chaku-motion. | P. 100 |
| handset phonebook entry screen | P, | Mail ring tone | Differentiate incoming mail using specific mail ring tones or Chaku-motion. | P. 100 |
| | \$ | Called LED color | Differentiate incoming calls using specific LED colors. | P. 100 |
| | 涤 | Called LED pattern | Set called LED flashing pattern. | P. 100 |
| | P | Mail LED color | Differentiate incoming mail using specific mail LED colors. | P. 100 |
| | Ŗ | Mail LED pattern | Set Mail LED flashing pattern. | P. 100 |
| | 2 | Picture call set | Differentiate incoming/outgoing calls using images. Specific image appears in phonebook list. One still picture or movie/i-motion shot with the camera can be saved. | P. 100 |
| | ۲ | Substitute image | Set still picture or Chara-den for when sending a substitute image during a Videophone call. | P. 100 |

Note

 When upgrading the handset at a DoCoMo Shop or retailer, data saved in the FOMA terminal may not be copied depending on specifications of the new model.

Note information saved in phonebook separately or transfer/store them on a PC using microSD Memory Cards (P. 316) or Data Link Software (P. 438). Data Security Service (P. 112, P. 114, P. 163) (requires a separate subscription) allows you to store the phonebook entries of the FOMA terminal handset to the Data Storage Center.

• Saved content may be lost due to malfunctions, repairs or other handling of the FOMA terminal. DoCoMo shall not be liable for any loss of content.

Basic Saving Operations

Save name, phone number and mail address.

In stand-by, press \square \square \square (2) and press \square [Phone].

• If during a voice call, press 31.

Enter name and press .

| R Docor | io Taro |
|---------|-------------|
| 🙈 (Not | specified) |
| 🕿 (Not | registered) |
| 🕿 (Not | registered) |
| 🕿 (Not | registered) |
| (Not | registered) |
| 1 (Not | registered) |
| 🖹 (Not | registered) |
| ₩ (Not | registered) |
| 🗉 (Not | registered) |
| Not | registered) |
| 🗯 (Not | registered) |

FOMA terminal handset phonebook

entry screen

3

- Enter up to 32 single-byte (16 double-byte) characters for name. Enter up to 32 single-byte characters for reading.
- Reading is automatically entered in R. Changes made to entered name are not reflected automatically.
- Reading is not automatically entered if symbols and pictographs are entered for name or when using 1-touch conversion.
- When reading is incorrect, select R, press
 and correct reading.

Select 🛪, press •, enter phone number and press •.

- Select icon

 Selec
- Always dial the area code, even when the number is in the same area for landline phone numbers.
- Enter up to 26 digits for phone number.
- Phone number may include *¥* or *#* but call may not connect.
- i-mode mail and SMS are not sent properly when a number saved to the phonebook with **186** added is selected as the recipient.
- Press ① for 1+ seconds and enter + and a phone number to save the phone number for an international call.
- Press
 to enter a pause P.
- Press ER and the last digit or character at the cursor is deleted.
- Press @ue for 1+ seconds with the cursor at the end to delete the entire number. When the cursor is at another location, numbers after the cursor are deleted.

Select phone number type icon.

| & Docor | no Taro |
|---------|-------------|
| R Docor | no Taro |
| 🙈 (Not | specified) |
| 🖹 090X | XXXXXXX |
| | registered) |
| | registered) |
| | registered) |
| | registered) |
| 🗿 (Not | registered) |
| ₩ (Not | registered) |
| 🗉 (Not | registered) |
| | registered) |
| 🛎 (Not | registered) |

| 8 | Landline phone | 1 | | Office phone | 5 |
|---|----------------|---|----|--------------|---|
| | Mobile phone | 2 | Ê | Home fax | 6 |
| 2 | Videophone | 3 | 0ª | Office fax | 7 |
| đ | Home phone | 4 | | | |

• Repeat steps 3 and 4 to save multiple phone numbers.

5

6

Select 🔄, press 🔳, enter mail address and press 🔳.

1 I Mobile address 2 I Home address 3 I Work address 4 ⊆ Mail address

Docomo Taro
 R Docomo Taro
 A Docomo Taro
 A (Not specified)
 090XXXXXXXX
 (Not registered)

Streps (Not registered)
 Streps (Not registered)
 Mot registered)
 (Not registered)
 (Not registered)
 (Not registered)
 [(Not registered)
 [(Not registered)
 w(Not registered)

- Enter up to 50 single-byte alphabet, numbers or symbols (not all symbols are available).
- Pictographs are not available.

| To enter @ and period (.) | 1 (multiple times) |
|---------------------------|--|
| phrase | ☑ (for 1+ seconds) ● Enter part of mail address easily. (☞ P. 406) ● Alternatively, press ☑ (for 1+ seconds) and press ⑤ [Internet]. |

Select mail address type icon.

| 3 | Mobile phone mail address | 1 | | Office mail address | 3 |
|---|---------------------------|---|--------|---------------------|---|
| Ŷ | Home mail address | 2 | \sum | Mail address | 4 |

• Repeat steps 5 and 6 to save multiple mail addresses.

Press **I** [Complete] and enter memory number (three digits: 000 to 749).

- Enter name when Complete does not appear in guidance.
- Press

 without entering memory number to save to the lowest available memory number between 010 and 749. The lowest available number between 000 and 009 is used if the above is not available.
- Use 2-touch dialing to call people saved in memory numbers 000 to 099. (1) P. 113)
- After entering memory number, Store in PushTalk phonebook? appears.

2

Select whether to save to PushTalk phonebook.

| To save | Select Yes → ● When two or more phone numbers are saved, select a phone number to use for PushTalk and press ●. |
|-------------|--|
| To not save | Select $No \rightarrow \blacksquare$ |

Note

- When Set secret is set to ON, phonebook entries cannot be overwritten. Set Secret mode to ON.
- To save a phone number or mail address when 750 entries are already saved on the FOMA terminal handset, select a memory number to overwrite an already existing phonebook entry. (Entries in the FOMA card phonebook are not overwritten.)
- Refer to "Checking Available Memory" on P. 329 to check the numbers of the registered entries and the remaining entries in the phonebook.
- Refer to P. 103 for details on copying to FOMA card.
- Refer to P. 320 for details on copying to microSD Memory Card.
- Refer to P. 330 for details on Ir exchange.
- Refer to P. 334 for details on iC transmission.

Alternative methods to specifying memory number

- Enter digit in hundreds column and press •. Entry is saved to the lowest available memory number (**100** to **199** if 1 is entered).
- Enter hundreds and tens column and press .
 Entry is saved to the lowest available memory number (120 to 129 if 12) is entered).

When i-mode mail, SMS or Message R/F is received during editing

• When Receive display is set to Operation first, receive results do not appear. Continue editing.

Symbols and pictographs

• Enter symbols and pictographs for *Name*, *Memo* and *Postal address* in FOMA terminal handset phonebook. Symbols and pictographs may not appear properly when sent by Ir exchange to PCs and mobile phones not supporting i-mode.

Related Operations

Set groups <Select group>

In the phonebook entry screen, select 22 in the phonebook entry screen.

Save postal code

In the phonebook entry screen, select = \rightarrow = \rightarrow enter postal code \rightarrow =.

Save postal address

In the phonebook entry screen, select **I** \blacktriangleright **I** \triangleright enter postal address \triangleright **I**.

• Enter up to 100 single-byte (50 double-byte) characters.

Save location information <Location info>

- In the phonebook entry screen, select **>** .
- Refer to P. 287 for subsequent steps.

Save birthday

In the phonebook entry screen, select 🍘 🕨 🗩 enter birthday 🕨 📼.

• Enter a birthday between January 1, 1900 and December 31, 2099.

Save memo

In the phonebook entry screen, select $\mathbf{X} \triangleright \mathbf{I} \mathbf{I}$ enter memo $\mathbf{I} \mathbf{I}$.

• Enter up to 200 single-byte (100 double-byte) characters.

Save entries as secret data <Set secret>

In the phonebook entry screen, select \bowtie \blacktriangleright \frown 1.

Set Secret code for mail address <Secret code>

- 2 Press 1 [Set].
 - To confirm set Secret code: Press 2.
 - To disable Secret code: Press 3.
- 3 Select i-mode mail address ▶ ▶ enter secret code (four-digit) ▶ Yes ▶ •.

Set ring tone and Chaku-motion <Select ring tone/Mail ring tone>

- 1 In the phonebook entry screen, select 1 Select ring tone \bullet .
 - To personalize mail ring tone: Select P Mail ring tone .
- 2 Press 1 [Normal ring tone].
 - To set Chaku-uta full[®]: Press 2.
 - To set Chaku-motion: Press 3.
 - To disable: Press 4.
- **3** Refer to step 2 on P. 116 and select ring tone.

Set called LED color <Called LED color/Mail LED color>

- In the phonebook entry screen, select & Called LED color ▶ ■.
 To set Mail LED color: Select Mail LED color ▶ ■.
- 2 Select called LED color **•** •.
 - To disable: Press 1.

Set called LED pattern <Called LED pattern/Mail LED pattern>

- 2 Select called LED pattern ▶ .
 - To disable: Press 1.

Set image <Picture call set>

- 1 In the phonebook entry screen, select I Picture call set .
- 2 Press 1 [My picture].
 - To set movie/i-motion: Press 2.
 - To shoot still pictures with camera: Press 3 > shoot.
 - To shoot movies with camera: Press 4 > shoot.
 - To disable image: Press 5.
- 3 Select folder ▶ ▶ select image ▶ ■.

Set Substitute image <Substitute Image>

- 1 In the phonebook entry screen, select (Substitute image) .
- 2 Press 1 [Chara-den].
 - To set still picture: Press 2.
 - To disable Substitute image: Press 3.
- 3 Select folder ▶ ▶ select Chara-den ▶ .
 - To check Chara-den: Select Chara-den ▶ (press CLR to return).

Note

Secret code

- Refer to P. 113 for details on Set secret.
- Only when mail address is *phone number@docomo.ne.jp*, Secret code is available. Refer to P. 219 for details on Secret code.
- Secret code cannot be set as 0000.
- Set Secret code for one mail address from Mail address1 to 3 per each phonebook entry.
- Even if Secret code is set for mail address, Secret code does not appear in the recipient field of compose message screen (127 P. 220).
- For details on setting Secret code, refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode]".
- Mail may not be sent if phone number + Secret code@docomo.ne.jp is saved in phonebook. Change entry to phone number@docomo.ne.jp before saving Secret code.

Select ring tone and Mail ring tone

- Select ring tone from Melody or Music of Data box and Chaku-motion from i-motion.
- Movies/i-motion that are image only, have tickers added or have playback restrictions cannot be set as Chaku-motion.
- Movies/i-motion with images and voice set for Chaku-motion are automatically set as Picture call.
- Movies/i-motion with the Ring tone setting to unavailable or Chaku-uta full[®] with the Full song ring tone and Point ring tone settings to unavailable are not available. (127 P. 327)
- Movies/i-motion copied from microSD Memory Card to FOMA terminal handset cannot be set as Chaku-motion. Record movies on the FOMA terminal handset to use for Chaku-motion.
- Anonymous calls are notified with User unset ring tone set in Select ring tone. When Select ring tone is not set, regular ring tone sounds.
- Calls and mail received while Function lock is applied to phonebook are notified with regular ring tone.
- Calls and mail from parties set as Secret are notified with regular ring tone. To use Select ring tone/Mail ring tone settings, set Secret mode to ON.
- Save entire mail address to use Mail ring tone.
 If mail address is *phone number@docomo.ne.jp*, set only phone number.
- When a movie/i-motion with image and voice is set as Mail ring tone, only the voice may be played except when in stand-by.
- Refer to P. 117 for details on setting the ring tone priority when multiple ring tones are set.

Called LED and Mail/Message LED

- Anonymous calls are notified with regular called LED.
- Calls and mail from parties set as Secret are notified with regular LED. To use called LED and mail/ message LED settings, set Secret mode to ON.
- Calls and mail received while phonebook Function lock is set are notified with regular LED.
- Save entire mail address to use mail/message LED. If mail address is phone number@docomo.ne.jp, set only phone number.
- Refer to P. 139 for details on setting called LED priority when multiple called LED are set.

Picture call

- Image set in Call/Receive display appears during outgoing calls when i-motion is set for Picture call.
- i-motion that are voice only (melodies with no video), movies/i-motion with tickers added, and movies/ i-motion with playback restrictions cannot be set for Picture call.
- Depending on data size, still picture set to Picture call may take more time to display.
- When movies/i-motion are set to Picture call, the first frame is displayed if the images are displayed in the phonebook list.
- Even if a call is received from a caller with Picture call set, the set image appears when the call is received via Call waiting.

Note

- Movies/i-motion that are copied from microSD Memory Card to the FOMA terminal handset or transferred from PC or another FOMA terminal using Ir exchange or Data Link Software, are not available. (Including movies/i-motion once copied or transferred from the FOMA terminal handset to microSD Memory Card and then copied or transferred to the FOMA terminal handset again) Record movies on the FOMA terminal handset to use for Picture call.
- To delete image set for Picture call from Data box, select **Delete one**. Select **Yes** in the confirmation screen to delete.
- Press
 ③ 3 (2) [Phonebook] in preview screen to set shot still picture for Picture call. When the save destination, however, is set to microSD Memory Card, press
 [] [Save To] to change the save destination to the FOMA terminal handset, and then press
 [] 3 (2) [Phonebook] to set to Picture call.
- When movies/i-motion with images and voice are set as Select ring tone, setting a still picture as Picture call disables Select ring tone setting. When movies/i-motion with images and voice are set as Picture call, Select ring tone is also set the same.
- Refer to P. 130 for details on setting the Picture call priority when multiple Picture calls are set.

Registering from Zoom menu

Add entries to the FOMA terminal handset phonebook from Zoom menu.

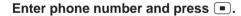
- Add the following items.
 - Name Reading One phone number One mail address
- View registered entries by selecting *View phonebook* in Zoom menu or edit all phonebook items (127 P. 111) from the Submenu.

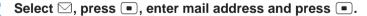
In stand-by, press •, select Phone and press •.

• Press 🔳 [Menu] to switch from Top menu or Shortcut menu.

Select Add phonebook and press •.

- Enter name, press
 , check the reading and press
 .
 - Reading is entered automatically. Edit reading if incorrect.





Press **i** [Complete].

- The entry is saved to the lowest available memory number between 010 and 749. The lowest available number between 000 and 009 is used if the above is not available.
- ☎ for phone number type icon and ⊡ for mail address type icon are automatically set.

6

Saving to FOMA Card Phonebook

Save entries to FOMA card phonebook. Entry items differ slightly from FOMA terminal handset phonebook.

• Save up to 50 entries to the FOMA card phonebook.

Entry items

| Icon | Item | Details | |
|-----------|--------------|---|--|
| 2 | Name | Enter name. | |
| R | Reading | Reading is entered automatically. Can be edited. | |
| <u>92</u> | Group | Entries can be sorted in groups. 11 groups are available. Group names can be changed. | |
| (D) | Phone number | Save one phone number per entry. | |
| Ð | Mail address | Save one mail address per entry. | |

Basic Saving Operations



In stand-by, press \boxdot 0 2 and press 2 [UIM].



6

Enter name and press .

- & Docomo Taro R Docomo Taro & (Not specified) (Not registered) (Not registered)
- Refer to step 2 on P. 98 for details on entering name. Enter up to 21 single-byte characters or up to 10 characters for only double-byte characters, single-byte and double-byte mixed characters or only single-byte katakana.
 When 10 characters are already entered only in single alphanumeric characters and single/double-byte katakana are entered, the entered characters after single/double-byte katakana are not saved. In addition, when more than 10 character and after are not saved.
- Enter up to 12 characters for only double-byte katakana or 25 characters for only single-byte alphanumerics. Enter up to 12 characters if single-byte/double-byte characters are mixed. When 12 single-byte characters are already entered and double-byte katakana are entered, the entered characters after double-byte katakana are not saved.
- Select **22**, press **•**, select group and press **•**.
 - Select III, press I, enter phone number and press I.
 - Enter up to 26 digits for FOMA card (green) and 20 digits for FOMA card (blue).
 - Refer to step 3 on P. 98 for details on entering telephone numbers.

Select ₱, press ■, enter mail address and press ■.

• Refer to step 5 on P. 98 for details on entering mail address.

Press i [Complete].

Copying Phonebook Entries Between FOMA Terminal Handset and FOMA Card

Copy phonebook entries from FOMA terminal handset to FOMA Card or from FOMA Card to FOMA terminal handset.

In stand-by, press , select a name in the FOMA terminal handset phonebook and press @ 5 1 [Copy to UIM].

• To copy the FOMA Card phonebook to the FOMA terminal handset phonebook, select a name in the FOMA Card phonebook and press (5) (1) [Copy to the phone].



Select copy method.

| To copy one | $1 \rightarrow Yes \rightarrow \bullet$ |
|----------------------------------|--|
| To copy selected | ② → select name (repeatable) → M → Yes → Press [SelAll] or [CIrAll] to select or disable all. |
| To check contents before copying | Select name in step 1, press $\bullet \rightarrow \textcircled{0}32 \rightarrow \textbf{Yes} \rightarrow \bullet$ |

Note

- This function is not available if FOMA card is not inserted.
- Set Secret mode to ON to copy phonebook entries saved with Set secret ON.
- Entry items are saved as follows when copied to FOMA card.
 - Portions of name exceeding 21 single-byte (10 double-byte) characters are discarded.
 - Reading is saved as double-byte katakana. Portions exceeding 12 characters are discarded. Reading for entries copied from FOMA card to FOMA terminal handset is saved as single-byte katakana.
 - When a name is entered in alphanumeric, reading is saved as single-byte. Portions exceeding 25 characters are discarded.
 - Entries are allocated accordingly if same group name exists in FOMA terminal handset and FOMA card phonebooks. If same group name does not exist, entry is allocated to (*Not specified*). Single- and double-byte characters are differentiated.
- Entry items are saved as follows when copied to FOMA terminal handset.
 - Reading is saved as single-byte characters.
 - Phone number and mail address from FOMA card are saved as first phone number and mail address in FOMA terminal handset.
 - Entries are allocated accordingly if same group name exists in FOMA terminal handset and FOMA card phonebooks. If same group name does not exist, entry is allocated to (Not specified). Single- and double-byte characters are differentiated.
 - Open memory numbers are allocated from 010 to 749, then 000 to 009.
- Not all characters are compatible between FOMA terminal handset and FOMA card. Unsupported characters are converted to spaces.
- Source data is not deleted.
- Latin and Greek characters and some symbols not included in the standard single-byte alphanumerics/ symbols set, and double-byte characters not included in kuten code list appear as spaces when FOMA card data saved in other FOMA terminals are copied to your FOMA terminal.

Saving to Phonebook from Redial and Received Calls

Save phonebook entries from functions such as Redial, Received calls, Bar code reader, Character reader and mail.

Example: When saving from Received calls





2

Select save method.

| To add to FOMA terminal handset phonebook | 1 | To add to PushTalk phonebook | 4 |
|---|---|------------------------------|---|
| To save to FOMA card phonebook | 2 | To add to PushTalk group | 5 |
| To add/overwrite | 3 | | |

- Selected phone number is entered in phonebook entry screen. Continue phonebook saving operations. (12 P. 97, P. 103)
- Add PushTalk group is only available for PushTalk call/received history. (History entries of PushTalk transmission sent to multiple people are subject to the setting. Also available when phone numbers of the other party are saved in the PushTalk phonebook.)

Group Settings

Setting Groups

Set groups in phonebook to set group names, ring tones, Called LED and image shown when calls are received from a member of a group.

• Only group name editing is available for FOMA card phonebook.

Changing Group Name <Edit Group Name>

Default setting FOMA terminal handset phonebook: (*Not specified*), グルーブ1 (Group 1) to グルーブ1 9 (Group 19) FOMA card phonebook: (*Not specified*), グルーブ1 (Group 1) to グルーブ1 0 (Group 10)

• 1 (Not specified) cannot be renamed.

In stand-by, press 🖾 and select a group.

| Group settings |
|---------------------------|
| 1 Edit group name |
| E Select ringグループ1 |
| 3 Mail ring tone |
| 4 Called LED color |
| 5 Called LED pattern |
| 6 Mail LED color |
| Z Mail LED pattern |
| Picture call set |
| |

| In phonebook list | $\textcircled{8} \rightarrow \text{select group} \rightarrow \textcircled{\bullet}$ |
|-------------------|---|
| In group list | Select group $\rightarrow \square 3$ |

 When groups are selected, the FOMA terminal handset phonebook (19 groups) comes first, followed by the FOMA card phonebook (10 groups).

Group settings screen

Press 1 [Edit group name], enter/edit group name and press •.

- Group name character limits are as follows.
 - FOMA terminal handset phonebook: Up to 20 single-byte (10 double-byte) characters
 - FOMA card phonebook: Up to 21 characters when entering only single-byte alphanumeric characters
 - Up to 10 characters when entering only double-byte characters, mixed single-byte/double-byte characters, or only single-byte katakana
- To restore default group name, press CLR for 1+ seconds and press .

Press **i** [Complete].

Related Operations

Set ring tone and Chaku-motion for group <Select ring tone/Mail ring tone>

- 1 In the group settings screen, press 2.
 - To set mail ring tone for group: In the group settings screen, press 3.
- **2** Press 1 [Normal ring tone].
 - To set Chaku-uta full[®]: Press 2.
 - To set Chaku-motion: Press 3.
 - To disable: Press 4.
- **3** Select a ring tone referring to step 2 on P. 116.

Set called LED color for group <Called LED color/Mail LED color>

- In the group settings screen, press ④.
 To set Mail LED color: Press ⑥ in the group settings screen.
- 2 Select called LED color) .

Set called LED pattern for group <Called LED pattern/Mail LED pattern>

- 1 In the group settings screen, press 5.
- To set Mail LED pattern: Press 7 in the group settings screen.
- 2 Select called LED pattern ▶ •.
 - To disable: Press 1.

Set image for group <Picture call set>

- 1 In the group settings screen, press 8.
- 2 Press 1 [My picture].
 - To set movie/i-motion: Press 2.
 - To shoot still pictures with camera: Press 3 > shoot.
 - To shoot movies with camera: Press 4 > shoot.
 - To disable image: Press 5.
- 3 Select folder ▶ ▶ select image ▶ ■.

Note

Select ring tone/Mail ring tone

- Movies/i-motion that are image only, have tickers added or have playback restrictions cannot be set as Chaku-motion.
- Movies/i-motion with the Ring tone setting to unavailable or Chaku-uta full[®] with the Full song ring tone and Point ring tone settings to unavailable are not available. (IPP P. 327)
- Movies/i-motion copied from microSD Memory Card to FOMA terminal handset cannot be set as Chaku-motion. Record movies on the FOMA terminal handset to use for Chaku-motion.
- Anonymous calls are notified with regular ring tone.
- Calls and mail from members in groups saved with Set secret ON are notified with regular ring tone. To
 use group ring tone and group mail ring tone settings, set Secret mode to ON.
- Save entire mail address to use group mail ring tone. If mail address is *phone number@docomo.ne.jp*, set only phone number.
- If movie/i-motion with image and voice is set as Chaku-motion, the same movie/i-motion is automatically set for group Picture call settings.
- Refer to P. 117 for details on setting the ring tone priority when multiple ring tones are set.

Called LED and Mail/Message LED

- Anonymous calls are notified with regular called LED.
- Calls and mail from members in groups saved with Set secret ON are notified with regular LED. To use group called LED and group mail/message LED settings, set Secret mode to ON.
- Save entire mail address to use group mail/message LED. If mail address is *phone number@docomo. ne.jp*, set only phone number.
- Refer to P. 139 for details on setting called LED priority when multiple called LED are set.

Picture call

- When group Picture call is set, I appears on group selection screen.
- Even if a call is received from a caller with Picture call set, the set image appears when the call is received via Call waiting.
- i-motion that are voice only (melodies with no video), movies/i-motion with tickers added, and movies/ i-motion with playback restrictions cannot be set for Picture call.
- Movies/i-motion copied from microSD Memory Card to FOMA terminal handset cannot be set for Picture call. Record movies on the FOMA terminal handset to use for Picture call.
- Anonymous calls are notified with regular incoming screen.
- Calls from members in groups saved with Set secret ON are notified by regular incoming screen. To use group Picture call settings, set Secret mode to ON.
- Refer to P. 130 for details on setting the Picture call priority when multiple Picture calls are set.

Making Calls from Phonebook

Retrieve phone numbers from phonebook to make calls and send mail.

Selecting Phonebook Search Method <Search By>

Search phonebook by reading, group, or memory number.

- Memory numbers do not exist on FOMA card phonebook. Searching by memory number is not available.
- In stand-by, press 🖾 to show by the last method used.



In stand-by, press \square and \square [Search by] to select search method.

| Reading? | 1 | FOMA terminal handset and FOMA card phonebooks are sorted by reading. |
|-------------|---|---|
| Group? | 2 | FOMA terminal handset entries appear first. |
| Memory no.? | 3 | Only FOMA terminal handset entries appear. |
| | | |

Phonebook appears sorted by selected search method.

Related Operations

Open phonebook during voice call

During a voice call, press \blacksquare \square (Phonebook) \blacktriangleright \blacksquare .

View microSD Memory Card phonebook <View microSD data>

In stand-by, press $\square \triangleright \square \frown 4$.

• To search by group: In stand-by, press 🖾 🕨 select group 🕨 💿 🕨 🔟 🕘 .

Copy microSD Memory Card phonebook contents to owner information <Copy to Owner Info>

In stand-by, press $\square \triangleright \square \neg 4 \triangleright$ select name $\triangleright \square \triangleright \square 34 \triangleright Yes \triangleright \square$.

Send Phonebook attach to mail <Attach to mail>

In stand-by, press <a>> <a

Apply Function lock to phonebook <Function lock>

- 1 In stand-by, press □ ▶ 🖻 🗗 6.
 - To search by group: In stand-by, press 🖾 🕨 select group 🕨 💿 🕨 🔟 🤆 6.
- 2 Enter terminal security code ▶ ▶ 1.

Note

View microSD Memory Card phonebook

• Search method for microSD Memory Card phonebook cannot be selected.

Copy to owner information

- When multiple phone numbers are saved in microSD Memory Card phonebook, first phone number is not copied to owner information.
- When Image transfer is set to Yes, an image in microSD Memory Card phonebook is set to Own image.

File attachment

- FOMA card phonebook or microSD Memory Card phonebook cannot be attached.
- Refer to P. 220 for details on composing/sending i-mode mail.

| 1 | In stand-by, press 🖾. | | |
|---|---|--|--|
| | Other Diz Docomo Haruko Si Oliz Docomo Haruko Si Olio Docomo Taro Si Olio Keitai Hanako Si | If search by reading phonebook list does not appear, press ① ① | |
| | Phonebook list (Other column) | spaces $ ightarrow$ symbols $ ightarrow$ no reading (Appears after numbers and before symbols if space is at beginning.) | |
| 2 | Select name. | | |

| To show previous/next column in phonetic order | $\overline{}$ |
|--|--|
| To select one | \Box |
| To scroll by page | Down: 🖻 [Page]/Up: 🖾 [Page] |
| To enter reading (Quick search) | Closest entry appears after each character is entered. |

Press .

Select icon with • and press • to perform the following.

| 頭ゴブル | ープ1 |
|--------|------|
| Docomo | Taro |
| Docomo | Taro |
| t d | 2 |

090XXXXXXXX

Phonebook entry details screen 8 1 1 8 8 8 8 Place call to saved phone number. Compose message screen addressed to saved mail d d d 🗗 🖂 address appears. = View saved postal address. The location information menu appears. (12 P. 288) View saved memo. 1 1 Play set ring tone or Chaku-motion. 脉 展 Called LED flashes in the set color and pattern. Set still picture or movie/i-motion appears. ۲ Play set still picture or Chara-den.



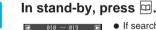
Make a call.

| Voice calls | 🖆 or 🔳 | |
|-------------|--------------|--|
| Videophone | | |
| PushTalk | 🖻 (🗗) or 🖾 | |

• Call is placed to phone number displayed.

Searching by Memory Number <Memory No.?>

• Use 2-touch dialing to call people saved in memory numbers 000 to 099. (CP P. 113)



DDDocomo Taro

Docomo Haruko

● If search by memory number phonebook list does not appear, press @13.

FOMA terminal handset phonebook list (Memory numbers 010 to 019)

Select memory number.

| To show previous/next group of ten entries | The previous/next ten entries appear. |
|---|---|
| To select one | |
| To enter memory number (Quick search) | After each digit is entered, corresponding entries appear. For example, when 085 is entered, the following appear. Enter 0 for first digit: entry numbers 000 to 009 appear. Enter 8 for second digit: entry numbers 080 to 089 appear. Enter 5 for third digit: entry number 085 is selected. If entered memory number is not saved in phonebook, entry for next largest memory number appears. However, if larger memory number does not exist, then smallest memory number closest to 000 appears. |

• Refer to step 3 and onward of "Searching by Name" on P. 108 for further operations.

Searching by Group <Group?>

In stand-by, press .

• If group selection screen does not appear, press 12. Select group 1 (Not sp 2 グループ1
 3 グループ2
 4 グループ3
 5 グループ4

目 グループ7 Group selection screen

回 グループ5 回 グループ6

Select a group and press .

- 0111 Doc in Tarn 000Keitai Hanako n Phonebook list
- Entries appear in order of reading (katakana (phonetic order → dakuten/ handakuten) \rightarrow alphabet \rightarrow numbers \rightarrow spaces \rightarrow symbols \rightarrow no reading).
- Phonebook entries with no group settings are grouped in (Not specified).

(グループ1)

Select name.

| To show previous/next group | $\overline{}$ |
|---------------------------------|--|
| To select one | : (in the current group) |
| To enter reading (Quick search) | Closest entry appears after each character is entered. |

• Refer to step 3 and onward of "Searching by Name" on P. 108 for further operations.

Related Operations

Select calling method and make call

- 1 In stand-by, press □ ▶ select name ▶ .
 - To search by group: In stand-by, press 🖾 🕨 select group 🕨 💿 🖢 select name 🕨 💿.
- 2 Press 🔳 to make Videophone call.
 - To make voice call: Press 🖾 or 🔳.
 - To send PushTalk transmission: Press 🖻 (₽) or 🖾.

 - To add prefix: Press 421 select prefix • • or •.
 - To call without sending ID: Press @412 S or .
 - To call sending ID: Press @ 4 1 1) 🖆 or 🗉.
 - To select Multi number: Press 10 5 + select Multi number + + 4 or •.

Related Operations

Specify image and make Videophone call <Switch view mode>

- 1 In stand-by, press □ > select name > □.
 - To search by group: In stand-by, press D > select group > > select name > •.
- 2 Press 6 6 1 2 select folder • select Chara-den • • To send own camera image: Press 6 1 1 • .
- Set transmission speed and make Videophone call <Connection speed>
 - 1 In stand-by, press □ ▶ select name ▶ .
 - To search by group: In stand-by, press 🖾 🕨 select group 🕨 💿 🕨 select name 🕨 💿.
 - 2 Press @ (6) (2).
 - 3 Press 1 [64K] or 2 [32K] .

Call with Chaku-moji message <Chaku-moji>

- 1 In stand-by, press □ > select name > > ∞ 8.
 - To search by group: In stand-by, press 🖾 🕨 select group 🕨 🔳 🖢 select name 🕨 🔳 🕲 🕲.
- 2 Press ① [Create message] ▶ enter a Chaku-moji message ▶ .
 - To select a saved Chaku-moji message: Press 2 > select a Chaku-moji message > •.
 - To select from Sent messages history: Press (3) > select a Chaku-moji message > (-).
- 3 Press () or () to make a voice call.
 - To make a Videophone call: Press .

Note

Videophone image setting

- Still pictures cannot be set.
- Videophone image setting is reset after Videophone ends.

Dialing speed

- The default setting is 64K.
- Transmission speed is reset after Videophone ends.
- It is recommended that 64K transmission speed be used when making Videophone calls to compatible FOMA terminals. Use 32K transmission for connecting to devices such as PHS phones that cannot use 64K due to network conditions. When the Redial voice call is set to ON, if a 64K Videophone call is made to the other party in a 32K area, the transmission speed is automatically switched to 32K and redialed. (CTP. 81)

Refer to P. 55 for details on Chaku-moii.

Changing Phonebook List Appearance <Switch View Mode>

Show images set in Picture call for entries in phonebook list. Not available when showing microSD Memory Card data.

In stand-by, press and and 2 [Switch view mode].

| | 010 ~ 019 🗈 |
|---|---|
| Ş | 010Keitai Hanako 090XXXXXXXX docomo. <u>AA</u> ab1234 |
| | 011Docomo Taro 090XXXXXXXX docomo, taro, AAMd |

| To search by group | $\square \rightarrow \text{select group} \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow \blacksquare \boxed{2}$ |
|---------------------------|---|
| To switch phonebook entry | $\square \rightarrow \text{select name} \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow \blacksquare \frown 2$ |
| details screen | |

Note

- When still pictures are shown in the phonebook list, the first phone number and mail address appear and a call can be made to the phone number. However, the mail address cannot be selected. Select other phone numbers and mail addresses from phonebook entry details screen.
- Image set for group Picture call is shown for all members of group. Individually set images are prioritized.

Restricting Image Transfer < Image Transfer>

Default setting Yes (transfer)

Set to not transfer images set as Picture call when phonebook entries are copied to a microSD Memory Card or sent via Ir or iC transmission.

microSD Memory Cards are sold separately. Purchase microSD Memory Cards at home electronics shops. (127 P. 316)

- When Image transfer is set to Yes, copying phonebook entries to a microSD Memory Card and sending via Ir
 or iC transmission may take more time.
- Even if Image transfer is set to Yes, images from the following sources are not transferred.
 - Preinstalled images
 - Images of i-mode source with file restrictions
 - Images of Videophone
 - In stand-by, press 🖾 and 🖻 🗔 [Image transfer].
 - When searching groups, select a group, press and press 3.

Press 2 [No].

• To transfer image, press 1, select **Yes** and press .

Edit Entries

Editing Phonebook Entries

Edit items saved in phonebook entries.

- Editing is not available when All lock or Keypad dial lock is set.
- Editing is not available for phonebook entries set to accept/reject calls.

In stand-by, press , select name and press 31 [Edit].

- When editing from phonebook entry details screen, press 11.
- Refer to P. 97 and P. 103 for items which can be edited.

Select item and press to edit.

- Editing procedures are the same as when saving.
- Even if a name is edited, the reading does not automatically change.
- When multiple phone numbers are saved, (Not registered) appears if the first phone number saved is deleted. However, other phone numbers remain unchanged.



Press **[**[Complete] and save.

| FOMA terminal | To overwrite | • \rightarrow Yes \rightarrow • |
|----------------|------------------|--|
| | To save to a | Enter memory number |
| phonebook | different memory | Press CLR (for 1+ seconds), delete memory number and press |
| | number | to save to an available memory number. (P. 99) |
| FOMA card phon | ebook | Select Yes \rightarrow • |

Related Operations

Copy saved details <Copy item>

In stand-by, press
→ select name
→ select item → @31. Add to PushTalk Phonebook <Add to PushTalk PB>

In stand-by, press 🖾 🕨 select name 🕨 🙆 3 2.

• To save from phonebook entry details screen: Press 12.

Related Operations

Note

Copying saved details

- The following items can be copied: FOMA terminal handset phonebook names, phone numbers one through three, mail addresses one through three, Memo, postal addresses, and FOMA card phonebook names, phone numbers, and mail addresses.
- Refer to "Pasting Text" on P. 408 for details on pasting text copied from the phonebook.

Delete Entries

Deleting Phonebook Entries

• When a phonebook entry is deleted from the FOMA terminal handset phonebook, the entry is also deleted from PushTalk phonebook.



In stand-by, press \square , select name and press $\square 4$ [Delete].

Delete 1 Delete one 2 Delete selected 3 Del all in group 4 Delete all

2

| | Select deletion method. | |
|---|-------------------------|----------------------|
| ľ | To delete one | $(1) \rightarrow Ye$ |

| To delete one | $(1) \rightarrow Yes \rightarrow \blacksquare$ |
|--|--|
| To delete collectively | $(2) \rightarrow \text{select name} \bullet (\text{repeatable}) \rightarrow \texttt{I} \rightarrow \texttt{Yes} \rightarrow \bullet$ |
| | Press i [SelAll] or i [ClrAll] to select or disable all. |
| To delete all in a group | $\fbox{3} \rightarrow \text{select group} \rightarrow \textcircled{\bullet} \rightarrow \text{enter terminal security code} \rightarrow$ |
| | $\bullet \rightarrow Yes \rightarrow \bullet$ |
| To delete all in FOMA terminal handset | $(4) 1 \rightarrow \text{enter terminal security code} \rightarrow \bullet \rightarrow \textbf{Yes} \rightarrow \bullet$ |
| phonebook | |
| To delete all in FOMA card phonebook | $(4) \textcircled{2} \rightarrow \text{enter terminal security code} \rightarrow \textcircled{\bullet} \rightarrow \textbf{Yes} \rightarrow \textcircled{\bullet}$ |

Related Operations

Delete from phonebook entry details screen <Delete one> In the phonebook entry details screen, press @② ▶ Yes ▶ ■.

Data Sec. Service

Saving (Restoring/Updating) Phonebook to Data Storage Center

• FOMA card phonebook or phonebook in a microSD Memory Card cannot be saved.

In stand-by, press , and in phonebook list (☞ P. 108), press . [Connect to Center].

Select Yes, press •, enter terminal security code and press •.

• When saving is completed, complete notification screen appears and stand-by reappears.

Hiding Private Numbers

Secret phonebook entries are hidden and access is restricted unless Secret mode is set to *ON*.

• Set secret is not available for FOMA card phonebook entries.

Setting Entries as Secret Data <Set Secret>

1

In the phonebook entry screen (\bigcirc P. 97), select \bigcirc , press \bigcirc and press 1 [ON].

Press i [Complete] to save.

| To save a new entry (P. 97) | Enter memory number |
|-----------------------------|--|
| To overwrite | $\blacksquare \rightarrow \textbf{Yes} \rightarrow \blacksquare$ |

• When Store in PushTalk phonebook? appears, select Yes and press • to store.

Note

- Set Secret mode to ON to use 2-touch dialing for secret phonebook entries saved in memory numbers 000 to 099.
- Mail addresses saved in secret phonebook entries are also restricted unless Secret mode is set to ON.

Opening secret data

- Set Secret mode to **ON** and perform the same steps as when viewing normal entries. ([®] flashes when secret data is selected in phonebook list.)
- Same operations as normal phonebook are available.
- Redial, Received calls, Sent messages, Received/Sent messages history and Schedule
- Phone number and mail address set as Secret appear instead of name. Set Secret mode to ON to show name.
- Calls and mail from parties set as Secret are notified with regular ring tone and called LED. To activate ring tone and called LED set in the phonebook, set Secret mode to **ON**.

2-touch Dialing/2-touch Mail

Calling and Sending Mail with a Few Key Strokes

Easily call or send i-mode mail to parties saved in memory numbers 000 to 099 in FOMA terminal handset phonebook.

- First phone number/mail address is called/addressed when multiple are saved.
- 2-touch dialing and 2-touch mail are not available while Function lock is applied to phonebook. (1 P. 154)

In stand-by, enter last or last two digits.

- Memory number 000 to 009: Press ① to ⑨.
- Memory number 010 to 099: Press 10 to 99.



Select the function.

V. phone Quick Sub

| To make a voice call | <u>ه</u> |
|---------------------------|----------|
| To make a Videophone call | |
| To compose a message | |

- Call is placed to the entry saved or the compose message screen appears.
- Refer to steps 2 to 4 on P. 220 for details on composing and sending mail.

Using Data Security Service

Saving FOMA Terminal Handset Phonebook to Data Storage Center <Connect to Center>

Save the FOMA terminal handset phonebook to the Data Storage Center.

- Update the contents when the phonebook has already been saved.
- Owner Information can also be saved to the Data Storage Center.

In stand-by, press $(\bullet)(9)(2)(9)(7)(1)$.

• This service is a paid service that requires subscription. (i-mode subscription is also required.)



to most recent.

Select Yes, press
, enter terminal security code and press .

• When saving is completed, complete notification screen appears and stand-by reappears.

Note

• Refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode]" for details on the use of the Data Security Service.

Available image files used for Picture call to be stored to the Data Storage Center

- File type must be GIF or JPEG.
- File size must be 300 KB or less for each. (Files larger than 300 KB cannot be saved to the Data Storage Center.)
- Non-redistributable files cannot be saved to the Data Storage Center.

Viewing Phonebook Update History < Display History>

Check up to 30 transmission history entries of saving/updating the phonebook, mail and still pictures, starting with the newest.

When the transmission history exceeded 30 entries, entries are deleted starting with the oldest.

In stand-by, press •92972, select history and press •.

Setting Whether to Send Phonebook Images <Send Phonebook Img>

Default setting OFF

Set whether to send images set as Picture call when phonebook entries are saved to the Data Storage Center.

• When Send phonebook img is set to **ON**, it may take some time for sending.

1

In stand-by, press • 9 2 9 7 3 and select ON or OFF.

| To send images | $1 \rightarrow \text{Yes} \rightarrow \blacksquare$ |
|--------------------|---|
| To not send images | 2 |

Sound/Screen/ Light Settings

Sound Settings

| Changing Mobile Phone Sounds | <sound settings="">116</sound> |
|--|--|
| Changing Mobile Phone Sound Volume | <select volume="">119</select> |
| Setting 3D Sound and Sound Quality | <sound playback="">121</sound> |
| Vibrating for Calls and Alarms | <vibrator>122</vibrator> |
| Sounding Alarm When the Signal Is Weak | |
| Setting Duration of Mail/PushTalk Ring Tone and Tones When | Using GPS Function |
| | |
| Sounding Ring Tone in Earphone Only | |
| Silencing Handset | <manner mode="">124</manner> |
| Changing Manner Mode | <original manner="" mode="">126</original> |
| Screen/Light Settings | |
| Changing Stand-by Display Settings | <stand-by display="">126</stand-by> |
| Changing Call/Receive Image | . <call display="" receive="">129</call> |
| Changing Image for Sending/Receiving Messages | <send display="" receive="">130</send> |
| Setting Whether to Show Phonebook Image for Incoming Calls | <picture call="" set="">130</picture> |
| Saving Battery Power | <power saver="" set="">131</power> |
| Setting Original Power Saver Mode | |
| • Arranging the Display | <personalize>134</personalize> |
| Changing Top Menu Design | <personalize menu="">135</personalize> |
| Using Kisekae Tool | <kisekae tool="">137</kisekae> |
| Setting the Illumination | <led settings="">139</led> |
| Notifying a Call or Mail Received with LED < Missed Call No | otice/New Unrd Mail Noti>142 |
| Changing Image Quality | <vibrant image="" mode="">143</vibrant> |
| Changing Font Width | 143 |
| Preventing Others from Seeing the Display | <private filter="">144</private> |

Changing Mobile Phone Sounds

Change ring tones used when voice/Videophone calls, PushTalk transmissions, i-mode mail, SMS and Message R/F are received and set stereo effects (127 P. 121). In addition, change Timer sound and GPS related sounds.

- If a melody with LED actions is set as the ring tone, link the melody and LED flash actions (Melody ON).
- For ring tones, set melodies, movies/i-motion downloaded using i-mode, Chaku-uta full[®] and movies shot with FOMA terminal as well as preset melodies.
- Set a movie/i-motion for a ring tone to play an image or voice for an incoming call. (Chaku-motion)

Changing Ring Tone and Chaku-motion <Select Ring Tone>

Phone ring tone: 着信音 1,

Default setting Videophone ring tone, Payphone ring tone, User unset, Unknown tone: *Phone ring tone*, Mail ring tone: 着信音 2, Message R/F, SMS ring tone: *Mail ring tone*, PushTalk tone: 着信音 1

In stand-by, press <a>1 <a>1 <a>2 <a>1 and select an item.

| ne | Phone ring tone | 1 | User unset | 4 |
|----|----------------------|---|--------------|---|
| | Videophone ring tone | 2 | Unknown tone | 5 |
| ne | Payphone ring tone | 3 | | |

When changing Videophone ring tone

V.phone ring ton 1 Melody 2 i-motion 3 MUSIC 4 Phone ring ton



| To set melodies | | 1 → select folder → ● → select ring tone → ■ To check ring tone, select a ring tone and press ●. Press ■ and the previous screen reappears. | | |
|--|---------------------------|--|--|--|
| | | 2 → select folder → ● → select Chaku-motion → ■ To check movie/i-motion, select a movie/i-motion and press ●. Press ■ and the previous screen reappears. Movies/i-motion that are image only or have tickers added are not available. i-motion copied from microSD Memory Card to FOMA terminal handset are not available. Record movies on the FOMA terminal handset to use for Chaku-motion. i-motion in the <i>Movable contents</i> folder in microSD Memory Card can directly set as a ring tone. The set movie/i-motion is transferred to the <i>i-mode</i> folder in Data box on the FOMA terminal handset. Refer to P. 211 for details on ring tone and receive display combinations. | | |
| To set Chaku-uta full [®] | To set a full song | ③ → select folder → ■ → select Chaku-uta full[®] → ■ → 1 [Full song ring tone] To check Chaku-uta full[®], select Chaku-uta full[®] and press ■. Press we to return to the previous screen. When Chaku-uta full[®] saved in the <i>Movable contents</i> folder in the microSD Memory Card is selected, the confirmation screen for transferring to the FOMA terminal handset appears. Select Yes and press ■ to save Chaku-uta full[®] in the <i>i-mode</i> folder in Music of Data box and set it as the ring tone. | | |
| | To set part of song | 3 → select folder → i → select Chaku-uta full[®] → i → 2 [Point ring tone] → select range → i → Yes → • The selectable range is pre-determined for each Chaku-uta full[®]. To check the selected range, select the range and press •. Press œ and the previous screen appears. For Point ring tone, the selected range is saved in the <i>i-mode</i> folder in i-motion of Data box as i-motion and set as the ring tone. | | |
| To set the tone as Ph tone | 0 | A Make Videophone ring tone, Payphone ring tone, User unset and Unknown tone the same as Phone ring tone. | | |

- If the ring tone is changed, receive display may also change. (BP P. 211)
- Ring tones are prioritized as follows when multiple ring tones are set.

| | Priority (high \rightarrow low) |
|----------------|--|
| Ring tone | Multi number ring tone \rightarrow phonebook ring tone \rightarrow group ring tone \rightarrow regular ring tone |
| Mail ring tone | Phonebook mail ring tone $ ightarrow$ group mail ring tone $ ightarrow$ regular mail ring tone |

- V.phone ring tone is prioritized over User unset for Videophone calls with no caller ID.
- When a voice-only movie or i-motion (i-motion with no video image such as a singer's song) is set as Chaku-motion, the Receive display is prioritized as follows: phonebook Picture call settings → group Picture call settings → Call/Receive display settings.
- When a call is received during data transmission, the tone saved as Phone ring tone sounds. Receive display is the same as the display set in Phone ring tone. The movie/i-motion screen is used if a movie/i-motion is set.
- i-motion and Chaku-uta full[®] with playback restrictions are not available.
- i-motion with Ring tone set to unavailable or Chaku-uta full[®] with Full song ring tone and Point ring tone set to unavailable are not available. (127 P. 327)

Related Operations

Change i-mode mail, SMS, Message R/F and PushTalk ring tone <Select Mail tone/PushTalk tone>

- 1 In stand-by, press <a>1 <a>2 <a>1 [Mail ring tone].
 - For Message R: In stand-by, press 1222.
 - For Message F: In stand-by, press •1223.
 - For SMS: In stand-by, press •1224.
 - For PushTalk: In stand-by, press •123.

2 Press 1 [Melody].

- To set movie/i-motion: Press 2.
- To set Chaku-uta full[®]: Press 3.
- To conform SMS and Message R/F ring tone to Mail ring tone: Press 4.
- **3** Refer to step 2 on P. 116 and select ring tone.

Note

PushTalk tone

• Only Voice only i-motion (melodies with no video) are available for PushTalk tone.

Preset ring tones

| Song title | Artist | 3D data | Song title | Artist | 3D data |
|--------------|--------|---------|------------------|-----------------|---------|
| 着信音1 | - | - | 夏 | VIVALDI ANTONIO | Yes |
| 着信音2 | - | - | | LUCIO | 162 |
| 着信音3 | - | - | Beat On Motion | - | Yes |
| 着信音4 | - | - | ワルキューレの騎行 | RICHARD WAGNER | Yes |
| 着信音5 | - | - | JE TE VEUX | - | - |
| 着信音6 | - | - | Ride on | - | Yes |
| 鳴き声(ヒヨコ) | - | Yes | Skyscraper | - | Yes |
| 鳴き声(犬) | - | Yes | Green breezy | - | - |
| 海辺の街 | - | - | 風の吹く島 | - | - |
| クリスタル | - | - | 月の光 | DEBUSSY | Yes |
| Sunrise | - | - | サイレント | - | - |
| Coffee Break | - | - | TI(標準音) | - | - |
| Sunset | - | - | TI (時間です) | - | - |
| Stardust | - | - | TI (It's time) | - | - |
| Groove | - | Yes | | | |

- Numbers in phonebook can be set to play selected ring tone. In addition, mail addresses in phonebook can be set to play selected mail ring tone.
- For calls without caller ID, the User unset ring tone sounds.
- Refer to "Melody types and their icons" on P. 315 for details on the icons for each melody.

Forward and store saved i-melody data to a PC using microSD Memory Card (P. 316). (Melodies with file restrictions cannot be transferred.)

• Saved content may be lost due to malfunctions, repairs or other handling of the FOMA terminal. DoCoMo shall not be liable for any loss of content.

Changing Timer Sound < Timer Sound>

Default setting Timer sound: TI (標準音), Ring duration: 15 seconds

• Timer sound can select from melodies in Data box.

In stand-by, press <a>1 <a>2 <a>4 <a>2 and select tone.

| To set Default tone | ● To check Default tone, press . To stop, press . |
|---------------------|--|
| | ② → select folder → ● → select melody → ■ ● To check melody, select a melody and press ●. To stop, press ■. |
| To not set | 3 |

2

Enter time to sound timer (00 to 99 seconds) and press .

Note

- Movies/i-motion are not available for Timer sound.
- Refer to P. 181 for details on for Shutter sound settings.
- Default tone or melodies checked while setting are played in the volume set by Setting sound volume. When the volume is set to *Silent*, they are played at *Volume 1*. Press : during playback to adjust the volume for melodies.

Changing Tones When Using GPS Function <GPS Tone>

Default setting Position location sound: *OFF*, Position location notice: 着信音4, Loc provision/acpt: 着信音5, Loc provision/notify: 着信音6

• Select Melody in Data box for GPS tones.

In stand-by, press <a>1 <a>1 <a>5 and select item.

| To change Position location sound | 1 |
|---|---|
| To change Position location notice | 2 |
| To change the sound used when Location provision is allowed | 3 |
| To change the sound used when Location provision is chosen | 4 |

Select tone.

| | ① → select folder → ● → select melody → ■ ● To check a melody, select the melody and press ●. To stop, press ■. |
|------------|--|
| To not set | 2 |

Note

When Location provision is allowed/chosen

"When Location provision is allowed" is the case when GPS Service settings are set to 許可 (Always allow) or when Location usage setting (imadoko-search setting) accessed by *iMenu* → 料金&お申込・設定 (Charges & Subscription, Settings) → オプション設定 (Options) → 位置情報利用設定 (Location usage setting) is set to 許可 (Always allow).

- "When Location provision is chosen" is the case when GPS Service settings are set to 毎回確認 (Always choose) or when Location usage setting (imadoko-search setting) accessed by *iMenu* → 料金&お申込・設定 (Charges & Subscription, Settings) → オプション設定 (Options) → 位置情報利用設定 (Location usage setting) is set to 毎回確認 (Always choose).
- Refer to P. 285 for details on GPS Service settings.

Select Volume

Changing Mobile Phone Sound Volume

Change ring tone volume used when voice/Videophone calls, PushTalk transmissions, i-mode mail, SMS and Message R/F are received. In addition, change the volume of sounds used when keys are pressed or when Stand-by i-motion is played back, Timer sound, Charge start/end sounds and GPS related sounds.

- Volume remains at adjusted level even when handset is turned off or battery pack is removed.
- The ring volume for a call received during data transmission is the volume set for Phone ring tone.

Adjusting Ring Tone Volume < Phone Ring Volume>

Default setting Volume 5

• Select between Volume 1 to Volume 10, Silent (not sound) and Step (gradually get louder).

In stand-by, press • 1 1 1 and select an item.

| Phone | rina | tone |
|-----------------|-----------|-------|
| Phone Volume | 5 | 10110 |
| | \square | |
| | 2 | _ |
| | \geq | |
| | \leq | |
| | 6 | |
| | (| |
| | 0 | |

| | Phone ring tone | 1 | User unset | (4) |
|---|--------------------|---|--------------|-----|
| | V.phone ring tone | 2 | Unknown tone | 5 |
|] | Payphone ring tone | 3 | | |



Press (louder) or , (softer) to adjust and press .

- To set to *Step*, press () when volume is set to *Volume 10*. When Step is set, the volume increases in three seconds increments from *Volume 1* to *Volume 9* and rings at *Volume 10* thereafter. Chaku-motion is also played back in Step when set.
- To set to *Silent*, press , when volume is set to *Volume 1*. When Phone ring tone is set to *Silent*, sappears in stand-by.

Related Operations

Adjust i-mode mail, SMS, Message R/F, PushTalk ring volume <Mail ring vol/PushTalk tone vol>

- 1 In stand-by, press <a>11 [Mail ring tone].
 - For Message R: In stand-by, press •1122.
 - For Message F: In stand-by, press •1123.
 - For SMS: In stand-by, press -1124.
 - For PushTalk: In stand-by, press •113.
- 2 Press ⁽⁾ (louder) or , (softer) ▶ •.

Adjusting Earpiece Volume < Earpiece Volume>

Default setting Volume 5

Select from ten earpiece volume levels.

In stand-by, press \bigcirc or \bigcirc for 1+ seconds.

• If a calendar is shown, press (a) to disable the calendar before continuing with operations.

Press 🗋 (louder) or 🔔 (softer) to adjust.

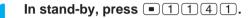
• After adjusting the volume, press
or
or
or
or
or
wait approximately two seconds and the stand-by display reappears.

Adjusting Sound Volume When Pressing Keys or Playing Standby i-motion <Key/Standby i-motion>

Default setting Volume 5

Adjust the volume of the sounds (Keypad sound) emitted when keys are pressed and the i-motion set as stand-by is played (Standby i-motion sound). Also, adjust the volume for Charge start/end sound and Timer sound.

- Select between Volume 1 to Volume 10 and Silent (not sound).
- The battery level sound (IPP P. 42) is heard at the volume set in Key/Standby i-motion. When set to *Silent*, the battery level sound is not heard.
- Keypad sound is disabled for the character operation during Chara-den call or while Chara-den is played or shot.
- Sounds are disabled in Manner mode.



Press 🗋 (louder) or 🔔 (softer) to adjust and press 🔳.

Related Operations

Adjust Charge start and Charge end sound volume

<Charge start sound/Charge end sound>

- 1 In stand-by, press <a>11(<a>1(Charge start sound].
 - To adjust Charge end sound volume: In stand-by, press •1143.
- 2 Press ⁽⁾ (louder) or ^(,) (softer) ▶ •.

Adjust Timer sound volume <Timer sound>

- **1** In stand-by, press **1**144.
- **2** Press \bigcirc (louder) or \bigcirc (softer) \blacktriangleright \bigcirc .

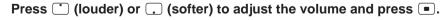
Adjusting Sound Volume When Using GPS Function <GPS Volume>

Default setting Volume 5

• Select between Volume 1 to Volume 10, Silent (not sound) and Step (gradually get louder).

In stand-by, press <a>115 and select item.

| To adjust Position location sound volume | 1 |
|---|---|
| To adjust Position location notice volume | 2 |
| To change the sound used when Location provision is allowed | 3 |
| To change the sound used when Location provision is chosen | 4 |



When Location provision is allowed/chosen

- "When Location provision is allowed" is the case when GPS Service settings are set to 許可 (Always allow) or when Location usage setting (imadoko-search setting) accessed by *iMenu* → 料金&お申込・設定 (Charges & Subscription, Settings) → オプション設定 (Options) → 位置情報利用設定 (Location usage setting) is set to 許可 (Always allow).
- • "When Location provision is chosen" is the case when GPS Service settings are set to 毎回確認 (Always choose) or when Location usage setting (imadoko-search setting) accessed by *iMenu* → 料金&お申込・設定 (Charges & Subscription, Settings) → オプション設定 (Options) → 位置情報利用設定 (Location usage setting) is set to 毎回確認 (Always choose).
- Refer to P. 285 for details on GPS Service settings.

Sound Playback

Setting 3D Sound and Sound Quality

Set stereo effects and equalizer used when playing melodies.

Setting 3D Sound/Surround <Stereo Effects>

Default setting Stereo/3D sound

Following settings are available for the set ring tones.

| Stereo/3D sound | Play realistic 3D sound from stereo speakers. Ring tones without 3D data are played in stereo sound. |
|-----------------|--|
| Surround*1 | 3D data are ignored and ring tones are played in surround sound. Ring tones without 3D data are also played in surround sound. |
| OFF | Ring tones are played in monaural* ² regardless of ring tone types. |

*1 Playback format that offers rich, vibrant sound.

*2 Playback format that does not feature rich sound.

• Rich and vibrant sound is not available when set to OFF.

• Surround effects are disabled when i-motion is set.

3D sound

The 3D sound function uses stereo speakers (or stereo earphone set) to create a spacious ambient sound that moves through the air. Enjoy 3D sound compatible i- α ppli games and ring tones with lively 3D sound.

- For the most powerful 3D sound to be enjoyed, hold the FOMA terminal about 40 cm off, facing the front.
- Note that 3D sound becomes less powerful when heard off the front, or too close or too far even when the front is faced.
- 3D effect may vary depending on the person. Set Stereo effects to OFF if uncomfortable.



In stand-by, press <a>1 <a>1 <a>9 <a>1 <a>1 <a>e <a

| <u>.</u> | | |
|-----------------------------|---------------------------|---|
| ereo effects | To set stereo/3D sound | 1 |
| Stereo/3D sound Surround | To set surround | 2 |
| OFF | To not set stereo effects | 3 |

Setting Equalizer < Equalizer>

Default setting Normal

Set the equalizer according to music genres.

In stand-by, press • 192 and select the type of equalizer.

| Normal | 1 | Pops | 3 |
|--------|---|---------|---|
| Rock | 2 | Classic | 4 |

Setting Preferred Playback Sound < Pref Playback Sound>

Default setting Music player pref

In stand-by, press <a>1 <a>1 <a>3 and select item.

| To prioritize music player | 1 |
|----------------------------|---|
| To prioritize i-αppli | 2 |

Vibrator

Vibrating for Calls and Alarms

Default setting Vibration mode, Mail vibration, GPS vibrator: OFF, IC card vibrator: Pattern1

Set Vibrator to notify incoming calls/PushTalk/mail and alarms with a combination of vibration and melody. Vibrate when using the GPS function or IC card.

- The vibrator pattern for alarms is the same as the pattern set for Vibration mode.
- Vibration mode and volume settings are not linked. Set the volume to Silent to silence ring tones and alarm tones. Set volume separately while Vibrator is set. (PP. 119, P. 368)
- Use vibration patterns set to melodies. (Melody ON)

In stand-by, press • 1 3 and select an item.

| Vibration for incoming calls/PushTalk | | 1 |
|--|--|----|
| Mail vibration | | |
| GPS function Vibrator for Position location Vibrator for Location notification | | 31 |
| | | 32 |
| | Vibrator used when Location provision is allowed | 33 |
| | Vibrator used when Location provision is chosen | 34 |
| Vibrator when using IC card | | 4 |

Select vibration pattern.

| OFF | 1 | Vibrator does not activate. |
|--------------|---|---|
| Pattern 1 | 2 | Vibrates for approximately 0.8 seconds \rightarrow stops for approximately 0.8 seconds and repeats. |
| Pattern 2 | 3 | Vibrates for approximately 0.3 seconds \rightarrow stops for approximately 0.3 seconds \rightarrow vibrates for approximately 0.3 seconds \rightarrow stops for approximately 1 second and repeats. |
| Pattern 3 | 4 | Continuous vibration |
| Melody ON | 5 | Vibrator and melody activate (Melody ON) for melodies created with vibration settings added. Melodies that do not have vibration settings vibrate in <i>Pattern 1</i>. |

• Vibrator is set. When the vibration mode for incoming calls/PushTalk is set, 😹 appears in stand-by.

- Select Pattern 1 to 3 with : to sample the vibration pattern.
- Melody ON is not available for vibrator when using IC card.

Note

- Note that if Vibrator is set and FOMA terminal is left on a table, it may fall when a call is received.
- Vibrator settings are not reflected in Flash movies.

• Even if Melody ON is set, vibration is not in conjunction with the main melody.

When Location provision is allowed/chosen

- "When Location provision is allowed" is the case when GPS Service settings are set to 許可 (Always allow) or when Location usage setting (imadoko-search setting) accessed by *iMenu* → 料金&お申込・設定 (Charges & Subscription, Settings) → オプション設定 (Options) → 位置情報利用設定 (Location usage setting) is set to 許可 (Always allow).
- "When Location provision is chosen" is the case when GPS Service settings are set to 毎回確認 (Always choose) or when Location usage setting (imadoko-search setting) accessed by *iMenu* → 料金&お申込・設定 (Charges & Subscription, Settings) → オプション設定 (Options) → 位置情報利用設定 (Location usage setting) is set to 毎回確認 (Always choose).
- Refer to P. 285 for details on GPS Service settings.

Quality Alarm

Sounding Alarm When the Signal Is Weak

Default setting Alarm on (high)

The alarm sounds if the call is about to disconnect such as when the signal is weak. • Quality alarm is available only for voice calls.



In stand-by, press \bullet 6 1 3 and select an alarm tone.

| To set alarm to high | 1 |
|----------------------|---|
| To set alarm to low | 2 |
| To set Alarm to off | 3 |

Note

- There may be times when the signal is strong (appears) and you are not moving but the Quality alarm sounds.
- The call may be disconnected without the alarm sounding if the signal suddenly becomes weak.

Ring Time Setting

Setting Duration of Mail/PushTalk Ring Tone and Tones When Using GPS Function

Default setting Mail ring time set: *ON* and *3 seconds*, PushTalk ring time set: *30 seconds*, GPS ring time set: *ON* and *5 seconds*

Set duration of Mail/PushTalk ring tone and GPS related sounds.

 Mail ring tone does not sound if mail is received while a call is in progress, i-αppli is running, the camera is being activated, the handset is being positioned by GPS or pattern definitions are being updated.

In stand-by, press <a>1 <a>1 <a>6 and select an item.

Mail ring time set 167 Ring time setting (01 - 30) 23 ⊲ seconds

| Mail ring | Mail ring duration | |
|------------------------|--|-------------------------------|
| PushTalk ring duration | | 2 |
| | Ring duration for Position location sound | $31 \rightarrow 1$ [ON] |
| function | Ring duration for Position location notice | $32 \rightarrow 1$ [ON] |
| | Ring duration when Location provision is allowed | $33 \rightarrow 1$ [ON] |
| | Ring duration when Location provision is chosen | $(3)(4) \rightarrow (1)$ [ON] |

 Ring tones do not sound when set to OFF. PushTalk ring tone cannot be set to OFF.

Enter duration and press .

- Enter 01 to 30 seconds for Mail ring tone and 01 to 60 seconds for PushTalk tone.
- Enter between 01 and 30 seconds for Position location sound, Position location notice and Location provision/accept, and between 01 and 20 seconds for Location provision/notify for GPS function.

Note

PushTalk ring duration cannot be selected when Set auto answer is set to ON for PushTalk.

When Location provision is allowed/chosen

- "When Location provision is allowed" is the case when GPS Service settings are set to 許可 (Always allow) or when Location usage setting (imadoko-search setting) accessed by *iMenu* → 料金&お申込・設定 (Charges & Subscription, Settings) → オプション設定 (Options) → 位置情報利用設定 (Location usage setting) is set to 許可 (Always allow).
- "When Location provision is chosen" is the case when GPS Service settings are set to 毎回確認 (Always choose) or when Location usage setting (imadoko-search setting) accessed by *iMenu* → 料金&お申込・設定 (Charges & Subscription, Settings) → オプション設定 (Options) → 位置情報利用設定 (Location usage setting) is set to 毎回確認 (Always choose).
- Refer to P. 285 for details on GPS Service settings.

Ring Output

Sounding Ring Tone in Earphone Only

Default setting Earp.+speaker

Set ring tone to sound from earphone instead of the FOMA terminal speakers when the flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (sold separately) is connected.

• If no flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch is connected, the ring tone will sound from the speakers even when set to *Earphone only*.

In stand-by, press **1**5 and select a ring tone output device.

| Earphone only | 1 |
|----------------------|---|
| Earphone and speaker | 2 |

Note

- The phone ring volume in the earphone/microphone is set using **Phone ring volume**. When the volume is set to **Silent**, no ring tone sounds from the earphone.
- Do not wind the earphone/microphone cord around FOMA terminal. Internal antenna may not work properly.
- Fully insert the earphone/microphone plug. Interrupted sound, static or loud noise may result when only partially inserted.
- The following are not malfunctions.
 - Interrupted sound or static when the earphone/microphone is only partially inserted during a call.
 A popping sound upon turning power on.

Manner Mode

Silencing Handset

Default setting OFF

Use Manner mode to avoid disturbing others when in public. A single key operation silences the FOMA terminal.

• Settings vary for each mode as indicated below.

| Function | Normal | Silent | Original*1 |
|---------------------------|--------|--------|------------|
| Record message, Vibrator | ON | OFF | ON |
| Ring tone, Mail ring tone | Silent | Silent | Silent |

| Function | Normal | Silent | Original*1 |
|---|--------|--------|------------|
| Alarm tone, Key/Standby i-motion sound, Low battery alarm | OFF | OFF | OFF |
| Mic sensitivity up*2 | ON | ON | ON |

*1 Original manner mode settings can be changed. (127 P. 126)

- *2 When Mic sensitivity up is set to **ON**, the microphone becomes more sensitive allowing for conversations at lower volumes. Microphone sensitivity does not change during a Hands-free call.
- Camera shutter sound and movie record start/end sound are not silenced. Sound is silenced for Record Chara-den (127 P. 312).

Setting Manner Mode

Press \boxplus for 1+ seconds when in stand-by.

| A | 1.00 | |
|--------|------|--|
| Manner | mode | |
| 1 Norm | | |
| E Sile | ent | |
| 3 Orig | inal | |
| | | |

- To set Manner mode while receiving a call, press ⊞ for 1+ seconds. The Manner mode selected previously is set. (When the FOMA terminal is closed, press
 (1) for 1+ seconds while receiving a call.) The default setting is *Normal*.
- If Normal manner mode or Silent manner mode is set during an incoming call, the ring tone is silenced. For Original manner mode, set volume is applied. This setting remains set until disabled. Caller's message is recorded if incoming call is not answered. Record message is not set if three Record messages (voice calls)/Voice memos or two Record memos (Videophone) are already recorded. Press to answer the call.
- To select Manner mode type, press 1 4 and press 1 [ON] in stand-by. When settings are performed while Manner mode is set, the set Manner mode is changed. When settings are performed while Manner mode is disabled, Manner mode is set.

Select Manner mode type and press •.





- Normal Set, Silent Set, or Original Set appears and Manner mode is set. (
 appears.)
- The Manner mode selected previously is set if no operations are performed for approximately two seconds after step 1.

When in stand-by or while receiving, with Manner mode set (Normal)

- Key/Standby i-motion sound, warning sounds, melody playback (a confirmation screen appears), i-αppli melodies/sound effects, charge start sound, charge end sound, battery level sound, hold tone during calls, bar code recognition tone and Limit settings alarm, etc. are silenced.
- Ring tones, alarm tones, timer sounds, GPS tones, etc. are changed to vibrations.
- Record message is automatically set. Record message cannot be set or disabled (P P. 71) using menu operations.

Disabling Manner Mode

Press \boxplus for 1+ seconds when in stand-by or while receiving.

• 🚱 disappear and Manner mode is disabled.

Related Operations

Disable Manner mode automatically at a specified time <Auto disable> In stand-by, enter disabling time (four digits: 24-hour format) ▶ (for 1+ seconds) or ■ (5).

Silence ring tone when Manner mode is not set <Quick silent>

Press \boxplus while receiving.

• When FOMA terminal is closed: Press 🖻 (1) while receiving.

Related Operations

Note

Automatically disabling Manner mode

• Disabling time is within 24 hours of the time of setting. When a screen other than stand-by is shown at the disabling time, or when turned off, Manner mode is disabled when the stand-by display reappears.

Quick silent

• Quick silent silences the current incoming call.

Original Manner Mode

Changing Manner Mode

Default setting Record message: *ON*, Ring tone: *Silent*, Mail ring tone: *Silent*, Alarm tone: *OFF*, Vibrator: *ON*, Key/Standby i-motion: *OFF*, Mic sensitivity up: *ON*, Low battery alarm: *OFF*

Change the settings of the various functions that are activated when Original manner mode is set.

In stand-by, press • 1 4 and 1 [ON].

2

Press 3 [Original].

3

Select function and setting, and select 1 [ON] or 2 [OFF].

| Record message | 1 | Alarm tone | 4 | Mic sensitivity up | 7 |
|--------------------|---|----------------------------|---|--------------------|---|
| Phone ring volume* | 2 | Vibrator | 5 | Low battery alarm | 8 |
| Mail ring tone* | 3 | Key/Standby i-motion sound | 6 | | |

For the volume setting, press 🗋 (louder) or 🗔 (softer) to adjust and press 🔳.

 Press (a) when changing the settings is finished. The stand-by display reappears and Original manner mode is set.

Note

- Record message is activated if set to ON even if set to OFF in Original manner mode.
- An alert tone sounds when battery level becomes low when Low battery alarm is set to ON.
- Change Original manner mode settings even while Manner mode is set.
- If a connected external device is set to sound, it will sound even if Manner mode is set.

Stand-by Display

Changing Stand-by Display Settings

Displaying an Image <Stand-by Display>

Default setting 待受画面1

Set images saved in Data box, including preset still pictures, shot still pictures and movies, downloaded still pictures and Flash movies, i-motion, images received via i-mode mail, etc., as stand-by.

- Stand-by display images are preset in the FOMA terminal. (127 P. 426)
- Use Data box images such as JPEG/GIF images, animated GIFs, Flash movies in My picture and movies/ i-motion in i-motion folder. Even if Flash movies with audio are used, they are played without sound.
- Voice only movies/i-motion (melodies with no video), and movies/i-motion with playback restrictions are not available. ASF files are also not available.

126 Sound/Screen/Light Settings

In stand-by, press <a>[2]11 and select image.

| ↑ select folder → ● → select image → i → Yes → ● To check image, select an image and press ●. Press I and the previous screen reappears. For images other than Stand-by: 240×400, a setting confirmation screen appears when Yes is pressed in the above operation. Select Display size for JPEG image from Actual size, Zoom/Reduce (wide) and Zoom/Reduce (all). Select Display size for GIF image or animated GIF from Actual size and Zoom/Reduce (all). Actual size is not available for still pictures larger than Stand-by: 240×400. Display size cannot be selected for Flash movies. |
|--|
| ② → select folder → ● → select movie/i-motion → ● → Yes → ● To check movie/i-motion, select a movie/i-motion and press ●. Press ● and the previous screen reappears. Press ● [Pause] during playback to pause. Press ● to continue playback. Movies/i-motion of sQCIF: 128×96, QCIF: 176×144, hQVGA: 240×176 and QVGA: 320×240 can be set. For sQCIF: 128×96 and QCIF: 176×144 (W×H) movies/i-motion, select Actual size or Zoom. Movie/i-motion volume follows Key/Standby i-motion volume settings. (Movie/i-motion plays back one time.) In stand-by, press ●● (for 1+ seconds) during i-motion playback to switch audio on or off. |
| ③ ● Refer to P. 263 for details on setting i-αppli. |
| |

Note

- Images and movies/i-motion saved on microSD Memory Card cannot be directly set as stand-by. Copy/ transfer to FOMA terminal handset before setting. Movies/i-motion saved in the *Movable contents* folder on microSD Memory Card can be directly set.
- If a Flash movie, animated GIF or movie/i-motion is set as stand-by, they are activated as shown below.

| Flash movie or animated GIF | Played back from the first frame. A frame of the stopped movie/ animation appears as the stand-by display when playback finishes. Press 🖀 during playback to pause. Press 🖀 again to resume playback. |
|--|--|
| Movie/i-motion (encoded in non-H.264 format*) | Played back from the first frame. The first frame appears as the stand-by display when playback finishes. Press 🝙 during playback to return to the first frame and stop. Press 🝙 again to resume playback. |
| Movie/i-motion (encoded in H.264*) | Nothing appears as stand-by. |

* Refer to P. 305 on encoding.

- When the image set as stand-by is deleted, the default image reappears.
- Phone To (AV Phone To), Mail To, and Web To functions are not available from i-motion stand-by.
- The set animated GIF or Flash movies may appear differently (such as frame dropping) from when on a site or Internet web page.

Displaying the Calendar <Calendar Display>

Default setting OFF

Display calendar for the current month, two months (the current month and the following month) or four months (starting with the current month) on top of stand-by image. Set vacation days and holidays (127 P. 372) are shown in red. Days with schedules set are underlined. When the calendar is set to **1 month (Large)**, icons appear to the right of the dates with schedule entries.

- Japanese national holidays as stipulated in the revised National Holiday Law and Welfare Law for the Elderly (Law No. 43, 2005) are set by default (as of October 2006). (Dates for Spring Equinox Day and Autumnal Equinox Day may differ because they are released on February 1 of the previous year.)
- If animated GIF, Flash movie or i-motion is set as stand-by, playback stops when switching to Calendar.
- Calendar appears in English when Select language is set to *English*.



In stand-by, press <a>[2]1 <a>[3] and select display method.

| 1 month (large) | 1 |
|-----------------|--|
| 1 month | $(2) \rightarrow (1)$ [Upper left], (2) [Upper right], (3) [Lower left] or (4) [Lower right] |
| 2 months | $(3) \rightarrow (1)$ [Up] or (2) [Down] |
| 4 months | 4 |
| OFF | 5 |



- Press (_), and the previous and following months appear. When the calendar is set to *4 months*, the previous and following two months appear.
- Press ro switch between the stand-by and the calendar when Calendar is set in the stand-by display.
- When Calendar is set and i-Channel ticker is set to **ON**, press 🝙 in stand-by to switch between Calendar display and i-Channel ticker.

Displaying the Clock <Clock Display>

Default setting Clock display: ON (Large), Set clock style: 待受時計 1, Set display position: Down

Show date and time on top of stand-by image.

- When Clock display is set to ON (Large) or OFF, time does not appear in the upper right of the stand-by display. (Time appears on other screens.) Set Clock display to ON (Small) to show the clock in the upper right of the stand-by display.
- When selecting from My picture, GIF images that are 160 (W) × 160 (H) pixels are available. (Flash movies, animated GIFs and JPEG images are not available.)
- Date and time appear in English when Select language is set to *English*. However, some images may not appear properly when language is switched between Japanese and English.



In stand-by, press •212.

Select Clock display, press and select the type of clock.

| To show clock (Large) | 1 |
|-----------------------|---|
| To show clock (Small) | ② → proceed to step 5 The clock image displayed at the top of the screens other than the stand-by display can be changed. (℃ f"Changing the Design of Icons" on P. 134) |
| To not show | $(3) \rightarrow$ proceed to step 5 |



Select Set clock style, press •, select folder, press •, select image and press • [OK].

• Sample of the clock appears on the display.



Select Set disp position, press 🔳 and select the display position.

Up Down

5

Press **i** [Complete].

Call/Receive Display

Changing Call/Receive Image

Default setting Outgoing calls: 電話発信1, Incoming voice calls, Videophone, Payphone, User unset, Not support: 電話着信1

Change the image that appears when making or receiving a call.

1

2

- Use JPEG/GIF images, animated GIFs and Flash movies in My picture of Data box. Also set i-motion as receive display (excluding voice only i-motion (melodies with no video)).
- Images larger than 240 (W) × 144 (H) pixels are reduced.



In stand-by, press <a>231, select item and press <a>[Select].

| Outgoing calls | 2 | Payphone | 5 |
|----------------------|---|-------------|---|
| Incoming voice calls | 3 | User unset | 6 |
| Incoming Videophone | 4 | Not support | 7 |

• When an item is selected, a preview of the set image appears. However, preview does not appear when a movie/i-motion is set.

2

Select folder, press , select image and press (OK).

- To set the Receive display, select 1 [My picture] or 2 [i-motion] before selecting a folder.
- To check image, select an image and press •. Press and the previous screen reappears. For pre-installed animated GIFs, press to play. Playback automatically stops after approximately 15 to 30 seconds.
- For movies/i-motion, press

 [Pause] to pause playback. Press
 to continue playback. Press
 and the previous screen reappears.
- Refer to P. 211 for details on setting i-motion as the receive display.

Note

- If the receive display is changed, ring tone may also change. (PP. 211)
- If original still picture set as Call/Receive display is deleted, the default setting image reappears.
- Images that cannot be set do not appear.
- Incoming video phone is prioritized over User unset for Videophone calls with no caller ID.
- Images in microSD Memory Card cannot be set as a call/receive display. Copy/transfer them to the FOMA terminal handset before setting. Movies/i-motion copied from microSD Memory Card to the FOMA terminal handset cannot be set as a receive display. To use shot movies, save them on the FOMA terminal handset. Movies/i-motion in the **Movable contents** folder in microSD Memory Card can directly be set.
- Picture call settings may be prioritized over the receive display setting if set to ON.

Changing Image for Sending/Receiving Messages

Default setting Send display: メール送信 1, Receive display: メール受信 1, Mail received screen: メール受信結果 1

Change the images that appear when sending or receiving mail or when mail reception is completed.

• Use JPEG/GIF images, animated GIFs and Flash movies in My picture of Data box. i-motion can also be used for Mail received screen. (excluding voice only i-motion (melodies with no video))

1

In stand-by, press <a>[2]3(2), select item and press <a>[8] [Select].

| To set Send display | 1 |
|-----------------------------|---|
| To set Receive display | 2 |
| To set Mail received screen | 3 |

2

Select folder, press •, select image and press • [OK].

- To check image, select an image and press •. Press R and the previous screen reappears. For pre-installed animated GIFs, press to play. Playback automatically stops after approximately 15 to 30 seconds.
- For movies/i-motion, press [Pause] to pause playback. Press to resume playback. To return to the previous screen, press ➡.

Note

- If the mail received screen is changed, mail ring tone may also be changed.
- If an image set for Send/Receive display or Mail received screen is deleted, the default setting image reappears.
- Images that cannot be set for the Send/Receive display or Mail received screen do not appear.
- Images on microSD Memory Card cannot be set for the Send/Receive display and Mail received screen. Copy/transfer to FOMA terminal handset before setting. Movies/i-motion copied from microSD Memory Card to the FOMA terminal handset cannot be set for Mail received screen. To use shot movies, save them on the FOMA terminal handset. Movies/i-motion saved in the *Movable contents* folder on microSD Memory Card can be directly set.
- For the Message R/F received results screen, the default メール受信結果1 cannot be changed from.

Picture Call Set

Setting Whether to Show Phonebook Image for Incoming Calls

Default setting ON

Set to show picture call image when a call is received from a phone number with Picture call set (\mathbb{CP} P. 100, P. 106).

 When caller ID is not sent or if picture call images/movies are not set in phonebook, images are not displayed even if Picture call is set to ON. (IPP P. 101)

In stand-by, press •2311 and 1 [ON].

Note

Images are prioritized in the following order.

| | Priority (high $ ightarrow$ low) |
|-------|--|
| Image | Phonebook Picture call \rightarrow group Picture call \rightarrow Call/Receive display |
| | If i-motion is set, the set i-motion may be prioritized. |

Saving Battery Power

Default setting Normal (auto bright)

Adjust settings such as the screen display time and conserve battery power. Settings for items such as display time vary for each mode as shown below. (Durations are approximations.)

| | Normal (auto bright) | Normal (fixed bright) | Power saver mode | User set*1 |
|----------------------|-------------------------|--------------------------|------------------|------------|
| Display light time | 10 seconds | 10 seconds | 5 seconds | 10 seconds |
| Screen display time | 1 minute | 1 minute | 30 seconds | 1 minute |
| Screen Saver | OFF | OFF | OFF | OFF |
| Brightness*2 | Automatic | 6 | 1 | Automatic |
| Keypad light setting | Light | Light | OFF | Light |

*1 Change User set settings. (IPP. 131)

*2 When set to Automatic, the light adjusting sensor (P. 25) automatically adjusts the brightness of the display and the keypad backlight according to the surrounding light. Adjusting may take some time when a bright or dark room is entered immediately after the phone is opened. Do not apply stickers to the light adjusting sensor. (P. 24) Doing so may interfere with the sensor.



In stand-by, press <a>[2]6 and select Power saver type.

| Normal (auto bright) | 1 | Power saver mode | 3 |
|-----------------------|---|------------------|---|
| Normal (fixed bright) | 2 | User set mode | 4 |

Setting Power Saver Mode by One-touch Operation

In stand-by, press 🔽 (Eco) for 1+ seconds.

- Power saver mode is set. When Power saver mode is already set, the Power saver set screen appears.
- To disable, press 🖲 (Eco) for 1+ seconds again and select Power saver type.

User Set

Setting Original Power Saver Mode

Adjust Display light time, Screen display time, Screen Saver, Brightness and Keypad light settings for *User set* of Power saver settings.

Setting Display and Key Lights < Display Light Time>

Default setting Normal: 10 seconds, Charging and i-mode: Same as normal, Video-phone: ON

Set the light duration for display and key backlight for the following situations. Light dims when set time passes.

 When Power saver is set to Normal (auto bright), Normal (fixed bright) or Power saver mode, Display light time, Screen display time, Screen Saver, Brightness and Keypad light setting in User set is disabled.

| | Set the length of time the display lights from 1 to 99 seconds for when handset is turned on, keys are pressed, handset is opened/closed or a call is received. |
|-------------|--|
| | Set to Same as normal or As scrn dsp time for when handset is connected to AC or DC adapter (sold separately). |
| Video-phone | Set to Same as normal or ON for when Videophone is in use. |
| i-mode | Set to Same as normal or As scrn dsp time for when i-mode is in use. |

In stand-by, press <a>[2]6

| Display ligh | nt time | | | | |
|---------------|------------|--|--|--|--|
| 1 Normai | | | | | |
| 2 Charging | 10 seconds | | | | |
| 3 Video-phone | | | | | |
| 4 i-mode | | | | | |
| | | | | | |

| | Normal | 1 | Video-phone | 3 |
|----|----------|---|-------------|---|
| ds | Charging | 2 | i-mode | 4 |

2

Enter from 01 to 99 seconds and press •.

• For charging and i-mode, select 1 [Same as normal] or 2 [As scrn dsp time]. For Videophone, select 1 [Same as normal] or 2 [ON].

Note

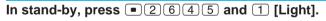
- Light duration (seconds) can only be set for Normal.
- Increasing light duration shortens continuous stand-by time.
- When the same time is set for Normal Display light time and Screen display time, Screen display time is prioritized.
- The display brightness during a Videophone call follows the setting of User set in Power saver set. When Videophone in Display light time is set to **Same as normal**, the brightness is adjusted to the setting of Brightness. When **ON** is set, the brightness is adjusted to Brightness 2.
- Backlight time in video player applies to the light duration at Flash movie or movie playback.
- When Flash movies or animated GIFs are set as stand-by and Power saver mode is exited to return to stand-by, the movie or animation resumes playback from the beginning.
- If Backlight time for Image Viewer, video player and Chara-den player are set to As light setting, Normal in Display light time is applied.
- Light is always lit for Slideshow, Shoot still picture, Character reader and Bar code reader regardless of the display light time settings.
- Light duration is prioritized as follows when multiple are set. If Display light time is set to ON for Videophone and Videophone is used while charging, Display light time is set to ON regardless of the setting for Charging.

| | Priority (high \rightarrow low) | | | |
|----------------|---|--|--|--|
| Light duration | Charging \rightarrow Videophone/i-mode \rightarrow Normal | | | |

Lighting the Keypad <Keypad Light Setting>

Set to turn on/off the backlight for keypad.

- The duration when set to Light follows the Display light time setting.
- Note that continuous stand-by time decreases when set to light.



Setting Image Display Time <Screen Display Time>

Default setting 1 minute

Default setting Light

Turn off the display when FOMA terminal is not in use for a set period of time to conserve battery power.

1

In stand-by, press •2642 and select time before activating Power saver mode.

| 30 seconds | 1 | 3 minutes | 4 | 15 minutes | 7 |
|------------|---|------------|---|------------|---|
| 1 minute | 2 | 5 minutes | 5 | 20 minutes | 8 |
| 2 minutes | 3 | 10 minutes | 6 | | |

Note

• In Power saver mode, the display will turn on when any key is pressed.

132 Sound/Screen/Light Settings

- During a voice call, the display backlight turns off according to Display light time (Normal) regardless of the set time in the screen display time setting.
- During i-Channel ticker playback, Power saver mode is activated according to the screen display time setting. However, when the screen display time is set to 30 seconds, Power saver mode is not activated for 60 seconds from the start of i-Channel ticker playback.
- Power saver mode is not activated even when Screen display time passes during Videophone calls, PushTalk transmission, i-mode/mail transmission, i-motion/slideshow playback, data transmission with an external device, while camera is activated or while GPS positioning is being performed. However, Power saver mode is activated according to the screen display time setting during Stand-by i-motion playback.

Setting Screen Saver < Screen Saver>

Default setting OFF

When Screen display time passes, the screen turns dark and only the date and time appear.

• When a call or mail is received, *xx missed call(s)* or *xx mail message(s)* can be displayed even when Screen Saver is set.



In stand-by, press <a>2643 and select Screen Saver.

| ON (Normal) | 1 | Screen Saver is set. |
|--------------|---|--|
| ON (Privacy) | 2 | xx missed call(s) or xx mail massage(s) appear on display while Screen Saver is set when a call or mail is received. The massages are not displayed when receiving data transmission. |
| OFF | 3 | Screen Saver is not set. |

Adjusting Display Brightness <Brightness>

Default setting Automatic

 $(2) \rightarrow (brighter)$ or $(arker) \rightarrow (arker)$

Automatically adjust the brightness according to the surrounding light. In addition, Keypad light is automatically switched between *Light/OFF* when Keypad light setting is set to *Light*. • Note that increasing brightness shortens continuous stand-by time.

(1)

To adjust brightness manually

To adjust brightness automatically

In stand-by, press <a>[<a

| Brightness |
|---|
| Bright: ☎ ≪Brightness 6≫ (1~16) Dark : ☑ |
| 1000 |

| | • Select from 16 display brightness levels. |
|--|---|
| | The set brightness appear as |
| | adjustments are made. |
| | |

When brightness is manually adjusted

Arranging the Display

Changing Submenu Design <Submenu Image>

Default setting Upper image: メニュー枠1(上), Lower image: メニュー枠1(下)

Change menu background pattern (image around edge of display).

• Use JPEG/GIF images or animated GIFs with a size of 218 (W) × 10 (H). (Flash movies are not available.)

In stand-by, press <a>233 and <a>[Select].

• Press I to switch between the image set screens of upper and lower frames.

Select folder, press , select image and press (OK).

- To check image, select an image and press . Press and the previous screen reappears.
- When the upper frame image is set, the lower frame image set screen appears. To set an image, press [Select] and repeat step 2.

Setting the Animation for the Notice Window < Animate Notices>

Default setting お知らせアニメ1

Set images for windows with confirmation/error messages. • Use JPEG/GIF images or animated GIFs with a size of 212 (W) × 42 (H).

In stand-by, press <a>234 and <a>[Select].

- Select folder, press •, select image and press [OK].
- To check image, select an image and press . Press CLR and the previous screen reappears.

Changing the Design of Icons <Signal/Batt/S Clock>

 Default setting
 Signal icon: 電界強度 1, Battery icon: 電池残量 1, Small clock: 時計表示 1

 Change Signal, Battery level and Clock icons that appear on the screen.

Default marks

| en To To To | 国本。 の 初 の | () () (3) | 圏外 Y T Ti Til | | | (0(1(2 (3¢)(| |
|----------------------|--------------------|------------------------|---------------------|-------|--------|-----------------|-------|
| 電界強度1 | 電界強度2 | 電界強度3 | 電界強度4 | 電池残量1 | 電池残量 2 | 電池残量 3 | 電池残量4 |
| 0 1389 | 01230 | 01294 | 01234 | | | | |
| 56789 | 56789: | 56700: | 56789: | | | | |
| 時計表示1 | 時計表示 2 | 時計表示3 | 時計表示4 | | | | |

When selecting from My picture, GIF images that are 48 (W) × 60 (H) pixel for Signal icon, 72 (W) × 40 (H) for Battery icon and 49 (W) × 40 (H) for Clock are available. (Flash movies, animated GIFs and JPEG images are not available.)



| Signal icon | 1 |
|--------------|---|
| Battery icon | 2 |
| Clock | 3 |

Press 📱 [Select], select folder, press 🔳, select image and press

• To check image, select an image and press •. Press CLR and the previous screen reappears.

Changing the Color Scheme < Theme Color>

Default setting Pure



In stand-by, press 236 and select theme color.

| Pure | 1 | PrismRed | 3 | HoneyYellow | 5 | Girlish | 7 |
|-------------|---|--------------|---|-------------|---|------------|---|
| PlanetBlack | 2 | Intelligence | 4 | Citrus | 6 | SilverLine | 8 |

ullet When a Theme color is selected and \fbox is pressed, the color scheme appears on the screen.

Select Yes and press .

Personalize Menu

Changing Top Menu Design

Change icons and their order, background image and whether to show icon names in the Top menu.

 Individual icon setting, Action focus and Set background may not be available depending on the set Top menu.

Personalizing and Saving Top Menu

Save up to two image sets among the images shown for Top menu with Icon image or background settings.

1

In Top menu, press 111 [Customizable], select Yes and press •.

2

Set Icon images (@P P. 135) or background (@P P. 136) and press **(Personalize menu**].



Select save destination, press 🖾 [Save all], select Yes and press 🔳.

- Save to User set 1 or User set 2.
- \bullet To delete a saved user set, select the user set, press \fbox , select Yes and press \boxdot .

Note

- The preset Top menu for personalization cannot be deleted.
- When power is turned off or setting is otherwise interrupted, changes are set up until the interruption. In such cases, perform settings again.

Setting Top Menu Icons <Icon Image>

- \bullet Use 76 (W) \times 76 (H) pixel JPEG images, GIF images or animated GIFs. Downloaded images can also be used.
- Set two images per icon, for selected and unselected status.
- Up to three scenes are used for animated GIFs. Image for selected status is not available.
- If an image in My picture of Data box is set as a menu icon, even if deleted, the image is retained until the menu icon setting is changed.

In "Personalizing and Saving Top Menu" (B step 2 on P. 135), select an icon and press [141] [Icon image].

Select folder, press •, select image for unselected status and press • [OK].

- Images that cannot be set for menu icons do not appear.
- When animated GIF is selected, Top menu reappears.
- To check image, select an image and press . Press CLR and the previous screen reappears.

Select image for selected status.

| 0 | Select Yes \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow select folder \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow select image \rightarrow \blacksquare |
|---|--|
| To set the same image for unselected status | Select $No \rightarrow \blacksquare$ |

Related Operations

Move Top menu icons <Move icon>

In Top menu, select an icon \triangleright (a) 1 4 2 \triangleright select location to move to \triangleright .

Show icon names < Display icon name>

In Top menu, press 0143 1.

Note

Display icon name

- The default setting is **OFF**.
- For preset icons, since the icon name is included in the image, characters appear doubled when Display icon name is set to **ON**.

Setting Action Focus for Top Menu Icons <Action Focus>

Default setting OFF

- When set, Action focus only applies to icons selected in Top menu.
- Action focus is applied to last image for animated GIFs.

-

In "Personalizing and Saving Top Menu" (B step 2 on P. 135), press 15 [Action Focus] and select Action focus type.

| Globe | 1 | Circular frames appear and rotate at varying speeds. | |
|----------|---|--|--|
| Target | 2 | Large square becomes smaller. | |
| Mist | 3 | Fog-like veil light covers icons. | |
| Stardust | 4 | Light sparkles. | |
| Windmill | 5 | Three lines appear and rotate under the icon. | |
| Ripple | 6 | Rings move outward. | |
| OFF | 7 | Nothing is set. | |

Setting Top Menu Background <Set Background>

Default setting メニュー背景

- Use JPEG and GIF images. (Flash movies and animated GIFs are not available.) Downloaded images can also be used.
- If a still picture in My picture of Data box is set as background image, even if deleted, the image remains as background image until changed.

In "Personalizing and Saving Top Menu" (r step 2 on P. 135), press 16 [Set background].

Select folder, press 🔳, select still picture and press 🔳 [OK].

- Still pictures that cannot be set as background images do not appear.
- To check still picture, select a still picture and press . Press and the previous screen reappears.

Resetting Top Menu to Default Status <Reset Menu>

Reset Top menu Icon image settings, Icon location, Display icon name, Action Focus and background image settings to the default status.

• For Top menu, i-mode menu and mail menu changed by Kisekae Tool, the settings follow *White* (for the handset color Opal White) of Kisekae Tool in the Pre-installed folder regardless of the handset color.



In Top menu, press 2 [Reset menu], enter terminal security code, press •, select Yes and press •.

Viewing the Key List <Key List>

Refer to the Key list and look up Top menu icons and key operations from stand-by.

In Top menu, press 3 [Key list] and select the operation to check.

| Icon operation methods | 1 |
|------------------------------|---|
| Key operations from stand-by | 2 |

• Key list for the selected operation appears.

Kisekae Tool

Using Kisekae Tool

Use the Kisekae Tool downloaded from i-mode sites for the terminal and change the ring tone, stand-by, menu icon, etc. collectively.

- Refer to "Downloading Kisekae Tool" on P. 200 for details on downloading the Kisekae Tool.
- The following items can be set.

| Screen | Stand-by, Outgoing calls, Incoming calls, Incoming video phone, Send/Receive, Mail received | | | |
|-----------|---|--|--|--|
| | results, Signal icon, Battery icon, Animated notice, Menu border (top), Menu border (bottom), Top | | | |
| | menu image, i-mode menu image, mail menu image | | | |
| Ring tone | Phone ring tone, Videophone ring tone, Mail ring tone, Message R/F ring tone, PushTalk tone | | | |

• Items that can be set depend on the set Kisekae Tool.



2

Select folder and press •.



Select Kisekae Tool and press (...). • To check data, select the data and press . White 1/2 Stand-by display UI Top menu <u>u</u>i-mode menu **W**Mail menu GIE Phone GIE Incoming call GE Incoming video-phone apessam bressage REIncoming mail GE Mail rovd results GIFSignal icon Kisekae (OK) Submenu Data screen in Kisekae Tool Press **I** [Kisekae], select Yes and press **I**.

Note

 Checking Kisekae Tool saved in the *Movable contents* folder on microSD Memory Card is possible. However, they cannot be directly set. Transfer them to the FOMA terminal handset before setting.

Related Operations

Set data check volume <Set volume>

- 1 In data list in Kisekae Tool, press 1.
- 2 Press ((louder) or ((softer)) (.

Set display size when setting i-motion as stand-by display <Stand-by i-motion>

- 1 In data list in Kisekae Tool, press 2.
- **2** For Normal size, press **1**.
 - For Large size: Press 2.

Resetting Kisekae Tool Settings

In stand-by, press 9 for 1+ seconds.

Kisekae Tool 1 Reset display/sound 2 Reset menu screen



Select item to reset.

| To reset display/sound | $(1) \rightarrow \text{enter terminal security code} \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow \bigcirc [Agree]$ |
|--------------------------|---|
| To reset the menu screen | $(2) \rightarrow \text{enter terminal security code} \rightarrow \bullet \rightarrow \bullet [Agree]$ |

LED Settings

Setting the Illumination

Set flashed LED color and flashing pattern in a call, when receiving a call, at Charge end, when using GPS function, etc.

LED color type

Select from Rainbow, Aurora, Sun set, Leaf, Aqua, Sunshine, Plasma, Sky.

LED patterns

The following table shows the combinations of LED flashing pattern and set items.

| LED pattern | Called LED (Voice call/ Videophone/ PushTalk) | Mail/ Message LED | Mail send/ receive LED | In-call LED | Charge end LED | Alarm/ Timer LED | Close/ Viewer position |
|----------------|--|-------------------------|------------------------------|-------------|-------------------|---------------------|------------------------------|
| Classic | | | | | | | |
| Breath | | | | | | | |
| Deep breath | | | | | | | |
| Light breath | | | | | | | |
| Notice | | | | | | | |
| Excite | | | | | | | |
| Morse code | | | | | | | |
| Melody ON | | | × | × | × | | × |

• GPS LED flashes in *Morse code* and IC card LED flashes in *Breath*. The settings cannot be changed.

Setting the Called LED Color <Called LED Color>

Default setting Voice call: Aqua, Videophone: Aqua, PushTalk: Sun set, Mail/Message LED: Leaf Set the LED color for incoming voice/Videophone calls, PushTalk and mail.

1

In stand-by, press <a>2 <a>2 <a>4 and select item.

| To set voice called LED color | 111 |
|------------------------------------|-----|
| To set Videophone called LED color | 121 |
| To set PushTalk LED color | 131 |
| To set mail LED color | 211 |

Select called LED color.

• Each time a color is selected, the LED color changes.

Note

- When a call is received during data transmission, LED color is the set color for the voice called LED.
- Called LED is prioritized as follows when multiple are set.

| | Priority (high \rightarrow low) | | |
|------------|--|--|--|
| Called LED | Phonebook called LED \rightarrow group called LED \rightarrow regular called LED | | |
| Mail LED | Phonebook mail LED \rightarrow group mail LED \rightarrow regular mail LED | | |

Setting the Called LED Pattern <LED Pattern Settings>

Default setting Voice call: *Excite*, Videophone call: *Notice*, PushTalk: *Morse code*, Mail/Message LED: *Breath* Set called LED flashing pattern. If a melody with LED actions is set as the ring tone, link the melody and LED actions (Melody ON).

In stand-by, press <a>[2] <a>[2] <a>[4] and select item.

| To set voice called LED pattern | 112 |
|--------------------------------------|-----|
| To set Videophone called LED pattern | 122 |
| To set PushTalk LED pattern | 132 |
| To set mail LED pattern | 212 |

Select called LED pattern.

• Each time a pattern is selected, the LED flashing pattern changes.

Using the LED During Sending/Receiving Mail <Mail Send/Rcv LED>

Default setting LED color settings: Sky, LED pattern settings: Breath



In stand-by, press \bullet 2422 and 1 [ON].

Press 1 [LED color settings] and select LED color.

- Each time a color is selected, called LED color changes.
- Press 2 [LED pattern settings] and select LED pattern.
- Each time a pattern is selected, called LED flashing pattern changes.

Changing LED for Using GPS Function <GPS LED>

Default setting All Sky

• LED pattern flashes in *Morse code* and cannot be changed.

In stand-by, press <a>[2] and select item.

| To set LED color for Position location | 1 |
|--|---|
| To set LED color for Location notification | 2 |
| To set LED color used when Location provision is Always allow | 3 |
| To set LED color used when Location provision is Always choose | |

2

Select LED color.

- Each time a color is selected, the LED color changes.
- For checking or notifying present location, setting to OFF disables the LED flash.

Note

When Location provision is allowed/chosen

"When Location provision is allowed" is the case when GPS Service settings are set to 許可 (Always allow) or when Location usage setting (imadoko-search setting) accessed by *iMenu* → 料金&お申込・設定 (Charges & Subscription, Settings) → オプション設定 (Options) → 位置情報利用設定 (Location usage setting) is set to 許可 (Always allow).

- "When Location provision is chosen" is the case when GPS Service settings are set to 毎回確認 (Always choose) or when Location usage setting (imadoko-search setting) accessed by *iMenu* → 料金&お申込・設定 (Charges & Subscription, Settings) → オプション設定 (Options) → 位置情報利用設定 (Location usage setting) is set to 毎回確認 (Always choose).
- Refer to P. 285 for details on GPS Service settings.

Using the LED During a Call <In-call LED>

Default setting OFF

Flash the LED during a voice/Videophone call or while the right to speak is granted during PushTalk transmission.





Press 1 [LED color settings] and select LED color.

- Each time a color is selected, the LED color changes.
- Press 2 [LED pattern settings] and select LED pattern.
 - Each time a pattern is selected, the LED flashing pattern changes.

Using the LED at Charge End <Charge End LED>

Default setting OFF

1

In stand-by, press \bullet 245 and 1 [ON].

Press 1 [LED color settings] and select LED color.

• Each time a color is selected, the LED color changes.

Press 2 [LED pattern settings] and select LED pattern.

• Each time a pattern is selected, the LED flashing pattern changes.

Using the LED When Alarm Operates <Alarm/Timer LED>

Default setting LED color settings: *Aurora*, LED pattern settings: *Morse code* Turn LED on while an alarm, which is set with Timer, Alarm, Schedule or ToDo list, is activated.



Press 2 [LED pattern settings] and select LED pattern.

• Each time a pattern is selected, the LED flashing pattern changes.

Using the LED When Using IC Card <IC Card LED>

Default setting ON

• The LED flashes in *Plasma* with the pattern of *Breath*. The settings cannot be changed.

In stand-by, press • 2 4 7 and 1 [ON]. Using LED When the FOMA Terminal Is Closed or in Viewer Position closed/Viewer Pos> Default setting LED color settings: Aqua, LED pattern settings: Notice In stand-by, press • 2 4 8 and 1 [ON]. Press 1 [LED color settings] and select LED color. Each time a color is selected, the LED color changes. Press 2 [LED pattern settings] and select LED pattern. Each time a pattern is selected, the LED flashing pattern changes. Missed Call Notice/New Unrd Mail Noti Notifying a Call or Mail Received with LED

Set the LED to flash for missed calls and new mail.

• The LED flashes in *Aqua* for missed calls and in *Leaf* for new mail at approximately eight second intervals. The settings cannot be changed.

1

In stand-by, press 24 and select item.

| Missed call notice | 14 |
|------------------------|-----|
| New unread mail notice | 213 |
| | |



Note

 The Missed call notice LED flashes for both missed calls and new mail when Missed call notice and New unrd mail noti are both set.

Changing Image Quality

Default setting Dynamic

Set the display to clear and vibrant image quality.

1

In stand-by, press <a>2 <a>5 and select image quality.

| Normal | 1 | Standard image quality |
|-----------|---|--|
| Dynamic | 2 | Image quality with increased colorfulness and emphasized edges |
| Vivid | 3 | Image quality with increased colorfulness |
| Sharpness | 4 | Image quality with emphasized edges |



Check image quality and press • [Agree].

Font Style

Changing Font Width

Default setting Bold

Set font width to one of the three styles.

In stand-by, press <a>

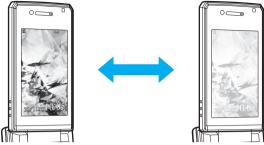
Font style 1 Normal 2 Bold 3 Bolder

| Normal | 1 |
|--------|---|
| Bold | 2 |
| Bolder | 3 |

This is a sample Easy-to-read font • Select a style to change sample font width.

Private Filter

Preventing Others from Seeing the Display



• Changing the contrast of the display to prevent others from seeing the screen.

In stand-by or during operations, press \blacksquare (\square).

- Private filter is set and \mathbf{Z} appears in stand-by.
- To disable, press ▲ (☑) again.

Note

- Private filter cannot be switched when still pictures/movies are shot, during All lock, Omakase lock, battery level warning or Delete user data.
- Private filter is canceled when the FOMA terminal is closed or turned off. However, when Manner mode is set with Linked manner mode set to ON, Private filter remains enabled even if the FOMA terminal is closed or turned off.
- Private filter is canceled while the display is off due to the Screen display time.

Setting Private Filter in Conjunction with Manner Mode <Linked Manner>

Default setting OFF

Set so that Private filter is automatically set when Manner mode is set.

In stand-by, press \bullet 271 and 1 [ON].

• Set/Disable Private filter even while in Manner mode.

Changing Private Filter Density <Filter Density>

Default setting Normal

In stand-by, press 0272 and select a Private filter density.

| Dark | 1 |
|--------|---|
| Normal | 2 |
| Light | 3 |

Private filter is more effective to prevent others from seeing the display in the order of *Dark* → *Normal* → *Light*.

Security Settings

Security Codes

| FOMA Terminal Security Code | |
|---|--|
| Changing Terminal Security Code | <change code="" security="">147</change> |
| Using Face Authentication | <face authentication="">148</face> |
| Setting PIN Code | <uim settings="">150</uim> |
| Disabling PIN Lock | |
| Restricting Phone Operations and Functions | |
| Lock Functions | |
| Preventing Use by Others | <all lock="">152</all> |
| Using Omakase Lock | <omakase lock="">153</omakase> |
| Disabling Online Activity | <self mode="">154</self> |
| Hiding Phonebook and Schedule Entries | |
| Prohibiting Keypad Dialing | <keypad dial="" lock="">155</keypad> |
| Setting Keypad Dial Lock, Function Lock and IC Card Lock by | |
| Setting Multi Easy Lock Automatically | <multi auto-set="" lock="">156</multi> |
| Preventing Side Key Errors Restricting Mail and Calls | <side guard="" key="">157</side> |
| Setting Redial and Received Calls | <show call="" received="">157</show> |
| Viewing Information Set as Secret | |
| Receiving Calls from Only Specified Phone Numbers | <accept calls="">158</accept> |
| Rejecting Calls from Specified Phone Numbers | |
| • Rejecting Calls with No Caller ID | Reason of Non-disclosure>161 |
| Silencing Ring Tone for Callers Not in Phonebook | |
| Rejecting Callers Not in Phonebook | <reject unknown="">162</reject> |
| ■Using Data Security Service | |
| Using Data Security Service | <data sec.="" service="">163</data> |
| Other Security Settings | |
| Other Security Settings | |

FOMA Terminal Security Code

For convenient use of FOMA terminal functions, some functions require security codes. In addition to the terminal security code used for various handset operations, use security codes such as the network security code and i-mode password when using network services. Use security codes with various functions to fully utilize the FOMA terminal.

● Entered terminal security codes (security code for each function), i-mode passwords, and PIN1/PIN2 codes are masked with *¥*.

Precautions for Various Security Codes

- Do not use easily estimated numbers for security codes to be set such as "birthday", "part of a telephone number", "address or room number", "1111", "1234". Keep a separate memo of passwords and security codes.
- Keep security codes private. If the security codes are found and improperly used by others, DoCoMo shall not be liable for any loss of the users.
- DoCoMo does not ask the users their security codes.
- When security codes are lost, the FOMA terminal owner will be asked to bring an identification (a driver's license, etc.), a FOMA terminal and a FOMA card to a DoCoMo Shop to prevent the possibility that a security code is changed by someone else.
- For further details, contact the number listed in "For General Inquiries" on the back of this manual.

Terminal Security Code (For Various Functions)

Terminal security code is set to **0000** by default but can be changed by the user. ((2) P. 147) If the terminal security code entry screen appears, enter the terminal security code (four to eight digits) and press •.

• If terminal security code is incorrectly entered, **Security code is wrong** appears and the screen before entering a terminal security code reappears. Check correct terminal security code and try again.

Network Security Code

Network security code is a four-digit code used for various registration procedures at $r \exists t e \forall f \land$ (DoCoMo e-site) or used for accessing network services. The code is set at the time of subscription and afterwards can be changed by the user.

For those with **DoCoMo ID/password** of the general support site **My DoCoMo** designed for PC, the registration procedure for a new network security code is available from PC.

From i-mode terminals, the security code can be changed by the user, accessing "各種手続き" in ドコモ e サイト (DoCoMo e-site).

Refer to the back cover for details on *My DoCoMo* and ドコモ e サイト (DoCoMo e-site).

i-mode Password

A four-digit "i-mode password" is required to register/delete sites in $\forall 1 \neq 2 = -$ (My menu), or subscribe/cancel message services and charged i-mode services.

(Additionally, information providers may set their own passwords.)

- i-mode password is set to 0000 by default but can be changed by the user.
- From i-mode terminals, the password can be changed by accessing *iMenu* English Options Change *i-mode* Password.

PIN1 Code/PIN2 Code

Set two security codes, PIN1 code and PIN2 code, on the FOMA card. These security codes are set to **0000** by default but can be changed by the user. (\mathfrak{CPP} P. 150)

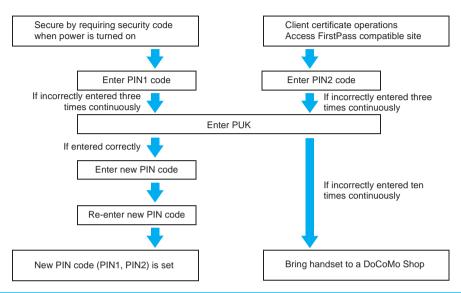
PIN1 code is a four- to eight-digit security code that is entered when the FOMA terminal is turned on or when a FOMA card is inserted to prevent unauthorized use by a third party. Enter PIN1 code to enable making/receiving calls and operating the handset. PIN2 code is four- to eight-digit security code that is entered when performing operations such as applying for or using Client certificates, or resetting total cost.

• Use the previously set PIN1 and PIN2 codes when inserting an old FOMA card into a newly purchased FOMA terminal.

PUK

PUK is an eight-digit number used to disable PIN1/PIN2 code lock. Enter PUK to disable the lock. PUK cannot be changed by the user. Note PIN1/PIN2 codes and PUK.

- PIN1/PIN2 codes are automatically locked if incorrectly entered three times continuously.
- If PUK is incorrectly entered a total of ten times continuously, FOMA card is completely locked.



Face Authentication

When Face Authentication is set to **ON** and a face authentication image is registered, Face authentication can be used instead of terminal security code. Unlike with the terminal security code, Face authentication removes the possibility of forgetting the security code. (127 P. 148)

Change Security Code

Changing Terminal Security Code

Default setting 0000

Change the terminal security code (four to eight digits).

In stand-by, press • 77, enter current terminal security code and press •.

| New | security code? |
|-----|----------------|
| 1 | 4 |

Enter new terminal security code and press •, and enter new terminal security code again and press •.

Using Face Authentication

Default setting OFF

Set Face authentication. Security level can also be set.

- For the following, the terminal security code entry screen appears and Face authentication is not available.
 - When terminal security code is changed (1 P. 147) or All lock is disabled (1 P. 152)
 - When functions related to Software update (CPP. 451) are used
 - When Videophone or camera is in use
 - When the battery level is low and the camera cannot be activated
- May malfunction if the camera is dirty. Use after wiping with a soft cloth.
- Face may not be recognized if light is shining on the face, rendering it white.
- When the contrast of the face is extreme due to a strong light shining on the face, registering may become difficult or recognition rate may lower (may not recognize). Use in a location where the light is even.
- Registering may not be possible or recognition rate may be lower in the following circumstances.
 - Face features (eyes, mouth, nose, eyebrows, etc.) cannot be seen clearly, such as when hidden by hair, wearing glasses with colored lenses or a mask, in a dark location
 - Where light is uneven on the face, such as under a light in a dark location If the above conditions apply, tie your hair to expose eyes, nose, mouth, eyebrows, or remove glasses or mask, or move to a location where light is even to improve recognition conditions.
- Up to seven face authentication images can be saved. It is recommended that three or more images of the user be saved to improve recognition standards.
- When Face authentication fails, *Unable to authenticate. Register face again if errors persist* appears. If errors persist, enter the terminal security code and save face authentication image again. The error dates and times are recorded in Error history and can be checked. Up to nine of the most recent errors are recorded.
- Face authentication technology is not intended for use by multiple users. Save own data when using.
- Face authentication is not completely accurate. DoCoMo shall not be liable for damages stemming from a third person using this product or if the product cannot be used because face authentication does not recognize properly.

In stand-by, press <a>[7], enter terminal security code and press <a>[8].



Select ON or OFF.

| To use Face authentication | 1 |
|--------------------------------|---|
| | Proceed to step 3. |
| To not use Face authentication | 2 |
| | Settings are completed. |



Register face authentication image.

• When 🚡 [Complete] is pressed when no images are registered, *Register face authentication image* appears.

| To register new face authentication image | Enter face authentication image registration number 1 to 7 → face sub camera towards yourself → Register again if <i>Unable to recognize. Register again</i> appears. |
|--|---|
| To overwrite registered face authentication image | Enter face authentication image registration number 1 to 7 → 1 → face sub camera towards yourself → • Register again if <i>Unable to recognize. Register again</i> appears. |
| To check registered face authentication image | Enter face authentication image registration number 1 to $\bigcirc \rightarrow \bigcirc$ • Press • to end viewing. |
| To delete registered face authentication image | Enter face authentication image registration number 1 to $\bigcirc \bigcirc \bigcirc$ \rightarrow $\textcircled{i} \rightarrow$ Yes \rightarrow \textcircled{o} |
| To check Error history | 9Press to end viewing. |

- When registering face authentication image, face straight forward and make sure entire face is inside viewfinder brackets. This reduces authentication failure resulting from different face positions from when registering and authenticating. Do not move your face when shooting image.
- Only sub camera can be used to register face authentication image. Press
 (brighter) or
 (darker) to adjust brightness. Shutter sounds when registering.

| L | |
|---|--|
| | |

Press (8) [Security level] and select level.

| Level 3 (High) | 1 |
|------------------|---|
| Level 2 (Middle) | 2 |
| Level 1 (Low) | 3 |

 When set to Level 3 (High), recognition becomes more precise. Standards for recognizing the user and others become stricter. The recognition standards for Level 2 (Middle) are between Level 3 (High) and Level 1 (Low). When Level 1 (Low) is selected, recognition standards are low.



Press **i** [Complete].

• This is a simple security feature that uses saved face images appears.

Press .

Activating Face Authentication

In the face authentication screen, face the sub camera towards yourself.

- Press (brighter) or . (darker) to adjust brightness.
- Do not move your face while authenticating.
- Authentication successful appears and function can be used.
- To switch to Enter security code, press 🔳 [Sec code].

UIM Settings

Setting PIN Code

Default setting PIN1 code: 0000, PIN2 code: 0000

Change the PIN1 and PIN2 codes on FOMA card. PIN1 and PIN2 codes are saved to the FOMA card.

- PIN1 code is a four- to eight-digit security code that prevents unauthorized use of the FOMA card. PIN2 code is a four- to eight-digit security code used for authentication when connecting to sites, Internet and online services. Enter when performing Client certificate operations (issuance of Client certificate to use FirstPass) or accessing FirstPass compatible sites (127 P. 209).
- Enter the four- to eight-digit number for PIN1/PIN2 code. (P. 146)

Note

- PIN1 code/PIN2 code is locked if incorrectly entered three times in PIN1 code/PIN2 code entry screen. Disable PIN lock. When disabling PIN lock, new PIN1 code/PIN2 code must be entered. (1) P. 151)
- If three consecutive PIN2 code entry errors are made and the FOMA terminal is locked, the handset continues to receive a signal and can make/receive calls and send/receive mail. However, if three consecutive PIN1 code entry errors are made, the FOMA terminal is locked and functions that require a signal are disabled.

Setting Handset to Require PIN Code Entry When Power Is Turned On <PIN1 Code Input Set>

Default setting OFF

Set to require PIN1 code entry when turning on the FOMA terminal to prevent unauthorized use.

In stand-by, press 7 2, enter terminal security code and press 7 1 IN Settings 7 1 PINI code 8 Chanse PINI2 code FOMA card settings screen

2

LILM

Enter PIN1 code 3times le

Press 1 [PIN1 code input set] and select ON or OFF.

| | To set | $\textcircled{1} \rightarrow \text{enter PIN1 code} \rightarrow \textcircled{\bullet}$ |
|---------|------------|--|
| e ft | To disable | $\textcircled{2} \rightarrow \text{enter PIN1 code} \rightarrow \textcircled{\bullet}$ |
| | | |

 PIN1 code can be entered up to three times. Rest X times appears on PIN1 code entry screen.

Entering PIN1 code when power is turned on

Set PIN1 code input set to **ON** and PIN1 code entry screen appears when the power is turned on. • Enter PIN1 code to operate FOMA terminal. Prevents unauthorized use of the handset.

Press (Power) for 2+ seconds to turn on handset, enter PIN1 code and press •.

- PIN1 code can be entered up to three times. Rest X times appears on PIN1 code entry screen.
- Enter correct PIN1 code to show the stand-by display.

Changing PIN1/PIN2 Code <Change PIN1 Code/PIN2 Code>

In stand-by, press <a>[7]2, enter terminal security code and press <a>[8].

• When PIN1 code input set is set to **OFF**, PIN1 code cannot be changed.

2

Select PIN1 or PIN2 code, enter current PIN code and press .

Current PIN1 code? 3times left

| 2 | PIN1 code | 2 |
|---|---|---------------|
| | PIN2 code | 3 |
| _ | PIN code can be entered | up to three t |

- PIN code can be entered up to three times. *Rest X times* appears on PIN code entry screen.
 - If PIN1/PIN2 code is entered incorrectly, *PIN1/PIN2 code not recognized* appears after step 3 and the screen of step 2 reappears.



Enter new PIN code and press •, and enter new PIN code again and press •.

Disabling PIN Lock

Screen when PIN1/PIN2 is locked



- PUK can be entered up to ten times. *Rest X times* appears on the PIN lock disabling screen.
- Enter the four- to eight-digit number for PIN1/PIN2 code. (PP. 146)

Disabling PIN1 Lock

• Use the same steps to disable PIN2 code lock.

In the PUK entry screen with PIN lock set, enter PUK (eight digits) and press •.



• Changed appears.

Lock Functions

Restrict phonebook operations such as retrieving, saving and deleting, and calling with the dial keys.

- Terminal security code is required to set/disable lock.
- The following items can be set.

| Lock function | Operation/Restrictions | Ref. |
|------------------|---|--------|
| All lock | Prevents unauthorized use of the FOMA terminal for all operations other than power ON/OFF and answering voice/Videophone calls. | P. 152 |
| Omakase lock | The access to all the data in the FOMA terminal is remotely locked. | P. 153 |
| Self mode* | Voice/Videophone calls, PushTalk, i-mode mail, SMS, Message R/F and i-mode functions are not available. | P. 154 |
| Function lock | Display, edit and operation for Multimedia, Mail, Phonebook (including PushTalk phonebook), Schedule are not available, preventing access and rewriting of personal information. Each function can be set individually. | P. 154 |
| Keypad dial lock | Dialing and phonebook editing are not available. Use phonebook or Redial to call. | P. 155 |
| Multi easy lock | Keypad dial lock, Function lock and IC card lock can be set by one-touch key operation. | P. 156 |

| Lock function | Operation/Restrictions | |
|-----------------|---|--------|
| | Keypad dial lock, Function lock and IC card lock can be automatically set when the display turns off. | P. 156 |
| IC card lock | Prevents use of IC card functions. | P. 276 |
| Side key guard* | Locks side keys and prevents errors. | P. 157 |

Terminal security code is not required for Self mode and Side key guard.

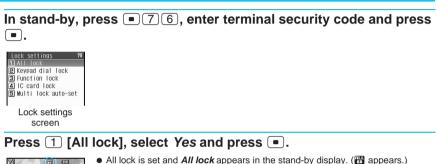
All Lock

Preventing Use by Others

Default setting Disabled

Prevent all operations other than power ON/OFF and answering voice/Videophone calls.

Enabling All Lock





Disabling All Lock

- During All lock, enter terminal security code in stand-by and press
 .
 - All lock and 🖽 disappear and All lock is disabled.

Note

- During All lock, 待受画面 1 appears regardless of stand-by display settings.
- Even if All lock is enabled, FeliCa IC card functions are not locked.
- When a missed call is received when All lock is enabled, the call is not indicated on the screen. When All lock is disabled, *xx missed call(s)* appears.
- During All lock, making and answering voice/Videophone calls are not available. However, calls to emergency numbers (110, 119 and 118) can still be made. To make a call, enter phone number in the terminal security code entry screen and press 🝙. Phone number is masked with asterisks.
- During All lock, alarms are not available.
- i-mode mail, SMS and Message R/F are automatically received but do not appear during All lock. Once All lock is disabled, i-mode mail, SMS and Message R/F icons appear.

Note

- Request for Location provision in the GPS function is answered during All lock.
- Failure to disable All lock five times consecutively will turn the FOMA terminal off. Turn the handset on again and enter correct terminal security code.

Omakase Lock

Using Omakase Lock

Default setting Disabled

Omakase Lock

Omakase lock is a service to lock the FOMA terminal remotely, for example, in case of loss, by your request. Contact DoCoMo or access My DoCoMo website to use the service. This function will protect the user's privacy and Osaifu-Keitai.

The lock is disabled by a call or others from the user.

Enable/Disable Omakase lock

0120-524-360 Office hours: 24hours

Omakase lock can also be enabled/disabled from the My DoCoMo website using PCs.

For details on the use of Omakase lock, refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [Services and Procedures]" or contact the number listed in "For General Inquiries" on the back of this manual.

When Omakase lock is set



- おまかせロック中です appears, and Omakase lock is set.
- Omakase lock is a service to lock the FOMA terminal with the registered FOMA card inserted.
- While Omakase lock is enabled, all key operations and functions (including IC card Functions) are disabled, except receiving a voice/Videophone call and turning the power ON/OFF.
- When a voice/Videophone call is received while Omakase lock is enabled, the caller's
 name or image is not displayed even if they are saved in the phonebook. Only their
 phone number is displayed.
- While Omakase lock is enabled, received mail is held at mail center.
- Turning the power ON/OFF does not affect Omakase lock (the lock is not released by turning the power OFF).
- FOMA card and microSD Memory Card are not locked.

Note

- When Omakase lock is activated while other functions are being activated, the functions being activated are ended and locked.
- Omakase lock is prioritized over any other lock functions.
- When the handset is outside the service area, in Self mode or turned off, the handset cannot be locked.
- If Omakase lock is enabled with Public mode (Drive mode) set, a Public mode (Drive mode) message is
 played and the call is disconnected.
- When the subscriber of Dual network service is using the mova service, the handset cannot be locked.
- Omakase lock is a service to lock the handset by the request of the subscriber of the FOMA card inserted to the FOMA terminal. Even if the subscriber is not a user of the FOMA terminal, the lock service is applied by a request of the subscriber.
- The lock can be disabled only when the same FOMA card is inserted as when the lock was enabled. If the lock cannot be disabled, please contact the number listed in "For General Inquiries" on the back of this manual.
- Request for Location provision in the GPS function is answered during Omakase lock.

Disabling Online Activity

Default setting OFF

Disable all functions that require a signal such as voice/Videophone calls, making/ receiving PushTalk transmission, sending/receiving i-mode mail and SMS, receiving Message R/F, and i-mode.

- Message indicating handset is turned off or in a place with no signal is played to calls received while in Self mode. DoCoMo Voice Mail Service (IP P. 388) and Call forwarding Service (IP P. 390) are available.
- Emergency numbers (110, 119 and 118) can be dialed while in Self mode. However, Self mode is disabled after the call.
- Ir exchange and Ir remote control operations are not available.

In stand-by, press <a>6 <a>6 <a>8 and select ON or OFF.

| To set | $1 \rightarrow \textbf{Yes} \rightarrow \blacksquare$ |
|------------|---|
| To disable | $2 \rightarrow \text{Yes} \rightarrow \bullet$ |

• When Self mode is set, i disappears and self appears in the upper part of the display.

Note

• Self mode is not available when in i-mode stand-by (a flashes).

While in Self mode

- View i-mode mail, SMS and Message R/F sent and received before setting Self mode, create or edit and save messages. Sending is not available.
- Received i-mode mail and Message R/F are held at i-mode center and SMS are held at SMS center. To receive, disable Self mode and perform Check new message or SMS check.
- While in Self mode, Position location, Location notification and Location provision in the GPS function cannot be used. In addition, location service clients cannot be saved, edited or deleted.

Function Lock

Hiding Phonebook and Schedule Entries

Default setting OFF

Restrict access to mail and phonebook by function to prevent access to personal information or unauthorized editing.

- Following items can be locked separately.
- i-mode/i-Channel, i-αppli, Multimedia, Mail, Phonebook, Record message/Voice memo, Memo/Schedule/ ToDo/Alarm, ToruCa, GPS
- Locking multimedia will also lock camera functions, SD-Audio functions, Voice recorder functions, BookReader functions (only when a microSD Memory Card is inserted), Document Viewer functions and PDF viewer functions.



In stand-by, press \bigcirc 7 \bigcirc , enter terminal security code and press \bigcirc .

Press ③ [Function lock], select item to lock or disable, press • and lock [Complete].

| Function lock | 763 |
|--------------------|-----|
| 📃 i-mode/i-Channei | |
| 🗌 i-appli | |
| □Multimedia | |
| 🗌 Mail | |
| Phonebook | |
| Rec msg/Voice memo | |
| Memo/Sche/ToDo/Ala | rm |
| ToruCa | |
| GPS | |
| | |

- 🗹 appears for locked items and 🗌 appears for disabled items.
- Press to switch between lock and disable.
- When Function lock is set, 🖪 appears in the upper part of the display.
- Press 🗟 [SelAll] to lock all items. If all check boxes contain a check, press 🗟 [CIrAll] to disable all items.
- Checks appear in check boxes even if Function lock is set from each function menu (except Multimedia, Alarm and GPS).

Note

- Locked items cannot be received by Ir exchange while Function lock is set.
- Phonebook Function lock is not available when Reject unknown is set.
- When Function lock is applied to the phonebook, names and images do not appear even if a call is received from a person saved in the phonebook.
- The following functions are disabled when Function lock is applied to phonebook.
 - 2-touch dialing, 2-touch mail, making calls using earphone
 - Select ring tone, mail ring tone
 - Called LED, Mail LED
 - Entering i-mode mail and SMS recipient using phonebook*
- Settings other than OFF in Accept calls and Reject calls
- Alarm, Schedule, and ToDo list contact settings using phonebook*
- Displaying schedule by contact*
- Reject unknown * When terminal security code is entered, Function lock is temporarily unset.
- While Memo, Schedule, ToDo and Alarm Function lock are set. Alarm, Schedule alarm and ToDo alarm are not activated at set time.
- When sending a substitute image such as Chara-den during a Videophone call, the set image is sent even while Function lock is applied to multimedia.
- Terminal security code entry screen appears when a function under Function lock is attempted. Enter correct terminal security code to temporarily disable Function lock. Function is locked when operations are finished. However, temporarily disabling Function lock applied to the GPS function is not possible. PIM data (phonebook, Text memo, Schedule, ToDo list, Bookmark and mail) on the microSD Memory Card can be accessed with View microSD data for each function. PIM is an abbreviation for Personal Information Manager.
- If Function lock is applied to multimedia, the phonebook ring tone and Mail ring tone do not sound, and the ring tone set in the ring tone setting sounds instead. Image set for Picture call does not appear in mail. Enter terminal security code to activate the camera. The default image is shown for alarm, Schedule alarm and ToDo alarm. and 着信音1 sounds.
- If Function lock is applied to GPS, the operation of the GPS menu is disabled. However, request for Location provision is answered.

Keypad Dial Lock Prohibiting Keypad Dialing

Default setting OFF

Prevent calling from functions other than phonebook (excluding microSD Memory Card phonebook) and Redial (only phone numbers saved in the phonebook).

• Emergency numbers (110, 119, and 118) can be dialed even when Keypad dial lock is set.

In stand-by, press $(\bullet)(7)(6)$, enter terminal security code and press (\bullet) .

Press 2 [Keypad dial lock] and select ON or OFF.

| To set | 1 |
|------------|---|
| To disable | 2 |

• 🗃 appears in the upper part of the display when Keypad dial lock is set.

Note

- The following functions are also disabled when Keypad dial lock is set.
 - Sending SMS or i-mode mail through direct address input (address input from the phonebook is possible)
 - Saving/Editing/Deleting phonebook entries
 - Calling from alarms (available if saved in the phonebook)
 - Sending/Receiving phonebook data through Ir exchange
 - Prefix settings
 - International prefix setting
 - Phone To (AV Phone To) function

- Mail To function
- Transferring/Copying phonebook data between FOMA terminal handset and FOMA card
- Calls from Bar code reader and Character reader
- Transferring/Copying phonebook data between FOMA terminal handset and microSD
- PushTalk transmission not from the phonebook (including PushTalk phonebook and network phonebook) and Redial (only phone numbers saved in the phonebook)
- Saving/Editing/Deleting location service clients

Multi Easy Lock

Setting Keypad Dial Lock, Function Lock and IC Card Lock by One-touch Operation

Three locks, Keypad dial lock, Function lock and IC card lock can be set at once.

• Refer to Keypad dial lock (P. 155), Function lock (P. 154) or IC card lock (P. 276) for details of each lock function.



In stand-by, press for 1+ seconds, select Yes and press .

• Keypad dial lock, Function lock and IC card lock are set, and 🖽 and 🖼 appear.

Note

• When Reject unknown is set, phonebook Function lock is not set even if Multi easy lock is set.

Disabling Multi Easy Lock

In stand-by, press
for 1+ seconds, enter terminal security code and press
.

Note

• Alternatively, select each lock function in lock settings screen (P. 152) to disable individually.

Multi Lock Auto-set

Setting Multi Easy Lock Automatically

Default setting OFF

Three locks, Keypad dial lock, Function lock and IC card lock, can be automatically set when Power saver mode is activated in stand-by or when the FOMA terminal is closed.

In stand-by, press • 76, enter terminal security code and press •.

2

Press 5 [Multi lock auto-set], select ON or OFF and press .

Note

- Automatically Multi lock auto-set can also be disabled by the same operation as "Disabling Multi Easy Lock" on P. 156.
- Disabling Multi easy lock does not set Multi lock auto-set to OFF. If the FOMA terminal is closed or Power save mode is activated, Multi easy lock is set again.

Preventing Side Key Errors

Lock side keys when the FOMA terminal is closed or in viewer position to prevent errors.

• When still pictures are shot or during PushTalk transmission, Side key guard may not be set.

Press 🖻 (P) for 1+ seconds.

- When Side key guard is set, 🗈 appears.
- Side key guard is disabled when power is turned off.
- An incoming PushTalk can also be answered with \mathbf{P} (\mathbf{P}).

Note

• To disable, perform the operation over.

Show Call/Received

Setting Redial and Received Calls

Default setting ON

Set to not display Received calls and Redial.

In stand-by, press \bigcirc 7 (4), enter terminal security code and press \bigcirc .

2

Select ON or OFF.

| To show Received calls | 11 | To show Redial | 21 |
|----------------------------|----|--------------------|----|
| To not show Received calls | 12 | To not show Redial | 22 |

Note

- Record message is not played if Show received calls is set to OFF.
- Received calls and Redial are recorded even when Show call/received is set to *OFF*. When set to *ON*, histories recorded while setting was *OFF* can be viewed.
- When Redial display is set to OFF, Chaku-moji Sent messages history (IPP P. 56) cannot be viewed.

Setting Mail History Display <Show Sent/Received>

Default setting ON

Set Sent and Received messages history (P. 240) to not appear.

• Sent and Received messages histories are recorded even if Show sent/received is set to **OFF**. When set to **ON**, history recorded while setting was **OFF** can be viewed.

In stand-by, press \bigcirc 7 \bigcirc 5, enter terminal security code and press \bigcirc .

2

Select ON or OFF.

| To show Sent messages | 11 | To show Received messages | 21 |
|---------------------------|----|-------------------------------|----|
| To not show Sent messages | 12 | To not show Received messages | 22 |

Secret Mode

Viewing Information Set as Secret

Default setting OFF

When Secret mode is set, normal and Secret phonebook, Schedule and ToDo list data are shown.

- Only normal data is shown when Secret mode is disabled.
- Set to automatically disable Secret mode if Power saver mode activates when in stand-by or FOMA terminal is closed when in stand-by.
- Secret mode is disabled when power is turned off.
- For details on entering secret data, refer to P. 113 for phonebook, P. 372 for Schedule and P. 376 for ToDo list.

In stand-by, press <a>[7](1), enter terminal security code and press <a>[•].

 $\begin{array}{c} 1 \\ \hline 1 \\ \hline \end{array} \rightarrow \bullet \end{array}$

(2)

2

Select ON or OFF.

| To set | To not automatically disable |
|--------|------------------------------|
| | To automatically disable |

To disable

● When Secret mode is set, @ appears in the upper part of the display.

Accept Calls

Receiving Calls from Only Specified Phone Numbers

Only accept calls from specified callers. Calls from all other numbers (including those without caller ID) are not connected.

To set Accept calls, save numbers from the phonebook to a list and set all numbers at once afterwards. Numbers can be added and the list can be edited later.

- Even if the caller is on the Accept calls list, the call is not connected if caller ID is not sent. It is recommended to set Caller ID Request Service (ICP P. 393).
- Phone numbers set for Reject calls, Reject unknown, Reject user unset, Reject payphone and Reject unsupported ID cannot be set for Accept calls.
- Callers not on the Accept calls list hear a busy signal. xx missed call(s) appears and the caller's name or phone number is recorded in Received calls.
- While Function lock is applied to phonebook, Accept calls is disabled and all calls are connected.
- SMS and i-mode mail are received normally.
- FOMA card phonebook numbers cannot be set. Only numbers in the FOMA terminal handset phonebook are available.
- Accept calls operate as it is set also when PushTalk is received. However, when PushTalk Plus is used, receiving PushTalk from a network phonebook does not follow the Accept calls setting.

Saving Phone Numbers to Accept

Save up to 20 phone numbers.

- In stand-by, press 73, enter terminal security code, press and press 1 [Accept calls].
 - When *Disable reject calls* appears, phone number is set to be rejected. Disable and try again. (127 P. 161)
 - When **Disable reject calls** appears, phone number is set to be rejected due to Reject unknown, Reject user unset, Reject payphone or Reject unsupported ID settings. Disable and try again.

Press 3 [Save list].

• If another person is already saved, name appears.



Select list number, press •, select name and press •.

| 411 | Docor | no Taro | |
|-----|-------|---------|--|
| | DOCO | IU TATU | |
| 2 | | | |
| 3 | | | |
| 믝 | | | |
| 4 | | | |
| 5 | | | |
| 5 | | | |
| 브 | | | |
| 7 | | | |
| 8 | | | |
| 긁 | | | |
| 3 | | | |

- Phone number and name in phonebook are saved in the Accept calls list.
- Repeat step 3 to save other phone numbers.
- Next, set Accept calls to accept calls from callers specified in the phonebook. (CPP. 159)
- When the other party has two or more phone numbers, saving is required for each number.

Save list

Note

 If entry saved in Accept calls is edited/deleted in phonebook, the saved list content is also edited/deleted. If Accept calls is activated, entries cannot be edited/deleted (except for Delete all in group/Delete all).

Related Operations

Register from phonebook <Accept calls>

In stand-by, press > select name > 3 3 1 > enter terminal security code > • > select list number ▶ •.

Delete phone number in list <Delete>

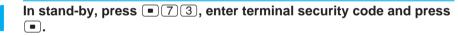
- In save list, select name) 2 Yes •.
- If all phone numbers saved in the list are deleted after Accept calls is set, the setting is disabled.

Change phone number in list <Change>

In save list, select name () () select name ().

Accepting Calls from Specified Numbers

Default setting OFF





Press 1 [Accept calls] and press 1 [ON].

- If any phone number is not saved in the list, the Save list appears. When Save list is finished, Accept calls is set.
- To disable, press 2 [OFF].

Rejecting Calls from Specified Phone Numbers

Reject voice/Videophone calls from specified callers. All other numbers (including those without caller ID) are connected.

To set Reject calls, save numbers from the phonebook to a list and set numbers altogether afterwards. Numbers can be added and the list can be edited later.

- Even if Reject calls is set, if the other party does not send caller ID, the call is connected. It is recommended to also set Caller ID Request Service (127 P. 393) or Reject by reason of non-disclosure.
- Reject calls cannot be set for a number set to Accept calls.
- Rejected callers hear a busy signal. xx missed call(s) appears and the caller's name is recorded in Received calls.
- While Function lock is applied to phonebook, Reject calls is disabled and all calls are connected.
- SMS and i-mode mail are received normally.
- FOMA card phonebook numbers cannot be set. Only numbers in the FOMA terminal handset phonebook are available.
- Reject calls operate as it is set also when PushTalk is received. However, when PushTalk Plus is used, receiving PushTalk from a network phonebook does not follow the Reject calls setting.

Saving Phone Numbers to Reject

Save up to 20 phone numbers.

• Refer to P. 161 for details on Reject by reason of non-disclosure.

In stand-by, press • 73, enter terminal security code and press • and press 2 [Reject calls].

• When *Disable accept calls* appears, the phone number is set to be accepted. Disable and try again. (1277 P. 159)



Press 3 [Save list].

• If another person is already saved, name appears.

3

Select list number, press , select name and press .

| R | eject | calls | 1/3 |
|---|-------|---------|-----|
| 1 | Docor | no Taro | |
| 2 | | | |
| 3 | | | |
| 4 | | | |
| 5 | | | |
| Б | | | |
| 7 | | | |
| 8 | | | |
| 9 | | | |
| | | | |

- Phone number and name in phonebook are saved in the Accept calls list.
- Repeat step 3 to save other phone numbers.
- Next, set Reject calls to reject calls from callers specified in the phonebook.
 (IPP P. 161)
- When the other party has two or more phone numbers, saving is required for each number.

Save list

Note

If entry saved in Reject calls is edited/deleted in phonebook, the saved list content is also edited/deleted.
 However, if Reject calls is activated, entries cannot be edited/deleted (except for Delete all in group/Delete all).

Related Operations

Register from phonebook <Reject calls>

Delete phone number in list <Delete>

In save list, select name \blacktriangleright \bigcirc \bigcirc \bigcirc \bigcirc \checkmark \bigcirc \checkmark \checkmark \checkmark

• If all phone numbers saved in the list are deleted after Reject calls is set, the setting is disabled.

Related Operations

Change phone number in list <Change>

Rejecting Calls from Specified Numbers

Default setting OFF

1

In stand-by, press <a>[7]3, enter terminal security code and press <a>[9].

2

Press 2 [Reject calls] and press 1 [ON].

- If phone number is not saved in the list, the save list appears. Reject calls is set when saving to list is finished.
- To disable, press 2 [OFF].

Reject by Reason of Non-disclosure

Rejecting Calls with No Caller ID

Default setting Accept all

When caller ID is not sent, the reason of non-disclosure appears. Set handset to reject calls depending on reason.

- Calls received from a caller who is set to be rejected due to a non-disclosure reason will not be connected. Calls of other non-disclosure reasons will be connected. Rejected callers hear a busy signal. *xx missed call(s)* appears and the reason of non-disclosure is recorded in Received calls.
- It is recommended to also set Caller ID Request Service. (CPP. 393)
- Reject by reason of non-disclosure cannot be set for numbers set to Accept calls.
- SMS and i-mode mail are received normally. PushTalk follows the setting of this function.
- Also when Reject unknown is set to reject, Reject by reason of non-disclosure is prioritized for calls without caller ID.
- Reject by reason of non-disclosure is prioritized when set with Public mode (Drive mode).

Reasons

| User unset | When the caller purposely withholds caller ID. |
|------------|---|
| Payphone | When the call is received from a payphone. |
| | When the caller cannot send caller ID, such as when the call is received from overseas or ordinary (landline) telephones via various transfer services. (However, caller ID may still appear depending on the company.) |

In stand-by, press \bigcirc 7 \bigcirc , enter terminal security code and press \bigcirc .

2

Select reason and select Accept or Declined.

| Reject user unset | $(4) \rightarrow (1)$ [Accept] or (2) [Declined] |
|--------------------|--|
| Reject payphone | $5 \rightarrow 1$ [Accept] or 2 [Declined] |
| Reject not support | $6 \rightarrow 1$ [Accept] or 2 [Declined] |

Silencing Ring Tone for Callers Not in Phonebook

Default setting OFF

Set ring tone to sound after a set number of seconds when the caller is not registered in the phonebook (including those without caller ID).

- Reject unknown cannot be set simultaneously with Set mute ring time.
- This is one way to avoid nuisance calls.
- When setting mute ring time, set to record calls disconnected during mute ring time duration in Received calls.

In stand-by, press \blacksquare 1 7 and 1 [ON].

| Ring start | time | 17 |
|---------------------------|---------|----|
| Mute seconds (01 - 99) | | |
| 03 ⊲ | seconds | |

• To disable, press 2 [OFF].

2

Enter duration (two digits: 01 to 99 seconds) and press •, and set Missed call history.

| To save in Received calls | 1 |
|---------------------------|---|
| To not save in Received | 2 |
| calls | In Received calls, press 2 1 to show all calls. Repeat the same |
| | operation to return to the previous screen. |

Note

- Set mute ring time shorter than ring duration for Record message or Voice Mail Service to prioritize set mute ring time.
- Set mute ring time activates for calls from callers in phonebook while Function lock is applied to phonebook.
- Public mode (Drive mode) is prioritized when set with Set mute ring time.
- When Set mute ring time and Manner mode are both activated and the set time passes, operation follows Manner mode settings.
- Set mute ring time operates as it is set also when PushTalk is received. However, when PushTalk Plus is used, receiving PushTalk from a network phonebook does not follow Set mute ring time.

Reject Unknown

Rejecting Callers Not in Phonebook

Default setting Accept

Set handset to reject calls from callers not in the phonebook.

- Caller hears a busy signal. xx missed call(s) appears and the call is recorded in Received calls.
- It is recommended to also set Caller ID Request Service. (CP P. 393)
- Reject unknown is prioritized when set with Public mode (Drive mode).
- Also when Reject unknown is set to Reject, Reject by reason of non-disclosure is prioritized for calls without caller ID.
- SMS, i-mode mail and PushTalk Plus are received normally. However, PushTalk follows the setting of this function.
- Reject unknown cannot be set simultaneously with Set mute ring time. Disable Ring start time and try again. (127 P. 162)

In stand-by, press <a>73, enter terminal security code and press.

Press 3 [Reject unknown] and select Accept or Reject.

| To accept | 1 |
|-----------|---|
| To reject | 2 |

Data Sec. Service

Using Data Security Service

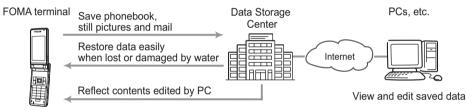
Phonebook, messages and still pictures saved on the FOMA terminal can be saved to the Data Storage Center.

Data Security Service

The Data Security Service is a service to store your FOMA terminal data such as phonebook, still pictures or mail (hereafter called "saved data") at the DoCoMo data storage center.

In the event of data loss due to loss of the FOMA terminal itself or data corruption caused by the terminal being damaged by the water, the data saved at the Center, such as phonebook, can be restored to a new FOMA terminal using i-mode. Moreover, the saved data at the Center can be easily edited on My DoCoMo web page using a PC and the edited data can be saved to the FOMA terminal.

Refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode]" for details on the use of the Data Security Service.



The Data Security Service is a paid service that requires subscription. (i-mode subscription is also required.)

- FOMA card phonebook data cannot be saved.
- Accessing to the Data Storage Center is not available from outside the service area.
- Refer to P. 112, P. 114 for details on Save Phonebook, refer to P. 237 for details on Save Mail and P. 304 for details on Save Still Picture.
- When Data Security Service is not subscribed, a screen indicating so appears.

Note

- The phonebook is not automatically updated when other functions are activated.
- Saving is ended and message will appear if the FOMA terminal memory is full and failed to save all phonebook data to the FOMA terminal from the service center.

Other Security Settings

Function/Service name Ref. Intent To select necessary mail from massive amount of received mail. P. 230 Receive option To change mail address. Change mail address Spam Mail Prevention To receive/reject only mail from specified domains. Refer to (Receive/Reject mail settings) "Mobile To receive/reject mail from i-mode. Phone To receive/reject only mail from specified addresses. User's To reject all SMS. Spam Mail Prevention Guide (SMS Rejection Settings) [i-mode]". i-mode Disaster Message Board Service To use i-mode to save/check safety information during disasters. To disable use of FeliCa IC card functions. IC card lock P. 276 To save specific phone numbers to reject. Nuisance Call Barring Service P. 392 (DoCoMo network service) To check to see if software update for FOMA terminal is Software update P. 451 necessary. To download and update if necessary. To determine if problems may arise when importing data Scanning function and programs from external devices to the FOMA terminal. P. 457 To check if received SMS is unsolicited SMS including URL. To use Client certificate to connect to SSL-enabled sites. FirstPass (DoCoMo electronic P. 209 (Only for FirstPass sites.) authentication service)

Use the following settings and functions to secure your FOMA terminal.

Camera

| Before Using the Camera | |
|---|---|
| Shooting Still Pictures | <shoot picture="" still="">171</shoot> |
| Shooting Movies | <shoot movie="">173</shoot> |
| Changing Settings for Shooting | |
| Changing Camera Settings | |
| Sending Still Pictures or Movies After Shooting | <send message="">182</send> |
| Using Bar Code Reader | <bar code="" reader="">182</bar> |
| Reading Text | . <character (ocr)="" reader="">185</character> |
| | |

Before Using the Camera

Camera Operations

The FOMA terminal has two cameras, a main camera (external) and a sub camera (internal). Use these cameras to shoot still pictures and movies. When making a Videophone call, use the sub camera to send images of yourself to the other party, and switch to the main camera to send images of other people and the landscape. microSD Memory Cards are sold separately. Purchase microSD Memory Cards at home electronics shops. (2 P. 316)

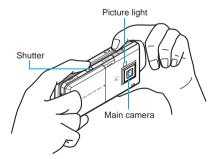
- The color and brightness of the subject in images shot with the cameras may differ from the actual color and brightness.
- Use the main camera to shoot pictures of people and the landscape, and use the sub camera to shoot pictures of yourself.

Shooting other people and landscape

Normal position



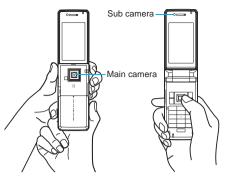
Viewer position



Shooting a still picture of yourself

Main camera

Sub camera



Wide Array of Shooting Methods

- Shoot movies in the best image quality with file size reduced (Hi-quality & Long) (P P. 176)
- Shoot with frames (27 P. 178) or with coloring or touch changed (27 P. 179)
- Attach shot images to i-mode mail and send (P. 182)
- Shoot with auto focus (P. 177)
- Shoot with auto timer (P. 177)

Using the Cameras

- Fingerprints or oil on the lens may cause the image to be out of focus. In addition, images may blur and rays of light may appear in images when shot near a strong light source. Wipe the lens with a soft cloth before shooting images.
- Images may appear dark and distorted when shot with insufficient battery power. Do not shoot images while the handset is charging.
- Do not apply force to the lens when closing the FOMA terminal as this may damage the lens. May cause a malfunction.
- Although the cameras are made with high-precision technology, constantly bright or dark pixels or lines may be visible. Further, white lines and other noise may appear in images especially when shooting images in dimly lit surroundings.
- The quality of images may deteriorate when shot or saved after the FOMA terminal has been left in a warm location for a long time.
- If the camera lens is exposed to direct sunlight for a long time, the internal color filter may discolor, creating a discoloration of shot images.
- Images shot of the sun, a light or other strong light source may appear dark and distorted.
- Direct images shot of the sun may damage the performance of the CCD (image sensor).
- To give priority to the image quality when shooting an image, select SUPER FINE. The data size will be larger, but the image quality will be better.
 At these image size settings, fewer images can be saved, more time is required to send these images by i-mode mail. Select the image quality according to the application. (1) P. 176)

- The FOMA terminal may become warm after shooting still pictures continuously or shooting long movies. This is not a malfunction.
- If the camera portion becomes hot while using the main camera, *Camera function is not available now* appears and the camera turns off.
- If a call is received or the alarm sounds when viewing the still picture preview screen or movie shooting screen, the camera function is canceled and the voice/ Videophone call or alarm screen appears. After that screen ends, the camera screen reappears and the previous still picture or movie data can be saved.
- Keypad sound is silenced when still picture mode or movie mode is active.
- Picture light can be turned on while shooting images.

Important notes for shooting images

- The color and brightness of the subject in images shot with the cameras may differ from the actual color and brightness.
- Make sure that your fingers, hair and handset strap do not obscure the camera lens when shooting images.
- Because battery power depletes more quickly when shooting images, it is recommended to press to end Camera mode after shooting images.
- Images are blurred when FOMA terminal moves while shooting images. Hold firmly to prevent blurring. Use the Fix camera shake function to prevent camera shake when shooting still pictures and movies.
- Because a larger image size requires more data, movement in the image on the FOMA terminal display may appear slow.
- Indoor fluorescent lighting may create flickering or streaky shading on the screen. This flickering or shading may be reduced by changing the lighting conditions, brightness or adjusting the camera brightness.
- Note that shooting in viewer position is not available when Side key guard is set. In addition, Side key guard cannot be set or disabled when still pictures are shot.

Copyrights and rights of portrait

Images and audio recorded with the FOMA terminal are for personal use and may not be used without the consent of the rightful person in accordance with copyright laws. Please note that the use of the likeness or name of other individuals without their consent, defacement or a similar act may infringe on an individual's rights of portrait. Please be aware of copyrights and rights of portrait when making public images and audio recorded with the handset on the Internet or similar media.

The recording of images or audio may be restricted at concerts, performances and exhibits even when recorded for personal use.

 Do not use this handset to send copyrighted images for uses other than those permitted under copyright laws.

Please respect the privacy of others when using a camera-enabled mobile phone to shoot and send images.

Image Size

The following are the image sizes of still pictures and movies that can be shot (saved) with FOMA SH903i.

• All sizes in this manual are width × height.

| Size | Still picture | Movie | Explanation |
|----------------------|---------------|-------|--|
| sQCIF: 128×96 | | | Smaller than QCIF and ideal for attaching to mail. |
| QCIF: 176×144 | | | This is the size of the Videophone main screen. This size is useful for shooting a still picture to use as a substitute image. The default setting for the sub camera shooting size is set to QCIF: 176×144. |
| QVGA: 240×320 | | - | Ideal for sending to i-mode terminal. |
| Stand-by: 240×400 | * | - | This is the size of the display on FOMA SH903i. This size is useful for shooting a still picture to set as the stand-by display. The default setting for the main camera still picture shooting size is Stand-by: 240x400 . |
| QVGA: 320×240 | - | | Ideal for playing on a PC. |
| CIF: 352×288 | | - | Ideal for viewing on a PC. |
| WQVGA: 400×240 | - | * | This is the maximum movie size that can be shot with FOMA SH903i. Ideal for playing on a PC. The default setting for the main camera movie shooting size is WQVGA: 400×240 . |
| VGA: 480×640 | * | - | Ideal for viewing on a PC. |
| UXGA: 1600×1200 | * | - | Ideal for viewing on a PC. |
| FullHD: 1920×1080 | * | - | Ideal for viewing on a PC. |
| 3M: 2048×1536 | * | - | This is the maximum still picture size that can be shot with FOMA SH903i. Ideal for viewing on a PC or printing. |

* Not available when shooting with the sub camera.

Note

Still picture file names

- The file names of saved still pictures/movies are labeled automatically according to the date and time the still pictures were shot.
 Example: November 20, 2006 at 1:05:07 PM → 061120_130507.
- Still pictures that were continuously shot are labeled in series (_01, _02, etc.) at the end of the file name. When saved in Data box, titles in the image list screen that exceed 14 single-byte characters have "..." after the 12th character and numbers at the end are not shown. Select *File property* to check the file name. (127 P. 327)
- Refer to P. 326 for details on how to edit the file name of a still picture.

Approximate Number of Recordable Images

 Transfer and store still pictures and movies saved in the FOMA terminal handset on a PC, if you have one, using microSD Memory Card (2 P. 316).

Still picture mode

This lists the approximate number of images that can be shot with the same image size and quality and saved in FOMA terminal handset. The number of still pictures that can be shot are fewer when other images, i-appli software or other types of files are saved in FOMA terminal handset. Also, the number may be fewer depending on the shooting conditions and the subject. The following are the approximate number of images that can be recorded to FOMA terminal handset according to the image quality. Refer to P. 461 for the approximate number of images that can be saved to a 64 MB microSD Memory Card according to the image quality.

| | ECONOMY | NORMAL | SUPER FINE |
|-------------------|-------------|-------------|---------------|
| sQCIF: 128×96 | 1,000 shots | 1,000 shots | 1,000 shots |
| QCIF: 176×144 | 1,000 shots | 1,000 shots | 1,000 shots |
| QVGA: 240×320 | 1,000 shots | 1,000 shots | 520 shots |
| Stand-by: 240×400 | 1,000 shots | 1,000 shots | 520 shots |
| CIF: 352×288 | 1,000 shots | 1,000 shots | 520 shots |
| VGA: 480×640 | 1,000 shots | 820 shots | 520 shots |
| UXGA: 1600×1200 | 270 shots | 160 shots | 100 shots |
| FullHD: 1920×1080 | 270 shots | 160 shots | 100 shots |
| 3M: 2048×1536 | 160 shots | 100 shots | 50 shots |

Movie mode

The recording times below are estimates per recording when saving to FOMA terminal handset. The recordable movie length and number of recordable movies are less when other images, i-cxppli software or other types of files are saved in FOMA terminal handset. Also, the recordable movie length may be shorter depending on the shooting conditions and the subject. The following are the approximate movie lengths that can be recorded to FOMA terminal handset according to the image quality. (for movies with images and voice) Refer to P. 461 for the approximate number of images that can be recorded to a 64 MB microSD Memory Card according to the image quality.

| | | ECONOMY | NORMAL | FINE | SUPER FINE |
|-----------------------------|------------------|----------------|----------------|----------------|---------------|
| sQCIF: | For mail (short) | 155 seconds | 105 seconds | 52 seconds | - |
| 128×96 | For mail (long) | 638 seconds | 434 seconds | 215 seconds | - |
| QCIF: | For mail (short) | 134 seconds | 78 seconds | 28 seconds | 19 seconds |
| 176×144 | For mail (long) | 522 seconds | 323 seconds | 117 seconds | 79 seconds |
| QVGA: 320×240 | For mail (short) | - | - | - | 10 seconds |
| | For mail (long) | - | - | - | 41 seconds |
| WQVGA: | For mail (short) | - | - | - | 5 seconds |
| 400×240 | For mail (long) | - | - | - | 21 seconds |
| Hi-quality & Long (QVGA) | | | 79 se | conds | |

File size limit (P. 177) for movie files cannot be set to **Unrestricted** when saved to the FOMA terminal handset.

Note

 Refer to P. 176 for details on the method of setting the image size of still pictures and movies.

Shooting Screen Layout

The following indicators appear on the display in Camera mode.

 When switched to full-screen, icons do not appear if shot size is QVGA: 240x320, Stand-by: 240x400, VGA: 480x640, UXGA: 1600x1200, FullHD: 1920x1080 or 3M: 2048x1536.

Icons that appear in the upper part of the display (all modes)



1 Mode indicator (2 P. 174)

Indicates the Camera mode.

Still picture mode
 Still picture mode

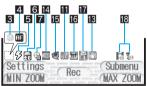
2 microSD Memory Card indicator

Indicates when a microSD Memory Card is inserted. (gray): Save to FOMA terminal handset. (pink): Save to microSD Memory Card.

Icons that appear in the lower part of the display

Still picture mode

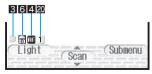
Movie mode



Character reader mode



Bar code reader mode



Secus lock indicator (P. 180) Indicates the Focus lock status. (green): Appears when focus is locked (red) : Appears when focusing 4 AF mode (2 P. 177) Colored pencil Indicates the AF mode status. Standard Closeup: : Manual focus (Still picture/Movie mode only) **5** Picture light indicator (**P** P. 175) 105: QCIF: 176×144 Indicates the picture light setting. F: Picture light ON 6 Image brightness indicator (12 P. 174) Indicates the image brightness. 5 Dark ← Normal → Bright Auto timer indicator (P. 177) Indicates the Auto timer setting. Ca: 2 seconds Ch: 10 seconds : 5 seconds 8 Still picture shoot by scene indicator (PP P. 179) Indicates the Shoot by scene setting. Auto: : Exercise E: People Δa : Character 🚮 : Niaht scene Into the sun : Landscape 9 Continuous mode indicator (2 P. 172) Indicates the Continuous mode setting. [当: Fast, Standard, Manual (for 25 pictures) : Fast, Standard, Manual (for 9 pictures) : Standard, Manual (for 6 pictures) to 🔄 : Shared Multishot (2 to 25 pictures) O Still picture Effect indicator (
P. 179) Indicates the Effect setting. Black & white : Ripple 📕 : Sepia : Kaleidoscope (L) 部: Sparkling S: Kaleidoscope (S) Image: Colored pencil E Fish-eye : Faded edges 11 Image quality (12 P. 176) Indicates the image quality setting. ECONOMY SUPER FINE • NORMAL 2: Hi-quality & Long FINE (Movie mode only) (Movie mode only) 2 Still picture size indicator (12 P. 176) Indicates the image size setting. 128 : sQCIF: 128×96 430 : VGA: 480×640 🔤 : UXGA: 1600×1200 176 : QCIF: 176×144 🔠 : FullHD: 1920×1080 240 : QVGA: 240×320 Status . Stand-by: 240×400 3M: 3M: 2048×1536 display 52: CIF: 352×288 B Fix camera shake indicator (P. 179) Indicates the status of Fix camera shake settings. Ex camera shake ON Movie shoot by scene indicator (🕼 P. 179) Indicates the Shoot by scene setting. 🖽: Auto : Landscape (soft)

: Landscape (sharp)

: People

I Movie effect indicator (P. 179)

- Indicates the Effect setting.
- 🖬 : Black & white . Ripple Releidoscope (L)
- 📕 : Sepia 않다 : Sparkling
- Kaleidoscope (S)
 - : Fish-eve
- : Spectrum

6 Movie size indicator (B P. 176)

- Indicates the image size setting. 128: sQCIF: 128×96 20: QVGA: 320×240
 - : WQVGA: 400×240

Movie file size limit indicator (CTP. 177)

Indicates the status of the file size limit settings. 📓: For mail (short) (500 KB) : For mail (long) (2 MB)

Switch image/voice indicator (CTP. 178)

Indicates the Movie mode setting.

H: Image only 6 to: Image + voice To: Voice only

😰 Inverse mode indicators (🖙 P. 185)

- Indicates the Inverse mode setting. Hutomatic Reverse text 🔁: Normal
- 20 QR code link number indicator (CTP. 184)

1 to E: Indicates the number of linked split data being read.

Sideways-shooting mode

In movie mode, switch normal position to viewer position to shoot the movie sideways. All icons disappear except a progress bar indicating the progress of shooting and an icon indicating the status, shooting or in stand-by. The normal display reappears when the FOMA terminal is switched from viewer position to normal position.

- Switching the positions while shooting movies does not switch the shooting modes.
- When the sub camera is used for shooting, switching to the viewer position does not activate the sideways-shooting mode.



Movie image shot sideways

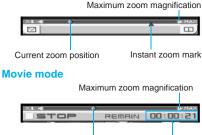
Using zoom (still picture mode/movie mode)

In Still picture mode, press •• to show the screen below and enable zooming. The screen is already shown in Movie mode. (P. 174)

Progress

bar

Still picture mode

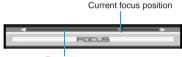


Current zoom position

Remaining time

Using Manual focus

In the still picture shooting screen, press (42) [AF mode] or in the movie shooting screen, press (32) [AF mode] and select *Manual focus* in the AF mode screen to show the screen shown bellow. Use (-) to adjust the focus. (127 P. 177)



Focus bar

Using Spot AF

In the still picture shooting screen, press @ 4 2 [AF mode], select **Spot AF** in the AF mode screen to show the screen shown bellow, select area with : and adjust the focus. (CP P. 177)



The screen shown is only an example.

Using shooting settings

In the shooting screen, press i [Settings]. The screen bellow appears. Change settings while checking current settings. (1) P. 181)

| WEVGA | ±0 |
|-------|------------|
| AUTO | |
| Coff | Save ⇒⊟ |
| | AUTO |

Activating/Deactivating the Camera

In normal position

In stand-by, press 🖻.

- Picture light illuminates and the still picture shooting screen appears. The image from the camera is shown on the display.
- Press a or clr to end.

In viewer position

In stand-by, set the FOMA terminal to viewer position.

- The camera automatically activates.
- Picture light illuminates and the still picture shooting screen appears. The image from the camera is shown on the display.
- The image is displayed in full-screen mode if the shot image size is available for it. (127 P. 181)
- Press 🖻 (₽) to end.
- The camera is automatically turned off after two minutes of no operation in the shooting screen.
- Shooting is not available when Key guard is set. (P. 157)

Activating movie mode

In the still picture shooting screen, press (12 [Movie].

- Picture light illuminates and the movie shooting screen appears. The image from the camera is shown on the display.
- Press a or CLR to end.

Using different camera modes

Select *Camera* from Top menu, press •, select camera mode and press •.





Shoot still picture



Shoot movie
Bar code reader
Center the bar code



Character reader

Bar code reader

 Switch shooting modes after activating camera: ⁽²⁾ P. 174

Note

When a call is received while a still picture is being saved, a movie is being shot or the movie shooting confirmation menu screen is displayed:

- The incoming call screen appears and the call can be answered.
 - Shot still pictures are retained.
 - The movie shooting confirmation menu screen appears after the call. Press ① [Save] to save the movie and return to the movie shooting screen. Press ④ [Cancel] to delete the movie and return to the movie shooting screen.

Auto end

- While a still picture is shot, if no operations are performed for approximately two minutes with the viewfinder display shown, Camera mode automatically ends and the stand-by display reappears. Camera mode does not end if there are unsaved still pictures, or a Submenu or Shooting settings screen is shown.
- While a movie is shot, if no operations are made in approximately two minutes in the movie shooting screen, Camera mode automatically ends and the stand-by display reappears.

Shortcut key

Frequently used operations are allocated to the keys below for convenient use.

• Switch Camera mode to shoot still pictures/movies or read with Character reader and Bar code reader.

| Key | Still picture mode | Movie mode | Character reader mode | Bar code reader mode |
|-----|--------------------------|--------------------------|-----------------------|-------------------------|
| • | Zoom in | | - | - |
| · | Zoom ou | t | - | - |
| Η | Instant zo | oom in | - | - |
| | Instant zo | oom out | - | - |
| | Brightnes | SS | | |
| | Brightnes | SS | | |
| # | Main/sub | camera | - | - |
| × | Switch ph | ione⇔SD | - | - |
| 4 | Focus lo | ck | | |
| 1 | Switch ca | amera-mo | | |
| 2 | Data box | | Select subject | Saved data |
| 3 | AF mode | | Switch AF mode | |
| 4 | Auto timer | | Inverse mode | - |
| 5 | Select size | ze | - | - |
| 6 | Image qu | uality | - | - |
| 7 | Shoot by | scene | - | - |
| 8 | Fix camera shake | Hi- quality & Long | - | - |
| 9 | Picture light | Fix camera shake | - | - |
| 0 | Key list | | - | - |

Key list

When shooting, refer to the Key list and check operation methods.

In the still picture shooting screen (ご子 P. 170) or movie shooting screen (ご子 P. 170), press 凾, select Key list and press .

Shoot Still Picture

Shooting Still Pictures

Shoot still pictures with the FOMA terminal.

- Shot still pictures are saved to *Camera* folder in My picture of Data box or the microSD Memory Card (PP. 316). (Saving still pictures may take time.) (PP. 181)
- When a still picture is shot, the shutter sounds and Picture light flashes once. After that, a still picture appears on the preview screen.
- The shutter sound and Focus lock sound are also audible during Manner mode, Public mode (Drive mode) and when the flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (sold separately) is connected.
- The shutter sound and Focus lock sound volume cannot be changed.
- If available space on the FOMA terminal handset is insufficient, delete unnecessary files and increase memory space to save. (27 P. 330)
- If available space on the microSD Memory Card is insufficient, the *Camera* folder in My picture of Data box in the FOMA terminal handset automatically becomes the save destination even when the microSD Memory Card is set as the save destination.

Shooting in Viewer Position

Activate the camera. (2 P. 170)

- Hold the FOMA terminal sideways.

Shoot.

| To shoot with auto focus | (Ô) The subject at the center is automatically focused. |
|-------------------------------------|--|
| To shoot with Focus lock (C P. 180) | Press \square (1) halfway \rightarrow lock focus \rightarrow press \square (1) fully |

📍 Press 🖻 (🙆) to save.

Shooting in Normal Position

Shoot still pictures with the FOMA terminal open.

Activate the camera. (🖙 P. 170)

• Use the zoom or show the menu. (P P. 174)

Shoot.

| To shoot with auto focus | [iii] or [iiii] The subject at the center is automatically focused. |
|--|--|
| To shoot with Focus lock (IPP P. 180) | $\begin{array}{c} \textcircled{\begin{tabular}{lllllllllllllllllllllllllllllllllll$ |

3

Save.

| To save | | 🔳 or 🖻 (🙆) |
|---|--|--|
| | cation | 04 |
| To add location information | | The present location is positioned by GPS function. (CP P. 278) |
| When shot with the sub camera | To save Images as it appears on the display (correct left-right orientation) | Still pictures appear on the display inverted (left-right orientation backwards) but are saved as a normal image (correct left-right orientation). |
| | To confirm normal image before saving | $05 \rightarrow \bullet$ |
| | To save an inverted image (left-right orientation backwards) | 6 It is not possible to save inverted images when shooting still pictures with a frame (CFP. 178). |
| To change the save destination | | Switch the save destination between FOMA terminal handset and microSD Memory Card. |
| To delete shot still picture and shoot again | | CLR |
| To send mail (127 | with i-mode °P. 182) | |
| To edit and use a shot still picture | | It is possible to use a shot still picture in Edit image, Facial treatment, Set screen or switch to full-screen mode. Edit image: IP 299 to P. 303 Facial treatment: P. 304 Set screen: IP 299 Switching to full-screen mode: P. 181 |

Shooting a still picture of yourself

Use the sub camera to take a picture of yourself.

Activate the camera. (1 P. 170)

| To shoot with the main camera | Open the FOMA terminal and rotate the display. (CP P. 166) |
|---------------------------------|--|
| To shoot with the sub camera | @61 or ₩ |

Z Face the camera towards yourself and press ■ [፟፟፟፟ [፟፟] or ■ (፟ ().

 Refer to step 2 of "Shooting in Normal Position" on P. 171 for details on shooting.

Press 🔳 [Save] or 🖻 (🙆).

• Refer to step 3 of "Shooting Still Pictures" on P. 172 for details on saving.

Note

- When the FOMA terminal is closed while showing the viewfinder display, Camera mode ends.
- When the battery level is low, the picture light does not illuminate brightly.

Continuous Shooting

<Continuous Mode>

Shoot multiple still pictures continuously. Image sizes available for Continuous mode are as follows.

| | Standard Continuous Mode | Fast Continuous Mode | Manual Continuous Mode | Combination with Shoot with frame |
|----------------------|--------------------------------|----------------------------|------------------------------|---|
| sQCIF: 128×96 | | | | |
| QCIF: 176×144 | | | | |
| QVGA: 240×320 | | | | |
| Stand-by: 240×400 | | | | |
| CIF: 352×288 | | × | | * |
| VGA: 480×640 | | × | | × |

Fast continuous mode is not available.

 UXGA: 1600×1200, FullHD: 1920×1080, 3M: 2048×1536 are not available for continuous shooting.

Fast, Standard and Manual

In Fast continuous mode, automatically shoot still pictures at approximately 0.1 second intervals and at approximately 0.2 second intervals in Standard continuous mode. In Manual continuous mode, shoot multiple still pictures with shutter operations.

 The maximum number of still pictures that can be shot depends on the size.

| | sQCIF: 128× 96 | QCIF: 176× 144 | QVGA: 240× 320 | Stand- by: 240x 400 | CIF: 352× 288 | VGA: 480× 640 |
|--|----------------------|----------------------|----------------------|------------------------------|---------------------|---------------------|
| Max. number of continuous shots | 25 shots | 25 shots | 9 shots | 9 shots | 9 shots | 6 shots |

Continuous shooting

- Depending on the image size, Continuous mode or Fast may not be available or number of shots in Continuous mode may be reduced.
 - In the still picture shooting screen (心 P. 170), press 國 4 5 [Continuous mode] and select the type of Continuous mode.

| OFF (Cancel Continuous mode) | |
|------------------------------|---|
| Fast | 2 |
| Standard | 3 |
| Manual | 4 |

Press 💿 [ô] or 🖻 (ô).

- The first still picture is shot and the following still pictures are shot automatically. At the last shooting, the Picture light flashes once.
- Alternatively, press or press (b) halfway to lock focus and shoot the picture.
- In the manual shooting mode, press

 (ii) until the maximum number of shots for Continuous mode.
- When continuous shooting is complete, the shot image list appears.
- Press to cancel shooting. Shot images appear. Press 1 [Save all] or 3 [Save one] to save all or just one image.

Save.

| To save all shot still pictures | 01 |
|---|--|
| To delete all shot still pictures | 02 |
| To select and save one still picture shot with continuous mode | Select still picture → (10) 3 Repeat the operations to save additional still pictures. To check pictures before saving, select still picture, press (■) and (●). |
| To delete selected still picture from list | Select still picture → ⁽¹⁾ ⁽²⁾ ⁽²⁾ |
| To add location information | The present location is positioned by GPS function. (@ P. 278) |
| To send with i-mode mail (IPP P. 182) | Select still picture → I To check pictures before sending, select still picture, press and □ |

- When Auto save mode (P. 182) is set to ON, still pictures are saved together automatically.
- After saving or deleting still pictures shot in Continuous mode, the still picture shooting screen reappears.

Note

- Changing the image size, setting Effect shot or switching to the sub camera cancels Continuous mode.
- When Continuous mode is enabled, Effect shot is canceled.

Notes about Continuous mode

- In automatic Continuous mode, cannot be used to operate the zoom and cannot be used to adjust the brightness.
- If an incoming call is received or the alarm activates while shooting in Continuous mode, the still pictures being shot are retained and Continuous mode is canceled.
- When the battery level is low, the picture light will not illuminate brightly.
- Closing the FOMA terminal or pressing while shooting in Continuous mode causes shooting to be interrupted and camera-mode to be ended. Switching to viewer position causes shooting to be interrupted and the screen returns to the still picture shooting screen.

Shoot Movie

Shooting Movies

Shoot (Record) movies with the FOMA terminal.

- Shot movies are saved to *Camera* folder in i-motion of Data box or the microSD Memory Card (27 P. 316).
- Shoot when battery level is sufficient. Check battery level before starting.
- Movies (Mobile MP4) shot with the FOMA terminal can be sent with mail. (IPP. 182)
- To use shot movies for Chaku-motion (EPP. 116), save them on the FOMA terminal handset.
- Shooting starts after movie record start sound. (However, recording may not begin immediately.)
- The picture light automatically turns on (dims) when movie mode is activated. The picture light fully lights when shooting starts.
- The movie record start sound is also audible during Manner mode, Public mode (Drive mode) and when the flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (sold separately) is connected.
- When AF mode is set to Standard, auto focus activates before and during shooting and automatically adjusts the focus.
- The shooting start and end sound volume cannot be changed.
- When Camera mode is switched, sounds may be heard from the camera lens. This is not a malfunction.
- Shooting stops automatically when the remaining time indicator reads 00:00:00 (movie file size reaches limit during shooting or microSD Memory Card has no available space). However, shot movies can be saved/ played/canceled/attached to mail.

Shooting in Viewer Position

Activate movie mode (P P. 170) and set the FOMA terminal to viewer position.

Shoot.

| To shoot with auto focus | d) 🖻 |
|--------------------------|---|
| | While shooting, press \mathbf{B} (() halfway \rightarrow lock focus |

🕇 To stop recording, press 🖻 (🙆).

4 Press ▲ (∅)/▼ (Eco) to select an item, and press ▣ (∅).

| To save | Save |
|--|---|
| To send with i-motion mail (译音 P. 182) | Compose message Switch to normal position to compose mail. If movies shot in Hi-quality & Long mode are saved in microSD Memory Card, they cannot be sent. (IPP. 176) However, files of 2 MB or less can be sent from Data box after they are once saved. (IPP. 308) |

| To play shot movies | Play |
|--------------------------|--|
| To cancel shot movies | $Cancel \to \mathbf{E} \ (\mathbf{O}) \to Yes$ |

Shooting in Normal Position

Shoot movies with the FOMA terminal open.

Activate movie mode (P. 170).

Shoot.

| To shoot with auto focus | or log (log) The subject at the center is automatically focused. |
|--|---|
| To lock focus during shooting (@了P. 180) | While shooting, press \textcircled{a} or press \textcircled{b} (\textcircled{b}) halfway \rightarrow lock focus |
| To switch between main camera and sub camera | Ø51 or ₩ |

 To shoot your own image, open the FOMA terminal and rotate the display, face the main camera towards yourself and press (10).

To stop recording, press 🔳 or 🖻 (l්ඛ).

Save.

| To save | 1 |
|---|---|
| To send with i-motion mail (征 P. 182) | If movies shot in Hi-quality & Long mode are saved in microSD Memory Card, they cannot be sent. (IPP. 176) However, files of 2 MB or less can be sent from Data box after they are once saved. (IPP. 308) |
| To play shot movies | 3 |
| To cancel shot movies | $(4) \rightarrow \text{Yes} \rightarrow \blacksquare$ |

 If available space on the FOMA terminal handset is insufficient, delete unnecessary files and increase memory space to save.
 ((資下) 2.330)

Note

- Recording time indicator is an approximation. Shooting may automatically stop before the indicator reads 00:00:00.
- When FOMA terminal is closed while shooting a movie, shooting automatically ends and the movie shooting confirmation menu screen appears when FOMA terminal is opened. If shooting time is less than one second, shooting ends and Camera mode ends.
- Make sure not to press keys while shooting a movie as keypad sounds may be recorded.

Changing Settings for Shooting

Changing Cameras <Switch Camera-mode>

Switch among Still picture, Movie, Character reader and Bar code reader modes.

- If Battery empty. Unsaved data will be lost. Ending current operation appears and Camera mode is activated immediately after charging is started, Battery low appears and Camera mode does not activate.
- When Camera mode is switched, sounds may be heard from the camera lens. This is not a malfunction.
 - In the shooting screen, press 1 [Switch camera-mode] and select a Camera mode.

| Still picture mode | 1 |
|-----------------------|---|
| Movie mode | 2 |
| Character reader mode | 3 |
| Bar code reader mode | 4 |

Adjusting Brightness < Brightness>

Default setting Brightness 0

Select from five brightness levels.

- In the still picture shooting screen (127 P. 170) or movie shooting screen (127 P. 170), press (1) (brighter) or (1) (darker) to adjust brightness.
 - Also, adjust brightness levels for Bar code reader (127 P. 182) and Character reader (127 P. 185) with (_).
 - Verify with icon on the display. (
 P. 169)
 - After ending Camera mode, the setting returns to (Default).
 - Use the same method to adjust the sub camera.

Using Digital Zoom <Zoom In and Out>

In the still picture shooting screen (☞ P. 170), press or to zoom in or out.

- In viewer position, press ▲ (☑) or 🔽 (Eco).
- The Zoom bar appears.
- The Zoom bar already appears in the movie shooting screen (P P. 170).

| To zoom in (make the subject bigger) | (In viewer position, press T (Eco).) |
|--|---|
| To zoom out (make the subject smaller) | (In viewer position, press ▲ (□).) |
| To zoom in gradually | Press and hold (In viewer position, press (Eco).) |
| To zoom out gradually | Press and hold (In viewer position, press ▲ (∅).) |

| To zoom in instantly | Goes to the instant zoom mark position. For still pictures, press 	☐ or 	☐ for double magnification (image will be rougher). |
|-----------------------------|--|
| To return to actual size | |

Area affected by zoom depends on the image size.

| Camera | Image size | | Zoom step (maximum magnification) | |
|------------------|--------------------------|---------------|---|----------------------------|
| mode | Main camera | Sub camera | Main camera | Sub camera |
| Still picture | sQCIF: 1 | 28×96 | 26 steps (approx. 24×) | 3 steps (approx. 4×) |
| | QCIF: 17 | 6×144 | 23 steps (approx. 17×) | |
| | QVGA: 2 | 40×320 | 20 steps (approx. 13×) | - |
| | Stand- by: 240×400 | - | 6 steps (approx. 10×) | - |
| | CIF: 352 | ×288 | 16 steps (approx. 8.7×) | - |
| | VGA: 480× 640 | - | 13 steps (approx. 6.4×) | - |
| | UXGA: 1600× 1200 | - | 4 steps (approx. 2.5×) | - |
| | FullHD: 1920× 1080 | - | - (actual size) | - |
| | 3M: 2048× 1536 | - | - (actual size) | - |
| Movie | sQCIF: 128×96 | | 28 steps (approx. 16×)* | 2 steps (approx. 2×) |
| | QCIF: 176×144 | | 20 steps (approx. 7.1×)* | |
| | QVGA: 320×240 | | 19 steps (approx. 6.4×)* | - |
| | WQVGA: 400×240 | - | 5 steps (approx. 5.1×)* | - |

- * When Fix camera shake is set to **OFF** and in viewer position
- Image size returns to actual size when shooting size is changed, Main/sub camera settings are changed, Fix camera shake settings are changed, Effect shot settings are changed, image/voice is switched or Camera mode is ended. However, in still picture mode, image size does not return to actual size even if Effect shot settings are changed.

Note

Notes about shooting

Make sure camera does not shake. Image is more prone to shaking when image size is large or image quality is high. Moving the FOMA terminal while shooting images may cause images to become blurred. Shoot images while holding the handset as still as possible. Use the Fix camera shake function to prevent camera shake when shooting. ((CPP. 179))

Using Picture Light <Picture Light>

Default setting OFF

- In the still picture shooting screen ((27) P. 170), press (a) (1) [Picture light].
 - In the movie shooting screen (P. 170), press 031.
 - When in Bar code reader (P. 182) or Character reader (P. 185), press . Press
 to switch ON/OFF.

Select lighting method.

| ON | 1 ● ቻ appears. |
|-----|--------------------------|
| OFF | 2 |

Note

- Picture light is a supplementary light source for surroundings with low light. The amount of light is less than that of an ordinary camera flash.
- The picture light turns on (dims) when still picture mode or movie mode is activated even if set to OFF. The picture light fully lights when shooting starts.
- When performing close-up shots of printed materials that are mostly white under fluorescent light, the color or shadow of the FOMA terminal may appear in the picture, depending on the angle and whether the picture light is ON or OFF. This is not a malfunction.

Switching Between Main Camera and Sub Camera < Main/Sub Camera>

 When Voice recorder is activated or Switch image/ voice is set to Voice only, switching from main camera to sub camera is not available.

In the still picture shooting screen (② P. 170), press @ 6 1 [Main/ sub camera].

- In the movie shooting screen (P. 170), press 651.
- Alternatively, press (#) to switch.

Note

 After switching from the main camera to the sub camera, it may take time for the brightness and tone to appear correctly.

Note

Main Camera

 Use for Character reader (OCR) or for Bar code reader. Images appear on the display as normal (correct left-right orientation). (Image is shot as it appears.)

Sub camera

 Images appear reversed on the display (left-right orientation backwards). (Image is shot as if reflected in a mirror.)

Setting Image Size <Select Size>



Set still picture and movie image size.

- Set main camera and sub camera separately.
- When shooting still pictures, Shoot with frame, Effect shot and Continuous mode are canceled if image size is changed.
- Refer to P. 167 for details on each size.

In the still picture shooting screen (P. 170), press 5 [Select size] and select size.

 In the movie shooting screen (P. 170), press (4).

| Size | Shoot still picture | Shoot movie |
|-------------------|------------------------|----------------|
| sQCIF: 128×96 | 1 | 1 |
| QCIF: 176×144 | 2 | 2 |
| QVGA: 240×320 | 3 | - |
| Stand-by: 240×400 | 4* | - |
| QVGA: 320×240 | - | 3 |
| CIF: 352×288 | 5 | - |
| WQVGA: 400×240 | - | 4. |
| VGA: 480×640 | 6* | - |
| UXGA: 1600×1200 | 7* | - |
| FullHD: 1920×1080 | 8* | - |
| 3M: 2048×1536 | •1* | - |

- Settings are not available for the sub camera.
- Icon that indicates size appears. (127 P. 169)

Note

- When sending images by i-mode mail, transmission charge depends on image size and image quality.
- Image size cannot be selected when Voice recorder is activated or if Switch image/voice is set to Voice only.
- When image size is set to QVGA: 320×240 or WQVGA: 400×240 while shooting movies, image quality is set to SUPER FINE.

Setting Image Quality <Image Quality>

Default setting Still picture: Normal Movie: SUPER FINE

Set still picture and movie image quality. Image quality increases from **ECONOMY** \rightarrow **NORMAL** \rightarrow **FINE**, and so on. As quality increases, the number of images to save and amount of recordable time decrease.

- Refer to P. 167 and P. 461 for details on the approximate number of images which can be shot and the recording length.
 - In the still picture shooting screen (@P. 170), press @43 [Image quality] and select image quality.
 - In the movie shooting screen (P. 170), press 033.

| | Shoot still picture | Shoot movie* |
|------------|------------------------|--------------|
| ECONOMY | 1 | 1 |
| NORMAL | 2 | 2 |
| FINE | - | 3 |
| SUPER FINE | 3 | 4 |

SUPER FINE cannot be set for sQCIF: 128×96. Only SUPER FINE can be set for QVGA: 320×240 and WQVGA: 400×240.

Icon that indicates image quality appears.
 (127 P. 169)

Note

- To give priority to the image quality when shooting an image, select *FINE* or *SUPER FINE*.
- Image quality cannot be selected when Voice recorder is activated or if Switch image/voice is set to Voice only.
- For Movie mode, image quality cannot be selected when Effect shot is set.

Saving High Quality Images with File Size Reduced <Hi-quality & Long>

Default setting OFF

Shoot and save movies in high quality (supporting H.264 encoding) with the file size reduced.

- Shooting size is QVGA: 320×240.
- When movies are saved to the FOMA terminal handset, file size is limited to For mail (long): 2MB or less. File size is not limited when movies are saved to the microSD Memory Card.
 - In the movie shooting screen (P. 170), Press 3 (4) [Hiquality & Long].

Press 1 [ON].

appears.

Note

- When Hi-quality & Long is set to **ON**, Effect shot is canceled.
- Image size, Image quality, File size limit, and Voice only for Switch image/voice cannot be selected while Hi-quality & Long is set to ON.
- When Hi-quality & Long is canceled, image size and quality are set to QVGA: 320x240 and SUPER FINE respectively.
- Hi-quality & Long is canceled if switched to the sub camera.
- If Hi-quality & Long is set to ON when Switch img/ voice is set to Voice only, the setting is changed to Image + voice.
- Hi-quality & Long is suitable for shooting movies with less motions. If a movie with many motions is shot, the image quality may greatly deteriorate.

Setting File Size Limit <File Size Limit>

Default setting For mail (long)

Set File size limit before shooting movies.

 When sending with i-motion mail, select For mail (short) or For mail (long). Record based on allowable size of mail attachment.

In the movie shooting screen (徑 P. 170), press 圖③⑥ [File size limit] and select the file size.

| To set restriction to 500 KB | 1 |
|------------------------------|---|
| To set restriction to 2 MB | 2 |
| To set no restriction* | 3 |

* If save destination is set to FOMA terminal handset, this option cannot be selected.

Note

- When save destination is set to microSD Memory Card and File size limit is set to Unrestricted, the maximum recording time is approximately one hour (excluding when Switch image/voice is set to Voice only). When mail is sent right after shooting, the first 2 MB or less are cut and sent. However, mail cannot be sent when shot in Hi-quality & Long.
- When save destination is changed to the FOMA terminal handset, file size is set to *For mail (long)*.
 When save destination is changed to microSD Memory Card, file size is set to *Unrestricted*.
- Depending on the subject motion, a file size limit is not reached.

Shooting Images with Auto Timer <Auto Timer>

Default setting OFF

Shoot images with the Auto timer. Use Auto timer to shoot pictures which include yourself.

In the still picture shooting screen (127 P. 170), press @4 1 [Auto timer] and set Auto timer.

 In the movie shooting screen (P. 170), press 3.2.

| To disable | 1 |
|------------------------|---|
| To set to two seconds | 2 |
| To set to five seconds | 3 |
| To set to ten seconds | 4 |

• 🔁, 🔁 or 🔂 appears on the display.

🕨 Press 💿 [🙆] or 🖻 (🙆).

- Timer sound is audible and Auto timer activates. After the set time (approximately two seconds, five seconds or ten seconds) elapses, picture is automatically shot after the shoot start sound. (2), 2) or 2) and picture light flash.)
- Press CLR to end shooting. Auto timer stays set.
- Auto timer is not deactivated after shooting.

Note

Notes about Auto timer

- Press 💽 [10] or 🖻 (10) to shoot image immediately.
- When a call is received or alarm activates, shooting is canceled.
- When Auto timer is active in Still picture mode, cannot be used to operate the zoom and cannot be used to adjust the brightness.
- Auto timer is canceled when camera is switched between main camera and sub camera.
- If the FOMA terminal is opened and closed or is pressed, shooting is interrupted and Camera mode is ended.

Setting AF Mode <Switch AF Mode>

Default setting Still pictures, movies, Bar code reader: Standard, Character reader: Closeup

Set AF (auto focus) mode according to the subject.

- For still pictures, AF mode setting returns to Standard when Camera mode is activated, or image size or Main/sub camera settings is changed. Spot AF setting also returns to Standard when shooting ends.
- AF mode cannot be switched for the sub camera.
- Switch between *Closeup* and *Standard* in Character reader and Bar code reader modes.

| Standard | Auto focus activates and the subject at the center is automatically focused. |
|-----------------|--|
| Spot AF* | Select area to focus in the viewfinder. |
| Closeup | Recommended mode for shooting close subjects (approximately 10 cm). |
| Manual focus | Adjust focus manually. |

Available only for still picture mode. However, it is not available even in still picture mode when image size is set to sQCIF: 128×96, QCIF: 176×144 or CIF: 352×288.

In the still picture shooting screen (P. 170), press 42 [AF mode] and select AF mode.

 In the movie shooting screen (P. 170), press 32.

| Standard | | 1 |
|-----------------------------------|--------------------------|--|
| Spot AF (still pictur only) | e mode | 2 → select the focus area with : Switches to full-screen mode. To use auto focus, select the focus area and press • or • () To use focus lock, select the focus area, press • or • (), or press • or • (), or press • or • () halfway to lock focus and press • or • () Zoom and brightness cannot be adjusted during Spot AF. |
| Closeup | Still picture mode | 3 |
| | Movie mode | 2 |
| Manual focus | Still picture mode | ④ → focus bar appears → adjust focus with → ● Adjust so the bar on the bottom of the screen turns a deep blue. ● Select Manual focus again in the AF mode screen to adjust focus manually. |
| | Movie mode | 3 → focus bar appears → adjust focus with → Adjust so the bar on the bottom of the screen turns a deep blue. Select Manual focus again in the AF mode screen to adjust focus manually. |

Note

- AF mode cannot be switched when activated as Voice recorder, Switch image/voice is set to Voice only or sub camera is in use.
- When shooting settings are changed while focus is locked, focus lock is released.
- When AF mode is switched, sounds may be heard from the camera lens. This is not a malfunction.

Setting Image and Voice Shooting <Switch Image/Voice>

Default setting image + voice

When shooting a movie, select *Image + voice*, *Image only* or *Voice only*.

In the movie shooting screen (P. 170), press 37 [Switch img/voice] and select the image/ voice combination.

| To record image + voice | 1 |
|-------------------------|---|
| To record image only | 2 |
| To record voice only | 3 |

Note

 If Hi-quality & Long is set to ON when Switch img/ voice is set to Voice only, Image + voice is selected.

Shooting Still Pictures with a Frame <Shoot with Frame>

Default setting OFF

Set and shoot still pictures with frames.

- A frame is added to each still picture in Continuous mode. (IPP. 172)
- When image size is UXGA: 1600×1200, FullHD: 1920×1080 or 3M: 2048×1536 or when Continuous mode is set in VGA: 480×640, shooting still pictures with a frame is not available.
- If the image size differs from the frame size, the frame is rotated to the left 90°.
- Use frames downloaded from sites and Internet web pages to shoot with frames.
- Changing the image size cancels Shoot with frame.

In the still picture shooting screen (P. 170), press 48 [Shoot with frame] and select a frame.



For preset frames

| To use frames | f → select folder → ● → select frame → ii To preview, select a frame and press ●. Press @ and the previous screen reappears. |
|---------------------|---|
| To cancel frames | 2 |

• Combined image with frame and subject appears on the screen.



Adding Various Effects < Effect Shot>

Default setting OFF

Set effects for still pictures and movies to change the color tone and touch.

- Changing the image size or switching to Continuous mode cancels Effect shot.
- When image size for still pictures is VGA: 480×640, UXGA: 1600×1200, FullHD: 1920×1080 or 3M: 2048×1536, Effect shot is not available.
- Effect shot is not available when using the sub camera.
 - In the still picture shooting screen (2 P. 170), press 4 7 [Effect shot] and select the type of effect.
 - In the movie shooting screen (P. 170), press 38.
 - Press to show the previous and next screens.

Effect type

| OFF | 1 | To remove effects. |
|------------------------------|----|--|
| Black & white | 2 | Image contrast is expressed in monotone. |
| Sepia | 3 | Image contrast is expressed in sepia color. |
| Sparkling | 4 | Bright areas light up. |
| Colored pencil | 5 | A colored line is drawn. |
| Faded edges ^{*1} | 6 | Image edges have a soft, blurred effect. |
| Spectrum*2 | 6 | Spectrum of motions. |
| Ripple | 7 | Adds ripple effect. |
| Kaleidoscope (L) | 8 | Adds a kaleidoscope effect with a large pattern. |
| Kaleidoscope (S) | •1 | Adds a kaleidoscope effect with a small pattern. |
| Fish-eye | -2 | Image is expressed as seen through a fish-eye lens. |

- *1 Available only for still pictures.
- *2 Available only for movies.

Press 💿 [ô)] or 🖻 (ô).

Note

 When shooting movies, Image quality cannot be changed. Image quality is automatically set to SUPER FINE for QVGA: 320×240 or WQVGA: 400×240 and FINE for other sizes.

Note

 When Effect shot is set, Fix camera shake is automatically set to OFF. Afterward, when Effect shot is canceled, the Fix camera shake setting before Effect shot is retrieved.

Shooting While Fixing Camera Shake <Fix Camera Shake>

Default setting Still picture: OFF, Movie: ON

Fix camera shake while shooting.

- When image size for still pictures is VGA: 480×640, UXGA: 1600×1200, FullHD: 1920×1080 or 3M: 2048×1536, Fix camera shake is available.
- When shooting still pictures, Fix camera shake is not available with Shoot by scene set to *Auto* or in Continuous mode.
- Fix camera shake is not available when shooting with sub camera or Effect shot.
- Fix camera shake effects depend on the subject and the shooting conditions.

In the still picture shooting screen (P. 170), press 62 [Fix camera shake] and press 1 [ON].

Shooting Environment/Subject-specific Images <Shoot by Scene>

Default setting Auto

Set camera to shoot with natural colors and focus based on surroundings and subject.

 Shoot by scene is not available when using the sub camera.

In the still picture shooting screen (27 P. 170), press 24 6 [Shoot by scene] and select a scene.

 In the movie shooting screen (P. 170), press 3 1.

Still picture scenes

| Auto | 1 | Ideal setting for normal shooting. |
|----------------|---|--|
| People | 2 | Ideal setting for shooting people. |
| Night scene | 3 | Ideal setting for shooting images at night or in dimly lit surroundings. |
| Landscape | 4 | Ideal setting for shooting detailed subjects such as nature and the city. |
| Exercise | 5 | Ideal setting for shooting moving subjects, such as in outdoor sports. |

In the movie shooting screen (P P. 170), press 52.

| Character | 6 | Ideal setting for shooting subjects with contrast differences (e.g. black and white). |
|--------------|---|--|
| Into the sun | 7 | Ideal setting for shooting subjects against the sun. |

Movie scenes

| Auto | 1 | Ideal setting for normal shooting. |
|----------------------|---|---|
| People | 2 | Ideal setting for shooting people. |
| Landscape (soft) | 3 | Ideal setting for shooting soft images of nature and the city. |
| Landscape (sharp) | 4 | Ideal setting for shooting sharp images of nature and the city. |

• Icon that indicates scene appears. (PP. 169)

Note

- After ending Camera mode, setting returns to Auto.
- When shooting still pictures at night or in dimly lit surroundings, make sure to use Fix camera shake.
 (CP P. 179)

Setting Backlight Illumination Time <Display Light Time>

Default setting As light setting

Set time for backlight illumination when shooting movies.

In the movie shooting screen (P. 170), press 5 4 [Display light time] and select the display light time.

| As light setting | Backlight illuminates based on Display light time. (() P. 131) |
|------------------|--|
| Always ON | Backlight is constantly lit. (Backlight lit duration is same as Display light time for all screens other than viewfinder.) |

Minimizing Audio Noise <Noise Reduction>

Default setting ON

Set Noise reduction to minimize audio noise when shooting movies.

In the movie shooting screen (译 P. 170), press 圖 5 ③ [Noise reduction], and press ① [ON].

Note

 Noise reduction is not available if Switch image/ voice is set to Image only.

Note

 Noise reduction processes sound to make conversations clearer. Sound quality may vary depending on surrounding noise and tone of the voice.

Shooting with Focus Lock <Focus Lock>

Use Focus lock to keep focus on subject and change composition.

In the still picture shooting screen ((② P. 170), adjust focus and press ⑥ or change composition while pressing 圖 (Ô) halfway.

- Focus is locked.
 - (red)...... Appears when focusing
 - (green)... Appears when focus is locked
- Alternatively, press ① to lock focus when AF mode is set to Spot AF. (P. 177)
- When shooting movies, press (b) halfway to lock focus. Focus rock is canceled when (b) is released. Alternatively, press (c) to lock focus in normal position.
- Focus lock sound notifies that focus is locked. (excluding when recording movies)
- Focus lock is canceled when the FOMA terminal is opened/closed or switched to viewer position.

| When 🕥 was pressed | $\mathbf{z} \rightarrow \mathbf{z}$ |
|--------------------------------------|---|
| When 🖻 (🙆) was pressed halfway | Release ◙ (ඟ) → press ◙ (ඟ) halfway |

Shoot.

| To shoot | When 🕥 was pressed | • [0] |
|----------|--------------------------------------|----------------------|
| | When 🖻 (🙆) was pressed halfway | Press ◙ (໖) fully |

• Do not change the distance to the subject.

Note

• Focus lock cannot be set when Voice recorder is activated, when Switch image/voice is set to Voice only or when shooting with the sub camera.

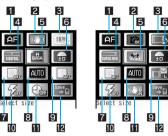
When AF mode is not set to Manual focus

- Auto focus is not available if
 [1] is pressed when focus is already locked.
- While shooting a movie, press or press ((a)) halfway to lock focus again. Use when distance to subject changes while shooting. Audio noise may affect shooting when using Focus lock.

Changing Settings for Shooting Collectively <Shooting Settings>

Show settings for functions frequently used when shooting and change them collectively.

In the still picture shooting screen (27 P. 170) or movie shooting screen (27 P. 170), press [Settings].



For still pictures

 To change settings, select item with : and press [Change].

For movies

| Sho | Shooting still pictures | | hooting movies |
|-----|-------------------------|----|-------------------|
| 1 | AF mode | 1 | AF mode |
| 2 | Fix camera shake | 2 | Hi-quality & Long |
| 3 | Continuous mode | 3 | Switch img/voice |
| 4 | Image quality | 4 | Image quality |
| 5 | Select size | 5 | Select size |
| 6 | Brightness | 6 | Brightness |
| 7 | Effect shot | 7 | Effect shot |
| 8 | Shoot by scene | 8 | Shoot by scene |
| 9 | Shoot with frame | 9 | File size limit |
| 10 | Picture light | 10 | Picture light |
| 11 | Auto timer | 11 | Fix camera shake |
| 12 | Switch phone SD | 12 | Switch phone SD |

Changing Camera Settings

Changing Camera Shutter Sound <Shutter Sound>

Default setting Default tone

Select from four shutter sounds.

 Camera shutter sound volume cannot be changed. The shutter sound is also audible during Manner mode, Public mode (Drive mode) and when the flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (sold separately) is connected.

> In stand-by, press • 1 2 4 1 and select a Shutter sound.

| Default tone | 1 | Ding dong | 3 |
|----------------|---|-----------|---|
| Digital camera | 2 | Twinkle | 4 |

• To check shutter sound, select a shutter sound and press 📱 [Play]. Press 📱 [Stop] to stop playback.

Showing Images in Full-screen <Full-screen Mode>

All icons can be deleted to view the still picture at full screen in Camera mode.

Show QVGA: 240×320, Stand-by: 240×400, VGA: 480×640, UXGA: 1600×1200, FullHD: 1920×1080, 3M: 2048×1536 sized images in fullscreen mode.

- Full-screen mode deactivates when Camera mode ends.
- If a shooting size above is set when the camera is started in viewer position, the image is displayed in full-screen mode.

In the still picture shooting screen (☞ P. 170), press ◙ ③ [Full-screen mode].

- Repeat operation to deactivate Full-screen mode.
- When the FOMA terminal is switched from normal position to viewer position, Full-screen mode is activated.

Saving to microSD Memory Card <Switch Phone⇔SD>

Default setting FOMA terminal handset

Save images to microSD Memory Card. microSD Memory Cards are sold separately. Purchase microSD Memory Cards at home electronics shops. (ICP P. 316)

In the still picture shooting screen (☞ P. 170), press 圖⑦ [Switch phone⇔SD].

- In the movie shooting screen (P. 170), press 6.
- Save destination is changed and still picture shooting screen reappears.
- Alternatively, press [Save To] after shooting still picture to switch.
- microSD Memory Card icon color changes depending on settings.
 - Image: Gray (gray) : Save destination is FOMA terminal handset
 - Image: General State (pink) : Save destination is microSD Memory Card
- Length of movies that can be saved depends on the size of the microSD Memory Card. Maximum length is approximately one hour for movies with video.

Note

- In Still picture mode, images are saved to FOMA terminal handset even when save destination is set to the microSD Memory Card if there is no available space. In Movie mode, when shooting is started with the save destination set to the microSD Memory Card and there is no available space, Camera mode ends and the stand-by display reappears.
- Refer to P. 321 for details on checking still pictures saved on microSD Memory Card.
- When the save destination folder exceeds 400 still pictures, a still picture is saved in a new folder that is automatically created.
- When save destination is the microSD Memory Card, shot images are saved in *Camerafolder xxx* ("xxx" is the largest number when multiple folders exist).
- When saving to microSD Memory Card, images are saved in DCF1.0 (ExifVer.2.2, JPEG) format.
- DCF (Design rule for Camera File system) is a standard created mainly by JEITA (Japan Electronics and Information Technology Industries Association) for images from digital cameras and other devices to be shared with related devices. However, DCF standard may not be compatible with all devices.
- Exif is a file format established by JEITA (Japan Electronics and Information Technology Industries Association) for adding supplementary information to the still picture.

Setting Auto Save Mode < Auto Save Mode>

Default setting OFF

Set to save shot still picture automatically.

- If Auto save mode is set to ON, image editing, Set screen and other operations are not available immediately after shooting.
- Shot still pictures are automatically saved on the microSD Memory Card or in the FOMA terminal handset.
- Change the save destination before shooting to save to microSD Memory Cards. (EP P. 181)

In the still picture shooting screen (P. 170), press 63 [Auto save mode] and 1 [ON].

Preventing Still Picture/Movie Shooting Settings from Returning to Default Settings <Save Camera Set>

Default setting ON

Save camera settings to retain various settings after Camera mode ends and use those same settings later.

• The following items are retained.

| Still picture | Select size, Image quality, Picture light, Switch phone⇔SD, Auto save mode, Fix camera shake |
|---------------|--|
| | Select size, Image quality, File size limit, Display light time, Noise reduction, Picture light, Switch phone⇔SD, Fix camera shake, Hi-quality & Long |

• For still pictures, *Select size* and *Image quality* are retained for both the main camera and sub camera.

In the still picture shooting screen (P. 170), press 6 4 [Save camera set].

 In the movie shooting screen (P. 170), press 65.

Press 1 [ON].

Send Message

Sending Still Pictures or Movies After Shooting

After shooting still picture or movie, send images as i-mode mail attachments from the preview screen.

- Movies are sent as i-motion mail.
- When save destination is set to microSD Memory Card, shot images are saved to the microSD Memory Card and the compose message screen appears.

In the still picture preview screen (☞ P. 172), press ☑ [Mail].

 When shooting movies, press 2 [Compose message] in the screen after shooting is completed.

| To | ipose message | |
|-----|---------------|---------|
| Sub | 061120_1132 | 36. 9KB |
| Msg | I | 0. 0K |

 When a shot movie exceeds 2 MB, a confirmation screen exking who that to available

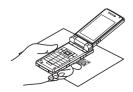
For still pictures

asking whether to cut the file for attaching to mail appears. Select **Yes** and press • to cut and attach the first 2 MB or less.

Compose and send i-mode mail.

• Refer to steps 2 to 4 on P. 220 for details.

Bar Code Reader Using Bar Code Reader



Use camera to scan bar codes (JAN/QR codes) for Phone To (AV Phone To), Mail To, Web To, register bookmark, add to phonebook, display text and i-αppli To. Copy and paste text, play and save melodies and view and save images or ToruCa.

- Scan results cannot be saved on microSD Memory Cards.
- Camera cannot scan bar codes/two-dimensional codes other than JAN codes and QR codes.
- Scan split QR codes.

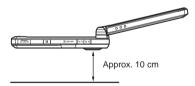
Using Text from Bar Codes (JAN/QR Codes)

Use scanned text from bar codes (JAN/QR codes) for functions such as connecting to i-mode, composing i-mode mail, making voice/Videophone calls, making PushTalk calls and running i-αppli.

- AF mode is set to *Standard* when activating Bar code reader. With AF mode set to *Standard*, focus is automatically adjusted before reading bar codes. With AF mode set to *Closeup*, focus can be locked. Focal distance for Closeup is approximately 10 cm.
- When viewing sites, use Bar code reader to enter JAN/ QR code information into text boxes. (IPP P. 191)
- Some bar codes cannot be scanned depending on types or sizes.
- Bar codes may not be scanned due to scratches, dirt, damage, poor print quality, lighting conditions or QR code version.
- When Camera mode is switched, sounds may be heard from the camera lens. This is not a malfunction.

In stand-by, press •921.

 Alternatively, press <u>1</u> 4 in the still picture shooting screen (P. 170).



 Position the camera approximately 10 cm from the bar code (JAN/QR code). Keep aligned and do not move the FOMA terminal or code while scanning.

2 Display bar code (JAN/QR code) to be read in the center of the screen.

- FOMA terminal automatically distinguishes between JAN code and QR code.
- Glossy paper may be difficult to read. Adjust angle so light does not reflect directly into camera.



| To use Picture light | |
|--|---|
| To lock focus (when AF mode is set to Closeup) | Hard-to-scan codes may be recognized. A beep sounds when focused. |
| To view saved data | 02 |
| To switch focus modes | 03 |

子 Press 重 [Scan].

- When AF mode is set to *Closeup*, Focus lock is automatically set if not already set when scanning.
- Bar code reader starts scanning code (JAN/QR code). When scanning is complete, an end tone is heard and scan results appear.
- If one minute passes after scanning starts and nothing is scanned, *Could not read* appears and the screen of step 2 reappears.
- To cancel scanning, press i [Break] or GLR. Scanning is interrupted and the screen of step 2 reappears.

Select scanned text and press .

- Scanned characters and numbers are selectable if underlined.
- Based on the type of scanned text, confirmation screens for i-mode connection (for URLs), compose message (for mail addresses) or phone (Videophone) confirmation screen (for phone numbers) appears.
- Applicable screens appear for scanned data. Add to phonebook screen for phonebook data, compose message screen for mail data, register bookmark screen for bookmark data, and run i-αppli screen for i-αppli data.
- If scanned characters and numbers are not underlined, display does not change even if
 is pressed.

| To copy all scanned text | |
|-----------------------------------|--|
| To copy a part of scanned text | |
| To save scanned data | |

- Alternatively, press
 ⑥ ⑥ ③ [Bar code reader] in the URL entry screen or text entry screen for a site
 (12) steps 1 to 3 on P. 188) to activate Bar code reader.
- While phonebook Function lock is set, enter terminal security code to unlock temporarily and save scanned text to phonebook. Function lock is enabled again after saving.
- When Manner mode or Public mode (Drive mode) is set, Focus lock sound and scan complete tone do not sound.

Note

JAN code

- JAN code is a type of bar code using vertical bars of varying width to express numbers.
- The code on the right is read as **4942857119022**.

QR code

 QR code is a type of two-dimensional code expressing data vertically and horizontally. Data includes character strings (alphanumeric characters,



- kanji, kana, pictographs), images and melodies.
- The code on the right is read as 株式会社NTTドコモ.
 Split data
- QR code may be split into a multiple set of codes (maximum 16) which can be compiled into one set of data. If split data is scanned, the screen on the right appears after step 3. The parentheses show

| Scan | next (1/3 | | code |
|------|--------------|---|------|
| | ŕ | | |
| | Ye | S | |
| | N | 0 | |

remaining codes/total codes.

Select Yes to proceed to the next QR code scanning screen. When the next QR code appears in the center of the screen, scanning starts automatically. Repeat until all split data is scanned. Scan results appear.

Scanning and Using Images/ Melodies/ToruCa from QR Codes

 In scan results screen, *Image* appears when scanned data is an image, *Melody* appears when scanned data is a melody, and *ToruCa* appears when scanned data is a ToruCa.

Press • and show/play.

| To show image | Some file formats cannot be viewed. |
|--------------------------|--|
| To play back melodies | Some file formats cannot be played. To stop playback, press or cire. |
| To show ToruCa | When multiple ToruCa are included, only the first one is acquired. |

| To save image, melody or ToruCa | Image is saved to Acquired data folder in My picture of Data box. Melodies are saved in Acquired data folder in Melody of Data box. Torufos is carred in former |
|---------------------------------------|---|
| To not save | ToruCa is saved in <i>ToruCa</i> of <i>LifeKit</i> menu. |
| image, melody or ToruCa | |

Adding Scanned Text to Phonebook or Bookmarks

• Add scanned mail addresses, phone numbers and URL numbers to phonebook or bookmarks.

In scan results screen after scanning bar code (🖅 steps 1 to 3 on P. 183), press 🖻.

Use scanned results.

| - | | |
|-------------------------------|---|---|
| To add to Phone book | To save new to FOMA terminal handset phonebook | 1 → Yes → ● Scanned text is entered in appropriate areas. Continue phonebook saving operations. (ICP P. 97) Phone numbers set as Videophone numbers in advance are saved as Videophone numbers. |
| | To save new to FOMA card phonebook | 1 2 → Yes → ■ Scanned text is entered in appropriate areas. Continue phonebook saving operations. (12) P. 103) |
| | To add/ overwrite phonebook | ① ③ → Yes → ● → select name → ● Scanned text is saved in appropriate areas. Continue phonebook saving operations. (比) P. 97) However, scanned URL is overwritten in the memo item (1) P. 97). |
| To add t (URL on (@P. 1 | | $ \textcircled{2} \rightarrow \textbf{Yes} \rightarrow \textcircled{\bullet} \rightarrow \text{select} $ folder $\rightarrow \textcircled{\bullet} \rightarrow \textbf{OK} \rightarrow \textcircled{\bullet} $ |

Using saved data

Press 2 [Saved data] in the scanning screen (2 step 2 on P. 183), select data and press •.

- Proceed to steps 1 and 2 of "Adding Scanned Text to Phonebook or Bookmarks" on P. 184.
- Saved data cannot be saved again.

Character Reader (OCR)

Reading Text

Shoot printed data such as URLs, mail addresses, phone numbers and English words, and convert into text to be used by FOMA terminal. Use read text to connect to sites or web pages, or send i-mode mail. Use read text to make voice/Videophone calls and PushTalk calls or search for words in a dictionary. Can also be saved in phonebook entries and bookmarks.

• Text which can be read is shown below. Such as URLs, mail addresses, phone numbers, English words, etc. are automatically distinguished based on the text. Double-byte characters such as kanji and hiragana cannot be read.

| URL | Single-byte alphabet, single-byte numbers, single-byte symbols [: / ~] |
|-----------------|--|
| Mail address | Single-byte alphabet, single-byte numbers, single-byte symbols [. @ :] |
| Phone number | Single-byte numbers, single-byte symbols [- + P # *] |
| English word | Single-byte alphabet, single-byte numbers, single-byte symbols [- / ? ! @ + * ' () , . &] |

 Text may not be read correctly due to scratches, dirt, damage, poor print quality, lighting conditions or text size.

Using Scanned Text

Data type (URL, mail address, phone number, English word) is automatically distinguished. Use functions such as reading text, connecting to i-mode, composing i-mode mail, making voice/ Videophone calls, making PushTalk calls, searching in dictionaries, adding to phonebook, saving bookmarks.

- AF mode is set to Closeup when activating Character reader.
- When Camera mode is switched, sounds may be heard from the camera lens. This is not a malfunction.

In stand-by, press • 9296.

 Alternatively, press 13 in the still picture shooting screen (P. 170).

Display text to be scanned in the center of the screen.

 Glossy paper may be difficult to read. Adjust angle so light does not reflect directly into camera.



- Adjust image so that it appears in the center of the frame(). Text near the sides of the frame may be difficult to scan.
- For optimal scan, point the camera straight while maintaining a focal distance of approximately 10 cm. Keep both the text and FOMA terminal level without moving them.
 Viewed text may become small and hard to read. Adjust distance so the bar on the bottom of the screen turns a deep blue.
- Scan up to approximately 60 characters at one time.

| To use Picture light | ••• |
|--|--|
| To lock focus | <u>٢</u> |
| To select data type for scanning | B ≥ → select category → When Character reader is activated, <i>Auto</i> is set. |
| To switch focus modes | ▶ 2 [Standard] Use to scan large text. Keep at <i>Closeup</i> when scanning small text such as business cards. |
| To scan inverted text (white text on black background) | ^B ④ → select type of inverse mode → [■] ^B When Character reader is activated, Automatic is set. When text is difficult to scan, set to Normal or Reverse text. |

🕇 Press 重 [🙆].

• Press : to specify the line to scan. (Text is scanned one line at a time.)

🚺 Press 💿 [Scan].

• When scanning is complete, candidates screen appears with read text.

| To edit scan results | Edit text with → select candidate with → ● Letter by letter correction candidates appear on the bottom of the screen. When there are no correction candidates, enter text using dial keys. ● Press ☞ to delete letters one at a time. |
|---|--|
| To delete text on screen and scan again | $\boxed{\blacksquare} \rightarrow \text{Yes} \rightarrow \blacksquare$ |

Press 🔳.

| To delete text on | $\mathbf{i} \rightarrow \mathbf{Yes} \rightarrow \mathbf{\bullet}$ |
|-------------------|--|
| screen and scan | |
| again | |

| To scan additional text | The character reader screen appears. Connect to previously read data to make complete text. Use for text split into multiple lines such as long URLs or mail addresses. Scan up to 256 characters. |
|---|--|
| To add text | The character reader screen appears. Scan text in up to three sessions and link scanned text into one group. Perform functions such as scanning items for phonebook entries and adding scanned data to phonebook. |
| To edit scanned text | 6 |
| To copy all scanned text | Paste in other screens. |
| To delete scanned text | $123 \rightarrow Yes \rightarrow \bullet$ |
| To change the data type of scanned text | When the scanned data is phone number, the data type cannot be changed. |

Press •, select Yes and press •.

 Based on the type of scanned data, confirmation screens for i-mode connection (for URL), compose message (for mail address), phone (Videophone) confirmation screen (for phone number) and search in dictionary (for English word) appear.

Note

- While phonebook Function lock is set, enter terminal security code to unlock temporarily and save phone number, URL, mail address or English word to phonebook. Function lock is set again after saving.
- When scanned data is a phone number, parentheses (()) become a hyphen (-).

Hyphen (-) is erased when adding to phonebook or making a call.

 When read data is URL, *http://* is added to read results even if it is missing.

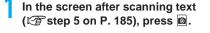
Adding Scanned Text to Phonebook or Bookmarks

Based on the type of data, read data is added as phonebook entry items or saved as bookmarks.

• Scanned data is added to various following items by data type.

| URL*1 | URL | Mail address | Mail |
|--------------|-----|----------------|------|
| Phone number | Tel | English word*2 | Word |

- *1 URLs are saved in the memo item.
- *2 English words are saved in the name/reading item.
- Only URLs are saved as bookmarks.



Use scanned results. То To save $31 \rightarrow Yes \rightarrow \blacksquare$ add to new to Scanned text is entered in Phone FOMA appropriate areas in the book terminal phonebook entry screen. handset Continue phonebook phonebook saving operations. (CTP. 97) To save (3) $(2) \rightarrow Yes \rightarrow (\bullet)$ new to Scanned text is entered in FOMA appropriate areas in the card phonebook entry screen. phonebook Continue phonebook saving operations. (CPP. 103) To add/ $33 \rightarrow \text{Yes} \rightarrow \bullet \rightarrow$ overwrite select name \rightarrow \bigcirc phonebook Scanned text is saved in appropriate areas. Continue phonebook saving operations. (C) P. 97) However, scanned URL is overwritten in the memo item (@P. 97). To add URL to $4 \rightarrow$ **Yes** $\rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow$ select bookmarks folder $\rightarrow \bullet \rightarrow OK \rightarrow \bullet$ (CTP. 195)

Searching for Scanned Text in Dictionary

Search for scanned text in the dictionary.

- Insert microSD Memory Card containing an e-dictionary before performing a search.
 - In the screen after scanning text (IP step 5 on P. 185), press 65 [Search dictionary], select Yes and press •.

Select folder, press , select dictionary and press .

- Refer to step 2 and onward on P. 346 for details on search methods for dictionary.
- After searching, press a or press multiple times to return to the screen after scanning text.

i-mode/i-motion/ i-Channel

_. .

| I-mode | |
|---|-----|
| • What Is i-mode? | 88 |
| ■Viewing Sites | |
| • Viewing Sites <view sites="">1</view> | 88 |
| • Site Layout and Operation | |
| ● Registering to マイメニュー (My Menu)<マイメニュー (My Menu)>1 | |
| Changing the i-mode Password | |
| Viewing Internet Web Pages | |
| Saving Sites and Web Pages as Bookmarks | |
| Saving Site Contents | 96 |
| Downloading Data from Sites | |
| Downloading Images from Sites and Messages Save Image>1 | 98 |
| Downloading i-melody from Sites | 99 |
| Downloading PDF Files from Sites | 99 |
| Downloading Kisekae Tool Kisekae Tool Kisekae Tool>2 | |
| Downloading Icons from Sites Collectively Collectively-2 | |
| Downloading Dictionaries from Sites | 200 |
| Downloading Chara-den from Sites | |
| Downloading ToruCa from Sites | 201 |
| ■Useful i-mode Functions | |
| Using Phone To (AV Phone To)/Mail To/Web To | |
| | 201 |
| Setting i-mode | |
| • Setting i-mode | 203 |
| Using the Message Service | |
| Message R/F 2 | |
| Receiving Message R/F | |
| Checking for New Message R/F | |
| • Viewing Messages R/F in Message Box | 207 |
| Using Certificates | |
| Setting SSL Certificates | 209 |
| ■i-motion | |
| • i-motion | 211 |
| Downloading i-motion from Sites | 212 |
| • Setting Whether to Automatically Replay i-motion | 213 |
| • Setting i-motion Type to Download | 213 |
| ■i-Channel | |
| • i-Channel | 213 |
| Showing i-Channel | 215 |
| - | |
| Setting i-Channel | 210 |

Screenshots are examples and may differ from actual screens.

i-mode

What Is i-mode?

i-mode is an online service that connects i-mode compatible FOMA terminals (i-mode terminals) to sites (programs) and the Internet, and enables i-mode mail exchange.

- i-mode is a paid service that requires subscription. For inquiries about subscription, refer to the back cover of this manual.
- Refer to the latest "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode]" for details on i-mode service contents.

Using i-mode

- Sites (programs) and Internet web pages are generally protected by copyright law. Using downloaded text, images or other data from sites (programs) and web pages for non-personal use without the author's permission such as changing, selling or redistributing is prohibited.
- Saved contents (mail, messages, Screen memo, i-αppli, i-motion) and registered data such as bookmarks in the i-mode terminal may be lost due to malfunctions, repairs or handling of the i-mode terminal. It is recommended that important data be backed up. DoCoMo shall not be liable for any loss of content.
- Some models may not allow data such as downloaded images/movies/melodies, files sent/ received by mail (images/movies/melodies, etc.), Screen memos or Message R/F to be viewed/ played if a different FOMA card is inserted or the handset is turned on without a FOMA card.
- If files with access restrictions by a FOMA card are set as the stand-by display or ring tone, etc. and a different FOMA card is inserted or the handset is turned on without a FOMA card, settings are reset to default.

View Sites

Viewing Sites

Use the various services provided by IPs (Information Providers).

Use the FOMA terminal for functions such as ticket reservations or bank balance inquiries. (Available services vary depending on sites. Separate subscription may be required.)

In stand-by, press 🔳.



 To cancel, press [Cancel] while connecting (flashes).



Icons that appear during i-mode

- 📋 : i-mode is in standby. (flashes)
- : i-mode is in use. (flashes)
- SSI: SSL page is being viewed.
- Loading images or Set image display is set to OFF.
- An error occurs while loading an image or the image format is unsupported.
- In the image cannot be loaded because the URL is not correct.
- S : Downloading i-αppli.

Select item and press 🔳.

Repeat this operation to view site.

| To scroll up/down | Down: 🗔 Up: 🗅 |
|--------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| To scroll one screen at a time | Down: ⊡ [Page] Up: ⊠ [Page] |

To end, press 🕿, select Yes and press 🖜.

Note

- If characters do not appear properly, change the character code. (P. 194)
- Some downloaded images may exceed the number of colors the FOMA terminal can show on the display.
- Press i [i-mode M] while showing a site. i-mode end confirmation screen appears. Select Yes to go to i-mode menu.
- When Accept calls, Reject calls, Reject by reason of non-disclosure or Reject unknown is set, ring tone does not sound for callers without permission even during i-mode or i-mode stand-by. The caller's number and the name saved in phonebook are saved in Received calls. The caller hears a busy signal.

Related Operations

- Replay Flash movies or animated GIFs <Retry> While viewing a site, press @7.4.
- Apply Function lock to i-mode <Function lock> In stand-by, press Ĩ⑦⑥ ▶ enter terminal security code ▶ ● ▶ 1.

Sending terminal ID and UIM ID

While viewing sites or Internet web pages, some sites or Internet web pages may ask for terminal ID. When Terminal and UIM ID will be sent appears, select Yes and press • to send. To not send, select No and press . To not send and return to the previous screen, press CLR or select *Return* and press **.**

Note

- The notification confirmation screen always appears before sending terminal ID and UIM ID. Terminal ID and UIM ID are not sent automatically.
- Terminal ID and UIM ID are used by the IP (Information Provider) to identify the handset and offer customized information to each customer, and also determine what contents offered by the IP are available for each handset.
- Terminal ID and UIM ID are sent to the IP (Information Provider) using the Internet so a third party may obtain it. However, customer's phone number, postal address, age and sex are not sent to the IP with this operation.

Viewing images

View images on sites/internet web pages, image mail and Message R/F.

 The FOMA terminal is compatible with images in GIF/JPEG format and Flash movies. (Some images may not appear even in these formats.)



- D appears while receiving an image and the image is shown when receiving is complete.
- Set image display (P. 204) to show or not show images. If set to OFF, D appears in the place of images.

Note

- · Saved Flash movies may play differently from when on a site or Internet web page.
- When viewing Internet web pages, also view GIF/ JPEG images and Flash movies. i-mode mail with URL for GIF/JPEG images or Flash movies do not appear as image mail. Select URL and use Web To function to view the GIF/JPEG images or Flash movies.
- When no image is received, 🛃 appears. Reload to try to receive image again.
- When images are received that are not GIF/JPEG format or Flash movies, 🛃 appears in place of the image.

Viewing SSL Pages

View SSL-enabled sites or web pages that start with https://(SSL page). The screen on the right appears



when trying to view an SSL page.

Press F [Cancel] to not connect.

One of the certificates below is used to view SSL pages. (12 P. 209)

- CA certificate
- Client certificate
- When viewing an SSL page, SSD appears.

A message prompting to end the SSL connection appears when moving from an SSL page to a normal page.



DoCoMo certificate

Note

 If This certificate has expired. Connect? or other messages appears, the web page certificate is invalid, has expired or uses a different certificate from the FOMA terminal's certificate. When such messages appear, the page is not secure to send credit card numbers, postal addresses or other personal information. To continue viewing the page, select Yes. To not

view the page, select No.

Related Operations

View a site's server certificate <View certificate> While viewing a site, press 072.

Connecting to the Last Viewed Page <Last URL>

When i-mode is disconnected, the last viewed page is recorded as Last URL. Use Last URL to quickly connect to the last viewed page.

In stand-by, press 161.

 The last viewed URL appears.



 Pages may not be displayed if URL exceeds 2.000

> single-byte characters. Additionally, some pages, such as completed melody download screens, may not be saved as Last URL.

Press
[Go].

Related Operations

Delete Last URL <Delete>

In the screen in step 1 of "Connecting to the Last Viewed Page", press @ 1 ▶ Yes ▶ ■.

Save Last URL as a bookmark <Add bookmark>

In the screen in step 1 of "Connecting to the Last Viewed Page", press (a) ≥ select folder > • • > OK > •.

Copy Last URL <Copy>

In the screen in step 1 of "Connecting to the Last Viewed Page", press (3).

Note (Related operations)

Saving as a bookmark

• Refer to P. 195 for details on saving bookmarks. **Copying**

• Up to 2,000 single-byte characters can be copied.

Changing Font Size

Default setting Normal

Set font size of sites, Internet web pages and screen memos.

- Some sites may not appear correctly when Font size is changed.
 - In stand-by, press **1**732 and select font size.

| Large font | 1 |
|------------|---|
| Normal | 2 |
| Small font | 3 |

Setting Playback Volume for Melody <Sound Fx Setting>

Default setting Volume 5

Set playback volume for melodies from sites, web pages and screen memos.

In stand-by, press **1**737.

• While viewing sites or Internet web pages, press (75) to adjust volume.

Press (louder) or (softer) to adjust and press (.

Site Layout and Operation

When viewing sites or Internet web pages, use links to view other screens from the current screen and reload data. Perform operations such as verifying URLs and registering phone numbers.

Viewing Flash Movies <View Flash Movies>

View Flash movies using the FOMA terminal. Flash technology combines pictures and sound into animation. Sites that use Flash movies are more expressive. Save in My picture of Data box and set as stand-by. (127 P. 126, P. 299)

View site (127) steps 1 to 3 on P. 188), Internet web page (127) steps 1 and 2 on P. 194) or saved screen memo (127) steps 1 and 2 on P. 197) with a Flash movie.

• Flash movie plays automatically.

| When a link is set in a Flash movie | Press [●] , <u>,</u> , ●, 0 to 9, [★] or ⊞ to select link set in Flash movie. • Operate the page even if ↓ does not appear. |
|---|--|
| To set Flash movie sound effect volume (で了 P. 203) | When viewing Flash movie, press $\textcircled{B} \rightarrow Display/set \rightarrow \textcircled{P}$ \rightarrow Sound fx setting \rightarrow $\textcircled{P} \rightarrow$ P (louder) or P (softer) |
| To play a Flash movie again | When viewing Flash movie, press $\textcircled{0} \rightarrow Display/set \rightarrow \textcircled{0}$ $\rightarrow Retry \rightarrow \textcircled{0}$ |

- When Set image display is set to OFF, Flash movies cannot be viewed.
- Playback is not available for melodies from Flash movies set as stand-by or incoming/outgoing call screen.
- Depending on the Flash movie, even when saved as a Screen memo, the Flash movie may play differently from when on a site.
- If a Flash movie has an error during playback, it cannot be saved.
- Some Flash movies may cause the handset to vibrate during playback. Even if the vibrator is set to **OFF**, handset vibrates.
- Some Flash movies may play differently from when viewed at usual sites.
- Refer to steps 1 to 3 on P. 198 for details on saving Flash movies.

Selecting Links and Items

When viewing sites or Internet web pages, view other screens from the current screen. This is called a "link". Links usually appear blue. A selected link is highlighted.

• Some links may be images. When selected, the image is outlined.

Selecting a link and moving to a new screen





Press — to highlight the next link and
to highlight the previous link.

Moving to a new screen by using dial keys

In front of links, \blacksquare , \blacksquare , \blacksquare , etc. may appear. Move by pressing the corresponding dial key (1 to 9, 0, \times or \boxplus).



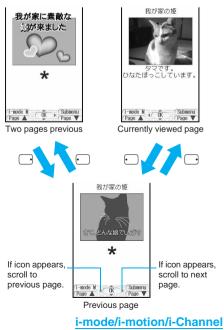
Some sites and Internet web pages may not be viewed.

Selecting items and entering text in sites/Internet web pages

Use the following method to select items and enter text.

| Name | Item | Details |
|-------------------|--|---|
| Radio button | ○ : Unselected ● : Selected | Used to select items. Select only one entry. |
| Check box | □: Unselected ☑: Selected | Used to select items. Select one entry or multiple entries. |
| Pull-down menu | 東区区北 | Used to select items. Select pull-down menu to see a list of possible choices. |
| Text box | D パスワード | Used to enter text. In text input screen, select <i>Bar code reader</i> from the Submenu and enter information into text box using JAN/QR codes. (Melodies and images are not available and are displayed as text. Characters that cannot be entered in the text box do not appear.) |

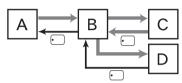
Moving to Previous/Next Page (Cache, History)



191

- Press for the previous page and for the next page.
- Previously entered characters and settings are not restored for pages saved in the cache.
- When pressing to scroll through pages, if the page is no longer in the cache, the cache size is exceeded or the page is set (created) to always download up-to-date information, the handset reloads the page from the site.
- When switching to a screen saved in the cache, it may take time to view the page.
- Display actions may differ when Flash movies are shown.
- The history and cache are reset when i-mode ends.
- Press
 repeatedly to scroll through previous pages. When using
 to scroll through previous pages (*C* to *B*) and another page (*D*) is viewed, pressing
 twice at *D* will not return to *C*. Page will scroll from *B* to *A*.

(When scrolling
$$A \rightarrow B \rightarrow C \rightarrow B \rightarrow D$$
)



... Order when viewing pages

------ ... Order when viewing previous pages

Reloading Information <Reload>

Reload information from a site or Internet web page when information was not received properly (when **a** appears).

- Perform this operation after information has finished loading.
- Some sites and Internet web page information may not be downloaded properly even after reloading.
- Screen memos cannot be reloaded.
 - While viewing sites (1277) steps 1 to 3 on P. 188) or Internet web pages (1277) steps 1 and 2 on P. 194), press (1277) [Reload].
 - Reloading starts.
 - To cancel, press **i** [Cancel] while reloading (**5** flashes).

Viewing the URL <URL>

Verify the URL of the current site or Internet web page.

A URL is an address written in formats like *http://www.xxx.jp*. Up to 2,048 single-byte characters (including *http://*) can be shown in the display.

URLs cannot be edited.

- While viewing sites (127) steps 1 to 3 on P. 188) or Internet web pages (127) steps 1 and 2 on P. 194), press [107] [URL].

 - To view URL of bookmarks (P P. 194), press
 3 in the bookmark list.

| To copy URLs | 6 | |
|-------------------|---------|-------|
| To scroll up/down | Down: , | Up: 👛 |

Saving Phone Numbers and Mail Addresses in the Phonebook <Add to Phonebook>

Add highlighted phone numbers and mail addresses from sites or Internet web pages to phonebook.

- Highlighted phone numbers and mail addresses on a screen memo can also be saved. (ICP P. 197)
- Some highlighted phone numbers and mail addresses cannot be saved.
 - While viewing sites () steps 1 to 3 on P. 188) or Internet web pages () steps 1 and 2 on P. 194), select phone number or mail address, press () 3 () [Add to phonebook] and select a saving method.

| To save new to FOMA terminal handset phonebook | 1 |
|--|---|
| To save new to FOMA card phonebook | 2 |
| To add/overwrite phonebook | 3 |

 Selected phone number or mail address is entered in phonebook entry screen. Continue phonebook saving operations. (TP . 97, P. 103)

マイメニュー (My Menu)

Registering to マイメニュー (My Menu)

Register frequently visited sites from iMenu and Menu list to $\forall \forall \forall \exists \neg (My \text{ menu})$ for convenient access.

- Register up to 45 sites. Some sites cannot be registered.
- Internet web pages cannot be registered. Use bookmarks for easy access. (127 P. 194)

Registering to マイメニュー (My Menu)

- View site to register (() Steps 1 to 3 on P. 188), select マイメニュー (My menu) registration menu (example: ①マイメニュー登録 (My menu registration)) and press .
- 2 Select i モードパスワード入力 (Input password) field, press ●, enter i-mode password and press ●.

Note

- Page set-up may differ depending on the site.
- Upon subscribing to a paid site, the site is automatically registered to マイメニュー (My menu).
- Refer to the latest "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode]" for details.

Viewing Sites Registered in マイメニュー (My Menu)

In stand-by, press 富1 and press ① [マイメニュー] (My menu).

Select site and press .

Note

For Dual Network Service, マイメニュー (My menu) that was registered on a mova terminal may not be available on a FOMA terminal, and マイメニュー (My menu) that was registered on a FOMA terminal may not be available on a mova terminal.

Change i-mode Password Changing the i-mode Password

Default setting 0000

Four-digit i-mode password (2 ア. 146) is required for マイメニュー (My menu) registration/ deletion, Message R/F and i-mode paid site subscription/cancellation and mail settings.

- i-mode password can be changed after subscribing to i-mode. Keep i-mode password private.
- In the case of a forgotten password, bring identification (a driver's license, etc.) to a DoCoMo Shop. Password is reset to 0000.

In stand-by, press 1, select *English*, press , select *Options* and press .

2 Select Change i-mode Password and press •.



Select *Current Password* input field, press •, enter current i-mode password and press •.

- Select New Password input field, press , enter new i-mode password and press .
- Select New Password (Confirmation) input field, press
 , re-enter new i-mode password and press
- Select Select and press .

Internet Access

Viewing Internet Web Pages

Enter Internet web page address (URL: addresses that start with *http://*, etc.) to connect.

• Internet web pages that are not i-mode compatible or have excess data may not appear properly.

In stand-by, press **1**63.

- The URL entry screen appears. (*http://* is already entered.)
- If a URL has been entered previously, that URL appears.
- Alternatively, press <u>65</u> while viewing sites.

Enter URL and press .

- Enter up to 512 single-byte characters (including *http://*).
- Steps when viewing are the same as for sites.
- Press 🗊 [Cancel] while connecting (5 flashes) to cancel.

| To scan URL with Bar code reader (@P. 182) | In the URL entry screen, press @63 |
|--|--|
| When the URL is incorrect | In the URL entry screen, press car • The character the cursor is on or the last character is erased. • Press car for 1+ seconds when the cursor is on the first character or after the last character to erase all the characters. |

3 Press **(a)**, select Yes and press **(b)** to end connection.

Note

- Press CLR twice without entering characters and the i-mode menu reappears.
- If the received data exceeds the maximum size for a page, Size of this page is not supported appears, data transmission stops and only received data appears.

Related Operations

View with full browser <Switch to Full Browser> While viewing a site, press
ⓐ ⑧ ▶ Yes ▶ ■.

Viewing Internet Web Pages with Correct Characters <Character Code>

If the characters on an Internet web page do not appear properly, convert them to proper characters and view again.

While viewing sites (27 steps 1 to 3 on P. 188) or Internet web pages (27 steps 1 and 2 on P. 194), press 73 [Character code].

 Internet web page with correct characters appears. If characters do not appear properly, repeat the above step.

Note

- Changing character code when properly shown may render site unreadable.
- Some pages may not appear properly even after changing character code.
- After character code changes four times, the site or web page is shown with original code.
- After reloading or scrolling to the next/previous page, the site or web page is shown with original code.

Viewing Pages from URL History <URL History>

The FOMA terminal records up to nine Internet web pages accessed from *Go to location* of i-mode menu.

Use the history to reconnect to those web pages.

In stand-by, press 6 2.

Alternatively, press <u>6</u>51 while viewing sites.

Select URL and press <a>

Note

• When nine pages are exceeded, the oldest page in history is overwritten.

Related Operations

Delete URL history <Delete one>

- 1 In URL history list in step 1 of "Viewing Pages from URL History", press ⓐ ①.
 - To delete all: Press 2 > enter terminal security code =.
- 2 Select Yes ▶ •.

Show URLs in URL history <URL>

In URL history list in step 1 of "Viewing Pages from URL History", press 2.

To copy URL: Press

Bookmark

Saving Sites and Web Pages as Bookmarks

Save frequently visited sites and Internet web pages as bookmarks for convenient access.

- Add folders and sort bookmarks into types and manage them. (P P. 196)
- Sites or Internet web pages with images or melodies may not appear correctly when accessed from a bookmark.

Saving Bookmarks

Save up to 100 bookmarks in total.

 Each bookmarked URL can have up to 256 single-byte characters. URLs which exceed 256 characters cannot be saved.

While viewing sites (The steps 1 to 3 on P. 188) or Internet web pages (The steps 1 and 2 on P. 194), press 2 1 [Add bookmark].

 Up to 24 single-byte (12 double-byte) characters from beginning of the title or URL are saved. If the title exceeds 24 single-byte (12 double-byte) characters, the extra characters are deleted. If there is no title, the first 24 characters from the URL are saved.

| When 100 bookmarks are | Bookmark data is full. Overwrite bookmarks? |
|--|---|
| already saved | appears \rightarrow Yes \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow select folder \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow select bookmark to overwrite \rightarrow \blacksquare |
| When the same URL is already saved | The same URL is saved. OverWrite? appears → Yes → ■ Select No and the site or Internet web page reappears. |
| When the URL is too long | URL is too long to register appears and bookmark is not saved. |

Select a folder and press
to save.

| To save | Select OK → ● |
|---------------------------------|---|
| To change the title and save | Select <i>Edit title</i> → → → edit title → → Enter up to 24 single-byte (12 double-byte) characters. |
| To change folder and save | Select <i>Change folder</i> \rightarrow $\blacksquare \rightarrow$ select folder $\rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow$ $OK \rightarrow \blacksquare$ |

Note

- In sites or Internet web pages, even if a selection is made in a radio button, check box, pull-down menu or text is entered in text boxes, the selected or entered contents are not saved in bookmarks.
- Some bookmarks may not be saved depending on the site or Internet web page.
- Refer to P. 320 for details on copying to microSD Memory Cards.
- Refer to P. 330 for details on Ir exchange.
- Refer to P. 334 for details on iC transmission.

Note

Note information saved in bookmarks separately or transfer/store them on a PC using microSD Memory Cards (P. 316) or Data Link Software (P. 438).

 Saved content may be lost due to malfunctions, repairs or other handling of the FOMA terminal. DoCoMo shall not be liable for any loss of content.

Viewing Sites and Internet Web Pages from Bookmarks





Bookmark folder list

| To view all saved bookmarks | |
|--------------------------------|--|
| To view bookmarks | [View microSD data] To view bookmarks on |
| on microSD | FOMA terminal handset |
| Memory Cards | again, press cure twice. |

2 Select folder, press •, select bookmark and press •.

- To check URL of bookmark, select bookmark and press 3. To copy URL of bookmark, press 5. [Copy] while checking URL.
- To disconnect, press i [Cancel] while connected (flashes).

Note

- Bookmarks are listed in the order of use.
- Full Browser bookmarks do not appear on Bookmark list of i-mode in the FOMA terminal handset.
 i-mode and Full Browser bookmarks are shown together in the bookmark list of microSD Memory Cards. A appears for i-mode bookmarks and A appears for Full Browser bookmarks.
- Paste the copied URL into text areas such as mail or text memo.

Attaching Bookmark to i-mode Mail <Attach to Mail>

In bookmark folder list (
P. 195), select folder and press
.

Select bookmark and press 65 [Attach to mail].

Compose and send i-mode mail.

• Refer to step 2 to 4 on P. 220 for details.

Note

 If the other party's terminal does not support attachment, attached files are deleted.

Managing Folders

Manage bookmarks in up to 20 folders (including Bookmark folder).

Edit folder names or delete folders. (The preset Bookmark folder cannot be edited or deleted.)

Creating folders <New folder>

In bookmark folder list (P. 195), press 1 1 [New folder].

Enter folder name, and press (•).

• Press CLR for 1+ seconds to delete New folder name

Editing folder names <Edit folder name>

In bookmark folder list (P. 195), select folder and press **(a)** (1) (2) [Edit folder name].

Edit folder name, and press (•).

- Enter up to 18 single-byte (9 double-byte) characters.
- Press CLR for 1+ seconds to delete folder name.

Deleting folders <Delete>

In bookmark folder list (12 P. 195). select folder and press 2 [Delete].

Select deletion method.

| To delete one folder | $\begin{array}{c} \textcircled{1} \rightarrow \text{enter terminal} \\ \text{security code} \rightarrow \textcircled{\bullet} \rightarrow \textbf{Yes} \\ \rightarrow \textcircled{\bullet} \end{array}$ |
|--|--|
| To delete folders collectively | ② → enter terminal security code → ■ → select folder ■ (repeatable) → ■ → Yes → ■ Press ■ [SelAll] or ■ [ClrAll] to select or disable all. |
| To delete all bookmarks inside and outside folders (keep folders) | $ \begin{array}{c} \textcircled{3} \rightarrow \text{enter terminal} \\ \text{security code} \rightarrow \textcircled{\bullet} \rightarrow \emph{Yes} \\ \rightarrow \textcircled{\bullet} \end{array} $ |

Managing Bookmarks

Changing bookmark titles <Edit title>

- In bookmark folder list (P. 195), select folder and press .
- Select bookmark and press 1 [Edit title].

i-mode/i-motion/i-Channel 196

Edit title and press .

- Enter up to 24 single-byte (12 double-byte) characters
- Press CLR for 1+ seconds to erase current title.

Moving bookmark to another folder

<Move>

- In bookmark folder list (12 P. 195), select folder and press .
- Select bookmark and press [Move].

Select a transfer method.

| To move one bookmark | $\textcircled{1} \rightarrow \text{select folder} \rightarrow \textcircled{\bullet}$ |
|---|--|
| To move all bookmarks in the folder | $\textcircled{2} \rightarrow \text{select folder} \rightarrow \blacksquare$ |
| To move bookmarks collectively | 3 → select bookmark ■ (repeatable) → (a) → select folder → ■ Press (a) [SelAll] or (a) [ClrAll] to select or disable all. |

Deleting bookmarks <Delete>

- In bookmark folder list (P. 195), select folder and press .
- Select bookmark, and press 2 [Delete].

Select deletion method.

| To delete one bookmark | $1 \rightarrow Yes \rightarrow \blacksquare$ |
|--|---|
| To delete all bookmarks in the folder | $ \begin{array}{c} \textcircled{2} \rightarrow \text{enter terminal} \\ \text{security code} \rightarrow \textcircled{\bullet} \rightarrow \textcircled{Yes} \\ \rightarrow \textcircled{\bullet} \end{array} $ |
| To delete bookmarks collectively | 3 → select bookmark • (repeatable) → Ø → Yes → • Press • [SelAll] or • [ClrAll] to select or disable all. |

Screen Memo Saving Site Contents

Use screen memo to save screens from sites and Internet web pages.

- Save screen memo images in My picture of Data box and set as stand-by. (CPP. 126)
- Save up to 400 screen memos. Amount varies depending on size of the data. When screen memo data is large, fewer can be saved.
- Protect up to the maximum amount of data that can be saved. Protected screen memos are not deleted even when Delete all is performed.

While viewing sites (12777 steps 1 to 3 on P. 188) or Internet web pages (12777 steps 1 and 2 on P. 194), press (12778 and 2 on P. 194), press

 Up to 24 single-byte (12 double-byte) characters of the title is saved. When title is not entered, No title appears.

Save.

| To save | Select $OK \rightarrow \blacksquare$ |
|------------------------------|---|
| To change the title and save | Select <i>Edit title</i> → ● → edit title → ● ● Enter up to 24 single-byte (12 double-byte) characters. |

Note

- In sites or Internet web pages, even if a selection is made in a radio button, check box, pull-down menu or text is entered in text boxes, the selected or entered contents are not saved in the screen memo.
- When a screen memo is saved, if the maximum saved entries (400 entries) are reached or the available memory space is smaller than the maximum space for one entry (100 KB), a message appears notifying that the screen memo overwrites the other.

Viewing Screen Memos

In stand-by, press **1**5.



Screen memo list

Meaning of screen memo icons

| (screen memo) | Standard screen memo. |
|-----------------|--|
| 🕞 (screen memo) | Protected screen memo. |
| (screen memo) | FOMA card restriction (P. 36) is set. |

Select screen memo and press .

| To scroll up/down | Down: 😱 Up: 🗂 |
|-----------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| To scroll one screen at a time | Down: ⊡ [Page] Up: ⊠ [Page] |
| To view other screen memos | Next: Previous: |
| To view screen memo list again | [List] |

Note

• Screen memo is data from the time of saving. Screen memo may differ from the latest site or Internet web page data.

Related Operations

Check screen memo URLs <URL>

In screen memo display screen, press 261.

- From screen memo list: Select screen memo
 4.
- To copy URLs: When viewing the URL, press .

Check screen memo details <File property>

- In screen memo display screen, press @ 6 ②. ● From screen memo list: Select screen memo ►
- To end viewing: Press or □.

Save screen memo image in My picture of Data box <Save image>

In screen memo display screen, press 🗃 (4 1).

• To save background image: Press
42.

Create i-mode mail with screen memo URL <Compose message>

In screen memo display screen, press

Create i-mode mail with image from screen memo <New mail w/image>

In screen memo display screen, press 🗃 5 2

▶ • ▶ 1 [Insert URL] or 2 [Attach image]. Add phone numbers and mail addresses from

screen memo to phonebook <Add to phonebooks

In screen memo display screen, press 🗃 (4) (3).

Adjust Flash movie sound effect volume in screen memo <Sound fx setting>

- In screen memo display screen, press @66
- (louder) or (softer) •.
 Replay Flash movies in screen memo <Retry>
 - In screen memo display screen, press @65.

Note (Related operations)

Refer to P. 198 for details on saving image. Composing new mail with image

- Files with restrictions for mail attachment and output from the FOMA terminal are not sent.
- Refer to P. 202 for details on compose new mail with image.

Refer to "Saving Phone Numbers and Mail Addresses in the Phonebook" on P. 192 for details on Adding to the phonebook.

Managing Screen Memos

Protect or delete screen memos and edit titles.

Changing screen memo titles <Edit title>

- In screen memo list (127 P. 197), select screen memo and press 2 [Edit title].
- In the screen memo display screen, press
 2.

Edit title and press .

- Enter up to 24 single-byte (12 double-byte) characters.
- Press CLR for 1+ seconds to erase current title.

Protecting screen memos <Protect set>

• 🗟 appears for protected screen memos.

In screen memo list (P P. 197), select screen memo and press 3 [Protect set].

In the screen memo display screen, press
 3.

Select ON or OFF.

| To protect | 1 |
|------------|---|
| To disable | 2 |

Deleting screen memos <Delete>

- In screen memo list (2 P. 197), select screen memo and press 1 [Delete].
 - In the screen memo display screen, press
 1.

Select deletion method.

| To delete one screen memo | $1 \rightarrow Yes \rightarrow \blacksquare$ |
|---|---|
| To delete all screen memos* | $ \begin{array}{c} \textcircled{2} \rightarrow \text{enter terminal security} \\ \text{code} \rightarrow \textcircled{\bullet} \rightarrow \textbf{Yes} \rightarrow \textcircled{\bullet} \end{array} $ |
| To delete screen memos collectively | 3 → select screen memo • (repeatable) → ⓑ → Yes → • Press i [SelAll] or i [CIrAll] to select or disable all. |

* Protected entries are not deleted.

Save Image

Downloading Images from Sites and Messages

Save images, Flash movies, frames and stamps downloaded from sites, Internet web pages, and Message R/F. Set saved images as stand-by and for other functions. ((27 P. 126) Also, download Deco-mail templates to use when composing messages.

- Save the retrieved image in the *i-mode, Item* or *Decomail picture* folder or in a created folder in My picture of Data box. Available folder differs depending on the type and size of the image. Deco-mail templates are saved in *Template* of the Mail menu. (ITP . 225)
- JPEG/GIF images and animated GIFs that are 20 x20 pixels without file restrictions are saved as Deco-mail pictographs in the *Deco-mail pict* folder.
- Save up to 1,000 images on FOMA terminal handset. Saved amount may vary depending on available memory.

- Save up to 100 KB of GIF images, JPEG images and SWF images (Flash).
- Still pictures that are restricted for output to non-FOMA terminal devices can directly be saved to a microSD Memory Card. (Contents transfer compatible)

Example: When saving from sites and Internet web pages

While viewing sites (127 steps 1 to 3 on P. 188) or Internet web pages (127 steps 1 and 2 on P. 194), press 32 [Save image].

Select image, press , select folder and press .

3 Select Yes, press **•**, select screen to set and press **•**.

 Available settings depend on the file format. Unavailable settings cannot be selected.

The right screen



appears when setting the image as the stand-by display. Select **Yes** and press •.

Note

- Saved Flash movies may play differently from when on a site or Internet web page.
- Depending on the size, some downloaded pictures may not fully appear when set as stand-by, etc.

Related Operations

Download Deco-mail templates and compose Deco-mail

- 1 While viewing sites or Internet web pages, select Deco-mail template ▶ .
- 2 Press 2 [Save].
 - To preview: Press 1.
 - To not save: Press 4.
- 3 Press ③ [Compose message] ▶ compose message.

Save background images from sites or screen memos <Save background image>

- 1 While viewing sites or Internet web pages, press @33.
- 2 Select folder ▶ •.

Related Operations

Note (Related operations)

Deco-mail template

- If templates are not saved, Compose message cannot be selected.
- Templates cannot be saved if memory space is insufficient. Delete unnecessary templates and increase available memory space to save.
 (CP P. 226)

i-melody

Downloading i-melody from Sites

Save melodies downloaded from sites and Internet web pages. Save up to 500 i-melodies. (Capacity varies depending on size of melody.)

Set the saved melody as the ring tone or attach to i-mode mail.

- Save up to 100 KB of SMF files and MFi files.
- Melodies that are restricted for output to non-FOMA terminal devices can directly be saved to a microSD Memory Card. (Contents transfer compatible)

While viewing sites (127 steps 1 to 3 on P. 188) or Internet web pages (127 steps 1 and 2 on P. 194), select melody and press .

Save.

| To play back melodies | To stop playback, press To stop playback, press or ere. Melody is played at the same volume as phone ring tone (FP P. 119). When phone ring tone is set to <i>Silent</i> or <i>Step</i>, melody is played at <i>Volume</i> 1 |
|---|---|
| To save melodies | $\textcircled{2} \rightarrow \textit{phone/microSD} \rightarrow \textcircled{1}$ |
| To not save | 3 |
| When 500 melody files are already saved | Select melody icon for melody to overwrite \rightarrow • \rightarrow Yes \rightarrow • |

Note

Transfer and store saved i-melody data on a PC using microSD Memory Card (P. 316).

 Saved content may be lost due to malfunctions, repairs or other handling of the FOMA terminal.
 DoCoMo shall not be liable for any loss of content.
 (Melodies with restrictions for i-mode mail attachment or output from the FOMA terminal are not sent.)

Download PDF

Downloading PDF Files from Sites

View and save PDF files downloaded from sites and Internet web pages.

- Download is available up to 2 MB of PDF files. Files larger than 2 MB cannot be downloaded. Also, some downloaded PDF files may not be displayed.
- When downloading PDF files that are larger than 500 KB, a confirmation screen asking Content length exceeds 500KB. Download? appears.
- Save up to 50 PDF files on the FOMA terminal handset. (The number of files that can be saved varies depending on the size of PDF files.)
- PDF files with unknown file size cannot be downloaded.
- Downloaded PDF files are saved to the *\PRIVATE\DOCOMO\DOCUMENT\PUDxxx* folder when saved to microSD Memory Card. ("xxx" in the file name is a three-digit single-byte number between 001 and 999) (IPP P. 318)

While viewing sites (1277) steps 1 to 3 on P. 188) or Internet web pages (1277) steps 1 and 2 on P. 194), select a PDF file and press .

| | ~時間がない朝、ちゃんと 朝日ルゼ~~ 1492/05/95 1595/11-16(1598) 1595/11-1598 1597/11-1597/11-1598 1597/11-1597/11-1597/11-1 |
|--|---|
| Split download PDF files | When the first page is downloaded, PDF viewer is activated and the PDF file appears. Download continues for remaining pages. Use links to move to other pages. When Continue downloading following pages? appears, select Yes and press . |
| PDF files that must be saved first | Download and save? → Yes → Download the entire PDF file to view. Proceed to step 3. |

- m appears for PDF downloaded in its entirety, appears for portions such as pages and appears for files that could not be downloaded.
- If download fails, download the PDF file again to view. Some files may not be displayed even when downloaded again.
- PDF files downloaded by an individual page cannot be saved to microSD Memory Card.

Press D: 2 [Save] when download is completed.

Save.

| To save to FOMA terminal handset | Select folder \rightarrow • |
|--|--|
| To save to microSD Memory Card | Select →microSD → select folder → ● Insert microSD Memory Card in advance. PDF files with file restriction cannot be saved to microSD Memory Card. |

- When saving is completed, the PDF file appears.
- If available space on the FOMA terminal handset is insufficient, delete unnecessary files and increase memory space to save.

Note

 When the number of bookmarks or marks exceeds ten, 10 bookmarks exceeded. Delete? or 10 marks exceeded. Delete? appears. After deleting bookmarks or marks, PDF files are saved or closed.

Kisekae Tool

Downloading Kisekae Tool

Save Kisekae Tool downloaded from sites and Internet web pages.

- Save up to 50 Kisekae Tool on the FOMA terminal handset.
- Downloaded Kisekae Tool is saved to *i-mode* folder in Kisekae Tool of Data box or *Movable contents* folder in microSD Memory Card.

While viewing sites (1277) steps 1 to 3 on P. 188) or Internet web pages (1277) steps 1 and 2 on P. 194), select a Kisekae Tool and press .

Save.

| To check Kisekae Tool | 1 |
|--------------------------|---|
| To save Kisekae Tool | $2 \rightarrow phone/microSD \rightarrow \bullet$ |
| To not save | 3 |

Download Icons Collectively

Downloading Icons from Sites Collectively

Download and save nine Top menu icons and one background image collectively from sites while i- α ppli is running. Apply saved images to Personalize menu ($\square P$ 135).

 Software compatible with collectively downloaded icons and background images can be downloaded from the SH-MODE site in ilvenu.



iMenu → メニュー / 検索

QR code to connect to SH-MODE

(Menu/Search) → 旨ケータイ電 話メーカー (Mobile phone manufacturer) → SH-MODE

SH-MODE is only available in Japanese.

While i-αppli compatible with collectively downloaded icons is running, select a set of icons and press •.

Save.

| To save | Select $Yes \rightarrow$ select folder \rightarrow • |
|-------------------|---|
| To not save | Select $No \rightarrow \blacksquare$ |
| To check image | Select <i>Chk img</i> → • Press • and the previous screen reappears. |

Download Dictionary

Downloading Dictionaries from Sites

Download dictionaries from sites or Internet web pages to register in the FOMA terminal.

- Save up to ten Download dictionary files. (Up to five can be used.)
- Save Downloaded dictionaries of up to 6 KB.
- Download dictionaries from the *SH-MODE* site in iMenu.

iMenu → メニュー / 検索 (Menu/Search) → 旨ケータイ電 話メーカー (Mobile phone manufacturer) → *SH-MODE* SH-MODE is only available in Japanese.



QR code to connect to SH-MODE

While viewing sites (127) steps 1 to 3 on P. 188) or Internet web pages (127) steps 1 and 2 on P. 194), select Download dictionary and press .



) s

Save.

| To display Download dictionary | 1 |
|---------------------------------------|---|
| To save Download dictionary | ② → select slot → ● When slot selected is already in use, a confirmation message to overwrite slot appears. Select Yes and press ●. |
| To not save Download dictionary | 3 |



Set dictionary.

| To use Download dictionary | Select Yes \rightarrow • |
|--------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| To not use Download dictionary | Select $No \rightarrow \blacksquare$ |

 When five dictionaries are already in use, the confirmation screen does not appear. Clear dictionary currently in use and try again. Refer to steps 1 and 2 of "Setting/Clearing a Dictionary" on P. 409 for details.

Download Chara-den

Downloading Chara-den from Sites

Download and save Chara-den from sites or Internet web pages.

- Download Chara-den up to 100 KB.
- Save up to 50 Chara-den files. (The amount depends on available memory.)
- Files are saved to the *i-mode* folder in Chara-den of Data box.
- Default Chara-den can be downloaded from the SH-MODE site in iMenu.
 iMenu → メニュー/検察 (Menu/Search) → 旨ケータイ電 話メーカー (Mobile phone manufacturer) → SH-MODE SH-MODE is only available in Japanese.



QR code to connect to SH-MODE

While viewing sites (B steps 1 to 3 on P. 188) or Internet web pages (B steps 1 and 2 on P. 194), select Chara-den and press •.

Save.

| To display data | Chara-den player appears. |
|------------------|---|
| To save data | 2 |
| To not save data | 3 |

Download ToruCa

Downloading ToruCa from Sites

While viewing sites (1) steps 1 to 3 on P. 188) or Internet web pages (1) steps 1 and 2 on P. 194), select ToruCa and press .

 Download ToruCa up to 1 KB and ToruCa (details) up to 100 KB.

Save.

| To save ToruCa | Select Yes →● |
|------------------------------|---------------------------|
| To not save ToruCa | Select <i>No</i> → ■ |
| To display preview screen | Select <i>Preview</i> → ■ |

Phone To (AV Phone To)/Mail To/Web To Function

Using Phone To (AV Phone To)/Mail To/Web To

Use highlighted data (phone numbers, mail addresses, URLs, etc.) in sites, Internet web pages, Message R/F or mail and conveniently make a voice/Videophone call, send mail, or access an Internet web page.

- Phone To (AV Phone To)/Mail To/Web To may not be used with decorated mail received from a PC.
- Use the address link function to access a map site or start the application for navigation from URLs on sites, Internet web pages and ToruCa. (127 P. 288)

Using Phone To (AV Phone To)

Make voice/Videophone calls and send PushTalk transmissions to phone numbers in sites, Internet web pages, Message R/F, mail or ToruCa.

- Not available for some sites and Internet web pages.
- Calls cannot be made using Phone To (AV Phone To) while Keypad dial lock is set.
 - While viewing sites (27 steps 1 to 3 on P. 188), Internet web pages (27 steps 1 and 2 on P. 194), Message R/F (27 P. 207), mail (27 P. 234) or ToruCa (27 P. 271), press •, select Yes and press •.

Make a call.

| Voice call | s or |
|------------|------------|
| Videophone | |
| PushTalk | 🖾 or 🖻 (🗗 |

• When phone number is saved in the phonebook, the name and phone number appear.

Note

- Some sites and Internet web pages show highlighted text linked to the phone number in place of a phone number.
- When a number string fulfilling the following conditions appears in a mail message, the string is recognized as a phone number and Phone To (AV Phone To) is available.
 - 10 to 26 digit numbers (including *0* or +) that start with *0* or +
 - 5 to 26 digit numbers (including # or ¥) that start with # or ¥
 - 3 to 26 digit numbers that start with *tel:* or *TEL*:
 - 3 to 26 digit numbers that start with *tel-av*: or *TEL-AV*: (Videophone)
 Even if the above numbers contain a hyphen (-) or parenthesis (()), string is recognized as a phone

number. (If these symbols repeat continuously, number string before the repeating symbols are recognized as a phone number.)

Using Mail To

Send i-mode mail to mail addresses in sites, Internet web pages, Message R/F, mail or ToruCa.

- Not available for some sites and Internet web pages.
- Some sites and Internet web pages show highlighted text linked to the mail address in place of a mail address.
- Mail To may not be available if two or more mail addresses appear together.
- Up to 50 single-byte character mail addresses are valid. Portions of addresses exceeding 51 characters are deleted after the fiftieth character.
- i-mode mail cannot be sent using Mail To while Keypad dial lock is set.

Select mail address while viewing sites ((27) steps 1 to 3 on P. 188) or Internet web pages ((27) steps 1 and 2 on P. 194), Message R/F ((27) P. 207), mail ((27) P. 234) or ToruCa ((27) P. 271) and press (1).

- Compose message screen appears. The selected mail address is entered.
- Subject and message may be entered if mail address is from a site or Internet web page.

Compose and send i-mode mail.

• Refer to steps 2 to 4 on P. 220 for details.

Creating Image Mail

Create i-mode mail with URLs of images or image attachments in sites and Internet web pages.

- Send GIF or JPEG images. Flash movies cannot be sent.
- Files with restrictions for mail attachment and output from the FOMA terminal are not sent.
 - While viewing sites (☞ steps 1 to 3 on P. 188) or Internet web pages
 (☞ steps 1 and 2 on P. 194), press
 (▲ 2 [New mail w/image].

Select image, press
and select a mail creation method.

| Co | mpose | message | |
|----|--------|---------|--|
| 1 | Insert | | |
| 2 | Attach | i mage | |

To create i-mode mail with URL1To create i-mode mail with image
attachment $2 \rightarrow \bullet$

- A confirmation screen appears for images with the location information added. Select **Yes** and press
 to attach the location URL in a mail message.
- Location URL is a URL of a site providing maps and peripheral area information with the addition of location information (longitude and latitude), geographical coordinate system* and accuracy.
- * Geographical coordinate system is a standard for expressing the position on the earth as longitude and latitude.

Compose and send i-mode mail.

• Refer to steps 2 to 4 on P. 220 for details.

Using i-appli To

Start i-appli from URLs in sites, Internet web pages, mail or screen memos.

- Start i-αppli when i-αppli To settings are set to Yes.
- i-αppli does not start with URLs which exceed 512 single-byte characters.
 - While viewing sites (☞ steps 1 to 3 on P. 188) or Internet web pages (☞ steps 1 and 2 on P. 194), mail (☞ P. 234) or screen memo (☞ P. 197), select i-αppli address (URL), press ■, select Yes and press ■.
 - i-αppli starts.

Using Web To

Connect with i-mode and view Internet web pages from URLs in sites, Internet web pages, Message R/F, mail or ToruCa. For i-mode mail, connecting with Full Browser is available.

- Not available for some sites and Internet web pages.
- Save still picture when still picture URL is included in mail message.
- Download i-motion when i-motion URL is included in mail message.
- Internet web pages with URLs which exceed 2,048 single-byte characters cannot be viewed.
- Some sites and Internet web pages show the highlighted web page name in place of a URL.

While viewing sites (127 steps 1 to 3 on P. 188) or Internet web pages (127 steps 1 and 2 on P. 194), Message R/F (127 P. 207), mail (127 P. 234) or ToruCa (127 P. 271), select address (URL) and press •.

- Subsequent steps are the same as for i-mode Internet access. (PP. 193)
- When selecting from ToruCa, perform the operation above, select Yes and press .

Using Web To while viewing i-mode mail

When URL is selected from mail message, select whether to use i-mode or Full Browser.

Select address (URL) in i-mode mail message, press and select connection method.

| To connect using i-mode | Ĩ |
|-------------------------------|---|
| To connect using Full Browser | 8 |

Related Operations

Save a still picture from URL in mail message <Save image>

Select URL) •) • • • • • select folder) • .

Note (Related operations)

The still picture is saved in the *i-mode* or *Decomail picture* folder or a created folder in My picture of Data box.

Setting i-mode

Set various functions relating to i-mode access.

Adjusting Flash Movie Sound Effects Volume <Sound Fx Setting>

Default setting Volume 5

Adjust volume of Flash movie sound effects.

- Sound effects are not active in Manner mode.
- Some Flash movies do not have sound effects.
 - While viewing sites (☞ steps 1 to 3 on P. 188) or Internet web pages
 (☞ steps 1 and 2 on P. 194), press
 ⑦ 5 [Sound fx setting].
 - Alternatively, press 3737 in stand-by.
 - Press () (louder) or () (softer) to adjust and press ().
 - To silence sound effects, select *Silent* and press .

Setting Connection Timeout <Connection Timeout>

Default setting 60 seconds

When sites or Internet web pages are congested, set the duration for the terminal to automatically stop attempting to send/receive data. Select among **60 seconds**, **90 seconds** and **Unlimited**.

In stand-by, press **1**711 and select connection timeout period.

| 60 seconds | 1 |
|------------|---|
| 90 seconds | 2 |
| Unlimited | Disconnection time with i-mode center is not set. (Disconnection may occur due to signal status.) |

Note

• When connection times out, *Time out* appears and the previous screen reappears.

Changing Hosts from i-mode (ISP Connection Transmission) <i-mode Host Selection>

Settings do not need to be changed to use i-mode.

ISP connection transmission

When changing FOMA terminal host, connect to various providers (ISP). Subscription to Packet Transmission Service is required to use ISP connection transmission. Packet transmission charges apply for ISP connection transmission.

Subscription is not required for i-mode subscribers.

 Pake-Houdai does not apply to packet transmissions incurred for hosts other than DoCoMo.

Provider agreements

- Subscription to another provider is required for ISP connection transmission. Contact providers for details regarding service contents (site/Internet access, mail, etc.) and subscription procedures.
- Some services may require a separate fee.
- Phone number and location information may be sent to the provider depending on the site.
- Save up to ten hosts in the FOMA terminal handset (excluding *i-mode (UIM)*).
- i-mode is not available when using hosts other than i-mode (UIM).

Saving hosts

Save up to ten hosts (excluding *i-mode (UIM)*).

In stand-by, press **1**712.

- Select the number to register to, press
 and
 [Edit].
- Enter terminal security code and press •.

Enter host name and press .

- Host appears when saving a new host. (The host number selected in step 2 appears for the .)
- Press CLR for 1+ seconds to erase host name.
- Enter up to 16 single-byte (8 double-byte) characters.
- Enter host number and press .
 - Enter up to 99 single-byte alphanumeric characters and symbols.

Enter host address and press .

• Enter up to 30 single-byte alphanumeric characters and symbols.

Enter host address for i-Channel and press •.

• Enter up to 30 single-byte alphanumeric characters and symbols.

Changing hosts

Save hosts in advance in order to access.

In stand-by, press **1**712.

Select the host number, press and [Set].

When *i-mode (UIM)* is selected and
 is pressed, *i-mode (UIM) selected* appears and the host is changed.

Note

- Settings do not need to be changed to use i-mode.
- Default connection information cannot be changed.

Related Operations

Reset saved contents <Reset>

Note (Related operations)

When hosts are reset, host is set to *i-mode (UIM)*.

Setting to Use Terminal Data During Flash Playback <Use Phone Info>

Default setting Yes

In stand-by, press **1**736 and **1**[Yes].

Not Viewing Images <Set Image Display>

Default setting ON (display)

Set handset to not show images from screen memo or images from sites, Internet web pages or Message R/F.

In stand-by, press **1**731 and **2** [OFF].

Alternatively, press <a>[7] 6 while a site is shown.

- When set to OFF, D appears in the place of images. Image is not saved even when D is registered in the screen memo. (IPP P. 196)
- When set to OFF, Flash movies are not shown.

 Even when set to OFF, images in i-mode mail and Message R/F are shown.

Setting to Receive/Reject PushTalk Transmissions During i-mode Transmissions <i-mode Arrival Act>

Default setting PushTalk preferred

In stand-by, press **1**74 and set priority.

| To prioritize PushTalk | 1 |
|------------------------|---|
| To prioritize i-mode | 2 |

Resetting i-mode Settings <Reset i-mode>

Reset i-mode settings to default settings. Default settings are as follows.

| | Setting it | tem | Default setting |
|--------------------|------------------------------------|---------------------|---|
| Shared | Connection timeout | | 60 seconds |
| | Host selection | | i-mode (UIM) |
| Internet | Set image display | | ON |
| | Font size | | Normal |
| | Certificates | | Valid: Root certificates 1 and 2, Client certificate and CA certificates |
| | i-motion setting | Automatic replay | Yes |
| | | i-motion type | Standard type |
| | Secure setting | DoCoMo CA Host | DoCoMo |
| | Use phone info Sound fx setting | | Yes |
| | | | Volume 5 |
| i-mode arrival act | | PushTalk preferred | |

In stand-by, press 175, enter terminal security code and press (...).

Select Yes and press .

Message R/F

Message R/F

Subscribe to sites which provide Message Service to automatically receive information (messages). Message Service uses Message R (Request) and Message F (Free).

- Refer to "Receiving Message R/F" on P. 205 for details on receiving Message R/F.
- Message R/F is held at i-mode center while the handset is outside the service area, in Self mode or turned off.
- Enter the four-digit number for i-mode password. (CTP. 146)

Message R (Request)

Service to automatically receive message from a site which provides Message Service.

Message F (Free)

Message is received with no packet charge.

Setting Message F (Free)

Select *iMenu* → 料金&お申込・設定 (Charges & Subscription, Settings) → オプション設定 (Options) → メッセージF設定 (Message F) → 受 信する (Receive), enter i-mode password and press 決定 (OK).

Receive Message R/F

Receiving Message R/F

Message R/F is automatically received from the i-mode center when the FOMA terminal is in the service area.

- Save up to 50 messages each in the FOMA terminal. (Capacity varies depending on size of message.)
- Message R/F is held at i-mode center when one of the following occurs.
 - Handset is turned off
 - While in Self mode While connected to FirstPass center
 - Outside the service area
 - Using Videophone
 - PushTalk in progress
 - While Omakase lock is set
- When there is no available space due to protected or unread

During Ir exchange

- Message R/F
- During iC transmission

- When FOMA terminal received Message R/F is full. check the unread message (P. 207), disable Message R/F protection (P. 208), and delete the unnecessary Message R/F (IP P. 208). To check messages held at i-mode center, perform Check new message (127 P. 207).
- If memory is full, oldest read unprotected Message R/F is overwritten automatically. Protect Message R/F to prevent overwriting. (P. 208)

Note

 Message ring tone does not sound if a message is received while a call is in progress, i-αppli is running, the camera is being activated, the handset is being positioned by GPS or pattern definitions are being updated.

Meaning of icons

| lcon | Meaning |
|-------------------------|---|
| R I/F (green) | Unread Message R/F. |
| RI/F (yellow) | FOMA terminal received Message R/F is full. |
| R/F | Message R/F is held at center. |
| R/F | Center is full. |
| r/E | Unread Message R/F. Message R/F is held at center. |
| r/e | Unread Message R/F. Center is full. |
| R)/Ē | FOMA terminal received Message R/F is full. Message R/F is held at center. |
| r/F | FOMA terminal received Message R/F is full. Center is full. |

R (green) R (yellow) 配配配面面:Request F (green) F (yellow) 配合百百百百百 : Free

- R/E, R/E, R/E, R/E, R/E or R/E may not appear even when Message R/F is held at the i-mode center.
- Message R/F at i-mode center may be overwritten when R/F, R/F or R/F appears.

Opening New Message R/F

When Message R/F is received, the newest one appears automatically.

Message does not appear when Auto message display is set to **No auto display**.

 Set types of messages for Auto message display or priority of received messages.

Message R/F is automatically received.

- R (green) flashes when receiving Message R, and F (green) flashes when receiving Message F.
- After reception, receive results appear and message ring tone sounds (R (green)/F (green) appears).

| To check | In received results screen, select |
|----------------------|--|
| Message R/F | MessageR or MessageF $\rightarrow \blacksquare$ |
| contents | \rightarrow select Message R or |
| immediately | Message F $\rightarrow \blacksquare$ |
| To stop ring tone | Ring tone stops and receive results screen disappears. Press (*) to keep screen but stop ring tone. |

Message R/F appears for approximately 15 seconds and the stand-by display reappears (when set to automatically display).

• To continue viewing the message, press : and scroll while viewing Message R/F.

Automatically Displaying Message R/F <Auto Message Display>

Default setting Msg R preferred

Set priority and message types.

| In stand-by, press ⊠ 🥑 🗇 and |
|------------------------------|
| select display method. |

| To prioritize Msg R | 1 | When unread Message R and Message F are received simultaneously, Message R appears. |
|------------------------|---|--|
| To prioritize Msg F | 2 | When unread Message R and Message F are received simultaneously, Message F appears. |
| MessagesR only | 3 | Only unread Message R appears. |
| MessagesF only | 4 | Only unread Message F appears. |
| No auto display | 5 | No messages appear automatically. |

- When Auto display is set, newest unread message appears for approximately 15 seconds in the following situation.
 - Returning to stand-by from receive results screen
- Message does not automatically appear regardless of Auto message display settings in the following situations.
 - While All lock is set While Omakase lock is set
 - While Mail Function lock is set

Check New Messages

Checking for New Message R/F

Received Message R/F are held at the i-mode center while the handset is outside the service area, in Self mode or turned off (P P. 205). Check and retrieve mail from the i-mode center.

- Set types for Check new message (i-mode mail, Message R/F). (P. 243)
- When Receive option setting is set to ON, i-mode mail and Message R/F are received.
- All types are enabled as default setting.
- Refer to P. 247 for details on checking for SMS.

In stand-by, press ∎4 or ⊠61.

- Check new message (I → P. 243) is performed in accordance with settings from *i-mode mail* → *MessageR* → *MessageF*.

(Icons (\Box , \mathbb{R} (green), and \mathbb{F} (green)) appear for each type checked.)

- To abort receiving mail, press while receiving.
- Aborted Message R/F are held at i-mode center (
 (blue)/
 (blue) appears).
- Message R/F may be received depending on timing.

2 Message R/F ring tone sounds when new messages are received.

- **0** appears when no Message R/F are held at center.
- When i-mode mail and Message R/F are received simultaneously, ring tone set for the last mail or Message R/F received sounds.
- To stop, press C.R. Other keys also stop ring tone. (CP P. 230)

In the receive results screen, select MessageR or MessageF and press .

- To not view immediately, perform no operations in the receive results screen for approximately 30 seconds, and the stand-by display reappears.
- Message R/F does not automatically appear when received by checking new messages.

Select Message R/F to view and press •.

View Message R/F

Viewing Messages R/F in Message Box

In stand-by, press <a>[2] and select Message R/F.

| To view Message R | $\textcircled{1} \rightarrow \text{select Message R} \rightarrow \textcircled{\bullet}$ |
|----------------------|---|
| To view Message F | ② → select Message F → • |

Messages List/Details Screen Layout

Messages list layout



┃ Unread/Read/Protected message icon 위/환 : Unread Message R/F

- R / E : Read Message R/F
- na/na : Read Message R/F (protected)
- 2 Message R/F list screen page number/total
- Melody/Image/ToruCa When melody/image/ToruCa is attached to the message, 2, 4 (blue)/3 (blue) or 2 appears.
- 4 Subject
- Message R/F subject appears. **5** Received date and time
 - Time for current day and date for other days.

Message details screen layout



- 1 Message type
- 2 Protected icon Appears when protected.
 - (@ appears for Message F.)
- 3 Message number
- 4 Received date and time
- 5 Subject
- 6 Message
- -END- appears at the end of the message.
- 7 Screen operation

| To scroll up/down | Down: 🕠 Up: 🖜 |
|--------------------------------|------------------|
| To scroll one screen at a time | Down: ₪ Up: ₪ |
| To view other messages | Next: Previous: |

- When a melody is attached, 2 and melody title appear above message.
- Melody plays automatically if Melody Auto replay is set to Auto replay.
- When an image is attached, image, attachment type icon and file name appear above message.

Related Operations

Add phone numbers and mail addresses from Message R/F to phonebook <Add to phonebook> In the message details screen, press 🖻 5.

Note (Related operations)

 Refer to "Saving Phone Numbers and Mail Addresses in the Phonebook" on P. 192 for subsequent steps.

Checking/Saving Attachments <View Attachment>

Check or save images and melodies attached to Message R/F. Attached files are saved in a selected save destination in each category.

In messages list (1 P. 207), select Message R/F, press
and
2 [View attachment].

Select attachment to check.

| To check | | |
|----------|--------|--|
| To save | image | $\fbox{\bullet} \rightarrow \textbf{Yes} \rightarrow \textcircled{\bullet} \rightarrow \textbf{select}$ folder $\rightarrow \textcircled{\bullet}$ |
| | | $\mathbf{i} \rightarrow \mathbf{Yes} \rightarrow \mathbf{I}$ |
| | ToruCa | |

Checking/Saving Inserted Images <View Image in Mail>

View or save GIF, JPEG and background images inserted in Message R/F message. Inserted files are saved in a selected save destination in each category.

In messages list (@ P. 207), select Message R/F, press • and @ 3 [View image in mail].

Select image to check.

| To check | |
|----------|--|
| To save | |

Note

• For attached images, check and save with View attachment.

Managing Message R/F

Protect and delete Message R/F to prevent overwriting.

Protecting Message R/F <Protect>

Message R/F can be protected, or protection can be canceled. Protected messages cannot be overwritten.

- When there is no available memory, same types of read messages are deleted starting with the oldest.
- Protect up to 25 of each type of message. (The number of protected messages depends on size.)
- Unread Message R/F cannot be protected.

In messages list (P P. 207) or message details screen (P 207), select Message R/F and press 1 [Protect].

Select ON or OFF.

| To protect | 1 |
|------------|---|
| To disable | 2 |

Deleting Message R/F <Delete>

In messages list (P. 207), select Message R/F, and press 2 [Delete].

 Press (4), select Yes and press (1) to delete from message details screen.

Select deletion method.

| To delete one | $1 \rightarrow \text{Yes} \rightarrow \blacksquare$ |
|--|--|
| To delete multiple ones collectively | ② → select Message R/F ■ (repeatable) → 🙆 → Yes → ■ Press is [SelAII] or is [CIrAII] to select or disable all. |
| To delete all | 3 → enter terminal security code → ■ → Yes → ■ Unread or protected Message R/F is not deleted. |

Setting SSL Certificates

Enabling/Disabling CA Certificates <Certificates>

Default setting All enabled

The following certificates are required to view SSL pages.

- CA certificate Certificate issued by a certification company that is registered in the FOMA terminal by default.
- DoCoMo certificate..... Certificate registered in FOMA card (green) required to connect to FirstPass center or FirstPass compatible sites.
- Client certificate......Certificate downloaded from FirstPass center by selecting the FirstPass center menu in the FOMA terminal (27 P. 209). The certificate is registered in FOMA card (green).

Detailed information of each certificate can be viewed. Disable CA certificate that develops security problems.

SSL pages using a disabled CA certificate cannot be viewed.

In stand-by, press (), 33, select a certificate and press (), Enable/Disable].

- 🗹 appears for enabled certificates. 🗌 appears for disabled ones.
- Enabled/Disabled switch.
- To show certificate details, select a certificate and press

 [Show].

Setting FirstPass <Cert Operation>

Client certificates are required to access FirstPass compatible sites and Internet web pages. Client certificate is a proof of FOMA contract. Request and download from FirstPass center. Register Client certificates in FOMA card (green) to access certificate compatible sites and Internet web pages.

- FOMA card (blue) is not available.
- The SSL client authentication from i-mode browser is not available with FOMA Data Plan. (Available with ISP connection transmission regardless of payment plan.)
- Set the correct date and time to access FirstPass center. (1277 P. 45)
- Some screens and operations for FirstPass center may change.
- FirstPass is not available overseas.

Note

Using FirstPass

- FirstPass is DoCoMo's electronic authentication service. Certificates are exchanged between sites and FOMA terminal. Certificates are then validated for client authentication.
- After reading and agreeing with "FirstPass ご利用規則" (Usage Rules), request Client certificate.
- PIN2 code is required to use Client certificate.
 (127 P. 150)
 After entering PIN2 code, all actions are presumed to be performed by the user. Keep FOMA card and PIN2 code private.
- If FOMA card is lost or stolen, contact "For General Inquiries" on the back of this manual and cancel Client certificate.
- DoCoMo shall not be liable for sites or information provided by FirstPass compatible sites. All problems must be resolved between user and site.
- Neither DoCoMo nor certification company guarantee security when using FirstPass or SSL. Use at own discretion.
- Packet transmission charges incurred from accessing a FirstPass compatible site with i-mode are included with Pake-Houdai.

Client authentication

 Server and client authentication allow for safer data transfer. Certificates are exchanged between sites and FOMA terminal. Certificates are then authenticated. Client authentication allows for safer data transmission.

Accessing FirstPass center

Perform Client certificate operations from FirstPass center. Some screens and operations for FirstPass center may change.



TRequest your certific

2Download your certif

30ther settings 4The usage regulation Japanese only)

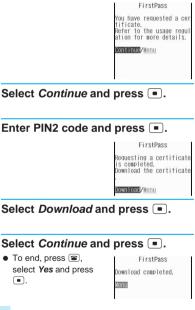
Note

- Read The usage regulation (Japanese only) in the screen of step 2 carefully before using FirstPass.
- Packet charges are not incurred when connecting to FirstPass center.
- The following functions are not available when accessing FirstPass center.
 - Sending/Receiving i-mode mail (SMS can be received/replied)
 - Check new message (Check new SMS)
 - Receiving Message R/F
 - Downloading i-motion
 - Web To
 - PushTalk

Applying for Client certificate and downloading

Apply for Client certificate before downloading.

Access FirstPass center (IP "Accessing FirstPass center" on P. 209), select *Request your certificate* and press •.



Note

 Always apply for Client certificate when renewing or attempting to get new certificate. Certificate cannot be downloaded without application.

Accessing sites with Client certificate

Access FirstPass compatible sites and Internet web pages using Client certificate.

- Refer to P. 209 for details on viewing Client certificates.
 - Site (B steps 1 to 3 on P. 188) or Internet web page (B steps 1 and 2 on P. 194) and view FirstPass compatible site.
 - To view server certificate while viewing site, press @ 72.

Select Yes, press
, enter PIN2
code and press
.

Note

- When access to a FirstPass compatible site or Internet web page is attempted without Client certificate, You have no certificate. Connect? appears. Select No to end SSL transmission. Try again after downloading certificate from FirstPass center.
- When Client certificate expires, Your certificate has expired. Connect? appears. Select No and the previous screen reappears. Try again after renewing certificate from FirstPass center.

Canceling Client certificates

Invalidate downloaded Client certificates.

Access FirstPass center (IP "Accessing FirstPass center" on P. 209), select Other settings, press •, select Revoke your certificate and press •.

Select Yes, press
, enter PIN2
code and press
.

Select *Continue*, press
, select *Continue* and press .

Select *Continue* and press .

- The certificate revocation is completed. appears.
- To end, press and press .

- FirstPass compatible sites cannot be viewed after cancellation.
- To reactivate a Client certificate, apply and download again.

Changing Certificate Issuer <DoCoMo CA Host>

Default setting DoCoMo

Set host when downloading Client certificate.

Setting does not normally need to be changed. In stand-by, press 17352. P Host Press 2 [Host]. To set DoCoMo as host: Press 1. Press (2) [Edit], enter terminal security code and press (•). • To reset, press 3, enter terminal security code and press . Default settings are restored. Enter host information and press • • Enter up to 99 single-byte alphanumeric characters and symbols. Enter host address and press (•). • Enter up to 100 single-byte alphanumeric characters and symbols.

i-motion

i-motion

i-motion refers to image, voice and music data. Download i-motion to FOMA terminal from i-motion sites and Internet web pages. Play downloaded i-motion immediately, or save them to FOMA terminal. Search for i-motion sites in Menu/Search.

- i-motion types include Standard type and Streaming type.
 - Standard type (up to 500 KB) These can be saved to FOMA terminal. There are two types.
 - Those played after downloading
 - Those played while downloading

Some Standard type i-motion cannot be saved.

- Streaming type (up to 2 MB) Streaming refers to simultaneous playback while downloading data. When playback is complete, the played data is discarded, and cannot be played again or saved to the FOMA terminal. Even if Automatic replay (EP. 213) is set to No, Streaming type i-motion are automatically played.
- The type of i-motion downloaded differs depending on site or Internet web page.

- Save up to 100 i-motion. (Capacity varies depending on size of i-motion.)
- i-motion downloaded from sites, which has restrictions for outputting from the FOMA terminal, can be moved to a microSD Memory Card. However, some i-motions cannot be moved depending on the download source site.

Ring tone and Receive display combinations

When i-motion is set as the ring tone and receive

display, the combinations and actions are as follows.

- Voice only i-motion (melodies with no video) are not available for Receive display.
- i-motion without voice are not available for ring tone.

| Type of ring tone | Type of receive display | Type of ring tone and receive display when received |
|---|---|---|
| Melody | JPEG image, GIF image, i-motion without voice, Flash movie | Ring tone: Melody Receive display: Set Receive display [*] |
| i-motion with image and voice | JPEG image, GIF image, i-motion (voice + image), i-motion without voice, Flash movie | Ring tone: i-motion with image and voice Receive display: i-motion with image and voice |
| Voice only i-motion (melodies with no | JPEG image, GIF image | Ring tone: Voice only i-motion (melodies with no video) Receive display: Set Receive display |
| video) | i-motion without voice, Flash movie | Ring tone: Voice only i-motion (melodies with no video) Receive display: Image set by default |
| No ring tone | JPEG image, GIF image, i-motion without voice, Flash movie | Ring tone: Silent Receive display: Set Receive display [*] |

Flash movie sound effects do not play.

- If i-motion with image and voice is set as the ring tone, the i-motion is automatically set as the Receive display. If a voice only i-motion (melodies with no video) is set, the Receive display is not changed and the set image appears.
- If i-motion with image and voice is set as the Receive display, the i-motion is automatically set as the ring tone. If an image only i-motion is set, the ring tone sounds in the following priority.
- Priority for ring tone is phonebook ring tone \rightarrow group ring tone \rightarrow regular ring tone.
- The priority for Receive display is phonebook Picture call → group Picture call → Call/Receive display. If none are set, the default image appears.

Note

- When V.phone ring tone, Payphone ring tone, User unset, Unknown tone are set to Phone ring tone, the actions are as follows.
 - Receive display returns to the default setting if a melody or a voice only i-motion (melodies with no video) is set for ring tone.
 - Ring tone is set to 着信音1 if JPEG image, GIF image, animated GIF, Flash movie or an image only i-motion is set for Receive display.
 - Receive display follows Incoming voice calls screen.
- Some i-motion are not available.

Download i-motion Downloading i-motion from Sites

Playing i-motion Downloaded from Sites

Play back i-motion downloaded from sites and Internet web pages.

While viewing sites (12777 steps 1 to 3 on P. 188) or Internet web pages (127777 steps 1 and 2 on P. 194), select i-motion and press •.

| Streaming | g type | Select Yes → ● i-motion is played back while downloading. |
|------------------|------------------------------|---|
| Standard type | Automatic replay [Yes] | After i-motion download is complete, playback begins. |
| | Automatic replay [No] | Screens such as the play/ save selection screen appear. Press ① to play, ② to save, and ③ to show properties. • When i-motion is not saved and ④ [Back] is pressed, Save this <i>i-motion?</i> appears. Select Yes and press ■ to save. |

- To cancel download, press CLR or
 while downloading.
- To stop playback, press
- To pause, press

 [Pause] during playback.

Note

- Some i-motion cannot be played while downloading.
- While set to Standard type, if Streaming type i-motion download is attempted, Invalid content. Change i-motion type for replay. Change setting? appears. Select Yes to change i-motion type and enable download.
- For i-motion that plays during download, when unable to play due to weak signal, play after downloading is completed.

Note

- Weak signals may stop playback or distort the image during i-motion download.
- Date and time information on FOMA terminal may be reset after the battery pack has been removed for a long time. In such cases, playback for i-motion with an expiration date or replay period is not available.
- Some i-motion may not play properly after being downloaded.
- i-motion can be set as Chaku-motion (IPP. 116) or as the stand-by display (IPP. 126). (Some i-motion are not available.)

i-motion with a replay period

When playback is attempted for downloaded i-motion with a replay period, the screen on the right appears.

 The i-motion cannot be played before and after the replay period.



 When download is attempted for i-motion with an expired replay period, Unable to

obtain data due to replay restriction data error appears.

i-motion with an expiration date

When playback is attempted for downloaded i-motion with an expiration date, the screen on the right appears.

 When download is attempted for i-motion after the expiration date, Unable to obtain data due to replay restriction data error appears.



i-motion with a set number of replays

When playback is attempted for downloaded i-motion with a specified number of replays, the screen on the right appears.

 When download is attempted for i-motion with a replay number of 0, *This data cannot be saved. Download?* appears. To download, select *Yes* and press ().



Saving i-motion

Downloaded i-motion can be saved.

- i-motion is saved to the *i-mode* folder in i-motion of Data box. i-motion which can be saved in the microSD Memory Card, can be saved in the *i-motion* folder included in the *Movable contents* folder. (Contents transfer compatible)
- i-motion saved can be played using Video player.
- Some downloaded i-motion cannot be saved to the FOMA terminal.

While downloaded i-motion is played back or stopped (paused), press (1 [Save].

Select *phone* or *microSD* and press

.

When a Ticker Contains a Link

When a link is present in the ticker during i-motion playback, Phone To (AV Phone To), Mail To or Web To may be available. Provided phone numbers and mail addresses can be saved to Phonebook.

- After playing a downloaded i-motion, the dial screen (for Phone To (AV Phone To)), compose message screen (for Mail To), or site access screen (for Web To) appears.
- Select operation and press .
- Refer to P. 201 and P. 203 for subsequent steps.
- Press CLR and the previous screen reappears.

Viewing i-motion File Properties

View file properties for i-motion.

While downloaded i-motion is played back or stopped (paused), press (a) (File property).

- When playing from i-motion of Data box, press
 (a) (4).
- For Streaming type i-motion, press 2 while downloaded or paused.
- Press or clr to end viewing.

Automatic Replay

Setting Whether to Automatically Replay i-motion

Default setting Yes

Set whether to automatically replay i-motion when downloading.

In stand-by, press **1**7341, and 1 [Yes].

Note

- Streaming type i-motion are always automatically replayed, regardless of Automatic replay settings.
- Some i-motion are not automatically replayed, even when Automatic replay is set to **Yes**.

Note

 When Automatic replay is set to No, selection screens for operations such as playback and saving appear after download.

i-motion Type

Setting i-motion Type to Download

Default setting Standard type

Set whether to download only Standard type i-motion or to download both Standard type and Streaming type i-motion.

In stand-by, press **1**7342 and select i-motion type.

| To download Standard type only | 1 |
|---|---|
| To download Streaming type and Standard type | 2 |

Note

- To download Streaming type i-motion, set i-motion type to Standard/Streaming.
- While set to Standard type, if Streaming type
 i-motion download is attempted, Invalid content.
 Change i-motion type for replay. Change setting?
 appears. Select Yes to change i-motion type and
 enable download.

i-Channel

i-Channel

i-Channel is a service provided by DoCoMo or IP (Information Provider) that sends news, weather and other information graphically to i-Channel supported terminals.

Receive such information periodically and show the latest information in stand-by using a ticker or press the i-Channel supported key to show a list of channels. (To show a list of channels: IPP. 215) Select a channel from the list to retrieve detailed information.

 Refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode]" for precautions and details on using i-Channel.
 i-Channel is only available in Japanese.

Before subscription



4 OK 4 Detailed information screen

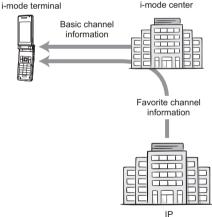
Submen

Screen when not subscribed to i-Channel.

- 2 After subscription, a ticker automatically appears in stand-by when information is received or channel list is opened.
- 3 Press ch to show the channel list. View information shown in the ticker for each channel in a list.
- 4 Select a channel to view detailed information. The screens shown are only examples. Actual screens may differ.

i-Channel has a "ベーシックチャネル (Basic channel)" and "おこのみチャネル (Favorite channel)". "Basic channel" is a pre-registered channel provided by DoCoMo and is available immediately. Packet transmission charges for automatically updating information provided by "Basic channel" are included in the i-Channel usage fee. "Favorite channel" is a channel provided by non-DoCoMo IP (Information Providers) and can be customized. Packet transmission charges for automatically updating information provided by "Favorite channel" are not included in the i-Channel usage fee. Both of the "Basic channel" and "Favorite channel" are available for the stand-by ticker.

- Information fees are required for some "Favorite channel".
- Subscription is required for some IPs (Information Providers) when using "Favorite channel".
- In addition to the i-Channel service charge, packet transmission charges are incurred for "Basic channel" and "Favorite channel" when viewing detailed information from the channel list.
- Packet transmission charges for automatically updating information provided by "Basic channel" during international roaming are not included in the i-Channel usage fee.



(Information Provider)

i-Channel is a paid service that requires subscription. i-mode subscription is also required.

• Refer to P. 215 for operation procedures.

Trial service

"Basic channel" is available for a trial period to i-mode subscribers who use i-Channel supported handsets and have never subscribed to i-Channel for the line of the i-Channel supported handset. During the trial period, the service usage charge is free. However, packet transmission charges for detailed information viewed from the channel list are charged to the subscriber.

 Refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode]" for precautions and details on the trial service.

Generally, the trial service begins after inserting the FOMA card and beginning use of the i-Channel supported handset. If the service does not begin automatically after some time, press the i-Channel supported key.

The trial service is available once per subscribed line.

The trial service ends automatically. Refer to the "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode]" for procedures on ending the trial service early.

Showing i-Channel

Subscribe to i-Channel, receive i-Channel information and automatically show them in the stand-by ticker. Connect to the site from the channel list to retrieve detailed information.

In stand-by, press CLR (ch).

- The channel list appears.
- When i-αppli is set as stand-by, press cm (ch) for 1+ seconds.
- Alternatively, press **1** in stand-by to show the channel list.
- When i-Channel information is received for the first time, pressing a does not stop receiving until all information is received.

Select a channel and press .

Note

Receiving the latest information

- Information may not be received when the handset is turned off or signal is weak, such as when outside the service area. Ticker appears in stand-by if information is received when the channel list is shown.
- Ring tone/Vibrator do not activate even when information is received. However, while receiving data, mail send/received LED flashes.
- Depending on settings, information may be received when the channel list is shown.
- Channel list is not available during All lock. Terminal security code is required while Function lock is set.

Changing the i-Channel host

• Set i-Channel host in i-mode host selection. Setting does not normally need to be changed.

Note

- i-Channel ticker does not appear when i-Channel host is changed. However, when the channel list is viewed, the latest information is received and i-Channel ticker appears.
- Information may not be automatically updated when the host is changed. View the channel list to receive the latest information.

Related Operations

Adjust sound effects volume <Sound fx setting> In the channel list, press @75 ▶ (louder) or , (softer) ▶ ●.

Note (Related operations)

• The i-Channel volume setting is common with the Sound fx setting for i-mode.

i-Channel Ticker Setting i-Channel

ON, Ticker font size: Large(default), Ticker color: Pattern1 (Font color: green, Background color: black), Ticker speed: Normal

Set whether to show i-Channel ticker in stand-by.

- In stand-by, press **1**82 and 1 [ON].
 - To not show, press 2 [OFF].
- Select *Ticker font size*, press **and select the font size**.

| Small | 1 |
|-----------------|---|
| Medium | 2 |
| Large (default) | 3 |

- Sample of the ticker appears at the lower part of the display.
- Select *Ticker color*, press •, select a ticker color and press •.
 - Select from Pattern1 to Pattern9.
- Select *Ticker speed*, press and select the speed.

| Slow | 1 |
|--------|---|
| Normal | 2 |
| Fast | 3 |

Press 📱 [Complete].

Note

- When i-Channel ticker is set to OFF, ticker does not appear.
- Set ticker ON/OFF and the speed in i-Channel ticker.
- When i-Channel or i-mode subscription is canceled, i-Channel ticker does not appear.
- If i-mode service subscription is canceled before canceling i-Channel service subscription, i-Channel ticker remains **ON**.
- i-Channel ticker is not available if i-Channel or i-mode is not subscribed.
- i-Channel ticker is not available while All lock or Function lock is set.
- i-Channel ticker is not available during Public mode (Drive mode).
- When Calendar display and i-Channel ticker are both set, press in stand-by to switch between Calendar display and i-Channel ticker.

Reset i-Channel Resetting i-Channel Settings

In Stand-by press **1**83, enter terminal security code and press **1**.

Select Yes and press .

Mail

| • FOMA Terminal Mail Functions |
|--|
| • i-mode Mail |
| Displaying Mail Menu |
| ■Creating i-mode Mail/Deco-mail |
| Composing and Sending i-mode Mail |
| Creating and Sending Deco-mail |
| Sending Using a Template |
| • Attaching a File |
| • Saving i-mode Mail and Sending Later |
| Receiving and Using i-mode Mail |
| Receiving i-mode Mail |
| Selecting and Receiving i-mode Mail |
| Checking for i-mode Mail |
| Replying to i-mode Mail <reply i-mode="" mail="" to="">231</reply> |
| • Forwarding to Another Address |
| Saving Mail Addresses and Phone Numbers to Phonebook |
| Acquiring Attached Files for Manual Reception |
| Checking/Saving/Deleting Attached File |
| • Viewing and Saving Deco-mail Images |
| Saving Deco-mail as TemplatesSave Template>234 |
| ■Using the Mailbox |
| • Displaying Messages in Inbox and Outbox <inbox messages="" outbox="" unsent="">234</inbox> |
| Mail History |
| Using Mail History |
| Mail Settings |
| Setting FOMA Terminal Mail Functions Mail Setting>242 |
| ■Using SMS (Short Messages) |
| Composing and Sending SMS (Short Messages) |
| Receiving SMS (Short Messages) |
| SMS (Short Messages) Settings SMS Settings>248 |
| Saving SMS (Short Messages) to FOMA Card |
| Deleting SMS (Short Messages) |
| • Avoiding Unsolicited SMS (Short Messages) |

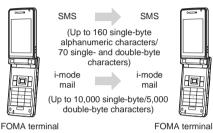
FOMA Terminal Mail Functions

- The FOMA terminal can send and receive i-mode mail and SMS (Short messages). An i-mode subscription is required to use i-mode mail. Refer to P. 220 and P. 228 for details on sending/receiving i-mode mail.
- SMS messaging (text messaging) between FOMA terminals is available without i-mode subscription. Refer to P. 245 and P. 247 for details on sending/ receiving SMS.

Sending/Receiving Mail

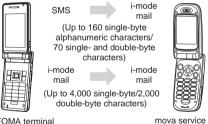
The following are the three possible combinations for sending/receiving mail.

FOMA terminal → FOMA terminal



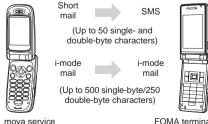
● FOMA terminal → mova service i-mode terminal SMS sent by a FOMA terminal is received by a mova service i-mode terminal as i-mode mail.

SMS cannot be sent to a mova terminal when Report request (P. 248) is set to Request.



FOMA terminal

 mova service i-mode terminal → FOMA terminal Short mail* sent by a mova service i-mode terminal is received by a FOMA terminal as SMS.



i-mode terminal

FOMA terminal

i-mode terminal

Short mail is a text messaging service for DoCoMo mobile phones subscribing the mova service.

Note

Note information in i-mode mail and SMS separately or transfer/store them on a PC using microSD Memory Cards (P. 316) or Data Link Software (P. 438).

i-mode Mail

i-mode Mail

Subscribe to i-mode service to exchange mail with other i-mode terminals (including mova) and e-mail with PCs via the Internet. Attach up to ten files (JPEG, ToruCa, PDF, etc.) in total of 2 MB to a message. Deco-mail is available for i-mode mail. Create and send expressive mail by adding text color, changing character size and background color, or inserting Deco-mail pictographs. which are preinstalled, in message text. The mail address upon subscription is as follows.

New i-mode subscription The portion before @ is a random alphanumeric combination. Confirm after subscribing to i-mode. Example: abc1234-789xyz@docomo.ne.jp <Checking Mail Address> iMenu 🜩 English 🜩 Options 🗭 Mail Settings 🗭 Confirm Mail Address

- Only the portion before @ is necessary to exchange mail between i-mode terminals (including mova).
- Include @docomo.ne.jp for e-mail from PCs and other devices.
- Receiving mail P. 228
- Refer to the latest "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode]" for details on i-mode service contents.

Receive option

Check subject and choose to receive or delete mail held at the i-mode center before receiving. CTP. 230

Mail Settings

Perform the following to set.

<Setting details>

iMenu ቅ English 🗭 Options 🗭 Mail Settings 🗭 Various settings

 Refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode]" for details.

Changing the mail address [Mail Address (Change Mail Address)]

Customize mail address by changing the portion before @, such as *docomo.taro_ab1234yz*@ *docomo.ne.jp*.

Checking mail address [Mail Address (Confirm Mail Address)] Check the current mail address being used.

Registering a secret code [Mail Address (Other Settings) ➡ Register a Secret Code]

Add a four-digit Secret code in addition to mail address when using phone number as address. Avoid unwanted mail by rejecting those sent without Secret code.

Resetting mail address [Mail Address (Other Settings) ➡ Reset Mail Address]

Mail address can be reset to phone number@docomo.ne.jp.

Spam mail prevention

Restrict incoming mail by using one of the following Receive/Reject mail settings.

Receive/Reject Mail Settings [Receiving Mail (Spam Mail Prevention) → Reject/Receive Mail Settings]

- Receive mail from selected companies (DoCoMo, au, SoftBank, Tu-Ka, and WILLCOM).
- Also, receive mail from other selected domains or addresses. Moreover, reject mail that is sent from the internet that poses as mobile phone/PHS domains.
 SMS Rejection Settings [Receiving Mail (Spam Mail Prevention) → SMS Rejection Settings]
- Restrict incoming SMS, choose from one of the following four: Set to Reject All SMS, Reject Anonymous SMS, Reject International SMS, or Reject Anonymous and International SMS. Also, the current settings can be checked.

Reject Mass i-mode Mail Senders [Receiving Mail (Other Settings) ➡ Reject Mass i-mode Mail Senders]

- Reject mail from i-mode terminals (including mova) that send more than 200 i-mode mail per day. The default setting is *Reject*. Settings do not have to be changed to reject mail from mass senders. Reject 未承諾広告 (Unsolicited Ad) Mail [Receiving Mail (Other Settings) → Reject Unsolicited Ad Mail]
- Reject mail with "未承諾広告 (unsolicited ad)" <u>at</u> beginning of subject that is sent for advertisement purposes without the consent of the receiving party. The default setting is *Reject*. Settings do not have to be changed to reject unsolicited ad mail. (Sender is required by law to add "未承諾広告 (unsolicited ad)" (six double-byte characters) at beginning of subject.)

Limiting mail size [Receiving Mail (Limit Mail Size)]

Limit i-mode mail by size set in advance.

Checking mail settings [Receiving Mail (Confirm Settings)]

Check current mail receive/reject settings.

Suspending mail functions [Suspend Mail]

Suspend mail functions at the i-mode center when not in use.

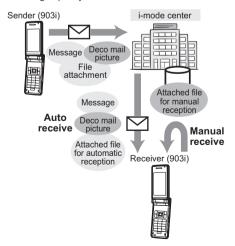
When Mail Cannot Be Received

Mail received at i-mode center is immediately sent to i-mode terminal. However, mail is held at the i-mode center while the handset is turned off or outside the service area. Mail held at the i-mode center is re-sent up to three times. Use Receive option setting to select and receive i-mode mail at i-mode center.

Other Features

File transmission

Any file formats are available for attaching to i-mode mail (2 MB compatible). Attach up to ten files to mail. Total size of the attached files is 2 MB. Any files that are attached to i-mode mail (2 MB compatible) can be received. Files are received automatically up to 100 KB (attached files for automatic reception). After 100 KB, select files to receive (attached files for manual reception). Attached files up to 100 KB, or of any size, can also be received by selection if Receive attached file is set at the terminal. When i-mode mail is received with other models, file reception follows the supported size and formats within the mail receiving capacity of the terminal.



Deco-mail

Create original i-mode mail by changing character size and background color or paste images in message text. Send and receive fun, decorated mail. Also, create and send expressive mail by inserting Deco-mail pictographs, which are preinstalled, in message text. (Some decorations added using PCs are not supported on i-mode terminals and may not appear correctly.) When Deco-mail is sent to terminals unsupported or terminals supported but only up to 10,000 bytes, mail with a URL may be received. In this case, the recipient can view the Deco-mail by clicking on the URL.

- To edit 2 P. 222
- Compatible models ... Available for Deco-mail supported handsets. Refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode]" for details.

Mail Menu

Displaying Mail Menu

Create and view received and sent i-mode mail from Mail menu.

| In | stand- | by, | press | ⊠. |
|----|--------|-----|-------|----|
|----|--------|-----|-------|----|

| \simeq | Mail me |
|----------|---------------|
| 1 Inbo> | < 🔰 |
| 2 Outbo | эx |
| 3 Unser | nt messages |
| 4 Compo | ose message |
| 5 Compo | ose SMS |
| 6 Check | c new message |
| 7 Temp | late |
| 8 Recei | ive option |
| 9 Mail | setting |

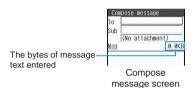
| Menu | Function | Reference |
|--------------------|--|----------------------|
| Inbox | View, reply to, and forward received mail. | P. 228 and P. 234 |
| Outbox | View and resend sent mail. | P. 228 and P. 234 |
| Unsent messages | Edit or send unsent messages. | P. 228 and P. 234 |
| Compose message | Compose and send or save mail. | P. 220 |
| Compose SMS | Compose and send or save SMS. | P. 245 and P. 246 |
| Check | Check i-mode center for new mail and Message R/F. Or, check SMS center for stored SMS. | P. 231 and P. 247 |
| Template | Edit and view Deco-mail templates. | P. 225 |
| Receive option | Select mail to receive from i-mode center. | P. 230 |
| Mail setting | Perform various i-mode mail and SMS related settings. | P. 242 |

Compose/Send i-mode Mail

Composing and Sending i-mode Mail

- Avoid entering pictographs and single-byte katakana in subject and message when sending to mobile phones not supporting i-mode. Characters may not appear properly on receiving end.
- When i-mode mail including pictographs is sent to a mobile phone of other mobile phone companies (au/ SoftBank/Tu-Ka), pictographs are automatically converted and similar ones appear on the receiver side. May not appear correctly depending on the receiver's mobile phone model and function. When the receiver's mobile phone does not support sent pictographs, they are converted to characters or "=".
- Mail can be sent using *To*, *Cc*, and *Bcc*. The *To* field must be filled in.
- Change the size of the font in Font size (P. 242).

In stand-by, press 🛛 4.



2 Select *To*, press • and select input method.

| To select from phonebook | 1 → select recipient → ● To select another address, select recipient, press ■, select mail address and press ●. If a mail address icon (○, ♂, ♂, ♂, ♂), ♂), ⊕, ⊕) does not appear, a mail address is not saved. With FOMA terminal handset phonebook, ♥ will be displayed even if the mail address is not registered. |
|---|---|
| To input directly | ② → enter address → ■ Enter up to 50 single-byte alphabet, numbers and some symbols. @docomo.ne.jp is not necessary when sending to i-mode terminals. Symbols (IGP P. 406) and Internet-related phrases (IGP P. 406) are available. |
| To select from Sent messages history | 3 → select recipient → ● → Select when there are i-mode mail sent messages. |
| To select from Received messages history | ④ → select recipient → ● → ● Select when there are i-mode mail received messages. |

| To select from mail members | 5 → select mail member → ■ Save mail members in advance. (127 P. 243) |
|--|---|
| To send to multiple ones (论了 P. 222) | Broadcast field is added when an address is entered in <i>To</i>. Select Broadcast field → ■ → select sending type → ■ → select input method → ■. All mail members are always set to <i>To</i>. Add up to four addresses. |
| To change address | Select address → ● → select input method → ● When Search phonebook, Sent messages, or Rcvd messages is selected, Overwrite address? appears. Select mail address. When Mail members is selected, Overwrite all address? appears. Select Yes and press ● to select mail members. When Direct input is selected, the address entry screen appears. |
| To delete address | Select address $\rightarrow \textcircled{5}$ [Delete address] $\rightarrow \textbf{Yes} \rightarrow \textcircled{\bullet}$ |
| 4441035 | |

Select *Sub* or *Msg*, press •, enter text and press •.

 In mail message entry screen, confirm a character in character entry area in middle of display, press and move to location to insert

Ve'll be having practice tomorrow for the big bo wling tournament. Time: 7PM. Place: Our usual bo wling alley.

 Size becomes 10,000 single-byte (5,000 double-byte) characters and remaining bytes

Message entry screen

become negative under the conditions below. Edit to 10,000 or less bytes (remaining bytes is 0 or more).

- When pasted characters and mail message total size is 10,001 bytes or more
- When i-mode mail is decorated after entering message
- Line breaks (1) are counted as one double-byte character. Single- and double-byte spaces (blanks) are counted as single- and double-byte characters, respectively. (Line breaks (1) are not available for Subject.)
- Press
 in pictograph mode (127 P. 406) to switch from Pictograph 1 → Pictograph 2 → PictographD (Deco-mail pict) → Pictograph 1... Switch to PictographD (Deco-mail pict) to enter Deco-mail pictographs. Up to 20 Deco-mail pictographs can be entered. Note that their total size cannot exceed 90 KB including inserted images. Enter Deco-mail pictographs to create Deco-mail.

Press , at end of sentence in message entry screen to enter line break (4). Press are to delete 4. Press are without entering message and the compose message screen reappears.

| To use phrases | In message entry screen, press $\bigcirc 7 \rightarrow$ select type of phrase $\rightarrow \odot \rightarrow$ select phrase $\rightarrow \odot \rightarrow \odot \rightarrow \odot$ \bigcirc Refer to P. 433 for details on phrases. |
|---------------------------------------|---|
| To add signature | In compose message screen, press (a) (a) or press (a) (a) (a) in message entry screen (b) Save signature in advance. ((b) (c) |
| To attach location URL | In message entry screen, press (a) _ 3 → 1 (From position loc.]/(2) (From loc. history)/(3) (From phonebook] → select location information → ● → Yes → ● • Refer to P. 287 for the method of selecting location information. • Character count includes location URL. • ♪ is placed before location URL. |
| To compose Deco-mail (☞ P. 222) | In message entry screen, press 1 [Decorate mail] |

Press 📱 [Send].

 When sending is complete,
 Transmission completed appears and the Mail menu reappears.



While sending, press
 [Cancel] to cancel.

Alternatively, press (a) or (c) to cancel. However, i-mode mail may be sent depending on timing.

Canceled i-mode mail is saved as unsent mail.

Note

- When To or Broadcast field is already entered, selecting an address from mail member overwrites the entered address. Click Yes to overwrite.
- When setting mail members as recipients, the first address is entered in the first *To*. Subsequent addresses are entered in subsequent *To* fields. (Can be changed to *Cc* or *Bcc*.)

Note

- When an address entered in the first *To* is deleted, the address entered in the second *To* is moved to the first *To*.
- Depending on the signal status, messages may not be sent. i-mode mail that could not be sent is saved as unsent mail.
- Depending on signal status, *Transmission failed* may appear even if message is sent.
- Text for recipient may not appear correctly depending on signal status.
- Save up to 500 sent mail and SMS combined. When new i-mode mail is sent when 500 sent mail are saved, sent mail is automatically overwritten starting from the oldest unprotected sent mail. (Confirmation message does not appear.)

Protect important i-mode mail. Please be careful especially when the size of attachment to be sent is large, e.g. 2 MB, since the number of sent messages to be deleted become large.

- When Show sent/received is set to OFF (127 P. 157), Sent messages and Rcvd messages are not available for address entry.
- While Function lock is applied to mail, enter terminal security code to compose and send i-mode mail.

When called during editing

• Previous screen reappears after disconnecting and editing can be resumed.

When other party has set Secret code

- Enter other party's Secret code (four digits) before
 @. This is unnecessary if Secret code is entered in phonebook entry. (127 P. 100)
- If address is phone number or phone number@docomo.ne.jp, phonebook is automatically checked for Secret code. If saved, Secret code is added and sent. (17 P. 100)
- i-mode mail may not be able to be sent or replied to if mail address is saved as *phone number+Secret code@docomo.ne.jp* in phonebook. Change entry to *phone number@docomo.ne.jp* before saving Secret code.
- Error messages such as for unknown recipients are sometimes not received when sent to a non-DoCoMo mail address.

Broadcast

Send same i-mode mail to multiple addresses simultaneously from FOMA terminal. Send to up to five people at once.

Select sending type (To/Cc/Bcc) in Broadcast entry field.

- To : Receiver's address. Addresses entered in *To* appear on the other recipient's screen.
- Cc : Used to send carbon copy to a third party.
- Bcc : Used to send blind carbon copy to a third party. Unlike Cc, addresses are invisible to other recipients.
- Save up to five people in mail members to easily select multiple addresses. (IPP P. 243)
- All addresses except set as *Bcc* are shown to other recipients. Addresses may not appear on some models.

- Sent mail is saved as one mail. All successful recipients are shown in sent message screen.
- If mail is not sent to all recipients, one copy is saved in Sent messages and another in Unsent messages.
 Unsuccessful recipients are shown in Unsent messages.
- When multiple identical addresses are set as address or broadcast, duplicate addresses are deleted.

Changing sending type

Change sending type for address and broadcast.

When composing i-mode mail (Bright steps 1 to 3 on P. 220), select address entry field other than the first entry, press •6 [Sending type] and select sending type.

| То | 1 |
|-----|---|
| Cc | 2 |
| Bcc | 3 |

Deco-mail

Creating and Sending Deco-mail

Change color and font size of message text, insert image or change background color when creating i-mode mail.

 Create Deco-mail message text up to 10,000 bytes. Up to 20 Deco-mail pictographs and images can be inserted. Note that their total size cannot exceed 90 KB excluding the message text size.

Decorations and effects

- Message text cannot be decorated when the remaining byte is 0 or a negative number.
- Decorated mail sent from PCs may not appear properly.



Message entry screen



Palette

| A | AA, 5126 | 🔜 Dia | se 🗛 sline |
|---------|----------|-------|--------------------|
| CA TICK | AT SUNG | RLI | GH 🛄 LINE |
| | EDIT | у ш | 00 <u>A</u> Roceco |

| Submenu number | Decoration |
|-------------------|--|
| 1 | Font color A = 2000 Description: Add color to characters. Pictographs are also shown in selected color. To return pictograph to default color, select Default. Post-insertion adjustments: Select color → |
| | When selecting <i>Other colors</i>, select color and press . |
| 2 | Font size Alexandle Description: Change font size to Large, Standard or Small. Post-insertion adjustments: ① (Large)/ ② (Standard)/③ (Small) ② (Standard)/③ (Small) ● The size of Deco-mail pictographs cannot be changed. |
| 3 | Insert image Constraints of the location URL in a mail message. |
| 4 | Blink Common Description: Set text to blink. Blinking automatically stops after a set length of time. Post-insertion adjustments: 1 (Select)/ 2 (Reset) 1 (Select)/ |
| 5 | Ticker A tree Description: Stream text (Show ticker). Text stops streaming after a set length of time. Post-insertion adjustments: 1 (Select)/ 2 (Reset) |
| 6 | Swing Series Description: Wobble (swing) text sideways. Text stops moving after a set length of time. Post-insertion adjustments: 1 (Select)/ 2 (Reset) |
| 7 | Word alignment Entern Description: Change alignment of text to left, center or right. Post-insertion adjustments: 1 (Left)/(2) (Center)/(3) (Right) |

| Submenu number | Decoration |
|-------------------|---|
| 8 | Insert line 📰 💵 |
| | Description: Add line (horizontal rule) in message text. (One line's worth is inserted. Font color is reflected in inserted line. Line color (font color) can be changed.) Line cannot be inserted when editing decorations. Post-insertion adjustments: At the location to insert, press . |
| •1 | Background color 📜 🖽 |
| | Description: Change message text background color. Background color cannot be changed when editing decorations. Post-insertion adjustments: Select background color → ●. When selecting Other colors, select color and press ●. |
| -2 | Edit decoration 📰 🚥 |
| | Description: Specify range and add decorations. Post-insertion adjustments: At start point, press → at end point, press → set decoration. Insert image, Insert line and Background color are not available. |
| 3 | Undo 🌮 🚥 |
| | Description: Undo the last operation. |
| •4 | Reset decoration |
| | Description: Enter undecorated characters. All the decorations that have been already inserted are not canceled. |
| •5 | Reset all |
| | Description: Cancel all decorations. Images that have been inserted are deleted and mail returns to text mail. |

| Key operation | Decoration | Description |
|---------------|---------------------|---|
| | Input | Press to enter text. |
| B | Cursor/ Sel deco | Switch between cursor movement in message text and cursor movement in palette selection. |
| | Range | Press to select the range to decorate. |
| V | Preview | Press to preview decoration. |

Note

 If Deco-mail of 10,000 bytes or larger is sent to an unsupported terminal released prior to the 903i series or if Deco-mail of any size is sent to an unsupported terminal (mova or FOMA models prior to the 900i series), a URL is sent in the message text. The recipient must select the URL to view Deco-mail on the Internet. However, some unsupported terminals receive mail only with message text and without a URL to view Deco-mail when Deco-mail of 10,000 bytes or larger is received. Compatible models ... Available for Deco-mail supported handsets. Refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode]" for details.

Note

Inserting images

- Images (Decomail pictures) are preset in the FOMA terminal. (IPP P. 427)
- If the same image is continuously inserted, 20 or more can be inserted. However, images are not deemed identical in the following cases.
 - When an image is inserted/pasted after a message with the image is saved
 - When an image included in a signature is inserted into a message with the image
- The URL may not be visible due to image or i-motion URL characters having the same color as the background color of Deco-mail.
- When a message is composed while another application has already been activated (e.g. during voice call), previewing a selected icon may not be available. Only image selection by pressing OK is available.
- To display the inserted image information, move the cursor right ahead of the image and select *File property* from the Submenu.

Inserting message text while decorating

Enter text with decorations after specifying decoration method. Or, decorate already entered text with specified decoration method.

In mail compose message screen, enter recipient and subject. (127 steps 1 to 3 on P. 220)



Select *Msg* and press •.

 To specify the decoration method and enter text with decorations, proceed to step 3. To enter text and decorate afterwards, enter message text.

Press 1 [Decorate mail], select palette with : and press • to select decoration.

 Press I Cursor] to move cursor in message text when palette is displayed.
 Press I [Sel deco] again to return to palette selection.

| | | Ren | 9964 |
|--------------------|--------------------|----------------|------|
| Bowli This ∢ | ing Tou Saturd | rnament ay⊒ | L. |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| - | en KAker | | Atom |
| | n pagen n Color | بالمستلحدة ال | |

 When Palette is set to OFF, press 1 [Decorate mail], select decoration type from

Palette screen

the Submenu, press <a>> and specify decoration.

| | Select Blink \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow |
|-------------------|---|
| To specify ticker | Select $Ticker \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow 1$ \rightarrow enter text |

| To specify swing | Select Swing \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow \bigcirc |
|------------------------------|---|
| To display preview screen | Press and the previous screen reappears. |

When finished specifying decorations, enter message text.

- The bytes of message text entered appear.
- When decorating entered text, refer to "Setting range and decorating" on P. 225.
- When Palette is set to *OFF*, press
 [Input] when finished specifying decorations and enter message text.



- Decorations are reflected when message text is entered.
- Even after deleting text with decorations, decoration data may remain and cause available character number to decrease. Delete decorations before deleting text. When care is pressed for 1+ seconds to delete text, the text and the decoration data are deleted together.

Press 🖻 📑 🛽 [Preview].

- Alternatively, press v
 (Eco) to display a preview screen.
- Press

 close the preview screen and repeat steps 3 and 4 for multiple decorations.



Press 💿 [Agree].

Press 1 [Decorate mail] 5 to delete all decorations. When Palette is set to *OFF*, press 1.5. Inserted images are also deleted.

Press 🔳 and 📱 [Send].

Note

- Decorations and inserted images are quoted when replying with quote or forwarding Deco-mail.
- Decorated mail sent from devices other than Deco-mail supported FOMA terminals may not appear correctly.
- When decoration is determined, status icon changes to ₩∑.
- Even if mail with Deco-mail URL is forwarded from a model that does not support Deco-mail, the Deco-mail message cannot be viewed.

Related Operations

Hide palette <Palette>

- 1 After step 2 on P. 224, press @ 5.
- 2 Press 2.
 - To show palette: Press 1.

Setting range and decorating

In the palette screen (P. 224), press [] [Range].

Alternatively, press
 2 in the palette screen.

Move the cursor to location to start decorating and press •.

- To select all text, press 1.
- To cancel selection, press .

Move the cursor to location to end decorating and press •.

Select palette with ::, press • and specify decoration.

- Specified range is decorated.
- To undo to one step before editing message text, press I [Undo].
- Insert image, Insert line, Background color, Edit decoration and Reset decoration are not available.
- Repeat step 4 to add decorations to the same range.

After specifying, press 🖾 [Input].

 Refer to steps 5 to 7 on P. 224 for subsequent steps.

Note

- When Palette is set to OFF, select a decoration type from submenu, press

 specify a decoration, and then select the range.
- If area is specified after multiple decorations are continuously specified, Undo is not available.

Sending Using a Template

Use a template to create Deco-mail. Templates are Deco-mail models with set layout and decorations. Use templates to easily create and send Deco-mail.

In addition, save created Deco-mail as a template and download (PP. 198) templates from sites.

- Save up to 10 to 100 templates.
- 14 templates are preset.

Using a Template to Create Deco-mail <Template>

In stand-by, press 🖾 📿.

Template list appears.

Select template, press [Agree] and press [[Mail].

- Template is reflected in message entry screen.
- Editing is the same as for normal Deco-mail. Refer to P. 222 for details.



Opening template while composing mail

In the message entry screen, press (2) [Open template].

- To open template in the compose message screen, press (3).
- When decorated or normal texts are already entered in the compose message screen, Your changes will be lost. Open template? appears. Select Yes and press
 to view a template list.

Select template, press [Agree] and press [[OK].

- When decorated or normal texts are already entered in the compose message screen, the message texts before template is selected are deleted and the template is reflected to the massage entry screen.

Note

 A template that exceeds 10,000 bytes for the body text or one with inserted images exceeding 90 KB cannot be opened.

Saving Mail as a Template <Save Template>

When Deco-mail is completed (IP steps 1 to 6 on P. 224), press and press I (Save template] in the compose message screen.

Select Yes and press .

- Mail is saved in *Template* of the Mail menu.
- For Deco-mail created by opening a template, select Save new or Overwrite and press •.

Note

- The file names of saved templates are labeled automatically according to the date and time the templates were saved.
 Example: November 20, 2006 at 1:05:07 PM → 061120 130507
- Attachments are not saved with Deco-mail.
- Templates cannot be saved if memory space is not available. Delete unnecessary templates and increase available memory space to save. (IPP P. 226)

Editing Templates <Edit>

- In stand-by, press थ7, select template and press थ1 [Edit].
- 2 Edit Deco-mail (☞ steps 3 to 6 on P. 224), press ●, select Save new or Overwrite and press ●.

Related Operations

Edit template titles <Edit title>

- 1 In stand-by, press ⊠ 7 and select a template ▶ @ 2.
- **2** Edit title **•**.

Delete templates <Delete>

- 1 In stand-by, press ⊠7 and select a template ▶ ⊠3.
- 2 Press 1 [Delete one].
 - To delete templates collectively: Press 2
 select template
 (repeatable)
 - To delete all templates: Press 3 > enter terminal security code > •.
- 3 Select Yes ▶ •.

View detailed information <File property>

In stand-by, press \boxdot 7 and select a template \blacktriangleright \boxdot 4.

• To end view: Press • or CLR.

Note (Related operations)

Delete Template

• For deleting selected folders, press 🗊 [SelAll]/🗊 [ClrAll] to select or clear all.

Template file properties

• Title name, file name, file format and file restrictions appear.

Attachments

Attaching a File

Send i-mode mail attached still pictures, movie/i-motion, etc.

Supported attachments

| Data type | File size | Maximum |
|---|-----------|-----------|
| Still picture/image (JPEG image, GIF image, animated GIF) | | |
| Melody (SMF, MFi) | | |
| Movie/i-motion (MP4) | | |
| ToruCa (ToruCa, ToruCa (details)) | | |
| PDF file | Up to | Up to |
| Phonebook (vCard) | 2 MB | ten files |
| Schedule (vCalendar) | | |
| ToDo (vCalendar) | | |
| Bookmark (vBookmark) | | |
| Document file (BMP, PNG, Word, Excel, PowerPoint, Text) | | |
| Other files | | |

- GIF images cannot be received by a mova service i-mode terminal.
- Melodies in SMF format cannot be received by a mova service i-mode terminal.
- ToruCa exceeding 1 KB and ToruCa (details) exceeding 100 KB cannot be attached to mail.
- PDF files being downloaded or PDF files of individual pages partially downloaded cannot be attached.
- Transmission time may be longer depending on the attached file size.
 - Compose i-mode mail (1277 steps 1 to 3 on P. 220), select the attachment entry field with ; and press •.

| 11.00 | | |
|-------|-----------|-----|
| At | tachment | 1/2 |
| · 1 | lmage | - |
| ° 2 | Melody | 1 |
| u 3 | i-motion | L L |
| 4 | ToruCa | - |
| 5 | PDF | r |
| | Phonebook | |
| | Schedule | р |
| e 🖪 | To Do | |
| | | |

Select file to attach.

| Cor | npose message |
|----------------------|--|
| To | docomo. taro. Ad@doco |
| Sub | Welcoming party for Map.jpg 4.8KB |
| Msg | 0.2KB |
| uko' beer Let' | place for Docomo Har s welcome party has n decided. s finish our work up y on the day. |

| To attach still picture/ image | → select folder → ● → select image → ■ To check image, select an image and press ●. A confirmation screen, asking whether to attach location URL, appears for images with the location information added. Select Yes and press ● to attach the location URL in a mail message. |
|---|--|
| To attach a melody | ② → select folder → ● → select melody → ■ To play melody, select a melody and press ●. Press ■ to stop playback. (Melodies which exceed 100 KB cannot be played back.) |
| To attach movie/ i-motion | 3 → select folder → ● → select movie/i-motion → ■ To play movie/i-motion, select a movie/i-motion and press ●. Press ● to stop playback. |
| To attach ToruCa | ④ → select folder → ● → select ToruCa → ii ● To check ToruCa, select ToruCa and press ●. |
| To attach PDF data | 5 → select folder → ● → select PDF data → ■ To check PDF data, select PDF data and press ■. |
| To attach Phonebook | ⑥ → 1 [phone]/② [microSD] → select a name → ● To check Phonebook, select Phonebook and press a. If <i>microSD</i> is selected, checking Phonebook is not available. |
| To attach Schedule | ⑦ → ① [phone] → select date → Ĩ → select schedule → ● To check Schedule, select Schedule and press Ĩ. To select from microSD Memory Card, press ② [microSD], select Schedule and press ●. Checking Schedule is not available. |
| To attach ToDo | ⑧ → 1 [phone]/(2) [microSD] → select ToDo → • • To check ToDo, select ToDo and press • • If microSD is selected, checking Phonebook is not available. |
| To attach Bookmark | ① → ① [i-mode]/② [Full Browser] → select folder → ● → select bookmark → ● To select from microSD Memory Card, press ③ [microSD], select Bookmark and press ●. |
| To attach Document file | ⑦ ② → select file → i To check file, select file and press ●. |
| To attach other file in microSD Memory Card | ③ → select file → ● ● Checking file is not available. |

| To attach shot still pictures | ④ → ● [ô] → ● Shot still pictures are saved in the <i>Camera</i> folder. Shooting size is automatically set to <i>stand-by: 240×400</i>. |
|-------------------------------------|--|
| To attach shot movies | 5 → ● [Rec] → ● → 1 Shot movies are saved in the <i>Camera</i> folder. Select <i>For mail</i> (short) when sending movie/i-motion of 500 KB or larger to models prior to the 903i series. Shooting size is automatically set to <i>QCIF: 176×144</i>. |
| 0 | |

- Compose message screen reappears. File name and size appear in the attachment field.
- To delete the attached file, select the file in the attachment field, press
 7 or
 7.
- To check an attached file, select the file in the attachment field and press . 6 or 6.

🖁 Press 🗟 [Send].

Note

- Flash movies, frames, stamps and preset melodies cannot be attached.
- Melody may not be played properly if other party is using a model released prior to FOMA SH900i.
- Sent attached files may not be received by the models released prior to SH903i depending on the file type and size.
- Files with restrictions for i-mode mail attachment and output from the FOMA terminal are not sent.
- Images shot with FOMA terminal that have file restrictions are sent but cannot be forwarded by the other party.
- When files cannot be correctly received or viewed on receiving side terminals, the quality of movies may deteriorate or movies may be converted to continuous still pictures. The QCIF size is recommended for sending movies to the models not supporting i-mode mail (2 MB compatible).
- Files which the other party's terminal does not support are deleted.

Attaching shot still pictures

- If Auto save mode is set to ON, preview screen after shooting does not appear.
- Shot still pictures cannot be attached if the maximum number of files is already attached or if 2 MB of files are already attached. (Attachment field does not appear.)

Pasted data

 Pasted melody (MFi) is not quoted when replying or forwarding.

ToruCa

• Depending on the size, some ToruCa cannot be attached to a message to send.

Save i-mode Mail

Saving i-mode Mail and Sending Later

Save i-mode mail being composed to FOMA terminal and continue composing at a later time. Edit saved i-mode mail and send.

Saving i-mode Mail

Press 2 [Save] while composing i-mode mail (results steps 1 to 3 on P. 220).

 i-mode mail being composed is saved as an unsent message.

Note

 If a is pressed while composing mail with address, subject, or message entered or file attached, end confirmation screen appears. Select Yes to cancel composing mail. Canceled mail is not saved.

Editing and Sending Sent/Saved i-mode Mail

Editing/Resending sent i-mode mail

In stand-by, press $\square 2$.



Select folder, press ., select i-mode mail and press .

- Press
 to show previous or next mail.
- Press CLR and sent messages list reappears. Alternatively, select mail and press in mail list. Press I to resend.
- To check an attached file, select the file name and press .
- When a melody is attached, the melody is automatically played. Melody stops when another screen is opened. Melody is not automatically played if Melody Auto replay (CPP. 244) is set to Auto replay off.
- When an image is attached, image, attachment type icon and file name appear below message text. (PP P. 236)

Edit/Resend mail.

| To edit | i or i i → edit mail → i Edit using same steps as when composing new message. Refer to steps 2 and 3 on P. 220. |
|-----------|--|
| To resend | 02 |

Editing/Sending saved i-mode mail

In stand-by, press ⊠(3).

Select folder, press
, select i-mode mail and press .

Select item, press , edit and press 📱 [Send].

- Edit using same steps as when composing new message. Refer to steps 2 and 3 on P. 220.
- To send unsent messages, select each one individually.
- Sent i-mode mail is saved in Outbox. Mail is sorted into various folders according to Sort rules (@ P. 242).

Auto Receive

Receiving i-mode Mail

Set Receive option setting (P. 230) to OFF to automatically receive i-mode mail.

- Save 4 to 1,000 received i-mode mail and SMS. (Capacity varies depending on size of received mail.)
- If memory is full, oldest read unprotected mail is overwritten. Protect important i-mode mail. (Overwrite confirmation message does not appear.) Please be careful especially when the size of attachment to be received is large, e.g. 2 MB, since the number of received messages to be deleted become large.

Memory is full due to a

protected or unread

Connected to FirstPass

While Omakase lock is

large number of

mail

center

set

- i-mode mail is held at the i-mode center under the following circumstances.
 - Handset is turned off
 - While in Self mode
 - Outside the service area
 - Using Videophone
 - During Ir exchange
 - During iC transmission PushTalk transmission Receive option setting is set to ON
- Note
- Up to 100 KB for each i-mode mail (including) attached files) can be automatically received. Attached files exceeding 100 KB can be manually retrieved from the i-mode center. (12 P. 232)
- Mail ring tone does not sound if mail is received while a call is in progress, i-appli is running, the camera is being activated, the handset is being positioned by GPS or pattern definitions are being updated.
- Copy mail from FOMA terminal handset to microSD Memory Card or from microSD Memory Card to FOMA terminal handset.
- Number of characters shown on screen differs depending on font size setting.

228 Mail

Note

Meaning of icons

| Icon | Status |
|-------------|--|
| (green) | Unread i-mode mail. (137 P. 229) |
| 8000 | Unread i-mode mail and SMS. (© P. 229, P. 247) |
| | FOMA terminal received i-mode mail and SMS are full. View unread messages (27 P. 229, P. 247), disable protection (27 P. 239) or delete unnecessary mail (27 P. 240). |
| (red) | FOMA terminal received i-mode mail and SMS, SMS in FOMA card are full. View unread messages (管子 P. 229, P. 247), disable protection (管子 P. 239) or delete unnecessary mail (管子 P. 240). |
| (red font) | Unread SMS. (☞ P. 247) |
| (blue font) | SMS in FOMA card is full. Delete unnecessary mail (PP P. 240). |
| (blue) | Mail is being held at center. (When Receive option setting is set to OFF .) Perform Check new message (127 P. 231) to receive i-mode mail. |
| | Center is full. Perform Check new message (12 P. 231). |
| | Function lock is set. Terminal security code must be entered to check i-mode mail while Function lock is applied to mail. (27 P. 146) |

- ightarrow (blue) may not appear even when mail is held at the i-mode center.
- Image: (blue) and Image: do not appear when Receive option setting is set to ON.

Opening New i-mode Mail

i-mode mail is automatically received (\square flashes).

- To cancel receiving mail, press

 while receiving.
- i-mode mail canceled while being received is held at i-mode center.
 (() (blue) appears.)
- i-mode mail is still received depending on timing.

| Mail/Message receiving | 0 |
|---------------------------|-----------|
| | Receiving |
| Canc | el |

After reception, receive results appear and mail ring tone sounds (⊠ appears).

- Received mail is saved in *Inbox*. i-mode mail is sorted into various folders according to Sort rules (127 P. 242).
- When multiple i-mode mail and Message R/F are received simultaneously, the ring tone of the lastly received i-mode mail or the one set for the Message R/F rings.



In the receive results screen, select *Mail* and press •.

- Folders containing unread mail are pink.
- SMS are also saved in Inbox.



 If no operations are performed in receive results screen for approximately 30 seconds, the screen before reception automatically reappears. *xx mail message(s)* appears when the stand-by display reappears.

Select folder, press
, select i-mode mail and press .

- Refer to P. 236 for details on viewing received mail.
- Refer to P. 233 for details on viewing attachment file.

Note

- Melody plays if Melody Auto replay is set to Auto replay. Press
 or move to another screen to stop. Melodies which exceed 100 KB cannot be played back.
- When an image is attached, image, attachment type icon and file name appear below message.
- Melody and i-αppli To are both disabled if both are attached.
- Set i-mode mail size (message text + file attachment or pasted data) restrictions for incoming mail. (From the i-mode menu, select *iMenu → English → Options → Mail Settings → Limit Mail Size.*) When the set number of characters (amount of data) is exceeded, file attachments are received as attached files for manual reception. Pasted data is deleted at the i-mode center and cannot be received again.
- For Deco-mail with pasted images, the pasted images are displayed even if Receive attached file is set to not receive image.

Note

- Check if i-mode mail received from FOMA terminal and PCs were received as To, Cc or Bcc.
 (127 P. 236)
- The characters that do not appear correctly are replaced with spaces, etc.

Stopping ring tone

- Press the following.
 - Ring tone stops and Inbox list appears.
 - CRR, a Ring tone stops and stand-by or screen before reception reappears.
 - Ring tone stops and receive results screen remains.

Receiving when not in stand-by

● When Receive display is set to **Notice first**, mail ring tone sounds and ⊠ and Received results screen appear.

Receive Option

Selecting and Receiving i-mode Mail

After checking the subject of the i-mode mail stored at the i-mode center, select mail to receive or delete mail stored at the i-mode center before receiving. Set *Rcv option* setting to *ON* in advance to make Receive option available. (\mathbb{TP}^{P} P. 243) When set to *ON*, i-mode mail cannot be automatically received.

When i-mode Mail Is Received

When Receive option setting is set to **ON** and mail is received at the i-mode



center, the screen on the right appears in stand-by. (Receive option notice)

Press •, • or • to clear display. To select and receive i-mode mail, clear display first.

- When a call is received while the screen on the upper right is shown, the screen reappears after the call even if or is pressed.
- When the screen on the upper right appears, the mail ring tone and vibrator do not activate.

Selectively Receiving i-mode Mail <Receive Option>

In stand-by, press 🛛 🛽 .

- Connects to i-mode center and held i-mode mail appears.



screen appears. Press 1 [ON], select **Yes**, press • and perform step 1.

Select Receive, Delete or Hold for each i-mode mail and press •.

- Press : to check sections not shown.
- When a file is attached, the following icons appear to the right of attached file size.
 Image file attached.



- ♪ : Melody file attached.
- i-motion attached.ToruCa attached.
- Context file attached.
- To delete all mail held at i-mode center, select 問題 at the bottom of receive option screen and press ●. Select 法定 in the confirmation screen and press ● to delete all mail at i-mode center.
- - To re-select mail to receive/delete, select ₩v/t/ and press ●.

Open received i-mode mail. (I refersteps 3 and 4 on P. 229)

Related Operations

Selectively receive mail from i-mode

<Receive option>

In stand-by, press i ▶ *iMenu* ▶ ● ▶ メニュー / 検索 (Menu/Search) ▶ ● ▶ ♦ メール選択受信 (Receive Option) ▶ ■.

Check New Message

Checking for i-mode Mail

Received i-mode mail is held at the i-mode center while the handset is outside the service area, in Self mode, or turned off. (PP 228) Check and retrieve mail from i-mode center.

- Up to 1,000 messages in total of approximately 10 MB can be held at the i-mode center.
- Set types for Check new message (i-mode mail, Message R/F). (P P. 243)
- All i-mode mail is retrieved when Check new message is performed even if Receive option setting is set to ON.

 After checking new messages, even if checked again while
 b is flashing, messages are not checked. 0 appears for all types of mail.

- Refer to P. 247 for details on checking for SMS.
- When multiple i-mode mail and Message R/F are received, ring tone set for the last i-mode mail or Message R/F received sounds.

In stand-by, press $\square 61$ or $\blacksquare 4$.

- Alternatively, perform Check new message by pressing twice in stand-by.
- Check new message (127 P. 243) is performed according to settings in order from *i-mode mail* → *MessageR* → *MessageF*. (Icons (⊠, ℝ), E) appear for each type checked.)
- To cancel receiving mail, press while receiving.
- i-mode mail canceled while being received is held at the i-mode center ((blue) appears).
- i-mode mail may still be received depending on timing.

Results appear, and i-mode mail ring tone sounds when i-mode mail is received.

• **0** appears when no i-mode mail is held at center.

Open received i-mode mail. (@ steps 3 and 4 on P. 229)

Note

 Depending on signal strength, an error message may appear and check may not occur or connection may be interrupted.

Reply to i-mode Mail Replying to i-mode Mail

Reply to i-mode mail with message quoted or unquoted.

- Not available when Unsent messages memory is full.
- Refer to P. 248 for details on replying to SMS.

Open i-mode mail (resteps 1 to 4 on P. 229), press I (Reply/ Forward] and select reply method.

| To reply | <i>Re:</i> is entered at the beginning of received mail Subject. |
|----------------------------------|---|
| To quote message and reply | > is inserted at the beginning of message and received mail content is quoted. For Deco-mail, decorations and inserted images are quoted. |

 To reply to mail, press
 in messages list, or press
 in message screen.



- When selected i-mode mail cannot be replied to, Wrong reply dest appears.
- When i-mode mail with Broadcast is selected, reply destination screen appears. Press 1 [Reply to sender] or 2 [Reply to all].

Compose and send i-mode mail.

• Edit subject and message text. Refer to steps 2 and 3 on P. 220 for details.

Note

- Press
 while composing i-mode mail and end confirmation screen appears. Select Yes to cancel composing message. Canceled mail is not saved.
- If (a) is pressed in unedited reply screen, end confirmation screen does not appear.
- Replies cannot be sent to sender with mail address exceeding 50 characters. When mail cannot be replied to, appears in received message screen.
- Adding Secret code to mail is necessary for recipients with Secret code registered. (127 P. 222)
- If i-αppli To is pasted in message, i-αppli To is not quoted even with Reply with quote. In addition, i-αppli To data cannot be sent with Data Link Software or Ir exchange.

Replying Quickly <Quick Reply>

Send replies quickly from received message screen.

- Register message as Quick reply mail (CP P. 244) in advance. Save up to ten messages.
 - Open i-mode mail (☞ steps 1 to 4 on P. 229) and press @12 [Quick reply].

2

Select message text and press .

- To check message text, select message and press i [Agree].
- Check address, subject and message.

子 Press 重 [Send].

Forward i-mode Mail

Forwarding to Another Address

Not available when sent mail memory is full.

Open i-mode mail (127 steps 1 to 4 on P. 229) and press (a) 14 [Forward].

- *Fw:* is entered at the beginning of received mail Subject.
- For Deco-mail, decorations and inserted images are forwarded.

Compose and send i-mode mail.

• Edit subject and message text. Refer to steps 2 and 3 on P. 220 for details.

Note

- Press
 while composing i-mode mail and end confirmation screen appears. Select Yes to cancel composing message. Canceled mail is not saved.
- If (a) is pressed in unedited forwarding screen, end confirmation screen does not appear.

When a file is attached to forwarded i-mode mail

- Attachment files must be totally retrieved before forwarded. Attached files for manual reception that are not acquired yet cannot be forwarded.
- If i-mode mail with melody attached is forwarded to a model released prior to FOMA SH900i, melody may not be played properly.
- i-appli To, i-mode mail attachments and files with restrictions for output from the FOMA terminal are deleted.

Saving Mail Addresses and Phone Numbers to Phonebook

Save the received mail's sender and address, or mail address and phone number in message text to the phonebook.

- For SMS, the sender's/recipient's phone number is saved in the phone number field of phonebook.
- Saving in the phonebook cannot be performed in the following cases.
 - Sender's mail address that exceeds 50 single-byte characters
 - While Keypad dial lock is set

When there are 750 entries in FOMA terminal handset phonebook or 50 entries in FOMA card phonebook already saved

Saving Sender's/Recipient's Mail Address to Phonebook <Register Address>

In received message screen, press 7 1 [Register address] and select a saving method.

• For sent mail, press 1 in sent message screen.

| To save new to FOMA terminal handset phonebook | 1 |
|--|---|
| To save new to FOMA card phonebook | 2 |
| To add/overwrite phonebook | |

 Sender or mail address is entered in phonebook entry screen. Continue phonebook saving operations. (127 P. 97, P. 103)

Note

- While Function lock is applied to phonebook, enter terminal security code to save to phonebook.

Saving Phone Numbers and Mail Addresses from Message Text to Phonebook <Add to Phonebook>

In received message screen, select phone number or mail address, press () 72 [Add to phonebook] and select a saving method.

• For sent mail, press 182 in sent message screen.

| To save new to FOMA terminal handset phonebook | 1 |
|--|---|
| To save new to FOMA card phonebook | 2 |
| To add/overwrite phonebook | $ \begin{array}{c} \textcircled{3} \rightarrow \text{select name} \\ \rightarrow \blacksquare \end{array} $ |

 Selected phone number or mail address is entered in phonebook entry screen. Continue phonebook saving operations. (P. 97, P. 103)

Acquiring Attached Files for Manual Reception

 If Mail box memory is full, unprotected received mail is deleted in accordance with size of attached files.

Open received mail with attached files for manual reception (1277) steps 1 to 4 on P. 229), select a file name and press .

• The file is retrieved and saved to the Mail box.

 When there are attached files for manual reception that has not been acquired, an expiration date is

| Inb | 0X | Т | D |
|------|--------------------|---------------|-------|
| 10 | 6/11/2 | 0 16: | 11 |
| | eitai l estaur: | | D |
| How | about | this -END- | |
| 2₽ | DCOMO. | jpg | |
| 5.保存 | 期限: | 2006/ | 11/30 |

displayed at the bottom of message screen. When all files are acquired, the expiration date disappears.

View Attachment

Checking/Saving/Deleting Attached File

Check, save and delete attached files.

- Attached files are saved in a selected save destination in each category.
- If an attached file is not recognizable by the FOMA terminal (i.e. other files), the file is saved in the OTHER folder of microSD Memory Card.
 - Open received mail with attachments (B steps 1 to 4 on P. 229).

Select file with 🗋 and view.

| T | | |
|------------|--------------------------------|--|
| To view | | Attachment is shown or played. |
| To save | Files in Data box | |
| | Phonebook | ■41 (■51 for sent message) → Yes Saved to microSD Memory Card. To save after viewing Phonebook: Press ■ → ■ [Save] → Save to handset/Save to microSD → ■. |
| | Schedule/ ToDo/ Bookmark | ■ (1) (1) 5 (1) for sent message) → Yes Saved to microSD Memory Card. To save after viewing attachment: Press = → [Save] → Save to handset/Save to microSD → =. |

| To save | ToruCa | ■ 4 1 () 5 1 for sent message) → Yes → ■ → phone/microSD → ■ To save after viewing ToruCa: Press ■ → Ĩ [Save] (for ToruCa)/ ■ [Save] (for ToruCa) (details)) Yes = phone/microSD ■. |
|------------|------------------|---|
| | Document file | (m) 5 1 for sent message) → Yes → • Saved to microSD Memory Card. |
| | Other files | ● (1) (10) 5 (1) for sent message) → Yes → ● ● Saved to microSD Memory Card. |
| To delete | | |

 If a single attached file contains multiple phonebooks, schedules, ToDo lists or bookmarks, or if an attached file is not recognizable by the FOMA terminal (i.e. other files), the attached file cannot be viewed or saved to the FOMA terminal handset. Instead, save the attached file to microSD Memory Card.

Note

- Some images attached to i-mode mail may not appear correctly. Images with width and height exceeding 2,048 pixels or total image area exceeding 2,048 (W) × 2,048 (H) can be received but may not be displayed. Refer to "Displaying Saved Images" on P. 296 for details on images.
- Unprotected mail may be deleted if received mail has attached files larger than the available memory space.
- Compliant software is necessary for i-motion playback on PC or other devices. (IPP P. 437 "About Movie Player Software") Refer to DoCoMo web page for details.
- Melodies which exceed 100 KB cannot be played back.
- When files that are not recognizable by the terminal are saved to microSD Memory Card, the file name become one of OTHER001 to OTHER999.

View Image in Mail

Viewing and Saving Deco-mail Images

- Deco-mail pictographs can also be viewed and saved.
- Images can be saved in the *i-mode* folder or the *Decomail picture* folder in My picture of Data box. Deco-mail pictographs are saved in the *Deco-mail pict* folder in My picture of Data box.

Open received mail with image inserted (B steps 1 to 4 on P. 229) and press 5 [View image in mail].

For sent mail, press
 6.



7

Select image with : and view.

| To view | |
|---------|--|
| To save | $ \begin{array}{c} \hline \bullet & Yes \to \bullet & \bullet & select \\ \hline folder \to \bullet & \bullet \\ \bullet & For Deco-mail pictograph: \\ Press & \hline \bullet & Yes \to \bullet \\ \end{array} . $ |

Note

 For attached images, view and save with File attachment.

Save Template

Saving Deco-mail as Templates

- Templates cannot be saved if memory space is not available. Delete unnecessary templates and increase available memory space to save. (127 P. 226)
- Templates are saved in *Template* in Mail menu.
 - Open received Deco-mail (☞ steps 1 to 4 on P. 229), press @ 7 3 [Save template], select Yes and press ■.
 - For sent mail, press 83.

Note

- Saved template files are named automatically according to the saved date and time.
 Example: November 20, 2006 at 1:05:07 PM → 061120_130507
- Attachments in received Deco-mail are not saved.
- When an inserted image has file restrictions, the image is deleted.

Inbox/Outbox/Unsent Messages Displaying Messages in Inbox and Outbox

View received/sent/unsent i-mode mail and SMS.

- Both i-mode mail and SMS are saved in Inbox/Outbox.
- For received, sent and unsent messages, up to the following total numbers of i-mode mail and SMS entries can be saved.

| Received mail | 4 to 1,000 |
|---------------|------------|
| Sent mail | 1 to 500 |
| Unsent mail | 1 to 500 |

(Capacity varies depending on the size of messages.)

- Manage received/sent/unsent i-mode mail and SMS in folders. Folders can be created on the FOMA terminal handset.
- The FOMA terminal handset and FOMA card each have Outbox and Inbox folders. Sent mail in Outbox of both FOMA terminal handset and FOMA card are shown together in Outbox folder. The same applies for Inbox folder.
- Calls can be placed when mail address and phone number of sender is saved in phonebook in advance.

In stand-by, press ⊠ 1 [Inbox].

- Folders containing unread i-mode mail or SMS are pink.
- For sent mail, press <a>[2] in stand-by.
- For unsent mail, press ☑ 3 in stand-by.
- To list all the received/sent/unsent messages, press is [Show all] in the Inbox/Outbox/Unsent messages list.

Select folder, press , select i-mode mail or SMS and press .

 To view mail in mail-type i-αppli folder, select folder, press @, select View i-mode mail, press @, select i-mode mail and press
 .

| Inbox | To | 8 |
|---------------------|----------|------------------------|
| ₩06/11/2 ₩Keitai | 0 15:05 | j. |
| E Keitai | Hanako | |
| WComet a | approach | ning |
| Tomorrow, | around | i 12PM, a approachi |
| ng the Ez | arth | |
| I'm sure | it'11 t | be beauti |
| ful. | END. | |
| | -END- | |
| | | |

Message screen

| To end viewing | 3 |
|--|---|
| To view other messages | $\ensuremath{\overline{\mbox{\tiny CLR}}}\xspace \rightarrow \mbox{select mail}$ from messages list |
| To copy address, subject or message text of received/sent mail being viewed | 1111111111111 |
| To display in Full-screen | M. 4 (M. 5) for sent message) or (Eco) To return: Press a key other than, M. and |

Note

Message screen operations

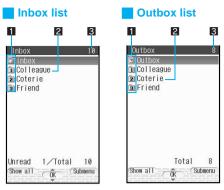
| Scroll down | |
|------------------------|---|
| Scroll up | · |
| Scroll down one screen | |
| Scroll up one screen | |
| Show next mail | • |
| Show previous mail | • |

Related Operations

Make calls from message screen <Phone>

- 1 In the received message screen, press (a) 8.
 - In the sent message screen: Press D .
- 2 Select Yes ▶ .
- **3** Press **•** to make a voice call.
 - To make a Videophone call: Press 🗐.
 - To call PushTalk: Press ☑.

Message Box List Layout



Unsent messages list



1 Folder icons

In the Inbox list, folder icons appear pink when an unread message is saved.

- 1 : Created folder
 - For folders (1) to (3), press (0) to (9) to open corresponding messages list.
- a: Mail-type i-αppli folder
- 2 Folder name
- 3 Total i-mode mail and SMS
- Number of all mail messages appears at the upper right of the display. Number of mail messages in a selected folder appears at the lower right of the display. Number of unread mail messages also appears at the lower left on the Inbox screen.

Note

- When deleting a mail-type i-αppli, select whether to simultaneously delete the automatically created mail folder. If the mail folder contains a protected message, folder cannot be deleted.
- Refer to P. 249 for details on copying to FOMA card.
- Refer to P. 320 for details on copying to microSD Memory Card.
- Refer to P. 330 for details on Ir exchange.

Messages List/View Layout Received Sent messages list messages list 14 5 24 5 6 Dutbox 🖅 Re:Confirmation 😤 Preparation for Doc 🕯 🕼 Re:Preparation for D 10:18 Keitai Hanako 10:38 Keitai Hanako ∍Will you go to the o 🜆 Weekend plans 11/23 Docomo Taro 11/23 Keitai Hanako 😹 Could you tell me yo 🕮 Thank you for hangin 11/22 Keitai Hanako 11/22 090XXXXXXXXX 🖻 A road show starts t 🜆 Bowling practice 11/21 Docomo Haruko 11/21 Docomo Taro Where is the meetin 🤻 🗐 Sake tasting party 11/21 Keitai Hanako 11/21 Docomo Haruko 8 7 8 7 9 6 Unsent messages list 34 Drafts Bowling Tourname 🗐 Welcoming party for 5 11/22 Docomo Taro 🖫 Change in meet 6 11/21 Keitai Hanako 7 Dinner 11/20 Keitai Hanako 8 1 Received message type : Unread i-mode mail Mail-type i-αppli unread i-mode mail 🗟 : Unread i-mode mail 🕅 : Mail-type i-αppli (protected) unread i-mode mail **e** : Read i-mode mail (protected) 🔝 : Read i-mode mail Mail-type i-αppli (protected) read i-mode mail : Unread SMS 🐴 : Mail-type i-αppli R : Unread SMS read i-mode mail (protected) (protected) 📾 : Read SMS S : Replied to i-mode mail 🕮 · Read SMS : Replied to i-mode (protected) mail (protected) 圖: Unread SMS on Forwarded i-mode mail FOMA card 🗩 : Forwarded i-mode 🚟 : Read SMS on mail (protected) FOMA card In Inbox folder, i-mode mail and SMS in Inbox on

In *Inbox* folder, i-mode mail and SMS in *Inbox* on the FOMA terminal handset and on FOMA card are shown together.

2 Sent message type

- Sent i-mode mail
- 🜆 : Sent i-mode mail (protected)
- 🕮 : Sent SMS
- E Sent SMS (protected)
- 왿 : Sent SMS on FOMA card
- I: i-mode mail sent with mail-type i-αppli
 i
- 3 : i-mode mail sent with mail-type i-αppli (protected)

In **Outbox** folder, i-mode mail and SMS in **Outbox** on the FOMA terminal handset and on FOMA card are shown together.

- 3 Unsent message type
 - : Unsent i-mode mail
 - Image: Unsent i-mode mail (protected)
 - 🕮 : Unsent SMS
 - : Unsent SMS (protected)
- 4 Folder name
- 5 Subject (Messages with no subject appear as Untitled.)

Shows up to the first 20 single-byte (10 double-byte) characters.

- 6 Attached data
 - 🖓 : GIF image I :vCalendar that has not been acquired 鍋 : JPEG image
 - 끼 : Melody
 - I: Bookmark

嗣:BMP file

- 🔁 : i-αppli To information 🖾 : Word file
- 🔛 : Movie/i-motion Cal: Excel file 3 : PowerPoint file
- : ToruCa. ToruCa (details) Contract file
- 嗣: PDF data
- 2 : Phonebook i PNG file
- : Schedule ैं?] : Data unable to view
- 記:ToDo 1 : Multiple files attached
- 7 Received date and time (received message)*/ Send date and time (sent message)/Saved date and time (unsent message)

Time for current day and date for other days.

- 8 Address (recipient)
- 9 the second sec time etc.
- The default setting lists messages in the order received at i-mode center, starting with the newest. (The display method can be changed. 239)
- Depending on the other party, received SMS are displayed as follows.
 - When the other party sends caller ID and is saved in phonebook Name saved in phonebook
 - When the other party sends caller ID and is not
 - saved in phonebook ... 090 (or 080, etc.) xxxxxxx When the other party does not send caller ID
 - User unset When the other party calls from a payphone

..... Payphone

Received Sent messages messages view view 1 2 3 4 6 1 2 5 7 Inbox Outhox 96/11/24 10:18 96/11/21 12:00 Keitai Hanako Preparation for Docomo ToDocomo Taro 8 Bowling practice Haruko We'll be having practice tomorrow for the big bo wling tournament. Time: 7PM. Place: Our usual bo Let's meet at 8PM. Place Our usual coffee shop. 9 I've attached a map. wling alley. Thanks! -END--FND-4 1 Add Bowling.jpg Map ipq 4.7KB

Folder name

Number of displayed characters varies according to the font size settings.

- Large font: 11 single-byte (5 double-byte) characters
- Standard : 14 single-byte (7 double-byte) characters
- Small font: 18 single-byte (9 double-byte) characters
- 2 Protected icon
- Appears when protected. 3 Shows receiving type (To/Cc/Bcc)
- 4 Received date (Shows date and time received at i-mode center or SMS center.)
- 5 Sent date and time
- 6 Sender
 - Sending type (To/Cc: shown when Broadcast is set.)
 - Shown when address set in To cannot be replied to (when address exceeds 50 characters, etc.).
 - 🐝 : Shown when address set in Cc cannot be replied to (when address exceeds 50 characters, etc.).
- 7 Address (recipient)
 - Sending type (To/Cc/Bcc)
- 8 Subject
- 9 Message

- END - appears at the end of the message. When receiving limit is exceeded, "/ " or "// " appears and the exceeding portion is automatically deleted.

- Attachment type icon/file name
 - 🖓 : GIF image
 - 🔏 : JPEG image
 - 2 : Melody
 - 🖫 : Movie/i-motion
 - 🔇 : ToruCa. ToruCa (details)
 - 嗣: PDF data
 - 1 · Phonebook
 - : Schedule
 - 🖅 : ToDo

 - 🕅 : Bookmark
 - 🖾 : Word file
 - 🔊 : Excel file
 - 3 : PowerPoint file
 - 🖓 · Text file
 - 嗣: BMP file
 - 🖗 : PNG file

- ैं?] : Data unable to view Attached files for manual reception that has not been
- acquired Attached files for
- manual reception that is being acquired
- Attached files for manual reception that cannot be acquired
- X : Invalid data pasted/ deleted attachment
- File with FOMA card.
 - restrictions applied

Refer to "Message screen operations" on P. 234 for details on screen operations.

- · If the destination or sender address is saved in Phonebook, their name appears in the destination or sender field. If it is not saved, the phone number or address appears. However, the name does not appear while Function lock is applied to phonebook or when phonebook is set as Secret (P. 113). To show names of secret phonebook entries, set Secret mode (CTP. 158) to ON.
- When an image is attached to received messages or sent messages, the image appears.

Saving Sent/Received Messages to Data Storage Center <Store at Center>

- Save i-mode mail and SMS saved on FOMA terminal.
- Mail that exceeds 10,000 bytes for the body text and mail with the inserted image exceeding 90 KB cannot be saved/updated.
- Select and save up to ten mails.
- This service is a paid service that requires subscription.
- Refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode]" for details on the restoration of saved mails.

In received messages/sent messages/unsent messages list (©P P. 235), select mail and press ©5 [Store at Center].

In the received messages screen, press
 2. In the sent message screen, press
 3, select Yes, press

 enter terminal security code and press
 .

Save messages.

| To save one | $ 1 \rightarrow \textbf{Yes} \rightarrow \bullet \rightarrow \text{enter} $ terminal security code $\rightarrow \bullet $ |
|---------------------------------|--|
| To save multiple messages | ② → select mail ● (repeatable) → III → Yes → ● → enter terminal security code → ● When the number of messages in the folder is less than ten, press ■ [SelAII]/■ [CIrAII] to select/ disable all. |

Note

- Attached file cannot be saved.
- SMS delivery reports cannot be saved.
- Check the phonebook transmission history for transmissions of saving to the Data Storage Center.
 (12) P. 114)

Managing Folders

Delete, sort and separate received/sent/unsent i-mode mail and SMS into folders.

 Up to 20 folders (not including *Inbox*, *Outbox*, *Drafts* and mail-type i-αppli folder) can be created, renamed and deleted. (However, names for *Inbox*, *Outbox*, *Drafts* and mail-type i-αppli cannot be edited or deleted.)

Creating folders <New folder>

In Inbox/Outbox/Unsent messages list (P P. 235), press @11 [New folder].

Enter folder name and press .

• To delete *New folder* name, press CLR for 1+ seconds.

Note

- Folders cannot be created on FOMA card.
- Enter up to 18 single-byte (9 double-byte) characters for folder name.

Editing folder names <Edit folder name>

In Inbox/Outbox/Unsent messages list (で了P. 235), select folder and press 圖〔1〔2〕[Edit folder name].

Edit folder name and press .

• To delete a folder name, press CLR for 1+ seconds.

Note

- Inbox, Outbox, Drafts and mail-type i-αppli folder names cannot be edited.
- Moving folder order upward <Move folder up>

In Inbox/Outbox/Unsent messages list (IPP. 235), select folder and press 13 [Move folder up].

Note

 Inbox, Outbox, Drafts and mail-type i-αppli folders cannot be moved.

Setting Folder security <Folder security>

- In Inbox/Outbox/Unsent messages list (P P. 235), select folder and press 1 4 [Folder security].
- 2 Enter terminal security code and press •.

Select ON or OFF.

| To set | 1 |
|------------|---|
| To disable | 2 |

Note

 When Folder security is set to ON, folder icon changes to a.

Terminal security code is required to view message list.

• When Folder security is set, the handset security code will be asked after pressing **a** [Show all] in the Inbox/Outbox/Unsent messages list.

Deleting folder

| Deletion method | Explanation | Screen | |
|--|---|-----------------------------|--|
| Delete one folder | Deletes folders individually. | Inbox/ Outbox/ | |
| Delete selected folders | Deletes folders collectively. | Unsent messages list | |
| Delete all read (received messages) | Deletes all unprotected read i-mode mail/SMS from all folders including <i>Inbox</i> . | Inbox list | |
| Delete all unread (received messages) | Deletes all unprotected unread i-mode mail/SMS from all folders including <i>Inbox</i> . | INDOX IISt | |
| Delete all (keep folder) | Deletes all unprotected i-mode mail/SMS. Folders are not deleted. | Inbox/ Outbox/ Unsent | |
| Delete all (delete folder) | Deletes all folders and all unprotected i-mode mail/ SMS. | messages list | |

Delete created folders <Delete>

- 1 In Inbox/Outbox/Unsent messages list (12 P. 235), select folder ▶ 10 2.
- 2 Press 1 [Delete one folder]. To select and delete folder: Press 2 select folder
 (repeatable)
- 3 Enter terminal security code > > Yes •

Delete all messages <Delete all>

- 1 In Inbox/Outbox/Unsent messages list, press 22.
- 2 Press 5 [Del all(keep fol)].
 - To delete all read mail: Press 3.
 - To delete all unread mail: Press 4.
 - To delete entire folder: Press 6.
 - In Outbox list/unsent messages list: Press 3.
 - To delete entire folder form Outbox list/ unsent messages list: Press 4.
- 3 Enter terminal security code > > Yes •

Note

- Inbox, Outbox and Drafts cannot be deleted.
- SMS on the FOMA card cannot be deleted.
- Folders containing messages can be deleted.
- Protected messages cannot be deleted.
- When Delete one folder or Delete sel folders is selected, messages in the folder are also deleted. However, if the folder contains protected messages, the folder and the messages in the folder cannot be deleted.
- When Del all(del fol) is selected, only unprotected i-mode mail and SMS is deleted. Folders containing protected i-mode mail and SMS will not be deleted.

Note

- Folders containing software compatible with a mail-type i-appli folder cannot be deleted. Delete the software and then delete the folder. When there is no compatible software, the folder can be deleted, but deleting one mail-type i-appli folder created in Inbox. Outbox or Unsent messages list will also delete all other mail-type i-appli folders.
- For deleting selected folders, press [] [SelAll]/[] [CIrAll] to select or clear all.

Managing Mail

Switching message display <Switch view mode>

Default setting Two lines

In the messages list, switch the view layout among the following six views.

 When the view layout is switched, the setting applies to Inbox, Outbox and Unsent messages.



Date/time+name*2

- *1 First characters of message for SMS.
- *2 Mail address or phone number when not saved in phonebook.
- *3 Phone number for SMS.

In received messages/sent messages/ unsent messages list (②P. 235), press 囫⑥① [Switch view mode].

Select a view mode.

| Two lines | 1 | Name | 4 |
|-----------------|---|----------------|---|
| Title | 2 | Date/time+name | 5 |
| Date/time+title | 3 | Address | 6 |

Showing sender's address <Check address>

In received messages list (IPP P. 235), select message and press (6) (Check address).

Sorting mail <Sort>

Mail view method

| Date (new→old) | Latest received/sent/saved date first |
|-------------------------------------|---|
| Date (old→new) | Latest received/sent/saved date last |
| By address | Depending on the sender's address, sorted by numbers \rightarrow upper case alphabet \rightarrow lower case alphabet |
| By subject | Depending on the title, sorted by single-byte (symbols \rightarrow numbers \rightarrow upper case alphabet \rightarrow lower case alphabet) \rightarrow double-byte (hiragana \rightarrow katakana \rightarrow kanji \rightarrow pictographs \rightarrow numbers \rightarrow upper case alphabet \rightarrow lower case alphabet) \rightarrow single-byte katakana. (Character code order is applied in each character type.) |
| Protected preferred [*] | Protected mail \rightarrow normal mail |
| Message with attachments* | Mail with attachments \rightarrow mail without attachments |
| Size (big→small) | The largest files first |
| Size (small→big) | The smallest files first |

* Messages are sorted with newest mail first in each criterion.

In received messages/sent messages/unsent messages list (27 P. 235), press @62 [Sort].

Select sort method, and press .

Note

- In Inbox and Outbox, i-mode mail, FOMA terminal handset SMS and FOMA card SMS are sorted.
- When sorting mail by size, i-mode mail and SMS in the FOMA terminal handset are sorted first and then SMS in the FOMA card is sorted.
- The default setting is *Date (new→old)* (sort by the date sent/saved/received) for received, sent and unsent mail.

Note

 Sort method returns to default setting when showing screens other than messages list. After checking message screen with changed display method, press
 or view message list again after *Move one* or *Delete one* and changes remain.

Moving mail to another folder <Move>

In received messages/sent messages/unsent messages list (IPP P. 235), select mail and press 3 1 [Move].

Select a transfer method.

| To move one | $\textcircled{1} \rightarrow \text{select folder} \rightarrow \textcircled{\bullet}$ |
|---|---|
| To move multiple ones in a folder collectively | ② → select message (repeatable) → () → select folder → () For deleting selected folders, press () [SelAll]/() [CIrAll] to select or clear all. |
| To move all in folder | $\bigcirc \bigcirc $ |

Moving to another folder from message screen <Move one>

In the received message screen ((ごP. 236), press 圖61 [Move one].

• Press 171 in the sent message screen.

Select folder and press .

Note

- SMS on FOMA card cannot be moved within card.
- Already received i-αppli mail can be manually sorted into the folders automatically created when downloading a mail-type i-αppli.

Protecting mail <Protect>

In received messages/sent messages/unsent messages list (@ P. 235), select mail and press () [Protect].

- In the received message screen, press
 21 to protect displayed mail.
- In the sent message screen, press 31 to protect displayed mail.

Select a protecting/disabling method.

| To protect one | 11 |
|--|---|
| To protect multiple ones collectively | (repeatable) → Image (repeatable) Press Image (SelAll) or [ClrAll] to select or disable all. |
| To protect all in folder | 13 |
| To disable protection of one | 21 |
| To disable protection of multiple ones collectively | 2 ⊇ → select mail (repeatable) → I Press i [SelAll] or [ClrAll] to select or disable all. |
| To disable protection of all in folder | 23 |

Note

 SMS on FOMA card cannot be protected. Copying a protected SMS to FOMA card will disable protection.

Deleting mail <Delete> Deletion method for mail

| Deletion method | Explanation | Screen | |
|---|--|---|--|
| Delete one | Deletes i-mode mail/ SMS individually. | Received/Sent/ Unsent messages list Received/Sent message screen | |
| Delete selected | Deletes selected unprotected i-mode mail/SMS collectively. | Received/Sent/ Unsent | |
| Delete all in folder | Deletes all unprotected i-mode mail/SMS from folder. | messages list | |
| Delete read in folder (received messages) | Deletes all unprotected read i-mode mail/SMS from folder. | Received | |
| Delete unread in folder (received messages) | Deletes all unprotected unread i-mode mail/ SMS from folder. | messages list | |

Delete mail individually <Delete one>

- 1 In the received message screen
 - (🕼 P. 236), press 🛛 3.
- 2 Select Yes \bullet •.

Delete mail individually from messages list <Delete one>

In received messages/sent messages/ unsent messages list (☞ P. 235), press ◎ 2 1 ▶ Yes ▶ ■.

Delete all mail in messages list <All in folder>

- 1 In received messages/sent messages/ unsent messages list, press 2.
- 2 Press 5 [All in folder].
 - To delete all read mail: Press 3.
 - To delete all unread mail: Press 4.
- For sent/unsent message: Press 3.

3 Enter terminal security code ▶ • ▶ Yes ▶ •.

Select mail and delete <Delete selected>

- 1 In received messages/sent messages/ unsent messages list, press @2.
- **2** Press 2 [Delete selected].
- 3 Select message (repeatable) ▶
 Yes ▶ ■.

Delete mail in i-appli folder <Delete>

- In Inbox/Outbox list, select i-αppli folder

 ^(α) [View i-mode mail].
- 2 To delete one, select received message ⓐ21 ▶ Yes ▶ ■.

 - To delete all sent/unsent mail in folder: Press
 (2) + enter terminal security code (...)
 (1) + Yes (...)
 - To delete read mail: Press 23 enter terminal security code
 Yes
 - To delete unread mail: Press 24 enter terminal security code
 Yes

Note

- In the messages list, selecting and deleting mail in the FOMA card is possible.
- For Delete selected, select up to 50 messages. When the number of messages in the folder is less than 50, press i [SelAII]/i [CIrAII] to select/disable all.
- Depending on i-appli software, i-appli mail may be deleted automatically from folder.

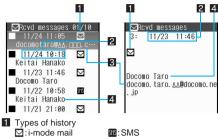
Received/Sent Messages History Using Mail History

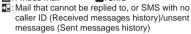
The FOMA terminal stores a history of up to 30 received/sent i-mode mail or SMS starting with the newest. Use history to send mail, make voice/ Videophone calls or save the other party's mail address or phone number to phonebook.

- When 30 entries are exceeded, entries are erased starting with the oldest.
- Parties that repeat are assigned as separate entries.
- Mail addresses from Broadcast mail are not recorded. All successfully sent mail can be checked in the sent messages screen. (127 P. 236)
- Up to 50 single-byte characters appear for mail addresses.

Received/Sent message list/details layouts

Here is an example using the received messages. Messages list Message details screen





- Received date/time (Received messages history) or Sent date/time (Sent messages history)
 - * When time and date are adjusted for local time, etc. (This is not available for i-mode mail.)
- 3 Other party's mail address or phone number
- 4 Name (Appears when the same mail address or phone number is already saved in phonebook.)

Note

Set to not show Received/Sent messages history.
 (127 P. 157)

Using Received/Sent messages history to send mail

In stand-by, press · · (+□) ∎ [RcvdHist].

 Smaller numbers in the upper right part of the display represent newer received messages.



⊠Rcvd messages 01/10

- Show rcvd msgs set to OFF appears when Show received messages is set to OFF.
- To send mail using sent messages history, press □ (□) ■ [SentHist] in stand-by. Show rcvd msgs set to OFF messages is set to OFF.

Select a history entry and press .

Press to end viewing.

Press 💿 [Mail].

- When i-mode mail history is selected, compose message screen appears. Recipient's mail address is entered in recipient field. Refer to steps 3 and 4 on P. 221 for subsequent steps.
- When SMS history is selected, compose SMS screen appears. Recipient's phone number is entered in recipient field. Refer to steps 3 and 4 on P. 246 for subsequent steps.

Saving phone numbers and mail addresses from Received messages history to phonebook

- In stand-by, press ← (*□) i [RcvdHist], select a history entry, press ● and 圙1 [Add to phonebook].
 - Alternatively, select an entry and press 1 in received messages list.



- Select i-mode mail history and perform operation to save mail address.
- Select SMS history and perform operation to save phone number.

Select a saving method.

| To save new to FOMA terminal handset phonebook | 1 |
|--|---|
| To save new to FOMA card phonebook | 2 |
| To add/overwrite phonebook | |

 Mail address or phone number is entered in phonebook entry screen. Continue phonebook saving operations. (127 P. 97, P. 103)

Note

• Save phone numbers and mail addresses from Sent messages history to phonebook. Operations are the same as for Received messages history.

Deleting mail history <Delete>

In the received messages/sent messages list (IBP P. 241), select history and press 2 [Delete].

Select deletion method.

| To delete one | 1 | Yes | |
|---------------|---|-----|--|
| To delete all | 2 | Yes | |

Related Operations

Make calls from mail history <Phone>

- 1 In the received messages/sent messages list, select history ▶ @ ③ ▶ Yes ▶ ■.
- **2** Press **•** to make voice call.
 - To make Videophone call: Press .
 - To call PushTalk: Press ☐.

Note

Making calls from message screen

 Calls can be placed when mail address and phone number of sender is saved in phonebook in advance.

Mail Setting

Setting FOMA Terminal Mail Functions

Changing Font Size

Default setting Normal

Set i-mode mail/SMS font size.

 Font size does not change in template list screens or Deco-mail preview screens opened from a template while composing mail.

In stand-by, press ⊠ 9 4 and select font size.

| Large font | 1 |
|------------|---|
| Normal | 2 |
| Small font | 3 |

Related Operations

Change font size in message screen by one-touch operation

Press 🖻 (🙆) in normal position.

Change font size from Submenu in message screen

- 1 In the received message screen, press ₪ ⊡3.
- In the sent message screen: Press @ . 4.
- 2 Select font size ▶ •.

Note (Related operations)

Sorting Mail Automatically <Sort Rules>

Set Sort rules for folders and sort i-mode mail and SMS automatically.

- Rules to sort mail in *Inbox*, *Outbox* and *Unsent messages* are not available.
- SMS cannot be sorted to FOMA card.
- Sort to up to 25 folders (including i-αppli) in Inbox/ Outbox and set up to ten rules for each folder.
- Normal mail can be sorted to mail-type i-αppli folders. Sort rules for mail-type i-αppli take priority.

Sort rules

The following six rules are available.

| Address (From) | Sort by sender's address. (Received mail only) |
|---------------------------------------|--|
| Address (From/Cc)/ Address (To/Cc) | Criteria are applied from the folder shown at top to From, To and Cc for received mail and To, Cc, and Bcc for sent mail. |
| Group | Sort by groups set in FOMA terminal handset phonebook. |
| Subject | Sort by text in subject. |

| Phonebook empty | Sort mail from senders not saved in FOMA terminal handset phonebook. Sort sent mail to a specified folder when an address not saved in the phonebook is entered in To/Cc. |
|------------------------------|--|
| All received (sent) messages | Sort all received (or sent) mail. |

- Folder 1 has top priority and the folder listed at the bottom has least priority if Sort rules for multiple folders coincide.
- Secret phonebook entries are treated as unsaved entries. Note that mail from secret entries will be sorted as *Phonebook empty* rather than *Group*. To apply *Group*, set Secret mode to *ON*.
- Sort mail by specified mail address. Specify the entire address including the portion after @ (up to 50 single-byte characters). However, @docomo.ne.jp can be abbreviated when sender is using an i-mode terminal (including mova). SMS can be sorted by specifying phone number.
- Note that Group and Phonebook empty are not available while Function lock is applied to phonebook.
- Mail from senders saved in FOMA card phonebook are sorted as *Phonebook empty*.
- i-αppli mail is sorted to the compatible mail-type i-αppli folder regardless of Sort rules.

Setting Sort rules to folders

In Inbox/Outbox list (P. 235), select folder and press 3 [Sort rules].

• Set rules are prioritized from top to bottom.

Select entry number and press to set Sort rules.

- Select a used number to edit sort rules.
 Re-select sort rules, press

 select Yes and press
- When setting mail-type i-αppli folder, Mail will be used by software. Set mail sorting? appears. Select Yes, and press

 to set Sort rules. Select No, press
 and the screen of step 1 reappears.

| To sort received mail by sender's mail address | Select Address(From) \rightarrow $\blacksquare \rightarrow$ select entry method $\rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow$ select (or enter) mail address $\rightarrow \blacksquare$ \blacksquare Up to 20 single-byte characters appear. |
|--|---|
| To sort mail by mail address of sender or recipient(s)/ broadcast | Select Address(From/Cc) or Address (To/Cc) $\rightarrow \bullet$ \rightarrow select entry method \rightarrow $\bullet \rightarrow$ select (or enter) mail address $\rightarrow \bullet$ \bullet Up to 20 single-byte characters appear. |
| To sort by group | Select $Group \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow$ select group name $\rightarrow \blacksquare$ \bullet Group name appears. |

| To sort by text contained in subject | Select Subject $\rightarrow \bullet \rightarrow$ enter text $\rightarrow \bullet$ \bullet Enter up to 30 single-byte (15 double-byte) characters. The first 20 single-byte (10 double-byte) characters are shown. |
|--|--|
| To sort by mail addresses not in FOMA terminal handset phonebook | Select <i>Phonebook empty</i> → ■ |
| To sort by all received (sent) messages | Select All rcvd messages or All sent messages → → Yes → All rcvd (sent) messages is set to 1. Select No and press to set to specified number. |

R

Repeat step 2 to set multiple rules.

Press [Complete].

Deleting specified sort rules

Sort rules can be deleted.

In Inbox/Outbox list (P. 235), select folder and press 3 (3 [Sort rules].

Select sort rule, press i and select a deletion method.

| To delete one | $(1) \to Yes \to \bullet \to \bullet$ |
|---------------|--|
| To delete all | $2 \rightarrow \text{Yes} \rightarrow \bullet \rightarrow \bullet$ |

Adding Signature to i-mode Mail <Save Signature>

Default setting ON

Add a signature to notify name, phone number and mail address. Also, decorate a signature.

- Set to automatically add (enter) signature to the text when composing i-mode mail.
- Only one signature can be saved.
- Signature cannot be added to SMS.

In stand-by, press ⊠ 9 0.

• When a signature is already saved, the saved signature appears.

Enter signature, press
and
[ON].

 Enter up to 10,000 single-byte (5,000 double-byte) characters. Insert up to 90 KB of images. Line breaks (4) are available.

Related Operations

Decorate signature

In stand-by, press ⊠ (9 (0) ► Decorate signature referring to steps 3 to 6 of "Inserting message text wile decorating" on P. 224.

Delete signature

In stand-by, press 90 is respectively (for 1+ seconds) is 2.

Setting Check New Message Details <Check New Message>

Default setting i-mode mail, Message R, Message F: *ON* Set message type to check (i-mode mail, Message R/F).

In stand-by, press ⊠96, select type and *ON* or *OFF.*

| i-mode mail | $\textcircled{1} \rightarrow \fbox{1}$ [ON] or $\textcircled{2}$ [OFF] |
|-------------|--|
| Message R | $2 \rightarrow 1$ [ON] or 2 [OFF] |
| Message F | $3 \rightarrow 1$ [ON] or 2 [OFF] |

Press ፪ [Complete].

Selecting and Receiving i-mode Mail <Receive Option Setting>

Default setting OFF

 All mail is retrieved when checking for new messages even if Receive option setting is set to ON. To not retrieve all mail, set to not check i-mode mail. (IPP P. 231)

In stand-by, press ⊠ 9 8, press 1 [ON], select Yes and press ■.



Creating Mail Member List <Mail Member>

Save multiple addresses for a mail member to easily specify multiple addresses. Unlike Broadcast mail, multiple addresses are specified collectively.

- Save up to five mail addresses per mail member.
- Save up to ten mail members.
- Charges are the same as when sending one mail. (Network charges will increase as addresses are added.)

Saving addresses for mail members

In stand-by, press ⊠ 9 9.

Select number for mail member and press

 select a slot and press
 .

- Select entry method and press •, select (or enter) mail address and press •.
 - When number selected is already in use, *Overwrite*? appears if entry method other than
 [2] [Direct input] is

pressed. Select Yes and

| M | emb | er | 1 | | | | | |
|---|-----|----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|----|
| 1 | do | 00 | 10. | tar | 0.1 | 176 | loc | 00 |
| 2 | | | | | | | | |
| 3 | | | | | | | | |
| 4 | | | | | | | | |
| 5 | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | |

press
 to select mail address. Select No, press

and the screen of step 3 reappears. When
 [Direct input] is selected, the address entry screen appears.

• To add mail address, select a slot, press • and repeat step 3.

Press [Complete].

Editing mail member names

- In stand-by, press ⊠ 9 9, select mail member and press ଢ 1 [Edit member].
 - To reset member name, select a mail member and press

| Edit member | 8/2 |
|-------------|-----|
| Member 1 | 072 |
| | |

[a] [Reset one member]. Select Yes and press • to reset member names (*Member 1* to *Member 10*).

Edit member name and press .

- Enter up to 20 single-byte (10 double-byte) characters.
- Press CLR for 1+ seconds to delete member name.

Deleting addresses saved for mail members

In stand-by, press ⊠ 9 9, select mail member and press ●.

Select mail address, press 🖻 and select deletion method.

| To delete one | $1 \rightarrow \textbf{Yes} \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow \blacksquare$ |
|---------------|--|
| | 2 → Yes → • → • Delete all addresses for specified mail member. |

Setting Whether to Automatically Replay Melody <Melody Auto Replay>

Default setting Auto replay

Set whether to automatically play melodies attached or pasted to Message R/F or received i-mode mail.

Melodies which exceed 100 KB cannot be played back.

In stand-by, press ⊠ 9 3 and select whether to automatically play melodies.

| | | E Melody Auto replay E11 Auto replay C21 Auto replay C22 Auto replay off |
|--------|---|---|
| replay | 1 | Plays automatically when opened. |
| replay | 2 | Does not play automatically when opened. |

Note

Auto

Auto

off

 When Auto replay is set while in Manner mode, a confirmation screen appears to select whether to play or not. Select Yes to play.

Setting Quick Reply Mail Message <Quick Reply Mail>

Set messages in advance for Quick reply (127 P. 231).

- Ten messages of up to 500 single-byte (250 double-byte) characters can be saved.
- The following messages are preset.

| 1 | また後でかけ直し ます (Will call back later) | 6 | よろしくお願い致 します (Your cooperation is greatly appreciated) |
|---|---|---|---|
| 2 | OKです (OK) | 7 | キャンセルです (Canceled) |
| 3 | NGです (No good) | 8 | 今忙しい (Busy) |
| 4 | ありがとうござい ます (Thank you very much) | 9 | 了解しました (Understood) |
| 5 | ごめんなさい (l'm sorry) | 0 | ちょっと待ってく ださい (One moment please) |

In stand-by, press ⊠ 9 1, select number of the message to save or edit and press ■.

Edit message and press .

Setting Whether to Receive Attached Files <Rcv Attached File>

Default setting All attachments

Set attached file types to be received. Attached files set not to be received are not acquired when mail is received. They are treated as attached files for manual reception.

 Refer to P. 232 on how to acquire user-acquired attached files for manual reception.

In stand-by, press $\boxed{9}$ [9] [2].



- Select type of attachment, press and then press **a**.
 - 🗹 appears for selected and 🗌 appears for unselected entries. Press

 to switch.
 - Press [[SelAll]/[[CIrAll] to select or clear all.

Note

- · For Message R/F, all attached files are received regardless of settings.
- Melodies in MFi format pasted in the message text are received regardless of settings.

Setting Received Mail Notice While Using Other Functions <Receive Display>

Default setting Notice first

Set notification method for when mail is received while using other functions.

 Receive display and receive results are not shown while a call is in progress, i-appli is running, the camera is being activated, the handset is being positioned by GPS, pattern definitions are being updated. Streaming type i-motion is being downloaded.

In stand-by, press 95 and select notification method.

| Notice first | 1 | When receiving mail, received , R, F or m icon appears, called LED flashes and Mail ring tone sounds. |
|--------------------|---|--|
| Operation first | 2 | When receiving mail, received , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , |

Checking Mail Settings Status <Check Mail Settings>

In stand-by, press $\square (9) \bigcirc (3)$.

Press : to turn the

Press • to end checking.

page.

| Check mail settings | |
|---------------------|----|
| Rcv attached file | |
| Image | ON |
| Melody | ON |
| i-motion | ON |
| ToruCa | ON |
| PDF | ON |
| Tool data | ON |
| Other | ON |
| | |

Resetting Mail Settings <Reset Mail Settings>

Reset mail settings to default values.

In stand-by, press $\square (9) \cap (4)$.

Enter terminal security code, press •, select Yes and press •.

Note

- The following settings are not reset.
 - Save signature SMS center
 - Quick reply mail SMS expiry SMS input character
 - Mail member

Related Operations

Apply Function lock to Mail <Function lock>

In stand-by, press 9 0 5 ▶ enter terminal security code) •).

Compose/Send SMS

Composing and Sending SMS (Short Messages)

Compose and send SMS.

- Enter phone number as the address for SMS.
- Number of characters that can be entered in SMS message text depends on SMS input character setting.
- Single-byte katakana and pictographs in SMS message text may not appear correctly for recipient.
- Exchange messages with users of non-DoCoMo overseas telecommunications providers. Refer to the DoCoMo web page for information on available countries and providers.

In stand-by, press ⊠ 5.

| Cor | pose | SMS | |
|-----|------|-----|--|
| TO | | | |
| M28 | | | |

Select *To*, press **•** and select an entry method.

| - | |
|---|--|
| To select from phonebook | → select recipient → ● If phone number exceeds 20 digits, exceeding portion is deleted. |
| To enter directly | ≥ → enter address → ● Enter phone number (up to 20 digits). Press ① for 1+ seconds to enter +. Enter up to 21 digits if + is entered. For addresses of non-DoCoMo overseas telecommunications providers, enter + (press ① for 1+ seconds), the country code, and the recipient's mobile phone number. If the phone number begins with 0, remove the 0. Alternatively, enter 010, the country code and the phone number. (Add 010 to reply to SMS received from abroad.) |
| To select from Sent messages history | 3 → select recipient → ● → ● Selectable when there are SMS sent messages. |
| To select from Received messages history | ④ → select recipient → ● → ● Selectable when there are SMS received messages. |

Select *Msg*, press •, enter message text and press •.

- If SMS input character is set to Japanese(70Chara), up to 70 single- or double-byte characters can be entered.
 If SMS input character is set to English(160Chara), up to 160 single-byte alphanumeric characters can be entered.
- Line breaks (4) are counted as one character when set to Japanese(70Chara) and two characters when set to English(160Chara).
 Spaces (blanks) are counted as one character.
- When set to English(160Chara), []^|{}~ are counted as single-byte characters in the message entry screen but are counted as double-byte characters when sent. Transmission failed may appear and message may not be sent even if 160 or fewer characters are entered in the message entry screen.

Press [Send].

- When complete, Sent SMS appears.
- To set delivery notice, press 3 and either
 1 [Request] or 2 [Do not request].
- To set expiration date, press (a) (4), select expiration date and press (•).

Note

- When entering address, + can only be entered at the beginning.
- Depending on the signal status, messages may not be sent. SMS that cannot be sent is saved as unsent SMS.
- Text may not appear correctly on receiving end depending on signal status.
- SMS can be exchanged without i-mode subscription.
- The FOMA terminal receives Short mail from mova service i-mode terminals as SMS.
- Up to a combined total of 20 received and sent SMS can be saved on the FOMA card. Unsent SMS cannot be saved on the FOMA card.
- Delivery notice and expiration date set at time of sending are not reflected on Report request and SMS expiry.

When called during editing

• Previous screen reappears after disconnecting and editing can be resumed.

When 184 or 186 is added (P. 46)

• SMS cannot be sent when **186** is added to beginning of address. SMS can be sent when **184** is added, but caller ID is notified.

Saving SMS (Short Messages) and Sending Later <Save SMS>

Save SMS being composed to FOMA terminal handset and continue composing at a later time. Edit saved SMS and send.

- Refer to P. 245 for details on composing SMS.
- Up to 500 sent and unsent SMS (combined with i-mode mail) can be saved on the FOMA terminal handset.

Saving unsent SMS

- Press 2 [Save] while composing SMS (3 steps 1 to 3 on P. 245).
 - SMS being composed is saved as unsent SMS.

Note

- Press a while composing SMS and the end confirmation screen appears. Select Yes to cancel composing SMS. Canceled SMS is not saved.
- Unsent SMS cannot be copied (saved) to FOMA card.

Editing/Sending saved SMS

In unsent messages list (1 P. 235), select SMS and press .

Select item, press •, edit and press i [Send].

• Edit using same steps as when composing new message. Refer to steps 2 and 3 on P. 246 for details.

Editing/Resending sent SMS

In sent messages list (P. 235), select SMS and press .

Edit/Resend mail.

Receive SMS

Receiving SMS (Short Messages)

SMS is automatically received.

- Up to a combined total of 1,000 received SMS and i-mode mail can be saved on the FOMA terminal handset. (Capacity varies depending on size of received messages.)
 - SMS is automatically received.

SMS receive results appear and SMS ring tone sounds (MM appears).



Meaning of icons displayed in stand-by

- Mig (red font) : Unread SMS.
- Unread i-mode mail and SMS.
 i-mode mail and SMS on FOMA
 - terminal handset are full.
- (blue font): FOMA card SMS is full.
 (red) : i-mode mail and SMS on FOMA terminal handset are full, and SMS on FOMA card is full.

In the receive results screen, select *Mail* and press •.

 If no operations are performed in receive results screen for approximately 30 seconds, the screen before reception automatically reappears. xx mail message(s) appears when the stand-by display reappears.

Select folder, press •, select SMS and press •.

 Refer to "Checking for SMS (Short Messages)" on P. 247 for details on viewing received SMS.

Note

- SMS ring tone can be changed. (127 P. 117)
- SMS on FOMA card cannot be overwritten.
- Copy sent SMS saved on FOMA terminal handset to FOMA card. Delivery reports cannot be copied.
- When sent SMS are copied to FOMA card, the delivery reports are also copied.

Receiving when not in stand-by

 When Receive display is set to Notice first, SMS ring tone sounds and icon (127 P. 247) and Received results screen appear.

Checking for SMS (Short Messages) <SMS Check>

Received SMS is held at the SMS center while the handset is outside the service area, in Self mode, or turned off. Retrieve from the SMS center.

In stand-by, press <a>[□62].

 After the screen on the right appears, automatic retrieval starts if there is SMS held at the center.



Note

- SMS cannot be received anymore when FOMA terminal handset and FOMA card memory are full. Delete/View unread SMS or disable protection.
 (127 P. 239) Read SMS or unprotected SMS are overwritten in order from the oldest first.
- Automatic retrieval may not start immediately after checking.

Viewing Received SMS (Short Messages) <Display Received SMS>

Open received SMS.

- Received SMS are saved in *Inbox*. SMS are sorted into various folders according to Sort rules (127 P. 242).
- Received SMS copied to FOMA card are also saved in *Inbox*.

In stand-by, press ⊠ 1.

- Box list layout (P. 235)
- To view sent SMS, press <a>[2] in stand-by.
- To view unsent SMS, press ☑ 3 in stand-by.

Select folder, press , select SMS and press .

 Message list/view layout for messages (CP P. 235)

| Inbox | To | 10 |
|---------|---------|----|
| 96/11/2 | 0 14:06 | |
| | XXXX | |
| hi | | |
| -END- | | |
| | | |

SMS screen

- To view received SMS in FOMA card, select *Inbox*, press •, select SMS and press •. In *Inbox*, received SMS list appears for both FOMA terminal handset and FOMA card. Distinguish by the icon. (IPP. 235)
- To view sent SMS in FOMA card, select
 Outbox, press

 select SMS and press
 .
- Press 🕿 to end viewing.

Note

 Up to a combined total of 1,000 received SMS and i-mode mail can be saved on the FOMA terminal handset.

Replying to Received SMS (Short Messages) <Reply to SMS>

Reply to SMS.

In SMS screen, press 1 1 [Reply], compose SMS and press i [Send].

- Press 1 (3 [Reply with quote] in SMS screen to quote the received SMS for creating a reply.
- Enter characters in message text according to sender's SMS input character.
- Refer to steps 2 and 3 on P. 246 for details.

Note

- Quick reply is not available for SMS.
- SMS from User unset/Payphone/Not support cannot be replied to.
- If SMS in reply to FOMA card SMS is saved while being composed, the SMS is saved as unsent SMS on the FOMA terminal handset.
- + is added automatically at beginning of addresses if sender is a user of a non-DoCoMo overseas telecommunication provider.

Forwarding Received SMS (Short Messages) <Forward SMS>

- In SMS screen, press 🕲 1 4 [Forward], compose SMS and press 🗊 [Send].
 - Refer to steps 2 and 3 on P. 246 for details.

SMS Settings SMS (Short Messages) Settings

Setting SMS (Short Messages) Center <SMS Center>

Default setting DoCoMo (DoCoMo SMS center)

SMS center host can be changed.

Not available if FOMA card is not inserted.

Setting does not normally need to be changed.

In stand-by, press ⊠ 9 🛞.



Press 2 [User set], enter SMS center address and press •.

- Enter up to 20 digits.
- Press 1 [International] or 2 [Unknown].

Receiving Notification of SMS (Short Messages) Retrieval <Report Request>

Default setting Do not request

Set whether to receive delivery report for SMS. • Not available if FOMA card is not inserted.

In stand-by, press ⊠ 9 ⊞.



Select whether to receive delivery reports.

| To receive | 1 |
|----------------|---|
| To not receive | 2 |

Note

- Delivery reports are received as SMS.
- Report request can be set when SMS is composed also.
- A delivery report by itself cannot be copied to FOMA card or microSD Memory Card or be sent by Ir data transmission.

Setting SMS (Short Messages) Expiration Date <SMS Expiry>

Default setting 3 days

Set number of days for SMS to be stored at the SMS center on occasions such as the receiver being outside the service area and failed to receive the SMS. Select from 0 to 3 days. If you select 0 days, SMS is resent within a fixed time period and deleted from the center.

- Not available if FOMA card is not inserted.
 - In stand-by, press ⊠ 9 . 1 and select length of time.

0 days 1 1 day 2 2 days 3 3 days 4



• Setting can be made when SMS is composed also.

Setting Character Type to Enter in Message <SMS Input Character>

Default setting Japanese(70Chara)

Set type of characters that can be entered in SMS message text.

• Not available if FOMA card is not inserted.

In stand-by, press ⊠ 9 . 2.

Select character type to enter.

| Japanese | 1 |
|-------------------------------------|---|
| Single-byte alphanumeric characters | 2 |

Saving SMS (Short Messages) to FOMA Card

Copy SMS saved in FOMA terminal handset to FOMA card. Up to a combined total of 20 received and sent SMS can be saved to FOMA card.

• Insert FOMA card in advance.

Copying SMS (Short Messages) from FOMA Terminal Handset to FOMA Card

Example: When copying received SMS

In stand-by, press ⊠1 [Inbox], select folder and press ■.

- Received messages list appears.
- For sent SMS, press <a>[2] in stand-by, select folder and press <a>[.
- To copy from SMS screen, press <a>[6] (For sent SMS, press <a>[7] (in SMS screen. Select Yes and press <a>[8] to copy.

2 Select SMS in FOMA terminal handset and press III 3 [Copy to UIM].

 When an SMS in FOMA terminal handset is selected, *Copy to UIM* appears in the Submenu.

Meaning of icons

- In FOMA terminal handset
- 📾 : Unread SMS 🛛 🕮 : Unread SMS (protected)

Read SMS (protected)

Est Sent SMS (protected)

- 📾 : Read SMS
- E Sent SMS
- In FOMA card
- 📓 : Unread SMS
- 🚟 : Read SMS
- E: Sent SMS

Select copy method.

• Received SMS is copied to *Inbox*, and sent SMS is copied to *Outbox*.





Note

- Unsent SMS cannot be copied to FOMA card.
- Delivery reports cannot be copied.
- Overwrite copy is not available.
- Copying is canceled when the save limit for FOMA card is reached.
- When sent SMS are copied to FOMA card, the delivery reports are also copied. However, sent date and time are not copied.

Copying FOMA Card SMS (Short Messages) to FOMA Terminal Handset

Example: When copying received SMS

In Inbox list (P P. 235), select *Inbox* folder and press •.

- For sent SMS, press <a>[2] in stand-by, select
 Outbox folder and press <a>[■].
- To copy from SMS screen, press 6 ④ (for sent SMS, press ● 7 ④) in SMS screen. Select **Yes** and press ● to copy.

Select SMS in FOMA card and press **1**33 [Copy to the phone].

- When an SMS in FOMA card is selected, Copy to the phone appears in the Submenu.
 Meaning of icons
- 圖: Unread SMS on FOMA card
- Read SMS on FOMA card
- E Sent SMS on FOMA card

Select copy method.

 Received SMS is copied to *Inbox*, and sent SMS is copied to *Outbox*.



| To copy one | $1 \rightarrow Yes \rightarrow \bullet$ |
|-----------------------|--|
| To select and copy | ② → select SMS ● (repeatable) → Ø → Yes → ● Press Ĩ [SelAll] or Ĩ [CIrAll] to select or disable all. |

Note

- Overwrite copy is not available.
- Copying is canceled when the save limit for FOMA terminal handset (up to a combined total of 1,000 for i-mode mail and received SMS, up to 500 for sent SMS) is reached.

Delete SMS Deleting SMS (Short Messages)

Delete SMS with the same operation as "Deleting mail" on P. 240.

Scan Message

Avoiding Unsolicited SMS (Short Messages)

Check SMS that came with phone numbers or URL in the confirmation screen.

- The confirmation screen does not appear for mopera mail.
- Refer to P. 457 for details on setting and P. 459 for details on the confirmation screen.

i-αppli

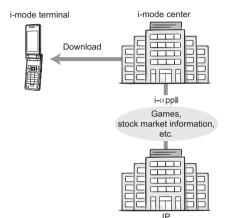
| • i-αppli | <i-αppli>252</i-αppli> |
|---|--------------------------------------|
| • i-αppliDX | |
| Downloading i-αppli from Sites | <download>253</download> |
| • Running i-αppli | <run i-αppli="">254</run> |
| Running i-αppli Automatically | <auto start="">261</auto> |
| • Running i- α ppli from Sites or i-mode Mail | -αppli To Function>262 |
| Setting i-αppli as the Stand-by Display | . <i-αppli stand-by="">263</i-αppli> |
| Managing i-αppli | |
| Viewing i-αppli Used Data in microSD Memory Card | |
| <used (contents="" by="" i-αppli="" td="" tra<=""><td>ansfer Compatible)>265</td></used> | ansfer Compatible)>265 |
| Using Various i-αppli Functions | |

i-αppli

i-appli

Download i-appli software from sites for more convenient use of the i-mode compatible FOMA terminal (i-mode terminal). Download various games to the i-mode terminal. Also, download market information i-appli and periodically receive automatic updates of the stock market.

With mapping i-appli, only necessary data is downloaded, enabling smoother scrolling. Directly save information from an i-appli to the phonebook or Schedule, or use an i-appli to link with Data box to store or retrieve images.



- To run i-αppli 254
- To run i-αppli automatically C P. 261
- Depending on the software, the terminal ID and UIM ID may be used.
- · Some software may transmit data when running. It is possible to configure the software not to transmit data.

Using Saved Data

Use certain i-appli software to view, save and use data (phonebook, bookmarks, schedules, images, icon information and ToruCa) saved in the i-mode terminal. The following can be performed using saved data.

- Add to phonebook
- Use icon information
- Save bookmarks
- Save schedule
- Retrieve images from Data box
- Save new ToruCa
- Save images to Data box
- Use microSD Memory Card

i-appliDX

Link i-appliDX with various information on the i-mode terminal (mail, call/received history, phonebook data, etc.), have animated characters assist in composing messages and inform who incoming callers are. Also link with mail to receive real-time information such as stock quotes and game progress.

Using Saved Data

Use certain i-appliDX software to view, save and use saved data such as mail, Redial, Received calls and ring tones in addition to saved data (phonebook, bookmarks, schedules, images, icon information and ToruCa) available for use with regular i-αppli. The following can be performed using saved data.

- Add to phonebook
- Use icon information
- Save schedule
- Use compose i-mode message screen
- View latest Received calls
- Save ring tones
- Retrieve images from Data box
- Change screen settings (stand-by, incoming/ outgoing calls, sending/ receiving mail, receiving Message R/F)

- View phonebook
- Save bookmarks
- Use Mail menu
- View latest redial numbers
- View latest unread messages
- Change ring tones (call, mail, Message R/F)
- Save images to Data box
- Save new ToruCa, select and retrieve ToruCa
- Use microSD Memory Card
- To verify the validity of the software, some i-αppliDX software may transmit data regardless of the software connection setting. The number of connections and connection timing differ depending on the software.
- Set the date and time before starting i-αppliDX software.

Mail-type i-appli

A mail-type i-appli is an i-appliDX that provides more enjoyable and convenient use of i-appli software by exchanging information via i-mode mail. Receive real-time information such as stock quotes and game progress.

 Some i-αppli mail may not be displayed properly when using mail-type i-αppli.

Osaifu-Keitai Compatible i-αppli

Use the convenient features of Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-appli, such as reading and writing data on an IC card, downloading electronic money or railway tickets, viewing the balance and usage history on the mobile phone.

- When using Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-αppli, information in the IC card is sent to the IP (Information Provider).

GPS Compatible i-appli

Use GPS compatible i- α ppli with GPS function for the more convenient and joyful software application. For example, easily search information on the present town or search a route to the destination from the present location displayed on the map.

- Using GPS compatible i-appli software sends location information to the information provider of the software used.
- When GPS function is used on GPS compatible i-αppli, set Location usage setting of the software used to Yes.

Other features

i-appli stand-by

Set i- α ppli as stand-by and enjoy receiving mail or making calls while the i- α ppli is running. In addition, use the stand-by to conveniently display up-to-date news, weather and other information or have your favorite character inform you of incoming mail and alarm times. (IPP P. 263)

• Use this function with software compatible with i-αppli stand-by.

i-appli auto start

Configure the i- α ppli software to start at a certain time, date or day of the week. Some software can also be set to start automatically at a preset interval. ((27 P. 261)

Camera

Use i- α ppli software to shoot still pictures with the camera on the i-mode terminal. ($\square P$ 266)

• Use this function with software compatible with camera function.

Ir exchange

Use i-αppli software to connect to infrared communication (Ir exchange) devices. Link to Ir exchange devices for even greater use of the i-mode terminal. (2 P. 266)

- Use this function with software compatible with Ir exchange function.
- Some data may not be transmitted depending on the Ir exchange function of the other device.

Infrared remote control

Use i-appli software to operate various electronic devices compatible with Ir remote control. For

example, use the pre-installed software, Gガイド番 組表リモコン (G-GUIDE program schedule remote control), to use the handset as AV remote control linked with the TV program schedule. (ご P. 333)

• Use this function with software compatible with Ir remote control function. Software compatible with the electronic device is required.

Bar code reader

Use i- α ppli software to read bar codes (JAN/QR codes) with the camera on the i-mode terminal. (127 P. 266)

Download

Downloading i-appli from Sites

Download i-αppli software from sites and web pages, and run the software on the FOMA terminal display.

 Save up to 100 i-appli. (Capacity varies depending on size of software.)

While viewing sites (1277) steps 1 to 3 on P. 188) or Internet web pages (1277) steps 1 and 2 on P. 194), select software and press •.

 The i-αppli download screen appears and downloading begins.

| For software which uses saved data, terminal and UIM ID, and microSD Memory Card | In the confirmation screen of download, select Yes → ■ ● Press i [Svd data] to view a list of saved data. |
|--|--|
| For software which uses location information | In the confirmation screen of download, select $Yes \rightarrow \bullet$ |
| When Run software? appears | Select Yes → ■ The software may start automatically after downloading is complete. In such cases, the software cannot be saved to the FOMA terminal immediately after downloading. After ending the software, select whether to save the software available for saving. |
| When the FOMA terminal handset does not have enough memory | After Memory is full or saved data exceeds limit. Overwrite? appears, select Yes $\rightarrow \infty \rightarrow$ select software (repeatable) \rightarrow (i) |
| To stop downloading | While <i>Downloading</i> is displayed, press 🗐 |

- Depending on the software settings, the setting screens (Stand-by display, Network set, Location usage setting) for i-appli may appear after downloading is complete. After setting items, press (i) [Complete].

Note

 If download is failed due to weak signal strength, save the data downloaded until the interruption and download the remaining data from the software list. (IPP . 254)

Note

- If software currently saved in the handset is deleted because of insufficient memory during download, and download fails due to weak signal strength, the deleted software cannot be restored.
- Information may not be provided if Network set is set to No.
- SSD appears when downloading i-αppli information or software from an SSL-enabled page.
- Once downloaded, some i-αppli software may continue transmitting data automatically. The FOMA terminal must be set up in advance to use this service.
- Terminal security code entry screen appears when i-αppli software is downloaded Function lock is applied to i-αppli. When terminal security code is entered, Function lock is temporarily unset and download is possible.

When selected software is already saved to the FOMA terminal

 If a new version of software is available, a confirmation screen asking whether to upgrade the software appears. Select **Yes** to begin download (upgrade).

When Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-αppli cannot be downloaded

 Depending on the IC card data capacity, downloading Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-appli may not be possible even when software storage space is available. Follow the instructions on the screen, delete the displayed software, and repeat the download. (Depending on the software to be downloaded, some software may not appear as candidates for deletion.)

For some software, the software must be started and the data on the IC card must be deleted in order to delete the software itself.

 While IC card lock is set, Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-αppli may not be downloaded.

Memory area

 Data box and i-αppli share memory area. Depending on the amount of data saved in Data box, i-αppli software may not be saved.

Downloading mail-type i-αppli software

Note the following when downloading mail-type i-appli software.

- When downloading mail-type i-αppli software, mail-type i-αppli folders are automatically created in Inbox, Outbox and Unsent messages. The folder name is the name of the downloaded mail-type i-αppli and cannot be changed.
- Save up to five mail-type i-αppli folders.
- If a mail-type i-αppli using the same folder is already on the software list, that software cannot be downloaded.
- If a mail-type i-αppli is downloaded again when only the folders for that i-αppli remain, those folders for the i-αppli can be re-used. To not use existing folders, delete the existing folders and create new folders. If new folders are not created, the mail-type i-αppli cannot be downloaded.

- Folders containing mail-type i-αppli cannot be deleted. If the folder contains no mail-type i-αppli, it can be deleted, but all folders created in Inbox, Outbox and Unsent messages are deleted collectively.
- Mail-type i-αppli cannot be downloaded while Function lock is applied to mail (2 P. 154).
- Mail-type i-appli that change the mail folder name cannot be downloaded or upgraded while Function lock is applied to mail.
- Mail-type i-appli that create new mail folders cannot be downloaded while Function lock is applied to mail.

Viewing i-αppli Information During Download <Software Info>

Default setting OFF

In stand-by, press **i** (𝒫) for 1+ seconds, press ③ [Software info] and ① [ON].

 Software description appears when download is started.



Run i-αppli

Running i-appli

 Some i-αppli software may transmit data automatically when started. Use Network set (12 P. 255) in advance to disable data transmission or check whether to connect when starting the software.

In stand-by, press (🖍) for 1+ seconds.

- Alternatively, press i (𝒫) twice to view the i-αppli screen in stand-by.
- To show only Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-αppli software, press •924 in stand-by and select IC card content.
- To show only GPS compatible i-αppli software, press 9272 in stand-by.

Press 1 [Software list].

- Titles of the software saved in the FOMA terminal appear.
- The following icons indicate the settings of the selected software.

Software list

Software list

1 EV29-JU29-i for SH

2 NAVITIME for SH

3 7-91715 ***

4 DCMX 712 ****

5 デコメ絵文字ポケット 6 Gカ゚イド番組表リモコン美

- Meaning of icons Software with i-αppli stand-by function
- Software with Auto start function
- : Software downloaded with SSL session
- L: i-αppliDX software
- 4 : Mail-type i-αppli software

- Software set as i-αppli stand-by
- Software set to Auto start
- E: Software with data transmission function
- is Software to save i-αppli used data to a microSD Memory Card
- : Software set to FOMA card operation restriction
- C: Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-αppli software
- : GPS compatible i-αppli software
- : Software incompletely downloaded
- a : Software transferred using iC transfer service (CPP. 268)

Select software to run and press .

 i-αppli start screen appears and the software starts



 For software incompletely downloaded,

| 1 |
|---------|
| 2 |
| lava" |
| POWERED |

Incomplete data, Download remaining data? appears. Select

Yes and press
to start downloading.

- To end, press while the software is running, select Yes and press .

Note

- If the FOMA card used when downloading the software is not inserted, some i-αppli may not run (start).
- When schedule or alarm time arrives, running software stops and the schedule or alarm notification screen appears. The software resumes when the schedule or alarm notification screen is closed.
 However, depending on the i-αppli software, the software may be ended when the alarm activates.
- Mail-type i-αppli can also be started from Inbox, Outbox or Unsent messages. Select the i-αppli mail folder from each folder list.
- Depending on the i-αppli, if a new version of the software is available, a confirmation screen for upgrading the software appears at startup.
- By installing a 3D polygon engine, 3D images can be displayed with i-cxppli.
 3D polygons express three-dimensional images with depth, by combining polygons (triangles, squares, etc.).
- If there is a high number of connections while running software, Data transmission is frequent. Continue transmission? appears. Select whether to transmit data or not.
- Some i-αppli software may save i-αppli used data to a microSD Memory Card. Saved i-αppli used data can be checked in i-αppli used data list. Check i-αppli used data properties for the software that uses an i-αppli used data. (CP P. 265)

Note

- If the microSD Memory Card or the battery pack is removed while the i-αppli used data is being saved/ deleted, the data may be unable to be viewed. In this case, format the microSD Memory Card with FOMA SH903i. (Formatting deletes all the data in the microSD Memory Card.)
- Some data saved on a microSD Memory Card may not be available on other models.
- Reading/writing data saved on/to microSD Memory Card from i-appli may become impossible while other running functions are using the card.

Starting i-appliDX software

- Some i-appliDX software may transmit data to verify the validity of the software regardless of the software connection setting. (The number of connections and connection time differ depending on the software.)
- If the correct date and time are not set, validity cannot be checked and the software cannot start.
- If the software is not validated, it cannot start until the validity is checked.

Related Operations

Start from Shortcut menu

In stand-by, press () select software (...

Set volume <i-appli volume>

View software description <Software info> In the software list, select software I III.

Note (Related operations)

Shortcut menu

- Register frequently used i-αppli in advance. (Φ P. 377)
 If a calendar is shown in stand-by, press (a) to disable
- the calendar before continuing with operations.

Setting i-appli volume

• Some i-αppli do not have sound.

Software info

- The information that appears in the description includes the software name, version, software by, storage, profile version, compatible models, Auto start time interval and SSL connection.
- The software name of the i-αppli cannot be changed.

Configuring the Connection Setting <Network Set>

For each i- α ppli software, set whether data can be transmitted while the i- α ppli is running.

- This setting is valid only for software that transmits data.
- Network set is set to Yes when software is downloaded.

In the software list (P. 254), select software and press 6 [Set software use].

Select *Network set*, press • and select whether to transmit data or not.

| Yes (transmit) | 1 |
|-------------------------------|---|
| No (not to transmit) | 2 |
| To check upon i-αppli startup | 3 |

Press 📱 [Complete].

Note

- Software may not function properly and information may not be available in a timely manner if Network set is set to *No*. This may also prevent the software from starting.
- Because images used with the i-αppli software and entered data is sent over the Internet, some of this information may be viewed by a third party. (Images used with the i-αppli software include images shot using the camera function operated with i-αppli, images acquired using the Ir exchange function operated with i-αppli and images viewed and retrieved from Data box operated with i-αppli.)

Configuring the Icon Information Setting <Icon Info Set>

For each i-αppli software, set whether the software should be notified regarding icons indicating unread mail and Message R/F, battery level, Manner mode setting and whether the handset is inside or outside the service area.

- This setting is valid only for software that uses icon information.
- Icon information is set to Yes when software is downloaded.
 - In the software list (P P. 254), select software and press 6 [Set software use].
 - Select *Icon info set*, press and press 1 [Yes].
 - 🕇 Press 🔳 [Complete].

Note

- i-αppli requiring use of icon information may not function properly if set to No.
- If Icon info set is set to Yes, the icon status for unread mail/Message R/F, battery level, Manner mode, and inside/outside the service area may be sent via the Internet to the IP (Information Provider) along with terminal ID and UIM ID, and this information may be viewed by a third party.

Configuring the Phonebook and History Access Setting <View Phonebook/History>

Set whether to allow the i- α ppli software to access the phonebook, Redial and Received calls. Setting this to **Yes** allows the i- α ppli to access the phonebook, Redial and Received calls automatically.

- This setting is valid only for software that accesses the phonebook and history information.
- Yes is set when software is downloaded.
 - In the software list (27 P. 254), select software and press 6 [Set software use].
 - Select Allow access to phone book/ call records by software, press and press 1 [Yes].

🏅 Press ፤ [Complete].

Note

 Setting this to No may prevent operation of some i-αppli software.

Configuring the Ring Tone and Screen Change Setting <Change Tone/Image>

Set whether to allow the i- α ppli software to change the ring tone and screen, and whether to show a confirmation screen when making the changes. Setting this to **Yes** allows the i- α ppli to change the ring tone and screen automatically.

- Change tone/image is set to Yes and Change tone/ image confirmation screen is set to No when software is downloaded.
 - In the software list (27 P. 254), select software and press 6 [Set software use].
 - Select Allow ring tone/image/icon changes by software, press
 and press
 [Yes].
 - To not allow changes, press 2 and proceed to step 4.

Select *Confirm all changes*, press and press 1 [Yes].

- To not show a confirmation screen, press 2.
- 🚺 Press 重 [Complete].

Setting Whether to Use Location Information <Location Usage>

Set whether to use location information for GPS compatible i-appli.

- Location usage is set to Yes when software is downloaded.
 - In the software list (127 P. 254), select software and press 6 [Set software use].
 - Select *Location usage setting*, press and press 1 [Yes].

Press [Complete].

Starting One Software from Another Software

Some software allow starting other software without returning to the software list.

- If the software to start is not specified, follow the instructions on the screen to select the software.
- If the software to start is not saved in the FOMA terminal, download the software.

Default Software

The following software are preset.

- モンスターハンター i for SH (Monster Hunter i for SH)
 NAVITIME for SH
- ケータイクレジット「iD (アイディ)」(iD credit
- payment service)
- DCMXクレジットアプリ (DCMX credit appli)
- デコメ絵文字ポケット (Deco-mail pictograph pocket)
 Gガイド番組表リモコン (G-GUIDE program
- schedule remote control)To use again after deleting,
- download preset software from the iMenu site, *SH-MODE*.

iMenu → メニュー / 検索 (Menu/Search) → 旨ケータイ電 話メーカー (Mobile phone manufacturer) → *SH-MODE*

QR code to connect to SH-MODE

SH-MODE is only available in Japanese.

■ モンスターハンター i for SH (Monster Hunter i for SH)

Hunt monsters in this game application. Enjoy the unique and high-quality graphics on the wide screen (QVGA compatible) as well as the flexibly designed contents.

Players are a "hunter" who targets monsters. Follow quests asked by the mayor or people of コ コット村 to play the game.

Starting the software

In the software list, select モンス ターハンター i for SH (Monster Hunter i for SH) and press .

• The software starts and title screen appears.

2 Select ゲームスタート (Start game) and press

• Select オプション (Option) to set sounds, vibration, saving function, key operations, etc. for the game.

ココット村 screen

Select a quest from the quest level in accordance with quests asked by the mayor or people of villages.

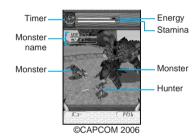
- Acceptable guests depend on the hunter rank (HR).
- The higher the player's hunter rank is, the more difficult acceptable quests can be.
- When an emergency quest appears, clear the emergency quest to accept the next-ranked quest.

Field screen

The display switches to the field screen after a quest is selected. Types of quests are 採集クエスト (Gathering quest) which is to collect mushrooms, etc., 討伐クエスト (Hunting quest) which is to hunt monsters and 捕獲クエスト (Harvest quest) which is to harvest monsters.

- Travel fields to get various items.
- Beat monsters to get items. The resulting items differ depending on the monster.

Battle screen



| Timer | : Indicates remaining time. Time is up when the white needle has |
|--------------|---|
| Monster name | come to the orange needle. Indicates monster's name and energy. The battle ends when all |
| Energy | monsters' energy is exhausted. : Indicates hunter's energy. The battle ends when the stamina is exhausted. |
| Stamina | Indicates hunter's stamina. Stamina decreases due to guards, emergency avoidances and dashes. |
| Menu | |
| Мар | Display a map in the field screen. |
| View quest | View the quest in progress |

| Мар | : Display a map in the field screen. |
|------------------|--------------------------------------|
| View quest | : View the quest in progress. |
| Preparation list | : Check the successfully |
| | prepared items. |
| Status | Display details of the hunter. |
| View equipment | : Display details of the current |
| | equipment. |

| Option | : Set sounds, vibration, saving function, key operations, etc. |
|--------------|--|
| | for the game. |
| Cancel quest | : Cancel the quest currently in |
| | progress. |
| Save | : Save the quest currently in |
| | progress. |

Key operation

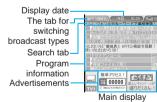
| Key | ココット村 screen | Field screen | Battle screen |
|------|--|-------------------------|----------------|
| ÷ | Move the cursor or characters. Move the cursor or characters in the direction of a pressed key. Press twice serially in the same direction in the field or battle screen to perform an emergency avoidance in the direction of a pressed key. | | |
| | Open the menu of facilities. | Execute an action. | Attack |
| •••• | Open/Close the menu screen. Close the item screen. | | |
| Ø | Open the item screen. | | |
| 4 | - | Camera left turn | |
| 5 | - | Camera center alignment | |
| 6 | - | Camera right turn | |
| 8 | - | - | Attack |
| 9 | - | - | Special attack |
| 0 | - | - | Guard |
| # | - | Dash | |

NAVITIME for SH

This convenient application is for searching destination and viewing a route with means of transportation by using GPS function (PP. 278) built in SH903i.

 Refer to "Using GPS Compatible i-αppli" on P. 279 for operation method of "NAVITIME for SH".

Gガイド番組表リモコン (G-GUIDE program schedule remote control)



This convenient application combines the TV program schedule with a remote control and does not incur a monthly usage fee.

Download TV program information on "terrestrial analog + BS digital" or "terrestrial digital + BS digital" broadcasting anywhere at any time, and easily check what programs are being shown at a particular time. Access information such as program titles, program details and start/end time for channels in your area. Programming your DVD hard disc recorder to record your favorite program is available through the internet. (The recorder must support remote programming. And the initial setting to enable this appli function must have been made.) Search programs using keywords such as program genre or TV personality name. Also operate TVs, VCRs and DVD players. (Some devices are not supported.)

Refer to "Using the Infrared Remote Control Function" on P. 333 for precautions on operating the remote control.

The screen shown is only an example. Actual screens may differ. Program listings for your area will be shown.

When using for the first time, perform initial settings and agree to the user agreement.

During overseas use, set the time of the phone to Japan time.

Only packet transmission charges apply. Refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode]" for details.

Starting the software



- The software starts and the main screen appears.
- When starting the software for the first time, the initial setting screen appears.

2 Enter your postal code, birth year and gender.

3 In the program schedule setting, select 地上デジタル (Terrestrial digital) or 地上アナログ (Terrestrial analog) and press ■.

🧧 Press 🙆 [設定] (Set).

- The user agreement screen appears.
- To agree, select はい (Yes) and press .
 - Press [OK] and the main screen and notice appear.

Displaying program information

• Switching between terrestrial and satellite broadcasts

In the main screen, press — to select the first tab for switching broadcast types and switch the broadcast wave with —.

 If viewing channels are not set when BS digital is selected, a notice appears. Press 圖 [設定] (Set) and set viewing channels.

• Changing program information

Program information and advertisements appear on the main screen. Press : to select channel while program information is selected. Press to switch the time frame. Press or to view program information. If remote control registration and remote control channel settings are activated. Ir data is transmitted.

• Common operations in the main screen

| To display help screen | This cannot be displayed when the remote control has not been set. |
|---|--|
| To display menu | 0 |
| To save to the schedule list (Terrestrial analog only) | To cancel saving, press the same button. |
| To switch remote control (in the order of: TV1 \rightarrow TV2 \rightarrow Video \rightarrow DVD) | 0 |
| To set recording schedule remotely | $(\underline{\mathbf{X}})$ |

• Operations in advertisements

When an advertisement is selected, the provided text information appears in a balloon. Pressing
 may start the function (Phone To, Mail To, Web To) set in the advertisement.

Viewing the program schedule for a specified date

In the main screen, press 凾 [メ ニュー] (Menu), select 日時設定 (Specify date) and press ■.

Select a date to display, press , select the time to display and press
 .

<u>3</u> ī

Press 🞯 [表示] (Display).

 The program schedule appears.
 When *Download programming data from* server? appears, select YES and press

 to view program information.

Searching programs by key word

- In the main screen, press 📜 and select the search tab.
- 2 Select ≠−ワ− k (Key word) with , press , select a date to be searched, enter key words or select from the search history and press .
 - To search by genre, select ジャンル (Search by genre) with and press . Select the date and the genre to be searched, press ., select a sub-genre and press .

3 Select 検索 (Search) with ⊡, press ●, select *YES* and press ●.

• In the search results screen, press
to show program information and save to the Schedule list (Terrestrial analog only).

Setting recording schedule remotely

If your DVD hard disc recorder supports remote programming, setting the recorder timer remotely for recording a TV program is available from the TV program schedule shown by this appli via the internet. To enable this appli function, the initial setting described below is required.

• Making the initial setting

Setup your DVD hard disc recorder for internet connection.

- Refer to the user's guide of the recorder for the setting produce.
- 2 In the main screen, press 圖 [メニュー] (Menu), select リモート録画予約 (Remote Record) and press ■.
 - Follow the guidance displayed to complete the initial setting.

Setting TV program recording schedule

Select a program to be recorded from the TV program schedule, and select リモート録画予約 (Remote Record) from the menu. Your DVD recorder designated by the initial setting can be programmed via the internet to record the selected program.

If the designated recording time overlaps with a pre-programmed one, a message indicating the overlapping will appear.

Only packet transmission charges apply.

Related Operations

View detailed program information

In the main screen, press 圖 ▶ 番組詳細 (Program details) ▶ ●.

View schedule (Terrestrial analog broadcasting only)

In the main screen, press 圖 ▶ 赤外線予約 (Ir remote record) ▶ ● ▶ 予約リスト (Schedule list) ▶ ●.

Set viewing channels

In the main screen, press 圖 ▶ 更新・設定 (Update or Setting) ▶ ■ ▶ 視聴チャンネル (Viewing channels) ▶ ■ ▶ select channel ■ (repeatable) ▶ 圖 ▶ ■.

Register remote control

In the main screen, press 圖 ▶ 更新 · 設定 (Update or Setting) ▶ ■ ▶ リモコン登録 (Register remote control) ▶ ■ ▶ select device to register ■ select the manufacturer 圖■ (repeatable).

Related Operations

Reset

In the main screen, press 囫 ▶ 更新・設定 (Update or Setting) ▶ ■ ▶ リセット (Reset) ▶ ■ ▶ ■ ▶ YES ▶ ■ ▶ ■.

- Set the remote control channel In the main screen, press 圖 ▶ 更新・設定 (Update or Setting) ▶ ● ▶ リモコンチャンネル 設定 (Remote control channel settings) ▶ ● ▶ select channel ▶ ● ▶ ●.
- Set the genre color classification setting

In the main screen, press 圖 ▶ 更新・設定 (Update or Setting) ▶ ■ ▶ ジャンル色分設定 (Genre color classification setting) ▶ ■ ▶ select genre ▶ ■ ▶ select sub-genre ▶ ■ ▶ select color ▶ ■ ▶ 圖 ▶ ■.

Update to latest program schedule In the main screen, press 圖 ▶ 更新 · 設定 (Update or Setting) ▶ ■ ▶ 最新に更新 (Update to latest) ▶ ■ ▶ YES ▶ ■ ▶ ■.

デコメ絵文字ポケット (Deco-mail pictograph pocket)

"Deco-mail pictograph pocket" is Deco-mail pictograph-dedicated i-αppli that allows the user to easily search and save Deco-mail pictographs, which can be used as convenient as pictographs from 903i series, on i-mode mail. Search by themes such as "category" or



"illustration/character" Deco-mail pictographs provided by an information service provider and save them to the mobile phone with simple actions. Multiple Deco-mail pictographs can be saved collectively. If you find a favorite Deco-mail pictograph, you can read an introduction message on the site offering the pictograph. You can also access the site.

- The monthly fee is not charged for "Deco-mail pictograph pocket". Browsing sites provided by IPs (Information Service Providers) may cost i-mode information fees separately.
- Packet transmission charges are incurred when using this service. Refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode]" for details.

■ ケータイクレジット「iD (アイディ)」 (iD credit payment service)

Mobile phone/Portable credit iD is a credit service available for shopping or cashing only by holding Osaifu-Keitai over. Shopping is made easier and more convenient without taking out a card from your wallet or even singing.

• To use iD, the registration to a card issuer supporting iD, an iD appli and a Card appli offered by the issuer are required.

- When the iD appli is activated for the first time, "notes regarding use" must be agreed upon and the Card appli needs to be downloaded after preparing for the use.
- The cost for the credit service supporting iD (annual fee, etc.) varies depending on the card issuer.
- Packet transmission charges are applied to download an iD appli and a Card appli of each card issuer.
- Refer to the iD i-mode or webpage site for details on iD.

i-mode site: *iMenu* → メニュー / 検索 (Menu/Search) → ケータイクレジット ^r iD 」 (iD credit payment service) Webpage: *http://id-credit.com*

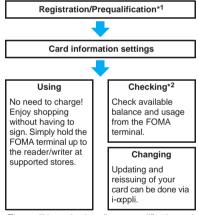


QR code to connect to the site

DCMXクレジットアプリ (DCMX credit appli)

"DCMX" is a credit service supporting "iD ($\mathcal{P} \uparrow \tilde{\mathcal{T}} \uparrow$)", provided by the NTT DoCoMo group. DCMX includes three types of services; DCMX mini that provides 10,000 yen/month credit, DCMX and DCMX gold that offer cashing service and revolving credit, issuing you a credit card. DCMX mini allows you to enjoy Mobile phone/ Portable credit iD by simply singing up from this appli.

appli Functions



- *1 There will be a simple online prequalification at the time of subscription. Subscription of services other than DCMX mini, can be made on the i-mode subscription page that is automatically displayed.
- *2 Usage check function is only available with DCMX mini.

 Refer to the website below for details on the service and how to apply.

i-mode site: *iMenu* → メニュー / 検索 (Menu/Search) → DCMX (ケータイクレ ジット) (iD credit payment service) Webpage: *http://www.dcmx.jp*



QR code to connect to the site

- For details on this service, contact the number listed in "For General Inquiries" on the back of this manual.
- When this appli is activated for the first time, "notes regarding use" must be agreed upon before use.
- Packet transmission charges are applied when the i-mode transmission is used for this appli.
- Activation from this appli becomes disabled when application and settings are completed. To check the usage or change the settings, activate the iD appli and select the DCMX appli for linked activation.
- Refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode]" for details.

Note

- The default settings of the preset i-αppli functions are as follows.
- Change settings from the Submenu of the software list.

| | Default setting | | | | | |
|------------------------------|-------------------------------|-------------------------|---------------------------------|-------------------------|--|---|
| Settings item | Monster Hunter i for SH | NAVI- TIME for SH | iD credit payment service | DCMX credit appli | Deco- mail picto- graph pocket | G-GUIDE program schedule remote control |
| Stand-by display | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| Network set | | Yes | | | | |
| i-αppli To | - | | Yes | | | Yes |
| Icon info set | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| Change tone/ image | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| View phone- book | - | Avail- able | - | - | - | - |
| Location usage setting | - | Yes | - | - | - | - |

Packet transmission charges apply when using this service.

Precautions for Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-αppli

DoCoMo shall not be liable for information set in IC card.

Auto Start

Running i-appli Automatically

There are three methods to automatically start i-appli.

Set the correct date and time in advance. (
 P. 45)

| Auto start using the i-αppliDX setting | Set Auto start to ON to enable. |
|--|---|
| Auto start using the software function | Auto start setting pre-installed in software. Set Auto start to ON and register software to enable. Register up to nine. |
| Auto start using the FOMA terminal setting | Set time, date and day for i-αppli saved in FOMA terminal to set Auto start. Set Auto start to ON and set schedule to use. Register up to nine. |

Configuring Auto Start < Auto Start>

| Default setting | OFF |
|-----------------|-----|
|-----------------|-----|

In stand-by, press 🔋 (🟹) for 1+ seconds, press ④ [Auto start].

Press 1 [ON].



Auto start screen

Setting software startup time with FOMA terminal settings

In the auto start screen, press ③ [Details set] and select a number.

| To save new | Select number \rightarrow To save a new schedule, select a slot with |
|----------------|--|
| To change | Select a number to change $\rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow$ 1 |
| To delete | Select a number to delete $\rightarrow \bullet \rightarrow$ |

• Auto start software list appears.

Select software, press , and set the start date and time.

- Use 24-hour format.
- Move the cursor with
 .

| S | chedule set |
|---|---------------|
| 1 | Daily |
| 2 | Select day |
| 3 | Set date |
| | Time interval |
| | |

Schedule setting screen

| To start daily | $\boxed{1} \rightarrow \text{enter time} \rightarrow \blacksquare$ |
|--------------------------------|---|
| To start on set day of week | ≥ → select day of week • (repeatable) → () → enter time → • • Press • [SelAII] or • [CIrAII] to select/disable all days of the week. |
| To start on set date | $3 \rightarrow$ enter date and time \rightarrow |

Enabling Auto start setting for supported software

In the schedule setting screen, press 4 [Time interval].

- To disable, delete Auto start setting. ("To delete" in step 1 of "Setting software startup time with FOMA terminal settings")
- *Time interval* cannot be selected for software without Auto start settings.

Note

- If Auto start cannot be started, the error is recorded in Auto start error history.
- Automatic startup is not available in the following situations:
 - Handset is turned off
 - Other functions are activated
 - i-αppli is running
 - Call is in progress
 - Auto start time is the same as alarm time of Schedule or ToDo list
 - i-αppli Function lock is set
- The functions below operate with the following priority when the same time is set.

Priority (high \rightarrow low) Function Auto power OFF \rightarrow Auto power ON \rightarrow Alarm \rightarrow ToDo list \rightarrow i- α ppli Auto start

- Reset settings deletes i-αppli auto start error history and disables i-αppli Auto start settings.
- If transmission setting for software with Auto start settings is set to *Always confirm*, a transmission confirmation screen appears upon startup. If no operations are performed for five seconds, software starts automatically as if *No* was selected in confirmation screen.
- When two Auto start times for the same software are set within ten minutes of each other, Auto start does not function. Set Auto start time interval to ten minutes or more. *Run error* appears in the Auto start error history.

i-appli To Function

Running i-αppli from Sites or i-mode Mail

If i-αppli To (Run i-αppli) is set, i-αppli can be started from a site, Internet web page, i-mode mail, Message R/F, screen memo or ToruCa.

- The following methods also start i-αppli.
 - When i-αppli start signal is received during Ir exchange
 - When i-αppli start information is read by Bar code reader
 - When i-αppli start information is read by holding the
- FeliCa mark up to a reader/writer (external device)
 Set whether to allow i-αppli To in i-αppli To settings.

Configuring Startup with i-αppli To <i-αppli To>

Default setting Yes

Select whether to start i- α ppli with i- α ppli To for each software.

In the software list (@ P. 254), select software and press 圖⑥ [Set software use].

Select *i-αppli To*, press • and press 1 [Yes].

🕇 Press ፤ [Complete].

Note

 The software to start is determined by the site, Internet web page, i-mode mail, Message R/F, screen memo or ToruCa. Download the specified software in advance.

Starting i-αppli from Sites or i-mode Mail <i-αppli To Function>

- If i-αppli To is set to No, i-αppli does not function.
- Cannot be activated as i-αppli stand-by.
- Full Browser is not available.
 - Select i-αppli in a site, Internet web page, i-mode mail, Message R/F, screen memo or ToruCa, press ■, select Yes and press ■.

Note

- When i-αppli is ended, the original site, Internet web page, received message screen, screen memo or ToruCa details screen reappears.
- If there is no software corresponding to the Run i-αppli setting, No requested software appears.
- Some software run from a site cannot be saved on the FOMA terminal.
- Depending on the site, the specified i-αppli software can be downloaded or updated if it is not saved on the FOMA terminal or if a newer version is available for the software saved on the FOMA terminal.
- Depending on the software settings, the software may start automatically after downloading is complete. In such cases, the software cannot be saved to the FOMA terminal immediately after downloading. After ending the software, select whether to save the software if available.
- Network set (
 ^C P. 255) may be required while running i-αppli software.
- i-αppli To from i-mode mail is a function only available from i-mode mail delivered from an IP (Information Provider). Not available for i-mode mail exchanged between FOMA terminals.

i-αppli Stand-by

Setting i-appli as the Stand-by Display

Press CLR to operate i-αppli set as the stand-by display.

Setting i-appli as the Stand-by Display <Stand-by Display>

 Set whether to transmit from the software set as the i-αppli stand-by, using Stand-by network set (PP P. 263).

In the software list (P. 254), select software, press (a) [Stand-by display], select Yes and press (•).

- The software is set as i-αppli stand-by, and the software starts when the stand-by display reappears.
- The screen shown on the right appears when the software uses transmission Select



Yes to allow transmission.

When No is selected, data is not transmitted and information may not be received.

Note

- Only one software can be set as i-αppli stand-by.
- Some software cannot be set as i-αppli stand-by.
- If i-αppli stand-by is set, i-αppli appears as stand-by. The image set as the stand-by display does not appear. If i-appli stand-by is disabled, the image set as the stand-by display appears.
- If software that transmits data is set as i-αppli stand-by, the software may not operate properly depending on the signal strength.
- If All lock is set when in i-αppli stand-by, i-αppli screen closes and default 待受画面1 image appears. In addition, if Function lock is applied to i-appli when in i-appli stand-by, i-appli screen closes and the image set as the stand-by display appears. When All lock or i-appli Function lock is disabled, i-appli stand-by reappears.
- If i-αppliDX is set as i-αppli stand-by, the i-αppliDX software may transmit data to verify the validity of the software regardless of the software transmission setting.
- If i-αppli stand-by is set, the i-αppli stand-by confirmation screen appears when the handset is turned on.

Select Yes or do nothing for five seconds to start i-appli stand-by. Select No to show normal stand-by and cancel i-appli stand-by settings. If the handset is turned on by the Auto power ON setting, the confirmation screen does not appear and i-appli stand-by starts when the stand-by display reappears.

Note

- If i-αppli stand-by is set, usable battery time decreases.
 - The following operations end stand-by i-appli.
 - Camera
 - Data box
 - i-mode
 - Mail
 - Videophone ■ Data Security Service ■ Document Viewer
 - SD-Audio
 - Changing i-αppli
 - settings Playing i-motion
 - ToruCa
- iC transmission

Ir exchange

Downloading

Starting i-αppli

Updating pattern

Updating software

BookReader

PDF Viewer

definitions

i-αppli software

Security errors

While i-αppli stand-by is set, if an incorrect i-αppli action is attempted, or use of a function not permitted by the software is attempted, i-appli stand-by is disabled.

If an error that cancels i-appli stand-by occurs, the error time and other information appear and are recorded in the error history. No information is recorded when ended properly. When Security error appears in stand-by, press

to view error history.

Related Operations

Set whether to transmit data from i-appli stand-by <Stand-by network set>

- 1 In the software list, select software set as stand-by) 05.
- 2 Press 1.

Set i-appli stand-by from menu <Stand-by display>

- 1 In stand-by, press 2113.
- 2 Select software) .
 - To set a different i-αppli as stand-by: Press 1 [Set] ▶ select software ▶ • ▶ Yes ▶ •.
 - To end i-αppli set as stand-by: Press 2 [End].
 - To disable i-αppli set as stand-by: Press 3 [Terminated].

Disabling i-appli Stand-by

If i-αppli stand-by is disabled, the previous image set as stand-by appears.

 Even if i-αppli stand-by is ended, i-αppli stand-by settings are not disabled and i-appli stand-by is restarted when the stand-by display reappears.

In the software list (P. 254), select software set as stand-by and press 2 [3] (Stand-by display].

Select Yes and press .

Managing i-αppli

Upgrade, delete and sort i-αppli saved in the FOMA terminal and view run error and trace information.

- Some software saved on the handset may be accessed by the IP (Information Provider) and service may be stopped directly. In such cases, the software cannot be run, set as stand-by or updated. Only deleting and viewing software details are available. To use again, the software needs to be contacted with an activation transmission. Contact the IP (Information Provider).
- Data may be sent from the IP (Information Provider) to some software saved on the handset.
- When IP (Information Provider) sends data to stop/ resume software, the handset exchanges data and the i-mode icon flashes. Transmission charges are not incurred.

Upgrading i-αppli <Upgrade>

Upgrade software saved in the FOMA terminal if a new version is available on the site. Some software automatically checks for updated information and upgrades itself when running.

In the software list (P. 254), select software and press 2 [Upgrade].

Select Yes and press 🔳.

• When software description appears, press .

Note

- i-appli cannot be upgraded when the FOMA terminal handset does not have enough available memory. Delete other software or data in Data box that shares memory area with i-appli.
- For some Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-αppli, downloading and upgrading may not be available while IC card is locked.

Related Operations

Upgrade automatically when software is running

In the confirmation screen (Upgrade software?), select Yes • •.

Note (Related operations)

 Mail-type i-αppli software that changes the mail folder name cannot be upgraded while Function lock is applied to mail.

Sorting i-appli <Sort>

Default setting DL(New→Old)

Change the list order to one of the following.

| DL (New→Old) | Latest download date first |
|--------------|-----------------------------------|
| DL (Old→New) | Oldest download date first |
| By usage | Most recently used software first |
| By size | Largest program size first |

In the software list (P P. 254), press [7] [Sort], select sort method and press .

Viewing error display <Error display>

View run error information (*Auto start error*, *Stand-by error* and *Security error*) and trace information.

In stand-by, press 🗐 (📿) for 1+ seconds and press 🌀 [Error display].

Select error history and press
.

Note

 If an error that cancels i-αppli stand-by occurs, the error time and other information appear and are recorded in the error history. No information is recorded when ended properly.

Related Operations

View Trace information <Trace info>

- 1 In stand-by, press i (𝔅) (for 1+ seconds) □ □.
- 2 To end viewing, press ■.
 To delete: Press i > Yes > ■.

Note (Related operations)

 If there is no trace information, No Trace info available appears.

For i-appli creators

- If a created i-αppli does not function properly, use Trace info details as a reference.
- Trace info does not appear if there is no software set to obtain a trace.

Applying Function lock to i-αppli <Function lock>

In stand-by, press **■** (𝒫) for 1+ seconds, press **®** [Function lock], enter terminal security code and press **■**.

Select ON or OFF.

| To lock | 1 |
|-----------------|---|
| To disable lock | 2 |

Deleting i-appli <Delete>

In the software list (P. 254), select software and press (3) [Delete].

Select deletion method.

| To delete one | $ 1 \rightarrow Yes \rightarrow \blacksquare $ |
|--|---|
| To delete multiple ones collectively | ② → select software ● (repeatable) → 圖 → Yes → ● Press Ĩ [SelAll] or Ĩ [CIrAll] to select or disable all. |
| To delete all | $ \exists \rightarrow \text{enter terminal security} \\ code \rightarrow \bullet \rightarrow Yes \rightarrow \bullet $ |

Note

- When deleting mail-type i-appli software, select whether to automatically delete the created folder at the same time. If there is protected i-mode mail in the mail folders, the software and folder cannot be deleted.
- When i-αppli used data of the software to be deleted is saved to the microSD Memory Card, select whether to delete the i-αppli used data simultaneously.

Deleting Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-αppli software

- For some software, the software must be started and the data on the IC card must be deleted in order to delete the software itself.
- Some Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-αppli may not be able to be deleted.
- While IC card lock is set, Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-αppli software may not be able to be deleted.

Deleting all software including mail-type i-appli

• If there is protected i-mode mail in the mail folders, the software and folders cannot be deleted.

Used by i-αppli (Contents Transfer Compatible) Viewing i-αppli Used Data in microSD Memory Card

- Delete i-αppli used data folders or view detailed information of a selected folder.
- Properties show Software/CP names, folder availability and cause for unavailability.
- The folders cannot be used under the following conditions.
 - Restrictions Y: the software to use the saved data does not exist.
 - UIM restrictions Y: the FOMA card inserted is different from the one that was used when saving the data.
 - Model rstrctns Y: the model of the FOMA terminal is different from the one that was used when saving the data.
 - Series rstrctns Y: the software series is different.

In stand-by, press **i** (**P**') for 1+ seconds and press **5** [Used by i-αppli].

| To delete one data folder | Select folder $\rightarrow \boxtimes \rightarrow Yes$ $\rightarrow \blacksquare$ |
|---------------------------|---|
| To display | Press to end |
| Properties | checking. |

Note

- Viewing i-αppli used data folders saved on microSD Memory Card may become impossible while other running functions are using the card. Exit other functions in advance.
- i-motion downloaded from sites, whose output from the FOMA terminal is prohibited, can be saved to a microSD Memory Card. (27 P. 319)

Using Various i-appli Functions

• Depending on the function, other functions may need to be ended before using.

Viewing Sites from i-αppli

- Download software that enables viewing of sites.
- Sites with URLs exceeding 255 characters, including single-byte alphanumeric characters and symbols, cannot be viewed.

While software is running, select URL, press •, select Yes and press •.

• The method for viewing sites and Internet web pages varies depending on the software.

Making Calls from i-αppli

Make voice/Videophone/PushTalk calls from the running software.

- Download software that supports the use of voice call, Videophone call and PushTalk.
- Calls cannot be made while Keypad dial lock or Self mode is set.

While software is running, select phone number, press •, select Yes and press •.

- Procedures for voice/Videophone/PushTalk calls differ depending on the software.
- A phone number to use for voice call/ Videophone call/PushTalk appears.

Make a call.

| Voice calls | 🖆 or 🔳 |
|-------------|--------------|
| Videophone | |
| PushTalk | 🖾 or 🖻 (📭) |

Using the Camera from i-appli

 When the camera is started from i-appli, shot images are saved and used as part of i-appli.

While software is running, select camera startup and press •.

- Camera mode (still picture shooting screen) appears. Adjust the brightness and use Auto timer and Zoom.
- Use software to set *Image size*, *Continuous* mode, *Image quality* and *Frame*. Items that can be set, setting methods and camera startup method differ depending on the software.

💙 Press 重 [🙆].

• To save the image, press •.

Note

 Some software may automatically send images and entered data used with i-αppli over the Internet. Images used with i-αppli include images shot using the camera function operated with i-αppli, images selected from My picture of Data box operated with i-αppli and images acquired using the Ir exchange function operated with i-αppli.

Using Bar Code Reader from i-αppli

While software is running, select Bar code reader startup and press •.

- Camera mode (Bar code reader) is activated.
- If the screen is dark, press 🗐 [Light] to turn on the picture light.
- Procedures for starting Bar code reader differ depending on the software.

Position camera to show bar code (JAN/QR code) and press [Scan].

• An image of the bar code (JAN/QR code) is shot.

Note

• Scanned data may be used for some software.

Saving ToruCa from i-αppli

While software is running, select ToruCa item and press •.

 Procedures for saving ToruCa differ depending on the software.

2

Preview or save item.

| To preview ToruCa card | Select <i>Preview</i> \rightarrow • |
|---------------------------|---|
| To save a new item | Select Save new $\rightarrow \bullet \rightarrow$ select folder $\rightarrow \bullet$ |
| To overwrite | Select Overwrite $\rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow$ select folder $\rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow$ select data $\rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow \blacksquare$ |

Setting Alarms from i-appli

- Enter time and Set repeat are entered with i-αppli.
 - While software is running, select alarm setting item, press • and press • [OK].

Press registered number and set the alarm.

• Refer to steps 2 to 4 on P. 367 for details.

Using Location Information from i-appli

- While software is running, select location history, press •, select Yes and press •.
- 2 Select location information to be used from the location history list and press •.

Note

- For i-αppli that can refer to the phonebook, saved location information is available.
- This service is not available with preset "NAVITIME for SH".

Using Ir Exchange from i-appli

 Ir exchange (127 P. 330) is not available while in Self mode.

While software is running, start Ir exchange, select Yes and press •.

- Procedures for starting Ir exchange differ depending on the software.
- To cancel Ir exchange, press 🙆.

Osaifu-Keitai/ToruCa

■ Osaifu-Keitai 268 • Osaifu-Keitai 268 • iC Transfer Service. 268 • Starting Osaifu-Keitai Compatible i-αppli. 269 ■ ToruCa 269 ■ ToruCa <ToruCa>270 • Retrieving ToruCa .<<ToruCa>271 • Viewing ToruCa List/Details Screen. 272 • Setting ToruCa .<<ToruCa Settings>275 • Locking IC Card Functions. .<<IC Card Lock>276

Osaifu-Keitai

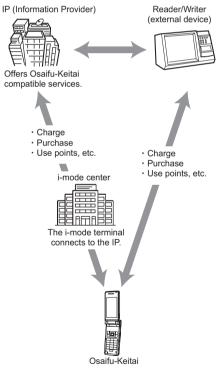
"Osaifu-Keitai" refers to useful IC card i-mode functions (i-mode FeliCa) and i-mode terminals equipped with IC cards. FeliCa, using non-contact IC card technology, enables reading and writing of data without

direct contact. Simply hold the handset up to the reader/

writer^{*} (external device) at supported stores to turn your mobile phone into a convenient tool with "Osaifu-Keitai". Use electronic money to pay for shopping and use as an airline ticket or a point card.

Compared with already existing non-contact IC cards which support FeliCa, the IC card in Osaifu-Keitai enables depositing electronic money, checking your balance or viewing usage history from sites, and other useful functions.

A device to read/write data in IC cards.



- Application and utilization methods vary for each Osaifu-Keitai compatible service. Contact the IP (Information Provider) for inquiries. Refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode]" for precautions and details on using Osaifu-Keitai compatible services.
- Be sure to keep a memo of the names and contact information for Osaifu-Keitai compatible services being used. Osaifu-Keitai malfunctions, repairs, changing FOMA terminal or other handling may cause data saved in the IC card to be altered or lost. (Note that as a rule, you will be asked to delete data when repairs are necessary.) DoCoMo shall not be liable for any loss of content. To delete data saved in the IC card, or when data is lost or altered, handling methods vary for each Osaifu-Keitai compatible service. Contact your IP (Information Provider) for more details.
- Be careful not to lose Osaifu-Keitai. If lost, handling methods vary for each Osaifu-Keitai compatible service. Contact your IP (Information Provider) for more details. IC card functions can be locked by Omakase lock or IC card lock. (IPP. 153, P. 276)

iC Transfer Service

iC transfer service^{*1} is a service which transfers the data on the IC card to a new Osaifu-Keitai^{*2} collectively^{*3}. After the data on the IC card are transferred, Osaifu-Keitai compatible service is easily used only by downloading Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-αppli. Use iC transfer service at a DoCoMo Shop or retailer.

- *1 Charges apply when iC transfer service is used. (Charges may not apply for some services.) In addition, packet transmission fees apply to download/ various settings of iC appli.
- *2 The new FOMA terminal must be the iC transfer service compatible Osaifu-Keitai (903i series).
- *3 Some services are not supported depending on the Osaifu-Keitai compatible service. Unsupported services are deleted when iC transfer service is used. Use a backup service of each Osaifu-Keitai compatible service or delete those services in advance.

Download Osaifu-Keitai compatible i- α ppli with IC card function to use IC card functions.

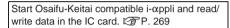
Starting Osaifu-Keitai Compatible i-αppli

Using Osaifu-Keitai

Use Osaifu-Keitai in the following manner.

 When Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-αppli is set or downloaded for the first time, *Current UIM necessary* to use IC card appears. If OK is selected, IC card functions are not available unless the FOMA card paired with the IC card is inserted.

Download Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-αppli. 253



Hold the FeliCa mark up to the reader/writer (external device). 269

Starting Osaifu-Keitai Compatible i-αppli and Reading/Writing Data in the IC Card

Osaifu-Keitai compatible i- α ppli enables charging of electronic money or railway tickets, checking balance and usage history, as well as other useful functions.

In stand-by, press
924.

2 Select Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-αppli and press .

• Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-αppli starts.

Holding the FeliCa Mark Up to the Reader/Writer (External Device)

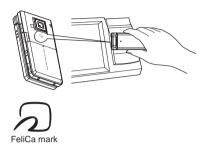
Hold the FeliCa mark up to the reader/writer (external device) to enable payment with electronic money, replacement for railway tickets, as well as other functions.

- Starting the software is not needed except for some services.
- Avoid contact between the FOMA terminal and reader/ writer (external device).
- Only the side with the FeliCa mark can be read.
- Hold the FeliCa mark parallel to the reader/writer (external device).
- Hold the FOMA terminal up to the center of the reader/ writer (external device).
- If you hold the FeliCa mark up to the reader/writer (external device) and it is still not recognized, try moving the handset around.

• Reading may not be possible if a metallic substance is present on the FeliCa mark side.

Hold the FeliCa mark up to the reader/writer (external device).

 When the reader/writer (external device) recognizes the FOMA terminal, the FOMA terminal called LED flashes and vibrator activates.



Confirm that the data was read.

• Check the reader/writer (external device) display to confirm the read results.

Precautions for Using Osaifu-Keitai

- When using Osaifu-Keitai, be sure to have the battery pack attached.
- Although Osaifu-Keitai is available when the handset is turned off, Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-αppli cannot be started. Called LED does not flash and vibrator does not activate.
- Although Osaifu-Keitai is available during i-mode connection, Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-αppli cannot be started.
- i-appli can be started and sites can be connected by reading startup information from a reader/writer (external device).
- Osaifu-Keitai may not be available even when holding FeliCa mark up to a reader/writer (external device) if battery is empty.
- FeliCa IC card function is not available while IC card is locked (IP P. 276).
- Even if All lock (PP. 152) is enabled, FeliCa IC card functions are not locked.
- When Omakase lock (TP. 153) is enabled, FeliCa IC card functions are also suspended. When Omakase lock is disabled, the IC card lock (TP. 276) setting is followed.

Note

Preinstalled i-αppli software can also be used.

Note

- In the following cases, data being read or written to the IC card from software will be interrupted.
 Operations after a call is ended vary depending on the service being used.
 - When a call is received while software is running, the software is interrupted. After the call is ended, the software resumes.
 - When the scheduled time or alarm time arrives, running software stops and the schedule or alarm notification screen appears. The software resumes when the schedule or alarm notification screen is closed.
- Automatic startup is not available in the following situations:
 - Handset is turned off
- Other functions are activated
- Call is in progress
- i-αppli is running
- i-αppli Function lock is iset
- Make sure to safeguard terminal security code and service passwords.

ToruCa

ToruCa

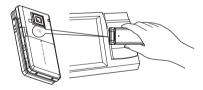
ToruCa is an electronic card that can be retrieved with Osaifu-Keitai. Use as fliers, restaurant cards, coupons, etc. ToruCa is available from reader/writer (external device), sites and QR codes. Easily share using mail, Infrared, iC transmission and microSD Memory Card.

Retrieved ToruCa is saved in *ToruCa* of *LifeKit* menu.

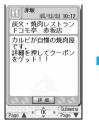
• ToruCa is available with compatible handsets. Refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode]" for details.

Using ToruCa

Hold Osaifu-Keitai up to the reader/writer (external device) and retrieve ToruCa.



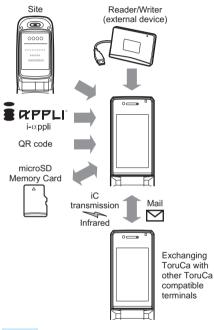






The retrieved ToruCa appears. Press 詳細 (Details) key to view further details.

Retrieving ToruCa



Note

- Normal packet transmission charges are incurred when retrieving ToruCa with i-mode transmissions.
- Some ToruCa may not be updated or sent using mail or Ir exchange depending on the settings of IP (Information Provider).

Retrieve ToruCa

Retrieving ToruCa

Retrieve ToruCa through a reader/writer (external device) using IC card function, or through i-mode mail attachment, i-αppli, downloading from i-mode, microSD Memory Card, iC transmission, Ir exchange, or QR code.

- Hold the FOMA terminal up to the reader/writer (external device) to use ToruCa with the automatic reading function. A used ToruCa is moved to the Used ToruCa folder.
- When Function lock is applied to ToruCa, Function lock must be disabled except for ToruCa retrieved using IC card function.

Retrieving from Reader/Writer (External Device)

Hold the FOMA terminal up to the reader/writer (external device) and retrieve ToruCa/ ToruCa (details).

- Retrieve ToruCa up to 1,024 bytes and ToruCa (details) up to 100 KB.



When ToruCa/ToruCa (details) is retrieved, the retrieval complete tone sounds, the called LED flashes and ToruCa/ToruCa (details) appears.

- If no operations are performed for approximately 15 seconds, the previous screen reappears and the screen above appears in stand-by. Press
 in stand-by, select New ToruCa and press
 to display ToruCa list.
- Set the handset not to display ToruCa/ToruCa (details) when retrieval is completed.
 (12) P. 275)
- For ToruCa including detailed information, a confirmation screen appears to select whether to access a site when retrieval is completed.
 Select Yes and press

 to retrieve ToruCa (details).

Note

 ToruCa cannot be retrieved using a reader/writer (external device) when IC card lock is set or retrieval from IC card is set to OFF.

Retrieving from File Attachment

Retrieve ToruCa as an i-mode mail attachment.

Open received mail with ToruCa attached and select file to save.

- 🕨 Press 🔳.
 - ToruCa/ToruCa (details) preview screen appears.

Select a saving method.

| ToruCa | To save as is | |
|---------------------|---|---|
| | To save after retrieving ToruCa (details) | 詳細 (Details) → ● → Yes → ● → ● [Save] → Yes → ● |
| ToruCa (details) | To save as is | $\begin{tabular}{l} \bullet \end{tabular} [Save] \to Yes \to \end{tabular} \\ \bullet \end{tabular}$ |
| | To save after updating ToruCa (details) | $\begin{array}{c} \hline \bullet \\ \hline \hline \hline \bullet \\ \hline \hline \bullet \\ \hline \hline \hline \bullet \\ \hline \hline \hline \hline$ |

 Retrieve or update ToruCa (details) with i-mode transmission. (Packet transmission fees apply.)

Select *phone* or *microSD* and press

Note

 ToruCa cannot be saved if memory space is not available. Delete unnecessary ToruCa and increase available memory space to save. (27 P. 275)

microSD Memory Card

- Details cannot be retrieved from ToruCa saved on microSD Memory Card.
- Copy ToruCa saved on microSD Memory Card to the FOMA terminal handset. (127 P. 322)

ToruCa retrieved from i-mode and i-appli

- Some ToruCa may not be retrieved from i-αppli.
- Some ToruCa cannot be sent as mail attachments, via Ir exchange/iC transmission, or copied to microSD Memory Cards.

ToruCa Viewer

Viewing ToruCa

View retrieved ToruCa (details) and ToruCa.

In stand-by, press 923.

● Select →*microSD* to view information about ToruCa saved in microSD Memory Card.

Select a folder and press .

 Press i to show ToruCa list for all folders. (Does not apply to microSD Memory Card.)

Select data and press 🔳.

 Access functions such as Web To, Mail To and Phone To (AV Phone To) from the ToruCa or ToruCa (details) screen. (Content of ToruCa saved in a microSD Memory Card cannot be used.)

Note

 Terminal security code entry screen appears when ToruCa list or details screen is shown while Function lock is applied to ToruCa. Enter terminal security code to unlock Function lock temporarily and view.

Viewing ToruCa List/Details Screen

Folder list layout



1 →microSD

Select to view ToruCa folder list in microSD Memory Card. (→*phone* appears when viewing list on the microSD Memory Card)

- 2 Folder icons
 - 🛱: Folder with unread ToruCa
 - Folder without unread ToruCa
- 3 Folder name
- Show up to 18 single-byte (9 double-byte) characters. **4** Used ToruCa
- Used ToruCa is saved. Save up to 20 entries. When the save limit is exceeded, ToruCa are deleted starting with the oldest retrieved date.
- Press it to view ToruCa list in all folders. (Does not apply to microSD Memory Card.)
- 6 Press in to create and delete folder, or activate Function lock.

ToruCa list layout



- ToruCa type
 - ☑ : Unread ToruCa^{*1}
 ☑ (gray) : Unread ToruCa (expired)^{*2}
 - : Read ToruCa
 - (gray) : Read ToruCa (expired)*²
- 2 Category
- 3 Index
- 4 Title
- Press lo perform operations such as moving and deleting ToruCa.
- Press to view the selected ToruCa (details) or ToruCa details screen.
- 7 Press ☐ to attach ToruCa and send by mail.
- 8 Non-redistributable ToruCa

- *1 ToruCa retrieved from sites and i-mode mail do not become unread.
- *2 When an expiration date is set to ToruCa, it appears on expired ToruCa.

ToruCa details screen layout



- 1 Category
- 2 Index 3 Date retrieved
- 4 Title
- 5 Description
- 6 Details key: Select to retrieve ToruCa (details).
- Press lo perform operations such as moving and deleting, and sending via Ir exchange.
- 8 Scroll up/down.

ToruCa (details) screen layout



- 1 Category
- 2 Index
- 3 Date retrieved 4 Title
- 5 ToruCa (details)
- Press (a to be form operations such as moving and deleting, and sending via Ir exchange.
- 7 Scroll up/down.
- Press it to update ToruCa (details) information.

Retrieving ToruCa (Details) from ToruCa

In the ToruCa details screen (☞ P. 272), select 詳細 (Details) and press ■.

Select Yes and press .

 Handset connects to the i-mode site and ToruCa (details) is retrieved. ToruCa (details) cannot be saved if memory space is not available. Delete unnecessary ToruCa and increase memory space to save. (12) P. 275)

Related Operations

Save phone numbers and mail addresses in ToruCa to the phonebook <Add to phonebook>

- 1 In the ToruCa (details) screen or ToruCa details screen, press (6).
- 2 Press 1 to save new to FOMA terminal handset phonebook.
 - To save new to the FOMA card phonebook: Press 2.
 - To add/overwrite phonebook: Press 3
 select name
 .
- 3 Add to phonebook. (2 P. 96, P. 103)

Save ToruCa (details) image <Save image>

- 1 In the ToruCa (details) screen, press 25.
- 2 Select image ▶ ▶ Yes ▶ •.

Note (Related operations)

 Adding to phonebook or saving ToruCa image is not available for used ToruCa or ToruCa saved in microSD Memory Card.

Sorting ToruCa Automatically <Sort Rules>

Set Sort rules for folders and sort ToruCa automatically.

- Set up to ten rules for each folder.
- The folder listed at the top has top priority and the folder listed at the bottom has least priority if Sort rules for multiple folders coincide.
- Sort rules cannot be set to the *ToruCa* and *Used ToruCa* folders.
- Only ToruCa retrieved with a reader/writer (external device) are automatically sorted.

Setting Sort rules to folders

Press \bigcirc 923, select folder and press \bigcirc 4 [Sort rules].

Select entry number and press to set Sort rules.

• Select a used number to edit sort rules.

| To sort by category | 1 → select category → ■ Press in the category selection screen to show the icon list for the selected category. Press ■ to return to the previous screen. |
|--|--|
| To sort by text contained in index | ② → enter text → ● ● Enter up to 20 single-byte (10 double-byte) characters. |

| | ③ → enter text → ● ● Enter up to 20 single-byte (10 double-byte) characters. |
|-----------------------|---|
| To sort all ToruCa | ④ → Yes → ■ All ToruCa is set to 1. Select No and press ■ to set to a specified number. |

Repeat step 2 to set multiple rules.

💶 Press 重 [Complete].

Deleting specified sort rules

Press • 9 2 3, select folder and press • 4 [Sort rules].

2 Select entry number, press i and select a deletion method.

| To delete one | $1 \rightarrow \textbf{Yes} \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow \blacksquare$ |
|---------------|--|
| To delete all | $2 \rightarrow \text{Yes} \rightarrow \bullet \rightarrow \bullet$ |

Managing Folders

Create up to 20 folders and manage files.

Creating folders <New folder>

In stand-by, press
923.

Press 11 [New folder], enter folder name and press .

• To delete New folder name, press CLR for 1+ seconds.

Note

• Enter up to 18 single-byte (9 double-byte) characters for a folder name.

Editing folder names <Edit folder name>

- In stand-by, press •923.
- Select folder and press @12 [Edit folder name].

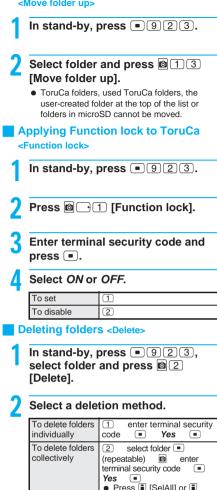
Edit folder name and press 🔳.

• To erase folder name, press CLR for 1+ seconds in the folder name editing screen.

Note

Only folder names of user-created folders can be edited.

Moving folder order upward <Move folder up>



 Press <a>[SelAll] or <a>[[CIrAll] to select or clear all. To delete all 3 enter terminal security ToruCa (keep code Yes folders) To delete all (4) enter terminal security folders and code Yes ToruCa

Note

• Only user-created folders can be deleted.

Managing ToruCa

Delete, move, copy, and sort ToruCa and ToruCa (details) in the FOMA terminal handset or microSD Memory Card.

microSD Memory Cards are sold separately. Purchase microSD Memory Cards at home electronics shops. (127 P. 316)

Sorting ToruCa <Sort>

Default setting Date (new→old)

Change the list order to one of the following.

- Only ToruCa saved in the FOMA terminal is to be sorted.
- The setting continues after the ToruCa screen is ended after sorting.

| Date (new old) | Files are sorted with the latest save date first. |
|-------------------|---|
| Date (old new) | Files are sorted with the oldest save date first. |
| By category | Files are sorted by genre of category icon. |
| By index | Files are sorted by index in the following order: single-byte numbers single-byte upper case alphabet single-byte lower case alphabet hiragana double-byte katakana kanji Pictograph 1 Pictograph 2 double-byte numbers double-byte upper case alphabet double-byte lower case alphabet single-byte katakana. Characters are sorted by character code. |
| By kana | Files are sorted by hiragana set to ToruCa. |

In stand-by, press
923.

- Select folder, press
 and press
 Select folder, press
 Select folder, press
- Select a sort method and press •.
- Moving/Copying ToruCa <Move/Copy/ Copy to microSD/Copy to the phone>

In stand-by, press •923.

2 Select folder, press ●, select ToruCa and press ●④ [Move/ Copy].

Select Move or Copy.

| To move | 1 |
|---|---|
| То сору | 2 |
| To copy to microSD Memory Card/FOMA terminal handset | 3 |

Select Move or Copy method.

To move or copy 1 ToruCa individually

| To move or copy selected ToruCa collectively | 2 select ToruCa ● (repeatable) ● Press i [SelAll] or i [ClrAll] to select or clear all. |
|--|--|
| To move or copy all | enter terminal |
| ToruCa in the folder | security code |

Select folder and press .

- When copying between the FOMA terminal handset and microSD Memory Card, select Yes and press

 .
- When Includes image with file restrictions. ToruCa will be copied without details appears, press

 [Agree].

Note

- ToruCa cannot be moved without created folders.
- ToruCa cannot be moved/copied to the used ToruCa folder.
- ToruCa cannot be moved between the FOMA terminal handset and microSD Memory Card.
- Folder selection is not required when copying between the FOMA terminal handset and microSD Memory Card.

Deleting ToruCa <Delete>

In stand-by, press •923.

Select folder, press ●, select ToruCa and press 圖1 [Delete].

Select deletion method.

| To delete ToruCa individually | 1 Yes • |
|--|---|
| To delete ToruCa collectively | 2 select ToruCa (repeatable) Press [SelAll] or [ClrAll] to select or clear all. |
| To delete all ToruCa in the folder | 3 enter terminal security code ● Yes ● |

Searching ToruCa

Search ToruCa by genre of category icons, index or title.

- ToruCa saved in the FOMA terminal handset is applicable.
- ToruCa cannot be searched inside the used ToruCa folder.

In stand-by, press ● 9 2 3, select folder and press 圖 3 [Search].

Alternatively, press
 and
 and
 2 to search the selected folder.

Select the range of search.

| To search inside selected folder | 1 |
|----------------------------------|---|
| To search all folders | 2 |

Select a search method and specify a keyword.

| To search by genre of category icon | $\textcircled{1} \rightarrow \text{select category} \rightarrow \textcircled{\bullet}$ |
|-------------------------------------|--|
| To search by index | $ \textcircled{2} \rightarrow \text{enter part of index} \rightarrow \\ $ |
| To search by title | $\textcircled{3} \rightarrow \text{enter part of title} \rightarrow \textcircled{\bullet}$ |

- The search results list appears.
- Enter up to 20 single-byte (10 double-byte) characters for keywords (index and titles).

In the search results screen, press
 2 [Advanced search] to perform advanced search.

Attaching ToruCa to i-mode Mail

 ToruCa exceeding 1 KB, ToruCa (details) exceeding 100 KB, non-redistributable ToruCa and used ToruCa cannot be attached to mail.

In the ToruCa (details) screen (徑 P. 272) or ToruCa details screen (徑 P. 272), press 阎 ③ [Attach to mail].

● Alternatively, press ☐ in the ToruCa list.

Compose and send i-mode mail.

• Refer to steps 2 to 4 on P. 220 for details.

Note

- Cannot be sent to models that do not support ToruCa.
- When ToruCa (details) attached to mail includes an image with file restrictions, the mail is sent without ToruCa (details) retrieved. However, details can be retrieved again by the mail recipient.

ToruCa Settings Setting ToruCa

Set to use ToruCa when holding the FOMA terminal up to the reader/writer (external device).

• The following items can be set.

| Item | Setting details | Default setting |
|---------|--|-----------------|
| from IC | Set whether to retrieve using a reader/writer (external device) and iC transmission. | ON |

| ltem | Setting details | Default setting |
|--------------------------|---|--------------------|
| Duplicate check | Set to check that the same ToruCa has not been saved before retrieving to prevent duplication. | ON |
| Auto reading check | Set whether to use the automatic reading function. When the auto reading function is used, available ToruCa are automatically recognized by holding the FOMA terminal up to the reader/writer (external device). | OFF |
| Auto display | Set whether to automatically view ToruCa when retrieving is completed. | ON |

- When Auto reading check is set to OFF, some functions of ToruCa may not be available.
- When Auto reading check is set to OFF, a confirmation screen asking whether to use the automatic reading function appears when the FOMA terminal is held up to the reader/writer (external device) to use the automatic reading function. Select Yes, press

 add press
 Agree] to set Auto reading check to ON and use the automatic reading function.
 - In stand-by, press •923.

Press 18 [ToruCa settings] and select a setting item.

| To set to retrieve from a reader/ writer | $1 \rightarrow 1 \text{ [ON] or } 2 \text{ [OFF]}$ |
|--|---|
| To set Duplicate check | $2 \rightarrow 1$ [ON] or 2 [OFF] |
| To set Auto reading check | $\begin{array}{c} (3 \rightarrow (1 \ [ON] \rightarrow \textbf{Yes} \rightarrow \blacksquare) \\ \rightarrow \blacksquare \\ \bullet \ \text{To disable: Press } (2 \ [OFF]. \end{array}$ |
| To set Auto display | $(4) \rightarrow (1)$ [ON] or (2) [OFF] |

IC Card Lock Locking IC Card Functions

Lock IC card functions to restrict usage of the FeliCa IC card function. Alternatively, set IC card functions to automatically lock when the power is turned off.

If Omakase lock is set, IC card is automatically locked. (127 P. 153)

Locking IC Card Functions When Power Is Turned On <IC Lock (Power-on)>

Default setting OFF

- In stand-by, press 76, enter terminal security code and press •.
- Press ④ ① [IC lock(power-on)] and select ON or OFF.

| To set | 1 |
|-----------|---|
| To cancel | 2 |

 Alternatively, press if or 1+ seconds in stand-by, select Yes and press it to set IC card lock. To disable, press if or 1+ seconds in stand-by, enter terminal security code and press in.

Locking IC Card Functions When Power Is Turned Off <IC Lock (Power-off)>

Default setting Follow power ON

In stand-by, press • 76, enter terminal security code and press •.

Press ④② [IC lock(power-off)] and select whether to set IC card lock when the power is turned off.

| To follow the setting when the power is ON | 1 |
|--|---|
| To set | 2 |

Note

- ToruCa cannot be retrieved using a reader/writer (external device) or the automatic reading function is not available when IC card is locked.
- IC card lock is set automatically when battery pack is removed. IC card lock is disabled when battery pack with battery power left is inserted even if power is not turned on. However, if the battery pack is removed while the IC card lock is set, when the battery pack is reinserted, the IC card lock is retained.
- When IC card lock is set or IC card lock is set using Omakase lock, IC card lock is retained even if battery becomes empty and power turns off.
- For some Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-αppli, downloading and version upgrading may not be available while IC card is locked.

GPS Function

| • GPS Function | |
|--|--|
| Positioning Your Location | <position location="">278</position> |
| Setting Position Location | <set loc.="" position="">279</set> |
| Using GPS Compatible i-αppli | |
| Providing Location Information upon the Request | <loc. menu="" request="">283</loc.> |
| Notifying Present Location | <location notification="">285</location> |
| • Displaying the History of Confirmed Location Information | <location history="">286</location> |
| Using Location Information from Each Function | |
| Using GPS Function | |
| | |

GPS Function

GPS (Global Positioning System) is the system developed and operated by Department of Defense of USA to notify current position (latitude and longitude, etc.) using the radio wave for positioning location radiated from the orbiting satellites of the earth. The GPS function retrieves location information (latitude and longitude) of the FOMA terminal (i.e. user) using the electric wave for positioning a location from GPS satellites. Varieties of services are available with retrieved location information.

Services Using GPS Function

Displaying map or searching surrounding information of the present location (Position location)

Sends retrieved location information to search map or surrounding information. C P. 278

Using GPS applicable i-appli (using GPS compatible i-appli)

Convenient i-αppli using location information is available. Use location information for navigation and transfer information when walking, driving, or taking a train to get to a destination. Preset "NAVITIME for SH" is also available for navigation of walking, driving and transfer information.

Providing location information upon the request from the other party (Location provision)

If the terminal is set as a target of the service supporting location provision (such as DoCoMo's searching service "imadoco-search"), provides the information about the present location upon request.* "imadoco-search" is the service to provide the rough present location of a person who is carrying i-mode compatible FOMA terminal with a map on the mobile phone or PC to the searcher. Use "Keitai-Osagashi Service" to check the rough present location of the lost FOMA terminal on with a map on the PC. Refer to NTT DoCoMo Internet site for details on "imadoco-search" and "Keitai-Osagashi Service".

* Location information may be sent to a service provider without any operation of the FOMA terminal when Location request menu (2 P. 283) is set to *Loc. provision:ON*.

Notifying location information of the present location (Location notification)

Notify location information of the present location to others (service providers supporting Location notification). CP P. 285

Adding location information to shot still pictures

Add location information to shot still pictures. Display a map or use GPS compatible i- α ppli based on the added location information. \mathbb{CP} P. 287

Sending location information of the present location or favorite places with mail

Attach location information to mail messages in the form of URL. Receivers can check the maps of neighborhood by using location URL. @ P. 287

Saving location information to Phonebook to use

Save the retrieved location information to Phonebook to use. @ P. 287

Position Location Positioning Your Location

Position the present location and check your place. Use this function for more convenient use such as showing a map from positioning location information, sending mail with location URL, etc.

 Packet charges are not incurred when the present location is positioned. However, packet transmission charges are applied when a map is displayed based on the location information.

In stand-by, press • 9271.

- Alternatively, press er for 1+ seconds in stand-by to start. (P P. 279)
- 🍲 flashes while GPS positioning is being performed.



Accuracy level

Almost accurate location information (Error is less than 50 m.)

Accuracy level : Relatively accurate location information (Error is less than 300 m.)

Accuracy level : Rough location information (Error is more than 300 m.)

- Accuracy is a rough indication. It may differ depending on the radio wave condition of the surroundings.
- Press
 [Use] to use the location information as a result of location positioning at the displayed accuracy level while the present location is being positioned.
- To cancel position location, press i [Break] or CLR and press .

Press [Agree] and select a usage of location information.

| | Location info (1) head a Map (2) Run i-cppli (3) Paste to mail (4) Add to phonebook (5) Attach to image | |
|---|---|--|
| To display a map based on location information* | 1 | |
| To use GPS compatible i-αppli | (2) → select i-αppli → • | |
| To paste LocationURL to i-mode mail | ③ → compose/send i-mode mail (I P. 220) | |
| To save location information to phonebook | $\begin{array}{c} (4) \rightarrow (1) [\text{New to phonebook}]/\\ \hline (2) [\text{Add to phonebook}] \rightarrow \text{save to phonebook} (\textcircled{CP} P. 99) \end{array}$ | |

| To add location | $5 \rightarrow \text{select folder} \rightarrow \bullet \rightarrow$ |
|----------------------|--|
| information to image | select image \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow 1 |
| | [Save new]/2 [Overwrite] |

Check peripheral area information using "iエリ ア (周辺情報) (i-area (peripheral area information))" after displaying a map based on the location information. Refer to the NTT DoCoMo web page for "iエリア (周辺情報) (i-area (peripheral area information))" service.

Note

 Change sound/volume/LED color for Position location. (P. 118, P. 120, P. 140)

Set Position Loc. Setting Position Location

Setting GPS Key <GPS Button Setting>

Default setting Read a Map

Set the operation that is automatically launched after positioning the present location by pressing for 1+ seconds.

In stand-by, press (•)(9)(2)(7)(4) 1 and select an action.

| To display a map based on location information | 1 |
|--|---|
| To use GPS compatible i-αppli | 2 |
| To paste LocationURL to i-mode mail | 3 |
| To save location information to phonebook | 4 |
| To add location information to image | 5 |
| To select an action on every positioning | 6 |

Press .

Setting Positioning Mode for Positioning Location < Positioning Mode>

Default setting Standard mode

In stand-by, press • 9274 2 and select Positioning mode.

| Standard mode | Prioritizes the speed of positioning location. |
|-----------------|--|
| Quality mode | Performs positioning with longer time. As a result, more accurate positioning is performed than in Standard mode. |

Press .

Using GPS Compatible i-appli

Start i-appli compatible with GPS function.

 When GPS compatible i-αppli software is used, location information is sent to the information provider of the software used.

- When GPS function is used on GPS compatible i-αppli. set Location usage setting of the software used to Send.
 - In stand-by, press 9 (2) (7) (2).
 - GPS compatible i-αppli list appears.

Select software and press .



Using "NAVITIME for SH"

Use preset "NAVITIME for SH" to search a destination, position the present location and be guided with voice navigation.

- Use this appli for 90 days from the first-time use as a trial period. All the functions of "NAVITIME for SH" can be used for free*. The trial service automatically ends after 90 days. Some functions are available after the period. For details on the functions with trial use, check 利用制限について of 設定/インフォメーション of Main menu. This appli is available until December 31, 2009. This period is subject to change.
- Packet transmission charges are incurred for transmissions.
- If you have deleted the preset "NAVITIME for SH", download it from the iMenu site, SH-MODE. *iMenu* → メニュー / 検索

(Menu/Search) → 旨ケータイ電 話メーカー (Mobile phone manufacturer) → SH-MODE



QR code to connect to SH-MODE

SH-MODE is only available in Japanese.

Note

- Note that there is no guarantee for the accuracy and immediacy of the information such as a map, route guide and route.
- When using "NAVITIME for SH", drive or walk according to the actual traffic regulations. Do not operate the phone or check the screen when driving and walking.
- "NAVITIME for SH" should be used by someone other than the driver.
- Note that DoCoMo does not take any responsibility for the car accident that occurs when you operate the phone.
- Reproduction, duplication and alteration of a map, etc. are prohibited.

Starting the software

In GPS compatible i-appli list screen, select NAVITIME for SH and press .

• A confirmation screen for using the service appears. Terms of use and notes regarding use are described. If 次回以 降表示しない is checked, the confirmation screen does not appear next time.



 During the trial service period, the full function available period (end date of trial service period) is displayed at the

bottom of the menu screen. **GPS Function** 279

2 Select an item from the menu and press •.

| ナビ | トータル | Search routes with various |
|---------------------|-----------------|---|
| <i>, ,</i> | ナビ | ways of transportation or |
| | | use 音声ナビ by searching/ specifying a departure place and a destination. |
| | ドライブ サポーター | Start ドライブサポーター of ドライブ. |
| | ぐるっと ナビ | Search routes or use 音声 ナビ by searching/ specifying a stopover place besides a departure place and a destination. |
| | 検索履歴/ Myルート | Display searched routes and saved $MyJb - b$. |
| 現在地 (G | PS)* | Position the present location with GPS for displaying a map of present location or other purposes. |
| 地図/ スポット | 地図検索* | Display a map of an arbitrary point. |
| 検索 | おすすめ スポット | Search おすすめスポット on the list of a feature updated periodically. |
| 乗換/ 時刻表 | 乗換検索 | Search routes with various ways of transportation by specifying a departure station, an arrival station and departure/arrival time. |
| | 時刻表検索 | Specify a station or a bus stop to display a time schedule with a route, date and time. |
| | 乗換検索 履歴 | Display history of routes searched with 乗換検索. |
| ドライブ | ドライブ サポーター | Search car routes or use 音 声ナビ by searching/ specifying a departure place and a destination. |
| | 駐車場検索 | Search car routes or use 音 声ナビ by searching a parking lot around the present location or a specified place. |
| 設定/ インフォ メーショ | NAVITIME とは? | Display a page explaining on the official site of this appli and "NAVITIME". |
| ン* | 利用制限 について | Display a page explaining on the 利用制限 after the trial service period. |
| | お知らせ | Display "重要なお知らせ" and "新着NEWS". |
| | 各種設定 | Make various settings. |
| | ヘルプ | Confirm ご利用確認, 利用 期限, etc. |

 Searched routes can be saved as My/l - h.
 * Available after the trial service period. (Some functions are restricted.)

Using "NAVITIME for SH" by one-touch operation

This function is preset as a shortcut in the Shortcut menu. (@P. 377)

In stand-by, press 1 for 1+ seconds, select Yes and press •.

• "NAVITIME for SH" starts.

Using navigation to a destination トータルナピ

Example: Setting a destination and then a departure place

- In the menu screen, select ナビ and press
 and トータルナビ.
 A search screen appears.
- Select a searching method with
 and search a destination.



| 1 | フリーワードで 探す | Enter a keyword such as store name/address/station name to search. |
|---|------------------|--|
| 2 | TEL•〒で探す | Enter a phone number or postal code to search. |
| 3 | 現在地 (GPS) | Position the present location with GPS. |
| 4 | 履歴から探す | Search from search history. |
| 5 | My地点から探す | Search from saved My地点. |
| 6 | ケータイ登録 情報から探す | Search from location information saved in the phonebook or images. |
| 7 | 一覧から探す | Search from the previously classified items. |

- When several destination candidates appear as search results, narrow down the destination from the search results.
- The search results screen appears when searching completes.

Select 目的地に設定 and press .

- When a destination is set, a search screen appears again. Search a departure place.
- Check a neighborhood map before setting as a destination.
- For starting from the present location, select 一発ルート探索 (GPS) and press . Then, the present location is positioned and routes to a destination are searched. The present time is used as a departure time for this search. Refer to step 6 for subsequent operations.

- The searching method is the same as step 2.
- When a departure place is set, the setting screen for route search condition appears.

5 Set route search conditions, select 設定条件で探索 and press ●.

- Set departure/arrival time or transportation as route search conditions.
- Route search results appear. The route search results screen varies depending on the transportation means to be used.

| 東京夘−⇒赤羽橋 |
|------------------|
| |
| 2006年12月1日 |
| 1 20:00⇒20:08 ഛ |
| 20:05⇒20:21 ▲ |
| Q.再探索/W/保存 |
| Q.到着駅周辺を検索 |
| 左右キーでそれぞれのルートを見比 |
| べることができます |
| |
| |

©NAVITIME JAPAN

乗物+徒歩

• When multiple routes are searched out, select a route with

Select 音声ナビ開始 and press .

- A map is displayed and voice navigation starts.
- Move a map up and down, left and right with
 Press
 to view the map menu.
- Close a map from the map menu.



©NAVITIME JAPAN Map: Shobunsha Publications, Inc.

Note

• Transfer information may appear depending on the route search condition.

ぐるっとナビ

In the menu screen, select ナビ and press I and ぐるっとナビ.

Set a departure place.

 The setting method is the same as step 2 and 3 of "トータルナビ" on P. 280.

Select 経由地 (1) を設定する, press ■ and set a stopover place.

- The setting method is the same as step 2 and 3 of "トータルナビ" on P. 280.
- Set up to eight places by repeating step 3.

Select 終着地を設定する, press ■ and set a destination.

 The setting method is the same as step 2 and 3 of "トータルナビ" on P. 280.

Select 探索する and press .

Set route search conditions, select 設定条件で探索 and press .

• Set departure/arrival time or transportation as route search conditions.

- Route search results appear.
- Display transfer information, check a map or use 音声ナビ, viewing a route.

検索履歴/Myルート

- History of routes searched with トータルナビ, ドライブサポーター, ぐるっとナビ and 検索 履歴/Myルート, and saved Myルート are displayed in one page.
- Select a history entry and press to view the search result.
- MyJレート can be edited/deleted.

Using information on the peripheral area of the present location

現在地 (GPS)

- - Continuous positioning starts and positioned points are continuously displayed on the map mode screen.

✔ Press 画 and ナピゲーションメニュー .

 The ナビゲーションメニュー screen appears. Set the present location as a departure place or a destination, or search a store or facility in the neighborhood.

■ Displaying a map and おすすめスポット 地図検索

In the menu screen, select 地図/スポッ ト検索 and press .■ and 地図検索.

Search a point the map of which you want to view.

- The searching method is the same as step 2 of "トータルナビ" on P. 280.
- Select 地図を確認する and press . • The map appears.

おすすめスポット

- In the menu screen, select 地図/ス ポット検索 and press ● and おすす めスポット.
- A feature list appears.

Checking transfer information and time schedule

乗換検索

In the menu screen, select 乗換/時刻 表 and press and 乗換検索.

Set transfer search conditions, select 設定条件で探索 and press ●.

- Set departure/arrival stations, departure/arrival time, route display order, route to be used as transfer search conditions.
- Transfer information for train, plane, route bus appears.
- When multiple routes are searched out, select a route with .

時刻表検索

In the menu screen, select 乗換/時刻 表 and press and 時刻表検索.

- - Alternatively, search from the route list.
- 3 Search a route, enter date and time, select 上記時間帯の時刻表 and press ●.
 - The time schedule appears.

乗換検索履歴

In the menu screen, select 乗換/時刻 表 and press ■ and 乗換検索履歴.

- Up to five entries of 乗換検索履歴 appear.
- Select a history entry and press .
 The search results appear.

Using navigation for a drive

ドライブサポーター

Example: Using navigation for a drive from the present location to a destination

In the menu screen, select ドライブ and press and ドライブサポーター.

- The user confirmation screen appears. Select 確認のうえ利用する and press .
- Alternatively, select ナビ in the menu screen and press ■ and ドライブサポーター.

Search a destination.

- The searching method is the same as step 2 of "トータルナビ" on P. 280.
- Select 有料道路優先ルート or 一般道路優先ルート and press ●.
 - The present location is positioned and the search results for the routes to a destination appears.
 - For setting a place other than the present location as a departure place, select 出発地を 設定 and press
 without selecting route search conditions.

🚺 Select 音声ナビ開始 and press 亘.

- The user confirmation screen appears. Select 確認のうえ利用する and press ● to view a map and start voice navigation.
- Move a map up and down, left and right with
 Press to view the map menu.
- Press i (E K) in the map mode screen to switch to/from the turn mode screen. The turn mode screen displays the the information on interse



Grangere C

©NAVITIME JAPAN Map: Sumitomo Electric Industries, Ltd.

mode screen displays the direction to go to and the information on intersections for route guidance. Maps do not appear.

駐車場検索

In the menu screen, select ドライブ and press

and 駐車場検索.

Search a destination.

- The searching method is the same as step 2 of "トータルナビ" on P. 280.
- Parking lots around the destination are displayed on a list.

Select a parking lot and press 🔳.

 The search results appear. Search routes and set a departure place. Refer to steps 3 and 4 of "ドライブサポーター" on P. 282 for details.

Related Operations

Edit a destination/a departure place

- 1 In the search results screen, select 地図を 確認する▶ ■.
- 2 In the map mode screen, select a location to be corrected ▶ ▶ 場所の修正 ▶ ▶ は い ▶ ■.

Search a store or facility within 2 km from the present location

In the navigation menu screen, select 周辺を検 索する▶ ■ ▶ select from category ■ (repeatable).

Turn スカイピュー on and off

In the map mode screen, press ● > スカイ ピュー ON/スカイピュー OFF > ●.

Check the operation method of map

In the map mode screen, press ● ▶ 地図操作方 法 ▶ ●.

View "NAVITIME for SH" function outline

In the menu screen, select 設定/インフォメー ション▶ ● ▶ NAVITIMEとは? ▶ ●.

Check restrictions

In the menu screen, select 設定/インフォメー ション ▶ ● ▶ 利用制限について ▶ ●.

Related Operations

Check notice on "NAVITIME for SH"

In the menu screen, select 設定/インフォメー ション▶ ● ▶ お知らせ▶ ●.

Set the volume and vibration for navigation

In the menu screen, select 設定/インフォメー ション▶●▶各種設定▶●▶ → ナビゲー ション設定▶

- To adjust the volume: Select 音量設定 ▶ select from 大/中/小/OFF ●
- To rotate a map in accordance with the traveling direction: Select ヘディングアップ設定 ▶ ● ▶ ON ▶ ●.
- To vibrate when voice navigation is used: Select バ イブレーション設定 ▶ • **● ▶ ON ▶** • • .
- To automatically reroute during car navigation: Select オートリルート設定 ▶ ● ▶ ON ▶ ●.
- To view a path on the navigating map: Select 軌跡 表示設定 > • > ON > • .
- To set a scrolling method of map: Select 地図スク ロール設定 ▶ ● ダイレクトスクロール方式/ カーソル方式 ▶

Change the font size

In the menu screen, select 設定/インフォメーショ ン▶ ● ▶ 各種設定 ▶ ● ▶ - ▶ - ▶ 文字の大きさ ▶ ● ▶ 小中 ▶ ●.

Always display a confirmation screen when an aerial photo is used

In the menu screen, select 設定/インフォメー ショント・ト各種設定ト・ト・ト・ト航空写 真表示設定 ▶ ● ▶ 常に確認画面を表示する ▶ ●.

View Help menu

In the menu screen, select 設定/インフォメーション ▶ ● ▶ ヘルプ ▶ ● ▶ ご利用確認/利用期限/通信料の ご案内/本サービスの提供情報/個人情報の取り扱いよ くある質問/お問い合わせ▶

Loc. Request Menu

Providing Location Information upon the Request

Default setting Loc. provision:OFF

Set whether to provide the present location upon the request from the other party.

- Location provision may require the subscription to a service provider supporting the service and the service usage fee.
- To use a service supporting location provision, set Location request menu to Loc. provision:ON. In addition, usage settings for each service (GPS Service settings or Location usage setting (imadoko-search setting) accessed by *iMenu* → 料金&お申込・設定 (Charges & Subscription, Settings) → オプション設定 (Options) → 位 置情報利用設定 (Location usage setting).
- Sent location information may not reach a service provider depending on the signal strength.
- Location information may be sent to a service provider without any operation under Loc. provision:ON.
- appears when Loc. provision:ON is set. displayed until a location provision permission schedule ends if it is set.
- Location information is provided free of charge.
- For the use of location information, check the information of a service provider and DoCoMo web page.

In stand-by, press • 9276 1. enter terminal security code and press .

 The Location provision **ON/OFF** setting screen appears even in initial settings and Location request can be set. (CPP. 44)



OFF setting screen

Select whether to provide the location information.

| To provide location information | 1 |
|-------------------------------------|---|
| To not provide location information | 2 |

Setting permission schedule onto location provision

- In the Location provision ON/OFF setting screen, press 3 [Permission sched.].
- Select Start, press (•), enter time to start the function and press (-). Use 24-hour format.

Select *End*, press **•**, enter time to deactivate and press .

Use 24-hour format.

Select *Repeat*, press **•** and select a repeat method.

| To permit providing location information at the set time every day | 1 |
|--|---|
| To permit providing location information on specified days of the week | $\begin{array}{c} \textcircled{2} \rightarrow \text{select a day of the} \\ \text{week} \textcircled{\bullet} (\text{repeatable}) \rightarrow \textcircled{0} \\ [Complete] \\ \hline \text{Press} \fbox{[SelAll]/} \\ [ClrAll] to select/disable \\ all days of the week. \end{array}$ |
| To permit providing location information for a specified period | Valid period cannot be set. Proceed to step 6. |

Set Valid period.

| | $\begin{array}{c} \textit{From} \rightarrow \bullet \rightarrow \uparrow \ [\text{Start date} \\ \text{setting} \ \rightarrow \text{enter start date} \rightarrow \\ \bullet \rightarrow \uparrow \ [\text{End date setting} \ \rightarrow \\ \text{enter end date} \rightarrow \bullet \end{array}$ |
|----------------------------|--|
| To not set Valid period | <i>From</i> \rightarrow • \rightarrow 2 [Not set] |

Press **i** [Complete].

Note

If an end time is set to the time before the scheduled. time, location information is not provided for the day.

- Refer to P. 284 for details on the operation by settings.
- Change sound/volume/LED color for Location provision. (P P. 118, P. 120, P. 140)

Related Operations

Set Positioning mode of Location provision <Positioning Mode>

- 1 In stand-by, press 92762.
- 2 To prioritize the speed of positioning location, press 1 ▶ .
 - To prioritize the accuracy of positioning location: Press ② ▶ ■.

Operation When Permission Schedule Is Set onto Location Provision

Example: When the current date is "November 20, 2006, 14:00"

Start: 15:00 End: 22:00

| Se | etting details | Schedule when |
|--------------------|--|--|
| Repeat | Valid period | location provision is performed |
| Not set | - | 11/20/2006, 15:00 to 11/20/2006, 22:00 |
| Everyday | From 11/25/2006 End date 12/25/2006 | 11/25/2006, 15:00 to 12/25/2006, 22:00 Everyday (between 15:00 and 22:00) |
| | From 11/15/2006 End date 12/25/2006 | 11/20/2006, 15:00 to 12/25/2006, 22:00 Everyday (between 15:00 and 22:00) |
| | Not set | 11/20/2006, 15:00 or after Everyday (between 15:00 and 22:00) |
| Set day of week | From 11/25/2006 End date 12/25/2006 | Set day of week from 11/ 25/2006, 15:00 to 12/25/ 2006, 22:00 (between 15:00 and 22:00) |
| | From 11/15/2006 End date 12/25/2006 | Set day of week from 11/ 20/2006, 15:00 to 12/25/ 2006, 22:00 (between 15:00 and 22:00) |
| | Not set | Set day of week after 11/ 20/2006, 15:00 (between 15:00 and 22:00) |

Start: 09:00 End: 22:00

| Setting details | | Schedule when |
|-----------------|--|--|
| Repeat | Valid period | location provision is performed |
| Not set | - | 11/20/2006, 14:00 to 11/20/2006, 22:00 |
| Everyday | From 11/25/2006 End date 12/25/2006 | 11/25/2006, 09:00 to 12/25/2006, 22:00 Everyday (between 09:00 and 22:00) |
| | From 11/15/2006 End date 12/25/2006 | 11/20/2006, 14:00 to 12/25/2006, 22:00 Everyday (between 09:00 and 22:00) |
| | Not set | 11/20/2006, 14:00 or after Everyday (between 09:00 and 22:00) |

| Setting details | | Schedule when |
|--------------------|--|--|
| Repeat | Valid period | location provision is performed |
| Set day of week | From 11/25/2006 End date 12/25/2006 | Set day of week from 11/ 25/2006, 09:00 to 12/25/ 2006, 22:00 (between 09:00 and 22:00) |
| | From 11/15/2006 End date 12/25/2006 | Set day of week from 11/ 20/2006, 14:00 to 12/25/ 2006, 22:00 (between 09:00 and 22:00) |
| | Not set | Set day of week after 11/ 20/2006, 14:00 (between 09:00 and 22:00) |

Start: 15:00 End: 10:00

| Setting details | | Schedule when |
|--------------------|--|---|
| Repeat | Valid period | location provision is performed |
| Not set | - | 11/20/2006, 15:00 to 11/21/2006, 10:00 |
| Everyday | From 11/25/2006 End date 12/25/2006 | 11/25/2006, 15:00 to 12/26/2006, 10:00 Everyday (between 15:00 and 10:00 on the next day) |
| | From 11/15/2006 End date 12/25/2006 | 11/20/2006, 15:00 to 12/26/2006, 10:00 Everyday (between 15:00 and 10:00 on the next day) |
| | Not set | 11/20/2006, 15:00 or after Everyday (between 15:00 and 10:00 on the next day) |
| Set day of week | From 11/25/2006 End date 12/25/2006 | Set day of week from 11/25/ 2006, 15:00 to 12/26/2006, 10:00 (between 15:00 and 10:00 on the next day) |
| | From 11/15/2006 End date 12/25/2006 | Set day of week from 11/20/ 2006, 15:00 to 12/26/2006, 10:00 (between 15:00 and 10:00 on the next day) |
| | Not set | Set day of week after 11/20/ 2006, 15:00 (between 15:00 and 10:00 on the next day) |

Start: 09:00 End: 09:00

| Setting details | | Schedule when |
|--------------------|--|---|
| Repeat | Valid period | location provision is performed |
| Not set | - | 11/20/2006, 14:00 to 11/21/2006, 09:00 |
| Everyday | From 11/25/2006 End date 12/25/2006 | 11/25/2006, 09:00 to 12/26/2006, 09:00 Everyday (between 09:00 and 09:00 on the next day) |
| | From 11/15/2006 End date 12/25/2006 | 11/20/2006, 14:00 to 12/26/2006, 09:00 Everyday (between 09:00 and 09:00 on the next day) |
| | Not set | 11/20/2006, 14:00 or after Everyday (between 09:00 and 09:00 on the next day) |
| Set day of week | From 11/25/2006 End date 12/25/2006 | Set day of week from 11/25/ 2006, 09:00 to 12/26/2006, 09:00 (between 09:00 and 09:00 on the next day) |
| | From 11/15/2006 End date 12/25/2006 | Set day of week from 11/20/ 2006, 14:00 to 12/26/2006, 09:00 (between 09:00 and 09:00 on the next day) |
| | Not set | Set day of week after 11/ 20/2006, 14:00 (between 09:00 and 09:00 on the next day) |

Setting Host <Host Setting>

Default setting Default

Set the host for the GPS service setting site. Setting does not normally need to be changed.

> In stand-by, press •9276 4, enter terminal security code and press •.



Select 2 [User specified host], press [] [Check] and press [] 1 [Edit].

- · Host name entry screen appears.
- To return to the default host, press 1 [Default]. To change to the preset user-defined host, press 2 [User specified host].
- Enter the host name and press •.
 - Enter up to 99 single-byte alphanumeric characters and symbols.

Enter the host address and press .

• Enter up to 100 single-byte alphanumeric characters and symbols.

5 Press **CR** and **2** [User specified host].

• The host is changed.

Related Operations

Delete the user-defined host <Delete>

In the host setting screen, select User specified host ▶ ໍ [Check] ▶ ⓐ 2.

GPS Service Settings <Service Settings>

Connect to the GPS service setting site and configure the setting required for Location provision.

- In stand-by, press 92763.
 - Connected to the GPS service setting site.

2

Configure the settings.

Please contact GPS Service providers for the setting details.

When the Location Information Is Requested

Location provision starts when the request to provide the location information is received.

- When Location provision is allowed (when GPS Service settings are set to 許可 (Always allow) or when Location usage setting (imadoko-search setting) accessed by *iMenu* → 料金&お申込・設定 (Charges & Subscription, Settings) → オプション設定 (Options) → 位置情報利用 設定 (Location usage setting) is set to 許可 (Always allow)), the location information is automatically provided upon request.
- When Location provision is chosen (when GPS Service settings are set to 毎回確認 (Always choose) or when Location usage setting (imadoko-search setting) accessed by **iMenu** → 料金&お申込・設定 (Charges & Subscription, Settings) → オブション設定 (Options) → 位置情報利用設定 (Location usage setting) is set to 毎回確認 (Always choose)), a confirmation screen asking whether to provide appears at every request. Select Yes and press to start providing the location information.
- To cancel providing the location information, press cere while providing. However, the location information may be sent depending on timing.
- Sent location information may not reach a requestor of the location information depending on the signal strength.
- Host ID for Location provision may not be displayed on the screen.

Note

When the location information is requested while in Public mode (Drive mode)

- If Location provision is set to 許可 (Always allow) for usage settings of each service, a notification screen and then the GPS positioning screen are displayed and the location is provided after GPS positioning. However, Location provision/accept, Location provision/notify, vibrator or called LED does not operate.
- When Location provision is set to 毎回確認 (Always choose) for usage settings of each service, location information is not provided.

Location Notification

Notifying Present Location

Notify the positioned Location information of the present location to specified service clients (service provider supporting Location notification).

- See the information of a service provider supporting Location notification or DoCoMo web page. In addition, subscription to a service provider supporting Location notification and a service usage fee may be required.
- Sent location information may not reach a service provider depending on the signal strength.
- Using Location notification is charged.



Select a service client and press .

- The present location is notified to the selected client.
- To directly enter a service client, select *Direct input*, press •, enter ID and press •.

 To cancel positioning location, press i [Break] or care and press . However, the location information may be sent depending on timing.

Note

 Change sound/volume/LED color for Location notification. (P. 118, P. 120, P. 140)

Related Operations

Set Positioning mode of Location notification <Positioning mode>

- 1 In stand-by, press 92753.
- 2 To prioritize the speed of positioning location, press 1.
 - To prioritize the accuracy of positioning location: Press 2.

Saving Service Clients <Notification Clients>

Save up to five service clients to notify the present location.

In stand-by, press • 9 2 7 5 2.

 To check the saved contents of the service client, select a client and press

 .



Location service client list

🕨 Press 🖻 🔟 [Save new].

Select Name, press , enter a service client name and press .

• Enter up to 32 single-byte (16 double-byte) characters.

Select *ID*, press •, enter a service client ID and press •.

- Enter ID specified by a GPS service provider.
- Enter up to 12 single-byte numeric characters.
 X and *#* are also available to enter.

Select *Phone* ..., press • and enter a phone number.

| To select from phonebook | $ \begin{array}{c} 1 \rightarrow \text{select phone number} \\ \rightarrow \bullet \end{array} $ |
|-----------------------------|--|
| To directly enter | $2 \rightarrow \text{enter phone number}$ $\rightarrow \bullet$ |

• The phone number already saved as Location service client cannot be added.

Select *Auto*, press • and select whether to automatically notify location information.

| To automatically notify | 1 | Automatically notifies the present location to the recipient when a voice call is made to a saved phone number. |
|-----------------------------------|---|--|
| To not automatically notify | 2 | Does not automatically notify the present location. |
| To confirm when calling | 3 | Selects whether to notify the present location when a voice call is made to a saved phone number. |

Press 🟽 [Complete].

• The service client is saved.

Note

- Copy location service clients to a microSD Memory Card (P. 320) or location service clients saved on a microSD Memory Card to the FOMA terminal handset (P. 322).
- Send and receive service clients saved on the FOMA terminal handset using Ir exchange or iC transmission.

Related Operations

Edit the saved contents of location service clients In the Location service client list, select a location service client > > select item > > > edit > =.

Save location service clients to phonebook <Add to phonebook>

- 1 In the Location service client list, select a location service client ▶ (a) ④ ④.
- 2 To save new to FOMA terminal handset phonebook, press 1.
 - To save new to FOMA card phonebook: Press 2.
 - To add/overwrite phonebook: Press 3
 select name
 .
- 3 Add to phonebook. (1 P. 96, P. 103)

Delete location service clients <Delete>

- 1 In the Location service client list, select a location service client ▶ ⑤.
- 2 To delete one location service client, press \bigcirc
 - To delete location service clients collectively: Press ② ▶ select a service client ● (repeatable) ▶ ◙.
 - To delete all location service clients: Press 3
 enter terminal security code

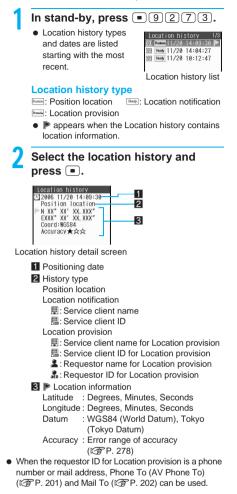
 .
- 3 Select Yes ▶ •.

Location History

Displaying the History of Confirmed Location Information

Up to 50 entries of location information positioned by GPS function are saved in Location history. Use location information on the history to display a map or for other operations.

 When 50 entries are exceeded, entries are overwritten starting with the oldest. Even if latitude and longitude are indicated on the Location history screen, sent location information may not reach the service clients or provider.



Note

- Accuracy is a rough indication. It may differ depending on the radio wave condition of the surroundings.
- The entry that has failed to position for Position location is not saved as Location history.
- For Location notification and Location provision, the entry that has failed to position is saved as Location history. However, location info does not appear.

Using Location History

Select the location history on the Location history list, press and select a usage.

| | | 3 Paste to mail 1 Add to phonebook 5 Attach to image 6 Delete |
|--|--------------------|--|
| To display a map based on location information | | 1 |
| To use GPS compatible i-αppli | | 2 → select i-αppli → • |
| To attach LocationURL to i-mode mail | | ③ → compose/send i-mode mail (1 2 P. 220) |
| To save location information to phonebook | | (4) → 1 [Save new]/2 [Add] → save to phonebook (12) P. 99) |
| To add location information to image | | |
| То | Delete one | $\textcircled{61} \rightarrow \textbf{Yes} \rightarrow \blacksquare$ |
| delete location history | Delete selected | 6 2 → select location history ■ (repeatable) → P Yes → ■ Press ≣ [SelAII/]. [CIrAII] to select/disable all location history. |
| | Delete all | $ \begin{array}{c} 6 \hline 3 \ \rightarrow \ \text{enter terminal} \\ \text{security code} \ \rightarrow \ \blacksquare \ \rightarrow \ Yes \\ \rightarrow \ \blacksquare \end{array} $ |

Location history 1/3

2 Nowy 11/20 14:04:27 Location info

2 Run i-αppli

Using Location Information from Each Function

Use location information with each function by adding location information to data such as phonebook and still pictures or displaying a map based on the added location information.

Adding Location Information

Add location information to the FOMA terminal handset phonebook, still pictures after shooting or images saved in My picture of Data box, or paste Location URL to i-mode mail text.

Example: For phonebook





GPS Function 287

2

Select location information to add.

| To position present location and add | 1 → ● → Yes → ● The present location is positioned by GPS function. |
|--|---|
| To select location information from Location history | $ \begin{array}{c} \textcircled{2} \rightarrow \text{select location} \\ \text{information} \rightarrow \rightarrow \textbf{Yes} \rightarrow \\ \hline \bullet \end{array} $ |
| To select location information added to image | $ \begin{array}{c} \textcircled{3} \rightarrow \text{select folder} \rightarrow \textcircled{\bullet} \\ \text{select image} \rightarrow \textcircled{\bullet} \end{array} $ |
| To check added location information | Press and the previous screen reappears. |
| To delete added location information | 5 |

 For pictures saved in My picture of Data box or i-mode mail, location information added to the phonebook can be selected. The location information added to an image cannot be selected.

Using Added Location Information

Using location information in the FOMA terminal handset phonebook or in the images saved in My picture of Data box

Example: For phonebook

In the phonebook entry details screen, select \mathbb{P} and press \blacksquare .

Select a usage.

| To display a map based on location information | 1 |
|--|---|
| To use GPS compatible i-αppli | (2) → select i-αppli → ● |
| To paste LocationURL to i-mode mail | ③ → compose/send i-mode mail (© P. 220) |
| To add location information to image | $\begin{array}{c} \textcircled{4} \rightarrow \text{select folder} \rightarrow \textcircled{\bullet} \\ \rightarrow \text{select image} \rightarrow \fbox{\bullet} \rightarrow \textcircled{1} \\ [\text{Save new}]/\textcircled{2} \ [\text{Overwrite}] \end{array}$ |
| To check location information | Press and the previous screen reappears. |

Using location information of sites, ToruCa or Message R/F

Use location information of sites, ToruCa or Message R/F to position the location on a map, use GPS compatible i- α ppli, or attach to mail to send.

Example: For sites

While viewing a site (B steps 1 to 3 on P. 188), select location information and press •.



Select a usage.

| To use GPS compatible i-αppli | <i>Run i-αppli</i> → • → select i-αppli → • |
|--|---|
| To display a map based on location information | Read a map \rightarrow • |
| To paste | Paste to mail → • → |
| LocationURL to | compose/send i-mode mail |
| i-mode mail | (I ^{\bigcirc} P. 220) |
| To check location | Run i-αppli/Read a map/ |
| information | Paste to mail → ■ → ■ Press আ and the previous screen reappears. |

Using GPS Function

- Note that DoCoMo shall not be liable for the pure economic loss if you cannot confirm the positioning (communication) result with terminal failure, malfunction, error or external factors such as power failure (including battery exhaustion).
- FOMA terminals cannot be used as navigation system for professional use of aircrafts, vehicles, person, etc.
 Therefore, note that DoCoMo shall not be liable for the loss caused by the navigation system to use location information.
- FOMA terminals cannot be used as surveying GPS of high accuracy. Therefore, note that DoCoMo shall not be liable for the loss caused by the error of location information.
- GPS is the service in charge of Department of Defense of USA, therefore, GPS radio wave condition may be controlled (accuracy degradation or radio wave abort, etc.) for the US national security reason.
- Position location and Location notification are not available when Function lock is applied to GPS.
- Location provision, Position location and Location notification are not available in the following cases.
 When a FOMA card is not inserted
 - When a FOMA card is not in
 - During Self mode
 - During Software update
- Note that GPS is using the radio wave from satellites, and following conditions may cause the radio wave abort or difficulty to receive.
 - In or under buildings
 - In basement, tunnel, underground or water
 - In bags or boxes
 - In density area with buildings or residence
 - In or under densely trees
 - Near high-tension line
 - Inside cars or trains
 - In bad weather with heavy rain/snow
 - When people or objects are blocking mobile phones
 - When hands are covering screen/keypad/ microphone/speaker of mobile phones

In these cases, the error of retrieved location information may be more than 300 m.

 Unable to use GPS function of FOMA terminals out of service area or overseas.

Full Browser

| Viewing Web Pages Designed for PC | 290 |
|-----------------------------------|-----|
| Setting Full Browser | 293 |

Viewing Web Pages Designed for PC

View Internet web pages that are not supported by i-mode as they appear on PCs with the FOMA terminal using the Full Browser.

- Some Internet web pages with large amounts of information do not appear properly.
- Packet transmission charges are incurred while Full Browser is connected.
- Full Browser is not supported by "パケ・ホーダイ" (Pake-Houdai).
- Screen memos cannot be saved.
- Ring tone, i-αppli, ToruCa, i-motion and Flash movie playback, downloading and saving are also not available.

In stand-by, press **i** 9.



Specify the Internet web page to view.

| To view a saved web page (portal site) | 1 |
|--|---|
| To view from bookmarks | $\textcircled{2} \rightarrow \text{select folder} \rightarrow \textcircled{\bullet} \rightarrow \text{select bookmark} \rightarrow \textcircled{\bullet}$ |
| To enter URL and view | 3 → 3 → enter URL → • Enter up to 512 single-byte characters (including <i>http://</i>). |

• It may take time to view some pages.

Confirmation screen for the use of Full Browser

 If Full Browser Access Setting is set to OFF when Full Browser is started, the Access Setting screen appears to confirm the use of Full Browser. When Yes is selected, Access Setting is changed to ON and Internet web page is shown with Full Browser. This setting remains enabled after Full Browser is closed.

Note

Key operation during Full Browser

| key operation | Action | | |
|------------------|---|--|--|
| 1 | Window list appears. Switch windows. | | |
| 2 | Move to top of the screen. | | |
| 3 | Open link in new window. | | |
| 4 | Go back to previous page. | | |
| 5 | Open saved web page in new window. | | |
| 6 | Go to next page. | | |
| 7 | Search the web with a registered search engine. | | |
| 8 | Search text on the page. | | |
| 9 | Use bookmarks. | | |

Related Operations

Set a home page (portal site) <Set as Home URL>

While viewing an Internet web page with Full Browser (F steps 1 and 2 on P. 290), press 0722.

To enter URL to set a home page (portal site): In the Full Browser menu screen (\Im step 1 on P. 290), press 4 1 \blacktriangleright enter URL \blacktriangleright .

View pages from URL History <URL history>

In the Full Browser menu screen, press (3) \rightarrow select URL \rightarrow \bigcirc .

View the last viewed page <Last URL>

In the Full Browser menu screen, press 31

View pages using Active marker

<Active marker>

In stand-by, press $] \Rightarrow 2$ (Full Browser history) $\Rightarrow \Rightarrow$ select history $\Rightarrow =$.

Note (Related operations)

- i-mode **bookmarks** and Full Browser bookmarks are managed separately.
- Bookmark folder and Search folder are saved for Full Browser bookmarks by default. A combined total of 20 folders (including Bookmark and Search folders) can be saved.
- Save up to 100 bookmarks in total.
- Save up to 512 single-byte characters for URL (including *http://*).
- When searching the web, the site saved at the very top of the **Search** folder is used. (ICP P. 293)

Full Browser Display

Basic operations for Full Browser are the same as when accessing sites from the i-mode Go to location menu. (IPP P. 193) Operations that differ are mainly explained here.

| i Na k | 10:02 |
|-----------|--------------|
| | |
| Do Co Mo | |

Full Browser screen Icons that appear during browsing (Full Browser)

- រី៖ : Full Browser open. (ខ្លុំ flashes during transmissions)
- Full Browser is accessing the web. (<> flashes when receiving data)
- I stull Browser is accessing an inactive window. (<> flashes during transmissions)
- Full Browser is accessing a background frame. (<> flashes during transmissions)
- SSU: SSL page is being viewed.
- 📮 : Full Browser is in Horizontal scroll mode.
- [□] : Frame is shown enlarged.
- 1 :Multiple windows open (window/total number of windows).

Changing display mode

| Normal | | Sets an Internet web page at a reduced size to fit display horizontally. Scroll up/down. |
|----------------------|---|--|
| Horizontal scroll | 2 | Does not display at a reduced size. Scroll up/down/left/right. |

Vertical scroll

Scroll the screen up and down with .

● Alternatively, press □ [Page] or □ [Page] to scroll one screen at a time in Normal mode.

Horizontal scroll (Horizontal scroll)

Scroll within the horizontal size of the page in Horizontal scroll mode with .

Jumping to the top of the page (Top)

• Press 2 or 1074 to jump to the top of the current page.

Moving to previous/next page (Cache)

The FOMA terminal stores up to 900 KB of viewed Internet web pages. This is called the "cache" and can be shown easily.

- For Normal mode, press
 to show the previous page and then press to show the next page.
- For Horizontal scroll mode, press ☑ [Back] to show the previous page and then press ☑ [Next] to show the next page.
- Also, press ④ to return to the previous page and ⑥ to go to the next page.
- Press ─ or ☑ [Back] repeatedly to scroll through previous pages. When using ─ or ☑ [Back] to scroll through previous pages (C to B) and another page (D) is viewed, pressing ─ or ☑ [Back] twice at D will not return to C. Page will scroll from B to A.
 When scrolling A → B → C → B → D. (E P. 192)
- Previously entered characters and settings are not
- restored for pages saved in the cache.If a new page is viewed when the cache is full, the oldest page in history is deleted.
- When scrolling through pages, if the page is no longer in the cache, the FOMA terminal cache size is exceeded or the page is set (created) to always reload up-to-date information, the handset downloads the page from the Internet web page.
- When switching to a screen saved in the cache, it may take time to view the page.
- Cache information is reset when the Full Browser is closed.

Viewing pages using frames

View pages consisting of multiple frames. Select a frame in the frame selection screen to show a page per frame.

- In the frame selection screen, press , select a frame and press to show the frame details screen.
- To return from individual frames to the frame selection screen, press (75 [All frames].

Note

- Set handset to not load images when viewing Internet web pages. (127 P. 294)
- Some Internet web pages may appear different from actual ones. If characters do not appear properly, change the character code. After character code changes four times, the site or web page is shown with original code.
- Some downloaded images may exceed the number of colors the FOMA terminal can show on the display.
- Press
 while viewing Internet web pages and end confirmation screen appears. Select Yes and the Full Browser ends.
- When Accept calls, Reject calls, Reject by reason of non-disclosure or Reject unknown is set, ring tone does not sound for callers without permission even while viewing an Internet web page. The caller's number and the name saved in phonebook are saved in Received calls. The caller hears a busy signal.
- Appears on the display when data to show on the display could not be retrieved while viewing Internet web pages due to transmission errors and other causes. In such cases, the Internet web page may appear properly when reloaded.

Related Operations

Reload Internet web page <Reload>

In the Full Browser screen, press 1.

View the URL <URL>

In the Full Browser screen, press D . 11.

Change character code < Character code>

In the Full Browser screen, press @ 13.

Replay animated GIF <Retry>

In the Full Browser screen, press (14).

Add bookmarks <Add bookmark>

- 1 In the Full Browser screen, press 21.
- 2 Select folder ▶ •.
- **3** To save, select OK •.
 - To change the title and save: Select *Edit title* edit title
 edit title
 - To change folder and save: Select Change folder > > select folder > > OK > •.

Save Images <Save image>

- 1 In the Full Browser screen, press 3.
- 2 Select image > > select folder > •.

Send Internet web page URL by mail <Compose message>

In the Full Browser screen, press 24.

Related Operations

Note (Related operations)

Save image

 Save up to 300 KB of GIF images, JPEG images, BMP images and PNG images. BMP images and PNG images can be saved on microSD Memory Card but not on the FOMA terminal handset.

Viewing SSL-enabled pages

View Internet web pages that begin with *https://* (SSL pages) with the Full Browser. When Client certificate is required, a confirmation screen appears. Select **Yes**, press
and enter PIN2 code to send.

- When viewing an SSL-enabled page, SSI appears.
- When multiple windows are opened, 633 does not appear if an SSL-enabled page is only open in the inactive windows.
- A screen confirming the end of SSL session appears when exiting an SSL-enabled page and showing a normal page.

Related Operations

View Internet web page server certificate <View certificate>

In the Full Browser screen, press D - 12.

Note (Related operations)

 If *This certificate has expired. Connect?* or other messages appears, the web page certificate is invalid, has expired or uses a different certificate from the FOMA terminal's certificate.

When such messages appear, the page is not secure to send credit card numbers, postal addresses or other personal information. To continue viewing the page, select **Yes**. To not view the page, select **No**.

Opening Multiple Windows

Open up to five browser windows simultaneously.

Entering URL and viewing in a new window

View a different Internet web page in a separate window while viewing an Internet web page with Full Browser.

In the Full Browser screen (© P. 290), press 🕲 5 [Go to location].

2 Specify the Internet web page to view.

| To view from URL history | $\textcircled{1} \rightarrow \text{select URL history} \rightarrow \textcircled{\bullet}$ |
|-----------------------------|---|
| | ② → enter URL → ● ● Enter up to 512 single-byte characters (including <i>http://</i>). |

Select Open New Window and press •.

• Internet web page appears in a new window.

Note

• A new window may not open when the number of frames which can be viewed is exceeded or when the memory is low.

Viewing selected links in a new window

Keep the current window and view a selected link in a separate window.

In the Full Browser screen (ご子 P. 290), select link and press ③ or 囫8① [Open New Window].

Viewing a list of open windows

Up to five windows are shown in the list.

In the Full Browser screen (心子 P. 290), press ① or 圖82 [Window list].

Select the next operation.

| To switch the active window | Select a window \rightarrow • |
|----------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| To close a selected window | Select a window $\rightarrow \square$ |
| To close all inactive windows | |

Closing a window

Close the active window.

In the Full Browser screen (徑了P. 290), press 圖⑧③ [Close Window].

2 Select Yes and press
.

Related Operations

Select a bookmark and view in a new window <Bookmark list>

- 1 In the Full Browser screen, press 22.
- 2 Select folder ▶ ▶ select bookmark ▶ [New WND].

View the registered home page (portal site) in a new window <Home>

In the Full Browser screen, press 5 or 721.

Uploading Files

Upload images from Internet web pages that support file uploads from forms.

- Upload GIF and JPEG images of up to 80 KB.

 - Select folder, press •, select image and press •.
 - Select send key on the Internet web page and press •.

Downloading Files

Download text files, PDF files and e-book from Internet web pages.

- Downloaded files are saved to the microSD Memory Card.
- Supported file types (file extension) Microsoft Word (.doc), Microsoft Excel (.xls), Microsoft PowerPoint (.ppt), PDF (.pdf), XMDF (.zbf), e-book in Text format (.zbk)
- Download files of up to 500 KB as a single file.
 - In the Full Browser screen (P P. 290), select the file to download and press •.

Select Yes and press •.
 Download file? appears. Select Yes and press •.

When finished downloading, select Save to ext mem and press •.

Searching the Web

Use search engines to search the web.

- In the Full Browser screen (② P. 290), press 7 or @61 [Search web].
 - The first Internet web page saved in the Search folder of Bookmark is connected. If no Internet web pages are saved in the Search folder, No bookmarks appears.
 - Follow instructions for each site for search methods.

Searching the Page

Search for specific character strings in the page being viewed.

In the Full Browser screen (ピア P. 290), press 自ら2 [Search page].

Enter keyword and press •.

Viewing the Key List

In the Full Browser screen (☞ P. 290), press @ • 2 [Key list].

Switching from i-mode to Full Browser

Switch to Full Browser when an Internet web page viewed from i-mode does not appear properly.

While viewing an Internet web page from i-mode, press 🕲 8 [Switch to FB], select Yes and press •.

Setting Full Browser

Set various functions related to Full Browser.

Setting Cookies

Cookies temporarily record information such as user name, date/time and number of accesses in the FOMA terminal when an Internet web page is connected. This information is used when the Internet web page is accessed again.

 DoCoMo shall not be liable for any information obtained by a third party as a result of validating cookies.

Validating/Invalidating cookies

Default setting Valid

Validate/Invalidate recording of cookies.

In stand-by, press 9421.

Select Validate or Invalidate.

| Valid | Terminal security code may be required to switch from <i>Invalid</i> to <i>Valid</i>. |
|-------------------|--|
| Valid (notify) | ② → ① [Sending], ② [Receiving] or ③ [Sending/ Receiving] ● Terminal security code may be required to switch from <i>Invalid</i> to <i>Valid(notify)</i>. |
| Invalid | 3 |

Note

- If the FOMA card that was inserted when cookies were set to Valid is removed and other FOMA cards are inserted, cookies are set to Invalid.
- When cookie setting is changed from *Invalid* to *Valid* or *Valid(notify)*, a confirmation screen to delete previous cookie information appears. Select **Yes** to delete.

Deleting cookies

Delete all cookie information saved on the FOMA terminal.

ln er pi

In stand-by, press **1**9422, enter terminal security code and press **1**.

Select Yes and press 🔳.

Validating/Invalidating JavaScript

Default setting Valid

Set to run JavaScript program when included in Internet web page.

In stand-by, press **1**943 and 1 [Valid].

• To set to *Invalid*: Press 2.

Hiding Images <Set Image Display>

Default setting ON (display)

Set to hide images when viewing Internet web pages with the Full Browser.

In stand-by, press **§**9442 and 2 [OFF].

Changing Font Size

Default setting Normal

Set the font size for viewing Internet web pages with Full Browser.

In stand-by, press **1**9443 and select font size.

| Large font | 1 | Small font | 3 |
|------------|---|------------|---|
| Normal | 2 | Minimum | 4 |

Note

• Some Internet web pages may not appear correctly when *Font size* is changed.

Preventing New Windows from Opening Automatically <Window Open Guard>

Default setting Invalid (no guard)

Block JavaScript programs in Internet web pages that prompt a new window to open.

In stand-by, press **1**945 and **1** [Valid].

Performing Settings Regarding Referer

Default setting Send

The browser uses the "Referer" field to send the referring URL (server) to the destination's server when following links in Internet web pages. The FOMA terminal Full Browser also features this function. Set to send, send after confirmation or not send.

 DoCoMo shall not be liable for any information obtained by a third party as a result of using "Referer".

In stand-by, press **§**946.

Select Send or Unsend.

| To send | 1 |
|-------------|---|
| To not send | 2 |
| To notify | 3 |

Note

• Some Internet web pages may not appear correctly when "Referer" is not sent.

Setting Whether to Use Full Browser Function <Access Setting>

Default setting OFF

Set whether to use Full Browser function.

- If Yes is selected, Access Setting is changed to ON and Full Browser can be started. If No is selected, Access Setting is changed to OFF and the Access Setting screen appears when Full Browser is started.
 (12) P. 290)
- To use Full Browser function with the settings changed, be sure to read *For more information* in the Access Setting screen.

In stand-by, press **1**947, select Yes and press **.**

Resetting Full Browser Settings <Reset Full Browser>

- Resetting the Full Browser settings also resets the registered home page.
 - In stand-by, press **1**948, enter terminal security code and press **1**.

Select Yes and press .

Displaying/Editing/ Managing Data

| | IUsing Still Pictures |
|---|---|
| | Displaying Saved Images |
| | Editing Still Pictures (SPEEDYLAB) |
| | Using Movies |
| | Playing Movie/i-motion |
| | Editing Movies (SPEEDYLAB) |
| | Using Chara-den |
| | What Is Chara-den? |
| | IUsing Melodies |
| | Playing Back Melodies |
| | Using microSD Memory Cards |
| | microSD Memory Card |
| • | Transferring Data in FOMA Terminal to microSD Memory Card |
| Ĩ | |
| | Copying from FOMA Terminal to microSD Memory Card |
| | Backing Up FOMA Terminal Handset Data |
| | Previewing microSD Memory Card Data |
| | Copying from microSD Memory Card to FOMA Terminal |
| | Managing microSD Memory Card |
| | IUsing Various Data |
| | Managing Data |
| | IUsing Ir Exchange |
| | Ir Exchange |
| | Sending and Receiving Data Individually |
| | Sending and Receiving All Data Items |
| | |
| | Using Ir Exchange with i-appli Software |
| | Using the Infrared Remote Control Function |
| | ic Transmission Function |
| | |
| | Sending and Receiving Data Individually |
| | Sending and Receiving All Data Items |
| | Using Voice Recorder |
| | Using the FOMA Terminal as a Voice Recorder |
| | Using PDF Viewer |
| | Displaying PDF Files |
| | Managing PDF Files |
| | Document Viewer |
| - | Displaying Word and Excel Files |
| | Managing Documents |
| | BookReader |
| | Displaying e-Dictionary and e-Book |
| | Using the Information in e-Book and e-Dictionary |
| | Scanning Text to Search for Words in an e-Dictionary <character reader="">347</character> |
| | Managing e-Book and e-Dictionary |
| | Printing Still Pictures |
| | Printing Saved Images |
| | IViewing on TV |
| | Viewing Still Pictures and Movies/i-motion on TV |

Image Viewer

Displaying Saved Images

Play back still pictures shot with FOMA terminal or images downloaded from sites and Internet web pages saved in My picture of Data box with Image Viewer.

- Show still pictures and slideshows on a TV screen.
 (127 P. 350)
- Save JPEG and GIF images stored in My picture of Data box to the Data Storage Center. (IPP. 304)

In stand-by, press •911.

Alternatively, press
 2 in the still picture shooting screen
 (17) P. 170).

| My picture | (phone) | 91 |
|------------|---------|----|
| î →microSL |) | |
| 🛅 Camera | | |
| 🗎 i-mode | | |
| Decomail | picture | |
| Decomail | pict | |
| Dre-insta | al 1 | |
| Acquired | data | |
| 🛅 Item | | |
| | | |

saved in microSD Memory Card, select →*microSD*. To view still pictures saved in FOMA

• To view still pictures

My picture folder list

terminal handset again, select →phone.

Select a folder and press .

 Refer to "Changing display method" on P. 297 for switching image list.

| 1 | Camera | | 1/12 |
|---|-----------------|--------|------|
| | | | Ω |
| | Ş | 0 | C |
| | C | 0 | 0 |
| | | 2 | - |
| | 20 61120 | 100834 | 19 |
| | | | |

Image list

Select still picture and press .

- To view previous/next image, press .
- Switch between 1/1 and Zoom if a still picture is smaller than 240 or lessx320 or less.



• Switch between 1/1 and **Zoom** if a still picture is larger than **240** for the horizontal

size or **320** for the vertical size.

- The display size cannot be changed for 240×320 or less or 240 or less×320 still pictures.
- Horizontally long JPEG images whose size is larger than VGA: 480×640 are displayed as rotated 90° clockwise.
- Zoom and Shrink are not available for animated GIFs and Flash movies.

Note

- Data is not saved if memory is full. Delete unnecessary files to increase available space when saving still pictures shot with camera, edited still pictures and downloaded still pictures to the FOMA terminal handset. (IPP . 330) Check memory before shooting, editing or downloading images.
- Opening and saving becomes slower when more images are saved.
- Animated GIF and Flash movies downloaded from a website or Internet web page may appear differently, such as frame dropping, from when seen on the site or page.
- The current file location (FOMA terminal handset or microSD Memory Card) is saved even if Image Viewer is ended, and is used the next time Image Viewer is started.

Forward and store still pictures saved in My picture of Data box on a PC using microSD Memory Card (3 P. 316).

 Saved content may be lost due to malfunctions, repairs or other handling of the FOMA terminal. DoCoMo shall not be liable for any loss of content.

Related Operations

Show in full-screen mode

<Full-screen mode/Wide mode>

- 1 In the image display screen, press D . 1 [My Picture setting].
- **2** Press ③ to show in the size that fits within the display in full-screen mode.
 - To show in the size without margins in wide mode: Press ④.
 - To show in the image display screen/image list with one-touch key operations in full-screen mode: Press i.
 - To return: Press a key other than .

Use Zoom (JPEG image only) <Zoom>

- In the image display screen, press $(a) \neq (a)$.
- To show other areas: Press
- To return to original view: Press .
- To shrink (zoom out) enlarged still pictures: Press .

Light up <Light up>

In the image display screen, press D . 17.

- Alternatively, press (#) for 1+ seconds.
- To turn off: Perform same steps or show another image.

Set Playback light <Backlight time>

- 1 In My picture folder list, press (a) 4.
- 2 Press 2 [Always ON].
- To set same as light setting: Press 1.

Add/use location information <Location info>

In the image display screen, press D . 2.

• Refer to P. 287 for details on the location information.

Note (Related operations)

Light up

 Backlight turns off after time set for Display light time when Backlight time is set to As light setting.

Related Operations

Note (Related operations)

- When Backlight time is set to *Always ON*, even after time set for Display light time passes while playing Flash movies and animated GIFs, the backlight remains lit until image display is ended.
- Display is at brightest when lit up regardless of brightness settings (127 P. 133).

Backlight time

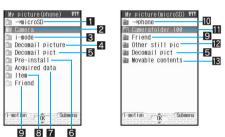
• The default setting is As light setting. (CPP. 131)

My Picture Folder List/Image List

Select →*microSD* or press ⓐ ⑧ [Switch phone⇔SD] in My picture folder list to switch to microSD Memory Card folder. (☞ P. 318)

My picture folder list layout

FOMA terminal handset microSD Memory Card



- 1 Shows folder list of microSD Memory Card
- 2 Folder for still pictures shot with FOMA terminal
- S Folder for still pictures downloaded from sites and Internet web pages or retrieved via Message R/F or i-mode mail
- 4 Folder for Deco-mail images
 - Deco-mail images are preset.
 - Deco-mail images which are downloaded from sites or Internet web pages, or retrieved via mail or microSD Memory Card, are saved.
- 5 Folder for Deco-mail pictographs
 - JPEG/GIF images and animated GIFs that are 20 x 20 pixels without file restrictions are saved.
- 6 Folder for still pictures preset in FOMA terminal handset
- Folder for images retrieved via Bar code reader, microSD Memory Card, Ir exchange, iC transmission, FOMA USB cable (sold separately) or IrSS exchange
- B Folder for frames and stamps retrieved from sites and Internet web pages
- 9 Created folder (CP P. 323, P. 326)
- D Shows folder list of FOMA terminal handset
- Folder for still pictures shot with FOMA terminal, DCF compliant JPEG and GIF images excluding animated GIF. When a still picture is shot or is copied from the FOMA terminal handset, a folder named "Camerafolder 100" is automatically created. When the number of files reaches 400, a new folder named "Camerafolder xxx" ("xxx" in the folder name is a three-digit single-byte number between 100 and 999) is automatically created. ("xxx" in the Camerafolder name can be changed but 000 to 099 are not available.)
- 2 Folder for animated GIF and non-DCF compliant JPEG copied from FOMA terminal handset

E Folder for images downloaded from sites, which has restrictions for outputting from the FOMA terminal

Image list layout

Select a view method from the following three settings.





12-part

| Pre-install | 1/177 |
|-------------|-------|
| 認 待受画面1 | se. |
| 🚨 待受画面2 | ¢×. |
| 🔤 待受画面3 | ¢× |
| 🔤 待受画面4 | ¢×. |
| 🔮 待受画面5 | ¢× |
| 一 待受画面6 | ¢×. |
| 匪 待受画面7 | ¢×. |
| 匪 電界強度1 | ⊛¢× |
| 匪 電界強度2 | ¢×. |
| 匪 電界強度3 | ¢× |
| 匪 電界強度4 | ¢×. |
| 匪 電池残量1 | ⑧世 |
| | |

List display

 Up to three digits are shown at the upper right of the display to indicate the number of images. Therefore, if there are 1,000 images saved in a folder, xxx/999 appears. ("xxx" is the number of the selected image.) In addition, 0/999 appears for the 1,000th image.

Changing display method

<Switch view mode>

Default setting 12-part

In stand-by, press •911, select folder, press •, and press •11 [Switch view mode].

Select display method.

| 12-part | 1 |
|--------------|---|
| 20-part | 2 |
| List display | 3 |

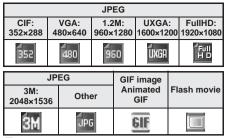
 While showing the list, press → to view the next page and → to view the previous page.

Note

Enter up to 50 single-byte (25 double-byte) characters for title name. Up to 14 single-byte (7 double-byte) characters of the title are shown on screen. If a title name exceeds 14 single-byte (7 double-byte) characters, up to 12 single-byte (6 double-byte) characters are shown for the title name. Subsequent characters are shown as "...".

Still picture types and their icons

| | | JPEG | | |
|----------------|------------------|------------------|------------------|----------------------|
| Icon: 76×76 | sQCIF: 128×96 | QCIF: 176×144 | QVGA: 240×320 | Stand-by: 240×400 |
| 76 | 128 | 176 | 240 | avea W |



- I Still pictures with FOMA card restrictions applied
- ☎: Still pictures set as stand-by display, Picture call, Own image and Schedule
- Still pictures with restrictions for mail attachment and output from the FOMA terminal
- I : Frames or stamps
- ☆ : Still pictures downloaded with i-mode (excluding frames or stamps)
- : Still pictures (excluding frames or stamps) retrieved via Bar code reader, microSD Memory Card, Ir exchange, iC transmissions, FOMA USB cable (sold separately) or IrSS transmissions
- Still pictures shot with camera
- $\mathbf{\ensuremath{\mathbb{R}}}$: Picture memos shot during Videophone calls
- Still pictures shot with Chara-den
- : Still pictures saved with e-book/e-dictionary
- : Still pictures cut out from PDF Viewer
- Check the image size with Display size of *File* property. (P P. 327)
- Refer to P. 167 for details on shot sizes and capacity.

Playing Flash Movies

Play back Flash movies downloaded from sites and Internet web pages saved in *i-mode* folder in My picture of Data box.

- In stand-by, press 9 1 1, select folder, press •, select Flash movie and press •.
 - Image appears for Flash movies in image list.

Note

• Saved Flash movies may play differently from when on a site or Internet web page.

Related Operations

Set Playback light <Backlight time>

- 1 While stopped (paused) Flash movie, press ⊠⑧.
- 2 Press 2 [ON].
 - To set same as light setting: Press 1.

Adjust playback volume <Set volume>

In stand-by, press ● 9 1 1 ▶ select folder ▶ ● ▶ ◎ 1 4 ▶ * (louder) or , (softer) ▶ ●.

Related Operations

Note (Related operations)

Backlight time

- The default setting is *As light setting*. (CP P. 131) Set volume
- The default setting is Volume 5.

Viewing Slideshows <Slideshow>

Show all supported images in a folder consecutively.

In stand-by, press •911, select folder and press @31 [Start slideshow].

• Press CLR, To end playback.

Playing BGM during slideshow

Default setting Tone: Green breezy, Volume: Silent

Play BGM during slideshow. Set tone and volume.

- BGM cannot be played while in Manner mode.
 Select BGM tone from Melody of Data box.
- Select BGIN tone from Melody of Data box

In stand-by, press •911, select folder and press 63 [Slideshow].



Select tone and volume.

| To set tone | 2 → select folder → ● → select melody → ■ To check melody, select a melody and press ●. To stop, press ■. |
|------------------|--|
| To change volume | $\textcircled{3} \rightarrow \text{select volume} \rightarrow \textcircled{\bullet}$ |

Setting playback interval and effects

Default setting Interval: Normal, Effects: Random Set playback interval (speed) and effects of Slideshow in My picture.

In stand-by, press •911, select folder and press @3 [Slideshow].

2 Press ④ [Play interval] and select interval.

| Fastest | 1 | Images are played one after another. |
|---------|---|---|
| Fast | 2 | Next image appears after approximately three seconds. |
| Normal | 3 | Next image appears after approximately five seconds. |

| Slow | (4) | Next image appears after |
|------|-----|----------------------------|
| | | approximately ten seconds. |

Play interval may vary depending on image size.

3 Press **5** [Effects settings] and select effect.

| Diamond shape | 1 | Next image appears from inside to outside, like a rhomboid enlarging. |
|---------------|---|---|
| Pin-wheel | 2 | Next image spins and enlarges. |
| Wheel | 3 | Next image spins from center and enlarges. |
| Dissolve | 4 | Next image fades in. |
| Stretch | 5 | Next image enlarges vertically from center. |
| Random | 6 | Next image appears with an effect randomly selected. |
| OFF | 7 | Effect is not set. |

Attaching Still Pictures and Sending i-mode Mail

Select still picture from My picture of Data box and attach to i-mode mail.

- Send still pictures of up to 2 MB.
- Available still pictures are those received via i-mode mail as attachments, shot with FOMA terminal and downloaded from sites and Internet web page that do not have restrictions for mail attachment and output from the FOMA terminal.
- Still pictures shot with FOMA terminal and those retrieved with microSD Memory Cards are available even when restricted.

In stand-by, press ● 9 1 1, select folder, press ●, select still picture and press ⊠ [Mail].

• *QVGA: 240×320* is the suitable size for sending to i-mode terminals.

| ub Ref | 061120_1008 | 24. 4KB |
|-----------|-------------|---------|
| sa | | 0. 0KE |

Compose and send i-mode mail.

• Refer to steps 2 to 4 on P. 220 for details.

Setting an Image as Stand-by Display <Set Screen>

Set still pictures saved in My picture of Data box as the stand-by display, call/receive display, send/receive display and display mark.

- Frames and stamps are not available.
- Flash movies are available for stand-by, call/receive and send/receive display.
- Some JPEG images, animated GIFs and GIF images are not available for Submenu image and Animated notices.

In stand-by, press •911, select folder, press •, select still picture and press @4 [Set screen].

 Alternatively, press
 ③ in the image display screen
 (12) step 3 on P. 296), or press
 ④ for Flash movies while stopped.



Select screen item and press .

- To set as the stand-by display, select **Yes** and press •.
- Select additional items depending on the screen.

Send Still Pictures Using High-speed Ir Exchange (IrSS Function)

Send JPEG images saved in My picture of Data box to IrSS compatible devices using high-speed Ir exchange.

- Still pictures that are restricted for output from the FOMA terminal are not available.
- IrSS is a simplex communication function compliant with IrSimple 1.0 (Home Appliance Profile).
- IrSS performs a transmission without confirming the response of the receiver side since it uses a simplex communication. For this reason, the sender side completes the communication normally even if the receiver side does not.
 - In stand-by, press •911, select folder, press •, select still picture and press •.

2 Set receiving FOMA terminal to receive data.

Select Yes and press .

- Press lo cancel transmission.
- When the transmission is successfully completed, **Sent** appears even if Still pictures are not saved in the receiver side terminal.

Edit Image Editing Still Pictures (SPEEDYLAB)

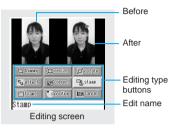
Compare before and after images while editing without interruption.

- Some images cannot be edited depending on the size of still picture shot with the FOMA terminal.
- Some images downloaded from sites or Internet web pages and images imported via Data Link Software cannot be edited.
- Image quality may deteriorate with repeated editing of an image after saving, such as by adding frames and stamps.
- Data size may increase/decrease when edited.
- Attach edited image to i-mode mail and send. (12 P. 301)
- Flash movies and animated GIFs cannot be edited.

Opening Image Editing Screen <Edit Image>

In stand-by, press • 9 1 1, select folder, press •, select still picture and press • 1 1 [Edit image].

- Alternatively, press 11 in the image display screen (2 step 3 on P. 296).
- Or, press 1 in the still picture preview screen after shooting (2 step 3 on P. 172).



Editing type buttons

Use editing type buttons to access editing menu directly.

| trimming | resize | rotate | |
|------------------------|---------------------------------------|----------------------|--|
| Trimming (I P. 300) | Resize image (I P. 301) | Rotate (@ P. 301) | |
| effect | correct | stamp | |
| Effect (© P. 301) | Correct image (IP. 302) | Stamp (@ P. 302) | |
| frame | position | cancel | |
| Frame (🕼 P. 303) | Change face position (2 P. 303) | Undo (🖅 P. 300) | |

Editing type buttons differ for functions and screens.

Key operations in editing screen

Perform one of the following to select editing types.

- Press i and select editing type.
- Select editing type buttons with .
- Press dial key (1 to 9).
 - (Editing type buttons correspond to keypad layout.)
 - Select another editing type to continue editing same still picture.
 - Editing is not available when Edit name cannot be selected.

Undoing previous operation <Undo>

Press D I [Undo], select Yes and press .

- Last edit is undone. (Operation cannot be performed if nothing was edited.)
- Undo one step. Undo again to return to unedited still picture.

Showing in one screen

Show the edited still picture in a single screen. Before editing, the original still picture is shown in a single screen.

Press 🖾 [Chk img].





Note

• Edited still pictures are compressed when saved and may appear different during editing.

Changing Size of Still Pictures <Trimming>

Change size or trim still pictures to use as Icon image or to set as the stand-by display.

| Original size | Available still picture sizes |
|--|--|
| Icon: 76×76 | Icon: 76×76 |
| sQCIF: 128×96 | Icon: 76×76, sQCIF: 128×96 |
| QCIF: 176×144 | Icon: 76×76, sQCIF: 128×96, QCIF: 176×144 |
| QVGA: 240×320 | Icon: 76×76, sQCIF: 128×96, QCIF: 176×144, QVGA: 240×320, Stand-by: 240×400 |
| Stand-by: 240×400 CIF: 352×288 VGA: 480×640 UXGA: 1600×1200 FullHD: 1920×1080 3M: 2048×1536 | Icon: 76x76, sQCIF: 128x96, QCIF: 176x144, QVGA: 240x320, Stand-by: 240x400, Icon (9-part)* |

* Icon (9-part) is available only for Stand-by: 240×400.

 Some still pictures from the microSD Memory Card, Ir exchange or Data Link Software can be resized depending on the size of the still picture.

In the editing screen (P. 300), press (1 [Trimming] and select the image size.

 Some still pictures cannot be edited depending on original size. Unavailable sizes cannot be selected.

| Icon (76×76) | 1 |
|--------------------|---|
| sQCIF (128×96) | 2 |
| QCIF (176×144) | 3 |
| QVGA (240×320) | 4 |
| Stand-by (240×400) | 5 |
| Icon (9-part) | 6 |

- **Opening image** appears and edited still picture is displayed.
- Still picture is enlarged or reduced. Still picture is centered and margins are added to top and bottom if height is less than size.
- Once a sQCIF: 128×96 image is edited (rotate 90°), it cannot be cut for the same size.
 Additionally, once Stand-by (240×400) image edited (rotate 90°), it cannot be cut for icon (9-part).

Specify portion to cut with 😳 and press 🖜.

 Press to zoom in and is to zoom out and cut with : Zooming in and out is not available for *lcon (9-part)*.

Save still picture.

• Refer to step 2 of "Rotating Still Pictures" on P. 301 for details on saving.

Resizing Still Pictures <Resize Image>

Resize still picture depending on the intended use, such as for Deco-mail or stand-by display.

- Aspect ratio is maintained when still picture is resized.
 For images with differing aspect ratio, use Trimming to use as icon or Videophone substitute images.
- When image size is sQCIF: 128×96, QCIF: 176×144, QVGA: 240×320 and smaller than 9 KB (video), still pictures cannot be resized for Deco-mail.

| Original size | Available still picture sizes |
|---|---|
| Icon: 76×76 | sQCIF: 128×96, QCIF: 176×144, QVGA: 240×320, Stand-by: 240×400 |
| sQCIF: 128×96 | Icon: 76×76, QCIF: 176×144, QVGA: 240×320, Stand-by: 240×400, Deco-mail |
| QCIF: 176×144 | Icon: 76×76, sQCIF: 128×96, QVGA: 240×320, Stand-by: 240×400, Deco-mail |
| QVGA: 240×320 Stand-by: 240×400 | lcon: 76×76, sQCIF: 128×96, QCIF: 176×144, QVGA: 240×320*, Deco-mail |
| CIF: 352×288 VGA: 480×640 UXGA: 1600×1200 FullHD: 1920×1080 3M: 2048×1536 | lcon: 76×76, sQCIF: 128×96, QCIF: 176×144, QVGA: 240×320, Stand-by: 240×400, Deco-mail |

QVGA: 240×320 is available only with Stand-by: 240×400.

In the editing screen (P R. 300), press 2 [Resize image] and select the image size.

| lcon (76×76) | 1 |
|-----------------------|--|
| sQCIF (128×96) | 2 |
| QCIF (176×144) | 3 |
| QVGA (240×320) | 4 |
| Stand-by (240×400) | 5 |
| Deco-mail | Still picture is compressed to 9 KB or less. Still pictures larger than QVGA: 240x320 are resized to QVGA: 240x320 or smaller. |

- Resizing appears and edited still picture appears on the right.
- Still picture is enlarged or reduced. Still picture is centered and margins are added to top and bottom if height is less than size.

Save still picture.

• Refer to step 2 of "Rotating Still Pictures" on P. 301 for details on saving.

Rotating Still Pictures <Rotate>

Rotate 90 degrees left/right or reverse images vertically/horizontally.

• Still pictures larger than VGA: 480×640 are not available.

In the editing screen (IPP. 300), press IB (IRotate) and select the type of rotation.

| Rotate 90° right | 1 |
|------------------|---|
| Rotate 90° left | 2 |
| Invert (up/down) | 3 |
| Invert (L/R) | 4 |

Save still picture.

| To save | $i \rightarrow Yes \rightarrow \bullet \rightarrow OK \rightarrow \bullet$ |
|---|---|
| To change title and save | $\label{eq:constraint} \begin{array}{c} \hline \bullet & \rightarrow \mbox{ Yes } \rightarrow \mbox{ edit title } \rightarrow \mbox{ edit title } \rightarrow \mbox{ of } \rightarrow \mbox{ OK } \rightarrow \mbox{ edit title } \rightarrow \mbox{ of } \rightarrow \mbox{ OK } \rightarrow \mbox{ edit title } \rightarrow \mbox{ of } \mbox{ edit title } \rightarrow \mbox{ edit title } \rightarrow \mbox{ edit title } \rightarrow \mbox{ of } \mbox{ edit title } \rightarrow \mbox{ of } \mbox{ edit title } \rightarrow $ |
| To change folder and save | |
| To attach to i-mode mail and compose | i → Yes → • → Compose message → • → compose/ send i-mode mail Still picture is automatically saved. Refer to steps 2 to 4 on P. 220 for details. |
| To make additional editing without saving | $\square \to \text{editing type number}$ |
| To save before continuing | $\square \to \mathbf{OK} \to \blacksquare \to \blacksquare \to$ editing type number |

Note

- Image quality may deteriorate when trimmed or resized still pictures are rotated.
- When still pictures are rotated left or right, the aspect ratio changes for sizes other than *Icon: 76x76*.
- Depending on the image, you may not be able to specify the folder destination.

Adding Various Effects <Image Effect>

Change hue or feel of still pictures.

- Still pictures larger than VGA: 480×640 are not available.
- Effects may differ depending on the still picture.

In the editing screen (P P. 300), press (41 [Image effect] and select the type of effect.

Black & white 1 Ripple

6

| Sepia | 2 | Kaleidoscope (L) | 7 |
|----------------|---|------------------|----|
| Sparkling | 3 | Kaleidoscope (S) | 8 |
| Colored pencil | 4 | Fish-eye | •1 |
| Faded edges | 5 | | |

Save still picture.

 Refer to step 2 of "Rotating Still Pictures" on P. 301 for details on saving.

Decorating Faces <Face Effects>

Add expressive effects to still pictures of faces.

- Respect personal image rights when adding face effects, sending edited images via i-mode mail or setting edited images to stand-by.
- Face effects are added after automatically extracting face contour. Effects vary depending on position and size of face in still picture. Note the following.
 Out of focus, head tilted, dark, eyes hidden by hair, mouth open, glasses, facial hair, etc.
- Use larger portraits that face forward for Face effects.
- Still pictures larger than VGA: 480×640 are not available.

In the editing screen (P 300), press 42 [Face effects] and select the type of effect.

| Slender | 1 | Hide wrinkles | 7 |
|----------|---|-------------------|----------|
| Plump | 2 | Light skinned | 8 |
| Big eyes | 3 | Wrinkled face | 1 |
| Smile | 4 | Face symmetry (R) | -2 |
| Angry | 5 | Face symmetry (L) | •3 |
| Sad | 6 | | |

 When facial contours are not properly extracted, press I [Undo], select Yes and press I to return to original image. Press I [Change face pos] and set contour manually. Refer to "Setting Contour Manually" on P. 303 for details.

Save still picture.

• Refer to step 2 of "Rotating Still Pictures" on P. 301 for details on saving.

Correcting Still Pictures <Correct Image>

Correct sharpness and softness of still pictures.

- Still pictures larger than VGA: 480x640 are not available.
 Degree of corrections differ depending on original still
- picture.

In the editing screen (P. 300), press 5 [Correct image] and select the type of correction.

| Sharpness | 1 | Emphasizes edges. |
|-------------------|---|---------------------------------------|
| Softness | 2 | Blurs edges. |
| Sensitivity up | 3 | Increases brightness and contrast. |
| Vibrancy | 4 | Increases colorfulness. |



Save still picture.

• Refer to step 2 of "Rotating Still Pictures" on P. 301 for details on saving.

Pasting Image Stamps <Image Stamp>

Paste preset and downloaded image stamps such as stars, flowers and kiss marks.

- Still pictures larger than VGA: 480×640 are not available.
- Image quality may deteriorate when Image stamps are added to trimmed or resized still pictures.
 - In the editing screen (P. 300), press 66 (1) [Image stamp], select folder, press •, select image stamp and press • [OK].
 - To check a stamp, select an image stamp and press
 Press and the previous screen reappears.
 - Press : to adjust location.
 - Press CLR to re-select image stamp. Stamp selected is deleted, the editing screen reappears.

🕨 Press 🔳.

• Adjust location and press • to paste same stamp.

Press i [Complete] and save still picture.

• Refer to step 2 of "Rotating Still Pictures" on P. 301 for details on saving.

Pasting Face Stamps <Face Stamp>

Add decorations such as tears, sunglasses and swirly cheeks.

- Respect personal image rights when adding face stamps, sending edited images via i-mode mail or setting edited images to stand-by.
- Use larger portraits that face forward.
- Face stamps are added after automatically extracting face contour. Effects vary depending on position and size of face in still picture. Note the following. Out of focus, head tilted, dark, eyes hidden by hair, mouth open, glasses, facial hair, etc.
- Still pictures larger than VGA: 480×640 are not available.
- Image quality may deteriorate when Face stamps are added to trimmed or resized still pictures.
 - In the editing screen (P P. 300), press 62 [Face stamp] and select the type of stamp.

| Anger | 1 | Sunglasses | 5 |
|----------------|---|----------------|---|
| Tears | 2 | Brainy glasses | 6 |
| Swirly cheeks | 3 | Mosaic (eyes) | 7 |
| Puppy dog eyes | 4 | Mosaic (face) | 8 |

When facial contours are not properly extracted, press (... [Undo], select Yes and press ... to original image. Press (... Select Sele

Save still picture.

• Refer to step 2 of "Rotating Still Pictures" on P. 301 for details on saving.

Pasting Character Stamps <Character Stamp>

Paste entered characters and date/time.

- Still pictures larger than VGA: 480×640 are not available.
- Image quality may deteriorate when Character stamps
- are added to trimmed or resized still pictures.

In the editing screen (P P. 300), press 63 [Character stamp] and select a Character stamp.

| Free word | 1 → enter text → ■ Enter up to 22 single-byte (11 double-byte) characters. Text that exceeds display width is cut. (Line breaks are not available.) |
|-----------|--|
| Date | 2 |

- Press : to adjust location.
- Press ☑ [Size] or ☑ [Size] to change the font size. The font size changes in the order of 20 dots 24 dots 30 dots 40 dots (double height size) 12 dots 16 dots 20 dots.

Press 🖻 and select font color.

| Orange | 1 | Yellow | 5 |
|--------|---|--------|---|
| Black | 2 | Green | 6 |
| White | 3 | Blue | 7 |
| Red | 4 | | |

Press and save still picture.

• Refer to step 2 of "Rotating Still Pictures" on P. 301 for details on saving.

Adding a Frame <Frame>

- In the editing screen (P 2 300), press 7 [Frame], select folder, press •, select frame and press 1 [OK].
 - To preview, select a frame and press •. Press @R and the previous screen reappears.

Save still picture.

• Refer to step 2 of "Rotating Still Pictures" on P. 301 for details on saving.

Note

 Image quality may deteriorate when frames are added to trimmed or resized still pictures.

Setting Contour Manually <Change Face Position>

Manually set the contour information (face contour, right eye contour, left eye contour and mouth contour) for each part of the face used in Face effects or Face stamp.

- + moves only within image.
- Outlines for contour are red for face, blue for right eye, green for left eye and yellow for mouth.
- Also use contour data with Facial treatment (P. 304).

In the editing screen (P P. 300), press 8 (Change face pos) and specify the face contour.





 Move + to upper left of contour with and press

 Move + to lower right of contour with
 and press

Set right eye contour.

- Move + to upper left of contour with ∴ and press ■.
- Move + to lower right of contour with ind press ■.

Set left eye contour.

- 1. Move + to upper left of contour with ∴ and press ■.
- 2. Move + to lower right of contour with : and press .

Set mouth contour.

- Move + to upper left of contour with ∴ and press ■.
- 2. Move + to the lower right of contour with $\overline{::}$.

Press log [Complete] and save still picture.

 Refer to step 2 of "Rotating Still Pictures" on P. 301 for details on saving.

Note

- Press and hold : to move + consecutively.
- Press CLR while specifying the face contour to return to the previous step.
- Set contour data is saved when edited image is saved. Contour data settings return if edited image is not saved. Saved contour data is used the next time the image is edited.

Making Up People's Faces <Facial Treatment>

Whiten or add natural make up to still pictures of people's faces.

- Still pictures larger than VGA: 480×640 are not available.
- Effects may differ depending on the still picture.

In stand-by, press • 9 1 1, select folder, press (•), select still picture and press [a] (1) (2) [Facial treatment].



Press i and select the type of effect.

| Whitening | 1 | Makes the complexion whiter. |
|-----------|---|--|
| Natural | | Makes the skin look natural and healthy. |
| Undo | 3 | Undoes previous operation. |

Save still picture.

 Refer to step 2 of "Rotating Still Pictures" on P. 301 for details on saving.

Saving Still Pictures to Data Storage Center <Store at Center>

- Save JPEG or GIF images of 100 KB or less saved in My picture of Data box.
- Select and save up to ten files.
- This service is a paid service that requires subscription.
- Refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode]" for details on the restoration of saved still pictures.

In image list screen, select still picture and press 2 [Store at Center].

Save still picture.

| To save one | $ \begin{array}{c} 1 \rightarrow \textbf{Yes} \rightarrow \textcircled{\bullet} \rightarrow \text{enter} \\ \text{terminal security code} \rightarrow \textcircled{\bullet} \end{array} $ |
|-------------------------------|---|
| To save files collectively | (2) → select still picture • (repeatable) → (1) → Yes → • → enter terminal security code → |

Note

- · Still pictures that are restricted for output from the FOMA terminal are not available.
- Still pictures saved onto a microSD Memory Card are not available directly. Copy to the Acquired data folder in My picture of FOMA terminal handset.
- · Check the phonebook transmission history for transmissions of saving to the Data Storage Center. (CPP. 114)

Displaying/Editing/Managing Data 304

Video Plaver

Playing Movie/i-motion

Play back movies shot with FOMA terminal and i-motion downloaded from sites and Internet web pages saved in i-motion folder of Data box with Video player.



saved in microSD Memory Card, select →microSD. To view



i-motion folder list

movies/i-motion saved in FOMA terminal handset again, select *→phone*.

Select a folder and press (•).

 To switch image list, refer to "Changing display method" on P. 307.



Image list

Select movie/i-motion and press



Playback icons

Movie playback screen

 Fixed animation appears for voice only movies/ i-motion (i-motion with no video).

| To adjust volume*1 | . (softer) or (louder) while playing, paused, or stopped |
|------------------------------|--|
| To fast forward*1 | Press and hold while playing or paused Plays when key is released during playback. Does not play when paused. |
| To fast rewind* ¹ | Press and hold while playing or paused Plays when key is released during playback. Does not play when paused. |
| To pause | [Pause] Press again to resume playback. Press while paused to advance by frame or to rewind by frame. |

| To stop | Press [Play] while stopped to resume playback from the beginning. |
|------------------------------------|--|
| To jump to assigned location | to (9) Press while paused to jump to a location assigned to the key pressed. Press during playback to jump to the location assigned to the key pressed and resume playback.*² |
| To play next movie/i-motion*1 | while playing or stopped |
| To play previous movie/i-motion*1 | while playing or stopped |

- *1 When in full-screen mode/wide mode display, operations for up/down and left/right are switched. Hold the FOMA terminal sideways and perform operations.
- *2 Press ① during playback to return to the beginning of movie/i-motion. Press ② to ③ to jump to locations divided by one-eighth increments of the recording time. However, it may not be possible to jump when the recording time is short.
- Supported movie/i-motion formats are as follows. Check the format of movies/i-motion at file format in *File property*. (27 P. 327)

| File format | | Encoding |
|-----------------------------------|-------|---------------------------------------|
| MP4 | Image | MPEG-4, H.263, H.264 |
| (extensions: .mp4, .3gp, .m4a) | Audio | AMR, AAC, HE-AAC, Enhanced aacPlus |
| | | MPEG-4 |
| (extensions: .asf) | Audio | AMR, G.726 |

- sQCIF: 128×96, QCIF: 176×144, QQVGA: 160×120, hQVGA: 240×176, QVGA: 320×240 and WQVGA: 400×240 can be played back.
- Movies/i-motion in ASF file format cannot be saved or copied to the FOMA terminal handset.
- sQCIF: 128×96 and QCIF: 176×144 are available for playback for movies encoded in H.263 format.
 sQCIF: 128×96, QCIF: 176×144 and QVGA:320×240 are available for playback for movies encoded in H.264 format.

Playback icons

| Playback | Volume | 💶 to ท |
|--------------------------------|--|--------------------------|
| | Surround ON | |
| | Surround OFF | ŝIJ |
| | Appears while buffering (Normal type/Streaming type) | |
| | Download Incomplete | Ľ |
| | Repeat playback | Ð |
| | Backlight time Always ON | 渕 |
| | Zoom playback | 5 |
| | Actual size playback | ×1 |
| | Image size | 128 160 176 240 320 eVen |
| Surround playback capable file | | 5 |
| Stereo | | [0] |
| Monaural | | () |

| Track | Voice | ΰO |
|-------|----------|----|
| type | Image | Eð |
| | Ticker | ß |
| | No audio | 4X |
| | No image | R |

Note

- Playback is paused if an alarm is activated, an incoming call is received, another function is activated using Multi Assistant or Submenu is selected. Playback may be resumed from a spot slightly before pausing depending on Submenu or data.
- Jumping to specified location by pressing 1 to 9 is not available for some data or locations. In addition, some images are not available when forwarding or rewinding frames.
- Movies saved to microSD Memory Cards from external devices can be played back on the FOMA terminal. (IPP P. 437)
- Playback continues even if FOMA terminal is closed.
- The current file location (FOMA terminal handset or microSD Memory Card) is saved even if Video player is ended, and is used the next time video player is activated.

Forward and store movie/i-motion saved in i-motion of Data box on a PC using microSD Memory Card (I P. 316).

 Saved content may be lost due to malfunctions, repairs or other handling of the FOMA terminal. DoCoMo shall not be liable for any loss of content.

When voice/Videophone call is received during movie/i-motion playback

 The incoming call screen appears and the call can be answered. Playback is canceled and the stopped movie/ i-motion reappears after the call is ended. Even if Resume settings is set to ON on the microSD Memory Card for MP4 file saved on the FOMA terminal handset, playback cannot be resumed from where it was interrupted.

Related Operations

Show in full-screen mode <Full-screen mode/ Wide mode>

- 1 Press 6 [i-motion setting] while stopped (paused)/playing.
- **2** Press (4) to show in the size that fits within the display (full-screen mode).
 - To show in the size without margins (wide mode): Press <u>5</u>.
 - To show full-screen mode during playback or in the movie list with one-touch key operations: Press i.
 - To return from full-screen mode to normal display: Press .
 - To switch from wide mode to full-screen mode: Press 📳.

Repeat playback <Repeat playback>

While stopped (paused)/playing, press 6 1.

- To return to normal playback: Press 61.
- To stop playback: Press CLR.

Related Operations

Change playback size <Change size>

- 1 While stopped (paused)/playing, press 62.
- 2 Press 1 [Actual size]/2 [Zoom].

Light up <Light up>

While stopped (paused)/playing, press B 6 3. Or, press H for 1+ seconds.

• To turn off: Perform same steps.

Set forwarding frame <Frame rate>

- 1 While stopped (paused)/playing, press ₪ 68.
 - To set from movie editing screen (P. 309): Press @ 6 1.
- 2 To make frame rate more rough (high speed), press 1.
 - To make frame rate more detailed: Press 2.

Set surround <Surround>

- 1 While stopped (paused)/playing, press ₪ 6(4).
- 2 Press 1 [ON].

Set Playback light <Backlight time>

- 1 In movie/i-motion folder list, press @41.
- To set in the image list: Press 183.
- 2 Press 2 [Always ON].
 - To set same as light setting: Press 1.

Adjust playback volume <Set volume>

- 1 In movie/i-motion folder list, press @42.
- To set in the image list: Press 84.
- **2** Press \bigcirc (louder) or \bigcirc (softer) \blacktriangleright \bigcirc .

Set resume playback settings <Resume settings>

- In movie/i-motion folder list, select
 →microSD ▶ ▶ select folder ▶ ▶
 8 5 in the image list.
- 2 Press 1 to resume playback.

Note (Related operations)

Switch Full-screen mode/Wide mode

- Switch hQVGA: 240×176, QVGA320×240 or WQVGA: 400×240 images to Wide mode.
- When in the full-screen mode/wide mode, operations for up/down and left/right are switched. Hold the FOMA terminal sideways and perform operations.
- For WQVGA: 400x240 images, Full-screen mode and Wide mode appear in the same way.

Repeat playback

- Data with limitations on number of times to play back is not available for repeat playback.
- Press any key other than cur and motion within three seconds of repeating to stop repeat playback. (Press conds for 1+ seconds to resume playback. In addition, press to play back in the full-screen mode and to switch to the Send display.)
- Press CLR or (2) to end repeat playback.

Switch playback size

 Switch playback size to Zoom if image size is sQCIF: 128×96, QCIF: 176×144 (without ticker), or QQVGA: 160×120 (without ticker).

Related Operations

Note (Related operations)

- The default setting is *Actual size*. Light up
- Backlight turns off after time set for Display light time when Backlight time is set to As light setting.
- When Backlight time is set to *Always ON*, even after time set for Display light time passes, the backlight remains lit until movie/i-motion is ended.
- Display is at brightest when lit up regardless of brightness settings (P. 133).

Forwarding frame rate

- The default setting is Rough (hi-speed).
- For voice only movies, *Fine* is not available and forwarding frame is set to *Rough (hi-speed)*.
- For some movies, *Fine* is not available and forwarding frame is set to *Rough (hi-speed)*.
- If data size exceeds 500 KB while editing in the movie editing screen, forwarding frame is set to *Rough (hi-speed)*.

Surround

- When video player is activated, the movie/i-motion is played with surround sound ON when Stereo effects (IP P. 314) is set to Surround and OFF when a setting other than Surround is set. Set Surround ON/OFF during playback. Settings are applied to Stereo effects.
- Surround playback is available for 2-channel AAC-encoded movies/i-motion.
- Check movies/i-motion which supports surround settings with surround details of each file.

Backlight time

• The default setting is *As light setting*. (2 P. 131) Set volume

Set volume

• The default setting is Volume 5.

Resuming playback

- The default setting is ON.
- Resume playback is available for movies/i-motion saved in microSD Memory Card. However, it is not available for the movies/i-motion saved in the Movable contents folder and Multimedia folder.
- Set Resume setting to **ON** to resume playback of movies/i-motion saved in the microSD Memory Card that are interrupted by incoming calls.
- Resume settings are not available if no movies/ i-motion are saved on the microSD Memory Card.

i-motion Folder List/Image List Layout

i-motion folder list layout

Select →*microSD* or press (7) [Switch phone SD] in i-motion folder list to switch to microSD Memory Card folder.

FOMA terminal handset microSD Memory Card

| i-motion(phone) | 913 | | |
|-------------------|-----|---|---|
| 🋅 →microSD ——— | | 1 | |
| 🛅 Camera 🚽 🚽 | | - | 2 |
| 🛅 i-mode ———— | _ | 3 | _ |
| 🗎 Pre-install — | | _ | 4 |
| 🛅 Acquired data — | | 5 | _ |
| 🗎 Friend ——— | | _ | 6 |



- 1 Shows folder list of microSD Memory Card
- 2 Folder for movies shot with FOMA terminal
- Folder for movies/i-motion downloaded from sites and Internet web pages or required via Message R/F or i-mode mail
- 4 Folder for movies/i-motion preset in FOMA terminal handset
- Folder for movies/i-motion retrieved via Bar code reader, microSD Memory Card, Ir exchange, iC transmission or FOMA USB cable (sold separately)
- 6 Created folder (2 P. 323, P. 326)
- 7 Shows folder list of FOMA terminal handset
- B Folder for movies shot while set to voice only and to be saved on microSD Memory Card and Voice recorder audio
 - Multimedia folder name is fixed. Folder cannot be deleted.
 - Save up to 400 shot and recorded data items in Multimedia folder. Files are in MP4 format.
 - Save items other than those shot and recorded in Multimedia folder via a PC. Available file formats are MP4, ASF and 3GPP. Saved files are named MMF0001 to MMF9999. Up to 400 files can be viewed on the FOMA terminal. If there is data that cannot be played back or there are 401 items or more, data may not appear. (The file names do not appear if they are not named as "MMFxxxx" (xxxx indicates a number).)
- Folder for storing downloaded movies/i-motion with restrictions for output from the FOMA terminal. (Contents transfer compatible)
 - Data saved in the Movable contents folder is transferred from the FOMA terminal handset to microSD Memory Card. When the data is required for the FOMA terminal handset, transfer it to the FOMA terminal handset. (#@FP. 319)

Image list layout

Select a view method from the following three settings.





| Camera | 1/ |
|------------------|----|
| 061120_114101 | Ĵ. |
| MM 061120_114002 | 6 |
| 061120_112825 | 1 |
| MM 061120_112724 | 6 |
| MM 061120_101357 | 6 |
| MM 061120_101337 | 1 |
| 061120_101225 | 1 |

List display

- In 12-part and 20-part, D or appears in place of image if movie/i-motion corresponds with below.
 - Data displayed as D
 - Voice only data
 - Unsupported image size data
 - Unsupported image file format data
 - Data displayed as Im
 - Text only data
 - Images cannot be displayed (corrupted)

• Data to which FOMA card restriction function applied in the *Movable contents* folder

Changing display method <Switch view mode>

Default setting 12-part

In stand-by, press •913, select folder, press • and press •81 [Switch view mode].

Select display method.

| 12-part | 1 |
|--------------|---|
| 20-part | 2 |
| List display | 3 |

● While showing the list, press → to view the next page and → to view the previous page.

Note

• Enter up to 36 single-byte (18 double-byte) characters for title name of movies/i-motion. However, only 14 single-byte (7 double-byte) characters are shown on screen. (If a title name exceeds 14 single-byte (7 double-byte) characters, up to 12 single-byte (6 double-byte) characters are shown for the title name.)

Movie/i-motion types and their icons

| MP4 (Mo | bile MP4) | ASF |
|-----------|-----------|-----|
| Unlimited | Limited | - |
| MP4 | MPA | ASF |

- Still pictures with FOMA card restrictions applied
- : Movie/i-motion set as stand-by, Picture call, ring tone or Select ring tone, alarm, Schedule alarm or ToDo alarm
- Movie/i-motion with the restriction of mail attachment or output from the FOMA terminal
- B: Movie/i-motion downloaded with i-mode
- :Movie/i-motion retrieved via microSD Memory Card, Ir exchange, iC transmissions or FOMA USB cable (sold separately)
- i Movie/i-motion shot with camera
- S : Movie/i-motion shot with Chara-den

Repeating Movies <Continuous Play>

Play all movies/i-motion in a folder in succession.

In stand-by, press •913, select folder and press @31 [Start cont play].

- Press during playback to pause.
- Press during playback to stop. Press to resume stopped movie/i-motion from beginning and continuous play is resumed.
- Data unable to be played skipped appears for movies/i-motion with restrictions on replay period or expiration date and the next movie/ i-motion plays.

Setting continuous play

Perform settings for movie/i-motion continuous play.

| Setting | Function | Default setting |
|-----------------------|---|-----------------|
| Repeat playback | Sets repeat settings on or off. Settings are applied to all folders. | No |
| Sample playback | Sets maximum playback time. (Transitions are not included.) Settings are applied to all folders. | No |
| Transitions | Sets transitions between movies. Settings are applied only to movie/i-motion folders in microSD Memory Card. However, settings are not applied to <i>Multimedia</i> and <i>Movable contents</i> folders. Set folders individually. | Random |
| Auto AV output set | Displays continuous play images on a TV screen. (I P. 350) Settings are applied to all folders.* | OFF |
| AV output size | Sets the size for displaying continuous play images on a TV screen. | Actual size |

* Data in the *Movable contents* folder on microSD Memory Card is displayed on the terminal without being outputted.

Repeating playback

In stand-by, press •913, select folder, press @32 [Repeat playback] and 1 [Yes].

Sampling playback

In stand-by, press •913, select folder and press @33 [Sample playback].

Select playback time.

| 5 seconds | 1 |
|------------|---|
| 15 seconds | 2 |
| No | 3 |

Setting transition

- Settings are applied only to movie/i-motion folders in microSD Memory Cards.
 - In stand-by, press \bigcirc 913, select \rightarrow microSD and press \bigcirc , select folder and press \bigcirc 34 [Transitions].

Select the type of transition.

| Diamond shape | | Next image appears from inside to outside, like a rhomboid enlarging. |
|------------------|---|---|
| Pin-wheel | 2 | Next image spins and enlarges. |
| Wheel | | Next image spins from center and enlarges. |

| Dissolve | 4 | Next image fades in. |
|----------|---|---|
| Stretch | 5 | Next image enlarges vertically from center. |
| Random | 6 | Next image appears using a random transition. |
| OFF | 7 | No transition is set. |

Attaching and Sending Movie/i-motion <i-motion Mail>

Attach movie/i-motion to i-mode mail and send. • Send movies/i-motion of up to 2 MB in MP4 format.

> In stand-by, press ● 9 1 3, select folder, press ●, select movie/i-motion and press ☑ [Mail].

- Selected movie/ i-motion is attached.
- Select For mail (short) or For mail (long) if movie/i-motion exceeds 500 KB.

| Τo | L | |
|-----|-------------|----------|
| Sub | 061120_1141 | 118. 3KE |
| Msg | I | 0. 0KI |

- Select For mail (short) and press to cut out the first 500 KB automatically.
- For movie/i-motion which exceed 2 MB, select For mail (long) and press
 to cut out the first 2 MB. Movie/i-motion larger than 500 KB and 2 MB or less are not cut.

Compose and send i-mode mail.

• Refer to steps 2 to 4 on P. 220 for details.

Setting Movie/i-motion as the Stand-by Display <AV Settings>

Set movie/i-motion as the stand-by display.

- If animated GIF, Flash movie or i-motion is set as stand-by, playback stops when switched to Calendar.
- Movie/i-motion with image size of QQVGA: 160×120, WQVGA: 400×240 are not available.
- Movie/i-motion in the *Movable contents* folder in microSD Memory Card can be set as stand-by display or ring tone. The set movie/i-motion is transferred to the *i-mode* folder in Data box on the FOMA terminal handset.

In stand-by, press • 9 1 3, select folder, press •, select movie/i-motion and press • 4 [AV settings].

 Movies/i-motion with voice only (i-motion with no video) and ASF format movies/i-motion are not available.



Select item.

| | | - | |
|-------------------|---|-----------------|----|
| Stand-by display | 1 | Msg R ring tone | 6 |
| Phone ring tone | 2 | Msg F ring tone | 7 |
| V.phone ring tone | 3 | SMS ring tone | 8 |
| User unset tone | 4 | PushTalk tone | •1 |
| Mail ring tone | 5 | | |

- When stand-by is selected, select Yes, press • and press 1 [Actual size] or 2 [Zoom].
 - Zoom is not available for image sizes other than sQCIF: 128×96 or QCIF: 176×144.

Note

- Some i-motion are not available to be set as the stand-by display.
- Phone To (AV Phone To), Mail To and Web To are not available from i-motion stand-by.
- Set movie/i-motion stand-by volume with Key/ Standby i-motion.
- Only Voice only movie/i-motion (melodies with no video) are available for PushTalk tone.

Edit Movie Editing Movies (SPEEDYLAB)

Edit shot movies.

 Movie editing may not be available for some data recorded on devices other than FOMA SH903i.

Opening Movie Editing Screen <Edit Movie>

In stand-by, press •913, select folder, press •, select movie and press 611 [Edit movie].

 Alternatively, press
 1 while playing movie (1 P. 304) to stop and open movie editing screen.



 Press to forward/ rewind. Press for 1+ seconds to fast forward/fast rewind. Sound is off.

Movie editing screen

 Press 1 to 9 to jump to specified location. Depending on the movie, this feature may be unavailable.

Editing type icons

| | Capture still (CPP P. 310) | 15g | Image cutter (IMP P. 309) |
|---------|-------------------------------|------|------------------------------|
| • | File property (IMP P. 309) | Save | Save (© P. 309) |
| CTINISH | End (😰 P. 309) | | |

Key operations in movie editing screen

Perform one of the following to select editing types.

- Press
 and select editing type.
- Select editing type icon with :.

Related Operations

Hide ticker <Show ticker>

- 1 In the movie editing screen, press 62.
- **2** Press 2.

View detailed information <File property>

- In the movie editing screen, press 23.
- To end viewing: Press or CLR.

Note (Related operations)

Show ticker

- The default setting is ON.
- Set to hide tickers from movies with tickers added. Tickers are shown for a preview.

Cutting Movies <Image Cutter>

Cut out a portion and save as a new movie.

• Ticker is deleted unless entire length of ticker is included in portion to cut.

Setting start and end points and cutting

Set starting point and ending point and cut.

Not available for movies that are shorter than three seconds.

In the movie editing screen (P P. 309), press 2 [Image cutter] and select cut method.

 Press — to forward/ rewind. Press for 1+ seconds to fast forward/ fast rewind. Sound is off.



- Ending point must come after starting point.
- When the portion to cut is selected, a confirmation screen for the cut movie size appears.

| To set starting point and ending point and cut | $ \begin{array}{c} \hline 3 \ [Cut part] \rightarrow \fbox{1} \\ [Origin] \rightarrow \fbox{1} \ [Last] \rightarrow \end{array} $ |
|--|---|
| To cut from starting point to end of file | $ \begin{array}{c} (4) \text{ [Erase prev part]} \rightarrow \end{array} \\ [Origin] \rightarrow \bullet \end{array} $ |
| To cut from beginning of file to ending point | 5 [Erase all after] \rightarrow (Last) \rightarrow (Particular) |

Save movie.



| To save edited movie | $\square 4 \rightarrow \mathbf{OK} \rightarrow \bullet$ |
|---|---|
| To change title and save | [●] 4 → Edit title → • → [●] dit title → • → OK → • [●] [●] Up to 50 single-byte (25 ⁰ double-byte) characters for still picture captures. [●] Enter up to 36 single-byte (18 double-byte) characters for other movies. |
| To change folder and save | ^(a) → Change folder → ^(a) → select folder → ^(a) → OK → ^(a) ^(a) → OK → ^(a) ^(a) → OK → ^(a) → |
| To attach to i-mode mail and send | [●] (→ Compose message → [●] → compose/send i-mode mail Movie is automatically saved. Refer to steps 2 to 4 on P. 220 for details. |
| To not save edited movie | $105 \rightarrow Yes \rightarrow \bullet$ |
| To play edited movie | |

- When edited movie is larger than 500 KB, a screen to select whether to convert for mail attachment appears. Select *For mail (short)* and press

 to cut out the first 500 KB automatically. Select *For mail (long)* and press
 to cut out the first 2 MB automatically. To save as is, select *None* and press .
- Next cutting cannot be performed until saving the movie.

Cutting for Mail

Cut movie to attach to i-mode mail.

• Not available for movies that are approximately 500 KB or less.

In the movie editing screen (P. 309), press 2 [Image cutter] and select cut method.

| For mail (short) | To automatically cut 500 KB from starting point. |
|------------------|--|
| For mail (long) | To automatically cut 2 MB from starting point. |

 Press
 to forward/rewind. Press for 1+ seconds to fast forward/fast rewind.

Press i [Origin] at starting point and press .

Save movie.

• Refer to step 2 of "Cutting Movies" on P. 309 for details on saving.

Saving Movie as a Still Picture <Capture Still>

Save a scene from a movie as a still picture. Handle saved still picture as those shot with FOMA terminal. Attach to i-mode mail and send.

Capture still is not available for voice only data.

In the movie editing screen (P. 309), press to select scene to save as still picture and press 1 [Capture still].

Select OK and press .

- Scene is saved as a still picture.
- Refer to step 2 of "Rotating Still Pictures" on P. 301 for details on operations in the saving screen.

Chara-den Player

What Is Chara-den?

During a Videophone call, send a character instead of camera image. The character moves its mouth according to sound (for lip-sync supported data), raises its arms and legs, dances, and performs various actions. After downloading a character, save shot Chara-den as still picture/movie and set as the stand-by display or send as a mail attachment. (Images/ movies with restrictions for mail attachment and output from the FOMA terminal cannot be sent.)

Check and shoot Chara-den's movements anytime with Chara-den player.

- Chara-den can also be downloaded from sites and Internet web pages. (P P. 201)
- Keypad sound is disabled for the character operation during a Videophone call (P. 74) or while Chara-den is played or shot (P. 312).

Playing Chara-den <Chara-den Player>

Play Chara-den saved in Chara-den of Data box. Also perform actions.

In stand-by, press 916.

Select folder and press .

 To view the next page of the image list, press
 To view the previous page, press
 .

| | | ۳e |
|------|---------|-----|
| 1+ 1 | - ラ(女性) | ¢× |
| F ++ | - ラ(男性) | ¢×. |
| E ++ | ラ(男性) | ¢× |

Chara-den list

Select Chara-den and press .

- Chara-den is played.
- Press 🗊 or 🗈 to switch between Full-action mode and Part-action mode

• To perform actions,

or directly enter a

press 🖾 or 🕠, select

an action and press



shown action number (1 to 9). Alternatively, directly enter the action number without opening the Action list.

 Refer to P. 75 for details on preset Chara-den actions.

Action mode icon

- Full-action mode
- Image: Part-action mode

Note

Key operations for Chara-den player

| i or 📩 | | 🖾 or 🔒 |
|---------------|----------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| Change action | Change screen size (© P. 311) | Action list (@P. 311) |
| Ø | 1 to 9 | 0 |
| Submenu | Actions (@P. 311) | Cancel action (I P. 312) |

Adjusting screen size <Screen size>

Adjust screen size.

• The default setting is Zoom





1/1 (actual size)

During Chara-den playback (1/1]. (1/1]), press 🖾 (1/1].

• To return to zoom size, press 🖾 [Zoom].

Related Operations

Set Playback light <Backlight time>

- **1** During Chara-den playback, press □ . • To set from Chara-den list: Press @ 7 2.
- 2 Press 2 [Always ON].
 - To set same as light setting: Press 1.

Set Chara-den as Videophone substitute image <Substitute image>

- During Chara-den playback, press <a>[1] or 031.
- To set from Chara-den list: Select Chara-den 031.

Related Operations

Set phonebook <Image for call>

- 1 During Chara-den playback, press 2 or 032.
 - To set from Chara-den list: Select Chara-den 032.
- 2 Select 1 [New entry] or 2 [Add to phonebook].

Note (Related operations)

Backlight time

• The default setting is **As light setting**. (@P. 131)

Substitute image

E appears for set Chara-den.

Calling with Chara-den as substitute image <Chara-den call>

Select a Chara-den to use as substitute image.

- In stand-by, press (9)(1)(6), select a folder and press •, select a Chara-den and press 6 6 [Chara-den call].
 - To make a call during playback, press 6 5 [Chara-den call].
- Select input method and make a Videophone call.

| To make a call from phonebook | $ \begin{array}{c} 1 \rightarrow \text{select person to call} \rightarrow \\ \hline \bullet \rightarrow \hline \hline \bullet \end{array} $ |
|-------------------------------------|---|
| To make a call with direct input | (2) → enter phone number → $(\overline{2})$ |

Controlling Chara-den

Making a Chara-den perform actions

Make Chara-den perform actions during Videophone calls or Chara-den playback.

- Select from a range of expressions, including happiness and anger, while in Full-action mode.
- Change to Part-action mode to move body parts, jump and dance.
- Perform different actions together in Part-action mode.
- Depending on the Chara-den, sound from a microphone can be synchronized with the movement of the mouth.
- Types of actions vary for each Chara-den.
- Depending on the Chara-den, actions may not be available.
 - In stand-by, press 916, select a folder and press •, select a Chara-den and press .



2 Press ⊠ [Action] or , select action and press ■.

- To show action list details, press .
- Alternatively, enter the action number by pressing 1 to 9 to have the character perform an action. Or, directly enter the action number without opening the Action list.

| Action list |
|-------------|
| _ 喜ぶ |
| 2 怒る |
| 🗉 哀しむ |
| ■ 投げキッス |
| 110 驚く |
| 11 ゴメン |
| 🔟 恥ずかしー |
| ■ ずっこけ |
| 画 パーン! |
| |

- Refer to P. 75 for details on preset Chara-den actions.
- Press ① to end action.

Note

• Depending on the Chara-den, some actions may be performed automatically.

Recording Chara-den <Record Chara-den>

Shoot pictures of Chara-den.

- Shutter sound disabled while in Manner mode.
- The shot size applicable to still pictures and movies is QCIF: 176×144.

Shooting still pictures

Shoot Chara-den and save as still picture.

- The picture is saved to the *Camera* folder in My picture of Data box.
 - In stand-by, press 9 1 6, select a folder and press •, select a Chara-den, press • and @ 1 1 [Rec.Chara-den].

Press 2 [Still picture]. • To switch to Shoot

movie, press (11.)
 To change image quality, press (2, select an image quality option and press (.)



- To switch Chara-den, press @ ③, select a folder and press ●, select a Chara-den and press ●.
- To change display size, press to switch between 1/1 and Zoom ¹/.
- To switch the save destination, insert a microSD Memory Card in advance and press
 6.

Press [i] and [Save].

- Press
 immediately after performing action to shoot.
- To create mail with saved Chara-den attachments, press i. Refer to steps 2 to 4 on P. 220 for details.

Shooting movies

Record Chara-den and save as movies.

- The movie is saved to the *Camera* folder in i-motion of Data box.
 - In stand-by, press 916, select a folder, press •, select a Chara-den, press • and press • 11 [Rec.Chara-den].

Press 1 [Movie].

- To switch to Shoot still pictures, press 1
 2.
- To change image quality, press 2
 1, select an image quality option and press
 .



- To set file size limit, press 2 2 and either 1 [For mail (short)], 2 [For mail (long)] or 3 [Unrestricted].
- To switch Chara-den, press 3, select folder, press , select a Chara-den and press .
- To change display size, press ☐ to switch between 1/1 and Zoom [↑].
- To set backlight duration, press 6 and either 1 [As light setting] or 2 [Always ON].
- To switch image/audio, press @23 and either 1 [Image + voice] or 2 [Image only].
- To switch the save destination, insert a microSD Memory Card in advance and press

 (7).

Press 🔳 [Rec].

 Recording continues while displaying the Action list, but remaining record time may not be updated.

🚺 Press 💿 [Stop].

- Recording stops.
- Recording stops automatically when remaining record time becomes 0:00:00. Recording time indicator is an approximation. Shooting may automatically stop before indicator reads 0:00:00.

Save.

| To save | 1 |
|---|---|
| To attach to i-mode mail and compose | ⊇ → compose/send i-mode mail Movie is automatically saved. Refer to steps 2 to 4 on P. 220 for details. |
| To play | 3 |
| To not save | $4 \rightarrow \text{Yes} \rightarrow \bullet$ |

Note

 Keypad sound is not emitted during Chara-den movie recording, but sounds from operating keys may be recorded.

Managing Folders

Creating folders <New folder>

In stand-by, press •916 and press 611 [New folder].

Enter folder name and press .

- Enter up to 18 single-byte (9 double-byte) characters for a folder name.
- To delete New folder name, press CLR for 1+ seconds.

Editing folder name <Edit folder name>

• Only folder names of created folders can be edited.

- In stand-by, press •916, select folder and press 612 [Edit folder name].
- Edit folder name and press .
 - To erase folder name, press CLR for 1+ seconds in the edit screen.

Deleting folder <Delete>

- Only created folders can be deleted.
 - In stand-by, press •916, select folder and press @2 [Delete].

Select deletion method.

| To delete folder individually | $ \begin{array}{c} \textcircled{1} \rightarrow \text{enter terminal security} \\ \text{code} \rightarrow \textcircled{\bullet} \rightarrow \textbf{Yes} \rightarrow \textcircled{\bullet} \end{array} $ |
|--|--|
| To delete folders collectively | $\begin{array}{c} \textcircled{2} \rightarrow \text{select folder } \blacksquare \\ (\text{repeatable}) \rightarrow \textcircled{0} \rightarrow \text{enter} \\ \text{terminal security code} \rightarrow \blacksquare \\ \rightarrow \textbf{Yes} \rightarrow \blacksquare \\ \textcircled{2} \text{ Press } \fbox{1} \begin{bmatrix} \text{SelAll} \end{bmatrix} \text{ or } \fbox{1} \\ \fbox{1} \begin{bmatrix} \text{CirAll} \end{bmatrix} \text{ to select or clear all.} \end{array}$ |
| To delete all Chara-den (keep folders) | $ \begin{array}{c} \textcircled{3} \rightarrow \text{enter terminal security} \\ \text{code} \rightarrow \textcircled{\bullet} \rightarrow \textbf{Yes} \rightarrow \textcircled{\bullet} \end{array} $ |
| To delete all folders and Chara-den | $ \begin{array}{c} \underline{4} \rightarrow \text{enter terminal security} \\ \text{code} \rightarrow \textcircled{\bullet} \rightarrow \textbf{Yes} \rightarrow \textcircled{\bullet} \end{array} $ |

Managing Chara-den

Delete/edit Chara-den title and sort Chara-den.

Editing title <Edit title>

- In stand-by, press •916, select folder and press •.
- Select Chara-den, press 12 and press 1 [Direct input].
 - To return to original title, press 2.

Edit the title and press 🔳.

- Enter up to 50 single-byte (25 double-byte) characters. However, up to 14 single-byte (7 double-byte) characters of the title are shown on screen. If a title name exceeds 14 single-byte (7 double-byte) characters, up to 12 single-byte (6 double-byte) characters are shown for the title name. Subsequent characters are shown as "...".
- To erase current title, press CLR for 1+ seconds.

Sorting Chara-den <Sort>

Default setting Date (new→old)

Change the list order to one of the following.

| Date (new→old) | Files are sorted with the latest save date first. |
|------------------|--|
| Date (old→new) | Files are sorted with the oldest save date first. |
| By title name | Files are sorted by title in the following order: single-byte numbers \rightarrow single-byte lower case alphabet \rightarrow hiragana \rightarrow double-byte katakana \rightarrow kanji \rightarrow Pictograph 1 \rightarrow Pictograph 2 \rightarrow double-byte numbers \rightarrow double-byte numbers \rightarrow double-byte numbers \rightarrow double-byte lower case alphabet \rightarrow single-byte katakana |
| By source | Space \rightarrow i-mode, by source |
| Size (big→small) | Files are sorted with the largest files first. |
| Size (small→big) | Files are sorted with the smallest files first. |

In stand-by, press • 9 1 6, select folder, press • and press @7 1 [Sort].

Select sorting method and press •.

Moving Chara-den to another folder <Move>

- In stand-by, press •916, select folder and press •.
- Select Chara-den and press **6**5 [Move].

Select a transfer method.

| To move Chara-den individually | $\textcircled{1} \rightarrow \text{select folder} \rightarrow \textcircled{\bullet}$ |
|---------------------------------------|---|
| To move Chara-den collectively | $\begin{array}{c} \textcircled{2} \rightarrow \text{select Chara-den} \textcircled{1} \\ (\text{repeatable}) \rightarrow \textcircled{0} \rightarrow \text{select folder} \\ \rightarrow \textcircled{1} \\ \hline \end{array} \\ \textcircled{1} \\ \textcircled{1} \\ \hline \end{array} \\ \textcircled{1} \\ \textcircled{1} \\ \textcircled{1} \\ \hline \end{array} \\ \begin{array}{c} \textcircled{1} \\ \textcircled{1} \\ \textcircled{1} \\ \textcircled{1} \\ \hline \end{array} \\ \begin{array}{c} \hline \end{array} \\ \end{array} \\ \begin{array}{c} \hline \end{array} \\ \begin{array}{c} \hline \end{array} \\ \begin{array}{c} \hline \end{array} \\ \end{array} \\ \begin{array}{c} \hline \end{array} \\ \begin{array}{c} \hline \end{array} \\ \end{array} \\ \begin{array}{c} \hline \end{array} \end{array} \\ \begin{array}{c} \hline \end{array} \\ \end{array} \\ \end{array} \\ \begin{array}{c} \hline \end{array} \end{array} \\ \end{array} \\ \begin{array}{c} \hline \end{array} \\ \end{array} \\ \end{array} \end{array} \\ \begin{array}{c} \hline \end{array} \end{array} \\ \end{array} \\ \end{array} \\ \begin{array}{c} \hline \end{array} \end{array} \\ \end{array} \\ \end{array} \\ \end{array} \end{array} \\ \end{array} \\ \end{array} \\ \end{array} \end{array} \\ \\ \end{array} \\ \end{array} \\ \\ \end{array} \\ \\ \end{array} \\ \end{array} \\ \\ \end{array} \\ \end{array} \\ \\ \end{array} \\ \\ \end{array} \\ \end{array} \\ \\ \end{array} \\ \\ \end{array} \\ \\ \end{array} \\ \end{array} \\ \\ \end{array} \\ \end{array} \\ \end{array} \\ \\ \end{array} \\ \\ \end{array} \\ \\ \end{array} \\ \\ \\ \end{array} \\ \\ \\ \end{array} \\ \\ \end{array} \\ \\ \\ \end{array} \\ \\ \\ \\ \end{array} \\ \\ \\ \end{array} \\ \\ \\ \end{array} \\ \\ \\ \end{array} \\ \\ \\ \\ \\ \end{array} \\ \\ \\ \\ \end{array} \\ \\ \\ \\ \\ \\ \\ \end{array} \\ \\ \\ \\ \\ \\ \end{array} \\ \\ \\ \\ \\ \\ \\ \\ \end{array} \\ \\ \\ \\ \\ \\ \\ \\ \\ \\ \end{array} \\ \\ \\ \\ \\ \\ \\ \\ \\ \\ \\ \end{array} \\ \\ \\ \\ \\ \\ \\ \\ \\ \\ \\ \\ \\ \\ \\ \end{array} \\ \\ \\ \\ \\ \\ \\ \\ \\ \\ \\ \\ \end{array} \\ \\ \\ \\ \\ \\ \\ \\ \\ \\ \\ \\ \\ \\ \\ \end{array} \\ \\ \\ \\ \\ \\ \\ \\ \\ \\ \\ \\ \\ \\ \\ \\ \\ \\ \\ \end{array} \\ \\ \\ \\ \\ \\ \\ \\ \\ \\ \\ \\ \end{array} \\ \\ \\ \\ \\ \\ \\ \\ \\ \\ \end{array} \\ \\ \\ \\ \\ \\ \\ \\ \end{array} \\ \\ \\ \\ \\ \\ \\ \\ \\ \\ \\ \\ \end{array} \\ \\ \\ \\ \\ \\ \\ \\ \end{array} \\ \\ \\ \\ \\ \\ \\ \\ \\ \\ \end{array} \\ \\ \\ \\ \\ \\ \\ \\ \\ \\ \end{array} \\ \\ \\ \\ \\ \\ \\ \end{array} \\ \\ \\ \\ \\ \end{array} \\ \\ \\ \\ \\ \\ \end{array} \\ \\ \\ \\ \\ \\ \\ \end{array} \\ \\ \\ \end{array} \\ \\ \\ \\ \end{array} \\ \\ \\ \\ \\ \end{array} \\ \\ \\ \\ \\ \\ \\ \\ \\ \end{array} \\ \\ \\ \\ \\ \\ \\ \\ \\ \\ \end{array} \\ \\ \\ \\ \\ \\ \\ \\ \\ \\ \\ \\ \end{array} \\ \\ \\ \\ \\ \\ \\ \\ \\ \end{array} \\ \\ \\ \\ \\ \\ \\ \\ \\ \end{array} \\$ |
| To move all Chara-den in folder | $ \begin{array}{c} \textcircled{3} \rightarrow \text{enter terminal security} \\ \text{code} \rightarrow \textcircled{\bullet} \rightarrow \text{select folder} \rightarrow \end{array} \\ \hline \bullet \end{array} $ |

Viewing properties <File property>

The following information is shown.

- Date/time saved
- Display size
- File size
- File restriction: Restricted/Not restricted
- Ph/book settings: ON/OFF
- Videophone: ON/OFF
- File name
- Title (Original)
- Rec. File Restriction: Restricted/Not restricted
- Source
- Move to the microSD: unavailable

In stand-by, press •916, select folder and press •.

Select Chara-den and press (a) [File property].

• To end viewing, press • or CLR.

Note

 "Rec. File Restriction" includes attaching an image or movie created with Chara-den to mail, saving to the microSD Memory Card or editing.

Deleting Chara-den <Delete>

- In stand-by, press 916, select folder and press •.
- 2 Select Chara-den and press @ 2 [Delete].

Select deletion method.

| To delete Chara-den individually | $1 \rightarrow Yes \rightarrow \blacksquare$ |
|--|--|
| To delete Chara-den collectively | ② → select Chara-den ● (repeatable) → 圖 → Yes → ● Press Ĩ [SelAll] or Ĩ [CIrAll] to select or clear all. |
| To delete all Chara-den in folders | $ \begin{array}{c} 3 \rightarrow \text{enter terminal security} \\ $ |

Note

- Delete all will erase preset Chara-den as well.
- To use again after deleting, download preset Chara-den from SH-MODE in the iMenu site.
 (IP P. 201)

Melody Player Playing Back Melodies

i-melodies downloaded from sites and Internet web pages and melodies attached to Message R/F or i-mode mail are saved to Melody of Data box. They can be played with Melody player.

In stand-by, press •914.

● To view melodies saved in microSD Memory Card, select →*microSD*. To view melodies saved in



FOMA terminal handset again, select →phone.

Select a folder and press .

• To view the next page of the image list, press . To view the previous page, press .

Select melody and press 🔳 [Play].

- Melody is played.
- Press while playing to stop and the melody list reappears.

Note

- Some melodies may not be played.
- The current file location (FOMA terminal handset or microSD Memory Card) is saved even if Melody player is ended, and is used the next time Melody player is started.

Forward and store melodies saved in Melody of Data box on a PC using microSD Memory Card (37 P. 316).

 Saved content may be lost due to malfunctions, repairs or other handling of the FOMA terminal. DoCoMo shall not be liable for any loss of content.

Setting Playback Effects <Stereo Effects>

Change Stereo effects in Stereo effects (P. 121).

While playing melody (B step 3 on P. 314), press [72] [Stereo effects] and select the type of Playback effect.

• Alternatively, press 🗐 [3D Stereo] to set 3D effects while playing melody.

| Stereo/ 3D sound | 1 | Melodies with 3D data are played in 3D sound. Melodies without 3D data are played in stereo sound. |
|---------------------|---|--|
| Surround*1 | 2 | Melodies are played back in surround sound. Melodies are played back in stereo sound even when 3D data is included. |
| OFF | 3 | Playback effects are not set. Melodies play in monaural ^{*2} . |

- ^{*1} Playback format that offers rich, vibrant sound.
- ^{*2} Playback format that does not feature rich sound.

Related Operations

Adjust volume <Set volume>

Related Operations

Set Equalizer <Equalizer>

- Press 271 while music is playing.
- 2 To set to Normal playback, press 1.
 - To play back with equalizer set to Rock: Press 2.
 - To play back with equalizer set to Pops: Press 3.
 - To play back with equalizer set to Classic: Press ④.

Note (Related operations)

Set volume

• The default setting is Volume 5.

Melody Folder List Layout

Select *microSD* or press **I** ⑦ [Switch phone SD] in Melody folder list to switch to microSD Memory Card folder.

FOMA terminal handset microSD Memory Card



 Shows folder list of microSD Memory Card
 Folder for melodies retrieved from sites and Internet web pages, Message R/F or i-mode mail

- 3 Folder for melody preset in FOMA terminal handset
- Folder for melody preserved via Bar code reader, microSD Memory Card, Ir exchange, IC transmission or FOMA USB cable (sold separately)
- 5 Created melody folder (CP P. 323, P. 326)
- 6 Shows folder list of FOMA terminal handset
- 7 Preset melody folder
- **3** Folder for melodies downloaded from sites, which has restrictions for outputting from the FOMA terminal

Melody types and their icons

| SMF | MFi (no 3D data) | MFi (3D data) |
|-----|---------------------|------------------|
| SMF | ME | B |

- S : Melodies with FOMA card restrictions applied
- : Melody set as ring tone
- ☆ : Melodies downloaded with i-mode
- L : Melodies retrieved via Bar code reader, microSD Memory Cards, Ir exchange, iC transmission or FOMA USB cable (sold separately)
- Melodies with restrictions for mail attachment and output from the FOMA terminal

Playing a Series of Melodies <Continuous Play>

Play all melodies in a folder in succession.

In stand-by, press •914, select folder and press 63 [Continuous play].

| To skip to the next melody | $\overline{}$ |
|--|--|
| To return to the beginning of the current melody | Press again at the beginning of a melody to return to previous melody. |

Specifying Start Position <Start Position>

Only the specified section can be played.

- The play section is specified and cannot be changed.
 - In stand-by, press 9 1 4, select folder, press • and press Ø 7 1 [Start position].

Select playback method.

| To play entire melodies Play all | 1 |
|--|---|
| To play a portion of melodies <i>Play portion</i> | 2 |

Note

 The entire melody is played when the start position is not specified even if the playback method is set to *Play portion*.

Attaching Melodies and Sending i-mode Mail

Melody may not be played properly if other party is using a model released prior to FOMA SH900i. Select melody (SMF, MFi) from Melody of Data box and attach to i-mode mail.

• Maximum size for attachment is 100 KB. Files exceeding the limit are not attached.

In stand-by, press ● 9 1 4, select folder, press ●, select melody and press ⊠ [Mail].

Selected melody file is attached.

Compose and send i-mode mail.

• Refer to steps 2 to 4 on P. 220 for details.

Note

 Some MFi melodies, melodies attached to mail, melodies downloaded from i-mode, or SMF melodies acquired from i-αppli with file restrictions cannot be attached to i-mode mail.

Setting a Melody as the Ring Tone <Ring Tone>

Set melodies in Melody of Data box as the ring tone.

In stand-by, press ● 9 1 4, select folder, press ●, select melody and press ▣ [Ring tone] or ◎ 3 [Ring tone].

Select item and press .

microSD Memory Card

Use a microSD Memory Card with the FOMA terminal. The microSD Memory Card is a further miniaturized version of the miniSD Memory Card, Copy phonebook, mail and bookmarks from FOMA terminal handset to microSD Memory Card or copy from microSD to FOMA terminal handset. Also, view microSD data from the FOMA terminal. Refer to P. 461 for an estimated number of recordable still pictures/movies and voice recording times for microSD Memory Cards. With the microSD Memory Card adapter, use the card with SD compatible PCs, printers, etc. microSD Memory Cards are sold separately. Purchase microSD Memory Cards at home electronics shops.

Be aware of the following when using the microSD Memory Card.

- Do not insert or remove microSD Memory Card while FOMA terminal is on. Data may be damaged and operation may not work properly.
- Insert the microSD Memory Card into the slot correctly. The microSD will not function when not inserted correctly.
- microSD in use or Reading microSD may appear when inserting the microSD Memory Card. In such cases, wait a moment before using.
- FOMA SH903i is compatible with microSD Memory Cards up to 2 GB. (As of October 2006)
- To check current compatibility for microSD Memory Cards, From FOMA terminal: *iMenu* → メニュー / 検索 (Menu/Search) → 旨ケータイ電話メーカー (Mobile phone manufacturer) → SH-MODE From a PC: http://k-tai.sharp.co.jp/support/d/sh903i/
- FOMA SH903i allows you to transfer downloaded images, movies/i-motion, Melody, Chaku-uta full[®] and Kisekae Tool have restrictions for output from the FOMA terminal to microSD Memory Card. However, data cannot be saved when IP (Information Provider) does not provide permission.
- Be aware of the following for microSD Memory Cards and microSD Memory Cards formatted by other devices.

- When a microSD Memory Card is inserted into the FOMA terminal, data is written for the use. The longer write time is required depending on the microSD Memory Card to use. (Up to approximately 30 seconds) During this time, do not remove the card or turn off the power. Data may be damaged and operation may not work properly.
- Not all microSD Memory Cards formatted by PCs or other devices can be used properly by the FOMA terminal. It is recommended to use microSD Memory Cards formatted by FOMA terminal. Refer to P. 323 for details on formatting. When a card is formatted, all saved data is lost.
- Do not remove microSD Memory Card while editing data on a microSD. Also do not turn off the FOMA terminal or microSD inserted device while editing data. Data may be damaged and operation may not work properly.
- Data saved on microSD Memory Cards from other devices may not be displayed or played on FOMA terminal. Some data saved on microSD Memory Card from FOMA terminal may not be displayed or played on other devices.
- When a microSD Memory Card used with another FOMA terminal or PC is inserted into the FOMA SH903i, it sometimes cannot be used. Delete unnecessary data and insert again.
- To save music data to microSD Memory Card using SD-Jukebox, there are two methods available. One is to connect the FOMA terminal to a PC with the FOMA USB cable (sold separately), and the other is to use a PC or SD Memory Card reader/writer with an SD Memory slot supporting the copyright protection function.
- Dictionary data backed up to microSD Memory Card cannot be viewed.
- Back up the data saved in microSD Memory Card and store in another place. DoCoMo shall not be liable for any loss or change of the saved data.

Inserting/Removing the microSD Memory Card

Inserting microSD Memory Card

Turn off FOMA terminal before inserting microSD Memory Card.

Open microSD Memory Card slot cover. (11)

Slowly insert microSD Memory Card with the arrow () facing up as shown in the diagram. (2)

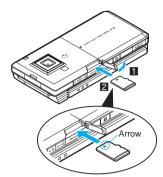
 Do not force the card in at an angle or with the wrong side up. The microSD Memory Card slot may be damaged.

Push slowly with finger

until a click is heard.



Close microSD Memory Card slot cover.



Removing microSD Memory Card

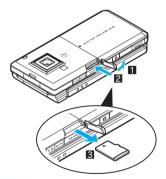
Turn off FOMA terminal before removing microSD Memory Card.

Open microSD Memory Card slot cover (11) and gently push card in. (12)

 Push until a click is heard. microSD Memory Card springs forward. Excessive force may damage FOMA terminal or card.

Remove microSD Memory Card. (3)

• Remove slowly and straight. Close microSD Memory Card slot cover after removing.



Note

- Keep your face away from microSD Memory Card when inserting or removing card. Card may pop out.
- To remove microSD Memory Card, press microSD Memory Card lightly until a click is heard and then pull out. Excessive force may damage FOMA terminal or card.
- Store microSD in included case after removing.
- An alert tone sounds when a microSD Memory Card is inserted or removed while the power is on.

microSD Memory Card Features

Copy FOMA terminal handset data to microSD Memory Card.

Select Copy one, Copy selected or Copy all. Copy entire groups or folders for some functions.

Data available when copying from microSD Memory Card to FOMA terminal handset

| Function | Total ^{*1} | Copy one/ Copy selected/ Copy all | Copy all in group | Copy all in folder |
|-----------------------------------|---|--|-------------------------|-----------------------|
| Phonebook*2 | | | | - |
| Schedule*3, 7 | | | - | - |
| ToDo list*3 | Combined maximum of up to 65,535 | | - | - |
| Text memo | | | - | - |
| Bookmark*9 | items | | - | |
| i-mode mail/ SMS ^{*5} | | | - | |
| Still picture ^{*4, 6} | 999 folders/ up to 400 still pictures per folder (© P. 461) | | - | |
| Movie ^{*4} | 999 folders/ up to 400 movies per folder (2 P. 461) | | - | |
| Melody ^{*4} | 999 folders/ up to 400 melodies per folder | | - | |
| PDF ^{*4, 8} | 999 folders/up to 400 files per folder | | - | |
| ToruCa | 1,000 folders/ up to 999 ToruCa per folder | | - | |
| Location service client | 999 folders/up to 999 clients per folder | | - | - |

- *1 The above numbers may lessen depending on size of data and capacity of microSD Memory Card.
- *2 Secret settings, group number, group name, memory number, Secret code, Select ring tone, Mail ring tone, called LED color, mail/message LED color, Called LED pattern, Mail LED pattern and Substitute image settings are not copied. If *Image transfer* in phonebook is set to *No*, Picture call setting is not copied. Even if *Image transfer* is set to **Yes**, data with file restrictions (restrictions for output from the FOMA terminal) is not copied. Save destination for name, reading, phone number and mail address may change.
- *3 Secret settings and alarm information (except set alarm time) are not copied. Contacts and image settings for Schedule are also not copied.
- *4 Copy only files that are not restricted for output from the FOMA terminal.

- *5 Reply to or forward mail saved on microSD Memory Card. Mail saved in microSD cannot be protected. Folder information is not copied.
- *6 Flash movies and frames are not copied.
- *7 Holiday settings are not copied. Start date and time are entered for end date and time if entry with no end date and time is copied.
- *8 Some PDF files that failed to download may not be copied to the microSD Memory Card.
- *9 Folder information is not copied.

Note

- Save still pictures and movies shot with FOMA terminal to microSD Memory Cards or FOMA terminal handset.
- Manager info is written to microSD Memory Card when data is copied.
- Some files directly copied from PC to microSD Memory Cards are not available on FOMA terminal. In such cases, use Data Link Software. Refer to P. 438 for details on downloading Data Link Software.
- While Function lock is set, locked data cannot be operated. Enter terminal security code to unlock temporarily and operate.
- Details cannot be retrieved from ToruCa in a microSD Memory Card.

ToruCa

 Depending on the size, some ToruCa cannot be copied to a microSD Memory Card.

microSD manager screen

View microSD Memory Card data and back up or format card from microSD manager screen. In addition, connect the FOMA terminal to a PC

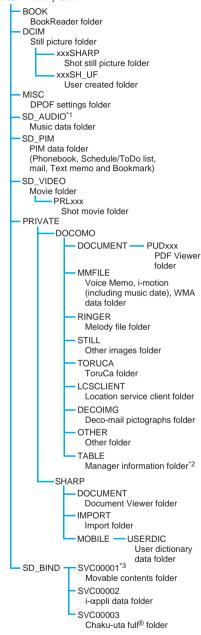
| microSD manager | 92 |
|---------------------|----|
| 1 View microSD data | |
| Backup/restore | |
| 3 Import | |
| 4 New manager info | |
| 5 Format | |
| E USB mode setting | |

with the FOMA USB cable (sold separately) and use as a microSD reader/writer. (127 P. 324)

- Press 9 2 6 in stand-by to show microSD manager screen.
- Folder and file names on microSD Memory Cards are managed by *Manager info*. Update Manager info if microSD Memory Card is used (data edited, added, deleted, etc.) with PC or other device. (IPP P. 324)
 Editing, saving, moving, or copying of data may not be available without proper manager information.

microSD Memory Card Folder Structure

microSD Memory Card



*1 Depending on the settings of the PC in use, folder may not appear. In addition, do not delete, change or add files in the folder under SD_AUDIO directly from a PC. SD-Audio may not operate properly.

- *2 TABLE folder contains folders for DCIM, MMFILE, RINGER, STILL, SD_VIDEO, DOCUMENT, TORUCA, LCSCLIENT, DECOIMG and OTHER information.
- *3 If data saved in the *Movable contents* folder (in the SD_BIND folder) in the microSD Memory Card are deleted, moved or edited by PC, the data in the *Movable contents* folder may not be accessed. In addition, if the microSD Memory Card or the battery pack is removed while data are being moved, deleted or edited, the data in the *Movable contents* folder may not be accessed. In this case, format the microSD Memory Card with FOMA SH903i. (Formatting deletes all the data in the microSD Memory Card.)
- "xxx" in the folder names xxxSHARP and xxxSH_UF is a three-digit single-byte number between 100 and 999.
 ("xxx" can be changed but 000 to 099 are not available.)
- Animated GIF are stored in STILL folder. All other GIF files are stored in DCIM folder.
- Data on microSD Memory Cards do not appear properly on FOMA terminal if folder name is changed or deleted with PC.
- If using models released prior to SH901iS and PDF files are saved in VPRIVATEISHARP\DOCUMENT folder in the microSD Memory Card, move files to VPRIVATE\DOCOMO\DOCUMENT\FUDxxx folder. Update the manager information of the microSD Memory Card after moving the files. Double-byte characters are also available for PDF file names. When the file name is longer than 60 bytes including double-byte characters (excluding the file extension), edit the file name to 60 bytes or less (excluding the file extension).
- If models released prior to FOMA SH902i is used with only sound data of i-motion saved in

\PRIVATE\SHARP\VOICE folder in the microSD Memory Card, move the data to

\PRIVATE\DOCOMOWMFILE folder. Update the manager information of the microSD Memory Card on the FOMA terminal after moving the data.

Contents Transfer Compatible

Transferring Data in FOMA Terminal to microSD Memory Card

Transfer downloaded data that have restrictions for output from the FOMA terminal to a microSD Memory Card. Also, transfer (from a microSD Memory Card to the FOMA terminal handset) is also available. Data that can be transferred are images, movies/i-motion, melodies, Chaku-uta full[®] and Kisekae Tool.

- In microSD Memory Card, data are saved in the *Movable contents* folder.
- Transfer data set to available and Yes (Same model only) in their properties to a microSD Memory Card. Check the properties of data for transfer availability. (IPP . 327)
- The data transferred to microSD Memory Card can be transferred to the FOMA terminal handset in the following situations:
 - When transfer to the FOMA terminal handset is Available and the inserted FOMA card is the one that was inserted at data retrieval

When transfer to the FOMA terminal handset is Yes (Same model only) and the inserted FOMA card is the one that was inserted at data retrieval

Moving Data in FOMA Terminal to microSD Memory Card <Move \rightarrow microSD>

Example: i-motion

In stand-by, press •913, select folder and press •.

 To move all movies/i-motion collectively, select the folder in the folder list, press @6(2), enter terminal security code and press .

| To transfer one movie/i-motion | 1 |
|---|--|
| To transfer all movies/i-motion in folder | $(2) \rightarrow \text{enter terminal security}$ code $\rightarrow \bigcirc$ |
| To transfer multiple movies/ i-motion collectively | 3 → select movie/i-motion (repeatable) → (a) Press (a) [SelAll] or (a) [ClrAll] to select or clear all. |
| To move to destination folder | |

Transferring Data in microSD Memory Card to FOMA Terminal <Move to the Phone>

Example: i-motion

In stand-by, press \bigcirc 913, select \rightarrow *microSD* and press \bigcirc .

Select the *Movable contents* folder, press •, select folder and press •.

- To move all movies/i-motion collectively, select the *Movable contents* folder, press 6(2), enter terminal security code and press .
- To transfer all movies/i-motion in folder, select folder, press 6 (1), enter terminal security code and press •.

Select movie/i-motion, press @ 7 (2) [Move to the phone] and select a transfer method.

| To move one movie/i-motion | 1 |
|---|---|
| To transfer multiple movies/ i-motion collectively | 3 → select movie/i-motion (repeatable) → Image: movie/i-motion Press Image: [SelAll] or Image: [CIrAll] to select or clear all. |

 To transfer to the FOMA terminal handset, the *i-mode* folder is the only destination where movie/i-motions can be transferred.

Copy to microSD

Copying from FOMA Terminal to microSD Memory Card

Copy data from data list screen or details screen to microSD Memory Card. microSD Memory Cards are sold separately. Purchase microSD Memory Cards at home electronics shops. (12 P. 316)

• Submenu numbers vary depending on function and screen

Example: When copying phonebook

In stand-by, press , select name and press 6 5 2 [Copy to microSD].

 To check before copying, in the details screen. press 33, select Yes and press .

Select copy method.

| To copy one | $1 \rightarrow Yes \rightarrow \blacksquare$ |
|-------------------------|--|
| To copy all in group | $\begin{array}{c} \textcircled{2} \rightarrow \text{select group} \rightarrow \textcircled{\bullet} \rightarrow \\ \text{enter terminal security code} \rightarrow \\ \hline \textcircled{\bullet} \rightarrow \textbf{Yes} \rightarrow \textcircled{\bullet} \end{array}$ |
| To copy all | $ \begin{array}{c} \ensuremath{\mathfrak{I}} \ens$ |
| To copy selected | ④ → select name ● (repeatable) → 100 → Yes → ● Press ■ [SelAll] or ■ [CIrAll] to select or clear all. |

Note

- When copying still pictures, melodies, movies/ i-motion or PDF files from Data box to microSD Memory Card, destination folder can be selected.
- A mail message with the total size exceeding 100 KB (including attached files) cannot be copied.
- Copy up to 2 MB of PDF files between the FOMA terminal handset and microSD Memory Card.
- Still pictures or movie/i-motion copied to or from microSD Memory Card may deteriorate in image quality or may have different file sizes. When the destination folder contains more than 400 still pictures, a new folder is automatically created and images are saved in the new folder.
- Select up to 50 mail messages, phonebook entries, schedules, ToDo, Bookmarks and Text memo data when browsing microSD Memory Card for Copy selected or Delete selected.
- JPEG images in FOMA terminal handset increase in size when copied to microSD Memory Card. When available memory space in FOMA terminal handset is low, images copied from handset to microSD Memory Card may not be copied back even if the original image is deleted.
- Images larger than maximum image size or file size may not be copied.
- An entry copied more than once is saved as separate data.
- Data may not be copied depending on microSD Memory Card available space.

functions (Phonebook, Mail, Schedule, ToDo list, Bookmark, Text memo) and dictionary data to microSD Memory Card. Owner information is also forwarded with phonebook Backup/restore. microSD Memory Cards are sold separately. Purchase microSD Memory Cards at home electronics shops. (P. 316)

Backing Up FOMA Terminal

Backup data from FOMA terminal handset

Backup/Restore

Handset Data

- It is recommended to set this function when sharing information with same models or with microSD Memory Card compatible FOMA terminals, or when transferring data to a new handset, etc.
- When battery level is low, data may not be backed up properly. It is recommended to back up data while recharging battery.
- Locked functions cannot be backed up while Function lock is set.
- Phonebook cannot be backed up while Keypad dial lock is set.
- Dictionary data (user dictionaries and dictionaries) replaced with download dictionaries) is saved as one file.
- Data other than dictionary data is saved as one file per function

Backing up from FOMA terminal to microSD Memory Card

In stand-by, press • 9262 1. select a function and press .

- When *Mail* is selected, mail categories appear. Select mail to back up and press .
- When Bookmark is selected, select i-mode or Full Browser and press .

Enter terminal security code, press •, select Yes and press •.

• To back up the phonebook, a confirmation screen for saving owner information appears. To save, select Yes and press .

Note

- Some data may not be fowarded depending on microSD Memory Card available space.
- Some backed up data may not be read with other FOMA terminals.
- The following phonebook data cannot be backed up.
 - Secret code
 - Called LED Select ring tone Mail/message LED

Mail ring tone Substitute image Save destination for name, reading, phone number and mail address may change.

When Image transfer is set to Yes, image set to Picture call is also backed up. Images that are backed up include still pictures or movies shot with your FOMA terminal camera, and also edited, and those retrieved from the source other than camera, which are available for output from the FOMA terminal.

Note

- Alarm information other than alarm time for Schedule and ToDo list is not backed up. Contacts and image settings for Schedule are not backed up.
- If the number of registered entries in FOMA terminal handset phonebook is 0 when the phonebook is backed up, select No in the confirmation screen for saving owner information not to create the backup data.
- i-αppli To and folder information in mail are not backed up.
- Phonebook entries and SMS in FOMA card are not backed up.
- Dictionary data is backed up after the one in microSD Memory Card is deleted.

When ToDo list is backed up, secret data is saved as ordinary data.

Reading backup data from microSD Memory Card to FOMA terminal

Read backup data from microSD Memory Card.

- When backing up data, keep or delete data in FOMA terminal handset.
- Perform operation when battery level is sufficient. Check battery level before starting.

In stand-by, press •9262 2, select a function and press •.

- When data cannot be found, *No data* appears and the screen of step 1 reappears.
- Backup date appears in data name.
 Example: November 20, 2006 1:05 PM → datagr061120 1305
- When Bookmark is selected, select *i-mode* or Full Browser and press
 .
- When User dictionary is selected, enter terminal security code and press

 to overwrite or add.
- Select data and press 2 to check contents.
- Select data and press (2) to check properties. Title, file format, file name, location, file restriction and saved date/time appear.

Select backup data, press , enter terminal security code and press .

Select Add and press .

 To overwrite FOMA terminal data, select Overwrite, press

 select Yes and press
 When overwriting phonebook, a confirmation screen asking whether to restore the owner information appears. Select Yes and press
 to overwrite other than the phone number registered at time of subscription. Group names are also overwritten. Group settings which cannot be overwritten are reset to initial settings.

Note

- Because folder information is not saved with mail and bookmarks, received mail is saved to *Inbox*, sent mail is saved to *Outbox*, unsent mail is saved to *Drafts* and bookmarks are saved to *Bookmark* folder.
- Mail may take more time to transfer.
- User dictionaries are updated and dictionaries replaced with Download dictionaries are added. The title of read dictionary is always User dictionary1.
- If No is selected in the confirmation screen asking whether to restore the owner information when the phonebook backup data including the owner information is restored, the owner information is saved as one entry in the phonebook. Therefore, if the number of registered entries in the restored FOMA terminal phonebook reaches 750, additional entries are not restored.
- When *i-mode* or *Full Browser* is selected for restoration of bookmark backup data, both backup data appear on the screen. However, only the selected backup data can be restored.

Deleting backup data

In stand-by, press •9262 (2), select a function and press •.

- When *Mail* is selected, select mail categories and press to show mail backup list.
- When Bookmark is selected, select *i-mode* or Full Browser and press
 .

2 Select data, press @ 1 [Delete] and select a deletion method.

| To delete data individually | $1 \rightarrow Yes \rightarrow \blacksquare$ |
|---------------------------------|---|
| To delete data collectively | $\begin{array}{c} \textcircled{2} \rightarrow \text{select data} \bullet \\ (\text{repeatable}) \rightarrow \fbox{2} \rightarrow Yes \rightarrow \\ \hline \bullet \end{array}$ |
| To delete all data in folder | $ \begin{array}{c} \textcircled{3} \rightarrow \text{enter terminal security} \\ \text{code} \rightarrow \textcircled{\bullet} \rightarrow \emph{Yes} \rightarrow \textcircled{\bullet} \end{array} $ |

Note

 When *i-mode* or *Full Browser* is selected for deletion of Bookmark backup data, both backup data appear on the screen. Note that selecting one of *i-mode* or *Full Browser* backup data can delete both.

View microSD Data

Previewing microSD Memory Card Data

Check data copied to microSD Memory Card from various function screens or microSD manager screen.

microSD Memory Cards are sold separately. Purchase microSD Memory Cards at home electronics shops. (27 P. 316)

Checking from various function screens

Check data from the list screen.

Example: When checking phonebook

In stand-by, press \square and \square \bigcirc \bigcirc \bigcirc [View microSD data].

- Check data like checking data on FOMA terminal handset.
- Select backup data and press

 to check data

 on microSD Memory Card.
- When data cannot be found. No data appears and the previous screen reappears.

Checking from microSD manager screen

In stand-by, press • 9261, select a function and press .

- Data for selected functions appears in a list. When data cannot be found, a message stating so appears and the previous screen reappears.
- When *Mail* is selected, mail categories appear. Select mail to preview and press .
- To delete data, press , select Delete and press . Select deletion method, press . and follow instructions on screen. (Basic procedures are the same as for phonebook.)
- To copy to FOMA terminal handset, press . select Copy to the phone and press . Select copy method, press
 and follow instructions on screen. Data created with Backup/restore (P. 320) cannot be copied. However, view the details screen to copy the backed up data to the handset.
- Properties and press .

Select data and press .

• For details, refer to corresponding page for each function

Note

 i-mode bookmarks and Full Browser bookmarks are shown together on the **bookmark** list of the microSD Memory Card. a appears for i-mode bookmarks and A appears for Full Browser bookmarks.

Copy to the Phone

Copying from microSD Memory Card to FOMA Terminal

Copy data saved on microSD Memory Cards to the FOMA terminal handset. Select Copy one, Copy selected or Copy all. Copy from each data list screen.

microSD Memory Cards are sold separately. Purchase microSD Memory Cards at home electronics shops. (127 P. 316)

Submenu numbers vary depending on function and screen

Example: When copying phonebook

In stand-by, press \square and \square \bigcirc \bigcirc \bigcirc [View microSD data].

Select data, press 2 [Copy to the phone] and select a copy method.

| To copy one | $\boxed{1} \rightarrow \textbf{Yes} \rightarrow \blacksquare$ |
|---------------------|--|
| To copy selected | $ \begin{array}{c} \textcircled{2} \rightarrow \text{select name} \bullet \\ (\text{repeatable}) \rightarrow \fbox{2} \rightarrow \texttt{Yes} \rightarrow \bullet \end{array} $ |
| | $ \begin{array}{c} \ensuremath{\mathfrak{3}} \rightarrow \mbox{enter terminal security} \\ \mbox{code} \rightarrow \ensuremath{\bullet} \rightarrow \ensuremath{\textbf{Yes}} \rightarrow \ensuremath{\bullet} \end{array} \end{array} $ |

 When copying phonebook. Store in PushTalk phonebook? appears. To store, select Yes and press . When multiple phone numbers are stored, select the phone number.

Note

- Alternatively, copy data from microSD manager screen while checking data.
- To copy the backed up data to microSD Memory Card, read the data (P. 321) from microSD Memory Card. However, view the details screen to copy the only backed up data to the handset.
- Copy up to 2 MB of PDF files between the FOMA terminal handset and microSD Memory Card.

Copving phonebook entries

• No Name appears when data without name is copied.

Copving bookmarks

- Will overwrite the same URL. Are you sure? appears. To overwrite current data, select Yes.
- If the maximum number of bookmarks is saved for either i-mode or Full Browser on the FOMA terminal handset, additional bookmarks are not copied when performing Copy selected or Copy all.

Managing microSD Memory Card

Create/delete folders and edit folder names to manage microSD Memory Card data for My picture, i-motion, Melody and My Documents of Data box, ToruCa and BookReader. View data details or set still pictures to print. microSD Memory Cards are sold separately. Purchase microSD Memory Cards at home electronics shops. (1 P. 316)

 Save up to 400 files per folder on microSD Memory Card. Refer to P. 317 and P. 319 for details on files and folders.

Formatting microSD Memory Card <Format>

Format unformatted microSD Memory Cards on the FOMA terminal before use.

- Note that all data on microSD Memory Card is deleted when formatted.
- Perform operation when battery level is sufficient. Check battery level before starting.
- Not all microSD Memory Cards formatted by PCs or other devices can be used properly by the FOMA terminal. It is recommended to use microSD Memory Cards formatted by FOMA terminal.
- Note that if formatting is aborted, microSD Memory Card will not be recognized by the FOMA terminal, PCs and other devices. In such a case, format microSD Memory Card again.
- Do not remove microSD Memory Card during operation.

In stand-by, press
9265.

Enter terminal security code, press , select Yes and press .

Managing Folders

Creating folders <New folder>

Example: My picture

In stand-by, press \bigcirc 911, select \rightarrow microSD, press \bigcirc and press \bigcirc 11 [New folder].

Select folder to create.

| Camera folder | 1 |
|-----------------|---|
| Other still pic | 2 |
| Deco-mail pict | 3 |

Enter folder name and press .

• To delete *New folder* name, press CLR for 1+ seconds.

Note

- When the microSD Memory Card memory is full, new folders cannot be created.
- Enter up to 18 single-byte (9 double-byte) characters for a folder name.
- Enter up to 20 single-byte (10 double-byte) characters for a folder name in the *Movable contents* folder. Enter up to 64 single/double-byte characters for the BookReader folder name.

Editing folder names <Edit folder name> Example: My picture

In stand-by, press ● 9 1 1, select →microSD, press ●, select folder and press @ 1 2 [Edit folder name].

2 Edit folder name and press 🔳.

• To delete folder name, press CLR for 1+ seconds in the edit screen.

Note

• Only folder names of created folders can be edited.

Deleting folder <Delete>

Example: My picture

- In stand-by, press 9 1 1, select →microSD and press ●.
- 2 Select folder and press @ 2 [Delete].

Select deletion method.

| To delete folder individually | $\begin{array}{c} \textcircled{1} \rightarrow \text{enter terminal security} \\ \text{code} \rightarrow \textcircled{\bullet} \rightarrow \textbf{Yes} \rightarrow \textcircled{\bullet} \end{array}$ |
|---|--|
| To delete folders collectively | $\begin{array}{c} \textcircled{2} \rightarrow \text{select folder} \textcircled{\bullet} \\ (\text{repeatable}) \rightarrow \textcircled{\bullet} \rightarrow \textcircled{\bullet} \rightarrow \text{enter} \\ \text{terminal security code} \rightarrow \textcircled{\bullet} \rightarrow \\ \textbf{Yes} \rightarrow \textcircled{\bullet} \\ \textcircled{\bullet} \text{ Press} \textcircled{\bullet} \\ \textcircled{\bullet} \text{ Press} \textcircled{\bullet} \\ \textbf{(SelAll) or} \textcircled{\bullet} \\ (CIrAll) \\ \text{to select or clear all.} \end{array}$ |
| To delete all data (keep folders) | $ \begin{array}{c} (\underline{3} \rightarrow \text{enter terminal security} \\ \text{code} \rightarrow \textcircled{\bullet} \rightarrow \textbf{Yes} \rightarrow \textcircled{\bullet} \end{array} $ |
| To delete all folders and data | $ \begin{array}{c} \underline{4} \rightarrow \text{enter terminal security} \\ \text{code} \rightarrow \textcircled{\bullet} \rightarrow \textbf{Yes} \rightarrow \textcircled{\bullet} \end{array} $ |

Note

- Delete data from microSD manager screen while checking data. (2 P. 322)
- The folder displayed at the top of *Movable contents* folder is automatically created. The folder cannot be deleted.
- Only created folders can be deleted.

Managing Data

Viewing data details <Properties> Example: Phonebook

- In stand-by, press , press . ④ [View microSD data], select data and press . ③ ③ [Properties].
 - To end viewing, press •.

Displaying/Editing/Managing Data 323

Note

- Submenu numbers vary depending on function and screen.
- View properties while checking data in the microSD manager screen. (127 P. 322)

Deleting data <Delete>

Example: Phonebook

Select data and press log 1 [Delete].

Select deletion method.

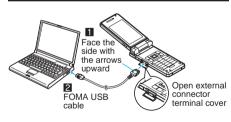
| To delete data individually | 1 | Yes | | | |
|-------------------------------|-------------|-------------------|-----------------------|-----------|----|
| To delete data collectively | 2 (repea | select atable) | name (| • Yes | • |
| To delete all data in folders | 3 code | enter | termina Yes | l securit | ty |

Using as microSD Reader/Writer <USB Mode Setting>

Default setting Communication mode

Connect the FOMA terminal to a PC with the FOMA USB cable (sold separately) to read/write data from the PC.

| Mode for packet transmissions, 64K data communications and sending and receiving data (OBEX) (2 P. 398) |
|---|
| Mode for reading/writing the data saved on microSD Memory Card |
| Mode for transferring music data to microSD Memory Card using Windows Media Player 10. Refer to P. 356 for details on saving. |



In stand-by, press
9266.

• Alternatively, press • 3 6 in stand-by.

Press 2 [microSD mode], select Yes and press •.

 To set MTP mode, press ③, select Yes and press ●. MTP mode cannot be selected when microSD Memory Card is not correctly inserted nor correctly recognized. Insert the FOMA terminal side connector of the FOMA USB cable into the external connection terminal on the FOMA terminal. (11)

Insert the PC side connector of the FOMA USB cable into the USB connector of the PC. (☑)

- To return to Communication mode, press any key, select Yes and press (•). Alternatively, the mode automatically switches to Communication mode if FOMA USB cable is removed from a PC and no operations are made for approximately 90 seconds.
- To disconnect the FOMA USB cable, follow the safe disconnecting method of each OS.

Note

• The following devices are required to use the FOMA terminal as a microSD reader/writer.

| Item | Description |
|---------------|---|
| Cable | FOMA USB cable (sold separately) |
| PC | A PC with a USB port (Universal Serial Bus Specification Rev. 1.1-compliant) usable with the FOMA USB cable (sold separately). |
| Compatible OS | Windows 2000/XP (Japanese version) |

- Not all microSD Memory Cards formatted by PCs or other devices can be used properly by the FOMA terminal. Format the microSD Memory Card on the FOMA terminal.
- Make sure the FOMA terminal is properly connected to the PC. If not connected properly, sending and receiving data may not be possible, or data may be lost.
- Check whether there is enough remaining battery power of the FOMA terminal. If data communication is performed when the battery level is low or empty, sending and receiving data may not be possible, or data may be lost. Check the PC power supply as well.
- Do not remove the FOMA USB cable while reading/ writing data. Sending and receiving data may not be possible, or data may be lost.

Updating microSD Memory Card Manager Information <New Manager Info>

Update Manager information if microSD Memory Card is used (data edited, added, deleted, etc.) with other devices.

- Perform operation when battery level is sufficient. Check battery level before starting.
- Manager information may not be updated if there is no available space on the microSD Memory Card.
- microSD Memory Card may not operate properly if manager information is not updated on FOMA terminal.
- It may take time to update depends on number of files and amount of data on microSD Memory Card.
- Updating manager information is necessary when using data saved by another device.
- Be aware that updating manager information deletes titles of GIF images, movies, data in *Other images* and *Multimedia*. However, original titles for i-motion and melodies are not deleted.

• Do not remove microSD Memory Card while updating.

In stand-by, press •9264.



Select item and press .

- Icon changes to ☑. ☑ appears for selected and □ appears for unselected entries. Press ● to switch. Select all items to update.
- When *All* is selected, select *Yes* and press
 to start updating manager information.
- Press i [Complete], select Yes and press .

Note

- While updating, voice/Videophone call and mail can be received. However, the following functions are not available:
 - i-αppli
- Shooting still pictures/ movies
- Bar code reader
 Receiving Ir data
 - Document Viewer
- Print setting (DPOF) SD-Audio
- Checking memory of microSD Memory Card
- Viewing microSD data from Phonebook/Mail/ Schedule/ToDo list/Text memo/BookReader/ ToruCa/My picture, i-motion, Melody and My Documents of Data box

Checking Data Created with PC and Other Device on FOMA Terminal https://www.englight.com

Use microSD Memory Card on the FOMA terminal to check data (phonebook, mail, schedule, ToDo list, text memo and still pictures/ movies/i-motion/melodies/PDF in Data box) created on a PC or other devices.

 Use Data Link Software (IPP. 438) to copy data from a PC or other devices to microSD Memory Card import folder in advance.

In stand-by, press •9263.

Select function and press .

- When data cannot be found, No data appears and the screen of step 1 reappears.
- Data (file name) for selected function appears.
- To delete data, press 1. Subsequent steps are the same as for deleting data normally.
- To copy to FOMA terminal handset, press
 2. Subsequent steps are the same as for copying data normally.

- When special symbols or katakana are included in a file name, the data may not be copied.
- To check data information, press 2. Not all data created on a PC or other devices has title information.

Select data and press 🔳.

Note

- For melodies, copy up to 100 KB on the FOMA terminal handset and play up to 200 KB on microSD Memory Cards. Play back and copy up to 2 MB for JPEG images, 500 KB for GIF images and 2 MB for movies or PDF files.
- When backup data is put into the Import folder, only the first item is shown.
- Not all still pictures (JPEG/GIF) larger than 2,048 (W) x 2,048 (H) pixel can be viewed. Images from the image list may be displayed for larger images.
- PDF files cannot be displayed when saved in the Import folder. Copy to FOMA terminal handset to display.
- Attached files may be deleted in part or in whole under the following conditions.
 - File exceeding 2 MB is attached
 - 11 or more files are attached
- The following restrictions regarding file names apply to data in the Import folder.
 - Up to 228 single/double-byte characters for PIM data (excluding file extensions)
 - Up to 60 single/double-byte characters for PDF data (excluding file extensions)
 - Up to 100 single/double-byte characters for still pictures, movies and melodies (excluding file extensions)

Managing Data

Data box consists of the following folders.

Data box

| My picture Shot still pictures with the FOMA terminal and downloaded images are saved. (127 P. 296) MUSIC | ł |
|---|---|
| Chaku-uta full [®] are saved. (127 P. 356) | |
| Movies shot with the FOMA terminal, recorder audio and downloaded i-motion are saved. (127 P. 304) | d |
| Melody Melodies are saved. (EP P. 314) | |
| ── My Documents PDF files are saved. (☞ P. 336) Chara-den | |
| Chara-den are saved. (127 P. 310) Kisekae Tool | |
| Kisekae Tool are saved. (CPP. 137) Print setting (DPOF) | |
| Information such as the number of prints for still pictures saved on the microSD Memory Card is saved to the microSD Memory Card. (127 P. 349) | |

Managing Folders

Manage data by creating up to 20 folders each for My picture, MUSIC, i-motion, Melody, My Documents, Chara-den and Kisekae Tool of Data box.

 Refer to P. 313 for details on managing Chara-den folder.

Creating folders <New folder>

Example: My picture

In stand-by, press • 9 1 1 and press 1 1 [New folder].

Enter folder name and press .

• To delete *New folder* name, press CLR for 1+ seconds.

Note

• Enter up to 18 single-byte (9 double-byte) characters for a folder name.

Editing folder names <Edit folder name> Example: My picture

In stand-by, press • 9 1 1, select folder and press 6 1 2 [Edit folder name].

Edit folder name and press .

• To erase folder name, press CLR for 1+ seconds in the edit screen.

Note

• Only folder names of created folders can be edited.

Deleting folders < Delete>

Example: My picture

In stand-by, press • 911, select folder and press @2 [Delete].

Select deletion method.

| To delete folder individually | enter terminal security code • Yes |
|---|---|
| To delete folders collectively | 2 select folder (repeatable) enter terminal security code Yes Press [SelAlI] or |
| To delete all data (keep folders) | 3 enter terminal security code ● Yes ● |
| To delete all folders and data | enter terminal security code Yes |

Note

- Only created folders can be deleted.
- · Saved data is deleted along with folder.
- Folders containing data saved as stand-by display, ring tone and other functions cannot be deleted.
 Disable setting and try again.
- Deleting all the folders will also delete all the data preset in the *Decomail picture* and *Deco-mail pict* folders.
- To use again after deleting, download the preset data from the iMenu site, *SH-MODE*. (P P. 198)

Managing Data

Delete and sort data.

• Sub menu numbers vary for the Music and *Movable* contents folder.

Editing title <Edit title>

Example: My picture

- In stand-by, press •911, select folder and press •.
- Select data and press 13 [Edit title].

Edit the title and press 🔳.

• To delete title, press CLR for 1+ seconds in edit screen.

Note

- Title names are names that appear on data lists. File names are names used for data sent as i-mode mail attachments.
- Enter up to 50 single-byte (25 double-byte) characters. For i-motion, enter up to 36 single-byte (18 double-byte) characters.
- When changing a title of i-motion, Melody, Chara-den or Kisekae Tool, select *Edit title* and then select *Direct input* or *Back to original*.
- Up to 14 single-byte (7 double-byte) characters of the title are shown on screen. (If a title name exceeds 14 single-byte (7 double-byte) characters, up to 12 single-byte (6 double-byte) characters are shown for the title name.)

Editing file names <Edit file name>

Example: My picture

In stand-by, press • 9 1 1, select folder, press •, select data and press 14 [Edit file name].

Edit file name and press •.

• To delete file name, press and for 1+ seconds in the edit screen.

- Enter up to 36 single-byte characters for the file name.
- File names for the following cannot be edited: data with file restrictions (data downloaded from sites or Internet web pages, attached to i-mode mail or saved from i-αppli), picture memos shot during a Videophone call or data saved on a microSD Memory Card.

Sorting data <Sort>

Default setting Date (new→old)

Change the list order to one of the following.

| Date (new→old)*1 | Files are sorted with the latest save date first. |
|---------------------------|--|
| Date (old→new)*1 | Files are sorted with the oldest save date first. |
| By title name | Files are sorted by title in the following order: single-byte numbers \rightarrow single-byte upper case alphabet \rightarrow single-byte lower case alphabet \rightarrow hiragana \rightarrow double-byte katakana \rightarrow kanji \rightarrow Pictograph 1 \rightarrow Pictograph 2 \rightarrow double-byte numbers \rightarrow double-byte lower case alphabet \rightarrow double-byte lower case alphabet \rightarrow single-byte katakana |
| By source*2 | Files are sorted by acquisition method in the following order: $blank \rightarrow i$ -mode \rightarrow camera \rightarrow data transfer \rightarrow Chara-den \rightarrow Videophone. |
| Size (big→small) | Files are sorted with the largest files first. |
| Size (small→big) | Files are sorted with the smallest files first. |
| By artist (Music only) | Files are sorted with artist's name in alphabetical order. |

- *1 If the file restriction of the data in the microSD Memory Card is changed, time and date information is updated. As a result, the time and date displayed in the Date/time saved of File property may be different from a result sorted by Date.
- *2 File acquisition source differs by data type.

Example: My picture

In stand-by, press • 9 1 1, select folder, press • and press • 1 2 [Sort].

Select sort method and press .

Moving data to another folder <Move>

Example: My picture

In stand-by, press •911, select folder and press •.

Select data and press 61 [Move].

Select a transfer method.

| To move data individually | 1 select folder |
|--|--|
| To move all data in folders | enter terminal security code select folder |
| To move selected data collectively | 3 select data ● (repeatable) ◎ select folder ● Press ■ [SelAll] or ■ [CIrAll] to select or clear all. |

Note

- Data cannot be moved without created folders.
- Only one data can be moved from a created folder to the default folder.
- If the destination folder on microSD Memory Card contains more than 400 still pictures, movies/i-motion, melodies and PDF, the exceeded amount cannot be moved.
- Data contained in the *Multimedia* folder on the microSD Memory Card cannot be moved to *Camera folder*.
- If See or set is pressed while data are transferred to another folder in a FOMA terminal handset, *Canceling* appears. However, the transfer processing is not canceled.

Viewing detailed information

<File property>

The following information is shown.

| Item | My picture | MUSIC | i-motion | Melody | PDF | Kisekae Tool |
|---|---------------|-------|----------|---------------|-----|-----------------|
| Date/time saved | | | | | | |
| Date/time saved (Exif) (images shot with camera only) | | - | - | - | - | - |
| Date/time made | - | - | - | (MFi only) | | - |
| Display size ^{*1} (excluding Flash movies) | | - | | - | - | - |
| File size | | | | | | |
| File size (video) (JPEG images only) | | - | - | - | - | - |
| File format (excluding Flash movies) | | | | | | - |
| File restriction: Restricted/ Not restricted | | | | | | |

| Item | My picture | MUSIC | i-motion | Melody | PDF | Kisekae Tool |
|---|---------------|-------|----------|--------|-----|-----------------|
| Tone settings*2 | - | | | | - | - |
| Set screen*2 | | - | | - | - | - |
| Ph/book settings ^{*2} | | | | | - | - |
| Schedule/ ToDo ^{*2} | | | | | - | - |
| Videophone*2 | | - | - | - | - | - |
| Record message*2 | | - | - | - | - | - |
| Owner Information ^{*2} | | - | - | - | - | - |
| Daily alarm ^{*2} | - | | | | - | - |
| Slideshow settings ^{*2} | - | - | - | | - | - |
| Creator | - | - | | - | - | - |
| Copyright | - | - | | - | - | - |
| Description | - | - | | - | - | - |
| Title | - | | - | - | - | - |
| Artist | - | | - | - | - | - |
| Album | - | | - | - | - | - |
| Year | - | | - | - | - | - |
| Genre | - | | - | - | - | - |
| Comment | - | | - | - | - | - |
| Track number | - | | - | - | - | - |
| Composer | - | | - | - | - | - |
| Lyricist | - | | - | - | - | - |
| Rights holder | - | | - | - | - | - |
| Selling agency | - | | - | - | - | - |
| Rights information | - | | - | - | - | - |
| Rights management*7 | - | | - | - | - | - |
| Label | - | | - | - | - | - |
| URL info | - | | - | - | - | - |
| File name | | | | | | |
| Shooting date (JPEG images only) | | - | - | - | - | - |
| Title (Original) | - | | | | - | |
| Restriction (Number of times): MobileMP4 / MP4 *3 | - | | | - | - | - |
| Restriction (Expiration date): MobileMP4 / MP4 * ³ | - | | | - | - | - |
| Restriction (Duration): <i>MobileMP4/ MP4</i> ³ | - | | | - | - | - |

| Item | My picture | MUSIC | i-motion | Melody | PDF | Kisekae Tool |
|---|---------------|-------|----------|--------|-----|-----------------|
| Sound: AAC/AMR/ HE-AAC/ Enhanced aacPlus/ WMA/ unknown/Bit rate (Music only) ⁴ | - | | | - | - | - |
| Source | | | | | | |
| Ring tone: available/ unavailable | - | - | | - | - | - |
| Receive display: available / unavailable | - | - | | - | - | - |
| Full song ring tone: available/ unavailable | - | | - | - | - | - |
| Point ring tone: available / unavailable | - | | - | - | - | - |
| Savable Jacket image: <i>Restricted/</i> <i>Not restricted</i> | - | | - | - | - | - |
| Savable Image: <i>Restricted/</i> <i>Not restricted</i> | - | | - | - | - | - |
| Savable Lyric: Restricted/ Not restricted | - | | - | - | - | - |
| Play time | - | | - | - | - | - |
| Surround playback: available/ unavailable ^{*4} | - | | | - | - | - |
| Change theme color: <i>Restricted/</i> <i>Not restricted</i> | - | - | - | - | - | |
| Move to the microSD: available/ unavailable/ Yes(Same model only)* ^{5, 6} | | | | | | |

*1 Display size appears in pixels.

- *2 Not displayed for file properties of microSD Memory Card.
- *3 Not displayed for i-motion without replay restrictions. *Not restricted* is displayed for music, indicating that there is no restriction.
- *4 Not displayed for movies/i-motion with no audio sound.
- *5 Contents that can be copied appears as Available.
- *6 *Moved to the phone* for data in microSD Memory Card.
- *7 Appears with WMA data.

Example: My picture

In stand-by, press •911, select folder and press •.

Select data and press 🗐 5 [File property].

• To end viewing, press • or CLR.

Restricting output of still pictures and movies from the FOMA terminal <File restriction>

Restrict still pictures and movies from mail attachment and output from the FOMA terminal.

- If a File restriction is set on data shot with the FOMA terminal, although sending the data as an attachment to i-mode mail is possible, the receiver will not be able to send restricted data to another party.
- File restrictions on data downloaded from sites or Internet web pages, attached to i-mode mail, or saved from i-αppli, and picture memos shot during Videophone cannot be changed.
- Only data created through editing or shot by the FOMA SH903i can be changed.
- Even if movies shot with the FOMA SH903i, file restrictions cannot be changed for i-motion downloaded from sites or Internet web pages, or i-motion retrieved from a URL in an i-motion mail message.

Example: My picture

- In stand-by, press •911, select folder and press •.
- 2 Select data, press @ 1 5 [File restriction] and press 1 [Restricted].

Deleting data <Delete>

Example: My picture

- In stand-by, press •911, select folder and press •.
- Select data and press @ 2 [Delete].
 - To delete data on microSD Memory Card, press
 →microSD in folder list →

 → select folder
 → select data →
 - \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow select data \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow **Delete** \rightarrow \blacksquare

3

Select deletion method.

| To delete data individually | $1 \rightarrow Yes \rightarrow \blacksquare$ |
|--------------------------------|---|
| To delete data collectively | ≥ → select data (repeatable) → Press [SelAll] or [ClrAll] to select or clear all. |
| | $ \begin{array}{c} \hline \ 3 \ \rightarrow \ \text{enter} \ \text{terminal security} \\ \text{code} \ \rightarrow \ \hline \bullet \ \rightarrow \ \textbf{Yes} \ \rightarrow \ \hline \bullet \ \end{array} $ |

Note

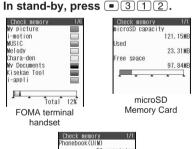
- All in folder is not available for data set as stand-by display, ring tone and other functions.
- Data in *Pre-install* folder of My picture and *Pre-install* folder in Melody cannot be deleted.

Checking Available Memory <Check Memory>

Check the following contents.

| ltem | Details |
|--|--|
| Phonebook, Schedule, ToDo | Number of remaining entries, registered entries, and secret entries |
| Bookmark, Text memo | Number of remaining entries and registered entries |
| Inbox, Outbox, Unsent messages, Message R/F, Screen memo, Deco-mail template, ToruCa | Percentage used (%) |
| My picture, MUSIC, i-motion, Melody, My Documents, Chara-den, Kisekae Tool, i-αppli of Data box | Total percentage used (%) |
| microSD Memory Card | Amount, amount used, and free space |
| FOMA card | Number of remaining phonebook entries and registered entries, and percentage used for SMS (%) |

 Secret data items can only be displayed when Secret mode is set to ON. (CP P. 158)





- Press [i] [->microSD] to check microSD Memory Card or FOMA card memory usage and microSD Memory Card usage status appears. Press [i] [UIM] again for FOMA card usage status.
- Current available memory status is shown.
- Indicator and scale are estimates.
- To show available memory status for other functions while checking available memory on the FOMA terminal handset, press .

• The number of phonebook entries includes secret data.

When Memory Is Low or Saved Data Is Full

Data and files cannot be saved when memory is low or saved data is full. Saving to microSD Memory Cards or deleting unnecessary files is recommended.

- If the number of saved data is full, data and file cannot be saved, even if available memory exists. Delete unnecessary data before saving.
- If saving images, Chaku-uta full[®], i-motion, melodies, Chara-den, i-αppli software, PDF files and Kisekae Tool when the memory is full, *Memory is full or* saved data exceeds limit. Overwrite? appears. Delete any unnecessary data or files before saving.
- When the memory space is not enough to save data downloaded from sites and Internet web page, which has restrictions for outputting from the FOMA terminal, a confirmation screen for overwriting appears and the data can be saved by deleting the data in the *Movable* contents folder.

In the confirmation screen, select Yes and press • to overwrite.



2 Select data type, press •, select folder and press •.

Select data and press .

- ☑ appears for selected and □ appears for unselected entries. Press to switch.
- Select data until the memory allocation status reaches 100%.

Press i [Complete], select Yes and press 🗉.

Ir Exchange

Ir Exchange

Use Ir exchange to send and receive phonebook, schedule, mail, still picture and other data to and from other FOMA terminals which also support infrared communication. In addition, use Ir exchange from i-αppli to operate simultaneously with other devices.

- The FOMA terminal Ir exchange function conforms with IrMC1.1. However, depending on the function, some data may not be sent or received even when the other party's terminal complies with IrMC1.1.
- Data (My picture, i-motion, Melody, etc.) of Data box may not be sent from FOMA SH903i to another FOMA terminal using Ir exchange.

- During Ir exchange, the FOMA terminal status is the same as when outside the service area. Therefore, functions such as making/receiving calls, i-mode, sending/receiving i-mode mail, sending/receiving SMS, and receiving Message R/F are not available.
- Ir exchange is not available during a call.
- The FOMA terminal Ir receive function and the Ir send function of the contents in Data box and of ToruCa conform with IrSimple1.0.
- JPEG images saved in My picture of Data box can be sent by high-speed Ir exchange. (IrSS function*) (127 P. 299)
- * IrSS is a simplex communication function compliant with IrSimple 1.0 (Home Appliance Profile).

When Lock Functions Are Set

- Ir exchange is not available while All lock or Self mode is set.
- Phonebook data cannot be sent or received when Keypad dial lock is set.
- Data of locked functions cannot be received while Function lock is set. For example, while Function lock is applied to phonebook, phonebook data cannot be received. However, data can be sent when Function lock is temporarily disabled.

Using Ir Exchange

Use Ir exchange to send and receive the following data.

Data that can be sent from the FOMA terminal

| Function | One | AII items | Remarks |
|-----------|-----|--------------|--|
| Phonebook | | | Group information, PushTalk numbers, and PushTalk group information are not sent when sending data items individually. Secret phonebook entries cannot be sent individually unless Secret mode is set to ON . Secret code, Select ring tone, Mail ring tone, called LED color, mail/message LED color, Called LED pattern, Mail LED pattern settings, and Substitute image settings are not sent. Owner Information is sent when sending all phonebook data. Also, Secret phonebook entries is sent. |
| Schedule | | | Secret schedules cannot be sent individually unless Secret mode is set to ON . When sending all items, data saved as secret data is also sent. Alarm information other than alarm time (ring duration, alarm tone, alarm volume), contacts, and image setting information cannot be sent. Data with no end date/ time set will be sent with start date/time. |
| ToDo list | | | Secret ToDo list entries cannot be sent individually unless Secret mode is set to ON . When sending all items, data saved as secret data is also sent and saved by the receiver as normal data. For alarm information (ring duration, alarm tone, alarm volume, contacts settings), only alarm time can be sent. |

| Function | One | AII items | Remarks |
|--|-----|--------------|--|
| Text memo | | | - |
| i-mode mail/SMS | | | Pasted data, attached files, and protected mail can be sent. Data that cannot be attached is not sent. Folder information cannot be sent. Using Ir exchange, a mail exceeding 100 KB (including attached files) may not be sent to the other party properly. |
| Bookmark | | | Both i-mode bookmark and Full browser bookmark can be sent. Folder information cannot be sent. |
| Still pictures, movies, i-motion, melodies, PDF in Data box | | × | Data downloaded from sites or Internet web pages, or received as i-mode mail attachments that have file restrictions cannot be sent. Data pre-registered in the FOMA terminal cannot be sent. Data that can be sent is up to 2 MB for still picture, 2 MB for movie, 100 KB for melody and 2 MB for PDF files. |
| Owner Information | | | Saved as phonebook entry by receiver. Refer to the phonebook remarks column. |
| ToruCa | | | ToruCa exceeding 1 KB, ToruCa (details) exceeding 100 KB, non- redistributable ToruCa and used ToruCa cannot be sent. Folder information cannot be sent. |
| Location service client | | | - |

Data that can be received by the FOMA terminal

| Function | One | AII items | Storage location | Storage order |
|--------------------|-----|--------------|---------------------|---|
| Phonebook | | | Phonebook | When receiving a single data item, smallest available memory number after 010 is automatically added. When receiving all phonebook entries, all owner information except own FOMA terminal's phone number is overwritten. No Name appears for data without name saved. |
| Schedule | | | Schedule | Saved in order of start date/time. |
| ToDo list | | | ToDo list | Saved in order of expiration date. |
| Text memo | | | Text memo | Saved in order of last revision date/time. |
| i-mode mail/SMS | | | i-mode mail/SMS | Saved in order of date/time received, sent or saved. |
| Bookmark | | | Bookmark | Saved at the top when receiving one bookmark. When receiving all bookmarks, they are saved in the order used, starting from the oldest. |

| Function | One | AII items | Storage location | Storage order |
|---|-----|--------------|--|--|
| Still pictures, movies, i-motion, melodies, PDF of Data box | | × | My picture, i-motion, Melody, My Documents of Data box | Saved at the top of the <i>Acquired data</i> folder in the selected folder. |
| Owner Information | | | Phonebook | When receiving a single data item, the item is saved in the smallest available memory number after 010 . Refer to the phonebook storage order column. |
| ToruCa | | | ToruCa | - |
| Location service client | | | Notification clients | - |

Note

- Data saved on microSD Memory Cards cannot be sent or received.
- If overwriting existing data with new data is selected when receiving all the items of a function, all existing data for that function will be deleted.
- FOMA card phonebook data cannot be sent or received.
- Sort settings for folders are not reflected when bookmarks, i-mode mail, SMS and ToruCa are sent or received.

Sending or receiving single phonebook entry

- Received phonebook data is automatically added to the smallest available memory number after 010.
 When no memory number after 010 is available, data is added to an available memory number after 000.
- Group numbers for all entries are set to (Not specified).

Receiving all phonebook entries

 For Receive all, memory number, secret settings, group names, group numbers, PushTalk numbers, PushTalk group names, and PushTalk group numbers are also saved.

Sending or receiving mail message

 For i-mode mail with i-αppli To pasted, the pasted information is deleted and is not sent or received.

Sending or receiving pictographs

 For functions which pictographs can be saved, pictographs can be sent and received. However, pictographs may not appear properly on PCs and mobile phones not supporting i-mode. The pictographs may not appear properly on i-mode terminal depending on the receiving model.

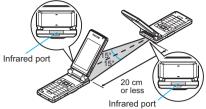
ToruCa

 Some ToruCa may not be sent as a mail attachment, sent using Ir exchange or copied to the microSD Memory Card.

Receiving location service client

 The same location service client cannot be saved more than once.

Precautions for using the Ir exchange function



- Place on a desk or other stable location as shown above with the Ir ports of the sending and receiving FOMA terminals no further than 20 cm apart.
- In the following circumstances, leave the Ir ports facing each other and do not move.
 - When data is received, Save xxx? appears on the receiving FOMA terminal, until Yes or No is selected.
 Until data receiving/sending is completed.
- Ir exchange may not function properly directly under fluorescent lights, near other equipment using infrared signals, or in areas of direct sunlight.
- If either of the infrared ports is dirty, Ir exchange will become difficult. Take care not to scratch the ports, and wipe off any dirt with a soft cloth.

Note

- When Ir exchange could not be performed properly, the following messages appear.
 Authentication failed. Retry?
 No response Retry?
 If these messages appear, select Yes to try again.
- If Ir exchange fails, move the FOMA terminals close and try again.
- Images sent by Ir exchange may deteriorate in image quality or may have different file sizes.
- IrSS performs a transmission without confirming the response of the receiver side since it uses a simplex communication. For this reason, the sender side completes the communication normally even if the receiver side does not.

Authentication Password

Terminal security code and authentication password entry are required for sending or receiving all data items.

- For terminal security code, enter current security code set in the FOMA terminal.
- Authentication password is a password exclusively for Ir exchange. Before starting data transfer, the sender and receiver must enter the same user-specified four-digit password. This password can be changed for each Ir exchange operation.

Sending and Receiving Data Individually

Use Ir exchange to send/receive data individually on the FOMA terminal.

• Refer to P. 330 for details on data that can be sent and received.

Sending Single Data Item <Send Ir Data>

Send one data item, operating from the list screen or details screen of data to send.

Example: When sending from phonebook

- In phonebook list (P. 108) or details screen (P. 108), select data, press , select Send data, press , select Send Ir data and press .
 - Operation can be performed using Submenu numbers. However, numbers differ depending on the type of screen or data to be sent.

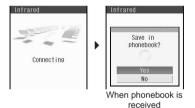
Set receiving FOMA terminal to receive single data item.

Press 1 [Send], select Yes and press •.

Receiving Single Data Item <Receive Ir Data>

Receive one data item, operating from the Ir data receiving screen.

In stand-by, press • 9 2 2 1, select Yes and press •.



- Ready sender's FOMA terminal to send one data item.
- The FOMA terminal waits to receive data. Data is automatically received when data is sent within 30 seconds.

Select Yes and press .

- When phonebook is received, Store in PushTalk phonebook? appears. To store, select Yes and press . When multiple phone numbers are stored, select the phone number.

Sending and Receiving All Data Items

Use Ir exchange to send/receive all data items on the FOMA terminal.

• Refer to P. 330 for details on data that can be sent and received.

Sending All Data Items <Send All Ir Data>

Operate from the list screen of data to send.

Example: For phonebook

- In phonebook list (P 108), press b, select Send data, press , select Send Ir data and press .
 - Operation can be performed using Submenu numbers. However, numbers differ depending on the type of screen or data to be sent.
- Press 2 [Send all].
- Ready receiving FOMA terminal to receive all data items.
- Enter terminal security code and press •.
- 5 Enter authentication password (four digits), press •, select Yes and press •.
 - If the entered authentication password matches an authentication password entered by receiver, data sending begins.

Note

- When all Bookmarks are received, they appear on the receiver's bookmark list in the order used, starting from the oldest.
- When sending all schedules, operate from Calendar or Show all schedules.

Receiving All Data Items <Receive All Ir Data>

Receive all data items using Ir exchange, operating from the Ir data receiving screen.

- To receive all data items, terminal security code and authentication password entries are required.
- When all data items are received, saved data will be overwritten.

In stand-by, press •9222, select Yes and press •.

Enter terminal security code and press •.

Ready sender's FOMA terminal to send all data.

 Remember the authentication password entered in the sender's FOMA terminal.

Enter the same authentication password (four digits) entered on sender's FOMA terminal and press . • Ir exchange automatically begins when data is sent from other party's FOMA terminal within 30 seconds.

Select Yes and press .

• To cancel Receive all while receiving data, press 🙆 [Cancel].

Using Ir Exchange with i-αppli Software

Use the Ir exchange function (PP. 330) from running software. Activating i-appli from Ir exchange is also possible.

- While in Self mode, Ir exchange is not available.
- While Function lock is applied to i-αppli, i-αppli will not activate.

Activating Ir Exchange from i-αppli

While running software, activate Ir exchange, select Yes and press •.

- Procedures for starting Ir exchange differ, depending on the software.
- Ir exchange begins.
- Press 🖻 to cancel Ir exchange.

Activating i-appli from Ir Exchange

During Ir exchange, if a signal to activate i-αppli is received from devices supporting infrared communication, software can be activated.

- When i-αppli To is set to No, i-αppli will not activate from Ir exchange.
- Cannot be activated as i-αppli stand-by.

In stand-by, press •9221.

- The FOMA terminal waits to receive data. Refer to step 1 of "Receiving Single Data Item" on P. 332.
- 2 Software is activated when signal to activate i-αppli is received from the sender's FOMA terminal.

Infrared Remote Control

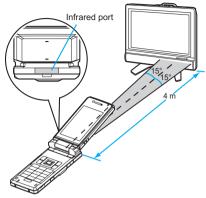
Using the Infrared Remote Control Function

Use the FOMA terminal's Infrared port from i-coppli software to operate equipment supporting remote control such as TVs and VCRs.

- To use the infrared remote control function, download compatible i-appli software. (The preinstalled software Gガイド番組表リモコン (G-GUIDE program schedule remote control) supports Ir remote control function.)
- While in Self mode, the Ir remote control function cannot be used.

Remote Control Operation

Start i- α ppli software that supports Ir remote control functions, point the FOMA terminal's Ir port to the front of the remote control sensor on the TV, VCR or other devices to operate, and perform remote control operations.



- Actual operational methods will differ with each i-αppli software application. Refer to P. 258 for details on Gガ イド番組表リモコン (G-GUIDE program schedule remote control).
- Control devices from a distance of up to approximately four meters. (Distance will vary depending on the device, the ambient brightness and other factors.)
- Implementation when an Ir remote control signal is being sent.

Note

- Depending on the device, operation may not run properly.
- Remote control operation may not run properly directly under fluorescent lights, near other equipment using infrared signals, or in areas of direct sunlight.

iC Transmission

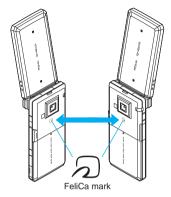
iC Transmission

Send and receive phonebook entries, schedules or data from mail, still pictures, etc. to/from other FOMA terminals also equipped with iC transmission function.

- During iC transmission, the FOMA terminal status is the same as when outside the service area. Therefore, functions such as making/receiving calls, i-mode, sending/receiving i-mode mail, sending/receiving SMS, and receiving Message R/F are not available.
- iC transmission is not available during a call.
- iC transmission is not available while IC card is locked.
- Data that can be sent and received or operations when various lock functions are set are same as for Ir exchange. Refer to P. 330 for details.

Precautions for using iC transmission function

 Use while placing FeliCa mark
 O f receiving side FOMA terminal on that of sending side FOMA terminal. Do not move the FOMA terminals until all data are sent and received.



Sending and Receiving Data Individually

Use iC transmission function to send/receive data individually on the FOMA terminal.

Sending Single Data Item <Send>

Send one data item, operating from the list screen or details screen of data to send.

Example: For phonebook

- In phonebook list (② P. 108) or details screen (② P. 108), select data, press 圖, select Send data, press , select *iC transmission* and press .
 - Operation can be performed by entering the sub menu numbers. However, numbers differ depending on the type of screen or data to be sent.

Press 1 [Send], select Yes and press •.

Place FeliCa mark 2 on that of other party's FOMA terminal.

 When completed, *Exchange completed* appears, and the previous screen reappears.

In stand-by, place FeliCa mark 2 on that of other party's FOMA terminal.

Select Yes and press .

 When receiving phonebook, Store in PushTalk phonebook? appears. To store, select Yes and press . When multiple phone numbers are saved, select the phone number.

Sending and Receiving All Data Items

Use iC transmission function to send/receive all data items on the FOMA terminal.

• The sender and receiver must specify the same authentication password in advance.

Sending All Data Items <Send All>

Operate from the list screen of data to send.

Example: For phonebook

- In phonebook list (127 P. 108), press (a), select Send data, press (a), select *iC transmission* and press (a).
 - Operation can be performed by entering the sub menu numbers. However, numbers differ depending on the type of screen or data to be sent.
- Press 2 [Send all].
- S Enter terminal security code and press •.
- **5** Place FeliCa mark \bigcirc on that of other party's FOMA terminal.
 - When completed, *Exchange completed* appears, and the previous screen reappears.

Receiving All Data Items

- In stand-by, place FeliCa mark 2 on that of other party's FOMA terminal.
 - Select Yes and press .

3 Enter terminal security code and press **•**.

Enter authentication password (four digits) and press •.

Select Yes and press 🔳.

- When completed, *Exchange completed* appears, and the previous screen reappears.
- To cancel receive all data items when receiving, press lime [Cancel].

Voice Recorder

Using the FOMA Terminal as a Voice Recorder

Use the FOMA terminal as a voice recorder. Voice recorder uses the movie shooting function and saves movie data with *Voice only* (= no image) to the *Multimedia* folder on the microSD Memory Card.

microSD Memory Cards are sold separately. Purchase microSD Memory Cards at home electronics shops. (27 P. 316)

- Voice recorder cannot be selected when a microSD Memory Card is not inserted.
- Record up to approximately ten hours when saving to 64 MB microSD Memory Card.
- Save up to 400 recordings. (Actual number varies depending on recording time.)
 Record up to six hours per recording. When recording is attempted after the 400th recording, *Record error* appears and Voice recorder ends. Delete unnecessary data and try again.
- Play back recorded voice or audio with Video player (1277 P. 304).
- Recorded data is saved without file restrictions.
- Recording within a distance of 1.5 meters is recommended.
- Set Retain settings to ON to retain set values.

Recording

- In stand-by, press •932 and [Record].
 - When recording starts, the shutter sounds and the picture light automatically flashes. The picture light automatically turns off when recording ends. (Picture light cannot be turned off during recording.)
 - Press i to pause. Press during recording to resume.

To stop recording, press [Stop].

 Recording stops automatically when the remaining time indicator reads 00:00:00 (recording file size reaches limit or microSD Memory Card has no available space).

Press 1 [Save].

- To play back recorded audio, press 2. To pause playback, press

 [Pause]. To stop playback, press
 Press
 and the previous screen reappears.
- To not save, press ③, select **Yes** and press .

Note

- When a voice/Videophone call is received during recording, recording automatically stops and the call can be answered. After the call ends, the save confirmation screen appears.
- Play back recorded audio with Video player. In i-motion folder list on the microSD Memory Card, select *Multimedia*. (27 P. 306)

Changing Settings for Voice Recorder

The following settings can be made for Voice recorder. Refer to the section on shooting movies for details.

Opening Data box <**Display Data box>** Displays files in the specified save folder.

In stand-by, press •932 and press @1 [Display Data box].

Setting Noise reduction <Noise reduction>

Default setting ON

Sets to reduce noise.

In stand-by, press •932 and press @2 [Noise reduction].

Press 1 [ON].

Setting Auto timer <Auto timer>

Default setting OFF

In stand-by, press ● 9 3 2 and press 圖 3 [Auto timer].

Select a set time.

| To disable | 1 |
|------------------------|---|
| To set to two seconds | 2 |
| To set to five seconds | 3 |
| To set to ten seconds | 4 |

Setting Retain settings <Retain settings>

Default setting ON

Sets to retain Voice recorder settings.

In stand-by, press • 9 3 2 and press 6 4 [Retain settings].

Press 1 [ON].

PDF Viewer

Displaying PDF Files

Display PDF files saved on FOMA terminal handset and microSD Memory Card, or display on an external device (AV output). Download, display and save PDF files from sites and Internet web pages. (IPP P. 199)

- Save files in advance to My document of Data box or *VRIVATEDOCOMODOCUMENTPUDxxx* folder on microSD Memory Card. To save to microSD Memory Card, save the file and update the microSD Memory Card manager information. (27 P. 318, P. 324)
- To view PDF files saved on microSD Memory Card, insert the microSD Memory Card in advance.
 In order to differentiate the file type, an alphanumeric character string called a file extension, such as ".pdf", is added to the end of the file name on a PC. (Depending on the PC settings, file extension may not appear.) Refer to the user's guide for the PC or software being used.

In stand-by, press •935.

• Alternatively, press • 915 in stand-by.

Select a folder and press .

- To view the next page, press . To view the previous page, press .
- To view PDF files saved on microSD Memory Card, select →*microSD* and press ●. Alternatively, press ●6.

PDF icons

- m : Downloaded PDF files of all pages
- : Partially downloaded PDF files of individual pages
- PDF files that failed to download due to interrupted connection, etc.
- 战: PDF files downloaded with i-mode
- ☆ : PDF files retrieved from microSD Memory Cards
- : PDF files with file restrictions
- EPDF files with FOMA card restrictions applied

Select a file and press 🔳.

 PDF files are displayed in accordance with settings such as Magnification.

| Japan U.K. | | | | | | | | | |
|---------------|------|------|------|------|------|------|-------------|-----|-----|
| France | 39 | 40 | 45 | 42 | 43 | 44 | 45 | 46 | - |
| may : | - 29 | 40 | 45 | 42 | 43 | 44 | 45 | 46 | 47 |
| USA | to | 7 | 718 | 1 | 811 | | 911 | 10 | 10% |
| | | | | | 996 | - | 30 1 | 202 | |
| Japan | 22 | 22,0 | 22 | 23.1 | 24 | 24.1 | 25 | 25 | 26 |
| U.K. | 3 | 3.5 | 4 | 411 | 8 | 0.4 | | 6.1 | 7 |
| France | ы | 35 | 66 | 37 | - 08 | - 08 | 29 | 40 | 41 |
| ney | | 354 | 36 | 36.1 | 37 | 37.6 | 38 | 38. | 39 |
| USA | 455 | 6 | 1 yr | | 6-4 | 7 | Tra | 1 | 2.1 |
| _ | | | | 181 | | | | | |

Details screen

| To scroll screen | Up and down | Up: 📩 Down: 😱 |
|--|-------------------|--|
| | Left and right | Left: • Right: • |
| To display entire page | | • [Fit] |
| To display Actual size (when displayed as Fit) | | • [1/1] |
| To display in full-screen | | Press CLR to end full-screen. |
| To view next page | | |
| To view previous page | | |
| To end | | If a still picture is not saved, the save confirmation screen appears. |

Note

- While Function lock is applied to multimedia, terminal security code is required to display files.
- The current file location (FOMA terminal handset or microSD Memory Card) is saved even if PDF Viewer is ended, and is used the next time PDF Viewer is activated.
- Depending on the PDF file, a password may be required. Enter password (up to 32 digits) and press
 .
- Some formats and complex designs not compatible with the PDF Viewer may not appear correctly.
- Some files may not be displayed depending on the software used to create the file.
- Some files may take more time to display or may not be able to display entire contents.
- PDF files with ~, , -, ¢, £, and ¬ included in the file name are not supported.

Operations in full-screen

| To move up/down/left/right | $\overline{\cdot}$ |
|--|--------------------|
| To zoom/shrink | 3 or 1 |
| To rotate 90° left | 2 |
| To save displayed image as a still picture | 8 |
| To view previous page | |
| To view next page | |

Operating the details screen

• Use PDF Viewer details screen in the following ways.

| • Use PDF viewer details screen in the following ways. | | | | | |
|--|---------------------|---------------------------|--|--|--|
| Zoom in | | | Zooms screen in 10% increments, up to 1,000%. | | |
| Zoom ou | ıt | | Shrinks screen in 10% decrements, down to 8%. | | |
| Rotate v | iew | | Rotates screen 90° right or left. | | |
| Set screen | Page layout | Single page | Displays file one page at a time. (Default setting) | | |
| | | Contin- uous | When file contains multiple pages, displays pages vertically in succession. | | |
| | | Contin- uous facing | When file contains multiple pages, displays two pages at a time. | | |
| | View types | Fit page | Displays entire page. (Default setting) | | |
| | | Actual size | Displays PDF file at full size. | | |
| | | Fit width | Sets PDF file to fit display horizontally. | | |
| | Scroll ba | r | Sets whether to display scroll bar. The default setting is ON . | | |
| | Page nu | mbers | Sets whether to display page numbers. The default setting is ON . | | |
| | Magnification | | Sets whether to display magnification. The default setting is ON . | | |
| Move page | Go to fire | st page | When file contains multiple pages, moves to first page. | | |
| page | Go to last | | When file contains multiple pages, moves to last page. | | |
| | Specified | d page | When file contains multiple pages, displays specified page. | | |
| Bookmark/ mark | Display bookmark | Bookmark | Displays up to 50 bookmark titles already saved in PDF file and jumps to selected bookmark. | | |
| | | i-mode bookmark | Displays added bookmarks and jumps to selected bookmark. In addition, deletes bookmark, changes title and displays properties. | | |
| | Add boo | kmark | Adds bookmark. Magnification and rotation settings can be saved. Register up to ten bookmarks. | | |
| | Display r | nark | Displays mark list. Deletes mark. | | |
| | Add mar | k | Adds mark to center of displayed screen. Register up to ten marks. | | |
| Search | | | Searches for a character string (up to 16 single-byte characters), and displays search results highlighted. | | |
| Search o | riteria ink/Open | PDF | Search criteria can be set. Switches between Display | | |
| Viewer | m Open | | link and Open PDF Viewer. When Display link is set, links within the file, Web To, Mail To and Phone To (AV Phone To) are available. | | |
| Cut imag | je | | Part of the screen is cut and image | | |
| | | | is saved in JPEG format. | | |

| - | |
|------------------|--|
| Save | Saves PDF file on FOMA terminal handset or microSD Memory Card. • On microSD Memory Card, PDF files downloaded with all page can be saved without file restrictions. |
| Switch AV output | Displays PDF file on TV screen using FOMA terminal and exclusive cable. Refer to P. 350 for details on AV output. |
| File property | Displays information about PDF file. Displayed information is date/time saved, date/time created, file size, file format, file restriction, file name, source and availability of transfer to microSD/phone. |
| Doc properties | Displays properties of PDF file. Displayed information is title, author, subtitle, keywords, date/time created, date/time updated, application, PDF conversion and file size. |
| Light Up | Displays at maximum brightness. |
| Download remains | Downloads all pages that have not been downloaded of PDF files partially downloaded and PDF files that failed to download. |
| Key list | Opens the operation guide to search for an operation. |

Zoom/Shrink screen <Zoom in/Zoom out>

- 1 In the details screen, press 1.
- 2 Press ∴ to set position to zoom in center of screen b lo [Zoom] or i [Zoom].
 - To zoom/shrink further: Press [[Zoom] or [[Zoom].
 - To end: Press or CLR.

Rotate view <Rotate view>

In the details screen, press 21 [Rotate 90° right].

• To rotate screen 90° left: Press 22.

Set Page layout <Page layout>

In the details screen, press 31 select page layout type 1.

Set display method <View types>

In the details screen, press @32 select view type \bullet .

Display scroll bar, page numbers and magnification

<Scroll bar, Page numbers, Magnification>

- 1 In the details screen, press 3.
- **2** To display scroll bar, press **3**.
 - To display page numbers: Press 4.
 - To display magnification: Press 5.
- **3** Press 1.

Display specified page <Move page>

In the details screen, press (43) enter page number (-).

- To view first page: Press 2 4 1.
- To view last page: Press @ 4 2.

1 In the details screen, press **6**52.

Add Bookmark <Add i-mode bookmark>

- 2 Select OK .
 - To add bookmark after editing title: Select *Edit title* • edit title •.
 - When ten bookmarks are already saved: Select OK > > Yes > > > select bookmark to overwrite > .

Display bookmark list <Display bookmark>

- 1 In the details screen, press \$51.
- To display preset bookmarks, press 1.
 To display i-mode bookmark: Press 2.
- 3 To jump to bookmark, select bookmark) .
 - To edit title of i-mode bookmark: Press (2)
 edit title) •.
 - To display properties of i-mode bookmark: Press ■ 3 ▶ ■ or আ after confirming.

Delete i-mode bookmark <Delete one>

- 1 In the details screen, press
 ⓑ 5 1 2 → select i-mode bookmark → ⓑ 1.
- **2** Press 1.
 - To delete i-mode bookmarks collectively: Press ② ▶ select i-mode bookmarks ■ (repeatable) ▶ 圖.
 - To delete all bookmarks: Press 3 > enter terminal security code > •.
- 3 Select Yes ▶ •.

Add mark <Add mark>

- 1 In the details screen, press 654.
- 2 Select Yes .
 - When ten marks are already saved: Enter
 Yes >
 Yes >
 Select mark to overwrite >
 .

Display mark list <Display mark>

In the details screen, press 6 5 3.

Delete marks <Delete one>

- 1 In the details screen, press ₪ 5 3 select mark ▶ ₪ 1.
- **2** Press 1.
 - To delete marks collectively: Press 2
 select mark

 (repeatable)
 (a)
 - To delete all marks: Press 3 ▶ enter terminal security code ▶ ■.
- 3 Select Yes ▶ •.

Search for character string <Search>

- In the details screen, press <a>[a] 6
 enter character string
 ■.
- 2 To search for next search result, press or @1.
 - To search for previous search result: Press
 ☑ or 젤②.

 - To set search criteria: Press
 [™]

 - To cancel search: Press or rel in search screen.
- **3** To end search mode, press $\mathbf{\overline{s}}$ or \mathbf{CLR} .

Set Search criteria <Search criteria>

- 1 In the details screen, press (7).
- 2 To search for case-sensitive, press 1.
- To search for exact match: Press 2.
- 3 Press 1 [ON]/2 [OFF]

Set to Display link mode <Display link>

In the details screen, press 🖻 8.

• To return to original view: Press 1 or CLR.

Save displayed image as a still picture <Cut image>

Save file <Save>

Display text properties <Document properties>

- In the details screen, press D.5.
- To end viewing: Press •.

Light up <Light Up>

In the details screen, press @ . 6.

Download all PDF files <Download remains>

In the details screen, press @ . 7 ▶ Yes ▶ ■.

Viewing the key list

In the details screen, press 10 - 8.

Display PDF file on TV screen

<Switch AV output>

• Refer to P. 350 for details on Switch AV output.

Note

Rotate 90° left

 Every time operation is repeated, screen is rotated left (rotated right for *Rotate 90° right*) an additional 90°.

Page layout

 When activated from a site or Internet web page, Page layout is set to *Single page* and cannot be switched.

Adding bookmarks and marks

- Added bookmarks appear at the bottom of the bookmarks list and added marks appear at the bottom of the marks list.
- Added bookmarks may be deleted when moving PDF files to a PC using the microSD Memory Card or Ir exchange.

Deleting bookmarks and marks

• For deleting selected, press 🗟 [SelAll]/ 🗟 [CIrAll] to select or clear all.

Search

- Previous character string appears in the character string entry screen.
- When search reaches the last page, a confirmation screen appears prompting whether to continue searching from the first page. Select Yes to search from the first page.

Note

 If New search is performed in step 2 of "Search for character string" on P. 338, search starts from the first page. Previous search result is deleted.

Display link

- Screen cannot be scrolled when in Display link mode.
- Refer to P. 201 for details on Web To, Mail To and Phone To (AV Phone To).

Cut image

- Depending on the security settings, some PDF files may not be cut.
- Cut document image to Stand-by: 240×400 and save on FOMA terminal handset as a still picture (JPEG image).
- Images cut from PDF files with restrictions for output from the FOMA terminal or screen copy are restricted to output from the FOMA terminal. However, they can be transferred to the microSD Memory Card. (Contents transfer compatible)
- Images cannot be cut during AV output.

Document properties

• Items not set in the PDF file cannot be displayed.

Shortcut keys

• Operations frequently used on the details screen are allocated to the keys below for convenient use.

| Key | Operation | Page |
|------------------|-------------------------|--------|
| | Displays previous page | |
| | Displays next page | |
| 1 | Zoom out ^{*1} | |
| 2 | Rotate 90° left | |
| 3 | Zoom in ^{*2} | |
| 4 | Moves to specified page | |
| 5 | Bookmark • mark | |
| 6 | Search | |
| 7 | Display link | P. 337 |
| 8 | Cut image | |
| 9 | Set screen | |
| 0 | Save | |
| | Full-screen | |
| × | AV output | |
| (for 1+ seconds) | Light Up | |
| # | Key list | |

- *1 Each time key is pressed, image shrinks. Keep the key pressed and then release it. The longer the key is pressed, the smaller the image becomes.
- *2 Each time key is pressed, image enlarges. Keep the key pressed and then release it. The longer the key is pressed, the larger the image becomes.

Attaching PDF Files and Sending i-mode Mail

- Sending is available for PDF files up to 2 MB.
- PDF data with restrictions for output from the FOMA terminal are not sent.

In stand-by, press ● 9 3 5, select folder, press ●, select PDF file and press ☑ [Mail].

2

Compose and send i-mode mail.

Refer to steps 2 to 4 on P. 220 for details.

Managing PDF Files

Manage PDF files by dividing into folders, editing titles, deleting and sorting.

 PDF files without restrictions copy to microSD Memory Cards (127 P. 320) and send to other FOMA terminals using Ir exchange function. (127 P. 330)

Managing Folders

Create up to 20 folders and manage files.

Creating folders <New folder>

- In stand-by, press <a>935 and press <a>11 [New folder].
- Enter folder name and press .
 - To delete *New folder* name, press CLR for 1+ seconds.

Note

• Enter up to 18 single-byte (9 double-byte) characters for a folder name.

Editing folder names <Edit folder name>

In stand-by, press ● 9 3 5, select folder and press @ 1 2 [Edit folder name].

2

- Edit folder name and press .
- To erase folder name, press GLR for 1+ seconds in the edit screen.

Note

• Only folder names of created folders can be edited.

Deleting folders <Delete>

- In stand-by, press •935, select folder and press 62 [Delete].
- Select deletion method.

| To delete folder | 1 | enter ter | minal | security |
|------------------|------|-----------|-------|----------|
| individually | code | | Yes | |

| To delete folders collectively | select folder (repeatable) enter terminal security code Yes Press |
|-----------------------------------|---|
| To delete all data (keep folders) | 3 enter terminal security code • Yes • |
| To delete all folders | ④ enter terminal security code ● Yes ● |

Note

- Only created folders can be deleted.
- Saved files are deleted along with folder.

Managing PDF Files

Delete and sort PDF files.

Editing title <Edit title>

- In stand-by, press •935, select folder and press •.
- Select file and press 1 [Edit title].

Edit the title and press 🔳.

• To delete title, press CLR for 1+ seconds in the edit screen.

Note

- Enter up to 50 single-byte (25 double-byte) characters.
- Up to 14 single-byte (7 double-byte) characters of the title are shown on screen. (If a title name exceeds 14 single-byte (7 double-byte) characters, up to 12 single-byte (6 double-byte) characters are shown for the title name.)

Sorting files <Sort>

Default setting Date (new→old)

Change the list order to one of the following.

• Even when PDF Viewer is ended, list order settings remain.

| Date (new→old) | Files are sorted with the latest save date first. |
|---------------------|---|
| Date (old→new) | Files are sorted with the oldest save date first. |
| By title name | Files are sorted by title in the following order: single-byte numbers \rightarrow single-byte lupper case alphabet \rightarrow single-byte lower case alphabet \rightarrow hiragana \rightarrow double-byte katakana \rightarrow kanji \rightarrow Pictograph 1 \rightarrow Pictograph 2 \rightarrow double-byte numbers \rightarrow double-byte upper case alphabet \rightarrow double-byte lower case alphabet \rightarrow single-byte katakana |
| By source* | Files are sorted by acquisition method in the following order: $blank \rightarrow i\text{-mode} \rightarrow data transfer.$ |
| Size (big→small) | Files are sorted with the largest files first. |

| Size | Files are sorted with the smallest files |
|-------------|--|
| (small→big) | first. |

File acquisition source differs by file type.

In stand-by, press • 935, select folder, press and press 6 1 [Sort].

Select sort method and press .

Moving file to another folder <Move>

In stand-by, press • 935, select folder and press .

Select file and press (a) (1) [Move].

Select a transfer method.

| To move file individually | 1 select folder |
|---------------------------------|---|
| To move files collectively | select file (repeatable) select folder Press [SelAll]/[] [CIrAll] to select or disable all. |
| To move all files in folders | enter terminal security code select folder select folder |

Viewing detailed information <File property>

- In stand-by, press 935, select folder and press .
- Select file and press 3 [File property].
 - In the details screen, press 2.
 - To end viewing, press or CLR.

Note

 Displayed information is date/time saved, date/time made, file size, file format, file restriction, file name, source and availability of transfer to microSD/phone.

Deleting data <Delete>

In stand-by, press • 935, select folder, press •, select file and press 2 [Delete].

• To delete files on microSD Memory Card, press 6 in folder list, select folder and press . select file and press 2.

Yes

Select deletion method. (1)

To delete files individually

| collectively | Select file (repeatable) Yes Press i [SelAll]/i [CIrAll] to select or disable all. |
|--------------------------------|--|
| To delete all files in folders | ③ enter terminal security code ● Yes ● |

a start file 🖂 (see sectable)

Document Viewer Displaying Word and Excel Files

Ta dalata fila

Display files saved on microSD Memory Card. such as Microsoft Word, Microsoft Excel and image files, on FOMA terminal or external device.

microSD Memory Cards are sold separately. Purchase microSD Memory Cards at home electronics shops. (12 P. 316)

- Supported file types (file extension^{*}): Microsoft Word (.doc), Microsoft Excel (.xls), Microsoft PowerPoint (.ppt), Plain Text (.txt), JPEG (.jpg, .jpeg), GIF (.gif), PNG (.png), BMP (.bmp)
- Place file to view in \PRIVATE\SHARP\DOCUMENT folder of the microSD Memory Card in advance. (EPP. 318)
- Before using this function, insert microSD Memory Card into FOMA terminal microSD Memory Card slot in advance.
- If PDF files are saved in \PRIVATE\SHARP\ **DOCUMENT** folder in the microSD card using SH506iC, SH900i, or SH901iC, move files to \PRIVATE\DOCOMO\DOCUMENT\PUDxxx folder.
- In order to differentiate the file type, an alphanumeric character string called a file extension, such as ".doc" or ".xls", is added to the end of the file name on a PC. (Depending on the PC settings, file extension may not appear.) Refer to the user's guide for the PC or software being used.



Select a folder and press .

 To view the next page of the image list, press . To view the previous page, press •



Select a file and press .



| To scroll up/down/ left/right | Up: 한 Down: 😱 Left: 🖸 Right: 💽 |
|---|--|
| To show entire page in center of display | |
| To show in full-screen mode | Press i or CLR to end full-screen. |
| To view next page | 💷 [Page] |
| To view previous page | ☑ [Page] |

Note

Operations in full-screen

| To move up/down/left/right | $\overline{\cdot}$ |
|--|--------------------|
| To zoom/shrink | 3 or 1 |
| To rotate 90° left No rotation | 2 |
| To save displayed image as a still picture | 61 |
| To display Submenu | 0 |
| To view previous page | |
| To view next page | B |
| To fit to screen | • |
| To light up | 8 |

 While Function lock is applied to multimedia, terminal security code is required to activate Document Viewer.

When using Document Viewer

- File contents may appear differently from when displayed on a PC depending on the contents.
 - Some files may take longer to be displayed depending on file size. Some files may not be able to display entire contents.
 - Fonts supported by Document Viewer differ from those supported by a PC and may cause file to not be displayed properly.
 - Files with names that exceed 231 characters cannot be displayed.
 - The number of digits that appears in a cell on a Microsoft Excel worksheet may differ from when displayed on a PC. In addition, Japanese era names cannot be displayed.
- Up to 400 files per folder can be viewed in file list.
- Refer to http://k-tai.sharp.co.jp/support/d/sh903i/for details on files that can be displayed using Document Viewer.
- If a Videophone call is made/received or packet transmission is performed while Document Viewer is being activated, Document Viewer is ended.

Operating the details screen

 Use Document Viewer details screen in the following wavs.

| Shrink | | Displays screen at a reduced size. |
|---------------------|------------------------|--|
| Rotate | view | Switches between rotating the view 90° left and no rotation. |
| Zoom | | Displays screen at an enlarged size. |
| Magnifier | | Magnifies the area specified by the cursor and view in the lower part of the display in order to distinguish characters. The lower part of the display changes as the cursor is moved. Magnified area can be enlarged or shrunk. |
| Move | Move w/in screen | Displays upper left, upper right, lower left, lower right or center of page without changing magnification. |
| | Move Spec page | When file contains multiple pages, displays specified page. |
| Cut image | Save image | Cuts document image to the displayed size and saves on microSD Memory Card as a still picture (JPEG). |
| | Compose message | Cuts a still picture and send as an i-mode mail attachment. |
| Switch AV output | | Displays document on TV screen using FOMA terminal and exclusive cable. Refer to P. 350 for details on AV output. |
| Light Up | | Displays at maximum brightness. |
| Key list | | Opens the operation guide to search for an operation. |





Rotate 90° left screen



Magnifier screen

Move Spec page screen



Move w/in screen (when upper left is selected)

Zoom/Shrink <Zoom/Shrink>

- In the details screen, press 23.
- To enlarge further: Press 3.
- To shrink: Press 1.
- To shrink further: Press 101.
- To display entire page: Press •.

Rotate view 90° left <Rotate view>

In the details screen, press 2.

• To return to original view: Press 2.

Enlarge with Magnifier < Magnifier>

In the details screen, press $\ensuremath{\textcircled{}}$ \blacksquare $\ensuremath{\textcircled{}}$ \blacksquare move $\ensuremath{\mathbb{Q}}$ cursor.

- To zoom/shrink specified area: Press (3) or (1).

Display edges or center of page

<Move w/in screen>

In the details screen, press 651 select move direction 1 = .

Display specified page <Move Spec page>

In the details screen, press (52) enter page number (-).

Save displayed image as a still picture <Save image>

In the details screen, press 61.

• To send as an i-mode mail attachment: Press @ 6 2.

Display document on TV screen <Switch AV output>

• Refer to P. 350 for details on Switch AV output.

Light up <Light Up>

In the details screen, press 88.

Viewing the Key List <Key List>

In the details screen, press $\square \square$.

Set display light <Backlight time>

- 1 In file list, press \square 4.
- **2** Press 2 [Always ON].
 - To set same as light setting: Press 1.

Note

Shrink

• Files cannot be shrunk to a size smaller than the size of fitting the screen (*Fit* display).

Save image

- Cut image is not available when there is no available space on microSD Memory Card.
- Images cannot be cut during AV output.

Light Up

• Light Up is not available during AV output.

Backlight time

• The default setting is As light setting. (P. 131)

Shortcut keys

Operations frequently used on the details screen are allocated to the keys below for convenient use.

| Кеу | Operation | Page |
|---------|-----------------------------|--------|
| ••• | Scroll up/down/left/right*1 | P. 342 |
| | Displays previous page | P. 342 |
| | Displays next page | P. 342 |
| • [Fit] | Displays entire page | P. 342 |
| i | Full-screen | P. 342 |
| 1 | Shrink ^{*2} | P. 343 |
| 2 | Rotate 90° left No rotation | P. 343 |
| 3 | Zoom ^{*3} | P. 343 |
| 4 | Magnifier | P. 343 |
| 5 | Move | P. 343 |
| 6 | Cut image | P. 342 |
| 7 | AV output | P. 343 |
| 8 | Light Up | P. 343 |
| 9 | Key list | P. 342 |

*1 Keep key pressed to scroll continuously.

- *2 Each time key is pressed, image shrinks. Keep key pressed to gradually shrink image.
- *3 Each time key is pressed, image enlarges. Keep key pressed to gradually enlarge image.

Managing Documents

Using Document viewer, delete files in the *Document* folder on the microSD Memory Card, view file properties and sort files. Operation is not available for folders other than the *Document* folder. Operate from My picture. (1977 P. 326)

microSD Memory Cards are sold separately. Purchase microSD Memory Cards at home electronics shops. (27 P. 316)

Sorting files <Sort>

Default setting By title name

Change the **Document** folder order to one of the following.

Even when Document Viewer is ended, list order settings remain.

| By title name | Files are sorted by title in the following order: single-byte numbers → single-byte alphabet → hiragana → double-byte katakana → kanji → Pictograph 1 → Pictograph 2 → double-byte numbers → double-byte alphabet → single-byte katakana. Characters are sorted in the Unicode order but upper case/lower case is not distinguished for English characters. |
|---------------------|--|
| Date (new→old) | Files are sorted with the latest save date first. |
| Date (old→new) | Files are sorted with the oldest save date first. |
| Size (big→small) | Files are sorted with the largest files first. |

| | Files are sorted with the smallest files first. |
|--------------|---|
| (Sinal >big) | mot. |

In stand-by, press (•)(9)(3)(4), select folder, press

and press 🕲 🔞 [Sort].



Viewing detailed information <File property>

In stand-by, press • 934, select folder and press .

Select file and press 2 [7] propertv].

To end viewing, press
 or
 clr.

Note

• Date/time saved, file size, file format and file name appear.

Folder name/File name

• Folder names and file names appear blank if folders and files are named using unsupported character codes with a PC or other devices.

Deleting files < Delete>

Delete files in **Document** folder.

In stand-by, press • 934, select folder, press , select file and press [1] [Delete].

Select deletion method.

| To delete file individually | $1 \rightarrow Yes \rightarrow \bullet$ |
|-----------------------------------|--|
| To delete files collectively | ② → select file ■ (repeatable) → lo → Yes → ■ Press i [SelAll]/i [CIrAll] to select or disable all. |
| To delete all files in folders | $ \begin{array}{c} \ensuremath{\underline{3}} \rightarrow \text{enter terminal security} \\ \text{code (four to eight digits)} \rightarrow \\ \hline \bullet \rightarrow \textbf{Yes} \rightarrow \hline \bullet \end{array} $ |

BookReader

Displaying e-Dictionary and e-Book

An e-dictionary/e-book saved on microSD Memory Card can be viewed on the FOMA terminal.

microSD Memory Cards are sold separately. Purchase microSD Memory Cards at home electronics shops. (P. 316)

· e-books/e-dictionaries (file extensions) that can be viewed: XMDF format (.zbf) (Media binding XMDF is not supported), Text format (.zbk, .txt, .text)

- Place file to view in the **BOOK** folder of the microSD Memory Card in advance. (P. 318)
- Supportbook is preset on the FOMA terminal handset.
- To use e-dictionary/e-book, insert microSD Memory Card containing an e-dictionary/e-book into FOMA terminal microSD Memory Card slot in advance. When using Supportbook, microSD Memory Card need not be inserted.
- Depending on the e-book/e-dictionary, voice or images may be included in the data. However, voices cannot be used on the FOMA terminal. In some cases, images may not be shown either.

In stand-by, press • 933, select folder and press .

 In previous viewing, if a was pressed to end, the page displayed at time of termination appears.

Select e-book/e-dictionary and press .

 If e-book/e-dictionary ended by pressing CLR in previous viewing is selected, the page displayed at time of termination appears.



Subm

Details screen (Horizontal)

Details screen (Vertical)

| | Horizontal screen | : |
|------------------------------|-------------------|-------------|
| a line | Vertical screen | • |
| To view next page | | 🖾 [Page] |
| To view previous page | | [Page] |
| To jump to first page | | i or 1042 |
| To return to BookReader list | | CLR or 1044 |

Note

- The details screen uses "蹴りたい背中" (Keritai Senaka) by Risa Wataya provided by ©ザウルスセレ クト文庫 (©Zaurus Select Library)/河出書房新社 (Kawade Shobo Shinsha Publishers).
- When Function lock is applied to multimedia, terminal security code is required to activate Book Reader.

Displaying history

Display previous pages in order.

• When there is no history, operation is not available.

| To display pages viewed in backward order | Horizontal screen | · |
|--|-------------------|---|
| | Vertical screen | |

| To display pages viewed in | Horizontal screen | • |
|----------------------------|-------------------|---|
| forward order | Vertical screen | |

Note

- When is pressed to end BookReader, the page displayed at the time of termination automatically appears the next time BookReader is activated. However, page does not appear when file displayed at time of BookReader termination is not saved on re-inserted microSD Memory Card or when activated from Character reader. Page also does not appear if Supportbook is opened from stand-by.
- Depending on the e-book/e-dictionary, a password may be required. Enter password (up to 16 digits) and press .
- For certain data, information to move to other pages may be contained. Select character string or image with the information and press

 to move to the specified page. To return to the original page, press
 (in Horizontal screen) or
 (in Vertical screen) on the destination page.
- Up to 400 files can be viewed in file list.

Using Multi Assistant

 Press will while composing message to use BookReader.

Related Operations

Switch folders <Switch folder>

In stand-by, press \bigcirc \bigcirc \bigcirc \bigcirc \bigcirc \bigcirc \bigcirc \bigcirc select folder \triangleright \bigcirc .

Note (Related operations)

Switching display folders

- Display folder with e-book of XMDF format that was used on non-FOMA terminals such as mobile information devices.
- Depending on mobile devices used, folders may not be displayed.

Operating the details screen

Use e-book/e-dictionary details screen in the following ways.

| Bookmark | Insert bookmark | Adds a bookmark to the page being viewed. Up to two bookmarks (up to ten books) can be set for one e-book/ e-dictionary. |
|------------------|---------------------|--|
| | Move to bookmark | Displays page bookmarked previously. |
| File property | | Shows properties of e-book/e-dictionary. |
| Current location | | Approximate position of current page, in respect to total pages, is shown (percentage). |

| Move | Table of contents | When table of contents is available for data, displays page from table of contents. |
|---------------------|----------------------|--|
| | To top | Displays first page. |
| | To end | Displays last page. |
| | List | Displays BookReader list. |
| | Set % move | Displays page which is located approximately specified percentage into the document. |
| Copy Text | | Copies character string from e-book/e-dictionary. Can be pasted to other screens. Up to 20 single-byte (20 double-byte) characters can be copied at once. |
| Display settings | Font size | Sets font size of e-book/ e-dictionary to <i>Large font</i> , <i>Default</i> or <i>Small font</i> . (Default setting: <i>Default</i>) |
| | Text direction | Sets the screen to display horizontally or vertically. (Default setting: <i>Vertical</i>) |
| | Ruby text | Sets whether to show ruby text (reading of kanji). (Default setting: OFF) |





Horizontal screen



Ruby text ON

Insert Bookmark <Insert bookmark>

- 1 In the details screen, press 11.
- 2 Press 1.
 - To set Bookmark 2: Press 2.

Move to Bookmark <Move to bookmark>

In the details screen, press (12) select bookmark (12).

Check e-book/e-dictionary details <File property>

- In details screen, press 2.
- To end checking: Press •.

Check current display location <Current location>

- In the details screen, press 3.
- To end checking: Press •.

Display from table of contents

<Table of contents>

In the details screen, press (41) select item (-).

Jump to last page <To end>

In the details screen, press 2 4 3.

Move to a page by specifying percentage <Set % move>

In the details screen, press (1)(4.5) ▶ enter percentage (two digits: 00 to 99 percent) ▶ ■.

Copy characters <Copy text>

In the details screen, press 65 select first character 1 = 1 select last character 1 = 1.

Set font size

In the details screen, press 271 select character size 1.

Switch between vertical and horizontal view <Text direction>

- 1 In the details screen, press 1 2.
- Press 2 [Horizontal].
 To set vertical display: Press 1.

Show ruby text (reading of kanji) <Ruby text>

1 In the details screen, press ₪ 7 3. 2 Press 1.

Note

Bookmarks

- When the 11th bookmark is set, the oldest bookmark is automatically deleted.
- When BookReader ends, the last page displayed is automatically set as *Auto bookmark 1*. The next time the same e-book/e-dictionary is displayed and ended, the last page viewed is set as *Auto bookmark 1* and the previously set *Auto bookmark 1* is reset to *Auto bookmark 2*. (Up to two auto bookmarks can be set for each e-book/ e-dictionary (up to ten total) and are automatically deleted from the oldest.)
- Auto bookmark cannot be set when battery pack is removed.
- When we is pressed in stand-by to activate Supportbook (preset), the first page appears instead of Auto bookmark. When Supportbook is opened from Multi Assistant, Auto bookmark is not used. The top page or page corresponding to the function that Multi Assistant was activated from is shown.

Copying

Scanned text is discarded when the power is turned off.

Note

- Certain characters cannot be copied.
- Masked characters, ruby text, and external characters cannot be copied.

Display settings

- Depending on the data, switching display may not be possible, or the display setting for the e-book/ e-dictionary may be specified.
- Supportbook (preset) cannot be switched between vertical/horizontal display.

Ruby text

 For e-book/e-dictionary with no ruby text settings, readings are not available.

Using Supportbook (Help)

In stand-by, press Mut.

 Activate corresponding functions from Supportbook (preset). (P P. 35)

Searching in dictionary

Operations for dictionary and e-book are the same. Explanations below use the dictionary as an example.

- Text scanned with Character reader can be looked up in the e-dictionary as well. (27 P. 186)
- Insert microSD Memory Card containing an e-dictionary before performing a search.
 Purchase the dictionary separately.
 - In stand-by, press •933, select folder, press •, select dictionary and press •.
 - To read text with Character reader, press 6
 [Character reader]. (P. 347)

Select input field, press , enter word and press .

- Enter up to 255 characters.
- Read characters are entered when a dictionary is started from Character reader.
- Select word and press 🔳.

Using the Information in e-Book and e-Dictionary

Perform various functions from e-book/ e-dictionary, such as moving data to another page, using Phone To (AV Phone To), Mail To, Web To, playing back movies, saving still pictures, and masking character strings (supported pages only).

 Insert microSD Memory Card containing an e-dictionary/e-book before performing operations.

Using Phone To (AV Phone To), Mail To and Web To

Use information (such as phone numbers, mail addresses, and URLs) highlighted in e-book/ e-dictionary, or images embedded with Phone To (AV Phone To), Mail To, Web To functions to easily make calls, send mail, or view sites and Internet web pages. (127 P. 201)

In stand-by, press •933, select folder, press •, select e-book/e-dictionary and press •.

Select phone number, mail address, or URL and press .

• When set in image, press •2 [Move to link].

- Select Yes and press .
 - When Phone To (AV Phone To) is set, check the phone number and press i to make a Videophone call. For voice call, check the phone number and press .
 - When Mail To is set, compose message screen with mail address already entered appears.
 - When Web To is set, connection starts, and site or Internet web page appears.

Note

 In some cases, even if phone numbers, mail addresses, or URLs are displayed, making calls, sending messages, and displaying sites may not be possible.

Jumping to the linked site

When a link for another page is set on a character string or image, that page can be displayed.

In the details screen in step 1 of "Using Phone To (AV Phone To), Mail To and Web To" (☞ P. 347), select a character string or image with link and press ■.

Playing back movies

Movies can be played back when information to execute movie is set in the image.

In the details screen in step 1 of "Using Phone To (AV Phone To), Mail To and Web To" (2 P. 347), select image and press • 4 [Run movie].

Related Operations

Mask character strings and images <Mask>

In the details screen in step 1 of "Using Phone To (AV Phone To), Mail To and Web To", select character string/image ▶ ■.

- To display masked image: Select image . 3.

Saving Images in e-Book/e-Dictionary

Still pictures shown in e-book/e-dictionary can be set as the stand-by display (27 P. 126) when saved in My picture (27 P. 296).

- Some images, such as those in PNG format, cannot be saved.
- Image is saved in the *Camera* folder in My picture.
 (CP P. 297)
- Save up to 1,000 images. Saved amount may vary depending on available memory.
- All images are saved as having copyrights. Images cannot be saved on microSD Memory Cards, nor attached to mail.
 - In the details screen in step 1 of "Using Phone To (AV Phone To), Mail To and Web To" (P. 347), select still picture and press I [Save to My pic].

Character Reader

Scanning Text to Search for Words in an e-Dictionary

While displaying e-dictionary, search for English words scanned with FOMA terminal.

- Insert microSD Memory Card containing an e-dictionary before performing a search.
- Refer to P. 185 for details on Character Reader.

Example: When searching in an English-Japanese dictionary

In the details screen in step 1 of "Searching in dictionary" on P. 346, press 6 [Character reader].



Display text to be scanned in the center of the screen. (@P. 185)

Press .

- Text is shot as a still picture and appears on the display.
- Press : to specify the line to scan. (Text is read one line at a time.)

Ca Ac

Press 🗩 [Scan].

• When scanning is complete, candidates screen appears with scanned text.

| ndidate | 6/250 |
|---------|-------|
| tive | |
| | |
| | |

Select word to search for and press

Managing e-Book and e-Dictionary

Create folders for e-book/e-dictionary files, manage, delete, move and rename e-book/ e-dictionary files, or view their properties.

Managing Folders

Create up to 398 folders and manage files.

Creating folders <New folder>

- In stand-by, press •933 and press 11 1 [New folder].
- Enter folder name and press .
 - To delete New folder name, press CLR for 1+ seconds.

Note

• Enter up to 64 single/double-byte characters.

Editing folder names <Edit folder name>

In stand-by, press • 9 3 3, select folder and press 6 1 2 [Edit folder name].



• To erase folder name, press CLR for 1+ seconds in the edit screen.

Note

- Only folder names of created folders can be edited. Folder name/File name
- Folder names and file names appear blank if folders and files are named using unsupported character codes with a PC or other devices.

Deleting folders <Delete>

In stand-by, press •933, select folder and press @2 [Delete].

Select deletion method.

| To delete folder individually | $ \begin{array}{c} 1 \rightarrow \text{enter terminal security} \\ \text{code} \rightarrow \bullet \rightarrow \textbf{Yes} \rightarrow \bullet \end{array} $ |
|--------------------------------------|---|
| To delete folders collectively | $\begin{array}{c} \textcircled{2} \rightarrow \text{enter terminal security} \\ \text{code} \rightarrow \textcircled{m} \rightarrow \text{select folder} \textcircled{m} \\ \text{(repeatable)} \rightarrow \textcircled{m} \rightarrow \textbf{Yes} \rightarrow \textcircled{m} \\ \hline \text{Press} \textcircled{m} & [\text{SelAII}] \text{ or} \textcircled{m} & [\text{CIrAII}] \\ \text{to select or disable all.} \end{array}$ |
| To delete all folders | $ \begin{array}{c} \textcircled{3} \rightarrow \text{enter terminal security} \\ \text{code} \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow \textbf{Yes} \rightarrow \blacksquare \end{array} $ |

Note

- Only created folders can be deleted.
- All files saved in the folder can be deleted.

Managing e-Book and e-Dictionary

Delete or move an e-book/e-dictionary.

Editing file names <Edit file name> Supportbook (preset) file names cannot be changed.

In stand-by, press •933, select folder and press •.

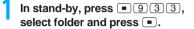
- Select e-book/e-dictionary and press (a) 1 [Edit file name].
- Enter file name and press
 .
 - To erase file name, press CLR for 1+ seconds in the edit screen.

Note

- Enter up to 64 single/double-byte characters for the file name.
- File names up to eight single-byte characters and their extensions may be changed from lower to upper case.

Moving file to another folder <Move>

Supportbook (preset) cannot be moved.



Select e-book/e-dictionary and press (Marcel 4) [Move].

Select a transfer method.

| To move file individually | $1 \rightarrow \text{select folder} \rightarrow \blacksquare$ |
|------------------------------|---|
| To move files collectively | ⊇ → select file ■ (repeatable) → B → select folder → ■ Press ■ [SelAll] or ■ [CIrAll] to select or disable all. |
| To move all files in folders | $ \begin{array}{c} \textcircled{3} \rightarrow \text{enter terminal security} \\ \text{code} \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow \text{select folder} \rightarrow \\ \hline \blacksquare \end{array} $ |

Viewing detailed information

<File property>

The following information is shown.

- In XMDF format (.zbf), for the BookReader list, title, file name, author, publisher and file size appear. For the details screen, series, title, subtitle, file name, author, publishing company, publisher, summary, distribution date/time, file size and distribution date/time stamping information appear. (Information listed does not appear if not saved in e-book/e-dictionary.)
 - In stand-by, press •933, select folder and press •.

Select e-book/e-dictionary, press
and press 2 [File property].

- To view from BookReader list, press 23.
- To end viewing, press •.

Note

File properties for Supportbook (preset) are not available.

File names appear with their extensions.

Deleting an e-book/e-dictionary <Delete>

Supportbook (preset) cannot be deleted.

In stand-by, press •933, select folder and press •.

Select e-book/e-dictionary and press [2] [Delete].

Select deletion method.

| To delete file individually | $1 \rightarrow Yes \rightarrow \blacksquare$ |
|--------------------------------|---|
| To delete files collectively | $\begin{array}{c} \textcircled{2} \rightarrow \text{select e-book/e-dictionary} \\ \hline \bullet \ (\text{repeatable}) \rightarrow \fbox{0} \rightarrow Yes \rightarrow \\ \hline \bullet \ \end{array} \\ \hline \bullet \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \$ |
| To delete all files in folders | ③ → enter terminal security code (four to eight digits) → • → Yes → • |

Print Setting (DPOF) Printing Saved Images

DPOF (Digital Print Order Format) is a format for printing still pictures shot with a digital camera. Designate still pictures on microSD Memory Card and print specified images/quantity at a digital camera print shop which supports DPOF or use a DPOF compatible printer.

- Still pictures downloaded from sites or web pages cannot be printed. JPEG images that can be copied to microSD Memory Card can be printed.
- Refer to printing device user's guide for details on printing.
- Folder for DPOF use

 - DCF compliant folder created by other devices (127 P. 182)
- File for DPOF use
 - Still pictures saved in above folders (DCF compliant JPEG)
- Still pictures on FOMA terminal handset cannot be designated.

Setting Printing Method for Images Saved in the microSD Memory Card <Print Setting (DPOF)>

- Non-DCF compliant still pictures saved on microSD Memory Cards with other devices may not be printed.
- Printing is not available for files which are cut from PDF viewer and have file restrictions.

In stand-by, press •918.

 When DPOF is already set by another device, a confirmation screen appears. To clear, select Yes and press . Current DPOF must be cleared to set a new DPOF. 2

Set the printing details.

| To designate the number of prints | Select folder → ● → select still picture → ● → enter number of prints (1 to 99) → ● Select still picture and enter the quantity to print by pressing ○ to 9. ● Set to continue printing other still pictures. |
|--|---|
| To print same quantity of all still pictures | |
| To print same number of still pictures Over 640×480 | |
| To print same number of still pictures Over 1024×768 | (a) $(1 \rightarrow (3) \rightarrow \text{enter})$ number of prints (1 to 99) → • |
| To cancel all designated print settings | $\textcircled{0} 2 \rightarrow \text{Yes} \rightarrow \blacksquare$ |
| To add date | Ø 3 → 1 Date in properties of still picture can be added. |
| To specify index print | Designate the number of prints $\rightarrow \textcircled{0}{0}(4) \rightarrow \textcircled{1}$ • Index print enables thumbnail-size images to be printed along with the file name on postcard or A4 size paper. |
| To check Designated print status | S When using Specify group, an approximate quantity appears. Press to end checking. |

- Press 🗈 [Complete], select Yes and press 🖜.
 - Select No and press
 to specify again.

Press 💿 [OK].

Related Operations

Sort still pictures <Sort>

In stand-by, press ● 9 1 8 ▶ select folder ▶ ● ▶ @ 2 ▶ select sort method ▶ ●.

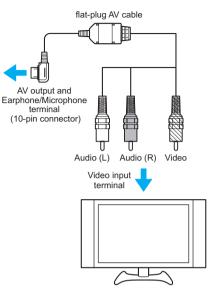
AV Output

Viewing Still Pictures and Movies/i-motion on TV

Show Videophone, My picture, i-motion, PDF Viewer, Document Viewer and i-αppli images on TV screen using flat-plug AV cable (sold separately).

 When an image is output to a TV screen, AV output. Screen display will disappear in 2 min appears on the FOMA terminal display.

Connecting FOMA Terminal to TV



- After connecting flat-plug AV cable and setting Auto output to *ON*, still pictures, movies, PDF files, Document Viewer or i-αppli images automatically appear on TV screen. (For Videophone, images do not automatically appear.)
- Connect to other devices with video input terminals to output video.
- The following files cannot be output: Still pictures, movies and PDF files with file restrictions which are downloaded from sites or Internet web pages with the FOMA terminal, or picture memos shot during a Videophone call and pre-installed data in the Pre-install folder. A message appears on TV screen explaining that data is prohibited from being output.
- Data in the *Movable contents* folder cannot be output.

Note

- Icons at upper part and guidance at lower part of the display do not appear on TV screen for Videophone, My picture, i-motion, PDF Viewer, and Document Viewer.
- Select display size on TV screen from Actual size (WQVGA: 240×400, 400×240) and Zoom ↑ (VGA: 640×480).
- When display size is set to Zoom ↑ (VGA: 640×480), entire image may not be viewed depending on the output device.
- Depending on the connected device, image may be scrambled or blurred.

Note

- For AV output, adjust the volume of the TV or other device connected to the FOMA terminal. Additionally, verify that the volume of the TV is not too loud and turn off the TV or VCR before disconnecting the FOMA terminal.
- During AV output, the volume of the connected TV or other device is fixed, regardless of FOMA terminal volume settings.

About the flat-plug AV cable

- Firmly connect the flat-plug AV cable. Do not pull on the cable, twist terminals or put excessive force.
- When disconnecting the plug, pull out slowly.
- Turn power off the device when connecting to or disconnecting from before pulling the plug.
- Connect the flat-plug AV cable to the video input terminals of the TV or VCR. Connecting cable to the video output or other terminals may cause a malfunction.

Viewing Still Pictures on TV

Viewing images from My picture

- In stand-by, press •911, select folder, press •, select still picture and press •.
- Connect flat-plug AV cable.
- Press Press .
 - Image appears on the TV screen.
 - Show previous/next image with

Related Operations

Set automatic AV output <Auto AV output set>

- In the image list, press D 15 1.
- In still picture screen: Press
 ■ 16

Viewing still picture slideshow

- In stand-by, press •911.
- Connect flat-plug AV cable.
- Select folder, press 6 5 [Auto AV output set] and press 1 [ON].
 - Press 31 [Start slideshow].
 - Slideshow appears on the TV screen.

• FOMA terminal display returns when playback ends.

Viewing Movies/i-motion on TV

Viewing movies/i-motion

In stand-by, press •913, select folder, press •, select movie/i-motion and press •.

Connect flat-plug AV cable.

Press 🖻 6 🖃 1 [AV output].

- Image is output to the TV screen.
- Show previous/next image with
- To change display size, before starting image output, press 6 3, select display size and press .
- During AV output, same functions as in full-screen (1277 P. 304) are available. However, four-way key operations are not switched.
- Press Cure or 🗃 to return to FOMA terminal display.

Related Operations

Set automatic AV output <Auto AV output set>

In the movie/i-motion screen, press 6 - 2

Viewing continuous movies/i-motion

In stand-by, press • 913.

- Connect flat-plug AV cable.
- Select folder, press @35 [Auto AV output set] and press 1 [ON].
 - To change display size, select folder, press

 Image: Select display size and press

Press 1 [Start cont play].

- Continuous play appears on the TV screen.
- FOMA terminal display returns when playback ends.

Viewing PDF and Document Files on TV

In stand-by, press •935, select folder and press •.

For Document Viewer, in stand-by, press
 934, select folder and press

Connect flat-plug AV cable.

Select file, press • and press • and press • 3 1 [AV output].

- For Document Viewer, select file, press , press 17 1 and press .
- Image appears on the TV screen.
- During AV output, same functions as in full-screen are available.
 - Full-screen operations for PDF Viewer (CPP. 337)
 - Full-screen operations for Document Viewer (12) P. 342)
- To change display size, before starting output, press .
 3(3), select display size and press .
- Press I to return to FOMA terminal display.

Note

 If a call is received or alarm activates while in AV output, display returns to FOMA terminal.

Related Operations

Set automatic AV output <Auto output set>

- In the file screen, press 32 1.
- In the file list: Press @ 6 2 ▶ 1.
- In the Document Viewer file list: Press 51
 1.

Note (Related operations)

The default setting is OFF.

Viewing i-αppli on TV

- In stand-by, press 🗟 (P() for 1+ seconds and press 1 [Software list].
- Connect flat-plug AV cable.
- Press 🖲 8 [Auto AV output] and press 1 [ON].
- Select software to run and press
 .
 - Image appears on the TV screen.

Note

• When software is running, the output device cannot be switched.

Note

- When i-αppli is paused because confirmation screen is shown, etc., the screen temporarily switches to the FOMA terminal screen. End confirmation screen and return to i-αppli to switch back to TV screen.
- Auto AV output set applies to all i-αppli. This cannot be set separately for different i-αppli.

Viewing Videophone Images on TV

- Connect flat-plug AV cable during Videophone call.
- Press 8 8 [Start/end AV out].
- Image appears on the TV screen.
- Press 8 8 [Start/end AV out] to return to the FOMA terminal display.

Music Playback

■Music Playback

| Using Music Player | |
|--|------------------------------------|
| Downloading Chaku-uta full [®] | ··· < Chaku-uta full® Download>356 |
| Saving Music Data to microSD Memory Card | |
| Managing Playlist | |
| Using SD-Audio | |

Using Music Player

Play back Chaku-uta full[®] downloaded from sites and WMA (Windows Media Audio) data saved to microSD Memory Card using Music player. Also play back the data saved to the *Multimedia* folder of i-motion.

• The songs that can be played back are as follows.

| Song type | File format | Audio codec |
|------------------------------|-------------|---|
| Chaku-uta full® | MFF | MPEG4-AAC, HE-AAC, Enhanced aacPlus |
| WMA data | WMA | WMA9 |
| Data in <i>Multimedia</i> | MP4 | AMR, MPEG4-AAC, HE-AAC, Enhanced aacPlus |

• The songs and playback time that can be saved are as follows.

| Song type | FOMA terminal handset | microSD Memory Card | Maximum playback time |
|--------------------------------|-----------------------------|-------------------------|-----------------------------|
| Chaku-uta full [®] | Up to 100 | Up to 400 per folder | Approx. 250 minutes |
| WMA data | - | Up to 350 | Approx. 34 hours |
| Data in <i>Multimedia</i> | - | Up to 400 per folder | Approx. 250 minutes |

Capacity varies depending on the size of a song or the capacity of microSD Memory Card.

In stand-by, press • 912.

• The song previously played resumes from a song when stopped. Press I to view the end confirmation screen and select **Yes** and

| JSIC | 912 |
|--------------------|--------|
| Playlist | |
| i-mode | |
| WMA | |
| a type selection : | screen |

press
 to view the data type selection screen.

în în

Dat

Select a data type.

| Chaku-uta full [®] | Select <i>i-mode</i> → ● Data and folders are shown together. To select a song in a folder, select the folder and press ●. To select Chaku-uta full® saved in microSD Memory Card, press ● [→microSD] → <i>Movable contents</i> → ● → select the folder → ●. |
|---|--|
| WMA (Windows Media Audio) data | Select WIMA $\rightarrow \bullet \rightarrow$ select the folder type $\rightarrow \bullet \rightarrow$ select the folder $\rightarrow \bullet \bullet$ • The folder list screen appears with artists' or albums' names when <i>Artist'</i> <i>Album</i> is selected as the folder type. When <i>All</i> songs is selected, the song list screen of all the WMA data appears. |
| Data in <i>Multimedia</i> | Select <i>i-mode</i> $\rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow \boxdot$ [\rightarrow microSD] \rightarrow <i>Multimedia</i> $\rightarrow \boxdot$ |
| Playlist | Select <i>Playlist</i> → ● → select a playlist → ■ To switch between Transfer playlist screens, select → <i>Transfer playlist</i> or → <i>User playlist</i> and press ●. |

• A song list screen appears.

Select a song and press .



Title name Artist's name Cover image (only for Chaku-uta full[®])

-Playback information (track number, volume, playback mode, equalizer, codec, stereo/monaural, surround and manner playback status)

Music player screen

- When Chaku-uta full[®] saved in the middle of download is selected, a confirmation screen asking whether to download the remaining data appears. Select Yes and press (a) to download.
- Up to 63 characters are displayed for the song information of WMA data.

Activating Music player with the FOMA terminal closed

 A confirmation screen appears and playback is not available when Function lock is applied to multimedia, Manner mode is set or battery level indicates 30 minutes or less are left for continuous talk time.

In stand-by, press 🖻 (1) for 1+ seconds with the FOMA terminal closed.

 Playback resumes from a song if the song is previously played. If no song/playlist is previously played, a song on the top of Playback song list or User playlist/Transfer playlist is played. If a song has never been played after turning on the power and no User playlist/Transfer playlist exists, no song is played even if (1) (1) is pressed for 1+ seconds. Refer to P. 357 for details on creating Playlist.

Key operations during playback

| | When FOMA terminal is open | When FOMA terminal is closed or in viewer position |
|---|---|---|
| To pause | [Pause] | d) 🖻 |
| To stop | ☑ [Stop] | - |
| To adjust volume (Volume 0 to 10) | (softer) or (louder) Keep key pressed to adjust volume continuously. | ▼ (Eco) (softer) or ▲ (∅) (louder) |
| To play previous song/To return to beginning of song | If playback time is less than two seconds, the previous song is played. If playback time is two seconds or more, the song returns to the beginning. Keep key pressed for fast reverse. | (Z) (for 1+ seconds) If playback time is less than two seconds, the previous song is played. If playback time is two seconds or more, the song returns to the beginning. |
| To play next song | Keep key pressed for fast forward. | (Eco) (for 1+ seconds) |
| To view an image of Chaku-uta full [®] | Not displayed without images. | - |
| To view lyrics of Chaku-uta full [®] | Not displayed without lyrics. | - |

| | When FOMA terminal is open | When FOMA terminal is closed or in viewer position |
|--------------------------------------|---|--|
| To turn operation panel ON/OFF | | - |
| To end Music player | $\text{\tiny (IIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIII$ | $\label{eq:constraint} \begin{array}{ c c c c c } \hline B & (\fbox{0}) & (for 1+seconds) \\ \hline B & (\fbox{0}) & (for 1+seconds) \\ (for 1+seconds) \\ (for 1+seconds) \\ econds \\ \hline B & (\fbox{0}) & (for 1+seconds) \\ econds \\ \hline B & (\r{0}) \\ (for 1+seconds) \\ \\ (fo$ |
| To display Submenu | 0 | - |

- When the operation panel is displayed, select an action with and press or press Dial key (1 to (9)). The operation panel layout corresponds to the dial key layout. When in viewer position, press (2)/ (co) to select an action and press (6).
- When the operation panel is not displayed, press a dial key (1 to 9) to jump to a location assigned to the key and resume playback. Press 1 during playback to return to the beginning of song. Press 2 to 8 to jump to locations divided by one-eighth increments of the recording time. Press 9 to jump to the end of song. However, it may not be possible to jump depending on songs.
- When Manner playback is set to ON, the volume over 6 is changed into 5. (Change the volume from Volume 0 to 5.)

When connecting a flat-plug earphone set (sold separately)

 The following operation is available with a flat-plug stereo earphone set (sold separately) or a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (sold separately).

| Press a switch. |
|---|
| Alternates each time the switch is pressed. |

Note

- When battery level indicates 30 minutes or less are left for continuous talk time, a confirmation screen appears to select whether to play or not when playback resumes or during playback. Select Yes to play.
- A confirmation screen may appear depending on the use even when the battery level indicates .
- When a call is received during playback, the playback is stopped, the incoming call screen appears, and the call can be answered. When Music player screen appears after the call is ended, playback resumes from the spot where the playback stopped when the call was received.

Related Operations

View the list of songs for playback <Playback song list>

In the Music player screen, press 🖾 or 🖻 1.

Set Repeat/Shuffle playback <Set playback mode>

- 1 In the Music player screen, press @21.
- 2 Press 3 to repeat all songs.
 - To set to Normal playback: Press 1.
 - To repeat one song: Press 2.
 - To set to Shuffle: Press 4.
 - To set to Repeat shuffle: Press 5.

Related Operations

Set Equalizer <Equalizer>

- Press 2 2 while music is stopped.
- 2 To set to Normal playback, press 1.
 - To play back with equalizer set to Rock: Press 2.
 - To play back with equalizer set to Pops: Press 3.
 - To play back with equalizer set to Classic: Press 4.

Set Surround <Surround>

Press (23) 1 while music is stopped.

Set to Manner playback mode <Manner playback>

In the Music player screen, press (24)

Note (Related operations)

Playback song list

• If Playback song list is displayed during music playback, *Data unacquisition* may appear on the list.

Setting Chaku-uta full[®] as the Ring Tone <Ring Tone>

In the song list screen of Chaku-uta full[®], select Chaku-uta full[®] and press 🛍 ④ [Ring tone].

Select a ring tone item.

| Voice call | 1 | Message R | 5 |
|------------|---|-----------|---|
| Videophone | 2 | Message F | 6 |
| User unset | 3 | SMS | 7 |
| Mail | 4 | PushTalk | 8 |

Select the setting range.

| To set a full song | [Full song ring tone] When Chaku-uta full[®] saved in the Movable contents folder in the microSD Memory Card is selected, the confirmation screen for transferring to the FOMA terminal handset appears. Press • to set Chaku-uta full[®] as the ring tone. |
|-----------------------|--|
| To set part of song | ② [Point ring tone] → select range → i→ Yes → • For Point ring tone, the selected range is saved as i-motion and set as the ring tone. The selectable range is pre-determined. |

 Some Chaku-uta full[®] can be set to only *Full* song ring tone or *Point ring tone*. In addition, some cannot be set to *Ring tone*.

Editing Chaku-uta full[®] Information <Edit Info>

Edit the Chaku-uta full[®] information which includes Title, Artist's name, Album's name, Genre, Year, Comment, Track number and Total.

In the song list screen of Chaku-uta full[®], select Chaku-uta full[®] and press I (7) [Edit info].

Select the item to be edited, press , edit and press .

• To undo, select *Back to original*, press •, select *Yes* and press •.

Chaku-uta full[®] Download Downloading Chaku-uta full[®]

Save Chaku-uta full[®] downloaded from sites and Internet web pages.

- Download up to 5 MB Chaku-uta full[®].
- When a song with copyright is downloaded, it cannot be played back using a different FOMA card.

While viewing sites (12777 steps 1 to 3 on P. 188) or Internet web pages (12777 steps 1 and 2 on P. 194), select Chaku-uta full[®] and press .

Save.

| To save Chaku-uta full [®] | ② → select folder → Im To save to microSD Memory Card, select → <i>microSD</i> → Im → <i>Movable contents</i> → Im |
|---|--|
| To play Chaku-uta full [®] | To return to the previous screen, press @r. |
| To view detailed information | To return to the previous screen, press or cur. |
| To not save | $4 \rightarrow No \rightarrow \blacksquare$ |

- Do not remove microSD Memory Card while reading/writing/aborting data. Sending and receiving data may not be possible, or data may be lost.

Saving Music Data to microSD Memory Card

microSD Memory Cards are sold separately. Purchase microSD Memory Cards at home electronics shops. (127 P. 316) Songs saved on the microSD Memory Card can be used for personal use only. Refrain from infringing upon intellectual property rights of a third party's copyrighted material. Do not copy or transfer songs saved on the microSD Memory Card to PC or any other medium.

 Refer to "Transferring Data in FOMA Terminal to microSD Memory Card" on P. 319 or "Downloading Chaku-uta full[®]" on P. 356 for saving Chaku-uta full[®] to the *Movable contents* folder in the microSD Memory Card.

Saving WMA Files to microSD Memory Card

Connect the FOMA terminal to a PC with the FOMA USB cable and save WMA files to microSD Memory Card using Windows Media Player 10.

- Save up to 350 WMA files.
- Playing back copyrighted songs is only possible with the FOMA terminal used for transfer from a PC.

Windows Media Player 10

- Use Windows XP Service Pack 2 when using Windows Media Player 10. For operation methods, refer to Windows Media Player 10 help.
- Reconnect the FOMA USB cable to the PC when the PC is restored from stand-by or sleep mode.

Save WMA files to a PC using Windows Media Player 10.

- 2 Insert microSD Memory Card in the FOMA terminal and set FOMA terminal to *MTP mode* (27 P. 324).
- Connect the FOMA terminal to a PC with the FOMA USB cable.
- 4 Activate Windows Media Player 10, select the song to be saved and transfer it to microSD Memory Card.
- Disconnect FOMA USB cable from the FOMA terminal when transfer is completed.
 - To disconnect the FOMA USB cable, follow the safe disconnecting method of each OS.

Press any key, select Yes and press
.

• Switch to Communication mode automatically.

Napster appli

Save music data using Napster appli.

- Download Napster appli in the following web page. http://www.napster.jp
- Refer to the following web page for further information on Napster appli. http://www.napster.jp/support/

Playing i-motion (Including Audio Data) Created with PC on the FOMA Terminal

Use a PC to save songs from a purchased CD to the microSD Memory Card and play on the FOMA terminal. Saving and playing back music in the *Multimedia* folder in i-motion of Data box are explained below.

Convert songs taken from CDs to MP4 format using commercially available software, and save them on a PC.

• For details on how to use the software, see the maker's website, etc.

Insert microSD Memory Card in the FOMA terminal and set FOMA terminal to microSD mode (2 P. 324).

Connect the FOMA terminal to PC with the FOMA USB cable.

Copy a song.

- Copy procedure is as follows.
 - 1. Rename the file created in step 1 to "MMFxxxx.3gp"/"MMFxxxx.mp4".
 - To rename files, first set the PC to show extensions.
 - Enter the renamed file name within the range between "MMF0001" and "MMF9999" in single-byte excluding the file extension.
 - 2. Copy to the VPRIVATE DOCOMOVMMFILE folder in the microSD Memory Card.
 - If there is no *MMFILE* folder in the microSD Memory Card, insert the microSD Memory Card into the FOMA terminal so it is recognized, and re-insert into the PC.
 - For details on folder structure in the microSD Memory Card, refer to P. 318.

Disconnect FOMA USB cable from the FOMA terminal after copying the song.

- To disconnect the FOMA USB cable, follow the safe disconnecting method of each OS.
- Press a key, select Yes and press 🔳.
 - Switch to Communication mode automatically.

Update microSD Memory Card manager Information.

• Refer to P. 324 for details.

To play i-motion with Video player

- In stand-by, press **913**, press **7**, select a song from the *Multimedia* folder and play i-motion (including audio data).
- Refer to P. 212 for details on i-motion playback, P. 305 for Repeat playback, and P. 307 for Continuous play.
- Refer to P. 354 for methods of playing back with Music player.
- Up to 400 files in the *Multimedia* folder are shown. Data may not appear if data in the folder exceeds 400 items or there are data that cannot be played back.

Note

- Playback is stopped if call is received or alarm activates.
- Audio files may not play properly depending on the software.

Managing Playlist

User playlist created by FOMA terminal and Transfer playlist created with a PC are available for playback on the FOMA terminal.

- User playlist: Create up to ten playlists. Register up to 99 songs per playlist.
- Transfer playlist: View up to 100 playlists. View up to 99 songs per playlist. Playlists cannot be created/ deleted/moved/edited on the FOMA terminal. Refer to "Saving WMA Files to microSD Memory Card" on P. 356 for transfer methods of Transfer playlist.

Creating Playlist

```
In the list screen of Chaku-uta full<sup>®</sup>/
WMA data/data in Multimedia, select a
song and press @2 [Add to playlist].
```

Select a saving method.

| To save one | 1 |
|--|--|
| To save multiple ones collectively | ⊇ → select a song ■ (repeatable) → ඕ [Confrm] Press Ĩ [SelAII]/Ĩ [CIrAII] to select/disable all. |
| To save all | $3 \rightarrow \text{Yes} \rightarrow \blacksquare$ |

Save.

| To create a new playlist and save | ■ [New] → enter a playlist name → ■ ● Enter up to 50 characters for a playlist name. |
|--|--|
| To add songs to a playlist | Select a playlist \rightarrow \bigcirc [Add] |
| To overwrite songs saved in a playlist | Select a playlist $\rightarrow \boxdot$ [Ovrwrite] \rightarrow Yes \rightarrow • |

Play a playlist

In stand-by, press •912, select *Playlist* and press •.

To view Transfer playlist, select → *Transfer* playlist and press ■.

Select a playlist and press 🖾 [Play].

 To select and play back a song in a playlist, press

 select a song and press
 .

Related Operations

Create a new playlist <New playlist>

- 1 In the User playlist screen, press i or 1.
- 2 Enter the playlist name **b** •.

Copy a playlist <Copy>

In the User playlist screen, select a playlist ▶ (a) ♦ enter a playlist name ▶ •.

Related Operations

Edit a playlist name <Edit playlist name>

In the User playlist screen, select a playlist (a) 1 (2) enter a playlist name (a) (a).

Add songs to a playlist <Add song>

- 1 In the User playlist screen, select a playlist ▶ ■ ▶ ■ or ◎ 1.
- 2 To select Chaku-uta full[®], press 1) select a folder) ■.
 - To add WMA files: press 2 > All songs >
 or 2 > Artist/Album > transferred artist name/ transferred album name >
- 3 Select a song ▶ II.

Move playlist order upward <Move playlist ()>

In the User playlist screen, select a playlist \blacktriangleright \boxdot or B3.

Delete playlists <Delete>

- In the User playlist screen, select a playlist
 ▶ (a) 2.
- 2 To delete one playlist, press 1.
 - To delete multiple playlists collectively: Press
 > select a playlist

 (repeatable)
 (m)
 enter terminal security code
 .
 - To delete all playlists: Press 3 enter terminal security code •
- 3 Select Yes ▶ .

Delete songs saved in a playlist <Delete>

- In the User playlist screen, select a playlist
 ▶ select a song ▶ @ 2.
- 2 To delete one song, press 1.
 - To delete multiple songs collectively: Press 2
 ▶ select a song

 (repeatable)
 ●
 - To delete all songs: Press 3.
- 3 Select Yes ▶ ■.

Shuffle songs saved in a playlist <Shuffle>

- In the User playlist screen, select a playlist
 ▶ ● ③ 3.
- 2 Select a song to be moved select a destination (repeatable) ▶ .

Update a playlist <Update playlist>

In the User playlist screen, select a playlist ● ▶ 圖 ● Yes ▶ ●.

Note (Related operations)

Deleting songs saved in a playlist

• The original songs are not deleted even if a song is deleted from a playlist.

Updating a playlist

- In the following cases, songs are deleted from a playlist when the playlist is updated.
 - When an original data is deleted/transferred
 - When microSD Memory Card is not inserted although a song in microSD Memory Card was added to a playlist
- A song which has reached the limitations of number of replays, expiration date or replay period is not deleted even if a playlist is updated.

SD-Audio

Using SD-Audio

Use SD-Jukebox or PC to save songs from a purchased CD to the microSD Memory Card and play on the FOMA terminal.

microSD Memory Cards are sold separately. Purchase a microSD Memory Card at home electronics shops. (27 P. 316)

• The music data that can be played back using SD-Audio are as follows.

| Туре | Software | Format |
|---------------|------------|-------------------------|
| SD-Audio data | SD-Jukebox | SD-Audio compatible AAC |

- Songs saved on the microSD Memory Card can be used for personal use only.
- Refrain from infringing upon intellectual property rights of a third party's copyrighted material.
- Do not copy or transfer songs saved on the microSD Memory Card to a PC or any other medium.

SD-Jukebox

SD-Jukebox can be purchased in the following web page.

http://www.sense.panasonic.co.jp/ PanaSense/special/soft/sd_jukebox/

SD-Jukebox compatible OS are Windows 2000 and Windows XP. Refer to the following web page for details on the system requirements. http://panasonic.jp/support/software/sdjb/

Saving Music Data to microSD Memory Card

Connect the FOMA terminal and PC using FOMA USB cable (sold separately) and save music data to microSD Memory Card.

• SD Memory Card readers/writers can also be used. However, the reader/writer must support copyright protection function.

Install SD-Jukebox on the PC.

- Insert microSD Memory Card in the FOMA terminal and set FOMA terminal to microSD mode (2 P. 324).
- Connect the FOMA terminal to PC with the FOMA USB cable.
- Start SD-Jukebox and insert audio CD in the PC.
- **5** Select songs to save and copy to microSD Memory Card.
 - Refer to SD-Jukebox help for operation methods.

Disconnect FOMA USB cable from the FOMA terminal after copying the song.

• To disconnect the FOMA USB cable, follow the safe disconnecting method of each OS.

Press any key, select Yes and press •.

• Switch to Communication mode automatically.

Playing Back Songs with SD-Audio

Play back the music data saved in the **SD-AUDIO** folder of the microSD Memory Card in AAC format.

In stand-by, press • 931.

Press 💿 [Play].

- Music is played.
- The song previously played resumes.

Key operations during playback

| | When FOMA terminal is open | When FOMA terminal is closed or in viewer position |
|---|---|---|
| To pause | [Pause] | d) 🖻 |
| To adjust volume (Volume 0 to 10) | (softer) or (louder) Keep key pressed to adjust volume continuously. | ♥ (Eco) (softer) or ▲ (∅) (louder) |
| To play previous song/To return to beginning of song | If playback time is less than two seconds, the previous song is played. If playback time is two seconds or more, the song returns to the beginning. Keep key pressed for fast reverse. | (Ø) (for 1+ seconds) If playback time is less than two seconds, the previous song is played. If playback time is two seconds or more, the song returns to the beginning. |
| To play next song | Keep key pressed for fast forward. | (Eco) (for 1+ seconds) |
| To turn operation panel ON/OFF | | - |
| To end SD-Audio | end or $\textcircled{\baselinetwidth}{\baselinetwidth} \to Yes \to$ | $\label{eq:constraint} \begin{array}{ c c c c } \hline \blacksquare & (\textcircled{b}) & (for 1+\\ seconds) & \hline \blacksquare & (\textcircled{b}) & (for 1+\\ seconds) & \rightarrow & \hline \blacksquare & (\textcircled{b}) & (for 1+seconds) & or & \hline \hline & (\textcircled{b}) & for 1+seconds & \rightarrow & \\ \hline & Yes & \rightarrow & \hline \blacksquare & (\textcircled{b}) & when in \\ viewer position & & \hline \end{array}$ |
| To display Submenu | 0 | - |

- When the operation panel is not displayed, press a dial key (1 to 9) to jump to a location assigned to the key and resume playback. Press 1 during playback to return to the beginning of song. Press 2 to 8 to jump to locations divided by one-eighth increments of the recording time. Press 9 to jump to the end of song. However, it may not be possible to jump depending on songs.
- When Manner playback is set to *ON*, the volume over 6 is changed into 5. (Change the volume from Volume 0 to 5.)

Note

- When battery level indicates 30 minutes or less are left for continuous talk time, a confirmation screen appears to select whether to play or not when playback resumes or during playback. Select Yes to play.
- Playback may stop if a call is received, alarm activates or other function is operated during playback.
- Using other functions during playback may cause music to skip.
- During SD-Audio playback, the history information of the last song played (track number and playback time) is retained in the microSD Memory Card. Playback resumes from the ending point the next time the song is played. However, when SD-Audio is ended after a playlist is switched, the next playback starts with the first song of the switched playlist. If songs on the microSD Memory Card are deleted or added with the FOMA terminal or PC, the history information is cleared and may be used for different files.
- When the battery pack or the microSD Memory Card is removed during playback, the history information of the last played back song is not retained. If a song is deleted or sorted, the history information is cleared.
- Since a song is composed of two-second units, if the playback is stopped, the stopped position and the resumed position may not be the same.
- When Function lock is applied to multimedia, enter terminal security code to activate SD-Audio.
- During SD-Audio playback, the microSD Memory Card cannot be used with other functions.
- While microSD Memory Card is in use with other functions, SD-Audio cannot be started up.

Related Operations

Set Repeat/Shuffle playback

<Set playback mode>

- 1 While music is paused/playing, press
- **2** Press ③ to repeat all songs.
 - To set to normal playback: Press 1.
 - To repeat one song: Press 2.
 - To set to Shuffle: Press 4.
 - To set to Repeat shuffle: Press 5.

Related Operations

Set Manner playback <Manner playback>

While music is paused/playing, press @23 ▶ 1.

Set Equalizer <Equalizer>

- 1 While music is paused, press 22.
- 2 Press 1 for normal playback.
 - To play back with equalizer set to Rock: Press 2.
 - To play back with equalizer set to Pops: Press 3.
 - To play back with equalizer set to Classic: Press ④.

Set Playback screen <Playback screen>

- 1 While music is paused, press **3**.
- 2 To set to Pattern1, press 1.
 - To set to Pattern2: Press 2.
 - To set to Pattern3: Press 3.
 - To set an image: Press 4 > select folder >
 select image >

Edit title or artist name <Edit track info>

- 1 While music is paused, press (a) 4.
 - Edit in the playlist: Select Song list in the playlist) • > select a song) @2.
- To edit title, press 1 edit title .
 To edit artist name: Press 2 edit artist name
 .

Note (Related operations)

Edit info

- When songs are saved from audio CDs to microSD Memory Card, title (double-byte), title (single-byte), artist (double-byte), artist (single-byte), album (double-byte), album (single-byte) and genre are set.
- Edit title (double-byte) and artist (double-byte). Character limit for title/artist is 125 characters in total. Title (single-byte), artist's name (single-byte), album (double-byte), album (single-byte) and genre cannot be viewed on the FOMA terminal.
- If data is included in the items that cannot be viewed on the FOMA terminal, the number of characters that can be edited is decreased.

Using Playlist <Playlist>

Use a saved playlist to play back.

- Display Song list and user playlists made with SD-Jukebox.
- Save up to 99 songs in one user playlist.

While music is paused, press lo 1 [Current playlist].

 Proceed to step 4 to select a song from current playlist. Also, available to select it while playing music.

Press 🖻 🔟 [Playlist].

• Alternatively, press 🔳 to view a playlist.

Select a playlist and press 🔳.

• Select a playlist and press it to see properties of a playlist.

Select song to play and press
[Play].

Related Operations

Delete music data <Delete track>

- 1 Select Song list in the playlist ▶ ▶ select a song ▶ @3.
- 2 To delete one song, press 1.
 - To delete songs collectively: Press 2 > enter terminal security code > > select song = (repeatable) > =.
 - To delete all songs: Press 3 > enter terminal security code > .

3 Select Yes I.

Shuffle songs in the playlist <Shuffle>

Select Song list in the playlist $\blacktriangleright \bullet \flat \boxtimes 4 \flat$ select song to move \bullet select destination \bullet (repeatable) $\flat \exists$.

View detailed information <File property>

- In the playlist, select a song) 6.
- To end checking: Press or CLR.

Note (Related operations)

Deleting track/Sorting

• Deleting and Sorting are not available while showing user playlists.

Searching tracks in a playlist <Search track>

While music is paused, press 65 [Search track] in the playlist screen and select a search method.

| Search by title | $\textcircled{1} \rightarrow \text{enter title} \rightarrow \textcircled{\bullet}$ |
|-------------------------------|--|
| Search by artist | $\fbox{2} \rightarrow \text{enter artist's name} \rightarrow \fbox{\bullet}$ |
| Select from search history | 3 → select search history → The latest five search results are displayed. |

- To delete a track from the search results list: Press (1) -> select deleting method.
 (Deleting a track from the search results list does not mean deleting the source track data.)
- To start over: Press 2.
- To return to the playlist screen: Press 2 4 or CLR.
- The search history is cleared when SD-Audio is ended.
- Select a track to play and press [Play].
 - When 1 [Show srch results] is pressed during playback, the screen returns to the search results list.

Other Useful Functions

| Checking Settings< Check Se | ttings>362 |
|---|------------|
| Multiaccess <multiaccess< td=""><td>ccess>362</td></multiaccess<> | ccess>362 |
| • Using Multi Assistant (Multitask) | itask)>362 |
| Retrieving the Recently Used Function or File | larker>363 |
| Turning Power On Automatically <auto power<="" td=""><td>er ON>365</td></auto> | er ON>365 |
| Turning Power Off Automatically <auto power<="" td=""><td>OFF>366</td></auto> | OFF>366 |
| Sounding Alarm After Set Time Passes | Timer>366 |
| • Sounding Alarm at Set Time | Alarm>367 |
| Managing Schedules <sch< td=""><td>edule>369</td></sch<> | edule>369 |
| • Saving ToDo Lists | o List>375 |
| Accessing Functions Quickly | Menu>377 |
| Saving Own Name and Image | nation>379 |
| Recording Other's Voice During Call or Own Voice When in Stand-by | |
| | • · |
| Using as Calculator | ulator>380 |
| Displaying the Call Duration/Charge | /Cost>381 |
| Entering Memos | /lemo>382 |
| Using Earphone/Microphone with Switch Earphone/Microphone with S | witch>383 |
| Answering Calls Automatically with Earphone | nswer>385 |
| Resetting Settings <reset se<="" td=""><td>ttings>385</td></reset> | ttings>385 |
| • Deleting All Saved Data | Data>385 |

Check Settings Checking Settings

Check settings for various functions.

In stand-by, press **3**14, enter terminal security code and press **.**

Select function to check.

- Settings appear. Press
 to turn the page.
- Press and the previous screen reappears.

| Sound | 1/19 |
|-----------------|----------|
| phone ring | vol |
| Phone ring tone | |
| | Volume 5 |
| V.phone ring to | ne |
| | Volume 5 |
| Payphone ring t | one |
| | Volume 5 |
| User unset | |
| | Volume 5 |
| | |

When **Sound** is selected

| Sound | 1 | i-mode | 6 |
|----------------|---|--------------|----------|
| Display | 2 | Full Browser | 7 |
| General | 3 | Mail/Message | 8 |
| settings | | i-appli | 9 |
| Phone settings | 4 | GPS menu | 1 |
| Security | 5 | ToruCa | -2 |

Multiaccess Multiaccess

Use voice communications and some packet transmissions (receiving i-mode mail or data communications with a PC) simultaneously with the FOMA terminal. This is called Multiaccess.

- Receiving SMS during communication (such as voice call) is available besides Multiaccess.
- Packet transmissions other than the above (i-mode and sending i-mode mail) are available during voice calls.
- i-mode mail cannot be received during Videophone call. i-mode mail is held at the i-mode center.

Multiaccess Compatibility

Refer to "Multiaccess Combinations" on P. 434 for the main combinations of transmission functions available for simultaneous use on the FOMA terminal.

Receiving i-mode Mail or SMS During Calls

Receive i-mode mail or SMS during a voice call.

- □, i or m appears on the display.
- Alternatively, continue the call and read i-mode mail or SMS afterwards.

During a call, press to read i-mode mail or SMS.

 Refer to P. 362 for instructions on Multi Assistant.

screen reappears.

Press min and voice call



Select *Mail*, press •, select *Inbox* and press •.

Select folder, press
, select mail and press .

Press win, select Voice call, press and voice call screen reappears.

Making a Call During i-mode

Make a voice call with Phone To (AV Phone To) while in i-mode.

• i-mode is disconnected when dialing Videophone or PushTalk.

Select phone number from sites or Internet web pages and press •.

- 2 Select Yes, press and press or ■ [Call].
 - Number is dialed while connected to i-mode.
- 🕇 Press 🕿 after call.
 - The site or Internet web page reappears.

Multi Assistant (Multitask)

Using Multi Assistant (Multitask)

Multi Assistant (Multitask) is a function that allows multiple functions to be used simultaneously, such as composing of a message during a voice call.

- Four or more functions may be used simultaneously when voice call or data transmission is received.
- An icon for the activated function (Multitask display) appears in the upper part of the display. (PP P. 29)

Retrieving a New Function

Start a different function while using a function such as voice call.

 Other functions are not available with Multi Assistant when in stand-by, during Videophone call or PushTalk transmission, camera or voice recorder is activated, mail is being sent or received, Ir transmission is in progress, alarm or timer is being set, microSD manager, other setting screen, Top menu, Zoom menu or Shortcut menu is open.

Press wird during a voice call or while using a function.

- When application icon selection screen does not appear, press i [Switch] multiple times.
- Alternatively, press it to switch or select the function to use when the application list selection screen appears.
- When Multi Assistant is not available, Multi Assistant screen does not appear even when mill is pressed.



Application icon selection screen



Application list selection screen

Select the icon for the function to use and press •.

- Unavailable functions cannot be used.
- Select an item and press • when the function list appears. Refer to the

| | | TOOL |
|---------------|--------|------|
| | Other | |
| ale Docomo | Haruko | E. |
| Docomo | Taro | 1 |
| DOOKeitai | Hanako | 8 |
| | | |

When Phonebook is selected

corresponding page for details on each function.

- To make a voice call, press in Multi Assistant screen, enter the phone number and press i.
- To switch the function icon position on the application icon selection screen, select a function icon, press , select destination position and press ●. Press [Reset] to undo.

Switching Screens

Switch between screens when multiple functions are being used with Multi Assistant.

Press will while multiple functions are in use.

First function



Second function

Application icon switching screen Icons for functions in use appear in the Application icon switching screen. (When four or more functions are in use, the application list switching screen appears.)

 When four or more functions are operating, select the function with and press .

Ending the Function

Ending the shown function

Press (a) while multiple functions are in use.

• The shown function ends and another function in use appears.

Ending the selected function

Press will while multiple functions are in use.

Select the function with $\overline{\hdots}$ and press 🕲 [End].

- When four or more functions are operating, select the function with and press .
- To end all functions, press ☐ [End all], select Yes and press ■. Select No and press ■ to return to the functions operating in step 1.

Active Marker

Retrieving the Recently Used Function or File

Easily retrieve functions, pages and images that were recently used from stand-by. The current day's schedule and ToDo list details are also available.

| Icon | Function | Explanation |
|------|----------------------------|--|
| 003 | i-mode history | The URL and title for five i-mode sites most recently accessed from the i-mode menu are recorded. Select from the history list to access the same sites quickly. (Each site is recorded as one history item.) |
| 0 | Full Browser history | The URL and title for five sites most recently accessed from the Internet (Full Browser) are recorded. Select from the history list to access the same sites quickly. (Each site is recorded as one history item.) |
| C | MUSIC history | A song most recently played with SD-Audio and Music player is recorded. Select <i>Playback</i> <i>SD-audio</i> or <i>Playback MUSIC</i> to play back easily. (Voice only i-motion (melodies with no video) is not recorded.) |

| ſ | lcon | Function | Explanation |
|---|------|-----------------------|--|
| | | Show schedule | Up to five of the earliest schedule entries for the current day and ToDo list tasks that begin/end on the current day appear. Select from the list to view the details screen. |
| | | Mail history | The five messages most recently viewed are recorded. Select from the history to view message screen. |
| | | My Picture history | The five images most recently viewed with Image Viewer are recorded. Select from the history list to view. (Flash movies and animated GIFs are not recorded.) |
| | Ш | i-motion history | The five i-motion most recently played with Video player are recorded. Select from the history list to play back. |
| | R | i-αppli history | The five most recently activated saved i-αppli are recorded. Select from the history list to activate. (Stand-by i-αppli is not recorded.) |

In stand-by, press

 When calendar is shown in stand-by, press and, disable the calendar display and press .



selection screen

Select desktop icon and press •, select history and press •.

- History does not appear for desktop icons without history.
- Selected function activates.
- Terminal security code is required while Function lock is set for the selected function.
- When the selected file or message has been deleted or moved, Unable to start. May be deleted or moved or Unable to start. May be deleted appears and cannot be opened. In addition, when My Picture history or i-motion history is selected, the image displayed in the Display calendar/date area switches to a substitute image. If there is no i-αppli corresponding to the selected history item, No requested software appears.
- My Picture history and i-motion history data are shown and can be used even if moved within folders in the FOMA terminal handset.

Calendar/Date area

 When the history of Show schedule is being displayed, calendar appears. If set to My Picture history or i-motion history, selected image appears. In other cases, Disp calendar/ date settings are followed.

Changing the Active Marker Design

Changing the Active marker design <Screen theme>

Set a uniform theme for desktop icon title images and actions.

In the desktop icon selection screen, press f 1 [Screen theme] and select theme.

| LUMINOUS | 1 |
|-----------|---|
| LIGHTNING | 2 |
| CRYSTAL | 3 |

Setting background of Active marker <Set background>

Default setting 待受画像1

Change the Active marker background.

- Use JPEG/GIF images sized 240 (W) × 400 (H) or smaller. (Flash movies and animated GIFs are not available.)
 - In the desktop icon selection screen, press 2 [Set background], select folder, press , select a still picture and press 1 [OK].
 - To check still picture, select a still picture and press •. Press •. and the previous screen reappears.

Setting Display calendar/date <Display calendar/date>

When the history of **Show schedule** is being displayed, calendar appears. If set to **My Picture history** or **i-motion history**, selected image appears.

In the desktop icon selection screen, press 圖③ [Disp calendar/ date] and select content to show.

| To show calendar | 1 |
|------------------|---|
| To show date | 2 |
| To not show | 3 |

Deleting history <Delete history>

• Schedule entries cannot be deleted.

In the desktop icon selection screen, press 🖄 4 [Delete history] and select deletion method.

| To delete all in the category | 1 |
|-------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| | 2 → enter terminal security code → • |

Showing desktop icons

<Set display category>

Default setting All desktop icons are shown Set to show desktop icon by function.

In the desktop icon selection screen, press 💩 5 [Set disp category], enter terminal security code and press .

| S | et disp category |
|-------------------|-----------------------------------|
| Σ | et disp category MUSIC history |
| $\mathbf{\nabla}$ | i-mode history |
| \checkmark | Full Browser hist |
| ☑ | Mail history |
| ✓ | My Pictures hist |
| ~ | i-motion history |
| \checkmark | i-αppli history Show schedule |
| \checkmark | Show schedule |

Select item to show/hide, press and [Complete].

- ☑ indicates show and □ indicates hide.
- Press to switch between show and hide.
- Press i [SelAll] or i [CIrAll] to select or clear all.

Auto Power ON

Turning Power On Automatically

Default setting OFF (disabled)

Turn FOMA terminal on automatically at a specified time.

- Auto power ON settings are repeated daily until disabled.
- Disable Auto power ON before turning the handset off when near high precision instruments, aboard aircraft, in hospitals or in other locations where use is prohibited.

In stand-by, press • 3 3 1.

 Set the correct date and time in advance. (© P. 45)

| Auto power ON | 055 |
|----------------|-------|
| Time | OFF |
| Alarm settings | 00:00 |
| | OFF |

Select *Time*, press •, enter time to activate (four digits) and press •.

- Use 24-hour format.
- Move the cursor with .

Select *Alarm settings*, press •, select *ON* and press •.

To disable the alarm, select OFF, press

 and proceed to step 7.

- Select Alarm tone, press
 , select folder, press
 , select alarm tone and press
 (OK).
 - To preview alarm tone, select an alarm tone and press

 To stop, press

 Select Alarm volume, press ■, adjust volume with ^(*) (louder) or
 (softer) and press ■.

Press 📱 [Complete].

 Alarm does not sound until PIN1 code is entered if Set PIN1 code is ON appears when alarm setting is set to ON. Press

 [Agree] to set Auto power ON.

When the set time arrives

Power automatically turns on and *Auto power ON It's time* appears.

- Message also appears when power is already on.
- When PIN1 code settings (IPP P. 150) are set to ON, the PIN1 code entry screen appears and Auto power ON It's time appears after entering PIN1 code.
- Alarm sounds for approximately 15 seconds if set. Press a key to stop.
- While engaged in a call or receiving a call, alarm sounds after the call is disconnected.

Note

- If Auto power ON and alarm (Alarm/Schedule alarm/ ToDo alarm) are set for the same time, Auto power ON takes priority. Wait a while (approximately 15 seconds) or press a key to clear the Auto power ON notification screen, and the alarm activates.
- If Auto power ON and Auto power OFF are set for the same time, power turns on if FOMA terminal is off and turns off if on. However, when power is on, power may turn on immediately after power turns off.

Turning the Handset On at the Alarm Time and Sounding Alarm <Link Alarm/Power ON>

Default setting OFF

 When Auto power ON and Link alarm/power ON are set for the same time, Auto power ON is prioritized.

In stand-by, press • 3 3 3 and 1 [ON].

Press 💿 [Agree].

Auto Power OFF

Turning Power Off Automatically

Default setting OFF (disabled)

Turn FOMA terminal off automatically at a specified time.

- Auto power OFF settings are repeated daily until disabled.
 - In stand-by, press 3 3 2.
 - Set the correct date and time in advance.
 (© P. 45)

Select *Auto power OFF*, press **•**, select *ON* and press **•**.

Select *Time*, press •, enter time to activate (four digits) and press •.

- Use 24-hour format.
- Move the cursor with .

Press [Complete].

Auto power OFF is set.

When the set time arrives

If other operations are performed at set time (i.e. not in stand-by: i-mode, Mail, Alarm (ringing), Calculator, Schedule, ToDo, Timer, Melody player, Continuous play/Slideshow/full-screen of Data box), the confirmation



Confirmation screen

screen appears. Select **Yes** or wait for approximately one minute to turn off the handset. Select **No** to continue the operations.

- If in a call, the confirmation screen appears after the call is ended and the handset is returned to the screen before the call.
- If software is being updated (PP. 451), the confirmation screen appears after software update is completed and returning to stand-by.

Note

- If Auto power OFF and alarm (Alarm/Schedule alarm/ToDo alarm) are set for the same time, handset turns off and alarm does not sound. (However, if handset is restarted immediately or No is selected in the confirmation screen, alarm sounds.)
- Handset does not turn off at time set for Auto power OFF if i-αppli is running. Auto power OFF confirmation screen appears when i-αppli is ended. If no operations are made, handset automatically turns off.

Note

- Handset does not turn off at time set for Auto power OFF if Ir exchange function is activated. Auto power OFF confirmation screen appears when Ir exchange is ended. If no operations are made, handset automatically turns off.
- If Auto power ON and Auto power OFF are set for the same time, power turns on if FOMA terminal is off and turns off if on. However, when power is on, power may turn on immediately after power turns off.

Timer

Sounding Alarm After Set Time Passes

Sound an alarm or light LED after a set amount of time passes.

- While alarm sounds, press a key to stop.
- Set the timer sound and ring duration with Timer sound of Sound settings (P. 118).
- If Vibration mode (P. 122) is set, vibrator operates along with alarm.

In stand-by, press • 9 2 9 3.

Enter time and press 🔳 [Start].

• The two digits on the left are minutes and the two on the right are seconds.



 Set between 1 second and 99 minutes 59 seconds.
 Timer ends if power is



turned off. \bigcirc 09:58 To stop \bigcirc Press \bigcirc [Start] to resume. \bigcirc Press \bigcirc [Reset] to reset to 3 minutes. To disable \bigcirc

Note

- Timer continues even when a call or mail is received. However, if the time arrives while the timer is not shown such as during a call or when receiving mail, the alarm does not sound.

Related Operations

Use timer from stand-by <Timer>

In stand-by, enter time (1 to 99 minutes) ▶ ■ ③.

Alarm

Sounding Alarm at Set Time

Activate melody, Chaku-uta full[®] or movie/ i-motion at the set time/day.

 If Vibration mode (P. 122) is set, vibrator operates along with alarm.

Setting Alarms

Default setting National Science Alarm tone: 着信音 1 , Alarm volume: Volume 5, Snooze setting: OFF, Ring duration: 15 seconds

Basic setting methods for alarm time and day are described below.

 Also change alarm volume, tone, stereo effects, LED, displayed message or phone number. (127 P. 367)

| Message | Show messages when alarm operates. Enter up to 60 single-byte (30 double-byte) characters. | |
|----------------|--|--|
| Contacts | Show phone numbers when alarm operates. Make calls when alarm operates. | |
| Alarm tone | Change alarm tone. Melody, Chaku-uta full [®] and movie/i-motion are available. | |
| Alarm volume | Change the volume. | |
| Snooze setting | Set the number of times to ring alarm and its interval. | |
| Ring duration | Change the duration to ring alarm. | |

In stand-by, press •9294 and enter registration number.

- Set the correct date and time in advance.
 (Correct P. 45)
- Save up to nine alarms. Alarms are repeated until disabled when set to activate everyday or if the day of the week setting is set to repeat.

| Alarm 1 | |
|------------------|------|
| 1 Enter Time | |
| 🛾 Set repeat | 0:00 |
| 3 Message | |
| 4 Contacts | |
| 5 Alarm tone | |
| Alarm volume | |
| 7 Snooze setting | |
| Ring duration | |
| | |

Alarm setting screen

Press 1 [Enter Time], enter activation time (four digits) and press •.

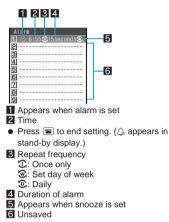
- Use 24-hour format.
- Move cursor with .

Press 2 [Set repeat] and select a repeat method.

To sound ① once • Setting is disabled after activation.

| To sound on specified day | ② → select day (repeatable) → If a check is placed in <i>Exclude holidays</i>, alarm does not activate for set vacations or holidays. To disable, select day and press Press [SelAll] or |
|------------------------------------|--|
| To sound every day | 3 |

Press [Complete]. Setting details



Note

- If Alarm and Schedule alarm/ToDo alarm are set for the same time, Alarm operates first.
- One-time alarm can also be easily set on the current day (the following day if set time has passed). (Quick alarm)

Related Operations

Set alarm from stand-by <Quick alarm>

In stand-by, enter time (ex. 2:05 PM: 1405) ▶ ■ ②.

Display messages <Message>

In the alarm setting screen, press (3) \blacktriangleright enter message \blacktriangleright ().

Display contacts <Contacts>

- 1 In the alarm setting screen, press 4.
- 2 Press 1 ▶ select name ▶ •.
 - To input directly: Press 2 > enter phone number > •.

Change alarm tone <Alarm tone>

- 1 In the alarm setting screen, press 5.
- 2 Press 1 [Melody].
 - To set Chaku-uta full[®]: Press 2.
 - To set movie/i-motion: Press 3.
 - To not set: Press 4.
- **3** Refer to step 2 on P. 116 and select alarm tone.

Related Operations

Change alarm volume <Alarm volume>

- 1 In the alarm setting screen, press 6.
- 2 Press [↑] (louder) or [↓] (softer)) •. • To not sound alarm: Select *Silent*.

Set number of times and interval of alarm <Snooze setting>

- 1 In the alarm setting screen, press 7.
- 2 Press 1. 3 Enter inter
- 3 Enter interval (two digits: 02 to 15 minutes)
 ▶ enter times (2 to 6) ▶ ●.

Change ring duration <Ring duration>

In the alarm setting screen, press (8) enter ring duration (two digits: 02 to 99 seconds) (10.11).

Note (Related operations)

Setting alarms from stand-by (Quick alarm)

• The alarm set is saved for the current day (the following day if set time has passed) as *Quick alarm* in Schedule with *No category*.

Contacts

- Contacts cannot be entered while Keypad dial lock is set.
- Terminal security code is required to use Phonebook while Function lock is applied to phonebook.

Setting alarm tone

 When Function lock is applied to Multimedia, terminal security code needs to be entered to set *Melody*, *MUSIC* or *i-motion*.

Snooze interval

 If a voice call is received while snoozing or snooze time arrives during a call, alarm rings immediately after the call is ended. If the set interval is not reached during the call, snoozing begins after the call is ended and the alarm rings in the set interval.

When Set Time Arrives

Alarm sounds.

 Alarm operates in accordance with alarm tone, volume and duration settings. (Saved messages and image saved as



contacts in phonebook are also displayed.)

- LED also flashes if Alarm/Timer LED (CP P. 141) are set.
- Adjust the volume with (louder) or . (softer) when volume is not set to Step.

Press a key to stop.

• Press 🝙 to clear the displayed screen.

- When snooze is set, alarm continues to ring in set intervals if a key other than (a) is pressed to stop alarm. When alarm is turned off by pressing (a), snooze settings are canceled.
- Press
 to make a call to the saved contact.

Note

- If Picture call is set for a phonebook entry with contacts set for alarm, the image appears when alarm sounds.
- When picture call and group picture call are set for a phonebook entry with contacts set for alarm, the Picture call saved in the entry has priority.
- When an i-motion with image and voice is set as alarm tone, i-motion image appears regardless of Picture call set for contacts.
- When an i-motion with voice only (melodies with no video) is set as alarm tone, the picture call set for contact appears. When an i-motion is set for Picture call, regular alarm screen appears.
- While Memo/Schedule/ToDo/Alarm Function lock is set, alarm does not sound at set time.
- If the time set for alarm, Schedule alarm or ToDo alarm arrives during Ir exchange, data transmission or Ir remote control, alarm activates after transmission ends and the stand-by display reappears. However, if time set arrives during software update, alarm may not activate even when updating is completed.

If alarm duration passes before step 2 is performed

• Alarm stops and a message stating alarm time has passed appears. (The set alarm time appears.)

If alarm time arrives during a call

- Alarm is activated when the call is ended and handset is returned to the screen from before the call.
- If alarm time arrives when receiving mail
- Mail ring tone stops and Alarm is activated.

If alarm time arrives while in Manner mode

 In Normal manner mode, alarm tone does not sound but vibrator is activated. In Silent manner mode, alarm tone does not sound and vibrator is not activated. In Original manner mode, alarm tone and vibrator ON or OFF settings are followed.
 If vibrator is set to ON in Normal or Original manner mode, vibrator operates in Pattern 1 even if Vibrator is set to OFF.

If alarm time arrives while in Public mode (Drive mode)

 Alarm tone does not sound. Called LED and vibrator are not activated.

Disabling/Deleting/Changing Alarm Settings

Change/disable/delete alarm settings individually. Details are erased when alarm is deleted. Details are retained when disabled. To use the same details, set again.

In stand-by, press • 9 2 9 4 and select a registration number to disable, delete or change.

| | A l a m 1 6 -55 | |
|-----------------|---|--|
| To disable | To disable, select a slot with ♡. When disabled, ♡ disappears. | |
| To set again | ■ To set again, select a slot without ⊘. When set, ⊘ appears and appears in stand-by. | |
| To delete | Ø → Yes → ● Details are deleted and appears in Alarm list. | |

Registering from Zoom menu

· Set alarm time only. Other items are set in the following ways.

Set repeat: Daily Message: none Contacts: none Alarm tone: the alarm tone set previously Alarm volume: Volume 5 Snooze setting: OFF Ring duration: 60 seconds

In stand-by, press •, select Useful func and press •.

• Press i [Menu] to switch from Top menu or Shortcut menu.

Select Alarm, press , select a registration number and press .

Enter time (four digits) and press (-).

- Use 24-hour format.
- Move cursor with .

Disabling/Deleting/Changing alarm settings from Zoom menu

Perform step 1 of "Registering from Zoom menu" on P. 369. select Alarm and press .

Select registration number to disable, delete or change.

• Refer to step 1 of "Disabling/Deleting/Changing Alarm Settings" on P. 369 for procedure.

Schedule

Managing Schedules

Manage schedules by saving start date and time, end date and time, details and contacts (phone number). Sound alarm before scheduled time or show a message, phone number or still picture. Additionally, search schedules by contacts, call using the shown phone number or create mail. Easily save category icons on the icon calendar. Add details later. (P. 370)

- Set the correct date and time in advance. (IPP P. 45)
- Save up to 300 schedules.
- Save schedules between January 1, 2000 and December 31, 2099.

Displaying Calendar < Calendar>

Display calendar. (127) Check saved schedules.

- Japanese national holidays as stipulated in the revised National Holiday Law and Welfare Law for the Elderly (Law No. 43, 2005) are set by default (as of October 2006). (Dates for Spring Equinox Day and Autumnal Equinox Day may differ because they are released on February 1 of the previous year.) Holidays are shown in red.
- Add holidays and vacations and show on calendar.

In stand-by, press •9281. Current month's 11 / Su Mo Tu We 1 2006 1 2 3 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13 14 15 16 17 18 19 20 21 22 23 24 25 26 27 26 29 30 calendar appears. Press to close calendar.

| Calendar |
|----------|
|----------|

| To show last month | |
|--------------------|--|
| To show next month | |

Specifying date <Go to date>

In Calendar, press 35 [Go to date].



Enter date and press .

Related Operations

Show calendar by entering date from stand-by In stand-by, enter date (1).

Related Operations

Note (Related operations)

 Entered dates and calendar shown correlate as follows. 01 to 31 Current month (1st to 31st) 0101 to 1231 Specified date (January 1 to December 31) 20000101 to 20991231 Specified date and year (January 1, 2000 to December 31, 2099)

Changing calendar format <Switch view mode>

Default setting Normal display

· Calendar display in stand-by is not changed when calendar is changed to Icon display. (Set schedules and vacation are reflected.)

Refer to P. 127 for details on setting stand-by calendar display.

In Calendar, press 3 1 [Switch view model and select format.

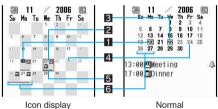
 To show a schedule. select schedule and press . (1 P. 373)

| - | | | | - 1 |
|-----|------|------|------|-----|
| ŝ'n | itch | view | mode | |
| 1 | Norm | | | |
| 2 | Icon | disp | lay | |
| _ | | | | |

To show in normal display 1 To show in icon display (2)

2

Calendar layout



1 Today (Highlighted)

- 2 Selected day (Shown in a black box)
- Selected day (Shown green)
- 4 Set vacation (Shown red)
- 5 Saved schedule (Icon display by category)
- 6 Schedule saved (Underlined)
 - Schedule is two or more days (Underlined)

Saving Schedules

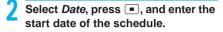
Basic saving methods for schedules including time and date, agenda, category and contact are explained below.

- Always set start date/time and agenda.
 - In stand-by, press •9281, select day and press 🔳 [New] or (1) [New].

- When in Icon calendar. press 10 1.
- Sound alarm (CPP. 371) before scheduled time or save schedules as Secret (CTP. 372).

| Date | :[// |] |
|--------|---------------|---|
| Smry | -:[| J |
| Ctgry | :[No category |] |
| Alarm | :[0FF |] |
| Image | :[|] |
| Cntcts | :[| J |
| Secret | :[OFF | J |
| Agenda | | |

Schedule saving screen



| Set date/time 11 / 2006 00 11 / 2006 00 12 / 2006 SMTWTFS SMTWTFS | To select a date from a calendar, press |
|---|---|
| 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 12 13 14 15 16 17 18 10 11 12 18 14 15 16 | [Switch], select a start |
| 119 60 21 222 21 27 28 29 50 21 25 26 27 28 29 30 31 | date and press . |
| start: 2006/11/22(Wed) | Selected day |
| end :/(-) | Select day with . |
| Calendar date selection screen | |

Enter time, press and select a repeat method.

| To save a one-time schedule | $1 \rightarrow to step 5$ |
|-----------------------------|---------------------------|
| To set to repeat every day | 2 |
| To save a weekly schedule | 3 |
| To save a monthly schedule | 4 |
| To save an annual schedule | 5 |

- Use 24-hour format.
- If end date and time are entered, select Once only.
- To reset end date and time, press .

Enter number of times to repeat (00 to 99) and press .

- 00 represents unlimited times.
- Select Smry, press , enter summary and press .
 - Enter up to 40 single-byte (20 double-byte) characters.
- Select Ctgry, press ., select category icon and press . Categories

| lcon | Category | lcon | Category |
|------|-------------|------|----------|
| | No category | Ð | Birthday |
| | Personal | A s | Hobby |
| | Holiday | 8 | Date |
| ß | Travel | P | Karaoke |
| | Business | | Party |

| lcon | Category | lcon | Category |
|------|-------------|------|---------------|
| P | Meeting | Ð | Shopping |
| 89 | Meals | P | School |
| | Drive | E | Business trip |
| R | Exercise | | Appreciation |
| হ্ব | Anniversary | 1 | Hospital |

Selected category appears.

• Once a category is selected, the previously selected category appears first.

Select *Image*, press • and select a still picture.

| To set | Select folder → • → select still picture → • To check still picture, select a still picture and press •. Press •. Press •. Press •. and the previous screen reappears. |
|------------|---|
| To not set | 2 |

- Movies/i-motion cannot be selected.
- Title of selected still picture appears.
- Set image appears in Schedule list and schedule details screen.

Select *Cntcts*, press **•**, select input method and set contact.

 Set contact information to show the contact in the schedule details or alarm screen, allowing for easy calling.



 Contacts are not available while Keypad dial lock is set.

| To select from phonebook | (1) → enter phone number → • |
|-----------------------------|--|
| | Entries without phone numbers are not available. |
| To input directly | 2 → enter phone number → • |

Select *Agenda*, press •, enter agenda and press •.

• Enter up to 200 single-byte (100 double-byte) characters.

🌔 Press 重 [Complete].

Note

- Refer to P. 320 for details on copying to microSD Memory Card.
- Refer to P. 330 for details on Ir exchange.
- Refer to P. 334 for details on iC transmission.

Note information saved in Schedule separately or transfer/store on a PC using microSD Memory Card (27 P. 316) or Data Link Software (27 P. 438).

Related Operations

Save only category icon from icon calendar

In Calendar, press 1 3 1 2 ▶ select day ▶ select category icon ▶ ■.

Note (Related operations)

Contents of Schedule

| Date | Selected day + set time |
|----------|---------------------------|
| Summary | - |
| Category | Category of selected icon |
| Alarm | OFF |
| Image | - |
| Contacts | - |
| Secret | OFF |
| Agenda | No content is entered. |

Setting Alarms

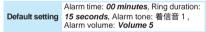
Sound an alarm before the scheduled time. Also set alarm actions.

- If Vibration mode (P. 122) is set, vibrator operates along with alarm.
- If multiple Schedule alarms are set for the same time, the set alarm sounds for the set number of times.

| Alarm time | Set to sound an alarm before the scheduled time. |
|---------------|--|
| Ring duration | Change the duration the alarm sounds. |
| Alarm tone | Change alarm tone. |
| Alarm volume | Change alarm volume. |

 Set the above in the schedule saving screen (Information Schedules" on P. 370).

Setting alarms



In schedule saving screen (© P. 370), select *Alarm*, press • and 1 [ON].



Alarm setting screen

Press 1 [Alarm time], enter time to sound alarm (minutes before the scheduled time: 00 to 99) and press
 .

Press ፤ [Complete].

• Schedule saving screen reappears.

Related Operations

Change alarm duration <Ring duration>

In the alarm setting screen, press 2 > ring duration (two digits: 02 to 99 seconds) > •.

Change alarm tone <Alarm tone>

- 1 In the alarm setting screen, press 3.
- 2 Press 1 [Melody].
 - To set Chaku-uta full®: Press 2.
 - To set movie/i-motion: Press 3.
 - To not set: Press 4.
- **3** Refer to step 2 on P. 116 and select alarm tone.

Change alarm volume <Alarm volume>

- In the alarm setting screen, press ④ ▶ (louder) or , (softer) ▶ ■.
- To not sound alarm: Select Silent.

Setting as Secret

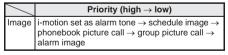
When schedules are set as Secret, they cannot be seen unless terminal security code is entered and Secret mode is set to **ON**. This allows you to protect your personal information.

- Refer to P. 158 for details on setting Secret mode.
- Set Secret mode to ON (127 P. 158) in advance to disable secret setting.
 - In schedule saving screen (☞ P. 370), select *Secret*, press ■ and ① [ON].

When Alarm Time Arrives

Alarm operates in accordance with settings. Press a key to stop alarm. If contact is saved, contact information appears when the alarm is stopped. (127 P. 367)

- Adjust the volume by pressing (louder) or () (softer) when alarm volume is not set to Step.
- If images are set for Schedule, i-motion with images is set for alarm tone or phonebook entries set as contacts have Picture call set, those images appear in the following priority.





 Secret schedules are notified by alarm but phone numbers, messages and images do not appear. (Appears when Secret mode is set to ON (IPP . 158).)

- While Memo/Schedule/ToDo/Alarm Function lock is set, alarm does not sound at the set time.
- Alarm tone does not sound when in Normal or Silent manner mode. For Original manner mode, set the alarm tone ON or OFF.
- If the time set for alarm arrives while in Public mode (Drive mode), alarm tone does not sound. Called LED and vibrator are not activated.

Saving Vacation <Set Vacation>

Set certain days or certain days of the week as vacations. Set up to 100 vacations. Disable all set vacations or all past vacations (excluding vacations set to specific day of week) collectively.

 For Disable all, vacations set to specific days of week return to the default settings (Saturday and Sunday).

In Calendar (P 7. 369), select day to set as vacation (or disable vacation settings), press @41 [Set vacation] and select method of setting.

• Days do not need to be selected when disabling all vacations and setting weekly vacations.

| To set/disable selected vacation | When day set as vacation is selected, setting is disabled. |
|--|---|
| To set weekly vacations | ② → select day ● (repeatable) → 10 Press ■ [SelAll] or ■ [ClrAll] to select or disable all. |

Set vacation appears red.

Related Operations

Collectively disable set vacations <Disable all>

- 1 In Calendar, press **1** 1.
- 2 Press 4 Yes .
 - To disable all past vacations: Press 3 > Yes >
 .

Note (Related operations)

 Vacations set to specific day of week return to default settings (Saturday and Sunday).

Saving Holidays <Set Holiday>

- Save up to 20 holidays in addition to the preset Japanese national holidays.
 - In Calendar (P. 369), select day to set as holiday and press @ 4 2 [Set holiday].



Press 1 [Save new].

• To disable all set holidays, press 2 [Reset], select Yes and press .

Select method of setting holidays.

| To set (day)/(month) of every year | 1 |
|--|---|
| To set 1 st /2 nd /3 rd /4 th /5 th (day) of (month) of every year | 2 |

Enter holiday name and press .

- Enter up to 40 single-byte (20 double-byte) characters.
- In schedule details screen, press 1 [Edit] to change the details for the set holiday. Enter day to change, press
 and proceed to step 3.
- Set holiday appears red.

Checking Schedules

Check contents of saved schedules. Sort them by categories or contacts. Place calls or send i-mode mail if phone number or mail address is saved. Schedules can also be copied.

In stand-by, press • 9281, select day and press .

- Up to five schedules for selected day are listed. (Schedule list)
- Press I [Previous] to show previous day's schedule list.
- Press [Next] to show next day's schedule list.
- To check secret schedules, set Secret mode to ON (@P. 158).
- To check schedules in microSD Memory Cards. press 10 7 in Calendar.



Schedule list

- 1 Date
- 2 Number of saved schedules for the day
- 3 Time bar (Schedule start time to end time is indicated in 30 minute intervals.)
- 4 Alarm
- 5 Start time
- 6 Summary or Agenda*
- 7 Category
- 8 Image (image saved in My picture or phonebook) If summary is saved, the first 16 single-byte (8 double-byte) characters appear.

If summary is not saved, the first 16 single-byte (8 double-byte) characters of Agenda appear.

Select schedule and press .

- If an image is saved, press i to preview.
- If contact is saved. phone number appears and call can be made. Name appears if saved in phonebook. Press and the phonebook entry details screen (CPP. 108) appears. Make calls or send mail.



∎Meeting Meeting Schedule details

- Press [Previous] to check a schedule saved for the previous day. Press 🔟 [Next] to check a schedule saved for the next day. For the day with multiple schedules saved, check the schedules using - to switch.
- Press
 to end viewing.

Note

 Press is to view Schedule during a voice call or while composing message. (EP P. 362)

Related Operations

Display by category <Show by category>

In stand-by, press • 9 2 8 1 • 0 3 3 • select category .

Display by contacts <Show by contact>

In stand-by, press • 9 2 8 1 • 0 3 4 • select contacts
.

Check all schedules <Show all schedules>

- In stand-by, press 9 2 8 1 0 3 2.
- To check the schedule: Select schedule .
- To check schedule in microSD Memory Cards: In Calendar, press 27.

Make calls from schedule

- 1 In the schedule details screen, press [Phone].
- 2 Press to make a voice call.
 - To make Videophone call: Press .
 - To send PushTalk transmissions: Press ☑.

Create i-mode mail from schedule

In the schedule details screen, press [Phone] > select address > [Mail] > compose message.

Schedules attach to i-mode mail

<Attach to mail>

In the schedule details screen, press 2 4 compose message.

Copy schedules <Copy>

In the schedule details screen, press @ 51.

• Paste copied schedule in mail text, phonebook and other text entry screens.

Apply Function lock to Schedule <Function lock>

In stand-by, press • 9 2 8 1 • 0 8 • enter terminal security code) •).

Related Operations

Note (Related operations)

Composing i-mode mail

· Compose i-mode mail from schedule if mail address is saved in phonebook.

Editing Schedules <Edit>

- In stand-by, press (•)(9)(2)(8)(1), select day, press (•), select schedule and press 2 [Edit].
- To select secret schedules, set Secret mode to ON (CTP. 158).

| Date | :[22/11/2006] |
|--------|-----------------|
| Smry | :[] |
| Ctgry | :[Personal] |
| Alarm | :[OFF] |
| lmage | :[061120_06570] |
| Cntcts | :[090XXXXXXXX] |
| Secret | :[OFF] |
| Agenda | Dinner |

Edit schedule, press **i** [Complete] and select save method.

• Editing procedures are the same as when saving. (1 P. 370)

| To save as a new schedule | 1 |
|---------------------------|--|
| To overwrite schedule | $\textcircled{2} \rightarrow \textbf{Yes} \rightarrow \textcircled{\bullet}$ |

Saving contacts from Received calls and Redial

Save phone numbers from Received calls and Redial as contact information.

Select Received call (reference of a step 1 on P. 54) or Redial (ref step 1 on P. 53) and press @ 1 [Create schedule]. **Contents of Schedule**

| | Received calls | Redial |
|----------|---------------------------|----------------------|
| Date | Received date and time | Called date and time |
| Summary | - | |
| Category | No category | |
| Alarm | OFF | |
| Image | - | |
| Contacts | Phone number | |
| Secret | OFF | |
| Agenda | No content is entered. | |

Add and save the contents. (B) steps 2 to 10 on P. 370)

Saving contents of i-mode mail

Save contents of received/sent mail as Agenda.

Attachments are not saved.

Show received messages (B) steps 1 and 2 on P. 234), press [6] [7] [4] [Create schedule].

 For sent mail, open sent mail and press **1**(8)(4).

Contents of Schedule

| | Received mail | Sent mail |
|----------|--|--|
| Date | Received date and time | Sent date and time |
| Summary | | - |
| Category | No category | |
| Alarm | OFF | |
| Image | - | |
| Contacts | First phone number saved in phonebook (Contact is not saved if not saved in phonebook.) | First phone number saved in phonebook (Contact is not saved if not saved in phonebook.) |
| Secret | OFF | |
| Agenda | Subject and message (Up to 200 single-byte (100 double-byte) characters) | |

Add and save the contents. (B) steps 2 to 10 on P. 370)

Saving contents of text memos

Save text from text memos as Agenda.

In stand-by, press (•)(9)(2)(9)(2), select text memo and press **1**3 [Create schedule]. **Contents of Schedule**

| Date | // |
|----------|-----------------------|
| Summary | - |
| Category | Category of Text memo |
| Alarm | OFF |
| Image | - |
| Contacts | - |
| Secret | OFF |
| Agenda | Content of Text memo |

Add and save the contents. (Cr steps 2 to 10 on P. 370)

Saving still pictures from My picture

Save still pictures from My picture of Data box to Schedule.

• Movies/i-motion in Data box are not available.

Select still picture (P steps 1 to 3 on P. 296) and press 38 [Set schedule image].

Contents of Schedule

| Date | Save date and time of still picture |
|----------|-------------------------------------|
| Summary | - |
| Category | No category |
| Alarm | OFF |
| Image | Title of still picture |
| Contacts | - |
| Secret | OFF |
| Agenda | No content is entered. |

Add and save the contents. (© steps 2 to 10 on P. 370)

Note

- While previewing a shot still picture, press 3 3 [Schedule] to save to schedule. Still picture cannot be saved to Schedule if save destination is set as microSD Memory Card. Set save destination to the FOMA terminal handset before shooting.
- Still pictures on microSD Memory Cards are not directly available. Copy to FOMA terminal handset before saving.

Deleting Schedules <Delete Schedules>

Use one of the following to delete schedules.

| To delete one | Deletes entries individually. |
|----------------------------|---|
| To delete all past ones | Deletes all entries prior to specified day. |
| To delete all | Deletes all entries. |
| To delete selected ones | Deletes entries collectively. |

In stand-by, press •9281, press @32 [Show all scheds], select schedule and press @3 [Delete].

 When selecting secret schedules for Delete one or Delete selected, set Secret mode to ON (127 P. 158).

| 1 Delete | |
|----------------------------------|----------|
| 1 Delete 2 Delete 3 Delete | all past |
| 3 Delete | all |
| 4 Delete | selected |

- To delete selected entries, select in step 2.
- For Delete all past, all schedules prior to the selected day are deleted.

Select deletion method.

| To delete one | $1 \rightarrow Yes \rightarrow \blacksquare$ |
|-----------------------------------|---|
| To delete all past ones | $ \begin{array}{c} \textcircled{2} \rightarrow \text{enter terminal security} \\ \text{code} \rightarrow \textcircled{\bullet} \rightarrow \textbf{Yes} \rightarrow \textcircled{\bullet} \end{array} $ |
| To delete all | $ \exists \rightarrow \text{enter terminal security} \\ \text{code} \rightarrow \bullet \rightarrow \textbf{Yes} \rightarrow \bullet $ |
| To delete ones collectively | ④ → select schedule ● (repeatable) → ⑩ → Yes → ● Press 第 [SelAll] or 第 [CIrAll] to select or disable all. |

Related Operations

Delete entries from Calendar

- 1 In Calendar, press 2.
- 2 Press 1 [Delete all past].
- To delete all: Press 2.
- 3 Enter terminal security code ▶ ▶ Yes ▶
 ●.

ToDo List

Saving ToDo Lists

Save dates and details of tasks and manage schedules. Set priority and sound alarms for notification. When secret tasks are set, the data cannot be read unless the terminal security code (\mathbb{T} P. 146) is entered and Secret mode is set to *ON*. This allows you to protect your personal information.

- Set the correct date and time in advance. (P. 45)
- Save up to 100 in ToDo lists.
- Save schedules between January 1, 2000 and December 31, 2099.

Basic saving methods for tasks including date, details, and category are explained below.

In stand-by, press • 9 2 8 2 and **i** [New] or **1** [New].

 Date
 : [--/-/----]

 End
 : [--/-/----]

 Status
 : [Needs action]

 !
 : [Not set]

 Agenda
 : [

 Smry
 : [

 Otgry
 : [Not category]

 Alarm
 : [OFF]

 Secret
 : [OFF]

 Task saving screen
 : [OFF]

Select *Date* and press •, enter date (time) and press •.

- To set end date, select *End*, press
 , enter end date (time) and press .
- To set status, select *Status*, press
 , select status and press .
- To set priority, select *!*, press •, select priority and press •.

Select *Agenda*, press **•**, enter agenda and press **•**.

- Enter up to 200 single-byte (100 double-byte) characters.
- Select Smry, press

 , enter summary and press
 Enter up to 40 single-byte (20 double-byte) characters.

Select *Ctgry*, press •, select category icon and press •.

- Refer to P. 370 for details on categories.
- Once a category is selected, the previously selected category appears first.

| Date | :[22/11/2006 | 1 |
|--------|----------------|----|
| End | :[22/11/2006 |] |
| Status | :[Needs action | 1] |
| ! | :[High | 1 |
| Agenda | :[Meeting for |] |
| Smry | :[Pre30 | 1 |
| Ctgry | :[Meeting |] |
| Alarm | :[0FF | 1 |
| Secret | :[0FF | 1 |
| | | |

Press 📱 [Complete].

• When a task is not entered, entry is not completed even if is pressed.

Note

- Refer to P. 320 for details on copying to microSD Memory Card.
- Refer to P. 330 for details on Ir exchange.
- Refer to P. 334 for details on iC transmission.

Note information saved in ToDo lists separately or transfer/store them on a PC using microSD Memory Cards (2 P. 316) or Data Link Software (2 P. 438).

Related Operations

Sound alarm before task <Alarm settings>

- 1 In the task saving screen, select *Alarm* ▶ ■.
- **2** Press 1.
- 3 Press 1 [Alarm time] ▶ enter time (number of minutes before scheduled task) ▶ ■.
 - To set a contact in the alarm: Press 5 > select input method > • > set contact > •.
- 4 Press 🗐.

Save tasks as secret data <Secret>

- 1 In the task saving screen, select Secret
- 2 Press 1.

Note (Related operations)

Alarm settings

- For details on how to change alarm tone type, refer to "Setting Alarms" on P. 371 in Schedule.
- Set contact information to show in the alarm screen, allowing for easy calling.
- Contacts are not available while Keypad dial lock is set.

Secret mode

• Refer to P. 158 for details on setting Secret mode.

When Alarm Time Arrives

Alarm operates in accordance with settings. Press a key to stop alarm. (127 P. 368)



 Secret tasks are notified by alarm but phone numbers, messages and images do not appear. (Appears when Secret mode is set to ON (FFP, 158).)

- While Memo/Schedule/ToDo/Alarm Function lock is set, alarm does not sound at set time.
- Alarm tone does not sound when in Normal or Silent manner mode. For Original manner mode, set the alarm tone ON or OFF.
- If the time set for alarm arrives while in Public mode (Drive mode), alarm tone and vibrator do not activate, and called LED do not flash.

Note

- If Picture call is set for a phonebook entry with contacts set for alarm, the image appears when alarm sounds.
- When an i-motion with image and voice is set as alarm tone, i-motion image appears regardless of picture call set for contact.
- When an i-motion with voice only (melodies with no video) is set as alarm tone, the picture call set for contact appears. When an i-motion is set for Picture call, regular alarm screen appears.

Checking ToDo Lists

In stand-by, press 9282.

Priority mark -



If summary is saved, the first 18 single-byte (9 double-byte) characters appear. If summary is not saved, the first 18 single-byte (9 double-byte) characters of Agenda appear.

🔰 Select a task and press 重 [Show].

| To copy Agenda | 02 |
|----------------|----|
| To end viewing | |



Note

 Press we to view ToDo list during a voice call or while composing message. (PP P. 362)

Related Operations

Change status < Change status >

In stand-by, press ■9282 > select task > @6 > select item > ■.

Show by status/category

<Show by status/Show by category>

- 1 In stand-by, press 9 2 8 2.
- 2 Press 10 7 1.
 - To show by category: Press @ 7 2.
- **3** Select item ▶ •.

Check finished ToDo list

- In stand-by, press 9 2 8 2 **)** select task
- To mark as unread (圖): Select task marked 圖 and press ☑ [☑].

ToDo list attach to i-mode mail <Attach to mail>

Apply Function lock to ToDo list <Function lock>

Note (Related operations)

Checking ToDo lists

End date is entered automatically.

Editing ToDo Lists

In stand-by, press ●9282, select a task and press @2 [Edit].

Edit task.

- Editing procedures are the same as when saving. (P. 375)
- To set end date, select *End* and press in the task saving screen. Enter end date (time) and press •.

When finished editing, press [Complete] and select save method.

| To save as new | 1 |
|----------------|---|
| To overwrite | $2 \rightarrow \text{Yes} \rightarrow \blacksquare$ |

Deleting ToDo Lists

Delete completed and Delete all are not available when tasks are listed by status or category.

In stand-by, press ● 9 2 8 2, select a task and press ◙ 3 [Delete].

 Entries do not need to be selected for *Delete* completed and *Delete* all.

| Delete | |
|----------|----------|
| 1 Delete | one |
| 2 Delete | |
| 3 Delete | all |
| 4 Delete | selected |
| | |

Select deletion method.

| To delete one | $1 \rightarrow Yes \rightarrow \bullet$ |
|------------------------------------|--|
| To delete all completed ones | $\begin{array}{c} \textcircled{2} \rightarrow \text{enter terminal security} \\ \text{code} \rightarrow \textcircled{\bullet} \rightarrow \textbf{Yes} \rightarrow \textcircled{\bullet} \end{array}$ |
| To delete all | $ \begin{array}{c} \ensuremath{\mathfrak{I}} \ens$ |
| To delete ones collectively | ④ → select task ● (repeatable) → Ø → Yes → ● Press Ĩ [SelAll] or Ĩ [CIrAll] to select or disable all. |

Shortcut Menu

Accessing Functions Quickly

Save frequently used functions as shortcuts for easy access.

Saving to Shortcut Menu

Save up to 18 shortcuts. The following shortcuts are preset. Overwrite them with i-αppli software, bookmarks and other frequently used functions.





SHORT CUT 1

SHORT CUT 2

Press er for 1+ seconds in function with A shown to save.

- When registered i-αppli software or URL bookmarks are deleted, they are automatically deleted from the Shortcut menu.
- Select destination to save and press •.
- Select Yes and press 🔳 to overwrite.

 When settings are reset, shortcuts return to default settings.

Running Shortcut Menu

In stand-by, press , select shortcut icon and press .

- Saved function activates.
- Menus saved at the top of SHORT CUT 1 are assigned to 1 to 3. Execute those functions by pressing each key for 1+ seconds in stand-by.
- Alternatively, press

 in stand-by to show the Shortcut menu. However, if Top menu or Zoom menu appears, press

 [Menu] to switch to the Shortcut menu. In stand-by, press

 to show the menu that was last used.
- When a calendar is shown in stand-by, press
 to disable the calendar display and press
 .
- Press ☑ [Page] or ☑ [Page] to turn the Shortcut menu page.

Note

 The following menus are preset at the top of SHORT CUT 1.

| Menu | Assigned key |
|-----------------|--------------|
| NAVITIME for SH | 1 |
| Bar code reader | 2 |
| Receive Ir data | 3 |

Deleting from Shortcut Menu

In the Shortcut menu, select the shortcut icon and press 2 [Delete].

2

Select deletion method.

| To delete one | $1 \rightarrow \textbf{Yes} \rightarrow \blacksquare$ |
|---------------|--|
| | $ \textcircled{2} \rightarrow \text{enter terminal security} \\ \text{code} \rightarrow \textcircled{\bullet} \rightarrow \textbf{Yes} \rightarrow \textcircled{\bullet} $ |

Selected shortcut is deleted from Shortcut menu.

Moving Shortcut Menu Icons <Move Icon>

In the Shortcut menu, select the shortcut icon and press @12 [Move icon].

Select target location and press . • Shortcuts are switched.

Setting Shortcut Menu Icons <lcon Image Settings>

Change Shortcut menu icons.

Set two images; one for selected and another for unselected.

- Use 76 (W) × 76 (H) pixel JPEG images, GIF images or animated GIFs.
- Up to three scenes are used for animated GIFs. Image for selected icon is not available.
 - In the Shortcut menu, select the shortcut icon and press 11 1 [Icon image].

| My picture(phone) | |
|-------------------|--|
| microSD | |
| 🛅 Camera | |
| 🛅 i-mode | |
| Decomail picture | |
| 🛅 Decomail pict | |
| 🛅 Pre-install | |
| 🗎 Acquired data | |
| 🛅 ltem | |
| 1.28 2.3 TEM | |

Select folder, press , select still picture for unselected icon and press [OK].

- The icon is set.
- To check still picture, select a still picture and press . Press CLR to return.

Select still picture for selected icon.

| To set the same image for unselected and selected icon | Select $No \rightarrow \blacksquare$ |
|--|---|
| selected icon | Select Yes $\rightarrow \bullet \rightarrow$ select folder $\rightarrow \bullet \rightarrow$ select still picture $\rightarrow \bullet$ |

 If an animated GIF is selected in step 2, the shortcut menu screen reappears.

Note

- Images that cannot be set to shortcut icons do not appear.
- Icons in the preset Shortcut menu are animated GIFs.
- If a still picture in My picture is set as a shortcut icon, even if deleted, the image is retained until the shortcut icon setting is changed.

Setting Action Focus to Shortcut Menu Icons <Action Focus>

Default setting Stardust

Action focus is applied to last image for animated GIFs.

In the Shortcut menu, press 3 [Action Focus] and select Action focus type.

| Globe | | Circular frames appear and rotate at varying speeds. |
|--------|---|--|
| Target | 2 | Large square becomes smaller. |

| Mist | 3 | Fog-like veil light covers icons. |
|----------|---|---|
| Stardust | 4 | Light sparkles. |
| Windmill | 5 | Three lines appear and rotate under the icon. |
| Ripple | 6 | Rings move outward. |
| OFF | 7 | Nothing is set. |

Setting Shortcut Menu Background <Set Background>

• Use JPEG and GIF images. (Flash movies and animated GIFs are not available.)

In the Shortcut menu, press @ 4 [Set background].

Select folder, press •, select still picture and press • (OK).

• To check still picture, select a still picture and press . Press CR to return.

Note

- Still pictures that cannot be set as background images do not appear.
- If a still picture in My picture is set as a background image, even if deleted, the image is retained until the background setting is changed.

Resetting Shortcut Menu <Reset Menu>

Reset Shortcut menu to default items.

- In the Shortcut menu, press 65 [Reset menu], enter terminal security code and press •.
 - Select Yes and press .

Owner Information

Saving Own Name and Image

Save and edit name, reading, phone number, mail address, postal code, postal address, birthday, memo and own image. Save three phone numbers (including Own number) and three mail addresses.

Items to set

| 名 (Not | registered) |
|----------|-------------|
| R (Not | registered) |
| 🕮 090X) | XXXXXXX |
| 🕿 (Not | registered) |
| 🕿 (Not | registered) |
| 占 (Not | registered) |
| 👌 (Not | registered) |
| 👌 (Not | registered) |
| ∓(Not | registered) |
| 🗉 (Not | registered) |
| 🛎 (Not | |
| 🔹 (Not | registered) |
| 🗷 Own i | mage |
| | set) |
| Complete | |

 Only the phone number of the inserted FOMA card appears by default. Add acquired i-mode mail address.

| lcon | Item |
|----------|---|
| 2 | Name (up to 32 single-byte/16 double-byte characters) |
| R | Reading (up to 32 single-byte characters) |
| | Own number (cannot be edited) |
| 3 | Phone number (two numbers, up to 26 digits per number) |
| 1 | Mail address (three addresses, up to 50 single-byte characters per address) |
| Ŧ | Postal code (up to seven single-byte digits) |
| •= | Postal address (up to 100 single-byte/50 double-byte characters) |
| ۲ | Birthday (single-byte numbers, from January 1, 1900 to December 31, 2099) |
| | Memo (up to 200 single-byte/100 double-byte characters) |
| <u>.</u> | Own image |

In stand-by, press

O and
[Details].

Enter terminal security code, press and and [Edit].

Select items with : and save details.

- Editing procedures are the same as phonebook. Refer to P. 97 to P. 100 for details.
- Screen of step 2 reappears after each item is saved. Continue setting other items.
- Press I in each entry screen to delete name, reading, phone number, mail address, postal code, postal address, birthday and memo.
 Select 3 to delete Own image.

After saving items, press 🔳 [Complete].

• Select icon with
• to show saved details.

Note

- Customize i-mode mail address. (1 P. 219)
- Changes for i-mode mail address are not reflected in owner information. Save mail address manually.
- Copy microSD Memory Card phonebook contents to owner information. (PP P. 107)

Related Operations

Check own i-mode mail address (i-mode subscribers only)

In stand-by, press i) *iMenu*) ●) *English*) ●) *Options*) ●) *Mail Settings*) ●) *Confirm Mail Address*) ●.

Showing Owner Information Details

 Also, copy characters from owner information items and paste in other screens.

In stand-by, press <a>O and <a>D and <a>D

Enter terminal security code and press •.

- Press to view saved items in order.
- To copy Owner information, select item to copy with
 and press <a>[2]
 Names, own number, other phone numbers, mail addresses, postal addresses, and memos can be copied.

Note

- Alternatively, send owner information to other FOMA terminals with Ir exchange. (ICP P. 332)
- Refer to P. 334 for details on iC transmission.

Related Operations

Copy while creating i-mode mail or SMS

- 1 In stand-by, press ⊠4 ♦ select Msg ▶ ▶ @82.
 - For SMS: In-stand-by, press <a>[5]
 Select
 Msg <a>[1]
 M6 (2).
- Press • enter terminal security code •
 • select item •.

Copy owner information to microSD Memory Card <Copy to microSD>

In the owner information details screen, press (22) Yes (-2).

Restrict transferring of own image with Ir exchange or copying to microSD Memory Card <Image transfer>

In the owner information details screen, press $(a) \neq (2)$.

Voice Memo (During Call)/ Voice Memo (Stand-by)

Recording Other's Voice During Call or Own Voice When in Stand-by

Record other party's voice during a call (Voice memo (during call)) or own voice when in stand-by (Voice memo (stand-by)).

- Use recorded Stand-by voice memos for Hold tone, ON hold tone (127 P. 67) or Reply message (127 P. 72).
- Record up to three Record messages (voice calls) (127 P. 71) and Voice memos of 15 seconds each.
- Record up to two Record memos (Videophone) of 15 seconds each.

Recording Other Party's Voice During a Call <Voice Memo>

During a voice call, press @ 2 [Voice memo].

Alternatively, press 7 for 1+ seconds during a voice call.

- Notes on recording are the same as for recording own voice when in stand-by. (P. 380)
- To stop recording, press 🙆. (Voice is recorded until stopped.)

Recording Own Voice When in Stand-by <Stand-by Voice Memo>

In stand-by, press •9295 and press 1 [Record].

- Alternatively, press 7 for 1+ seconds in stand-by.
- Recording begins.
- Speak within approximately 10 cm away.



- Recording automatically ends after approximately 15 seconds.
- Indicator is an estimate.
- To stop recording, press [Stop]. (Voice is recorded until stopped.)

Note

- Refer to P. 73 for details on playing/deleting Voice memos during calls and stand-by.
- Voice memos of three seconds or less may not be recorded.
- Own voice is not recorded in Voice memo (during call).
 However, own voice may be recorded due to line status.
- Messages that indicate outside the service area, changed phone number, etc. cannot be recorded.
- Key/Standby i-motion is silenced while recording Voice memo (stand-by).

When call is received during Voice memo (stand-by)

• Recording is stopped. Press 🕥 to answer the call. (Voice is recorded until stopped.)

Keep a separate memo and note recorded memos

 Recorded content may be altered or lost by misuse, static, electronic noise, malfunction, repairs, changing FOMA terminal or other handling. DoCoMo shall not be liable for any loss of content.

Calculator

Using as Calculator

Add, subtract, multiply, divide, calculate percentages and sales tax.

• Refer to P. 434 for examples of various calculations.

In stand-by, press • 9 2 9 1.

• Another alternative: In stand-by, enter numbers to calculate press • 4.

Enter numbers to calculate.

Use the following to enter.

| 0 to 9 | Numbers 0 to 9 |
|--------|-------------------------|
| × | Decimal point |
| # | Switch between + and -* |

- Input a numerical value and then press (#) to switch between + and -.
- Press CLR to erase all entered numbers. (Press CLR to end when number is 0.)

Select calculation.

 Mathematical functions are allotted to guide

| Ke | ey. | | |
|----|---------------|---|---------------|
| • | + Add | • | - Subtract |
| Ċ | × Multiply | • | ÷ Divide |



 Also perform the following.

Calculator

| | CM Clear memory | Ш | RM Recall memory | 8.89 | % Calculate percentage |
|---|-------------------------|---|------------------------|------|------------------------------|
| 4 | TAX Calculate tax | Ø | M+ Add memory | | |

Enter numbers to calculate and press • [=].

Press
 to end Calculator. The stand-by display reappears.

Note

- The stand-by display does not reappear when Alarm, Schedule alarm or ToDo alarm activates while Calculator is being used. Calculator reappears after Alarm operation ends.
- Results are retained if memory is used.

Related Operations

Change tax rate

In Calculator, press (for 1+ seconds) enter tax rate (01 to 99) •

Calculate tax

- Display results and press 🝙 [TAX].

Copy calculation contents

Press \times for 1+ seconds during calculation.

Note (Related operations)

Calculating tax

- The default setting for tax rate is **5%**.
- The amount after the decimal point is rounded off. Example: If 120 ([TAX] is pressed, **5Tax** appears.

Talk Time/Cost

Displaying the Call Duration/ Charge

Check previous or total call duration/charge for voice calls, Videophone calls, etc.

- Voice call duration, Videophone call duration and 64K data communication duration appear for call duration. Duration time includes calls made and received.
- Call charge includes only calls made. When calls are made to toll-free numbers, directory assistance (104), etc., OYEN or XXXXXXYEN appears.
- Call charges for switching between Videophone and voice call appear as Last call cost ¥ and V.phone call cost ¥ . Charges for calls switched multiple times appear for each voice/Videophone call in total.
- Call charge is saved on the FOMA card. If a different FOMA card is inserted, the total call charges stored (those calculated since December 2004) on the currently inserted card appears.

Total call charges on a FOMA card cannot be viewed on models released prior to the FOMA 901i series. (However, total charge is saved on the FOMA card.)

- Call duration/charge that appears can be reset.
- Call duration/charge is an estimate and may differ from actual amount. Call charge does not include consumption tax.
- Enter the four- to eight-digit number for PIN1/PIN2 code. (1277 P. 146)

Displaying the Call Details

In stand-by, press •47.

- While accessing the FOMA card, *Reading UIM data* appears.
- If the information has never been reset, --/-/ ----(--)--:-- appears for the reset date and time.
- When total call charge is reset, the charges at the time of resetting are saved for the reset date and time.



Press red viewing.

Note

- Transmission duration and charge for PushTalk transmission, i-mode and packet transmissions are not counted. Refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode]" for details on checking i-mode charge.
- If previous call duration exceeds 9:59:59, the counter restarts from 0:00.
- If total call duration exceeds 999:59:59, the counter restarts from 0:00.
- Time used receiving or making a call is not counted.
- Last call cost is reset to *XXXXXXYEN* when the power is turned off.
- Transmission charges for Chaku-moji are not included.

calculate and

Resetting Call Duration/Call Cost

The recorded previous call duration or the total call duration/cost can be reset to **0**.

In stand-by, press • 4 7 and press **i** [Reset].



Select item to reset.

| call cost | $ \begin{array}{c} 1 \rightarrow \text{enter PIN2 code} \rightarrow \bullet \rightarrow \\ \textbf{Yes} \rightarrow \bullet \end{array} $ |
|---------------------------------|---|
| To reset total call duration | $ \begin{array}{c} \textcircled{2} \rightarrow \text{enter terminal security} \\ \text{code} \rightarrow \textcircled{\bullet} \rightarrow \textbf{Yes} \rightarrow \textcircled{\bullet} \end{array} $ |

 The reset year, month and day are saved in *reset* date.

Setting Call Cost Limit Notice <Limit Settings>

Default setting Disable

Show a message or sound an alarm in stand-by when the set maximum talk cost is exceeded after the call is ended. Show reset notification and reset total call cost on the first of the month.

- In stand-by, press •47 and press 6 [Limit].
- Press 1 [Limit settings], enter terminal security code and press .
- Select *Limit settings*, press and press 1 [Enable].

Select Limit settings, press and enter maximum cost limit and press .

- Enter from 10 to 100,000 yen in 10 yen increments.
- The default setting is 0 yen.

Select *Notice method*, press **■** and **②** [Stand-by].

- To sound an alarm as well as displaying a message, press 1, set the alarm tone/alarm volume/ring duration (127 P. 367 to P. 368) and press 1 [Complete].
- When alarm is set to sound, it stops if Power saver mode is activated when Limit setting alarm is enabled.
- Select *Auto reset*, press and select whether to reset automatically.

| To set | ● When 12:00 AM of the first of the month passes or at a later date set in Date settings (ICP P. 45), Reset time passed appears in stand-by and call cost can be reset. |
|------------|---|
| To not set | 2 |

Press i [Complete], enter PIN2 code and press .

Note

• If Limit settings message appears in stand-by, reset to delete message.

Related Operations

Delete Limit settings message in stand-by <Delete notice>

In stand-by, press 47 b 2 enter terminal security code 10° .

Reset call charge from reset notification screen

When Reset time passed appears in stand-by, press • • • • • enter PIN2 code • • • Yes • •.

Note (Related operations)

Delete notice

 When Limit settings message is deleted, the message is not displayed until All calls cost is reset or Limit settings is set again.

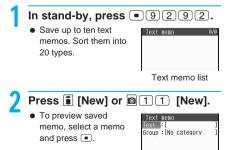
Auto Reset

 Reset notification is deleted when reset is canceled or No is selected in the confirmation screen. Reset notification is not displayed again until 12 a.m. of the first day of the next month.

Text Memo

Entering Memos

Save frequently used phrases and use them when composing message, Schedule and ToDo list.



Select *Text*, press •, enter message and press •.

• Enter up to 128 single-byte (64 double-byte) characters.

Select *Group*, press •, select category icon and press •.

- Select category from 20 types. Refer to P. 370 for details on categories.
- Once a category is selected, the previously selected category appears first.

Press i [Complete].

Note

- Refer to P. 320 for details on copying to microSD Memory Card.
- Refer to P. 330 for details on Ir exchange.

• Refer to P. 334 for details on iC transmission.

Note information saved in Text memos separately or transfer/store them on a PC using microSD Memory Cards (P. 316) or Data Link Software (P. 438).

Using Memos

Use saved memos when composing message, Schedule or ToDo list.

In text memo list (P. 382), select memo and press • [Show].



Select memo function.

| To use for composing a message | Compose message screen appears. Content of memo is entered in <i>Msg</i>. |
|--------------------------------------|--|
| To use for Schedule | The schedule saving screen appears. Content of memo is entered in <i>Agenda</i> and memo type is entered in <i>Ctgry</i>. |
| To use for ToDo list | T 3 Task saving screen appears. Content of memo is entered in <i>Agenda</i> and memo type is entered in <i>Ctgry</i>. |

Note

 Press and to start Text memo during a voice call or while composing message. (127 P. 362)

Editing Saved Memos

In text memo list (P P. 382), select memo and press 2 [Edit].

Edit memo.

- Editing procedures are the same as when saving. (P. 382)
- 3 When finished editing, press [Complete] and select save method.

| To save as new | 1 |
|-------------------|---|
| To overwrite | $2 \rightarrow \text{Yes} \rightarrow \blacksquare$ |

Deleting Memos

In text memo list (P P. 382), select memo and press 3 [Delete].

Select deletion method.

| To delete one memo | $\boxed{1} \rightarrow \text{Yes} \rightarrow \textcircled{\blacksquare}$ |
|--------------------------------|--|
| To delete multiple memos | ② → select memo ● (repeatable) → ⑩ → Yes → ● Press ⑧ [SelAll] or ⑧ [CIrAll] to select or clear all. |
| To delete all memos | $ \begin{array}{c} \ensuremath{\mathfrak{I}} \ens$ |

Related Operations

Apply Function lock to Text memo <Function lock>

In stand-by, press •9292 • @7 • enter terminal security code • • • 1.

Note (Related operations)

 When setting Function lock for Text memo, Function lock is also set for Schedule, ToDo and Alarm, and the alarm does not sound at the set time.

Earphone/Microphone with Switch Using Earphone/Microphone with Switch

Connect a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (sold separately) to the earphone/ microphone terminal to call numbers saved in the phonebook or answer voice/Videophone or PushTalk calls by merely pushing a switch.

- Use earphone/microphone individually or in conjunction with the following.
 - Flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch
 - Earphone/microphone with switch + Earphone plug adapter P001
 - Stereo earphone set P001 + Earphone plug adapter P001

- Earphone terminal P001 + Earphone plug adapter P001
 - (Separate stereo earphones are required.)
- Use FOMA terminal keys to place Videophone or PushTalk calls.
- Do not forcefully pull rubber earphone/microphone terminal cover. May damage the cover.

Setting Earphone/Microphone with Switch <Earphone/Microphone Auto Calling>

Default setting OFF

Set flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch to make voice calls using only the switch. Save phone numbers to FOMA terminal handset phonebook and specify memory number.

- Save one entry from memory numbers 000 to 749 from the FOMA terminal handset phonebook.
- Making Videophone calls is not available from switch.

In stand-by, press <a>6(2) and press <a>1 (ON).

Enter memory number (three digits: 000 to 749) and press •.

• Earphone/Microphone auto calling is set.

Making Voice Calls with Switch

Connect flat-plug earphone/ microphone with switch.

 Insert plug of flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch into earphone/microphone terminal.

In stand-by, press switch for 2+ seconds.

- The phone number for the memory number set for earphone/microphone auto calling is dialed automatically.
- If multiple phone numbers are saved for memory number set for earphone/microphone auto calling in the phonebook, the first phone number saved is called. If the slot for the first phone number is empty, then the second phone number is called. If the slot for the second phone number is empty, then the third phone number is called.

Press switch for 2+ seconds to finish call.

• Alternatively, press (a) on FOMA terminal to disconnect.

Note

- When a memory number set for earphone/ microphone auto calling is set as Secret, set Secret mode to ON before using switch to call.
- Calls may be placed accidentally if FOMA terminal is carried in bags with flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch connected. Disconnect when not in use.

Note

- Calls cannot be placed while Function lock is applied to phonebook.
- Calls may be placed if earphone/microphone without switch is rapidly inserted and removed.
- Key/Standby i-motion are output to flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch when connected.
- The volume for earphone is the same as set in Earpiece volume (P. 66).

Answering Calls with Switch

Connect flat-plug earphone/ microphone with switch.

 Insert plug of flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch into earphone/microphone terminal.

Ring tone sounds when call is received.

 Ring tone sounds from the device set for Ring output (P P. 124).

Press switch for 2+ seconds.

- Alternatively, press a on FOMA terminal to connect.
- When a Videophone call is received while the FOMA terminal is closed, press switch to send image set in Substitute image (127 P. 78). If the FOMA terminal is open, the camera image is sent.

Press switch for 2+ seconds to finish call.

Alternatively, press a on FOMA terminal to disconnect.

Note

- Call may be answered accidentally if connected while ring tone is ringing. Disconnect when not in use.
- Do not press switch repeatedly. Call may be placed and received automatically.
- Do not wind cord for flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch around FOMA terminal. Internal antenna may not work properly.
- Placing cord for flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch near internal antenna causes noise.
- Secure plug. Sound may not be audible if not completely inserted.
- A beep sounds when plug is inserted only halfway during a call. This is not a malfunction.
- A pop may sound when power is turned on. This is not a malfunction.

Set Auto Answer

Answering Calls Automatically with Earphone

Default setting OFF

Automatically connect voice/Videophone/ PushTalk calls received while flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (sold separately) is connected.

- Set time before voice/Videophone call is automatically connected (Receive time).
- Auto answer set is not available when flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch is not connected. (excluding PushTalk)



Select item and set Auto answer. To set for 1 1 \rightarrow enter ring time (three voice and digits: 000 to 120 seconds) \rightarrow Videophone Call is automatically answered calls after approximately two seconds if is pressed without entering time. (The default setting is 2 seconds.) Calls are answered without ringing or vibrating when set to 000 seconds. 21 To set for PushTalk

Note

- Calls from those set for Reject calls or Accept calls are not answered automatically.
- Set different Set auto answer and Record message ring times.
- Voice Mail Service and Call forwarding Service may be prioritized if Set auto answer is set to same time. To prioritize Set auto answer, set Receive time shorter than for Record message, Voice Mail Service or Call forwarding Service.
- The Set PushTalk in Set auto answer is linked with the Set auto answer in the PushTalk phonebook ((資子 P. 90). Setting one of them to *ON* switches the other to *ON*. Auto answer is not available while in Manner mode.
- For Videophone calls, the image set in Substitute image is sent to the other party. Setting can be switched to send camera image instead. (127 P. 77)

Reset Settings Resetting Settings

Restore default values.

- Refer to "Menu Lists" on P. 418 to P. 425 for default settings.
- For Kisekae Tool in the Pre-installed folder, *White* (for the handset color Opal White) can be set regardless of the handset color. Refer to "Using Kisekae Tool" on P. 137 for the items to which Kisekae Tool can be set.



Note

When reset

 The following are not reset (deleted/changed). Refer to respective pages to reset.

| Date settings (P. 45) | ToDo list (🕼 P. 377) |
|---|--|
| Terminal security code (で了P. 147) | Screen memo (🖅 P. 198) |
| Owner information (喧P. 379) | Sent/Received and Unsent mail (CP P. 240) |
| Accept calls list (☞ P. 158) | Saved signature (@P. 243) |
| Reject calls list (☞P. 160) | Network service settings (P. 388 to P. 396) |
| Recordings such as Record message (@ P. 73) | Phonebook entries (IPP. 112) |
| Data box data (☞ P. 326 and P. 329) | microSD Memory Card data (I P. 324) |
| Camera images (☞ P. 326 and P. 329) | Text memo (🕼 P. 383) |
| Select language (☞P. 44) | User dictionary (@P. 408) |
| Alarm (🖙 P. 369) | Download dictionary (P. 409) |
| Schedule (@ P. 375) | |
| | |

- Refer to P. 205 for details on resetting i-mode.
- Refer to P. 245 for details on resetting mail settings.
- When Reset settings is performed, i-Channel ticker does not appear. The i-Channel tickers appear automatically when the latest information is received or the channel list is shown.

Delete User Data Deleting All Saved Data

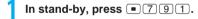
Delete all saved data and return all functions to default settings.

- Terminal security code returns to default number 0000.
- Protected data in FOMA terminal are also deleted.
- Other functions are not available while deleting. Receiving voice call/videophone call/mail and alarms are also not available while deleting.
- Recharge battery before deleting data. If battery level is low, data may not be completely deleted.
- Do not turn off handset while deleting.
- Melodies in Pre-install folder in Melody of Data box and still pictures, animated GIFs, and Flash movies in Pre-install folder in My picture of Data box are not deleted. i-appli, Chara-den, i-motion, Deco-mail images (Decomail pictures, Deco-mail pictographs and Template) and PDF files are deleted.

 Refer to the "Menu List" on P. 418 to P. 425 for details on default settings.

| Deleted data | Phonebook, PushTalk phonebook, still picture/movie/melody/ Chara-den/Chaku-uta full®/PDF files/Kisekae Tool of Data box, i-αppli, mail, Message R/F, bookmarks, screen memo, download dictionary, Voice memo, Text memo, ToDo list, Alarm settings, Received calls, Redial, Sent messages, Mail history, URL history, signature, User dictionary, BookReader bookmarks, folders*, SMS (Short Messages), i-αppli mail data, mail templates, Record messages (including recorded voice guidance), data read by Bar code reader, Schedule (including saved/ changed holidays), ToruCa, Last URL, Phonebook transmission history, Chaku-moji message, location history, location service client, software update reservation information. |
|--|---|
| Data not deleted (returns to default settings) | Functions that can be reset (I → P. 385) and the following functions return to default settings. • Stand-by display, Ring tone, Record message reply message, phrases, memory term item, Settings, Terminal security code, GPS setting, Date settings, Top menu, Shortcut menu, call duration, Personalize setting, reply message, USSD, owner information (excluding own number), PushTalk group, Set PushTalk, mail member, entered URL, international prefix, operation settings for My picture, i-motion, Melody and My Documents of Data box, mail setting, I-mode setting, I-αppli setting, Operator name display, Network search mode. |

Preset folders are not deleted.



- Press
 [Agree], enter terminal security code and press .
 - This may take about 20 minutes. OK? appears.
 - Select Yes and press .
 - Delete and restart. OK? appears.

Select Yes and press .

• FOMA terminal restarts after deleting.

Note

- Download preset i-αppli, Chara-den, i-motion, Deco-mail images and Kisekae Tool from the iMenu site SH-MODE. Packet transmission charges apply when downloading. (P. 198, P. 201, P. 212, P. 253)
- Data saved/registered/set in FOMA card or microSD Memory Card are not deleted.
- Deleting data collectively is not available while other functions are performed.
- More time may be required when deleting large amounts of data collectively.
- While deleting data collectively, the display may become garbled, so do not close the FOMA terminal.
- When Delete user data is performed, i-Channel ticker does not appear. The i-Channel tickers appear automatically when the latest information is received or the channel list is shown.
- i-αppli ケータイクレジット「iD」(iD credit payment service) and DCMX credit appli are not deleted.

Deleting Secret Data Collectively <Delete Secret Data>

Delete secret phonebooks, schedule and ToDo lists collectively.

• Available regardless of Secret mode settings.

In stand-by, press
792.

Enter terminal security code, press
 , select Yes and press

Network Services

| Network Services from the FOMA Terminal | |
|---|--|
| Using Voice Mail Service | |
| Using Call Waiting | |
| Using Call Forwarding Service | <call forwarding="" service="">390</call> |
| Using Nuisance Call Barring Service | <nuisance barring="" call="" service="">392</nuisance> |
| Using Caller ID Request Service | <caller id="" request="" service="">393</caller> |
| Using Dual Network Service | <dual network="" service="">393</dual> |
| Switching Guidance Language | <english guidance="">394</english> |
| Using Service Numbers | |
| • Selecting Actions for Incoming Calls During a Call | |
| Activating/Deactivating Arrival Actions | <set act="" arrival="">395</set> |
| Setting Remote Control | <remote control="">395</remote> |
| Using Multi Number | |
| Using Additional Services | <additional (ussd)="" services="">396</additional> |

This manual explains the outline of each network service based on the operation using the FOMA terminal menu. For details: "Mobile Phone User's Guide [Network services]"

Network Services from the FOMA Terminal

Use the following network services on the FOMA terminal.

For the outline and use of each service, refer to reference pages in the following table.

| Service name | Subscription | Monthly fee | Page |
|----------------------------------|---------------|---------------|--------|
| Voice Mail Service | Necessary | Fees apply | P. 388 |
| Call waiting | Necessary | Fees apply | P. 390 |
| Call forwarding Service | Necessary | Free | P. 390 |
| Nuisance Call Barring Service | Necessary | Free | P. 392 |
| Notify Caller ID Service | Not necessary | Free | P. 46 |
| Public mode (Drive mode) | Not necessary | Free | P. 68 |
| Public mode (Power off) | Not necessary | Free | P. 69 |
| Caller ID Request Service | Not necessary | Free | P. 393 |
| Dual Network Service | Necessary | Fees apply | P. 393 |
| English Guidance | Not necessary | Free | P. 394 |
| Multi Number | Necessary | Fees apply | P. 395 |

Deactivate does not mean that the Voice Mail Service, Call forwarding Service or other subscriptions are canceled.

- Network services are not available outside the service area or in a place with no signal.
- Refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [Network services]" for details.
- For subscription and inquiries, contact the number listed in "For General Inquiries" on the back of this manual.

Note

- Network services are operated by connecting to the network service center and are not available while handset is outside the service area. (Public mode can be set from outside the service area.)
- Add services to the menu when new network services become available from DoCoMo. (IPP P. 396)

Voice Mail Service Using Voice Mail Service

Voice Mail Service is a service for answering incoming voice/Videophone calls with Replay message and recording callers' messages when the handset is outside the service area or turned off, or when calls cannot be answered.

- If Record message (127 P. 71) is also set, set ring time for Voice Mail Service shorter to prioritize answering duration for Record message.
- If a voice/Videophone call is not answered when Voice Mail Service is set to Activate VoiceMail, the call is saved as Missed calls in Received calls and xx missed call(s) appears in stand-by.

Note

- Record up to 20 messages respectively for voice and Videophone calls with three minutes of recording time per message. Messages are saved for up to 72 hours.
- Ring tone sounds for the set ringing time (can be changed: 127 P. 388) when a call is received while Voice Mail Service is set to Activate. Calls are automatically forwarded to Voice Mail Service center after set time. Forwarded calls are noted in stand-by and Received calls. However, when ringing time is set to 0 seconds, calls are not saved in Received calls.
- If a Videophone call is received from the Videophone compatible model when Voice Mail Service is set to *Activate VoiceMail*, the call is connected to Voice Mail Service and message recording is activated after the set ringing time passes. Answering during the set ringing time connects call without connecting to Voice Mail Service.
- Make a voice call to **1412** to change the Videophone call settings of Voice Mail Service.
- The AV32K Videophone call cannot be used for Voice Mail Service.
- When the call is connected to Voice Mail Service with Chara-den, the DTMF operations become unavailable. Switch to the DTMF mode from the function menu. (IPP P. 49)

Basic Flow of Voice Mail Service

- STEP 1 Activate Voice Mail Service.
- STEP 2 Voice/Videophone call is received.
- STEP 3 Call is connected to Voice Mail Service center if not answered.
- STEP 4 Caller records a message.
- STEP 5 Play back message.

Activating/Deactivating Voice Mail Service <Activate/Deactivate VoiceMail>

Activating Voice Mail Service

In stand-by, press •413.

Select activation method.

| To activate service | $\textcircled{1} \rightarrow \textbf{Yes} \rightarrow \textcircled{\bullet}$ |
|---------------------|--|
| | \bigcirc → enter ringing time (000 to 120 seconds) → • → Yes → • |

• Alternatively, press • 4 1 4 in stand-by to set the ringing time.

Deactivating Voice Mail Service

In stand-by, press •415, select Yes and press •.

Playing Back Messages <Play Messages>

In stand-by, press •412, select Yes and press •.

2 Play back messages according to voice guidance.

Note

- When ☆ xx voice mail(s) appears in stand-by, press and Play messages? appears. Select Yes and press to play back the messages. If i-αppli is set as stand-by, the display message disappears when œr is pressed.
- Number that appears is the number of new messages notified by guidance when playing back. Saved messages are not included.
- Videophone messages can be played back by making a Videophone call to **1417**.
- Setting Voice Mail Service Using Voice Guidance <Voice Mail Setting>
 - In stand-by, press •417, select Yes and press •.
 - Press (9) and set according to voice guidance.

| To set message stating unavailability | |
|---------------------------------------|---|
| To confirm or set Reply message or | |
| announcement | |
| To confirm or set Caller ID guidance | 3 |

Checking for New Messages <Check Messages>

In stand-by, press \bullet 411.

- If there are new messages of voice call, A xx voice mail(s) appears in stand-by.
- When a Videophone message is received, an SMS informing that a new message is recorded is received.

Checking and Changing Voice Mail Service Settings <Status (Voice Mail)>

In stand-by, press \bullet 416.

• Current settings appear.



Ring time:15sec.

When inactive

Press 🖻 and select function.

| To activate service | $1 1 \rightarrow \text{Yes} \rightarrow \blacksquare$ |
|--|--|
| To set ringing time before activating | 1 2 → enter ringing time (000 to 120 seconds) → • → Yes → • |
| To deactivate service | $2 \rightarrow \text{Yes} \rightarrow \blacksquare$ |
| To change ringing time | $ \begin{array}{c} \hline \ 3 \ \rightarrow \ \text{enter ringing time} \\ (000 \ \text{to} \ 120 \ \text{seconds}) \ \rightarrow \ \hline \bullet \end{array} $ |

Sounding Alarm When New Message Is Stored <Voice Mail Alarm>

In stand-by, press •4181 and press 1 [ON].

• Voice mail alarm is set.

Deleting New Message Icon <Delete Display>

Delete 🖆 *xx voice mail(s)* that appears when new message is received.

In stand-by, press •, select *Top menu*, press •4182, select Yes and press •.

- 🖆 xx voice mail(s) disappears.
- Press CLR for 1+ seconds to delete xx voice mail(s) displayed in stand-by.

Note

Using Missed Call Notification Function <Start/Stop Notification>

Receive SMS notifying missed calls received while the handset is outside the service area, in Self mode or turned off.

- Missed calls are notified even if Reject all SMS is set.
- Receiving SMS is free of charge.
- Up to five Voice mail notifications can be received by one SMS.

Activating Missed call notification

In stand-by, press •4191.

Select whether to notify calls with no ID or not.

| | Select $\textbf{Yes} \rightarrow \textcircled{\bullet} \rightarrow \textbf{Yes} \rightarrow \textcircled{\bullet}$ |
|---------------------|--|
| To not notify calls | Select $No \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Yes \rightarrow \blacksquare$ |

 Select Yes in the activate Missed call notification screen. The function is activated.

Deactivating Missed call notification

In stand-by, press •4192, select Yes and press •.

Checking Missed call notification settings

In stand-by, press \bullet 4193.

• Current settings appear.

Call Waiting Using Call Waiting

Place the current call on hold and answer a new incoming call when the handset beeps during a call to notify you of another call. In addition, place the current call on hold and make a new call.

- To use Call waiting, set Arrival call action (CP P. 394) to Answer in advance. If set differently, Call waiting is not available even if Call waiting is set to Activate.
- Call waiting cannot be set from outside the service area.

Note

- Videophone calls cannot be placed on hold to answer or place voice/Videophone calls.
- Voice calls cannot be placed on hold to answer or place incoming Videophone calls.

Activating/Deactivating Call Waiting <Activate/Deactivate>

Activating Call waiting

In stand-by, press • 4 2 1, select Yes and press •.

Deactivating Call waiting

In stand-by, press •422, select Yes and press •.

Note

- Charges are incurred by caller when call is on hold.
- Placing current voice call on hold and making a voice call to another party is possible even when Call waiting is deactivated.

Checking settings

In stand-by, press • 4 2 3.

 Current settings appear.



<Connecting 3-way>

0:02

Placing current call on hold and answer a voice call

When a beeping tone is heard during a call, press 🕥.

- Original call is placed on hold and incoming call is connected.
- Press 🕥 to switch between callers.

🔰 Press 🕿 when finished.

• Press to reconnect original call. To end the call on hold

Note

 When a voice/Videophone call is received during a Videophone call, in-call ring tone is not heard and the incoming call cannot be answered. *xx missed call(s)* appears when Videophone is ended and returned to stand-by.

Disconnecting current call and answer a voice call

When a beeping tone is heard during a call, press 🕿.

• Ring tone for incoming call sounds.

🔰 Press 🕥.

Incoming call is connected.

Placing current call on hold and place a separate call

Dial other party's phone number during a call.

 Alternatively, select the number from phonebook, Received calls or Redial.

🕨 Press 🕥.

- Speak to the new party.
- Original call is automatically placed on hold.
- Press to switch between calls.



Press when finished with the new call.

- New call is disconnected.
- Press 🕥 to reconnect original call.

Call Forwarding Service Using Call Forwarding Service

Call forwarding Service is a service for forwarding voice/Videophone calls to designated phone numbers when the handset is outside the service area or turned off, or when calls are not answered within set ringing time.

 To prioritize Call forwarding Service when Record message (IP P. 71) is also set, set the ringing time for Call forwarding Service shorter than the answering duration for Record message. If a voice/Videophone call is not answered when Call forwarding Service is set to *Activate*, the call is saved as Missed call in Received calls and *xx missed call(s)* appears in stand-by.

Note

- For Videophone calls, the caller sees a message that the call is being forwarded. The forward guidance is not played.
- Ring tone sounds for the set ringing time (can be changed: IGP P. 391) when Call forwarding Service is set to *Activate*. Answer while ringing to connect call. Calls are automatically forwarded to the set destination after set time passes. Forwarded calls are noted in stand-by and saved in <u>Received calls</u>. Calls are not saved in Received calls if ringing time is set to *0 seconds*.
- Collect calls (receiver accepts charges) are not connected when Call forwarding Service is set to Activate.
- Press 2 [Forward calls] (2 3 for Videophone) while receiving to forward calls manually.
- Calls received while engaged in a call can be automatically forwarded.
- Call forwarding is automatically deactivated if Voice Mail Service is set to Activate.
- Setting Call forwarding Service from FOMA terminal is not available from outside the service area. In such cases, access Call forwarding Service from touch-tone telephones and payphones using network security code. Remote control settings must be set in advance.

Basic Flow of Call Forwarding Service

- STEP 1 Register forwarding destination.
- STEP 2 Activate Call forwarding Service.
- STEP 3 Voice/Videophone call is received.
- STEP 4 Call is automatically forwarded to the destination if not answered.

Activating/Deactivating Call Forwarding Service <Activate/Deactivate>

Activating Call forwarding Service

In stand-by, press \bullet 4 3 1.

Press ③ [Forwarding number] and enter the number to send to.

 $\begin{array}{c} \text{To input directly} & \textcircled{1} \rightarrow \text{enter phone number} \rightarrow \textcircled{\bullet} \\ \text{To enter from} & \textcircled{2} \rightarrow \text{select name} \rightarrow \textcircled{\bullet} \rightarrow \textcircled{\bullet} \\ \text{phonebook} \end{array}$

- Press 2 [Set ring time], enter ringing time (three digits: 000 to 120 seconds) and press •.
 - Press 1 [Activate], select Yes and press •.

Note

- Calls are automatically forwarded without sounding ring tone while the handset is outside the service area, in **Self mode** or turned off.
- Answer while ring tone is ringing to connect call.

Deactivating Call forwarding Service

In stand-by, press •432, select Yes and press •.

Forwarding calls received during calls

While the handset beeps during a call, press @2 [Forward calls].

• Received call is forwarded to set destination.

Forwarding calls while ring tone is sounding

While ring tone is sounding, press (2 [Forward calls].

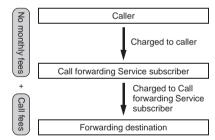
• Received call is forwarded to set destination.

Setting Call forwarding guidance

- In stand-by, press 1429 **≤**.
- Set according to voice guidance.

Call forwarding Service fees

Call fees



Operations for setting destination, activating and deactivating are not charged.

Changing Forwarding Destination <Register Number>



| | E From phonebook |
|----------------------------|---|
| To input directly | $ \begin{array}{c} 1 \rightarrow \text{enter phone number} \\ \rightarrow \bullet \end{array} $ |
| To enter from phonebook | $\textcircled{2} \rightarrow \text{select name} \rightarrow \textcircled{\bullet} \rightarrow$ |

Register number

Select whether to activate Call forwarding Service or not.

| To just change | 1 |
|------------------------------------|---|
| To change and activate the service | 2 |

Using Voice Mail Service When Forwarding Destination Is Busy <Forwarding No. Busy>

• Subscription for Voice Mail Service (monthly fees apply) is required.

In stand-by, press •434, select Yes and press •.

Checking Call Forwarding Service Settings <Status Request>

In stand-by, press •435.

Current settings appear.

Nuisance Call Barring Service

Using Nuisance Call Barring Service

Nuisance Call Barring Service is a service for barring nuisance calls such as prank calls. When numbers are registered for the Nuisance Call Barring Service, calls are automatically rejected and a guidance answers them.

 A ring tone does not sound when calls are received from registered numbers. In addition, the calls are not saved in Received calls.

Note

- Reject callers with no ID.
- International calls may not be rejected.
- Calls from rejected callers are not recorded in Received calls.

Barring Last Caller <Register Caller>

In stand-by, press •441, select Yes and press •.

• Last non-PushTalk caller is registered for Nuisance Call Barring Service.

Registering Selected Numbers for Nuisance Call Barring Service <Register Selected No>

In stand-by, press •442 and select where to retrieve the phone number from.

| To select from Received calls | $ \begin{array}{c} 1 \rightarrow \text{select phone number} \\ \rightarrow \bullet \rightarrow \textbf{Yes} \rightarrow \bullet \end{array} $ |
|----------------------------------|--|
| To select from Redial | $ \textcircled{2} \rightarrow \text{select phone number} \\ \rightarrow \textcircled{\bullet} \rightarrow \textbf{Yes} \rightarrow \textcircled{\bullet} $ |
| To select from phonebook | $ 3 \rightarrow \text{select phone number} $ |

 If 30 phone numbers are already registered, Exceeds limit. Delete oldest entry and save new one? appears. Select Yes and press

 to overwrite.

Note

 Received calls for User unset and PushTalk call/ received history cannot be registered to bar calls.

Deleting All Saved Numbers <Delete All Entries>

In stand-by, press •443, select Yes and press •.

Deleting last saved number

In stand-by, press •444, select Yes and press •.

Confirming Total Numbers Set <Check No of Entries>

In stand-by, press •445.

• The number of saved entries appears.

Note

• Use Delete all entries or Delete last entry to delete phone numbers. Deleting only specified numbers cannot be performed.

When other services are active

The following actions are taken when various services are activated.

 When a PushTalk call is received from a number registered to the Nuisance Call Barring Service, a guidance message is not played to the other party and the call is disconnected.

| Service | Response |
|---------|--|
| | Rejection message is played. Message is not recorded. |
| | Rejection message is played. Call is not forwarded. |

| Service | Response |
|------------------------------|------------------------------|
| Call waiting | Rejection message is played. |
| Caller ID Request Service | Rejection message is played. |

Caller ID Request Service

Using Caller ID Request Service

Caller ID request is a service for playing Caller ID Request for voice/Videophone calls without caller ID and disconnecting the calls automatically.

- When calls are not received with the Caller ID Request Service, the calls are not saved in Received calls and *xx missed call(s)* does not appears.
- When PushTalk is received without caller ID, a message is not played and the call is disconnected.

When other services are active

The following actions are taken when Caller ID Request Service is set to *Activate* along with the various services.

| Service | Response to unidentified callers |
|----------------------------------|--|
| Voice Mail Service | Caller ID request message is played. Message is not recorded. |
| Call forwarding Service | Caller ID request message is played. Call is not forwarded. |
| Call waiting | Caller ID request message is played. |
| Nuisance Call Barring Service | Rejection message is played when called by a rejected nuisance number. |

Activating Caller ID Request Service <Activate>

In stand-by, press •461, select Yes and press •.

Deactivating Caller ID Request Service <Deactivate>

In stand-by, press •462, select Yes and press •.

Checking Settings <Status Request>

In stand-by, press •463. • Current settings appear.

Dual Network Service

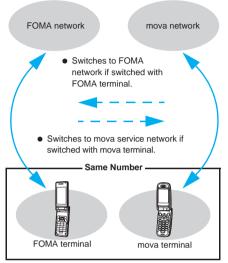
Using Dual Network Service

A mova terminal is available with a phone number registered for the FOMA terminal. FOMA and mova can be switched depending on service area.

- FOMA and mova terminals cannot be used simultaneously.
- Switch using unavailable terminals for the dual network service.
- Enter the four-digit number for the network security code. (CP P. 146)

Switching Dual Network Service

Switch between networks using unavailable FOMA terminal or mova terminal in the service area.



Certain services are restricted. FOMA and mova cannot be used simultaneously.

Switching to FOMA Network

Switch handset to FOMA network.

| 1 | In stand-by, press •521. |
|---|---|
| | • Network security code entry screen appears. |
| 2 | Enter network security code, press |

•, select Yes and press •.

Network is switched.

Note

• Check signal status before switching. M indicates signal strength, not availability of network service.

Checking Settings <Status Request>

In stand-by, press • 5 2 2.

• Current settings appear.

English Guidance

Switching Guidance Language

Change into English the guidance language for network service settings such as Voice Mail Service and the voice guidance notifying that the handset is outside the service area.

- Cannot be set from outside the service area.
- If caller subscribes to this service, caller's settings are prioritized.

Available guidances

| | Menu item | Details |
|--|----------------------|------------------------------------|
| Outgoing (Played when setting network services) | Japanese | All guidances are in Japanese. |
| | English | All guidances are in English. |
| Incoming (Played when called) | Japanese | All guidances are in Japanese. |
| | Japanese+ English | English follows Japanese guidance. |
| | English+ Japanese | Japanese follows English guidance. |

In stand-by, press •531 and select Guidance type.

Call only
 Rev call only

| To set for outgoing and incoming | 1 |
|-------------------------------------|---|
| To set only for outgoing | 2 |
| To set only for incoming | 3 |

Select language.

| Outgoing guidance | | Incoming guidance | |
|-------------------|---|-------------------|---|
| Japanese | 1 | Japanese | 1 |
| English | 2 | Japanese+English | 2 |
| | | English+Japanese | 3 |

Checking Settings <Status Request>

In stand-by, press • 532.

 Current settings appear.

| Status request | 532 |
|----------------|-----|
| | |
| | |
| 0.1 | |
| Outgoing calls | |
| set to | |
| Japanese. | |
| Incoming calls | |
| set to | |
| Japanese | |
| a apanese | |

Service Number

Using Service Numbers

Call can be made to Repair inquiries and General inquiries.

• Items may appear differently or may not appear depending on the FOMA card to be used.

394 Network Services

In stand-by, press •54, select item, select Yes and press •.

| ドコモ故障問合せ (Repair inquiries) | Call can be made to Repair inquiries. |
|-----------------------------------|---|
| ドコモ総合案内・受付 (General inquiries) | Call can be made to General inquiries. |

Note

- Before calling to Repair inquiries, refer to "Troubleshooting" (IP P. 438 to P. 441) and check by yourself.
- ドコモ故障問合せ (Repair inquiries), ドコモ総合案内・受付 (General inquiries), etc. may not appear depending on the FOMA card used.
 When not displayed, save numbers of "General inquiries", "Repair inquiries", etc. on the back of this manual.

Arrival Call Act

Selecting Actions for Incoming Calls During a Call

Select actions for voice/Videophone calls or 64K data communications received during a call if Voice Mail Service, Call forwarding Service or Call waiting is subscribed.

- If Voice Mail Service, Call forwarding Service or Call waiting is not subscribed, calls cannot be answered during a call.
- Set arrival actions to Activate to use Arrival call action.

Available actions

| Voice mail | Calls received while engaged in a call are automatically forwarded to Voice Mail Service center. Messages are stored regardless of Voice Mail Service settings. |
|--------------------|--|
| Call forwarding | Calls received while engaged in a call are automatically forwarded. Voice calls received while engaged in a call are automatically forwarded regardless of Call forwarding Service settings. |
| Call rejection | Calls received while engaged in a call are automatically rejected. |
| Answer | Follows Call waiting settings if activated. If deactivated, one of the following applies. Disconnect current call and answer incoming call. Manually connect incoming calls to Voice Mail Service, Call forwarding Service, or reject. Voice Mail Service and Call forwarding Service settings are used if set to Activate. |

• To use Call waiting, set Arrival call act to Answer.

 No matter the Arrival call action setting, if a call is received while engaged in another call it is saved in Received calls.

In stand-by, press •49 and select an arrival action.

| Voice Mail | 1 | Call Rejection | 3 |
|-----------------|---|----------------|---|
| Call forwarding | 2 | Answer | 4 |

Set Arrival Act

Activating/Deactivating Arrival Actions

Set arrival actions to *Activate* to receive another voice/Videophone call and 64K data communication according to Arrival call act (IPP P. 394) during a call.

• Cannot be set from outside the service area.

Activating Arrival Actions <Activate>

In stand-by, press •481, select Yes and press •.

Deactivating Arrival Actions < Deactivate>

In stand-by, press •482, select Yes and press •.

Checking Settings <Status Request>

In stand-by, press •483.

• Current settings appear.

Remote Control

Setting Remote Control

Set Voice Mail Service or Call forwarding Service remotely from touch-tone landline phones, payphones and DoCoMo mobile phones.

- Remote control is also available from outside the FOMA service area.
- To perform remote operations, set Remote control to *Activate* in advance.
- Cannot be set from outside the service area.
- When using Voice Mail Service or Call forward Service overseas, Remote control must be set in advance.

Activating Remote Control <Activate>

In stand-by, press •511, select Yes and press •.

Deactivating Remote Control <Deactivate>

In stand-by, press •512, select Yes and press •.

Checking Settings <Status Request>

In stand-by, press •513.

• Current settings appear.

Accessing network services from other phones

• For details on operating Network services from a payphone: "Mobile Phone User's Guide [Network services]".

Multi Number

Using Multi Number

Multi number is a service for using up to two phone numbers, Additional Number1 and Additional Number2, besides Basic Number on the FOMA terminal.

- Set a name and ring tone (P. 116) for each number.
- Multi number settings (name, phone number, etc.) registered in the FOMA terminal may be deleted when a FOMA card is removed or replaced. In such cases, register again.
- A registered name appears according to each multi number (Basic Number/Additional Number1/Additional Number2) on the screen when a call is being made/ received.
- When making a call from Received calls or Redial, the previously used multi number is displayed and dialed.

Registering Multi Number <Number Setting>

Default setting Ring tone: 着信音 1

- "Primary number" cannot be deleted.
- The registered phone number and name appear in the Multi number selection screen when calling or incoming call screen.

In stand-by, press •563, select number to register to and press •.

Enter name and press •.

• Enter up to 14 single-byte (7 double-byte) characters.

Enter phone number and press •.

• Enter up to 26 digits for phone number. *P* cannot be entered.

Select ring tone and press 📱 [OK].

• Refer to P. 116 for details on setting the ring tone.

Calling from the selected phone number

In stand-by, enter a phone number.

Press 🞯 🕘 [Sel Multi number].

Select a phone number and press .

• Dial input is not available after Multi number is selected.

Press 🕥.

• Call is placed from the phone number selected.

Note

- To select a number from Received calls or Redial, select a person to call, press 5 and perform steps 3 and 4.
- Alternative to the above, enter ***590#**, ***591#**, ***592#** at the end of a phone number and make a call. Adding ***590#** selects "Primary number", ***591#** selects the "Additional Number1", and the ***592#** selects the "Additional Number2". In that case, a phone number selected as a calling number for Multi number in the **Sel Multi number** of the sub menu is prioritized to make a call.

Setting the Phone Number to Use When Calling <Set Multi Number>

- Use the set phone number to call all destinations.
 - In stand-by, press
 561.
 - Select the number to use, press •, select Yes and press •.
 - The set number is available for outgoing calls.

Checking the Multi Number Setting <Status Request>

> In stand-by, press •562. • Current settings appear.

Editing Multi Number

- In stand-by, press 563.
- Select number and press 1 [Edit].
- Editing procedures are the same as when registering.

Deleting Multi Number

- In stand-by, press <a>563.
- 2 Select number and press 2 [Delete].
- Select Yes and press .

Additional Services (USSD) Using Additional Services

Save and use new DoCoMo network services when they are added.

- Cannot be set from outside the service area.
- Save these new service special numbers or codes in the FOMA terminal.
- When there is a service code, it is saved as a "USSD" on the FOMA terminal.

Saving Services <USSD>

Save up to ten new DoCoMo network services.

In stand-by, press • 551.

- 2 Select a number to save, press ☐ [Edit], enter service name and press ■.
 - Enter up to 20 single-byte (10 double-byte) characters.
- 3 Enter special number or service code for the service to add and press •.

Using Saved Services

- In stand-by, press 551.
- Select service and press 🔳 [Call].

Deleting Registered Services

In stand-by, press •551.

Select service and select deletion method.

| To delete one | $2 \rightarrow Yes \rightarrow \bullet$ |
|---------------|---|
| | |

Changing Receive Display for Saved Service <Reply Message>

- In stand-by, press
 552.
- Select Receive display and edit.

| To edit | → enter receive display name → ● → enter special number or service code → ● Enter up to 20 single-byte (10 double-byte) characters for receive display name. |
|---------------|---|
| To delete one | $\square 2 \rightarrow Yes \rightarrow \blacksquare$ |
| To delete all | |

Data Communication

| Data Communication | 398 |
|--|-----|
| Before Use | 399 |
| General Flow to Prepare for Data Communication | 400 |
| • AT Commands | 400 |
| • CD-ROM | 400 |
| • DoCoMo Keitai Datalink | 400 |

Refer to "Manual for Data Communication" in PDF format in the included CD-ROM* for details on data communication. Adobe Reader (version 6.0 and above is recommended) is required to view "Manual for Data Communication" in PDF format. Install it from the included CD-ROM to your personal computer if not installed.

Refer to Adobe Reader Help for details on how to use the software.

 * Place the included CD-ROM in the PC and the initial screen appears. Click 取扱説明書 (User's Manual) → データ 通信マニュアル (PDFファイル) (Manual for Data Communication (PDF file)).
 (If the initial screen does not appear, click マイコンピュータ (My Computer), select and right-click FOMA_SH903i, click エクスプローラ (Explorer), and click manual.)

Data Communication

Data Communication Available from the FOMA Terminal

FOMA terminal communication formats fall into three categories: packet transmission, 64K data communication and data transfer.

- FOMA terminal does not support fax transmissions.
- FOMA terminal supports data communication with musea, sigmarion and sigmarion. Update musea and sigmarion before using.

Refer to the DoCoMo web page for details on how to update.

- The FOMA terminal is not compatible with Remote Wakeup.
- Packet transmission and 64K data communications are not available overseas.

Packet transmission

Charges incurred are based on the amount of data sent and received. When you are only connected to the network and are not sending or receiving data, no communication charges are incurred. Remain connected to the network, with no charge, and only send or receive data when necessary. Uses access points that are compatible with FOMA packet transmission, such as the DoCoMo Internet Connection Services "mopera U" and "mopera", and sends and receives data at speeds up to 64 kbps and 384 kbps respectively. (A best-effort connection is provided in which transmission speeds vary depending on the transmission environment and network traffic conditions.)

For packet transmission, connect the FOMA terminal to a device such as a PC and perform appropriate settings. Best suited for when sending and receiving mail text data or other relatively small amounts of data at high speeds. Sending or receiving large files will lead to higher transmission charges.

Making voice calls while performing packet transmissions with a PC or other devices is possible. (IPP P. 362)

64K data communications

Charges incurred are based on the connection time. Uses access points that are compatible with FOMA 64K data communications, such as the DoCoMo Internet Communication Services "mopera U" and "mopera", or a synchronous ISDN 64K access point. Connect the FOMA terminal to a device such as a PC and perform appropriate settings to use 64K data communications. Best suited for sending and receiving relatively large amounts of data, such as downloading Data box contents. Note that long-time communication leads to higher transmission charges.

Data transfer

Transfer or exchange data using a FOMA USB cable (sold separately) or Ir exchange without charges. Send or receive data such as phonebook entries, sent/received messages, and bookmarks. Use infrared communication when connecting the FOMA terminal to another FOMA USB cable or infrared communication when connecting the FOMA terminal to a PC.

Things to Keep in Mind

Internet service provider fees

When using the Internet, usage fees are charged by the Internet service provider. These usage fees, paid to the Internet service provider, are separate from the FOMA service fee. Contact your Internet service provider for more information about usage fees.

Use the DoCoMo Internet Connection Services "mopera U" and "mopera". Subscription to "mopera U" requires a charge. "mopera" requires no subscription and charges no monthly usage fee.

Host (Internet service provider, etc.) settings

Hosts for packet transmission and 64K data communications differ. For packet transmission, use a host that supports FOMA packet transmission, and for 64K data communications, use a host that supports FOMA 64K data communications or synchronous ISDN 64K communication.

- Connecting to DoPa access points is not possible.
- Connecting to PHS 64K/32K data communication data access points (such as PIAFS) is not possible.

User authentication

Depending on the host, user authentication (ID and password) may be necessary when connecting. In such cases, enter your ID and password using communication software (dial-up network) to connect. Your ID and password are provided by your host Internet service provider or host network administrator. Contact your host Internet service provider or host network administrator for more information.

Packet transmission and 64K data communications conditions

The following conditions are necessary for communication using the FOMA terminal.

- PC must support FOMA USB cable.
- Must be within the FOMA service area.
- For packet transmission, access point must be compatible with FOMA packet transmission.
- For 64K data communications, host must support FOMA 64K data communications or synchronous ISDN 64K communications.

However, even if above conditions are met, communication may not be possible due to a busy base station or poor signal conditions.

Note

 When performing packet transmission, the device connected to your FOMA terminal must be a JATE (Japan Approvals Institute for Telecommunications Equipment) authorized product.

Before Use

Confirming the Operating Environment

Communication setting file, FOMA PC Setup Software and FirstPass PC Software have the following system requirements.

| | System requirements | |
|---------------------|---|--|
| ltem | Communication setting file/FOMA PC Setup Software | FirstPass PC Software |
| PC | PC/AT compatible A USB port (USB specification 1.1/ 2.0-compliant) is required. | PC/AT compatible |
| OS | Windows 2000, Windows XP (all Japanese versions) | |
| Required memory* | Windows 2000: At least 64 MB Windows XP: At least 128 MB | Windows 2000: At least 32 MB Windows XP: At least 128 MB |
| Hard disk* | At least 5 MB free space | At least 10 MB free space |
| Browser | _ | Windows 2000: Internet Explorer 5.5 and above Windows XP: Internet Explorer 6.0 and above |

Required memory and hard disk are for the "FOMA PC Setup Software" and "FirstPass PC Software" operating environment. May differ depending on the PC system configuration.

- The operation in an upgraded OS cannot be guaranteed.
- Depending on the operating environment, use of the software may not be possible. DoCoMo holds no responsibility for responding to inquiries or guaranteeing operation in environments other than those specified above.

Required Equipment

The following hardware and software are required besides the FOMA terminal and a PC.

- FOMA USB cable (sold separately)
- CD-ROM "FOMA SH903i CD-ROM"

Note

• Purchase a dedicated USB cable "FOMA USB cable". USB cables for PC are not available since the connector shape is different.

Data communication terminology

APN (Access Point Name)

A character string used by Internet service providers and corporate LANs for identification purposes. The APN of the DoCoMo Internet Connection Service mopera U is *mopera.net* and mopera is *mopera.ne.jp*.

cid (Context Identifier)

Registration number assigned when an APN is registered to the FOMA terminal. On the FOMA terminal, numbers 1 to 10 can be used.

DNS (Domain Name System)

System that converts domain names (for example, *nttdocomo.co.jp*) into IP addresses used on the PC.

IrDA (Infrared Data Association)

Organization that establishes the standard for infrared exchange.

IrMC (Ir Mobile Communications)

Standard created for the purpose of transferring data between mobile phones or PDAs (Personal Digital Assistants). Exchange phone numbers and schedules between mobile phones or PDAs with IrMC-compliant infrared terminals.

OBEX (Object Exchange)

One of the international data communication standards. Enables sending and receiving data between OBEX-compatible devices such as mobile phones, PCs, digital cameras and printers.

QoS (Quality of Service)

Service quality. Technology for using lines as the user intends, during communication. Set communication speed for connection, etc. on the FOMA terminal.

W-CDMA

One of the third-generation mobile communication systems (IMT-2000) recognized as a global standard. The FOMA terminal is compliant with the W-CDMA standard.

W-TCP

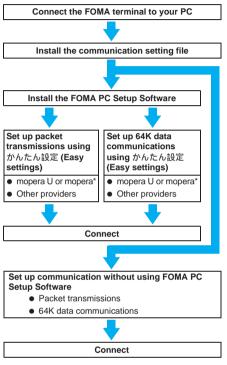
A TCP parameter for maximizing TCP/IP transfer capabilities when using packet transmission on the FOMA network. Use this communication setting to maximize the communication performance of the FOMA terminal.

Users with PC administrator rights

Authority that makes access to all OS systems possible. On a single PC, at least one person is set as a user with PC administrator rights. Normally, users without PC administrator rights cannot install or uninstall drivers or software.

General Flow to Prepare for Data Communication

This section describes the preparation required to connect the FOMA terminal to your PC, and use packet transmission and 64K data communications. The general flow is as shown below.



* Use "mopera U" (subscription necessary) for broadband Internet. Subscribe to a plan that only charges for months which the service was used. Also available is "mopera", a simple Internet connection service with no subscription necessary.

Communication Setting File

To connect the FOMA terminal to your PC for data communication, installation of the communication setting file from the included CD-ROM is required.

FOMA PC Setup Software/FirstPass PC Software

Install the FOMA PC Setup Software from the included CD-ROM to PC and make a variety of necessary settings to perform packet transmission and 64K data communications connecting the FOMA terminal to PC.

FirstPass PC Software enables access to FirstPass supported sites via a PC Web browser with user certificates obtained by the FOMA terminal. Refer to "FirstPassManual" on the CD-ROM for details. Adobe Reader (version 6.0 and above is recommended) is required to view "FirstPassManual" (PDF format).

AT Commands

AT commands are commands used to set FOMA terminal functions from a PC. When AT commands are entered from a PC, the FOMA terminal performs the corresponding operations. Refer to "Manual for Data Communication" in the included CD-ROM for details on AT commands.

CD-ROM

CD-ROM included in this manual contains the software for data transmissions on the FOMA terminal and the manuals (in PDF format) such as "Manual for Data Communication" and "Kuten Code List". Refer to the included CD-ROM for details.

Contained software and PDF

- SH903i Communication Setting File
- FOMA PC Setup Software
- ドコモケータイ datalink (DoCoMo keitai datalink) <Information>
- FirstPass PC Software
- データ通信マニュアル and "Manual for Data Communication" in PDF format
- 区点コード一覧 and "Kuten Code List" in PDF format
- Adobe[®]Reader[®]7.0
- mopera U <Information>

DoCoMo Keitai Datalink

Use DoCoMo keitai datalink software to back up the data such as "phonebook" and "mail" from the user's mobile phone to a PC and edit them. The software can be downloaded from a NTT DoCoMo web page. Refer to the following URL for details and downloading.

Alternatively, access the following page using the included CD-ROM.

http://datalink.nttdocomo.co.jp

Refer to the web page above for details on downloading, transferable data, operating environment, installing and operating instructions, restrictions, etc. Refer to the software's help feature for the operation procedure after installation. A FOMA USB cable (sold separately) is required to use DoCoMo keitai datalink.

 Compatible OS Windows 2000 Japanese version, Windows XP Japanese version

Text Input

| Entering Text | <text input="">402</text> |
|---|---|
| 5-touch Input Method Text Entry | <5-touch>402 |
| Editing/Saving Phrases | <save phrases="">407</save> |
| Cutting/Copying/Pasting Text | Copy Text>407 |
| Inputting Kuten Code | Kuten Code Input>408 |
| Registering Frequently Used Words | . <register (user="" dictionary)="" words="">408</register> |
| Resetting Memorized Conversion Candidates | <clear memory="" terms="">409</clear> |
| Using a Downloaded Dictionary | <download dictionary="">409</download> |
| Selecting Conversion Method | <quick dictionary="" guess="" next="" word="">410</quick> |
| 2-touch Input Method Text Entry | <2-touch>410 |
| | |

Refer to "Kuten Code List" in PDF format in the included CD-ROM for details on kuten code list. Adobe Reader (version 6.0 and above is recommended) is required to view "Kuten Code List" in PDF format. Install it from the included CD-ROM to your personal computer if not installed.

Text Input

Entering Text

Enter text for various functions on the FOMA terminal, such as phonebook and mail. Before entering text, it is recommended to learn about the text input methods.

Text input methods

| 5-touch | Each key is assigned multiple characters. Press key multiple times to enter character. Refer to P. 428 and P. 429 for details on key assignment. Press (a) to scroll backwards through characters. |
|---------|--|
| 2-touch | Use two-digit combinations to enter character, as when sending text to pagers. Refer to P. 430 for details on two-digit combinations. |

• Refer to P. 410 for details on selecting text input methods.

• Each method has input modes for entering different types of characters. (127 P. 404, P. 410)

Types of characters which can be entered

| Kanji, hiragana, katakana, alphabet (upper/ lower case), numbers, symbols, pictographs |
|---|
| Katakana, alphabet (upper/lower case), numbers, symbols |

- Use double-byte alphanumeric mode to enter double-byte numbers.
- Refer to P. 428 to P. 430 for details.

Quick dictionary and Next word guess

| Quick dictionary | For every one to five hiragana characters entered, conversion candidate words starting with those characters appear. Commonly used words are registered in a specialized dictionary. |
|---------------------|---|
| Next word guess | After characters are confirmed, the next word is predicted from previous input/conversion records, automatically showing candidate characters that follow confirmed characters. |

- Both conversion functions are enabled as the default setting. Functions can be disabled individually. (IPP. 410)
- Memorized conversion candidates can be reset.
 (1) P. 409)

Note

• Design of the text input screen depends on the function.

5-touch 5-touch Input Method Text Entry

Entering Kanji, Hiragana, Katakana (Double-byte)

In kanji mode, convert hiragana to kanji, hiragana, katakana (double-byte) and symbols.

In text input screen, press the dial keys and enter hiragana.

- Every time the key is pressed, the character changes.
- Kanji candidates appear every time a hiragana character is entered.
- To enter multiple characters assigned to the same key, press
 to move the cursor, or press the same key for 1+ seconds after entering a character.
 (Example: To enter あ L), press ① → ③ →



l, press 1 → \bigcirc → 1 1, or press 1 → 1 (for 1+ seconds) → 1)

• To enter katakana or alphanumerics, press . Every time the key is pressed, Input mode (type of characters) changes.

Move the cursor to the kanji candidate field with , select character and press .

- Alternatively, press 1 to 9, 0, ¥ or ₩ corresponding to list number of conversion candidates to enter.
- Press cer to stop selection. The cursor returns to the text input screen. Continue entering text.



Conversion candidates field

| To show the next list screen | ☑ [Next] → ☑ [Next] Press ☑ [Next] once when the cursor is on the last candidate of the list. |
|---------------------------------------|---|
| To show the previous list screen | ☑ [Previous] → ☑ [Previous] Press ☑ [Previous] once when the cursor is on the first candidate of the list. |
| When the kanji is not available | When the cursor is on the text input screen, use → to change highlighted characters and convert again. When the cursor is on the Conversion candidates field, press |

Note

Canceling text input

 Press are to cancel text input and return to the previous screen. If text is already entered, press are to delete all text (127 P. 404), and press are again.

If cursor is in middle of text, press $\fbox{}$ for 1+ seconds twice and press $\fbox{}$

Related Operations

Add dakuten (°) Enter character ► 🛞.

Add handakuten (°)

Enter character ► 💥 💥.

Convert to lower case Enter character ▶ ☑ [Caps].

Add a space at the end of message Press — at the end.

Undo entry <Undo>

Enter text ▶ operation (delete, cut) ▶ ≤.

Change font size

- 1 In text input screen, press ⓑ ► Chara entry/ dict ► ● ► 2.
- 2 Press 1 [Large font], 2 [Default] or 3 [Small font].

View key list <Key list>

Note (Related operations)

Dakuten and handakuten

- For double-byte hiragana, press ★ once for a dakuten (*), twice for a handakuten (*), and three times to restore the original character.

Lower case

• For alphabet, text is converted to lower case. The entry mode is also switched to lower case.

Entering a space

• A single-byte space will be entered regardless of input mode. Each space counts as one character.

Undo operation

- If a pressed 11+ times, UNDO Unable to undo anymore appears and the screen 10 times before reappears. When entering message, undo is available only once.
- After text is edited, operations in memory are cleared.
- Undo is not valid when characters that can be entered are only single-byte alphanumeric characters in the mail address entry screen, etc.

Font size

- Font size setting is not available in some text input screens.
- Large font is 24 pixels, *Default* is 20 pixels and *Small font* is 16 pixels. In the input screen for saving to phonebook, *Small font* is 12 pixels.
- When Decorate mail is selected from the submenu in the message entry screen, the font size can be changed to that with one size larger or smaller pixels. Available pixels are 30, 24, 20, 16 and 12 pixels.
- Also set display font width. (P. 143)

1-character conversion

After a kanji has been entered, characters will convert to that kanji next time when the first character is entered.

When the kanji cannot be found

<1 kanji conversion>

Enter a single kanji by its on or kun reading.

In text input screen, enter hiragana and press 🕫 [1 kanji].

🔰 Select kanji and press 🔳.

Note

- There are 6,355 kanji available from JIS level-1/ level-2 kanji sets.
- Complex kanji are changed in part or are excluded.

Quickly specifying character string <1-touch conversion>

Use 1-touch conversion to convert kanji using all the hiragana combinations assigned to each key. The same key does not need to be pressed multiple times for the hiragana.

Example: When entering おはよう

In text input screen, press 168 1.

- 1-touch conversion works best with nouns.
- For characters with dakuten/handakuten marks, press the key for the unmarked character once, then enter the dakuten/handakuten mark. (Example: for 勉 強, enter 6 ※ 0 (2 8 1.)



洋甸 田

Press 🛄.

- Press i (⊂Reslct) or
 [Reslct⇒] in 1-touch conversion status to change the pre-converted characters to convert.

 Further conversion is
 1-touch conversion.
- The character strings used most frequently appear first in the list.
 When candidates

appear, press I to return to the pre-converted hiragana. If , is pressed, normal conversion candidates appear.

おはよう

Selec 1お早う 目おはよう

≪Reslct

Previou

 Reading is not automatically entered if 1-touch conversion is used to enter name when adding to phonebook.

Select candidate and press .

Predictive headword conversion

In 1-touch conversion, words that start with the characters assigned to the pressed key (words starting with $\mathfrak{B}, \mathfrak{N}, \mathfrak{I}, \mathfrak{F}, \mathfrak{K}, \mathfrak{B}$ when \mathfrak{B} is entered) appear according to the time of day.

- Words shown are already registered.
- Words shown are grouped into the following times: 5:00 to 10:59, 11:00 to 16:59, 17:00 to 22:59, and 23:00 to 4:59.

1-touch single-character memory

If the first character for a character string previously used in 1-touch conversion is entered (example: あ when あたあさわ was converted into お父さん), the previously converted word (お 父さん) appears.

Switching Input Modes in 5-touch Input

Switch input modes to enter various types of text.

Input mode

- Kanji/hiragana
- Double-byte katakana
- Single-byte katakana
- Double-byte alphanumeric characters
- Single-byte alphanumeric characters
- Single-byte numbers
- Kuten code

In text input screen, press 🖾 [Chara].



- When pressing ☑ [Chara], 1 (single-byte numbers) → 號 (JIS kuten code) → 決 (kanji/hiragana) → ア (double-byte katakana) → A (double-byte alphanumeric) → A (single-byte alphanumeric) cycles through in this order.
- After pressing ☐ [Chara], pressing will switch the input modes in the same order. Press to switch in the reverse order.

Note

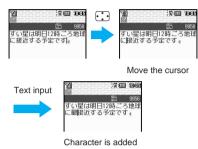
When *Pict/Sym* appears on text input screen, press
 [Pict/Sym] to switch to pictograph or symbol mode. (27 P. 406)

Editing Text

Adding characters

Move cursor to location to add characters and input text.

Example: When entering 最 in front of 接近

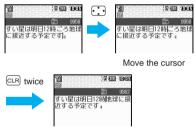


Deleting text

Move cursor to the left of the character to delete and press CLR.

- The character to the right of the cursor is deleted.
- When the cursor is on a character, the character at the location is deleted.

Example: When deleting ごろ



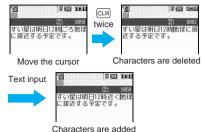
Characters are deleted

- Press CLR for 1+ seconds to delete multiple characters according to the location of the cursor.
 - When characters are before/after the cursor or when characters are only after the cursor, all characters on and after the cursor are deleted.
 - If there are characters only before the cursor, all characters before the cursor are deleted.

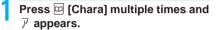
Changing characters

Delete and re-enter characters.

Example: When changing ごろ to 近く



Entering Katakana (Single-byte)



- Press the dial key to enter single-byte katakana.
 - Enter next character, or press ... or ... to confirm.



- When entering text for i-mode mail, press <a>> to confirm.
- To enter multiple characters assigned to the same key, press \Box to move the cursor or, after entering the first character, press the same key for 1+ seconds. (Example: To enter $\mathcal{P}1$, press $1 \rightarrow \rightarrow 1$ or $1 \rightarrow 1$ (for 1+ seconds) \rightarrow 1.)

Related Operations

Convert hiragana to katakana (double- and single-byte) <Kana/English>

Enter hiragana b louble-byte katakana/ single-byte katakana) .

Entering Alphanumeric Characters

Entering alphabet

Press 🖾 [Chara] multiple times and \triangle or \triangle appears.

- Enter double-byte alphanumerics while \triangle is shown and single-byte alphanumerics while A is shown.
- Press I to switch between upper case and lower case. Also, press I after entering characters to convert characters entered just before.



Upper case

Press the dial key to enter alphabet.

 Enter next character, or press . or . to confirm.



- When entering text for i-mode mail, press to confirm.
- To enter multiple characters assigned to the same key, press \Box to move the cursor or, after entering the first character, press the same key for 1+ seconds.
 - (Example: To enter **AB** or **ab**, press $(2) \rightarrow (-)$ \rightarrow [2] [2] or press [2] \rightarrow [2] (for 1+ seconds) \rightarrow (2).)
- If an English word is entered in kanii mode (example: はうす), single-byte English (example: House, house, etc.) appears in the conversion candidates.
- If hiragana is entered in kanji mode (example: ひとみ), single-byte English (example: *hitomi*, etc.) appears in the conversion candidates.

Entering numbers

Press [22] [Chara] multiple times and 1 appears.

Press the dial key to enter numbers.

- Confirms automatically.
- In double-byte
 - alphanumeric mode

(upper/lower case),

press key multiple times for double-byte number.

Example: For $1 \rightarrow$ Press 1 five times. For $2 \rightarrow$ Press 2 seven times (upper case)/

123

press 2 four times (lower case).

 Alternatively enter hiragana in kanji mode, and select numbers from conversion candidates.

Related Operations

Convert hiragana to alphabet/numbers <Kana/English>

Enter hiragana b lo b alphabet/number b .

Note (Related operations)

 Conversion candidates appear for the number or alphabet allotted to the key. Example: Enter いき (1122) and press 🖻 [KanaAB12], イキ (double-byte katakana), 1[‡] (single-byte katakana), / 2 (double-byte numbers), 12 (single-byte numbers), / B (double-byte upper case alphabet), /B (single-byte upper case alphabet), / b (double-byte lower case alphabet), /b (single-byte lower case alphabet), / / 2 2 (double-byte numbers) and 1122 (single-byte numbers) appear.

Using Bar Code Reader to Enter Characters

In text input fields on sites and Internet web pages, press @63 [Bar code reader].

Scan data.

 Refer to P. 182 for details on Bar code reader usage.

Using Preset Phrases <Insert Phrase>

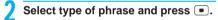
Use preset phrases (P P. 433), original phrases (P P. 407) and enter mail addresses easily.

In text input screen, press , select *Insert phrase* and press .

 To show all phrases, press i. Select phrase (All) screen appears.

| | | | III 100 | 1 |
|----|------------|-------|---------|---|
| 11 | nsert phr: | ase | | |
| 1 | Greetings | | | |
| 2 | Business | | | |
| 3 | Private | | | |
| 4 | Reply | | | |
| 5 | Internet | | | |
| 6 | Original | phras | e | |
| | | | | |

Insert phrase screen



Select phrase, press
, confirm phrase and press
.

Inputting mail address easily

• Mail addresses use single-byte characters.

In text input screen, press 🖾 for 1+ seconds, select phrase and press 🔳.

Note

 When the Select phrase (All) screen appears, phrases appear in the used order starting with the most recently used phrase.

Entering Pictographs/Symbols

Enter pictographs and symbols. Also enter Deco-mail pictographs to message text and signature.

- Deco-mail pictograph table (IP P. 432)
- Deco-mail pictographs cannot be entered when Function lock is applied to multimedia.

In text input screen, press it to switch between *Pictograph* and *Symbol*.

| To show | □ [Next] → □ [Next] ● Press □ [Next] once when the cursor |
|---|---|
| the next | is on the last pictograph or symbol of |
| list screen | the list. |
| To show the previous list screen | Previous] → ☑ [Previous] Press ☑ [Previous] once when the cursor is on the first pictograph or symbol of the list. |

- Select pictograph or symbol and press •.
 - Enter consecutively.
 - While entering pictographs

| To switch between Pictograph 1/ Pictograph 2/ Deco-mail pictograph | To create a mail message or signature, press to switch from Pictograph 1 → Pictograph 2 → Pictograph D (Deco-mail pictograph) → Pictograph 1 In other cases than creating a mail message or signature, press to switch from Pictograph 1 → Pictograph 2 → Pictograph 1 |
|---|---|
| To return to the previous input mode | CLR |

While entering symbols

| To switch between single- and double-byte symbols | 0 |
|--|-----|
| To return to the previous input mode | CLR |

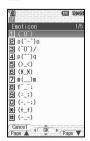
Note

- Enter Deco-mail pictographs while composing mail to create Deco-mail.
- Convert keywords "keyword (reading)" to pictographs. Refer to "Pictograph List" on P. 431.
- Refer to "Symbols/Special Character List" on P. 430 for details on available symbols and special characters.
- The ten symbols used most recently appear on the first line.
- Use the same operation for 2-touch input.

Entering Emoticons < Emoticon>

Emoticon table (P. 433)

In text input screen, press low, select *Emoticon* and press low.



| To show | □ [Page] → □ [Page] ● Press □ [Page] once when |
|---|---|
| the next list | the cursor is on the last line of |
| screen | the list. |
| To show the previous list screen | [Page] → [Page] Press [Page] once when the cursor is on the first line of the list. |

Select emoticon and press .

• Alternatively, enter the number.

Note

 Enter かお in hiragana to see emoticons in the kanji candidates list.

Save Phrases Editing/Saving Phrases

Register frequently used original phrases and edit preset phrases.

- Refer to P. 433 for details on preset phrases.
- Enter up to 128 single-byte (64 double-byte)
- characters for each phrase.
- Phrases can be reset to default settings.

In stand-by, press **1**323 and **6** [Original phrase].

• To edit saved phrases, select 1 to 5.

Select number to register to and press 🗐 [Edit].

Enter phrase and press .

Resetting to default phrases <Reset>

Reset phrases to their default settings. The following reset commands are available.

| To reset one | Resets one phrase at a time. |
|-----------------|-------------------------------------|
| To reset folder | Resets all phrases in one category. |
| To reset all | Resets all phrases. |

Related Operations

Reset one/folder <Reset one/Reset folder>

- In stand-by, press 3 2 3 > select category > ■ > select phrase >
 - Submenu does not appear for folder not edited.
- 2 Press 1 [Reset one].
 - To reset all phrases in a folder: Press 2.
- 3 Select Yes ▶ •.

Reset all phrases <Reset all>

- 1 In stand-by, press 3 2 3 ▶ 🖻.
- 2 Select Yes .

Copy Text

Cutting/Copying/Pasting Text

Copy/cut a character string and paste it to a different location.

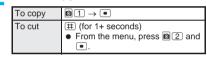
- Paste text onto the same screen or another text input screen. (Cannot paste to a screen in which Submenu is not displayed.)
- Cut text is deleted from its original location.
- Cut/copy up to 10,000 single-byte (5,000 double-byte) characters at once.
- Only one character string can be copied/cut at a time. Copying/cutting again will replace the old text with the new text.

Copying/Cutting Text

Example: When copying/cutting text from text memo

In text input screen, move cursor to the first character to copy or cut.

Select copy or cut.



Move the cursor to the last character and press •.

- Selected text to copy is highlighted. (The highlighted text is copied or cut.)
- Press in for 1+ seconds to select all characters after character selected in step 1.
- Press for 1+ seconds to select all characters before character selected in step 1.

Copying the Contents of Mail

Example: When copying message text

Open received mail and press 6 (Copy).

- For sent mail, press 72 in sent message screen.
- For unsent mail, select *Msg* in compose message screen, press

 and

 3. Proceed to step 3.

Select item to copy.

| To copy address | The address is copied and operation ends. |
|--------------------|---|
| To copy subject | 2 |
| To copy message | 3 |

- Move the cursor to the first character to copy and press
 [Start].
- A Move the cursor to the last character to copy and press [Copy].

Pasting Text

Example: When pasting text into a new message

Open the text input screen to paste to, move the cursor to the paste location and press K for 1+ seconds.

- From the menu, press 5, move the cursor to the paste location and press .
- Character string in memory is inserted.

Note

- In fields that accept only single-byte characters such as the *Reading* field in the phonebook, only single-byte characters in memory are pasted.
 Depending on the location, only the allowed number of characters is pasted.
- Text stays in memory until new text is copied/cut or power is turned off.

Kuten Code Input Inputting Kuten Code

Use four-digit kuten codes to enter kanji, hiragana, katakana, symbol, and alphanumeric characters.

- Each kuten code corresponds to a specific character.
- Refer to "Kuten Code List" in PDF format in the included CD-ROM for details on kuten code list.

In text input screen, press [Chara] multiple times and appears.

Enter four-digit kuten code.

- After the fourth digit is entered, the character appears.
- Before the fourth digit is entered, press cire to clear the numbers when the wrong kuten code is entered. Re-enter correct code.

Register Words (User Dictionary)

Registering Frequently Used Words

Register up to 100 frequently used words with a short keyword (up to eight hiragana) for easy retrieval. When a keyword is entered and converted to kanji, the registered word appears in the candidate list and can be easily entered.

• The same keyword can be registered up to five times.

Registering a New Word

In stand-by, press • 321.

- User dictionary list appears.
- Press 🗊 to switch between word and keyword lists.

Select Save new and press .

Enter word and press .

- Enter up to 30 single-byte (15 double-byte) characters.
- Line breaks cannot be entered.

Enter keyword and press .

• Enter up to eight double-byte hiragana.

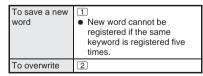
Editing Registered Words

In stand-by, press **3**21, select word and press **.**

Edit word and press 🔳.

Edit keyword, press and select a saving method.

• To not edit, press • and select a saving method.



Deleting Registered Words

In stand-by, press • 3 2 1, select word and press @ 1 [Delete].

Select Yes and press 🔳.

Clear Memory Terms

Resetting Memorized Conversion Candidates

All conversion candidates memorized through functions such as Quick dictionary and Next word guess can be reset.

- Pictograph and symbol conversion candidates are also reset.
 - In stand-by, press 324, enter terminal security code and press •.

Select Yes and press .

Download Dictionary

Using a Downloaded Dictionary

Default setting No dictionaries registered

Save up to ten dictionaries for Japanese conversion downloaded from sites and Internet web pages on the FOMA terminal. Use five of these dictionaries for kanji conversion. When dictionaries for such as technical terms are downloaded, the terms in the dictionaries appear as the conversion candidates.

- User dictionary can be replaced with Downloaded dictionary.
- Refer to P. 200 for details on downloading dictionaries.

Setting/Clearing a Dictionary

In stand-by, press • 322.

• Registered dictionaries appear. Dictionaries currently in use appear with **1**.

2

Select dictionary and set or clear.

| To set/clear a dictionary | If five dictionaries are already set, 5 dictionaries can be saved appears. Clear dictionary currently in use and try again. If a set dictionary is selected, it is cleared. |
|---------------------------------------|--|
| To check dictionary information | Dictionary information (title, author, version, download date, etc.) appears. Press Streen [Back] and the previous screen reappears. |

Note

 Alternatively, press in text input screen, select Chara entry/dict and press 3 5 [Dwnld dictionary] to set/ clear dictionary.

Checking Dictionary Contents

In stand-by, press **322**, select dictionary and press [Show].

- Press CLR to end checking.
- To show a list of keywords, press i [Switch]. Press i to switch between word list and keyword list.

Deleting a Dictionary

Delete dictionaries individually or collectively.

In stand-by, press • 322, select dictionary and press 65 [Delete].

Select deletion method.

| To delete one dictionary | $1 \rightarrow \textbf{Yes} \rightarrow \blacksquare$ |
|----------------------------|--|
| To delete all dictionaries | $\textcircled{2} \rightarrow \textbf{Yes} \rightarrow \textcircled{\bullet}$ |

Note

 If a different FOMA card from when the dictionary was downloaded is inserted, a FOMA card restriction mark appears next to the dictionary. In such cases, dictionary contents cannot be checked, but can be deleted.

Replacing User Dictionary with Download Dictionary <Download Dictionary>

Replace the User dictionary with Download dictionary.

In stand-by, press • 321 and @2 [Dwld dictionary].

- Select destination to save to and press •.
 - To overwrite a saved dictionary, select **Yes** and press •.

Note

 User dictionary is deleted when replaced with Download dictionary.

Related Operations

Edit title of dictionary replaced with download dictionary <Change name>

In stand-by, press \bigcirc 322 \triangleright select dictionary \triangleright \bigcirc 3 \triangleright edit title \triangleright \bigcirc .

Related Operations

Edit contents of dictionary replaced with download dictionary <Edit dictionary>

- 1 In stand-by, press 3 2 2) select dictionary) @ 6.
- Select word) .
 To register a new word: Press 1.
- 3 Edit word)) edit keyword)) .

Quick Dictionary/Next Word Guess Selecting Conversion Method

Default setting Quick dictionary: ON (use), Next word guess: ON (use)

Set to enable/disable Quick dictionary and Next word guess (PP. 402).

- In text input screen, press , select *Chara entry/dict*, press and press 3(2) [Quick dictionary].
 - Alternatively, press
 [Guess]/
 [Normal] to switch ON/OFF when the cursor is in the Conversion candidates field.
 - For Next word guess, press , select Chara entry/dict, press and press 33.

Press 1 [ON].

Setting the Priority for Conversion Candidates <First Candidate>

Default setting All High

Prioritize English words, surnames, geographic names, proper nouns and emoticons in the conversion candidate list.

In text input screen, press , select *Chara entry/dict*, press • and press 3 1 [First candidate].

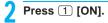
- Select an item and press ●.
 Indicates high priority and □ low priority.
- Press ፤ [Complete].

Including Emoticons as Conversion Candidates <With Emoticons>

Default setting ON

Set whether to include emoticons in conversion candidates list.

In text input screen, press , select *Chara entry/dict*, press and press 3.4 [With emoticons].



2-touch

2-touch Input Method Text Entry

Setting 2-touch Input <Conversion Method>

Use 2-touch input to enter hiragana with two keys. This method is recommended for users accustomed to 2-touch character input.

- In text input screen, press , select *Chara entry/dict*, press • and press 1 2 [2-touch].
 - 2-touch input continues until handset is returned to normal input (5-touch).
 - Operation for inserting preset phrases is the same for 2-touch and 5-touch.
 - Katakana/alphanumeric conversion is not available in 2-touch input.
 - To return to 5-touch input, press in text input screen, select *Chara entry/dict*, press and press 11.

Changing Input Mode

In text input screen, press 🖾 [Chara].

 Every time
is pressed, input modes cycle in the order of
ik (kuten code) Full (double-byte upper case letters) half (single-byte upper case letters).

Note

• Switch upper/lower case while in single/double-byte mode.

After entering text, press ☑ [Caps] to convert characters individually. (☞ P. 405)

Entering Text

In 2-touch input, enter two digits to specify a character.

In text input screen, enter two digits.

Example: 22 **き**

Refer to P. 430 for details on character assignments.

Overseas Use

| Outline of International Roaming (WORLD WING) | |
|--|--|
| Services Available Overseas | |
| Before Using Overseas | |
| Making Calls at Your Country of Stay | |
| Receiving Calls | |
| Setting a Search Method of Carrier | . <network mode="" search="">414</network> |
| Setting a Carrier to Preferentially Connect to | <plmn setting="">415</plmn> |
| Displaying a Carrier While in Roaming | < Operator Name Disp>415 |
| Activating Roaming Guidance | <roaming guidance="">415</roaming> |
| Rejecting Calls During Roaming | <call barring="">415</call> |
| Using Network Service During Roaming | |
| | |

Outline of International Roaming (WORLD WING)

International Roaming (WORLD WING) is a service that enables you, using overseas telecommunication carrier's networks, to make calls and use i-mode.

Use this FOMA terminal for voice/Videophone calls, i-mode and SMS with the phone number and mail address used in Japan. Network services such as Voice Mail and Call forwarding can also be used.

- This service is available in the 3G roaming area. The FOMA terminal cannot be used in the GSM/GPRS network service area. Refer to the "DoCoMo global service web page" for details on the area.

Services Available Overseas

The communication services available overseas are as follows.

| Communication service | Explanation |
|-------------------------|--|
| Voice call | Make or receive calls in your country of stay or make international calls to Japan or to other countries with the same phone number as used in Japan while abroad. |
| Videophone | Make international Videophone calls to users of the specified 3G carriers overseas and FOMA users in Japan. |
| i-mode mail | Send/receive i-mode mail overseas with the same address as used in Japan. |
| i-mode | Use i-mode overseas. |
| i-Channel | Use i-Channel overseas. |
| SMS (Short Messages) | Send/receive SMS messages overseas with the same address as used in Japan. |

- Some communication services are not available depending on the overseas carrier. Refer to the "DoCoMo global service web page" for details.
- Communication charges are incurred for every reception of i-Channel overseas. (The domestic talk-fee service does not apply.) In addition, communication charges for automatically updating "ペーシックチャネル (Basic channel)" are incurred.
- Packet transmission and 64K data communications are not available overseas.
- GPS function is not available overseas. An error screen appears and charges are incurred when the site of GPS Service settings is accessed overseas.

Before Using Overseas

The following items must be checked before departure, at your country of stay, and after homecoming.

Preparation Before Departure

Prepare below in Japan before using the FOMA terminal overseas.

About contract

Subscription is not required to use WORLD WING.

- If subscribed to the FOMA service before August 31, 2005 but not subscribed "WORLD WING", first subscription procedures are required. This service is not available with some payment plans.
- To use the international roaming service, insert the FOMA card other than blue to the FOMA terminal.

About charging batteries

Check for the voltage at the country or region of your stay and use the overseas-compatible FOMA AC adapter 01 (sold separately).

- The overseas-compatible FOMA AC adapter 01 covers from AC100V through AC240V, however, the shape of the plug for the AC power cable is for AC100V (for domestic use). To use the adapter overseas, a conversion plug adapter that is compatible with the voltage of your stay is required. Purchase the conversion plug adapter at shops of home electronic or overseas travel goods.
- Do not use a transformer for use overseas to charge the battery.

About browsing i-mode sites

To browse i-mode site overseas, the settings for overseas use must be made from iMenu in advance.

 Refer to "DoCoMo WORLD SERVICE User's Guide" and "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode]" for details.

About setting network service

If subscribed to network services, Voice Mail Service, Call forwarding Service or other services can be used overseas.

- Some network services may not be set or checked depending on overseas carrier. In addition, some network services are available only in Japan. Refer to "DoCoMo WORLD SERVICE User's Guide" and "Mobile Phone User's Guide [Network services]" before departure.
- To use network service overseas, make "Remote control" (P P. 395) before departure.

About inquiries overseas

For lost, stolen, and cost settlement, or malfunction of the FOMA terminal overseas, refer to "For lost, stolen, and cost settlement overseas" or "For repairs overseas" on the back of this manual.

 Add "international prefix number for the universal number" or "international call access code" that is assigned to your country of stay, to the head of your phone number for inquiries. Refer to "DoCoMo WORLD SERVICE User's Guide" or the "DoCoMo global service web page" for the international prefix number for the universal number and international call access code. The universal number may not be available for calls. from a mobile phone, payphone or hotel.

Using at Your Country of Stay

The service is available when the FOMA terminal is located in the 3G roaming area.

The FOMA terminal is set to automatically search for the network when the power is turned on, and to be connected to the available carrier in your country of stay.

- If the connected carrier is changed when Auto time correction (CPP. 45) is set to **ON**. a confirmation screen asking whether to correct time difference may appear. Select Yes to start correcting time difference to adjust to the local time.
- When Operator name disp (IP P. 415) is set to Yes. the carrier connected appears in stand-by.
- When Clock display is set to ON (Large), Japan time appears below the local time. (excluding regions keeping the same standard time as Japan time)
- Talk time or stand-by time may be reduced to half the normal time depending on the network condition of your country of stay.

Setting After Homecoming

At the time of purchase, the FOMA terminal is set to automatically search for the network when the power is turned on, and to be connected to the FOMA network. Reset Network search mode to the FOMA network (DoCoMo).

 If Network search mode is set to Manual, switch to the FOMA network manually or change to Auto. Reset Network search mode to the FOMA network (DoCoMo).

Making Calls at Your Country of Stay

Make a call from overseas using the international roaming service.

Making a Call Outside Your Country of Stay (Including Japan)

Make a call from your country of stay to Japan or other countries.

> In stand-by, enter + (press 0 for 1+ seconds), country code, area code (city code) and other party's phone number and press <a> [Phone]/ [] [V.phone].

• When the area code (city code) begins with 0, omit the 0 when dialing. (However, include 0 when making a call to some countries or regions such as Italy.)

Making an international call outside your country of stay using phonebook

Set Country code conversion (P. 59) to ON and set the country code frequently called to easily make an international call.

- This is available only when the phone number stored in the phonebook starts with 0.
 - In stand-by, press , select the other party and press (a) [Phone]/ Isonordi, V.phonel.
 - 0 at the beginning of a phone number is automatically converted to the country code set in Country code conversion and the phone number appears.

Select *Call* and press **.**.

 To dial a phone number as stored in the phonebook, select Original number and press .



Making a call to the phone in the country saved in Set country code

Save a country code using Set country code (P. 60) to select a country code before making an international call.

- The following operation is available overseas only.
 - In stand-by, enter the other party's phone number and press **3**2 [International Call].

Select the country code, press and ()[Phone]/ [[V.phone].

Making a Call in Your Country of Stay

Make a domestic call at your country of stay in the same way as you do in Japan.

In stand-by, enter the other party's phone number and press 🝙 [Phone]/ [] [V.phone].

 Always dial the area code (city code), even when the number is in the same area.

Note

 Refer to the "DoCoMo global service web page" for details on available countries, country codes and carriers

Making a Call to a WORLD WING Subscriber Overseas

When making a call to a "WORLD WING" subscriber overseas, make an international call to Japan regardless of your country of stay.

- In stand-by, enter + (press ① for 1+ seconds), country code 81 (Japan), the other party's phone number excluding 0 and press [Phone]/ [] [V.phone].
 - Select Yes and press .

Receiving Calls

Answer a call overseas in the same way as you do in Japan.

Press <a>
 to answer an incoming call.

• Speak to the caller.

Note

- Even when a caller tried to notify of caller ID, it might not be notified depending on the used carrier.
- When a call is received while in international roaming, the call is forwarded from Japan. Call charges to Japan are incurred by the caller and international forwarding charges by the receiver.

Having Calls to Your FOMA Phone

Having calls to your FOMA phone made from Japan

To receive an international call from Japan, make calls to your FOMA phone by entering the phone number in the same way as it is entered in Japan. *090-XXXX-XXXX*

or

080-XXXX-XXXX

 Calling from Received calls may not be available since the number of international roaming carrier is added to the beginning of the phone number.

Having calls to your FOMA phone made from countries other than Japan

Add the international call access code and **81** (Japan) to the beginning of your phone number whose **0** is excluded to make an international call to Japan regardless of your country of stay.

International call access code of the country of the caller-81-90-XXXX-XXXX

International call access code of the country of the caller-81-80-XXXX-XXXX

Network Search Mode

Setting a Search Method of Carrier

Default setting Auto

At the time of purchase, this FOMA terminal is set to automatically search for the network and to be connected to another carrier when the user moves out of the service area.

- Set to manually select a carrier.
- Check that Network search mode is set to Auto if the FOMA terminal is indicated to be outside the service area even after homecoming.

Manually Changing a Carrier to Be Connected

In stand-by, press • 5 9 1.



- **2** Press ② [Manual], select a carrier and press **●**.
 - The carrier is changed.
 - Press 1 [Auto], select **Yes** and press to automatically change a carrier.

Searching the Host Network Again

<Network Re-search>

Re-search a network to set another carrier.

In stand-by, press • 5913.

 The host network is changed automatically if Network search mode is set to *Auto*. If set to *Manual*, select a carrier and press

PLMN Setting

Setting a Carrier to Preferentially Connect to

Specify the priority order of carriers connected to when Network search mode is set to *Auto*. Save up to 20.

- In stand-by, press \bullet 5914.



Select the number of the priority order, press and select a saving method.

| To enter country code and network code | | $\begin{array}{c} \hline 1 \rightarrow \text{enter country code} \\ (\text{MCC}) \rightarrow \bullet \rightarrow \text{enter} \\ \text{network code} (\text{MNC}) \rightarrow \bullet \\ \rightarrow \text{Yes} \rightarrow \bullet \end{array}$ |
|--|------------------|--|
| To select from a telecommunications carrier list | | $\begin{array}{c} \textcircled{2} \rightarrow \text{select a} \\ \text{telecommunications carrier} \\ \rightarrow \textcircled{\bullet} \rightarrow \textbf{Yes} \rightarrow \textcircled{\bullet} \end{array}$ |
| To save the telecommunications carrier currently connected to | | $3 \rightarrow \text{Yes} \rightarrow \blacksquare$ |
| To chan | ge priority | |
| To delete | To delete one | $51 \rightarrow \text{Yes} \rightarrow \bullet$ |
| | To delete all | $ \begin{array}{c} 5 @ \\ \hline $ $ $ $ $ $ $ $ $ $ $ $ $ $ $ $ $ $$ |

Operator Name Disp

Displaying a Carrier While in Roaming

Set whether to display a carrier currently connected to on the stand-by while in international roaming.

In stand-by, press •592.

Press 1 [display ON], select Yes and press •.

When displaying a carrier



Note

Operator name disp is available only while in international roaming.

Roaming Guidance

Activating Roaming Guidance

When a call is received during international roaming, the caller hears the guidance indicating that international roaming is activated.

Activating Roaming Guidance <Activate>

In stand-by, press • 581.

Deactivating Roaming Guidance <pr

Checking Settings <Status Request>

In stand-by, press \bullet 583.

• Current settings appear.

Call Barring

Rejecting Calls During Roaming

Set the FOMA terminal to reject calls during roaming. Select whether to bar all incoming calls or only the Videophone and 64K data transmission calls.

• 64K data transmission is not available overseas.

Activating Call Barring <Activate>

In stand-by, press •5981 and select a barring method.

| To reject all incor calls | $\begin{array}{c} 1 \rightarrow \text{enter network} \\ \text{security code} \rightarrow \bullet \end{array}$ |
|---|---|
| To reject Videoph and 64K data transmission calls | security code \rightarrow • |

Deactivating Call Barring < Deactivate>

In stand-by, press • 5 9 8 2, enter network security code and press •.

Checking Settings <Status Request>

In stand-by, press **•**5983.

• Current settings appear.

Int'l Services

Using Network Service During Roaming

Use network services such as Voice Mail and Call forwarding from overseas.

- Subscription is required to use Voice Mail (Int.) and Call forwarding (Int.).
- Previously, set the remote access setting to *Activate* in Japan to use a network service overseas.
- If operated from overseas, international call charges for your country of stay are incurred.

Operating Voice Mail at Your Country of Stay <Voice Mail (Int.)>

Activate/deactivate Voice Mail service, play messages and change settings.

| To activate | In stand-by, press \bullet 5 9 3 1 \rightarrow operate according to voice guidance |
|------------------------------|--|
| To deactivate | In stand-by, press \bullet 5932 \rightarrow operate according to voice guidance |
| To play Messages | In stand-by, press \bullet 5933 \rightarrow operate according to voice guidance |
| To set Voice Mail service | In stand-by, press \bullet 5934 \rightarrow operate according to voice guidance |
| To set ring time* | In stand-by, press \bullet 5 9 3 5 \rightarrow operate according to voice guidance |

* As of October 2006, this service is not available.

Operating Call Forwarding at Your Country of Stay <Call Forward (Int.)>

Activate/deactivate the Call forwarding service and change the settings.

| To activate | In stand-by, press \bullet 5 9 4 1 \rightarrow operate according to voice guidance |
|---------------|--|
| To deactivate | In stand-by, press \bullet 5 9 4 2 \rightarrow operate according to voice guidance |
| To set* | In stand-by, press \bullet 5943 \rightarrow operate according to voice guidance |

* As of October 2006, this service is not available.

Operating Roaming Guidance at Your Country of Stay <Roam. Guidance (Int.)>

Activate/deactivate Roaming guidance.

| To activate/ | In stand-by, press \bullet 597 \rightarrow |
|--------------|--|
| deactivate | operate according to voice guidance |

Setting Remote Access at Your Country of Stay <Remote Access (Int.)>

Activate/deactivate Remote access.

| To activate/ | In stand-by, press \bullet 595 \rightarrow |
|--------------|--|
| deactivate* | operate according to voice guidance |

As of October 2006, this service is not available.

Operating the Caller ID Request Service <Caller ID Reg (Int.)>

Activate/deactivate the Caller ID Request Service.

| To activate/ | In stand-by, press \bigcirc 596 \rightarrow |
|--------------|---|
| deactivate* | operate according to voice guidance |

* As of October 2006, this service is not available.

| Menu List | |
|--|------------------------------------|
| Pre-installed Data | |
| • Dial Key Assignments (5-touch) | |
| • Dial Key Assignments (2-touch) | |
| Symbols/Special Character List | |
| Pictograph/Emoticon List | |
| Phrase List | |
| Using the Calculator | |
| Multiaccess Combinations | |
| Multi Assistant (Multitask) Combinations | |
| Services Available from the FOMA Terminal | |
| Options and Accessories | |
| Using with External Devices | |
| Data Link Software | |
| ■Troubleshooting | |
| • Troubleshooting | |
| List of Error Messages | |
| Warranty and After-sales Services | |
| Updating Software | <software update="">451</software> |
| Protecting Your FOMA Terminal from Harmful Files | Scanning Function>457 |
| Main Specifications | |
| Specific Absorption Rate (SAR) | |
| Japan Export Control Regulation/Export Administration Regulation | |

Menu List

Select a menu by selecting series of function menus from the Top menu.

• When settings are reset (P. 385), functions return to default settings (marked with a).

i-mode menu

| | | Function menu | | Default setting | Page |
|--------|-----------------------------|----------------------|----------------------|--|------------------|
| i-mode | iMenu | | | - | P. 188 |
| | | 1 MessageR | | _ | P. 207 |
| | Message R/F | 2MessageF | | _ | P. 207 |
| | Bookmark | | | _ | P. 195 |
| | Check new message | | | | P. 207 |
| | | | | - | P. 231 |
| | Screen Memo | | | - | P. 197 |
| | Go to | 1 Last URL | | - | P. 189 |
| | location | 밑URL history | | - | P. 194 |
| | location | 3Input URL | | http:// | P. 193 |
| | | 1 Shared | 1 Connection timeout | 60 seconds | P. 203 |
| | | | 2Host selection | i-mode (UIM) | P. 204 |
| | | ■Mail/Message* | | - | - |
| | | | 1 Set image display | ON | P. 204 |
| | | | Pont size | Normal | P. 190 |
| | | | 3Certificates | All enabled | P. 209 |
| | i-mode setting | 3Internet | 4 i-motion setting | Automatic replay: Yes i-motion type: Standard type | P. 213 |
| | [4]i-mo | | 5Secure setting | Cert Operation: - DoCoMo CA Host: DoCoMo | P. 209 P. 211 |
| | | | 6Use phone info | Yes | P. 204 |
| | | | ZSound fx setting | Volume 5 | P. 190 |
| | | 4 i-mode arrival act | | PushTalk preferred | P. 205 |
| | | 5 Reset i-mode | | _ | P. 205 |
| | | 6 Function lock | | OFF | P. 188 |
| | | 1 Run i-Channel list | | - | P. 215 |
| | i-Channel Ei-Channel ticker | | • | ON | P. 215 |
| | | 3 Reset i-Channel | | - | P. 216 |
| | 1 Home | | | _ | P. 290 |
| | | 2 Bookmark | | _ | P. 290 |
| | | | 1 Last URL | - | P. 290 |
| | | 3 Go to location | 2URL history | _ | P. 290 |
| | | | 3Input URL | http:// | P. 290 |
| | | | 1 Home URL | http:// | P. 290 |
| | Internet (FB) | | ECookie Setting | Set: Valid Delete: - | P. 293 |
| | Internet (FB) | | Script Setting | Valid | P. 294 |
| | | 4 FB Settings | 4 Set screen | Display Mode: Normal Set image display: ON Font size: Normal | P. 291 P. 294 |
| | | | 5 Window Open Guard | Invalid | P. 294 |
| | | | EReferer Setting | Send | P. 294 |
| | | | ZAccess Setting | OFF | P. 294 |
| | 1 | 1 | , 100000 00tting | | 1 . 207 |

* The same menus are shown as those shown when *Mail* Mail setting is selected in the Top menu.

• The numbers displayed in i-mode menu may differ from the dial keys.

i-αppli menu

| | Function menu | Default setting | Page |
|---------|------------------|-----------------|--------|
| i-αppli | 1 Software list | - | P. 254 |
| | Ξi-αppli volume | Volume 5 | P. 255 |
| | 3Software info | OFF | P. 254 |
| | 4 Auto start | OFF | P. 261 |
| | 5Used by i-αppli | - | P. 265 |
| | 6 Error display | - | P. 264 |
| | ☑Trace info | - | P. 264 |
| | BFunction lock | OFF | P. 264 |

Camera menu

| | Function menu | Default setting | Page |
|--------|-------------------|-----------------|--------|
| Camera | 1 Shoot still pic | - | P. 171 |
| | 2Shoot movie | - | P. 173 |
| | 3Character reader | - | P. 185 |
| | 4 Bar code reader | - | P. 182 |

Mail menu

| | | Function menu | Default setting | Page |
|------|-----------------|-------------------------|---------------------------------------|------------------|
| Mail | Inbox | | - | P. 235 |
| | Outbox | | - | P. 235 |
| | Unsent messages | | - | P. 235 |
| | Compose message | | - | P. 220 |
| | Compose SM | S | - | P. 245 |
| | Check new | 1Check new message | - | P. 207 P. 231 |
| | message | 2SMS check | - | P. 247 |
| | Template | • | - | P. 225 |
| | Receive optio | n | - | P. 230 |
| | | 1Quick reply mail | - | P. 244 |
| | | ERcv attached file | All attachments | P. 245 |
| | | 3Melody Auto replay | Auto replay | P. 244 |
| | | 4 Font size | Normal | P. 242 |
| | | 5 Receive display | Notice first | P. 245 |
| | | ECheck new message | i-mode mail, Message R, Message F: ON | P. 243 |
| | | ZAuto message display | Msg R preferred | P. 206 |
| | | BReceive opt. setting | OFF | P. 243 |
| | Mail setting | Mail member | - | P. 243 |
| | | OSave signature | ON | P. 243 |
| | | | DoCoMo | P. 248 |
| | | #Report request | Do not request | P. 248 |
| | | ☐SMS expiry | 3 days | P. 248 |
| | | □·■SMS input character | Japanese (70Chara) | P. 249 |
| | | ☐Check mail settings | - | P. 245 |
| | | ☐ 4 Reset mail settings | - | P. 245 |
| | | □•■Function lock | OFF | P. 245 |

• The numbers displayed in mail menu may differ from the dial keys.

Data box menu

| | Function menu | Default setting | Page |
|----------|---------------------|-----------------|--------|
| Data box | 1 My picture | - | P. 296 |
| | EMUSIC | - | P. 354 |
| | 3i-motion | - | P. 304 |
| | 4 Melody | - | P. 314 |
| | 5My Documents | - | P. 336 |
| | ⑤Chara-den | - | P. 310 |
| | Z Kisekae Tool | - | P. 137 |
| | Print setting(DPOF) | - | P. 349 |

Phonebook menu

| Function menu | Default setting | Page |
|---------------|-----------------|--------|
| Phonebook | - | P. 107 |

Settings menu

 On default settings, White, Black, Red or Blue appears according to FOMA terminal color for items that can be set on Kisekae Tool (2 P. 137). The title name of Kisekae Tool appears when Kisekae Tool settings are changed.

| Settings Phone ring tone, V.phone ring tone, V.phone ring tone, V.phone ring tone, User unset, Unknown tone: Volume 5 ISound ISelect volume Image: Comparison of the phone ring tone, V.phone ring tone, User unset, Unknown tone: Volume 5 Image: Comparison of the phone ring tone, V.phone ring tone, V.phone ring tone, User unset, Unknown tone: Volume 5 Image: Comparison of the phone ring tone, NessageR ring tone, NessageR ring tone, MessageR r | Page | Default setting | Function menu | | | |
|---|--------|---------------------------------|--------------------|--|-----------------|----------|
| | P. 119 | Payphone ring tone, User unset, | 1 phone ring vol | | | Settings |
| ring tone, SMS ring tone: Volume 5 | P. 119 | | PMail ring vol | | <u>II</u> Souna | |
| 3PushTalk tone vol Volume 5 | P. 119 | Volume 5 | BPushTalk tone vol | | | |

| | | Function menu | 1 | Default setting | Page |
|----------|-------------|------------------|-----------------------|---|------------------|
| Settings | | | 4 Setting sound vol | Key/Standby i-motion, Charge start sound, | P. 120 |
| | | | H Setting Sound Voi | Charge end sound, Timer sound: Volume 5 | F. 120 |
| | | 1 Select volume | | Pos location sound, Pos location notice, | |
| | | | 5GPS volume | Loc provision/acpt, Loc provision/notify: | P. 120 |
| | | | | Volume 5 | |
| | | | | Phone ring tone: 着信音 1 V.phone ring tone, Payphone ring tone, | D 440 |
| | | | 1 Select ring tone | User unset, Unknown tone: Phone ring tone | P. 116 |
| | | ②Select sound | Select mail tone | Mail ring tone: 着信音 2 MessageR ring tone, MessageF ring tone, SMS ring tone: Mail ring tone | P. 117 |
| | | E Select sound | BPushTalk tone | 着信音 1 | P. 117 |
| | | | 4 Setting sounds | Shutter sound: Default tone | P. 181 |
| | | | | Timer sound: TI (標準音) | P. 118 |
| | | | ■GPS tone | Pos location sound: OFF Pos location notice: 着信音 4 Loc provision/acpt: 着信音 5 Loc provision/notify: 着信音 6 | P. 118 |
| | | | 1 Vibration mode | OFF | P. 122 |
| | | | 2 Mail vibration | OFF | P. 122 |
| | _ | 3 Vibrator | | Position location, Location notification, Loc | |
| | 1 Sound | | 3GPS vibrator | provision/accept, Loc provision/notify: OFF | P. 122 |
| | | | 4 IC card vibrator | Pattern1 | P. 122 |
| | | | 1 Normal | - | P. 124 |
| | | | 2 Silent | - | P. 124 |
| | | 4 Manner mode | 3Original | Record message, Vibrator, Mic sensitivity up: ON Alarm tone, Key/Standby i-motion, Low battery alarm: OFF | P. 126 |
| | | 5 Ring output | | Ring tone, Mail ring tone: Silent | P. 124 |
| | | | 1 Mail ring time set | Earp.+speaker | P. 124 |
| | | | - | ON/3 seconds | P. 123 P. 123 |
| | | 6 Ring time | PT ring time set | 30 seconds | P. 123 |
| | | setting | 3GPS ring time set | Pos location sound, Pos location notice, Loc provision/acpt, Loc provision/notify: ON/5 seconds | P. 123 |
| | | ZSet mute ring t | ime | OFF | P. 162 |
| | | BHold/On hold | 1 Set on hold tone | On hold tone 1 | P. 67 |
| | | tone | ESet hold tone | Hold melody 1 | P. 67 |
| | | | 1 Stereo effects | Stereo/3D sound | P. 121 |
| | | 9 Sound | 2 Equalizer | Normal | P. 122 |
| | | playback | 3 Pref playback sound | Music player pref | P. 122 |
| | []]Stand-by | 们Stand-by | 1)Stand-by display | 待受画面1 (Handset color: Opal White), 待受画面2 (Handset color: Onyx Black), 待受画面3 (Handset color: Ruby Red), 待受画面4 (Handset color: Sapphire Blue)* | P. 126 |
| | | display | ■Clock display | Clock display: ON(Large) Set clock style: 待受時計1 Set disp position: Down | P. 128 |
| | | | Calendar display | OFF | P. 127 |
| | | ■Font style | | Bold | P. 143 |
| e | 2Display | 3 Personalize | 1Call/Rcv display | Picture call set: ON Outgoing calls: 電話発信1 (Handset color: Opal White), 電話発信2 (Handset color: Onyx Black), 電話発信3 (Handset color: Ruby Red), 電話発信4 (Handset color: Saphine Blue)* Incoming voice calls, Incoming video phone, Payphone, User unset, Not support: 電話着信1 (Handset color: Opal White), 電話着信2 (Handset color: Chyx Black), 電話着信3 (Handset color: Ruby Red), 電話着信4 (Handset color: Saphine | P. 129 |
| | | | | Red), 电台自启4 (Haliusel Color, Sappline Blue)* | |

* When Delete all data or Reset settings is performed, the setting will be for the Opal White handset.

| | | Function menu | ı | | Default setting | Page |
|----------|-----------|----------------|-------------|----------------------------|---|----------------------------|
| Settings | | | 2 Send | d/Rcv display | Send display: メール送信1 (Handset color: Opal White), メール送信1 (Handset color: Onx Black), メール送信3 (Handset color: Ruby Red), メール送信3 (Handset color: Sapphire Blue)* Receive display: メール受信1 (Handset color: Opal White), メール受信2 (Handset color: Ruby Red), メール受信3 (Handset color: Ruby Red), メール受信4 (Handset color: Sapphire Blue)* Mail rcvd screen: メール受信結果1 (Handset color: Opal White), メール受信結 果2 (Handset color: Ruby Red), メール 受信結果4 (Handset color: Ruby Red), メール 受信結果4 (Handset color: Sapphire Blue)* | P. 130 |
| | | 3 Personalize | 3Subi | menu image | メニュー枠1(上)/メニュー枠1(下) (Handset color: Opal White), メニュー枠2(上)/メ ニュー枠2(下) (Handset color: Onyx Black), メニュー枠3(上)/メニュー枠3(下) (Handset color: Ruby Red), メニュー枠4(上)/メニュー 枠4(下) (Handset color: Sapphire Blue)* | P. 134 |
| | | | 4 Anin | nate notices | お知らせアニメ1 (Handset color: Opal White), お知らせアニメ2 (Handset color: Onyx Black), お知らせアニメ3 (Handset color: Ruby Red), お知らせアニメ4 (Handset color: Sapphire Blue)* | P. 134 |
| | النام الم | | БSign | al/batt/s clock | Signal icon: 電界強度1 (Handset color: Opal White), 電界強度2 (Handset color: Onyx Black), 電界強度3 (Handset color: Ruby Red), 電界強度4 (Handset color: Sapphire Blue)* Battery icon: 電池残量1 (Handset color: Opal White), 電池残量2 (Handset color: Onyx Black), 電池残量3 (Handset color: Sapphire Blue)* Small clock: 時計表示1 | P. 134 |
| |]Display | | 6Ther | me color | Pure (Handset color: Opal White), PlanetBlack (Handset color: Onyx Black), PrismRed (Handset color: Ruby Red), Intelligence (Handset color: Sapphire Blue)* | P. 135 |
| | | | | 1 Phone | LED color settings: Aqua LED pattern settings: Excite | P. 139 P. 140 |
| | | | 1 Called | ■Video-phone | LED color settings: Aqua LED pattern settings: Notice | P. 139 P. 140 |
| | | | LED | 3 PushTalk | LED color settings: Sun set LED pattern settings: Morse code | P. 139 P. 140 |
| | | | | 4 Missed call notice | OFF | P. 142 |
| | | | 日 Mail | 1Mail/Message LED | LED color settings: Leaf LED pattern settings: Breath New unrd mail noti: OFF | P. 139 P. 140 P. 142 |
| | | | LED | EMail send/rcv LED | ON (LED color settings: Sky LED pattern settings: Breath) | P. 140 |
| | | 4 LED settings | | 1 Position location | LED color settings: Sky | P. 140 |
| | | | 3 GPS | ELocation notification | LED color settings: Sky | P. 140 |
| | | | LED | ELoc provision/ accept | LED color settings: Sky | P. 140 |
| | | | | 4 Loc provision/ notify | LED color settings: Sky | P. 140 |
| | | | 4In-ca | | OFF | P. 141 |
| | | | 5Cha | rge end LED | OFF | P. 141 |
| | | | | m/Timer LED | ON (LED color settings: Aurora LED pattern settings: Morse code) | P. 141 |
| | | | ZIC c | ard LED | ON ON (LED color settings: Agua | P. 142 |
| | | | | ed/Viewer pos | LED pattern settings: Aqua LED pattern settings: Notice) Dpal White handset. | P. 142 |

When Delete all data is performed, the setting will be for the Opal White handset.

| | | Function men | u | | Default setting | Page |
|----------|-----------------|-------------------|-----------|------------------------------------|---|------------------|
| Settings | | 5 Vibrant image | mode | | Dynamic | P. 143 |
| - | | | 1 Nor | mal (auto bright) | - | P. 131 |
| | | | 2Nor | mal (fixed bright) | - | P. 131 |
| | | | | ver saver mode | - | P. 131 |
| | | | | 1 Display light | Normal: 10 seconds | |
| | | 6 Power saver | | time | Charging, i-mode: Same as normal Video-phone: ON | P. 131 |
| | ■Display | set | 4 User | ■Screen dsp time | 1 minute | P. 132 |
| | | | set | Screen Saver | OFF | P. 133 |
| | | | | 4Brightness | Automatic | P. 133 |
| | | | | Keypad light setting | Light | P. 132 |
| | | 7 Private filter | 1 Link | ed manner | OFF | P. 144 |
| | | D Private Inter | 2 Filte | r density | Normal | P. 144 |
| | | | 1Owr | ner Information | - | P. 379 |
| | | | 2Che | ck memory | - | P. 329 |
| | | 1Check status | 3Batt | ery level | - | P. 42 |
| | | | | ck settings | - | P. 362 |
| | | | | r dictionary | - | P. 408 |
| | | PText input | | nld dictionary | _ | P. 409 |
| | | setting | | phrase | - | P. 407 |
| | | Ĩ | | ar memory terms | - | P. 409 |
| | | <u> </u> | | power ON | OFF | P. 365 |
| | 3 General | 3Auto power | | power OFF | OFF | P. 366 |
| | settings | ON/OFF | | alarm/power ON | OFF | P. 365 |
| | | 4 Date settings | | | Auto time correction: ON | P. 45 |
| | | 5 Select language | e | | Auto time conection. ON 日本語 | P. 44 |
| | | 6USB mode set | | | 口本語 Communication mode | P. 324 |
| | | | 1Upd | ate | | P. 457 |
| | | 7 Scanning | | auto-update | - | P. 458 |
| | | function | 3 Set | | - Scan, Scan message: Enable | P. 457 |
| | | | 4 Vers | | Scan, Scan message. Enable | P. 459 |
| | | BSoftware upda | _ | | - | P. 451 |
| | | BReset settings | | | - | P. 385 |
| | | | | ck messages | - | P. 389 |
| | | | | Messages | - | P. 388 |
| | | | | vate VoiceMail | - | P. 388 |
| | | | | ring time | - | P. 388 |
| | | 1Voice Mail | | ctivate VoiceMail | - | P. 388 |
| | | U VOICE IVIAII | | us(Voice Mail) | - | P. 389 |
| | | | | e Mail setting | - | P. 389 |
| | | | | fication setting | - Vision meil alarmi ON | P. 389 |
| | | | | fication | Voice mail alarm: ON | P. 369 |
| | | | 1 Acti | | - | P. 309 P. 390 |
| | | | | ctivate | - | |
| | 4NW Services | Call waiting | | | - | P. 390 P. 390 |
| | OCI VILES | | 1 Acti | us request | - | |
| | | | | | - | P. 391 |
| | | 3Call | 2Dea | | - | P. 391 |
| | | forwarding | | ister number | - | P. 391 |
| | | | | warding No. busy | - | P. 392 |
| | | | | us request | - | P. 392 |
| | | | | ister caller | - | P. 392 |
| | | 4 Bar nuisance | _ 0 | ister selected No | - | P. 392 |
| 1 | 1 | | 1 3 Dele | ete all entries | - | P. 392 |
| | | calls | | | | |
| | | calls | 4 Dele | ete last entry ck No of entries | - | P. 392 P. 392 |

| | | Function menu | I | Default setting | Page |
|----------|------------------|----------------------|-----------------------|---|--------|
| Settings | | 5Notify caller | 1 Status request | User unset | P. 46 |
| | | ID | 2Notify caller ID | - | P. 46 |
| | | 6Caller ID | 1 Activate | - | P. 393 |
| | | request | 2Deactivate | - | P. 393 |
| | | request | Status request | - | P. 393 |
| | | ZTalk time/cost | • | - | P. 381 |
| | 4 NW Services | | 1 Activate | - | P. 395 |
| | Services | BSet arrival act | 2Deactivate | - | P. 395 |
| | | | 3 Status request | - | P. 395 |
| | | | 1 Voice Mail | - | P. 394 |
| | | 9 Arrival Call | 2Call forwarding | - | P. 394 |
| | | Act | 3Call Rejection | - | P. 394 |
| | | | 4 Answer | _ | P. 394 |
| | | | 1 Activate | - | P. 395 |
| | | 1 Remote | 2Deactivate | | P. 395 |
| | | control | 3 Status request | | P. 395 |
| | | | 1 Switching | | P. 393 |
| | | ■Dual network | EStatus request | - | P. 393 |
| | | | 1 Guidance setting | - | P. 393 |
| | | 3English guidance | | - | P. 394 |
| | | • | ②Status request | - | |
| | | 4 Service number | 1ドコモ故障問合せ | - | P. 394 |
| | | | 回ドコモ総合案内・受付 | - | P. 394 |
| | | 5 Additional | 1USSD | - | P. 396 |
| | | service | EReply message | - | P. 396 |
| | | 6Multi number | 1 Set multi number | - | P. 396 |
| | 5Other | | EStatus request | - | P. 396 |
| | NW Services | | 3Number setting | - | P. 395 |
| | | ZChaku-moji | 1 Create message | - | P. 55 |
| | | | Message display | With caller ID | P. 56 |
| | | BRoaming | 1 Activate | - | P. 415 |
| | | guidance | 2Deactivate | - | P. 415 |
| | | guidantee | Status request | - | P. 415 |
| | | | 1 Network search mode | Auto | P. 414 |
| | | | Operator name disp | display ON | P. 415 |
| | | | 3Voice Mail (Int.) | - | P. 416 |
| | | International | 4 Call Forward (Int.) | - | P. 416 |
| | | Roam. | 5Remote access(Int.) | - | P. 416 |
| | | | 6Caller ID req (Int.) | - | P. 416 |
| | | | ZRoam. guidance(Int.) | - | P. 416 |
| | | | BCall barring | - | P. 415 |
| | | | 1 Noise reduction | ON | P. 62 |
| | | 1In-call | 2Reconnect | Alarm on(high) | P. 62 |
| | | settings | 3 Quality alarm | Alarm on(high) | P. 123 |
| | | ■Ear/mic auto c | - , | OFF | P. 384 |
| | | 3 Incoming | 1 Any key answer | ON | P. 65 |
| | | settings | ESet auto answer | Phone/Videophone, PushTalk: OFF | P. 385 |
| | | Settings | 1 Redial voice call | OFF | P. 81 |
| | EPhone settings | | Set sending image | Orr Substitute image: Dimo* On hold image: テレビ電話代替 Hold image: テレビ電話代替 | P. 77 |
| | | | 3 Display setting | Show me small | P. 80 |
| | | 4 Videophone set | 4 Subscreen position | Upper left | P. 80 |
| | | sei | 5 Visual preference | Normal | P. 60 |
| | | | | Normai | P. 79 |
| | | | Notify switch mode | - | - |
| | | | Z Hands-free V.phone | ON | P. 79 |
| | | | BPacket trans arr act | V-phone priority | P. 82 |

| | | Function menu | ı | | Default setting | Page |
|----------|-------------|-----------------------|----------------|----------------------|--|--------|
| Settings | | | 1 Rec | ord message | OFF | P. 71 |
| | | 5 Record | 2 Ans | wering duration | 13 seconds | P. 72 |
| | | message | ЗRep | ly message | Reply message 1 | P. 72 |
| | | | | none reply image | テレビ電話代替 | P. 72 |
| | | | 1Call | er ID setting | No ID | P. 93 |
| | | 6Set PushTalk | 2Set | PT arrival act | Answer | P. 93 |
| | | | ЗHan | ds-free PT | ON | P. 91 |
| | | Z Set when | 1Pho | ne/Videophone | Finish call | P. 66 |
| | 6 Phone | folded | 2Pus | hTalk | Speaker phone | P. 66 |
| | settings | BSelf mode | | | OFF | P. 154 |
| | | | 1Int'l | prefix | First entry: 009130-010 | P. 61 |
| | | | 2Sub | address | ON | P. 61 |
| | | Other settings | 3Int'l | 1 Auto conversion | Int'l prefix conv: ON Country code conv: ON Country (code): Japan(+81) | P. 59 |
| | | | dial assist | 2Int'l prefix | WORLD CALL 009130-010 | P. 59 |
| | | | 000101 | Set country code | 22 country codes saved | P. 60 |
| | | 1 Secret mode | | | OFF | P. 158 |
| | | | 1 PIN | 1 code input set | OFF | P. 150 |
| | | 2 UIM Settings | 2Cha | nge PIN1 code | 0000 | P. 150 |
| | | | 3Cha | nge PIN2 code | 0000 | P. 150 |
| | | | 1 Acce | ept calls | OFF | P. 159 |
| | | | 2Reje | ect calls | OFF | P. 161 |
| | | 3 Accept/Reject | ЗReje | ect unknown | Accept | P. 162 |
| | | calls | 4 Reje | ect user unset | Accept | P. 161 |
| | | | 5Reje | ect payphone | Accept | P. 161 |
| | | | 6 Reje | ect not support | Accept | P. 161 |
| | | 4 Show call/ | 1 Sho | w rcvd calls | ON | P. 157 |
| | 7 Security | received | 2 Sho | w redial | ON | P. 157 |
| | Decunty | 5 Show sent/ | 1 Shov | w sent messages | ON | P. 157 |
| | | received | | w rcvd messages | ON | P. 157 |
| | | | 1 All lo | ock | - | P. 152 |
| | | | 2Key | pad dial lock | OFF | P. 155 |
| | | 6Lock settings | 3Fun | ction lock | OFF | P. 154 |
| | | DECCK Settings | 4IC c | ard lock | IC lock(power-on): OFF IC lock(power-off): Follow power ON | P. 276 |
| | | | 5Mult | i lock auto-set | OFF | P. 156 |
| | | Change securit | y code | | 0000 | P. 147 |
| | | BFace authentic | | | OFF | P. 148 |
| | | Delete all | 1 Dele | ete user data | - | P. 385 |
| | | data | 2Del | secret data | - | P. 386 |
| | BInitial se | ttings | | | - | P. 44 |

* テレビ電話代替 is set when Reset settings (C P. 385) is performed after **Dimo** is deleted from Chara-den.

LifeKit menu

| | Function men | u | Default setting | Page |
|---------|-------------------|------------------------|---|----------------------------|
| LifeKit | 1 Bar code reader | | - | P. 182 |
| | PReceive Ir data | | - | P. 332 P. 333 |
| | 3ToruCa | | - | P. 270 |
| | 4 IC card content | | - | P. 269 |
| | 5IC card lock | 1IC lock(power-on) | OFF | P. 276 |
| | BIC Card lock | PIC lock(power-off) | Follow power ON | P. 276 |
| | | 1 View microSD data | - | P. 321 |
| | | Backup/restore | - | P. 320 |
| | EmicroSD manager | 3Import | - | P. 325 |
| | Emicroso manager | 4 New manager info | - | P. 324 |
| | | 5Format | - | P. 323 |
| | | EUSB mode setting | Communication mode | P. 324 |
| | | 1 Position location | - | P. 278 |
| | | 2i-αppli | - | P. 279 |
| | | 3Location history | - | P. 286 |
| | ZGPS menu | 4 Set Position Loc. | GPS button setting: Read a Map Positioning mode: Standard mode | P. 279 |
| | | 5Loc. Notification/set | Positioning mode: Standard mode | P. 285 |
| | | ELoc. request menu | Loc. prov. ON/OFF: Loc. provision:OFF Positioning mode: Standard mode Host setting: Default | P. 283 |
| | BSchedule | 1 Schedule | - | P. 369 |
| | | 2ToDo list | - | P. 375 |
| | | 1 Calculator | - | P. 380 |
| | | EText memo | - | P. 382 |
| | | 3 Timer | - | P. 366 |
| | | 4 Alarm | - | P. 367 |
| | Useful functions | 5 Voice memo/Rec msg | - | P. 380 |
| | | 6 Character reader | - | P. 347 |
| | | Data Sec. Service | Send phonebook img: OFF | P. 112 P. 114 P. 163 |

Media tool menu

| | Function menu | Default setting | Page |
|------------|-----------------|-----------------|--------|
| Media tool | 1SD-Audio | - | P. 358 |
| | ■Voice recorder | - | P. 335 |
| | 3 BookReader | - | P. 344 |
| | Document Viewer | - | P. 341 |
| | 5PDF Viewer | - | P. 336 |

Pre-installed Data

Stand-by display



待受画面1 (Stand-by: 240×400)



待受画面2 (Stand-by: 240×400)



待受画面 3 (Stand-by: 240×400)



待受画面4 (Stand-by: 240×400)



待受画面 5 (Stand-by: 240×400)

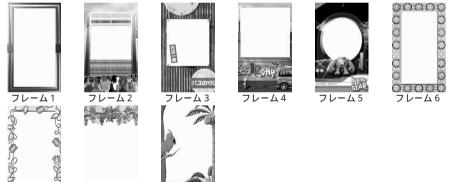


(Flash movie)



待受画面 7 (Stand-by: 240×400)

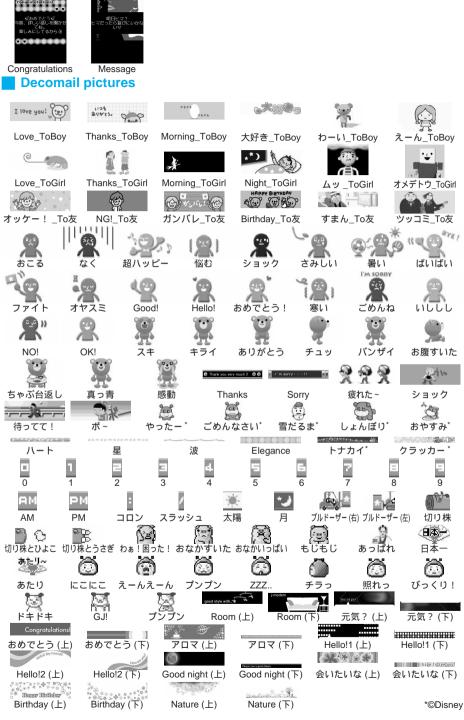
Pre-installed frames



 フレーム7
フレーム8
フレーム9 ● Each frame is available in QCIF: 176×144, QVGA: 240×320, Stand-by: 240×400, CIF: 352×288 and VGA: 480×640 sizes.

Deco-mail templates





Dial Key Assignments (5-touch)

Use dial keys to enter text. Each key has multiple characters assigned to it.

- Press the key multiple times to switch characters.
- Example: If (1) is pressed three times in double-byte katakana mode, (1) [7] (1) (1) (7) appears. (Press (2) to scroll backwards through characters.)

Double-byte Characters

| Key | <u>漢</u> Kanji (hiragana) | Double-byte katakana | Double-byte alphan | umeric input mode | Kuten | | | | | |
|----------------------|---|--|--|---|--|--|--|--|--|--|
| noy | input mode | input mode | A Upper and lower case | 2 Lower case | code mode | | | | | |
| 1 | あいうえおぁぃぅぇぉ | アイウエオァィゥェォ | . /_@ 1 [](space) | . /_@ 1 [](space) | 1 | | | | | |
| 2 | かきくけこ | カキクケコ | ABCabc2 | abc2 | 2 | | | | | |
| 3 | さしすせそ | サシスセソ | DEFdef3 | def3 | 3 | | | | | |
| 4 | たちつてとっ | タチツテトッ | GHIghi4 | ghi4 | 4 | | | | | |
| 5 | なにぬねの | ナニヌネノ | JKLjkI5 | jkI5 | 5 | | | | | |
| 6 | はひふへほ | ハヒフヘホ | MNOmno6 | mno 6 | 6 | | | | | |
| 7 | まみむめも | マミムメモ | PQRSpqrs7 | pqrs7 | 7 | | | | | |
| 8 | やゆよゃゅょ | ヤユヨャュョ | TUVtuv8 | tuv8 | 8 | | | | | |
| 9 | らりるれろ | ラリルレロ | WXYZwxyz9 | wxyz9 | 9 | | | | | |
| 0 | わをん 🗍 (space) | ワヲン 🗍 (space) | 0 (space) | 0 (space) | 0 | | | | | |
| 0~9 for 1+seconds | ·3 0~ | | | | | | | | | |
| × | له ۱۰ له ۱۰ ل | | | | | | | | | |
| # | | Double-byte symbol co | nversion (-、。!? | •) | n/a | | | | | |
| • | 1-touch conversion (previous candidate) | | Cursor up | | | | | | | |
| | Normal conversion (next candidate) | | Cursor down | ∕ ↓ ^{*1} | | | | | | |
| • | Shrink highlighted segment | | Cursor left | | | | | | | |
| | Expand highlighted segment | | Cursor right | | | | | | | |
| Ш | | Chang | je character input mode | es | | | | | | |
| for 1+seconds | | Show ' | 'Internet" preset phrase | es | | | | | | |
| | | er case characters h can be lower case) | Conversion between upper and lower case characters + Switching between upper/lower case character input modes | Conversion to upper case characters + Switching between upper/lower case character input modes | n/a | | | | | |
| for 1+seconds | | | Insert phrase | I input noodo | | | | | | |
| CLR ^{*4} | Single character deletion, canceling conversion | Single | character deletion | | Deletion of entered code or single character | | | | | |
| CLR for 1+seconds | | Deletion of all | characters in front of th | e cursor ^{*2} | | | | | | |
| | Apply, OK | | OK | | | | | | | |
| ٤ | | Show in rever | se order or undo | | Undo | | | | | |

*1 Press after confirming a character to enter a line break (4). J appears as a single-byte character but is counted as a double-byte character. Edit/delete new line mark like any other character. Available when inputting text for messages, Schedule, ToDo list and Text memo.

- *2 When characters are before/after the cursor or when characters are only after the cursor, all characters at and after the cursor are deleted.
- *3 Press a key for 1+ seconds to enter the next character assigned to the same key.
- *4 Press CLR without entering characters and the previous screen reappears.
- Some hiragana and katakana with a dakuten mark may be partially omitted.

Single-byte Characters

| Key | | Single-byte | | | | | | | | |
|----------------------|---|--|---|---|--|--|--|--|--|--|
| | Single-byte katakana mode | Upper and lower case | Cower case | Single-byte numeric input mode | | | | | | |
| 1 | アイウエオァィゥェォ | . / _ @ 1 🗒 (space) | . / _ @ 1 (space) | 1 | | | | | | |
| 2 | カキクケコ | ABCabc2 | abc2 | 2 | | | | | | |
| 3 | サシスセソ | DEFdef3 | def3 | 3 | | | | | | |
| 4 | タチツテトッ | GHIghi4 | ghi4 | 4 | | | | | | |
| 5 | ナニヌネノ | JKLjkI5 | jkl5 | 5 | | | | | | |
| 6 | ハヒフヘホ | M N O m n o 6 | mno6 | 6 | | | | | | |
| 7 | マミムメモ | PQRSpqrs7 | pqrs7 | 7 | | | | | | |
| 8 | ヤユヨャュョ | T U V t u v 8 | tuv8 | 8 | | | | | | |
| 9 | ラリルレロ | W X Y Z w x y z 9 | wхуz9 | 9 | | | | | | |
| 0 | ワヲン [] (space) | 0 🔛 (space) | 0 (space) | 0 | | | | | | |
| 0~9 for 1+seconds | | *4 *5 | | | | | | | | |
| × | ¥ له - ° * | | | | | | | | | |
| Ħ | Single-byt | e symbol conversion (- 、。 | !?·~()'",:;¥&) ^{*3} | # | | | | | | |
| Ċ | | Cursor up |) | P (during entry of a phone number) ∕Cursor up | | | | | | |
| | | Cursor do | wn∕↓ *1 | | | | | | | |
| • | | Cursor lef | ť | | | | | | | |
| | | Cursor rig | ht | | | | | | | |
| | | Change character i | nput modes | | | | | | | |
| for 1+seconds | | Show "Internet" pre | set phrases | | | | | | | |
| | Conversion to lower case characters (for characters which can be lower case) | Conversion between upper and lower case characters + Switching between upper/lower case character input modes | Conversion to upper case characters + Switching between upper/lower case character input modes | n/a | | | | | | |
| for 1+seconds | | Insert phra | ase | | | | | | | |
| CLR | | Single character | deletion | | | | | | | |
| CLR for 1+seconds | C | eletion of all characters in | front of the cursor ^{*2} | | | | | | | |
| | | OK | | | | | | | | |
| <u>ه</u> | | Show in reverse order or u | ndo | Undo | | | | | | |

*1 A line break (4) is entered. 4 appears as a single-byte character but is counted as a double-byte character. Edit/delete new line mark like any other character. Available when inputting text for messages, Schedule, ToDo list and Text memo.

*2 When characters are before/after the cursor or when characters are only after the cursor, all characters at and after the cursor are deleted.

- *3 During single-byte alphanumeric input (entering mail addresses, URL), ",", ", ", " or "." cannot be entered.
- *4 Press a key for 1+ seconds to enter the next character assigned to the same key.

*5 Press 0 for 1+ seconds to enter "+".

How characters are counted

One double-byte character is counted as two single-byte characters.

A single-byte dakuten/handakuten mark is counted as a single character.

Dial Key Assignments (2-touch)

Double-byte

Upper case mode

| \square | \setminus | | 2n | nd di | igit (| (nex | t ke | y to | ent | er) | |
|--------------------------------|--------------|---|----|-------|--------|------|------|------|-----|-----|---|
| | \backslash | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | 0 |
| | 1 | あ | ţ١ | う | え | お | А | В | С | D | Е |
| | 2 | か | き | < | け | Ľ | F | G | н | T | J |
| 1st d | 3 | t | し | す | せ | そ | К | L | М | Ν | 0 |
| 1st digit (first key to enter) | 4 | た | 5 | 2 | τ | ٤ | Ρ | Q | R | S | Т |
| (first | 5 | な | に | ぬ | ね | Ø | U | ۷ | W | Х | Υ |
| t key | 6 | は | ひ | ふ | ~ | ほ | Ζ | ? | ! | - | / |
| to e | 7 | ま | み | む | න් | も | ¥ | & | | 6 | |
| nter | 8 | や | (| ø |) | よ | ¥ | # | | ۷ | * |
| | 9 | 6 | 9 | る | ħ | 3 | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 |
| | 0 | わ | を | h | * | ۰ | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | 0 |

Single-byte

Upper case mode

| _ | | | | | | | | | | | |
|--------------------------------|--------------|---|----|------|--------------|------|------|------|------|-----|---|
| \square | \backslash | | 2n | d di | git | (nex | t ke | y to | ente | er) | |
| | \backslash | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | 0 |
| | 1 | 7 | 1 | ¢ | I | 7 | A | В | C | D | Ε |
| | 2 | ħ | ‡ | 1 | τ | Э | F | G | H | Ι | J |
| 1st d | 3 | ŧ | ý | λ | t | У | K | L | М | Ν | 0 |
| ligit | 4 | 9 | Ŧ | Ÿ | $\bar{\tau}$ | ŀ | Р | Q | R | S | T |
| (first | 5 | † | Ξ | 7 | À | 1 | U | ۷ | W | χ | Y |
| tkey | 6 | Λ | Ł | 7 | ^ | * | Ζ | ? | ! | - | 7 |
| toe | 7 | 7 | | 4 | × | ŧ | ¥ | å | | 6 | |
| 1st digit (first key to enter) | 8 | ŧ | (| l |) | Ξ | ¥ | # | | ¥ | * |
| | 9 | 7 | IJ | N | V | Π | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 |
| | 0 | 7 | Ŧ | Y | * | ۰ | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | 0 |

Press (8) > (0) to switch between upper case mode and lower case mode. For , characters can be entered in lower case or upper case, depending on the mode switched to.

- In double-byte lower case mode, press () (4) to enter ", " and () (5) to enter ", ".
 In single-byte lower case mode, press () (4) to enter "," and () (5) to enter ".".
- In single-byte upper case mode, and ♥ are counted as two single-byte characters.

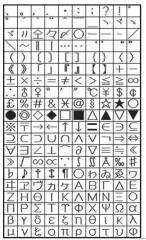
Note

- Empty boxes in charts above indicate spaces.
- For , press after entering text to switch between upper case and lower case. (b) (lower case) is only available in double-byte lower case mode.)

Symbols/Special Character List

Press in the text input screen to switch between Symbol and Pict. Press when inputting symbols to switch between *Hlfpitch* and *Fulpitch*. Press when inputting pictographs to switch among Pictograph2, PictographD (Deco-mail pictograph) (to create a mail message or signature) and Pictgraph1.

Double-byte symbols/special characters



ΨωΑΒΒΓΙΔΕ зийклмноп P СТУФХЦЧШЩ ЫЬЭЮЯабвг Ъ еёжзийклм Д опрстуфх Ш Н ЧЩЩЪЫЬЭЮЯ ┙┶┢┯ Г٦ ŀĮ L $F \rightarrow I \rightarrow \rightarrow F \rightarrow I$ Т +02345678920 I II III IV V VI VI VII VII IX 巴巴尼因固糊的代驗 柾 1 1 . nu 1

Single-byte symbols

| İ | " | # | \$ | % | & | , | (|) | X |
|---|---|---|----|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| + | , | - | - | 1 | : | ; | < | = | > |
| ? | 0 | [| ¥ |] | ^ | | ~ | { | T |
| } | ~ | | Г | J | | | - | * | • |

Special symbols

Special characters may not appear properly on PCs and mobile phones not supporting i-mode.

Pictograph/Emoticon List

Pictograph List

Enter reading to convert to pictographs.

Pictograph 1

| | | | | | | | | Keyword (Reading) | | | | | Picto- graph |
|------------------|----------------------|------------------|------------|---------------|------------------|----------------|------------|----------------------|--------------|------------------|----------------|----------------|-----------------------|
| はれ | × | ばすけっと、 ばすけ | 0 B | びーる、さけ | 9 | レーでぃー | \odot | かちんこ | | はた | \mathbb{P} | かわいい | \odot |
| くもり | 8 | はた | X | はんばーがー | | はーと、はあと | | ふくろ | 8 | ふりーだいやる | <u>50</u> | きす | * |
| あめ、かさ | ١ | ぼけっとべる、 ぼけべる | 8 | ぶてぃっく | A | すべーど | ۰ | べん | Ø | しゃーぶだいや る | # | びかびか、 きらきら | \$ \$ |
| ゆき | 8 | でんしゃ | | はさみ、 びよういん | X | だいや | + | ひとかげ | Д | もばきゅー | Œ | ひらめき | ÷ģ. |
| かみなり | 4 | ちかてつ | M | からおけ | e. | くろーばー、 くらぶ | • | いす | H | いち | 1 | むか、いかり | \sim |
| うずまき、 たいふう | \odot | しんかんせん | Æ | えいが | 8 | め | 90 | よる、つき | \mathbf{D} | IC . | 2 | ぱんち | B |
| きり | | くるま | 4 | やじるし、 みぎうえ | 7 | みみ | 3 | すーん | soon | さh | Ξ | ばくだん | • |
| こさめ | 1 | くるま | 4 | ゆうえんち | R | <- | ත | おん | ON! | よん、し | 4 | おんぷ | $\beta_{\mathcal{N}}$ |
| おひつじざ | Υ | ばす | | おんがく | ្ច | ちょき、ぶい | <u>B</u> | えんど | ena | ť | 5 | やじるし、 ばっど | J. |
| おうしざ | 8 | ふね | Æ | あーと | 1 | 1 1 - | ற | とけい | \odot | ろく | 6 | ねる、ねむい | ZZZ |
| ふたござ | $\underline{\Sigma}$ | ひこうき | 4 | えんげき | 3 | やじるし、 みぎした | 7 | でんわ | ⇒ | なな、しち | 0 | びっくり | ! |
| かにざ | ී | いえ | | いべんと | Ă | やじるし、 ひだりうえ | ~ | めーる | 図合 | はち | θ | びっくり | !? |
| ししざ | ઠા | びる | | ちけっと | | あし | Ť | ふぁっくす | ₩ FAX | きゅー、く | 9 | びっくり | !! |
| おとめざ | M2 | ゆうびんきょく | Ē | たばこ、 きつえん | 2 | <> | 2 | あいもーど | 8 | ぜろ | | しょうげき、 いらいら | Σζ |
| てんびんざ | Ω | びょういん | Ē | きんえん | 0 | めがね | Фr | あいもーど | 8 | はーと、はあと | Ŷ | あせ | \sim_{α} |
| さそりざ | Mt | ぎんこう | <u>BK</u> | かめら | 6 | くるまいす | <u>5</u> | め-る | \square | はーと、はあと | ۲ | あせ | 6 |
| いてざ | 7 | ぎんこう、 えーてぃーえむ | ÂTH | かばん | | しんげつ、つき | • | どこも | Ð | しつれん、 はーと、はあと | • | だっしゅ | =3 |
| లకర | 19 | ほてる | Ô | ほん | Ø | つき | 0 | どこも | 0 | はーと、はあと | ¥ [¥] | - | ~~~ |
| みずがめざ | 1444 1444 | こんびに | <u>cvs</u> | りぼん | Did | はんげつ、つき | 0 | ゆうりょう | ¥ | かお、にこ | ÷ | - | \sim |
| うおざ | \mathbf{H} | がそりん、 すたんど | 65 | ぶれぜんと | Ě | みかづき、つき | 0 | ふりー、 むりょう | Re | かお、むか | X | おーけー | <u> 0k</u> |
| すぼーつ | Ż | ちゅうしゃじょう | | ばーすでー | i ⁱ i | まんげつ、つき | \bigcirc | あいでぃー | ID | かお、かなしい | \simeq | | |
| やきゅう | \odot | しんごう | P | でんわ | ā | Nab | Ņ | かぎ、しーくれっ と、ばすわーど | Ţ | かお、かなしい | <u></u> | | |
| ごるふ | 2 | といれ | <u>İ</u> | でんわ、 けいたい | | ねこ | N-4 -05 | りたーん | <u> </u> | かお、ふらふら | ×× 0 | | |
| てにす | | れすとらん | Ψſ | めも | | よっと、 りぞーと | | くりあ | | やじるし、 ぐっど | Ĵ | | |
| さっか - | \odot | きっさてん | • | てれび | é | くりすます | 寄 | むしめがね、 るーベ、さーち | Q, | おんぷ | 5 | | |
| すきー | L. | ばー | н¢ | げーむ | æ | やじるし、 ひだりした | 4 | にゅー | NEN | おんせん | ய | | |

Pictograph 2

| | | | | | | | | | | | | Keyword (Reading) | |
|-------------------|----|---------------|-----|------------------|----------|--------------------------|-----|-------------------------|-----------|---------------|-----|----------------------|-----|
| あいあぶり | α | らぶれたー | Š. | かお、あせ | 66 | かお、かなしい | 벖 | きんし | 歴 | ちゅーりっぷ、 はな | | かたつむり | ľ |
| あいあぶり | R | れんち、こうぐ | * | かお、あせ | <u>0</u> | かお、なみだ、 かなしい | ě | あき、 くうしつ、 くうせき、 くうしゃ | 空 | ばなな | Ð | ひよこ | 0 |
| てぃーしゃつ、 しゃつ | f | えんぴつ | | かお、むか |)~(| えぬじー | NG | ごうかく | 囼 | りんご | Ŭ, | べんぎん | 2 |
| さいふ | â | おうかん | | かお、ぼけ | | くりっぷ | Ø | まんしつ、まん せき、まんしゃ | 湛 | ø | 4 | さかな | Ð |
| くちべに、 けしょう | 1 | ゆびわ | ъ | は - と | 00 00 | こびーらいと | © | やじるし、 さゆう | ŧ | もみじ | * | かお、うまい | Ĥ |
| じーんず、 じーばん、ずぼん | R | すなどけい、 とけい | 8 | おーけー、 ぐっど、ないす | 3 | ていーえむ、とれーど まーく、しょうひょう | тм | やじるし、 じょうげ | \$ | さくら | æ | かお | ŝ |
| すのぼ | Ś | じてんしゃ | de | かお、ベー | ٩. | はしる、ひと | sk. | がっこう | | おにぎり、 おむすび | | うま | 5 |
| べる、ちゃべる | S. | おちゃ、ゆのみ | Ő | かお、ういんく | 4 | まるひ | 秘 | なみ | \$ | けーき | ≜ | ぶた | E |
| どあ | - | うでどけい、 とけい | Ō | かお、にこ、 うれしい | *5 | りさいくる | æ | ふじさん、やま | | とっくり、さけ | ۵., | わいん、さけ | 9 |
| おかね、 どるぶくろ | ٢ | かお | ÷., | かお、がまん、 かなしい |)* | まるあーる、 しょうひょう | 8 | くろーばー | × | らーめん、 どんぶり | | かお、げっそり さけび | ŇŨŕ |
| ぱそこん | ц. | かお、にこ | 5 | ねこ | <u></u> | きけん、 けいこく | | さくらんぼ、 ちょり- | • | ばん、 しょくばん | 1 | | |

● The pictographs may not appear properly depending on the receiving model. In addition, pictographs may not appear properly on PCs and mobile phones not supporting i-mode. Pictographs other than ♥, ♥ and appear as spaces in SMS.

● When keyword (reading) is entered, 絵1 (Pict-1)/絵2 (Pict-2) appears after the conversion candidate. However, even if the candidate is selected, the characters of 絵1 (Pict-1)/絵2 (Pict-2) are not entered.

Deco-mail pictograph

| 東京 二 「二 「五 三 二 <th二< th=""> <th二< th=""></th二<></th二<> | Title | Deco-mail pict | Title | Deco-mail pict | Title | Deco-mail pict | Title | Deco-mail pict | Title | Deco-mail pict | Title | Deco-mail pict | Title | Deco-mail pict |
|--|-------|--------------------------------------|-------|-------------------|------------|--------------------|-------|-------------------|------------|-------------------|------------|--|-------|-------------------|
| b-11 二 花 2 ※ サラグ (2) たる (2) 取 (2) うさぎ 388 (2) うさぎ 388 (2) | 笑う | · ^ [] | 花 1 | | 定食 | 6 | 自転車 | 55 | 公園 | IJ | | ÷. | ねこ感謝 | |
| 二つつ口 ① 花園 小 相理 ① 7 8 合 合 6 8 7 2 5 | わーい | ~ 1 | 花 2 | * | サラダ | | 走る | 光 | 噴水 | õ | | 3 | うさぎ感謝 | |
| 9 つインク じ 中 手 中 手 院 回 時日 ① 時間 ○ 時間 ○ 市目 ○ 市目 ○ | ニッコリ | \sim | 花 3 | 0000 0000 | 料理 | Ø | マイク | 2 | 教会 | | 床屋 | Ø | | 8 |
| UPPU | ウインク | \sim | キラキラ星 | | | 2 | 時計 | \odot | | 疂 | 注射 | , inter | ねこ謝罪 | |
| number | ひや~ | $\triangleleft^{\star}_{\mathbb{A}}$ | 流れ星 | * | 幕の内弁当 | | 掃除 | D | 交番 | | 王冠 | | うさぎ謝罪 | 6.5 |
| LAN I C P C P <td>眠い</td> <td></td> <td>晴</td> <td></td> <td>ケーキ大</td> <td>City of the second</td> <td>風呂</td> <td></td> <td>郵便局</td> <td>T- 22</td> <td>ティアラ</td> <td>ġ</td> <td></td> <td></td> | 眠い | | 晴 | | ケーキ大 | City of the second | 風呂 | | 郵便局 | T- 22 | ティアラ | ġ | | |
| $2 + \frac{1}{2}$ $8 + 8 \times 3$ $\frac{1}{2} + 1 - 1$ $\frac{1}{2} + $ | 目がハート | •• | 曇 | 9 | ケーキ小 | 18 | うんち | | 家 | | 音符 | A | | 8 |
| 泣き頭 六 官 点子 大子 四 サングラス シ サッカー 全 門松 当 点んぎ 点のぎ 点の 点のぎ 点の | 冷や汗 1 | ۱, L | 傘 | A. | かき氷 | \bigcirc | 洗濯 | Ť | 野球 | 8 | 星 | str. | ねこ泣き | 2.4 |
| m_{1} | 冷や汗 2 | <u> </u> | 雨かえる | | チョコレー ト | | ドレス | Ä | バスケット | Ģ | アンテナ | Til | うさぎ泣き | |
| m r <td>泣き顔</td> <td>ð</td> <td>ŧ</td> <td>2</td> <td></td> <td>(350)</td> <td>サングラス</td> <td>Ś</td> <td>サッカー</td> <td>æ.</td> <td>門松</td> <td><u></u></td> <td></td> <td>8</td> | 泣き顔 | ð | ŧ | 2 | | (350) | サングラス | Ś | サッカー | æ. | 門松 | <u></u> | | 8 |
| χ_{AU} <th< td=""><td>悲しい</td><td></td><td>睭</td><td>G.</td><td>ドーナツ</td><td>0</td><td>スーツ</td><td>8</td><td></td><td>頃</td><td>羽子板</td><td>and the second s</td><td>ねこ怒る</td><td>S. C</td></th<> | 悲しい | | 睭 | G. | ドーナツ | 0 | スーツ | 8 | | 頃 | 羽子板 | and the second s | ねこ怒る | S. C |
| $m \sim$ $(y - \mu)$ | 我慢 | *(| メール | Ø | | Ø | | 8 | 卓球 | Ś | 鏡餅 | 4 | うさぎ怒る | |
| 照照 火 相信 リ グシ グ グ グ ブ グ <td>泣く</td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td>Ø</td> <td>ネクタイ</td> <td>Ā</td> <td>スキー</td> <td>N.S.</td> <td>富士山</td> <td>2</td> <td></td> <td>S.</td> | 泣く | | | | | Ø | ネクタイ | Ā | スキー | N.S. | 富士山 | 2 | | S. |
| 3.5 < 5.4 $31 < 1.5$ $1.5 < 1.5$ $1.5 < 1.5$ $1.5 < 1.5$ $1.5 < 1.5$ $1.5 < 1.5 < 1.5$ $1.5 < 1.5 < 1.5 < 1.5 < 1.5 1.5 < 1.5 < 1.5 < 1.5 1.5 < 1.5 < 1.5 1.5 < 1.5 < 1.5 1.5 < 1.5 < 1.5 1.5 < 1.5 < 1.5 1.5 < 1.5 < 1.5 1.5 < 1.5 < 1.5 1.5 < 1.5 < 1.5 1.5 < 1.5 < 1.5 1.5 < 1.5 < 1.5 1.5 < 1.5 < 1.5 1.5 < 1.5 1.5 < 1.5 1.5 < 1.5 1.5 < 1.5 1.5 < 1.5 1.5 < 1.5 1.5 < 1.5 1.5 < 1.5 1.5 < 1.5 1.5 < 1.5 1.5 < 1.5 1.5 < 1.5 1.5 < 1.5 1.5 < 1.5 1.5 < 1.5 1.5 < 1.5 1.5 < 1.5 1.5 < 1.5 1.5 < 1.5 1.5 < 1.5 1.5 < 1.5 1.5 < 1.5 1.5 < 1.5 1.5 < 1.5 1.5 < 1.5 1.5 < 1.5 1.5 < 1.5 1.5 < 1.5 1.5 < 1.5 1.5 < 1.5 1.5 < 1.5 1.5 < 1.5 1.5 < 1.5 1.5 < 1.5 1.5 < 1.5 1.5 < 1.5 1.5 < 1.5 1.5 < 1.5 1.5 < 1.5 1.5 < 1.5 1.5 < 1.5 1.5 < 1.5 1.5 < 1.5 1.5 < 1.5 1.5 < 1.5 1.5 < 1.5 1.5 < 1.5 1.5 < 1.5 $ | 怒る | \times | 着信 | 9 | プリン | 6 | Gパン | Α | | 3 | バレンタイ ン | LOVE | べんぎん | 8 |
| げっそり い い かかん 本 本 グ アニス い 日夕 取 アイス もうイヤ い 走る人 ・・・・ 前 かん ・ スニーカー ジ 的り ご うちり ご $the 30$ い い い $the 30$ い い い $the 30$ い | ぷっくっく | 57 | コーヒー | Ũ | せんべい | | スカート | | ゴルフ | S A | ひなまつり | ė | | 1. S |
| 古人 山 山 山 スニーカー グ 釣り ブ ブ $D_{NII}^{(1)}(x)$ ご $D_{NII}^{(1)}(x)$ | ベー | ц × Ш | ジュース | Í | いちご | ۲ | ハイヒール | a | サーフィン | (the | 花見 | 12.2 | うさぎ焦り | |
| $\pm \pm 4$ | げっそり | 67 | ビール | P | みかん | 6 | 革靴 | 3 | テニス | P | 七夕 | 1 | | ٢ |
| $\Lambda' \Lambda' \Lambda' \Lambda'$ $\mu \Lambda' \Lambda' \Lambda' \Lambda' \Lambda' \Lambda' \Lambda' \Lambda' \Lambda' \Lambda' \Lambda' \Lambda' \Lambda' $ | 走る人 | -:H | 乾杯 | ាម | りんご | Č | スニーカー | Ð | 釣り | ъſ | うちわ | 0 | かぶりくま | 3 |
| y - y $z = 0$ $y - y$ $v = 0$ | バイバイ | TW | 日本酒 | ඬ | さくらんぼ | 4 | | 8 | ヨガ | \$ | 線香花火 | | かぶりくま | |
| BAD! C A C 72^{-1} </td <td>グッド</td> <td><u>4</u></td> <td>赤ワイン</td> <td>7Ô</td> <td>ぶどう</td> <td>Ŵ</td> <td></td> <td>5</td> <td>ウォーキン グ</td> <td>Ŕ</td> <td>花火</td> <td></td> <td>吹き出し1</td> <td>\bigcirc</td> | グッド | <u>4</u> | 赤ワイン | 7Ô | ぶどう | Ŵ | | 5 | ウォーキン グ | Ŕ | 花火 | | 吹き出し1 | \bigcirc |
| BAD! CitA CAA D $7_{2}\gamma_{1}^{2}$ M $\gamma_{2}^{2}\sqrt{2}$ γ_{2}^{2} < | ок | Se la | カクテル | Ţ | バナナ | Ś | | | ノートPC | Į, | クリスマス 1 | in the | 吹き出し2 | 33 |
| (X,Y) | BAD ! | Ę. | ごはん | \bigcirc | スイカ | ٥ | ブランド | 8 | 携帯クラム | ۵ | クリスマス 2 | 1 | 吹き出し3 | |
| (T,T,T,T) M | ピース! | k | 寿司 | ۲ | | ð | | | | 8 | 誕生日 | | 着もじ | 着 |
| (グワン) ハンバー ガー 一 柿 一 デ根 (グワン) 一 一 一 一 一 ブリン | パチパチ | b.C | おにぎり | | | \bigcirc | 病院 | . | | 21 | 結婚式 | 1 | テレビ電話 | F. |
| $(3'')_{L-}$ <t< td=""><td></td><td>Ĵ</td><td>食パン</td><td></td><td>メロン</td><td>Õ</td><td>遊園地</td><td></td><td>ヘッドホン</td><td>B</td><td>旅行</td><td>വ</td><td></td><td>プッシュ</td></t<> | | Ĵ | 食パン | | メロン | Õ | 遊園地 | | ヘッドホン | B | 旅行 | വ | | プッシュ |
| $\Lambda - h$ $M \doteq h$ $M = h$ | 矢印 | 7 | | 0 | 柿 | | 学校 | Ð | | 10 | | z | | ů, |
| $\Lambda - 1 \wedge 1$ | | | | 495 A | 電車 | <u>î</u> | 会社 | 222 | | | Dimo | ø | | 胞 |
| $31/-h$ $*$ $7-\lambda^2$ $*$ F I | ハート大 | φ | ステーキ | 3 | バス | | プール | 1000 | キャンディ | \$0% | | S | ありがとう | |
| 3/ハート大 バスタ ※ タクシー ガソリン 近 デューリッ アイス ジ かマイン ジ 市やすみ 評価 ハートブ 小 小 シ 救急車 奈 カジリン シ パラ シ アイス 高び ジ ト ト ハートブ 小 シ 教急車 奈 カジー シ カレー シ シ アイス 高び ジ ト ト シ ト シ ト シ ト シ ト シ ト シ ト シ ト シ シ ト シ シ ト シ シ ト シ シ ト シ シ ト シ シ ト シ シ ト シ <td< td=""><td>3ハート</td><td>4 4 9</td><td>ラーメン</td><td>۲</td><td>車</td><td>-</td><td>ホテル</td><td></td><td>天使の羽</td><td>90</td><td>かぶりくま</td><td>÷</td><td>おはよう</td><td></td></td<> | 3ハート | 4 4 9 | ラーメン | ۲ | 車 | - | ホテル | | 天使の羽 | 90 | かぶりくま | ÷ | おはよう | |
| $\Lambda - h T$ \checkmark $h \nu \checkmark$ $h 2 \mu$ <th< td=""><td>3ハート大</td><td></td><td>パスタ</td><td>۲</td><td>タクシー</td><td></td><td></td><td>8</td><td>チューリッ プ</td><td></td><td>アイス</td><td></td><td>おやすみ</td><td></td></th<> | 3ハート大 | | パスタ | ۲ | タクシー | | | 8 | チューリッ プ | | アイス | | おやすみ | |
| バートブ レーク2 ●● おでん ●● パトカー ●● 工場 ■ きのこ ●● なんぎん ●● リボン ●● オルト ◎○ 飛行機 ●● 灯台 ■■ てんとう虫 ●● ねこ喜び ●● 音符1 ●● 焼肉 ■■ オートバイ ●● 大仏 ◎風 蝶 ○○ うさぎ喜び ●● 音符2 ●● カッサ ●● スクーター ▶● 佐号 ●● チューリッ ●● へんぎん ●● | | * | カレー | | 救急車 | | カラオケ | 1 | バラ | | | (E | | |
| リボン 評 ナルト ジ 飛行機 ジ 灯台 評 てんとう虫 ※ ねこ喜び づ 音符1 シ 焼肉 二 オートバイ ふ 大仏 「説 「ジ うさぎ喜び ご 音符2 シ カツ井 () スクーター ブ 信号 () チューリッ ** べんぎん () | ハートブ | • | おでん | ×S | パトカー | | | ब | きのこ | R | | 8 | | |
| | · · - | 34 | ナルト | Ø | 飛行機 | B | 灯台 | | てんとう虫 | 35 | | N. | | |
| 音符2 カツ井 🍘 スクーター 🎜 信号 🚗 チューリッ 👔 べんぎん 👩 🛛 | 音符1 | \$ | 焼肉 | Dest | オートバイ | d to | 大仏 | | 蝶 | Ŷ | うさぎ喜び | | | |
| | 音符 2 | | カツ丼 | 0 | スクーター | đã | 信号 | 008 | チューリッ プ | 24 | | 8 | | |

* ©Disney

Deco-mail pictographs may not appear properly depending on the other party's model. In addition, Deco-mail
pictographs may not appear properly on PCs and mobile phones not supporting i-mode.

• If Deco-mail is sent to a Deco-mail unsupported terminal, a URL is sent in the message text. The recipient must select the mail with the URL to view Deco-mail.

Emoticon List

| (^0^) | (+_+) | (^^ < | Φ() | (^^)Y☆Y(^^) |
|---------|---------|--------|----------------------------------|----------------|
| 0(^-^)0 | () | (☆_☆) | (^人^) | 0(^-^0)(0^-^)0 |
| (^0^)/ | (v_v) | (ノ><)ノ | <()> | (ノ゚ロ゚)ノ |
| p(^^)q | (T_T) | (#) | (́Д`) | (° 0°)\() |
| (>_<) | (¥_¥) | (";) | \(^^^:;) | (UoU) |
| (X_X) | (@_@) | (メ) | (#^.^#) | (^^)\\(° °) |
| m()m | (?_?) | (°∇°) | (^ 0) = 3 | \^ 0 ^ / |
| f^_^; | (;_;) | !(^^)! | (;) | () |
| (:_;) | (0_0) | 0(><)0 | (~ ;) | ??(°Q.)?? |
| (;) | (^_^) | (。。;) | (⁻ ∇ ⁻ ;) | (^)-☆ |

• Alternatively enter $\hbar \delta$ (Face) to view emoticon candidates and enter into text.

Phrase List

| | 1 | おはようございます | | 1 | 0Kです |
|-----------|---|--------------------|-----------------|---|---------------|
| | 2 | おやすみなさい | | 2 | NGです |
| | 3 | 昨日は、どうもありがとうございました | | 3 | ありがとう |
| ଦ୍ | 4 | 行ってきます | _ | 4 | ごめんなさい |
| eet | 5 | いってらっしゃい | Reply | 5 | 待ってて |
| Greetings | 6 | お疲れ様でした | Ř | 6 | 今忙しい |
| S | 7 | お世話になっております | | 7 | 後で連絡入れます |
| | 8 | こんにちは | | 8 | |
| | 9 | こんばんは | | 9 | キャンセルです |
| | 1 | 直行します | | 1 | .ne.jp |
| | 2 | 直帰します | | 2 | .co.jp |
| _ | 3 | 休暇をとります | | 3 | .ac.jp |
| Business | 4 | 半休します | Int | 4 | .or.jp |
| in | 5 | 電車遅延のため、遅れます | Internet | 5 | .go.jp |
| ess | 6 | 本日の会議は中止となりました | let | 6 | .com |
| | 7 | 出欠をご連絡ください | | 7 | @docomo.ne.jp |
| | 8 | 次の指示を待ってください | | 8 | http:// |
| | 9 | 携帯の電源を切ります | | 9 | www. |
| | 1 | 遊びに行こう | | 1 | |
| | 2 | 飲みに行きませんか? | | 2 | |
| | 3 | 遅れます | nic | 3 | |
| Pr | 4 | 変更します | gina | 4 | |
| Private | 5 | 中止です | Original phrase | 5 | |
| fē | 6 | 先に行きます | hra | 6 | |
| | 7 | 先に帰ります | ase | 7 | |
| | 8 | 時間です | | 8 | |
| | 9 | 何してるの? | | 9 | |

• Original phrases are not registered in handset at the time of purchase.

Using the Calculator

Example of various calculations

| | Exan | ple calculations | Operation | Displayed result |
|---------------------|----------------------|--|--|--------------------------------|
| Add | ition,subtraction, | 14×3+5= | 14[×]3[+]5[=] | 47 |
| muli | iplication, division | (−24)÷4−2= | [—]24[÷]4[—]2[=] | -8 |
| Co | nstants | $34 \pm 57 =$ $45 \pm 57 =$ | 34[+]57[=] (The addend becomes) 45 [=] (the constant.) | 91 102 |
| | | 48 <u>-23</u> = 14 <u>-23</u> = | $\begin{array}{c} 48[-]23[=] \\ 14 [=] \end{array} \left(\begin{array}{c} \text{The subtrahend} \\ \text{becomes the constant.} \end{array} \right)$ | 25 —9 |
| | | $68 \times 25 = 68 \times 40 =$ | | 1,700 2,720 |
| | | 35 <u>÷14</u> = 98 <u>÷14</u> = | $35[\div]14[=]$ (The divisor 98 [=] (becomes the constant.) | 2.5 7 |
| Per | centages | What is 10% of 200? | 200[×]10[%] | 20 |
| | | 9 is what % of 36? | 9[÷]36[%] | 25 |
| Co | nsumption | How much tax is included in 3,000 yen? | 3000[TAX] | 142 tax |
| tax | calculation | How much is 3,000 yen without tax? | 3000[TAX][TAX] | 2,858 w/o tax |
| | miums, | 10% increase of 200? | 200[+]10[%] (Or 200[×]10[%][+][=]) | 220 |
| dis | counts | 20% discount of 500? | 500[-]20[%] (Or 500[×]20[%][-][=]) | 400 |
| Po | wers | $(4^3)^2 =$ | $4[\times][=][=][\times][=]$ | 4,096 |
| Inv | erse numbers | 1/8= | 8[÷][=] | 0.125 |
| Memory calculations | Sum | $27 \times 5 =$ +)87 ÷ 3 = $\frac{+)68 + 15 =}{(Sum) =}$ | $ \begin{bmatrix} CM]27[\times]5[M+] \\ 87[\div]3[M+] \\ 68[+]15[M+] \\ RM] \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} [M+] \\ also functions \\ as a [=] \end{bmatrix} $ | M 135 M 29 M 83 M 247 |
| calc | Temporary memory | $(13+3\times4)\times(50-45)=$ | [CM]13[M+]3[×]4[M+]50[-]45[×][RM][=] | M 125 |
| ulati | Constant | (13+3)(12+14) = | [CM] 12[+]14[M+] | M 26 |
| ons | memory | $(12+14) \div 5 =$ | 135[×][RM][=] [RM][÷]5[=] | M 3,510 M 5.2 |

• M appears when a value other than O is in memory.

Note

- Press [CM] to clear the memory before starting.
- Numbers after the decimal point are left off when calculating tax. Example: If 120 [TAX] is pressed, **5Tax** appears.

When E appears

• When **E** appears as a result, no further calculations can be made. Press ER [C•CE].

When dividing by 0 (Example: 5 [÷] 0 [=])

When the number of integers in the memory exceeds 12 digits (Example: [CM] 99999999999999 [M+] 1 [M+]). When the number of integers in a calculation is 12 digits or more (Example: 1000000000 [÷] 0.01 [%]).

Multiaccess Combinations

Below are the main combinations of transmission functions operable simultaneously.

| Transmission type | Voice | e call | Vid pho | | i mada | i-m m | | SN | IS | Da tra (pac | ns. | Data t (64 | rans. IK) | Push | Talk | | Position- |
|-------------------------|-------|---------|------------|---------|--------|----------|---------|------|---------|-------------------|---------|---------------|--------------|------|------|----------------------------|-----------------|
| Current transmission | Make | Receive | Make | Receive | i-mode | | Receive | Send | Receive | Send | Receive | Send | Receive | Send | | Network connec- tion | ing location |
| Phone | *1 | *1 | × | *2 | | | | | | | | × | × *5 | × | × *5 | × | |

| Transmission type | Voice | e call | | eo- one | : mada | m | ode ail | SI | IS | tra | ata ns. :ket) | Data (64 | trans. IK) | Push | nTalk | Push Talk Plus | Position- |
|--|-------|---------|------|------------|--------|----|------------|------|---------|------|---------------------|-------------|---------------|------|---------|----------------------------|-----------------|
| Current transmission | Make | Receive | Make | Receive | i-mode | | Receive | Send | Receive | Send | Receive | Send | Receive | Send | Receive | Network connec- tion | ing location |
| Videophone | × | × *5 | × | × *5 | × | × | × | × | | × | × | × | × *5 | × | × | × | × |
| i-mode | | | *7 | *3 | × | | | | | × | × | × | × *5 | *4 | *8 | × | |
| i-αppli transmission | *4 | *4 | *4 | *3 | × | *4 | | *4 | | × | × | × | × *5 | *4 | *8 | × | *4 |
| Transmitting data (packet) | | | × | × *5 | × | × | × | × | | × | × | × | × *5 | × | × | × | × |
| Transmitting data (64K) | × | × *5 | × | × *5 | × | × | × | × | | × | × | × | × *5 | × | × | × | × |
| PushTalk transmission | × | *6 | × | × *5 | × | × | × | × | | × | × | × | × *5 | × *9 | × *5 | × | × |
| PushTalk Plus (Network connection) | | | × | × *5 | × | × | × | × | | × | × | × | × *5 | | | × | × |

: Current transmission is retained and new transmission is processed.

x : Current transmission is retained. (Cannot process new transmission.)

: New transmission is processed depending on the condition.

*1 Available when subscribed to Call waiting. (P P. 390)

*2 Continue voice call, or disconnect and receive Videophone call when subscribed to Call waiting.

*3 Receive a Videophone call or continue packet transmission. (@P. 82)

*4 i-mode/i- α ppli transmission is disconnected and new transmission is processed.

*5 The call is saved in Received calls.

*6 When Set PT arrival act is set to Call Rejection (Default setting: Answer), the current PushTalk call is continued. Change Set PT arrival act to a setting other than Call Rejection to answer a voice call during a PushTalk call. (CP P. 93) After the setting is changed, PushTalk transmission is terminated if voice call is received and answered. If the voice call is ignored, the PushTalk is not terminated.

*7 Videophone call is transmitted after disconnecting i-mode connection.

*8 When *i-mode arrival act* is set to *PushTalk preferred* (default setting), i-mode and i-αppli transmissions are disconnected and new transmission is processed. (CPP P. 205)

*9 Sending a transmission to add a member is possible only when a PushTalk sender is Myself.

Multi Assistant (Multitask) Combinations

Below are the main combinations available with Multi Assistant (Multitask).

| Additional function | Power saver set/ToDo/GPS | Manner mode/ | Mail/Read mail/ | Multi Assistant screen | Call from history/ | i-mode | i-mode bookmark | Browser bookmark/ | Search the Internet/ | Full Browser/i-Channel/ | i-αppli | BookReader | Supportbook/ | Data box | Open phonebook | Phonebook/ | Schedule/View schedule | Calculator | Text memo | Dial Input/Phone | Videophone/SD-Audio | PushTalk calling/ | Document viewer | ToruCa |
|---------------------------------|--------------------------|--------------|-----------------|------------------------|--------------------|--------|-----------------|-------------------|----------------------|-------------------------|---------|------------|--------------|----------|----------------|------------|------------------------|------------|-----------|------------------|---------------------|-------------------|-----------------|--------|
| i-appli | | | | | | × | | > | (| | × | > | ĸ | × | | | | | | | | | × | × |
| PDF viewer | | | | | | × | | | | | × | | | × | | | | | | | | | × | |
| SD-Audio | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Phonebook/PushTalk phonebook | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | > | ¢ | | | | | | | | |
| Text memo | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | × | | | | | |
| Calculator | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | × | | | | | | |
| Chara-den player | | | | | | | | | | | × | | | × | | | | | | | | | | |
| Schedule | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | × | | | | | | | |
| Data box | | | | | | | | | | | × | | | × | | | | | | | | | | |
| Voice call | | | | | | | | | | | | | | × | | | | | | | > | , | | |
| BookReader/Document viewer | | | | | | | | | | | × | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| ToruCa | | | | | | | | | | | × | | | | | | | | | | | | | × |
| i-mode | | | | | | × | | > | ‹ | | × | | | | | | | | | | | | × | |
| Full Browser/i-Channel | | | | | | × | | > | ‹ | | × | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Mail/Compose message | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Data transmission (packet) | | × | | | | × | | > | ‹ | | × | > | × | × | | | × | × | × | | > | ¢ | × | × |

: Available function

- x: Unavailable function (Displayed in gray.)
- Multi Assistant may not be available when using a function not listed under "Current function" in the table.
- Combinations shown in the table may not be entirely correct depending on the status of the application.
- Multi Assistant is sometimes not available as shown above when memory is running low.
- Document Viewer may not be available when searching in i-mode, Full Browser or Internet.
- Press in the Multi Assistant screen to recall dial input.
- The simultaneous execution of activating SD-Audio and using the microSD Memory Card from other functions is impossible.

Services Available from the FOMA Terminal

| Ser | vice | Phone number |
|---|--------------------|---------------------------|
| Collect call (recipient is charged for call |) | (No area code) 106 |
| General landline and DoCoMo mobile p (Phone numbers of customers who dec | | (No area code) 104 |
| Telegrams (fees apply) | (No area code) 115 | |
| Time tone service (fees apply) | | (No area code) 117 |
| Weather forecast (fees apply) | | Area code of region + 177 |
| Police emergencies | | (No area code) 110 |
| Fire department/Medical assistance | | (No area code) 119 |
| Emergencies and accidents at sea | | (No area code) 118 |
| Busy signal inquiries | | (No area code) 114 |
| Disaster message (fees apply) | | (No area code) 171 |

Note

- An additional 90 yen (94.5 yen including tax) handling fee is charged for each call when collect calls (106) are made. (As of October 2006)
- An additional 100 yen (105 yen including tax) directory fee is charged when using directory assistance (104).
 People with disabilities in vision or upper limbs can receive this service free of charge. For details, call 116 (NTT sales counter) from a landline phone. (As of October 2006)
- When calling 110, 119, and 118 from your FOMA terminal, your location cannot be pinpointed. For verification purposes, the police or fire stations may return your call. State that you are calling from a mobile phone, and give your phone number and exact location. Remain stationary to ensure that you are not disconnected while making an emergency call, and keep

handset turned on to receive calls for about ten minutes afterwards.
Depending on the region, calls to the police or fire station may not be connected. In such cases, use the nearest payphone or landline phone.

- If landline phones subscribed to Call forwarding is set to forward calls to mobile phones, callers may hear the phone ringing even if the mobile phone is busy, outside the service area, in Self mode or turned off depending on the settings for the landline phones/mobile phones.
- Services such as 116 (NTT sales counter), Dial Q2, message service and credit card calls are not available. (Automatic credit card calls to a FOMA terminal can be made from a landline telephone or payphone.)

Options and Accessories

Combine the FOMA terminal with various optional accessories (sold separately) for expanded personal and business use.

Some products may not be available in certain areas. Contact a DoCoMo Shop or retailer for details.

Refer to the user's guide of each product for more details.

- FOMA AC Adapter 01
- Battery Pack SH09
- Desktop Holder SH11
- Back Cover SH12
- FOMA DC Adapter 01
- Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch P01/P02
- Earphone Plug Adapter P001
- Earphone/Microphone with Switch P001*1/P002*1
- Stereo Earphone Set P001*1
- Earphone Terminal P001*1
- Bone Conduction Microphone/Receiver 01

- FOMA Indoor Supplementary Antenna
- FOMA USB Cable
- Flat-plug Stereo Earphone Set P01
- Flat-plug AV Output Cable P01
- FOMA AC Adapter 01 for Global use^{*2}
- In-car Hands-free Kit 01^{*3}
- FOMA In-car Hands-free Cable 01
- In-car Folder 01^{*4}
- FOMA Dry Cell Battery Adapter 01
- Carry Case L 01
- *1 Earphone/Microphone with switch, Stereo earphone set and Earphone terminal cannot be used without Earphone plug adapter.
- *2 To use the adapter overseas, a conversion plug adapter that is compatible with the voltage of your country of stay is required.
- *3 FOMA in-car hands-free cable 01 is required to connect to FOMA SH903i.
- *4 Activate Side key guard settings to use the in-car folder 01.

Using with External Devices

Using supported external devices, play back movies saved on microSD Memory Cards on the FOMA terminal^{*}.

microSD Memory Cards are sold separately. Purchase microSD Memory Cards at home electronics shops. (2 P. 316)

For details on compatible devices, refer to *http://k-tai.sharp.co.jp/support/d/sh903i/*. Or, contact the number below.

- Play i-motion created on external devices (including audio data) on the FOMA terminal. (1 P. 356)
- * Some movies cannot be played back depending on the file format or the type of external device.

Sharp Data Communication Support Center TEL: 03-5396-2351 Hours: 10:00 am to 12:00 noon, 1:00 pm to 5:00 pm, Monday through Friday (Closed on weekends, national holidays, and company holidays)

• Check the phone number carefully before dialing.

About Movie Player Software

QuickTime[™] Player (Free) ver. 6.4 or later (or ver. 6.3+3GPP) provided by Apple Computer, Inc. is required to play back movies on a PC.

QuickTime[™] Player can be downloaded from the Apple Computer, Inc. web page.

http://www.apple.com/jp/quicktime/download/

- To download, a PC connected to the Internet is required. Additional transmission fees are charged for downloading.
- Refer to the Apple Computer, Inc. web page for details on the operating environment, downloading, and usage instructions.

Data Link Software

DoCoMo keitai datalink

Use DoCoMo keitai datalink software to back up the data (phonebook, mail, etc.) from the user's phone to a PC and edit them. The software can be downloaded from an NTT DoCoMo web page. Refer to the following URL for details and downloading. Alternatively, access the following page using the included CD-ROM.

http://datalink.nttdocomo.co.jp/?SH903i

Refer to the web page above for details on downloading, transferable data, operating environment, installing, operating instructions, restrictions, etc.

Refer to the software's help feature for the operation procedure after installation.

A FOMA USB cable (sold separately) is required to use DoCoMo keitai datalink.

Compatible OS

Windows 2000/Windows XP (all Japanese versions) Above OS compatible PC/AT models

Troubleshooting

Check to see if software update is necessary. If so, perform update. (Updating Software 27 P. 451)

| Problem | Explanation | Page |
|--------------------------|---|--------|
| Does not function | Is the FOMA terminal turned off? | P. 43 |
| | Is the battery level sufficient? | P. 42 |
| | Is the battery pack inserted properly? | P. 38 |
| Does not turn on | Was pressed for 2+ seconds? | P. 43 |
| | Is the battery level sufficient? | P. 42 |
| | If handset does not turn on after alert tone sounds, recharge the | |
| | battery. | |
| | Is the battery pack inserted properly? | P. 38 |
| Power turns off | Is the IC portion of the FOMA card dirty? | P. 35 |
| | Is the battery pack connector terminal or FOMA terminal charger | P. 38 |
| | terminal dirty? | |
| Does not recharge | Is the battery pack inserted properly? | P. 38 |
| | Is the temperature of the FOMA terminal or battery high? | P. 39 |
| | Is the charger terminal dirty? | - |
| | Clean terminal with a cotton swab. | |
| | • Is the AC adapter connector properly connected to the FOMA terminal | P. 40 |
| | and Desktop holder? | P. 41 |
| | Is the FOMA terminal properly set in the Desktop holder? | P. 41 |
| Handset is recharged but | Is the FOMA terminal properly set in the Desktop holder? | P. 41 |
| quickly loses power | Is the battery still usable? | P. 39 |
| | Is the charger terminal dirty? | - |
| | Clean terminal with a cotton swab. | |
| | Battery duration varies depending on handset use. | P. 39 |
| Keys do not respond | Is the FOMA terminal turned off? | P. 43 |
| | Is All lock or Key guard active? | P. 152 |
| | | P. 157 |
| appears and calls | • Is the handset outside the service area or in a place with a weak signal? | P. 28 |
| cannot be made | | |
| self appears and calls | Is Self mode set? | P. 154 |
| cannot be made | | |

| Problem | Explanation | Page |
|--|---|----------------|
| Calls cannot be made | Is phonebook Function lock set? | P. 154 |
| from the phonebook | Is All lock enabled? | P. 152 |
| Calls cannot be made | Is Keypad dial lock set? | P. 155 |
| with the dial keys | Is All lock enabled? | P. 152 |
| Busy signal sounds after | • Was 090, 080, 070 or the area code dialed? | P. 48 |
| dialing | • Does 📾 appear? | P. 28 |
| | If the other party's signal is weak, the call may not connect. | - |
| Call is interrupted or | Is the handset in an area with a weak signal? | P. 28 |
| disconnects | Is the battery level sufficient? | P. 42 |
| The other party's voice is | Is the earpiece volume too high? | P. 66 |
| too loud or is distorted | | |
| Clicks sound during a call | The FOMA terminal has a weak signal and is switching areas. | - |
| When saving to | Is Show sent messages or Show received messages set to OFF? | P. 157 |
| phonebook, cannot select | | |
| Sent messages or Rcvd | | |
| messages | | |
| When a message is | Is Receive display set to Operation first? | P. 245 |
| received, set ring tone | | |
| does not sound | | |
| Ring tone does not sound | • Is the phone ring volume set to <i>Silent</i> ? | P. 119 |
| | Is the battery level sufficient? | P. 42 |
| | Is the FOMA terminal turned off? | P. 43 |
| | Is a call in progress? Is a call on hold? | P. 63 P. 67 |
| | Is Ring start time set? | P. 162 |
| | Is Accept calls set? | P. 159 |
| | Is Reject calls set? | P. 161 |
| | Is Reject by reason of non-disclosure set? | P. 161 |
| | Is Reject unknown set? | P. 162 |
| | • Is the Voice Mail Service active and is the ringing time set to 0 seconds ? | P. 388 |
| | Is Public mode (Drive mode) active? | P. 68 |
| | Is Manner mode active? | P. 124 |
| When a message is received, a different ring | When a specific mail ring tone is saved in the phonebook for a particular individual, that mail ring tone sounds. | P. 100 |
| tone sounds | When a specific mail ring tone is saved in the phonebook for a | P. 105 |
| | particular group, that mail ring tone sounds. | 1.100 |
| | When different mail ring tones are set for both individual and group, the | P. 117 |
| | mail ring tone for the individual sounds. | |
| | • When multiple messages are received, the specific mail ring tone of the | - |
| | last person sounds. When the other party's mail address is <i>phone number@docomo.ne.jp</i>. | P. 100 |
| | when the other party's mail address is phone number (address is phone number (address and set a specific mail) | 1.100 |
| | ring tone. | |
| | Is the sender's mail address saved correctly in the phonebook or is a | P. 100 |
| | specific mail ring tone set? | |
| | When SMS is received, specified mail ring tone sounds if set in phonebook. | - |
| | Is the phone number saved correctly? | P. 97 |

| Problem | Explanation | Page |
|--|---|-----------------|
| When a call or mail is | When a call or mail is received from the other party for which | P. 100 |
| received, LED flashes in | phonebook called LED/phonebook mail LED is set, LED flashes | |
| another way than settings. | according to the LED settings. | |
| | • When a call or mail is received from the other party for which group | P. 105 |
| | called LED/group mail LED is set, LED flashes according to the LED | |
| | settings that are made for the group. | |
| | • When a call or mail is received from the other party for which both | P. 139 |
| | phonebook called LED/phonebook mail LED and group called LED/ | |
| | group mail LED are set, LED flashes according to the LED settings | |
| | made with phonebook called LED/phonebook mail LED. | |
| | When multiple messages are received, LED flashes according to the | - |
| | LED settings made for the last received mail address. | D / 00 |
| | • When the other party's mail address is <i>phone number@docomo.ne.jp</i> , | P. 100 |
| | save only the phone number for the mail address in the phonebook and | |
| | make the LED settings. | D 07 |
| | Is the sender's mail address saved correctly in the phonebook and are | P. 97 |
| | LED settings made? | P. 103 |
| | When SMS is received, LED settings become valid if made in phonebook. | P. 100 P. 97 |
| | Is the phone number saved correctly? | P. 103 |
| O | • Outra minimum in an ancientate constitucionale | F. 103 |
| Service not registered | Subscription is required to use i-mode. | - |
| appears | If contract is made for i-mode after purchase, turn off FOMA terminal | - |
| | power and restart. | |
| The date appears | ● Is Select language set to 日本語 ? | P. 44 |
| backwards | | |
| Please wait appears and | • The audio line or the packet communication system is not in service, or | - |
| cannot be cleared | the audio line network or the packet communication network is | |
| | extremely congested. Try again later. | |
| Cannot make/receive | Is the battery level sufficient? | P. 42 |
| calls, send/receive mail or | • Does 👺 appear? | P. 28 |
| use i-mode | • Is Self mode set to ON? | P. 154 |
| Cannot enter text | Has the character limit been exceeded? | - |
| Display is blank | Is the FOMA terminal turned off? | P. 43 |
| | Is the battery level sufficient? | P. 42 |
| | Is Power saver mode active? | P. 132 |
| | Is Auto power OFF set? | P. 366 |
| Message on DoCoMo | Software needs to be updated. | P. 451 |
| web page or お知らせ | Update software. | |
| (News) on iMenu says | | |
| software update is | | |
| necessary | | |
| IC card (for FeliCa | Is IC card lock or Omakase lock all enabled? | P. 153 |
| functions) is unusable | | P. 276 |
| 0 | • Is the battery level sufficient? | P. 42 |
| Screen is washed out | ● Is Private filter set to enabled? Press ▲ (②) to disable Private filter. | P. 144 |
| Display is too dark or | • Is Brightness in Power saver set to <i>Automatic</i> ? Brightness of the | P. 133 |
| keypad backlight does not | | |
| light | the surrounding light. | |
| Light adjusting sensor | • Are there any stickers attached to the sensor? | P. 24 |
| does not function properly | | |
| Handset makes sounds or | • Main camera uses a linear motor to move the lens, which may cause | P. 174 |
| vibrates while using the | sounds or vibrations. | P. 177 |
| camera | | |
| | | |
| Total call charge does not | • Total call charge for FOMA card does not increase when maximum limit | P. 382 |
| Total call charge does not increase | Total call charge for FOMA card does not increase when maximum limit (approximately 16,770,000 yen) has been reached. Reset total call charge to 0 yen. | P. 382 |

| Problem | Explanation | Page |
|---|--|----------------------------|
| Cannot position the present location | • i-mode subscription is required to use the service. | - |
| Cannot use location notification/location provision | Is the location service client set correctly? Is Location provision ON/OFF set to <i>Loc. provision:OFF</i>? Is the settings required for location provision made with Service settings? | P. 286 P. 283 P. 285 |

List of Error Messages

• A three-digit number will also appear with some messages. Some of the numbers are codes used only by DoCoMo.

| Message | Explanation | Page |
|---|--|---------------------------------|
| Database recovery will be performed Disable accept calls Enter correct Network | Restoration for the database in Data box is performed. The following information or others in Data box may not be restored. Damaged data Folders created by users However, data in the folders are not deleted and remain in the source folders. i-motion and music data with file restrictions PDF files that are not pre-installed Some data saved in Data box, which is used by i-αppli Phone number is set to be accepted. Disable and try again. Appears when an incorrect network security code is entered. | Page - - P. 159 P. 146 |
| security code | Enter correct network security code. FOMA terminal owner will be asked to bring identification (a driver's license, etc.) to a DoCoMo Shop in the case of a forgotten security code. | |
| Error in image. Does not work correctly | Flash movie has an error. | - |
| Exceeds max number of simultaneous calls | Appears when PushTalk transmissions are sent to five members or more from the PushTalk phonebook. Set four members or less. | P. 90 |
| Function is locked | Phonebook Function lock is set. Disable and try again. | P. 154 |
| Insert UIM | Make sure the FOMA card is properly inserted. | P. 35 |
| Keypad dial lock | Disable Keypad dial lock when calling from functions other than phonebook (excluding microSD Memory Card phonebook) and Redial. | P. 155 |
| Memory is full | Appears when the FOMA terminal handset phonebook has 750 phone numbers or mail addresses saved and another number or address is about to be added. | P. 96 |
| PIN1 code blocked | Appears when power is turned on while PIN1 code is locked. Enter correct PUK when prompt appears to disable PIN lock. | P. 151 |
| Please enter security code | • Appears when a restricted operation was attempted while Function lock is set. Enter correct terminal security code to temporarily disable Function lock and continue operation. | P. 154 |
| Please wait | The audio line or the packet communication system is not in service, or the audio line network or the packet communication network is extremely congested. Try again later. Press a dial key to erase the message. Calls to 110, 119 and 118 are available. However, a call may not be connected depending on phone line conditions. | - |
| Please wait for a while (packet) | The packet communication system is not in service, or the packet communication network is extremely congested. Try again later. Appendix/Using with External Devices/Troublesh | - |

| Message | Explanation | Page |
|---|---|----------------------------|
| PUK is blocked | Appears when power is turned on or a FOMA card operation is used while PUK is blocked. | P. 147 |
| | Contact a DoCoMo Shop. | |
| Record error | • Appears when recording is attempted after 400 items are recorded and Voice recorder ends. Delete unnecessary data before recording. | P. 335 |
| Recording failed | • Appears when the save destination is the microSD Memory Card and there is no available space, Camera mode ends and the stand-by display reappears. | - |
| Secret data saved | • Appears when Secret mode is not active and secret data is about to be sent by 2-touch dialing. | P. 113 P. 158 |
| Security code is wrong Please enter 4-8 digits | Appears when an incorrect terminal security code is entered. Enter correct terminal security code. FOMA terminal owner will be asked to bring identification (a driver's license, etc.) to a DoCoMo Shop in the case of a forgotten security code. | P. 146 |
| Self mode | • Appears when a restricted operation was attempted while in Self mode. | P. 154 |
| Service unavailable | Appears when network service is attempted but handset is outside the service area or in a place with no signal. Retry after moving to a location where appears. | P. 28 |
| Some items cannot be copied. Copy anyway? | Since capacity of FOMA terminal handset phonebook and FOMA card phonebook differ, only the first phone number/mail address is copied to FOMA card. Characters and character limits also differ. Appears if some data cannot be copied. Select Yes to copy the first phone number/mail address. | - |
| This UIM cannot be recognized | Appears when a FOMA card not usable by the terminal may have been inserted. Appears when FOMA card may be damaged or not properly inserted. Make sure the FOMA card is properly inserted. | - P. 35 |
| Unable to authenticate | If errors persist, register Face authentication image again. | P. 148 |
| Unable to authenticate. Register face again if errors persist | Appears when authentication is attempted in a dark location or light is uneven. Try again in a different location. | P. 148 |
| Unable to record any more | Three Record messages (voice call) and two Record messages (Videophone) have been recorded. Delete unnecessary messages and start again. | P. 74 |
| Unable to renew memory number xxx | Appears when attempting to save a phonebook entry to the same memory number that stores secret data when Secret mode is not active. Appears when attempting to save a phonebook entry to the same memory number that stores an entry for Accept/Reject call. | P. 113 P. 158 P. 160 |
| Unable to save part of data. OK to save? | Appears when invalid data is included to save the characters scanned by Character reader to Phonebook. Select Yes to save. | - |
| Unable to use at the moment | Appears when Videophone calling is attempted from outside the service area or in a place with no signal. | P. 28 |
| Unable to use Connected to external device | i-mode can only be disconnected. Other i-mode operations are not available because handset is connected to an external device. | P. 437 |
| You already have 3 voice memos saved | Three Record messages (voice call) and less than two Record messages (Videophone) have been recorded. Delete unnecessary messages and start again. | P. 74 |
| You already have two messages saved | Less than three Record messages (voice call) and two Record messages (Videophone) have been recorded. Delete unnecessary messages and start again. | P. 74 |
| おまかせロック中です | Appears when Omakase lock is set. | P. 153 |

i-mode

 Numbers in brackets () appearing in i-mode error messages are sent from the i-mode center as a code to distinguish between errors.

| Message | Explanation | Page |
|--|--|------------------|
| Already downloaded | • The same version of the software has been already downloaded. | P. 264 |
| An attached file will be deleted | File with restrictions for i-mode mail attachment or output from the FOMA terminal is attached to i-mode mail to be forwarded or replied to with Reply with quote. Press [OK] and the i-mode mail without the attachment appears on the i-mode mail editing screen. | P. 226 |
| Attachable size exceeded. Unable to attach | File exceeds size limit and cannot be attached. Delete some of message text or send message without attaching the file. | P. 226 |
| Authentication canceled | Appears when <i>Cancel</i> is selected or <i>ER</i> is pressed in the authentication screen. | - |
| Authentication type is not supported (401) | Appears when authentication is not possible. Previous screen reappears. | - |
| Can not open any more window | • Appears if a new window cannot be opened when the number of frames which can be viewed is exceeded or the memory is low. | - |
| Capacity exceeded. Some data may be lost. End editing? | Appears when message text alone exceeds 10,000 bytes. Select Yes and press to open compose message screen. Excess data is deleted and | - |
| Certificate is rejected (tampered) | • Appears when rewritten SSL certificate is received. SSL session cannot be performed with this site or Internet web page. | P. 189 |
| Connection failed | Appears when host is set incorrectly. Properly re-set <i>Host selection</i> in i-mode settings. Site or Internet web page connection failed for an unspecified reason. Try again later. | P. 204 P. 188 |
| Connection failed | When dialing a Videophone call, the other party has Caller ID Request Service activated and the call does not connect. Set to send caller ID and call again. | P. 46 |
| Connection failed (403) | • Site or Internet web page connection failed for an unspecified reason. Try again later. | P. 188 |
| Connection interrupted | i-mode has been disconnected due to a weak signal. Try i-mode again after moving to an area with a strong signal. Even if a signal is strong and papears, the site or Internet web page is extremely congested. Try again later. | P. 28 - |
| (During Ir exchange) Connection suspended No response Retry? | Appears when canceling Ir exchange. Appears when other party could not be recognized. Select Yes and press to try again. | P. 332 P. 332 |
| Authentication failed. Retry? | Appears when Ir exchange was not properly performed. Select Yes and press to try again. | P. 332 |
| Content length exceeds maximum size for i-motion | Appears when Streaming type i-motion file exceeds 2 MB and cannot be downloaded. | P. 211 |
| Content length exceeds replayable size for i-motion | Appears when Standard type i-motion file exceeds 500 KB and cannot be downloaded. | P. 211 |
| Continue using i-αppli and transmit data? | When No is selected for Data transmission is frequent. Continue transmission?, this message appears when i-αppli once again attempts transmission. To transmit and continue use of i-αppli, select Yes. To not transmit and | P. 255 |
| | continue use of i-αppli, select No . Select Terminate i-αppli to end i-αppli. | - |

| Message | Explanation | Page |
|---|---|--------|
| Data in IC-card is full. | Appears when space of IC card is not enough to download | - |
| Unable to download. | Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-αppli. Select Yes and press [OK] to | |
| Delete service? | display the already registered Osaifu-Keitai compatible i- α ppli list and | |
| | the capacity (bytes) in the IC card. After checking how much capacity is lacking, select services to be deleted and start i-αppli to delete them. | |
| | Depending on the Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-appli, however, only the | |
| | Osaifu-Keitai compatible i- α ppli list appears after selecting Yes and | |
| | pressing $\buildrel $ [OK]. In this case, select i- $lpha$ ppli to be deleted from the list. | |
| Data transmission is | Data transmission is noticeably frequent during i-appli use. | P. 255 |
| frequent. Continue | • To transmit and continue use of i-αppli, select Yes . To not transmit and | - |
| transmission? | continue use of i-appli, select No . Select Terminate to end i-appli. | |
| Download aborted | Appears when downloading is canceled during download. | - |
| Download failed | • Appears when there is no data to download, or the data is invalid. | - |
| Invalid content Download | Downloading is not possible. | |
| failed | • Downloading is not possible due to invalid data or unsupported format. | - |
| Duplicate address deleted | A duplicate address is deleted when the same mail address is set as address or broadcast for i-mode mail. | P. 222 |
| Folder is full | • If i-mode mail is received when there is no available space in memory | - |
| | and no unprotected read mail, <i>Folder is full</i> appears. <i>0</i> appears for the | |
| Handaat mamany is full | number of messages in receive results screen. • Appears when FOMA terminal handset and FOMA card memory are | |
| Handset memory is full. Unable to receive | full. SMS cannot be received. Check the unread i-mode mail/SMS | - |
| anymore or UIM is full. | (127 P. 229, P. 247), disable the protect (127 P. 239), and delete the | |
| Unable to receive | unnecessary i-mode mail/SMS (127 P. 240, P. 250) on FOMA terminal | |
| anymore | handset and FOMA card. | |
| "i-αppli To" function is not | • Appears when attempting to start software, unauthorized to be linked, | P. 262 |
| set | from a site, Internet web page, Message R/F, or i-mode mail. The | |
| | software could not be started. | |
| Input error (205) | Appears when server is about to reset contents after sending text | - |
| | entered in a site or Internet web page. | |
| | All text and settings entered on screen are deleted. (Contents sent before the error message appeared has already been | |
| | sent.) | |
| Invalid content. Change | Appears when attempting to download Streaming type i-motion when | P. 213 |
| i-motion type for replay. | i-motion type setting is set to Standard type . | 1.210 |
| Change setting? | 5 | |
| Invalid UIM. Requested | Appears when attempting to view screen memo or Message R/F | P. 36 |
| service not available | protected by FOMA card restriction functions. | |
| | Appears when attempting to activate i-αppli from the software list. | - |
| | Appears when attempting to activate i-αppli from sites, Internet web | P. 36 |
| | pages, or i-mode mail. | |
| Invalid UIM.download/ Upgrade/start/save not | Appears when the information of an inserted FOMA card (UIM) is different from that mapped to FeliCa. | - |
| possible | different norm that mapped to relica. | |
| Is the ToruCa automatic | Appears when Auto reading check of ToruCa is set to OFF and the | P. 276 |
| reading function in a | automatic reading function is attempted to use with the reader/writer | 1.210 |
| mobile phone used | (external device). Select Yes, press , and press [Agree] to set | |
| through the reader/writer? | Auto reading check to ON and make the automatic reading function available. | |
| Memory low | Software cannot be run due to lack of available memory. | - |
| | • Processing suspended and i-mode terminated due to lack of available | - |
| | memory. | |
| Memory shortage. Return | • Appears if available memory space is lacking while viewing an Internet | P. 292 |
| to Internet(FB) Menu | web page with Full Browser. In this case, select Agree . All the open | |
| | windows are closed. | |

| Message | Explanation | Page |
|---|--|-------------|
| No content is available (204) | Appears when there is no data to display at the connected site or Internet web page. | - |
| No more space Overwrite? | Appears when screen memo memory is full. Select Yes and select a screen memo to overwrite. Proceed to the save confirmation screen. Select No and the site or Internet web page reappears. | - |
| No requested software | Appears when attempting to start a non-existent i-αppli software from i-mode mail or Ir exchange function. | P. 262 |
| (During iC transmission) No response | Appears when the other party could not be recognized. | - |
| No response (408) | Transmission disconnected due to no reply from the site or Internet web page. Try again later. | P. 188 |
| Not enough space. Continue to overwrite? | • Appears when the screen memo is larger than the available memory space. Select Yes and select a screen memo to overwrite. The screen memo is deleted upon selection. Select No and the site or Internet web page reappears. | - |
| Out of service area | Appears when attempting to use i-mode service outside the service area or in a place with no signal. To use i-mode service, move to a location where appears. | - |
| Page is not found (404) | Specified site or Internet web page was not found. Site or Internet web page may not exist. | - |
| Password is not correct (401) | • Appears when authentication is not possible on the authentication screen. | - |
| Receiving data exceeds maximum size for i-motion | Appears when Streaming type i-motion file exceeds 2 MB and could not be downloaded completely. | P. 211 |
| Receiving data exceeds replayable size for i-motion | Appears when Standard type i-motion file exceeds 500 KB and download is not completed. | P. 211 |
| Requested software unavailable | Appears when attempting to start software from a site, Internet web page, Message R/F, i-mode mail, or Ir exchange function, and the specified software could not be started. | P. 262 |
| Root certificate has expired. Connect? | Appears when a server certificate whose signature has expired is received. To connect without safety assured, select Yes and press [Select]. To not connect, select No and press [OK]. Set date and time. | P. 189 |
| Root certificate is not valid | Appears when a certificate set to Disable is received. Confirm why the certificate was set to Disable. When the certificate has no security problems, set it to Enable, and then reconnect to the site. | P. 209 |
| Save aborted | Appears when data cannot be saved during the download of i-αppli. | - |
| Service is used by the previous software. Unable to download/update/run. Delete a service? | When the same service has already been downloaded, a new service cannot be downloaded/updated/run unless the already registered service is deleted. Select Yes to display the service to be deleted. Delete the registered service. | - |
| Service not registered | i-mode is not subscribed to. Subscription is required to use i-mode. If contract is made for i-mode after purchase, turn off FOMA terminal power and restart. | P. 188 - |
| Size of this page is not supported | Size of data received from site or Internet web page exceeds maximum for one page. Receiving is suspended and data received up to suspension is displayed. Appears when maximum data size is exceeded while loading a melody | P. 193 - |
| SMS is full Unable to copy anymore | or a downloaded dictionary. Appears when the maximum number of SMS are saved in the FOMA terminal handset or the FOMA card and no further messages could be copied. | P. 249 |
| Software already updated | The i-αppli is the latest version, and will not be upgraded. | P. 264 |
| Software terminated due | Invalid action was attempted by i-αppli. | P. 263 |
| to security error | • Appears when i-αppli software attempts invalid action. Error history is saved when software is terminated due to a security error. | P. 263 |

| Message | Explanation | Page |
|---|--|------------------|
| SSL Session cannot be | Appears when the attempt to connect to a site or Internet web page | P. 189 |
| established | supporting SSL session failed. Try again later. | |
| SSL session failed | Appears when an error occurs during SSL authentication and the SSL session is disconnected. | P. 189 |
| Terminal and UIM ID will be sent | May appear while viewing sites or Internet web pages. Select Yes and press [OK] to send Terminal and UIM ID. To not send and return to the previous screen, select No and press [OK], or press Terminal ID and UIM ID are used by the IP (Information Provider) to identify the handset and offer customized information to each customer, and also determine what contents offered by the IP are available for each handset. | P. 189 - |
| | Terminal ID and UIM ID are sent to the IP (Information Provider) using the Internet so a third party may obtain it. However, customer's phone number, postal address, age and sex are not sent to the IP in this operation. | - |
| This certificate has expired. Connect? | Appears when an SSL server certificate that has expired or has not started its validity period is received. To connect without safety assured, select Yes and press [Select]. To not connect, select No and press [OK]. | P. 189 |
| This certificate is not valid for this URL. Connect? | Appears when the received SSL server certificate contains invalid information. To connect without safety assured, select Yes and press [Select]. To not connect, select No and press [OK]. | P. 189 |
| This data may not be replayed. Download? | • Appears when i-motion file in a format other than MP4 (Mobile MP4) is loaded. | P. 307 |
| This site is not certified. Connect? | Appears when a server certificate that cannot be verified on the FOMA terminal is received. To connect without safety assured, select Yes and press [OK]. To not connect, select No and press [OK]. | P. 189 |
| This software contains an error | i-αppli data contains an error and software cannot be downloaded or upgraded. | - |
| This software contains an error. Unable to download | i-αppli data contains an error and software cannot be downloaded or upgraded. | - |
| This software is not supported by this phone | Appears when attempting to download an i-αppli not supported by the FOMA terminal. The software cannot be downloaded. | - |
| Time out | Time set in <i>Connection timeout</i> elapsed, and site or Internet web page connection, or i-mode mail transmission was cut off. Try again later. | P. 203 |
| Too many unsent messages. Unable to activate | Unsent messages are full. New mail cannot be composed. Send or delete unsent messages and compose again. | P. 228 P. 240 |
| Too much data was entered | Data could not be sent because character string or URL entered in text box or other input field was too long. Retry after erasing some text. | - |
| Transmission failed | • Appears when i-mode mail or SMS was not sent properly. Try again from a location with a strong signal. When <i>Address is not valid</i> appears as well, resend after editing the address. When this message appears with <i>i-mode Center is busy. Please try again later</i> , try sending again later. When <i>Target server is full</i> appears along with this message, mail cannot be sent because a recipient cannot receive the message. | - |
| Unable to protect anymore | Number of protected messages for Message R/F, mail, and sent messages exceeds maximum. Disable protection. | P. 239 |
| Unable to retrieve the requested URL (504) | • Site or Internet web page connection failed for an unspecified reason. Try again later. | P. 188 |
| URL address changed (301) | Since the site or Internet web page moved, the URL changed. If old URL is registered as bookmark, new URL is registered. | P. 194 |

| Message | Explanation | Page |
|--|--|--------|
| URL address is not valid (301) URL address is not valid (302) | Data received contains error and cannot be displayed. Received data is discarded. | - |
| URL is too long to register | • URL exceeds maximum number of characters and cannot be registered as a bookmark. | P. 195 |
| Usage is currently restricted. Try again later | • Appears when excessive amounts of data is downloaded during a certain time span for users of the flat-rate i-mode packet transmission service. Connection will be restricted for a certain amount of time. Try i-mode again later. | P. 188 |

PDF Viewer/Document Viewer

| Message | Explanation | Page |
|--|---|--------------------------------------|
| An error has occurred Viewer will close | • Appears when Document Viewer is activated and an error has occurred in analyzing while loading the next page. Appears when file data is corrupted. | - |
| Document may not be fully displayed | File size is too large to be displayed in Document Viewer. Appears when file contains functions unsupported by Document Viewer. Appears when memory is low and Document Viewer does not start properly. Appears when connection times out while starting Document Viewer. Occurs when file requires an extended period of time for analysis. Appears when an attempt to display file properties failed. | P. 341 P. 341 - - P. 344 |
| Memory is full. Cannot overwrite | Appears when memory is full and data cannot be overwritten. | - |
| Memory is full. Unable to update | Appears when memory is full and data cannot be updated. | - |
| Unable to activate | • Appears when Document Viewer is activated but memory is too low to activate functions such as Magnifier or Zoom at selected area. | - |

Data box

| Message | Explanation | Page |
|--|--|----------------------------|
| Battery low | • Battery level is low. Camera mode cannot be activated. Use after fully charging the battery. | P. 39 |
| Camera function is not available now | Appears when camera portion becomes hot from being stored in a hot place or being used for an extended period of time. Use the camera after letting it cool down. May appear due to functional limitations when a call is received while the camera shooting screen is shown. In such cases, activate camera again after ringing stops or call is disconnected. | - |
| Copyright information is incorrect. Delete WMA data by PC after setting to microSD mode | • Appears when WMA files in microSD Memory Card that have been played back with a FOMA terminal is attempted to be played back with other FOMA terminals. Connect the FOMA terminal to a PC in microSD mode and delete the following folders in microSD Memory Card. WM folder in the VPRIVATE\DOCOMOWMFILE folder WM_SYSTEM folder in the VPRIVATE\DOCOMOWMFILE folder | P. 318 P. 324 P. 354 |
| Link set for data in folder. Unable to delete part of data | Appears when attempting to delete folders containing data that cannot be deleted, such as data set for stand-by, ring tone, etc., by performing Delete all folders. Appears when folders exist in folders such as xxxSHARP/xxxSH_UF/ PRLxxx. Delete applicable folder with a PC or other devices, or format a microSD Memory Card. | P. 326 P. 323 |
| Memory is almost full. Delete unneeded images | FOMA terminal handset memory is low. Delete other pictures to save image with current settings. | - |

| Message | Explanation | Page |
|--|---|--------|
| Memory is full. Unable to save anymore | Appears when maximum number of entries is exceeded during copying. Delete unnecessary data and copy data again. | - |
| Replay period has expired. Delete? | Appears when attempting to play i-motion that has passed its replay period. | P. 212 |
| Replay period has not yet started | • Appears when attempting to play i-motion before the set replay period. | P. 212 |
| This data can no longer be replayed. Delete? | Appears when attempting to play i-motion that has reached its playback count limit. | P. 212 |
| This data cannot be replayed. Delete? | • Appears when attempting to play i-motion after resetting date and time. | - |
| Unable to copy part of data | Appears when there are files or folders on the microSD Memory Card that were created on a PC or a handset other than the FOMA SH903i. | P. 318 |
| Unsupported. Cannot edit | Image data is invalid and image cannot be edited. | - |

Multi Assistant (Multitask)

| Message | Explanation | Page |
|--|--|----------------|
| Battery empty. Unsaved data will be lost. Ending current operation | Appears approximately 80 seconds before power turns off. Charge the battery. | P. 39 P. 42 |
| Function is already running End and restart? | Appears when a function that is already running is selected. Quit the function and run again or switch to the screen for the running function. | - |
| Incompatible function running. Unable to start Please end the function pushing the Multi button | Function that cannot be used simultaneously is running. Quit the function and try again. | - |
| Unable to start any more Please end the function pushing the Multi button | Appears when the maximum number of functions are running. Quit unused functions and try again. | - |

Other messages

| Message | Explanation | Page |
|--|---|--------|
| A Network error has occurred. | Appears when an error occurs in the system at Position location, Location notification and Location provision or the service is not subscribed to. | - |
| Battery too low. Please recharge and retry | Appears when battery level is I or I while updating software. Recharge battery to I. | P. 39 |
| Connection failed | Appears when software could not be updated. Perform software update again. | P. 451 |
| Invalid file contents. Unable to display. | • The manager information file of microSD Memory Card is incorrect. The available space of microSD Memory Card is insufficient, and the manager information may not be updated correctly. Delete unnecessary files, increase available memory space and perform "New manager info". | P. 324 |
| Other functions running. Unable to activate | • Software could not be updated at the set time because other functions are running. Update immediately or set another date and time. | P. 451 |
| Root certificate is not valid | Appears when Root Certificate is not set to valid when updating software. Set certificates 1 to 11 in <i>Certificates</i> to valid. | P. 209 |
| SSL session was terminated | Appears when FOMA terminal date is not saved correctly when updating software. Set the FOMA terminal date. | P. 45 |
| Unable to use the main camera at the moment | Appears when FOMA terminal becomes hot from being stored in a hot place or used for an extended period of time. Use the camera after letting it cool down. Appears when using Videophone main camera while battery level is low. Use after charging battery. | - |

| Message | Explanation | Page |
|---------------------------------------|---|------|
| プッシュトークグループ に一部受信できませんで した | • Appears when a PushTalk group cannot be registered any more for the reason that PushTalk groups downloaded from the service center exceed 19 entries or the phone number has already been registered, while attempting to update the service center and the phonebook of the FOMA terminal. | - |
| 無効なデータが含まれて います 一部送信できま せんでした | Appears when images with FOMA card restriction are deleted before transmission, while attempting to update the service center with the phonebook of the FOMA terminal handset or to save selected mails. | - |
| メモリ不足のためピク チャーコール画像を受信 できませんでした | Appears when free space in the FOMA terminal handset memory is insufficient to store an image, while attempting to update the service center with the phonebook of the FOMA terminal handset. | - |

Warranty and After-sales Services

Warranty

Make sure that the warranty card is included with your FOMA terminal at the time of purchase. Check that the name of the retailer, the date of purchase, and the necessary details have been filled in on the warranty card. Be sure to keep it in a safe place.

Contact the retailer if any necessary details on the warranty card are not completed.

- The warranty period without charge is one year from the date of purchase.
- For the purpose of improvement, the specifications for this product and its accessories are subject to complete or partial change without prior notice.
- Information registered in your FOMA terminal, such as phonebook entries, may be lost or damaged if your FOMA terminal is damaged, repaired, or mishandled. It is recommended that a memo be kept of all data stored in the FOMA. If the FOMA terminal is repaired, information downloaded using i-mode and i-αppli cannot be transferred (excluding some cases) to a repaired handset due to copyright law.

For this FOMA terminal, data such as phonebook entries, etc. can be saved in the microSD Memory Card. For this FOMA terminal, i-motion and data available for i-αppli can be saved to the microSD Memory Card. For this FOMA terminal, data such as phonebook entries, etc. can be stored in the Data Storage Center by using the PB Storage Service (a paid service that requires subscription).

If you own a PC (Windows 2000 Professional, Windows XP Home Edition, Windows XP Professional), you can transfer and store registered information such as phonebook entries using special Data Link Software (127 P. 438) and the FOMA USB cable (sold separately).

After-sales Services

If you have problems with your FOMA

Refer to "Troubleshooting" before requesting repairs. Contact a number listed in "For Repair Inquiries" on the back of this manual if problems persist.

If your FOMA needs repairs after contacting DoCoMo

Bring your FOMA terminal to a repair counter that DoCoMo specifies. However, the repair shop is only open during business hours. Make sure to bring your warranty card with you.

During the warranty period

The FOMA terminal will be repaired without charge in accordance with the terms of the warranty.

- When bringing the FOMA terminal in for repairs, be sure to bring the warranty card. Even during the warranty
 period, a fee will be charged for repairs of malfunctions or damage caused by improper handling by the
 customer, or when no warranty certificate is presented.
- Repairs for damages caused by the use of devices and accessories other than those specified by DoCoMo will also incur a fee, even during the warranty period.

Repairs may not be possible in the following circumstances.

Repairs to your FOMA terminal may not be possible if the moisture detection seal has reacted, if damage from
water exposure, condensation, sweat, or other liquids are found, or if the internal circuit board is damaged or
deformed. Even when repairs are possible, repair charges will be incurred because the warranty does not
cover such damage.

After the warranty period has expired

Charged repairs will be carried out upon request.

Replacement parts

Replacement parts (required to maintain the functionality of the FOMA terminal) will be kept in stock basically for six years following termination of production. However, note that there may be a case when repair is not possible for the shortage of replacement parts depending on the faulty part. Repairs may be possible even after this period has passed, depending on the type of malfunction. Contact number listed in "For Repair Inquiries" on the back of this manual for details.

IMPORTANT!

Never attempt to modify the FOMA terminal or its accessories.

- May cause fire, injury, or malfunction.
- Technical standards for the FOMA terminal and FOMA card are established by law to avoid interference and malfunctions of the network. FOMA terminals and FOMA cards that do not meet standards cannot be used.
- If your FOMA terminal has been modified previously (replacement of parts, modification, coating, etc.), it will
 only be accepted for the repair of a malfunction if it has been restored to its original state (as a standard
 DoCoMo product). However, repairs may be refused depending on the extent of the modification.
- Repairs for any malfunction or damage caused by such modifications will incur fees, even during the warranty period. Do not peel off the model nameplate attached to the FOMA terminal.
- The nameplate seal functions as a certification that the equipment conforms to the prescribed technical standards. If the nameplate is removed or is replaced, repairs may be refused because conformity to the standards cannot be determined.

技術基準適合認証品

Information stored in your FOMA terminal, such as the settings of various functions and the total call duration, may be cleared or reset if your FOMA terminal is damaged, repaired, or mishandled. • If this occurs, please re-enter the information or re-specify the settings.

The following sections of the FOMA terminal contain parts that generate magnetic waves. Keep ATM cards and other objects likely to be affected by magnetic waves away from the FOMA

terminal. Cards may become unusable.

• Sections: Speaker, Earpiece

If your FOMA terminal gets wet or has been in a humid location, turn off the power, take out the battery immediately, and bring it to a repair counter that DoCoMo specifies as soon as possible. However, depending on the condition, repairs may not be possible.

Memory dial (Phonebook) and downloaded information

- It is recommended that you keep a separate memo of the information you register on your FOMA terminal. DoCoMo shall not be liable for data that may be modified or lost.
- Created, imported or downloaded data may be modified or deleted when upgrading or repairing the FOMA terminal. DoCoMo shall not be liable for any modification or deletion of content. DoCoMo may, at our convenience, exchange your FOMA terminal for a substitute in lieu of repairs. For this FOMA terminal, only data including downloaded images or melodies or data created by the user will be transferred at the time of repair. (Some contents cannot be transferred. Also, contents may not be transferred depending on the degree of malfunction.)

Transferring may take long or be even unavailable depending on the size of data saved in the FOMA terminal.

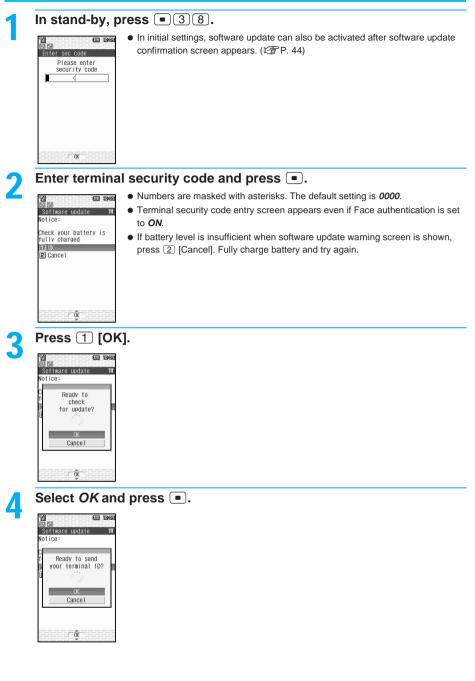
Updating Software

Check for FOMA terminal software updates. If necessary, use packet transmission* to download software and update.

- There is no packet transmission charge for updating software.
- Check the DoCoMo web page or お知らせ (News) on iMenu for updates.
- When updating, select Now update or Reserve.
 - Now update: Update immediately.
 - Reserve: Software updates automatically on set date and time.
- Software is updated even when host for i-mode is changed to a custom host.
- Recharge battery before updating software.
- Software cannot be updated during the following conditions.
 - Date and time are set incorrectly

All lock is set

- Battery level is below the necessary level to update software Connected to an external device
- During a call/Outside the service area
 While in Self mode
 - Function lock is set
- Omakase lock is set
- If PIN1 code is set to ON and software is updated. PIN1 code input screen appears after automatic reload. Correct PIN1 code must be entered to make/receive calls and use other communications functions.
- Downloading and rewriting software may take time.
- Making/receiving calls, transmission functions and other functions cannot be used while software is being updated. (Receiving voice calls is possible except rewriting.)
- While updating software, received i-mode mail and Message R/F are held at i-mode center. Received SMS is held at SMS center.
- If i-mode mail or Message R/F is held at i-mode center, // R/F appears but will disappear when software is reloaded after update. In addition, even if Receive option is set to ON and mail is received during software update, notices may not appear on the display after update is completed. Mail and messages are held at i-mode center.
- During software update, the handset makes an SSL connection with the server (DoCoMo site). Set the Root Certificate to valid. (The default setting is *Enable*. @ P. 209)
- It is recommended to update software at a location with a strong signal (three bars for the antenna icon). If signal status becomes weak or download is interrupted when downloading software, update software again in a location with good signal conditions.
- If software has already been uploaded, No update is needed. Please continue to use as before appears when software update is checked.
- When updating software, information about handset (model and serial number) is automatically sent to the server (DoCoMo software update server). Sent information is only used for software update.
- Do not remove the battery pack while the software is updating. Failure to update software may occur.
- Software can be updated even if handset contains phonebook, camera or download data. However, DoCoMo cannot protect data that could be lost due to malfunction, damage, water exposure and so on. It is recommended that important data be backed up (127 P. 320, P. 438) before updating. (Note that some data, such as downloaded data, cannot be backed up.)
- If software update fails, Rewrite failed appears and all operations are not available. In this case, bring FOMA terminal to a repair counter that DoCoMo specifies.
- While updating software, called LED flashes. However, called LED does not flash in Public mode (Drive mode).



5

Select *OK* and press •.

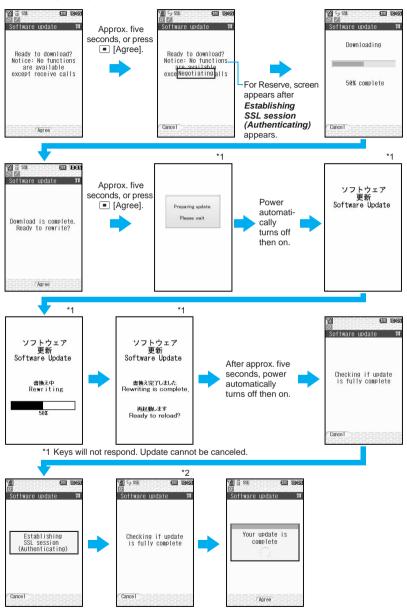
| Yan turna tara tara tara tara tara tara tara t | Ƴ∰ 55 SSL 6000 100009 ⊙12 Software update 38 | | Software update | (III 1005 31 |
|--|--|---|---|-----------------|
| Notice: Check your battery is fully charged SSL session (Authenticating) | Checking | - | Update is needed 1) Now update E Reserve 3) Cancel | |
| Cancel | Cance | | ÛĶ | |

- When updating software, information about handset (model and serial number) is automatically sent to the server (DoCoMo software update server). Sent information is only used for software update.
- When updating is not necessary, *No update is needed. Please continue to use as before* appears. Press

 and resume operations.
- When updates are necessary, Update is needed appears. Select Now update or Reserve.
- Press 🕿 to cancel.

Perform steps 1 to 5 on P. 452 and press 1 [Now update].

- Software download starts. Software is automatically updated without selecting menus.
- Press 3 [Cancel] to not update.



*2 After Checking if update is fully complete appears, next screen appears immediately.

• A screen asking to end or not appears if (a) is pressed. If download is aborted, data downloaded up to that point is deleted. (Cannot operate during software rewrite.)



When Server is busy appears after Negotiating, press 1 [Reserve]. Refer to steps 2 to 4 of "Updating Software Later" on P. 455 for subsequent steps. Press
 [2] [Cancel] to not reserve. A screen appears prompting to stop. To stop, select Yes and press .

Press 🔳 [Agree].

Note

- When Preparing update. Please wait, Software update, Software Update Rewriting or Rewriting is complete. Ready to reload? appears during steps 1 and 2, the handset status is the same as when outside the service area and calls cannot be answered. Calls can be answered in other screens. The previous screen reappears when the call is ended.
- While performing steps 1 and 2, received i-mode mail and Message R/F are held at i-mode center. Received SMS is held at SMS center.
- When Update complete or Check update appears in stand-by after software update, press

 If terminal security code is entered when software update is incomplete, a message stating so appears. Press
 and retry update.

Updating Software Later <Reserve>

Set date and time to update software when downloading takes too much time or the server is extremely congested.

Perform steps 1 to 5 on P. 452 and press 2 [Reserve].

- Schedule selection screen appears.
- The time and date are the same as the server time.
- To cancel operation, in steps 1 to 4, press (2), select Yes and press (.).

| SSL SSL | |) TOPOE |
|----------------------------|--------|---------|
| Software u | update | 1/2 |
| Select your day and tim | ie | ed |
| 20/11/(Mo) | 21:34 | |
| 20/11/(Mo) | 22:14 | |
| 20/11/(Mo) | 23:56 | |
| 21/11/(Tu) | 0:10 | |
| 21/11/(Tu) | 1:43 | |
| 21/11/(Tu) | 2:48 | |
| 21/11/(Tu) | 3:16 | |
| 21/11/(Tu) | 4:28 | |
| 21/11/(Tu) | 5:35 | |

Select preferred date/time and press .

- A confirmation screen appears.
- Alternatively, select the date and time after selecting *Other date/time* and accessing the server.
 Select the date and press •, then select the time and press •.

In the screen to select times, schedule status appears as *:Avail* and *:Limited* for each time slot. Select a time and press • to reconnect to the server and show schedule candidates. Select a schedule and press •.



Select Yes and press .

• The preferred date/time is reserved.





Incoming calls can be received during the above operation. The previous screen reappears when the call is
ended. Received i-mode mail and Message R/F are held at i-mode center. Received SMS is held at SMS center.

When the reserved date and time arrives



The screen on the left appears in the stand-by display. Software update will automatically start. Software will not update if the handset is turned off when the reserved time arrives.

Refer to step 1 of "Updating Software Immediately" for subsequent steps.

After approximately five seconds or pressing
[Agree], software update automatically starts.

- Before software updates, make sure the handset is in a place with a strong signal. Software is not updated if the battery level is below the necessary level to update software at the reserved date and time.
- Software is not updated if the handset at the reserved date and time is performing functions such as sending mail, i-mode, i-αppli, using menus, connecting to an external device, or is in Self mode/All lock/Function lock/ Omakase lock. When receiving mail, software update begins after mail reception is completed.
- If the alarm or another function takes place at the same time (any time excluding Auto manner mode disable), alarm or the function is prioritized and software is not updated.
- When the FOMA terminal is turned off at the reserved date and time for software update or when the FOMA terminal is turned off right after the update starts, the update will be canceled.
- If a call is in progress at the set date and time for software update, software update starts when returning to stand-by within ten minutes. Software is not updated if ten minutes pass before returning to stand-by.
- If "Delete all data (Delete user data)" (IPP . 385) is performed after reservation is completed, the software update is not activated when the reserved time arrives. Reserve the software update again.

Confirming/Changing/Canceling Reservation

In stand-by, press •38, enter terminal security code and press •.

Software update Software update Already reserved for 21:34 20/11(Mo) 10 0K 20 Change 30 Cancel

जेवा भाषणा

• Reserved date and time appears.

| To confirm | 1 |
|------------|--|
| To change | ② → OK → ●. Preferred date screen appears. Refer to steps 2 to 4 of "Updating Software Later" on P. 455 for subsequent steps. |
| To cancel | $ \begin{tabular}{lllllllllllllllllllllllllllllllllll$ |

Note

 Incoming calls can be received during the above operation. The previous screen reappears when the call is ended. Received i-mode mail and Message R/F are held at i-mode center. Received SMS is held at SMS center.

Scanning Function

Protecting Your FOMA Terminal from Harmful Files

First, update pattern definitions to bring them up-to-date.

Stop activating or delete any data or applications that could cause operational malfunctions. These types of data include data or programs that are attached to i-mode mail, or downloaded from sites or external devices.

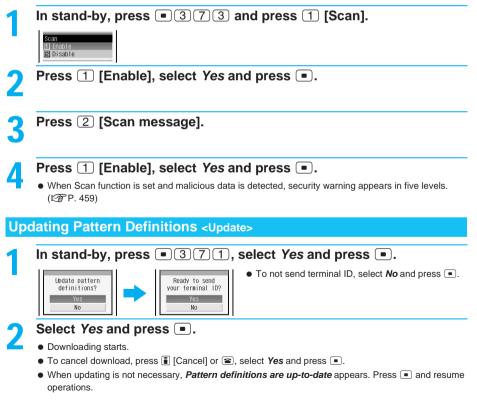
- Pattern definitions are used for checking. When new problems are discovered, pattern definitions are immediately upgraded. Update the pattern definitions.
- The scan function helps to protect the handset from damage caused by data such as data received from web pages or mail. If the pattern definition corresponding to a particular harmful file is not downloaded or saved, the scan function will not be able to protect the FOMA terminal.
- Pattern definitions vary depending on the phone model. Therefore, DoCoMo may discontinue offering pattern definitions for a particular model three years after the release date.

Setting Scan Functions <Set Scan>

Default setting All Enabled

When Scan function is set to *Enable*, data and programs are automatically checked when running. Set whether to apply Scan function to SMS.

- Scan message can be set only when Scan function is set to *Enable*.
- When Scan function is set to Disable, Scan message is set to Disable regardless of current settings.





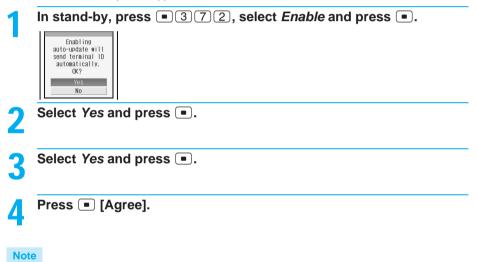
Note

- When updating pattern definitions, information about the handset (model and serial number) is automatically sent to the server (DoCoMo scan function server). Sent information is only used for pattern definition update.
- Correctly set the FOMA terminal date (year/month/day) beforehand.
- Download may be interrupted if signal is weak.

Updating Pattern Definitions Automatically <Set Auto-update>

Set auto-update to *Enable* to automatically update pattern definitions when a new version becomes available.

When auto-update is successful, a message stating so appears. Auto-update is not performed depending on the status of the FOMA terminal. In such cases, a message stating that pattern definitions have been updated appears.



- Information regarding Enable/Disable for Set auto-update is saved on the network. Therefore, *Enable* is always selected on the FOMA terminal when setting.
- When setting auto-update, information about the handset (model and serial number) is automatically sent to the server (DoCoMo scan function server). Sent information is only used for pattern definition update.
- Download may be interrupted if signal is weak.

Displaying Scanned Results

When data that can cause malfunctions are detected, a warning screen appears.

Scanned results display

| Level 0 | Level 1 | Level 2 | Level 3 | Level 4 |
|--|--|--|---|--|
| Scanning function Operation may not run properly | Scanning function Operation may not run properly. Cancel operation? | Scanning function Operation may not run properly. Canceling operation | Scanning function Operation may not run properly. Delete data? | Scanning function Operation may not run properly. Deleting data |
| Agree Detail | Yes No Detail | Agree Detail | Yes No Detail | Agree Detail |
| Displaying, | Select No and press | Displaying, | Displaying, | Displaying, |
| activating, and | • to show, activate | activating, and | activating, and | activating, and |
| calling are available. Appears when there | or call. Select Yes and | calling are not available. Select | calling are not available. Select | calling are not available. Select |
| was an error | press to cancel | Agree and press | Yes, press •, | Agree and press |
| previously, but there | the operation. | to end. | select Yes in the | to delete the data. |
| is no error presently. | | | delete confirmation | |
| Select Agree and | | | screen and press | |
| press 🔳 to show, | | | to delete the data. | |
| activate or call. | | | Select No and press | |
| | | | to end without | |
| | | | deleting. | |

Warning screens other than the above may appear depending on the contents of pattern definitions.

Displaying detected errors



- In the warning screen, select *Detail* and press to show error names. When no error name exists for the contents of the pattern data, *Detail* does not appear.
- Up to five error names appear. *Etc* appears below the fifth error name when more than six are detected. If same error is detected more than once, it is only listed once.

Checking Version of Pattern Definitions </version>

In stand-by, press • 374.



Main Specifications

| Product name FOMA SH903i | | | | | | |
|---|--------------------------------|--|--|--|--|--|
| Size (H × W | × D) | 108 (H) × 50 (W) × 20 (D) mm (when folded) | | | | |
| Weight | | Approximately 129g | (with battery pack installed) | | | |
| | Туре | Mobile ASV LCD dis | play with Private filter function | | | |
| LCD | Size | 2.8 inches | 8 inches | | | |
| | Pixels | 400 (H) × 240 (W) de | 00 (H) × 240 (W) dots | | | |
| Continuous | stand-by time ^{*1, 3} | At rest When mobile | Approximately 520 hours ^{*4} Approximately 400 hours ^{*5} | | | |
| Consecutive | call duration*2, 3 | Voice call Videophone | Approximately 140 minutes Approximately 90 minutes | | | |
| Maximum ou | ıtput | 0.25 W | | | | |
| Battery pack | type | Specified lithium ion | battery | | | |
| Voltage 3.7 V | | | | | | |
| Battery capa | capacity 830 mAh | | | | | |
| AC adapter | charging time | Approximately 110 minutes | | | | |
| DC adapter | charging time | Approximately 110 n | Approximately 110 minutes | | | |
| Image | Туре | Main camera/CCD*6 | , Sub camera/CMOS ^{*6} | | | |
| pickup device | Size | Main camera Sub camera | Total CCD pixels: Approximately 3.4 million pixels ^{*6} Total CMOS pixels: Approximately 0.12 million pixels ^{*6} | | | |
| | Effective pixels | Main camera Sub camera | 3.2 million pixels 0.11 million pixels | | | |
| Camera | Recorded pixels | Main camera Sub camera | 3.2 million pixels 0.1 million pixels | | | |
| | Zoom (Digital) | Main camera Sub camera | Up to approximately 24 times Up to approximately 4 times | | | |
| Picture light source LED characteristics | | a) Continuous illumi b) Wavelength White: 400-700 n c) Maximum output White: 150 μ W (| | | | |

*1 Continuous stand-by time is an estimate of the time when FOMA SH903i is folded and in a status where signals are received. Talk and stand-by times may be reduced by about half depending on conditions including battery level status, functions used, temperature and other environmental conditions, and signal strength (no signal or weak signal). Using i-mode reduces talk (transmission) and stand-by times. In addition, composing i-mode mail and activating downloaded i-αppli or the i-αppli stand-by will also shorten call (transmission)/stand-by duration.

*2 Consecutive call duration is an estimate of the time when talking in a location where the signal is normal.

- *3 The above mentioned call duration and stand-by time are shortened with the use of data communications, multiaccess, and the camera.
- *4 Continuous stand-by time is the average usage time when FOMA SH903i is folded and in a status where signals are received.
- *5 Continuous stand-by time is the average usage time when FOMA SH903i is folded and in At rest, When mobile or Outside the service area status.
- *6 A CCD (Charge Coupled Device) and a CMOS (Complementary Metal-Oxide Semiconductor) are image devices equivalent to the film of silver salt cameras.

Main Specifications (Data Box)

The following are estimates of the number of shot still pictures, movie shooting times, and voice recording times that can be saved to the microSD Memory Card.

microSD Memory Cards are sold separately.

Purchase microSD Memory Cards at home electronics shops. (PP. 316)

• Depending on conditions, such as the shooting environment and subject, the number of still pictures and the recording times that can be saved may decrease.

Estimated number of images that can be shot (64 MB)

| | ECONOMY | NORMAL | SUPER FINE |
|-------------------|-------------|-------------|-------------|
| sQCIF: 128×96 | 3,700 shots | 1,800 shots | 1,800 shots |
| QCIF: 176×144 | 3,700 shots | 1,800 shots | 1,200 shots |
| QVGA: 240×320 | 1,800 shots | 1,500 shots | 620 shots |
| Stand-by: 240×400 | 1,800 shots | 1,200 shots | 620 shots |
| CIF: 352×288 | 1,800 shots | 1,200 shots | 620 shots |
| VGA: 480×640 | 1,200 shots | 930 shots | 620 shots |
| UXGA: 1600×1200 | 310 shots | 180 shots | 120 shots |
| FullHD: 1920×1080 | 310 shots | 180 shots | 120 shots |
| 3M: 2048×1536 | 180 shots | 120 shots | 60 shots |

Estimated movie shooting times (64 MB)

| | | | ECONOMY | NORMAL | FINE | SUPER FINE |
|-------------------|------------------|---------------|-------------|-------------|-------------|------------|
| | For mail (short) | Image + voice | 155 seconds | 105 seconds | 52 seconds | - |
| | | Image only | 214 seconds | 130 seconds | 62 seconds | - |
| sQCIF: 128×96 | For moil (long) | Image + voice | 638 seconds | 434 seconds | 215 seconds | - |
| SQUIF. 120X90 | For mail (long) | Image only | 879 seconds | 534 seconds | 257 seconds | - |
| | Unrestricted* | Image + voice | 314 minutes | 214 minutes | 108 minutes | - |
| | Onrestricted | Image only | 433 minutes | 263 minutes | 129 minutes | - |
| | For mail (short) | Image + voice | 134 seconds | 78 seconds | 28 seconds | 19 seconds |
| | For mail (Short) | Image only | 176 seconds | 91 seconds | 31 seconds | 20 seconds |
| QCIF: | For mail (long) | Image + voice | 552 seconds | 323 seconds | 117 seconds | 79 seconds |
| 176×144 | For mail (long) | Image only | 723 seconds | 375 seconds | 129 seconds | 85 seconds |
| | Unrestricted* | Image + voice | 263 minutes | 162 minutes | 58 minutes | 39 minutes |
| | Unrestricted | Image only | 344 minutes | 188 minutes | 64 minutes | 42 minutes |
| | For mail (short) | Image + voice | - | - | - | 10 seconds |
| | | Image only | - | - | - | 10 seconds |
| QVGA: | For mail (long) | Image + voice | - | - | - | 41 seconds |
| 320×240 | | Image only | - | - | - | 42 seconds |
| | Unrestricted | Image + voice | - | - | - | 20 minutes |
| | | Image only | - | - | - | 20 minutes |
| | For mail (short) | Image + voice | - | - | - | 5 seconds |
| | For mail (short) | Image only | - | - | - | 5 seconds |
| WQVGA: | For mail (long) | Image + voice | - | - | - | 21 seconds |
| 400×240 | For mail (long) | Image only | - | - | - | 21 seconds |
| | Unrestricted | Image + voice | - | - | - | 10 minutes |
| | omestricted | Image only | - | - | - | 10 minutes |
| Hi-quality & Long | | Image + voice | 39 minutes | | | |
| (QVGA: 320×240) | | Image only | 42 minutes | | | |

^t Up to 60 minutes for continuous recording time per shot.

Voice recording times (Voice recorder)

• Up to approximately ten hours when using 64 MB.

Specific Absorption Rate (SAR)

This model phone FOMA SH903i meets the MIC's* technical regulation for exposure to radio waves. The technical regulation established permitted levels of radio frequency energy, based on standards that were developed by independent scientific organizations through periodic and thorough evaluation of scientific studies. The regulation employs a unit of measurement known as the Specific Absorption Rate, or SAR. The SAR limit is 2 watts/kilogram (W/kg)** averaged over ten grams of tissue. The limit includes a substantial safety margin designed to assure the safety of all persons, regardless of age and health. The value of the limit is equal to the international guidelines recommended by ICNIRP*** All phone models should be confirmed to comply with the regulation, before they are available for sale to the public. The highest SAR value for this model phone is 0.448 W/kg. It was taken by the Telecom Engineering Center (TELEC), a Registered Certification Agency on the Radio Law. The test for SAR was conducted in accordance with the MIC testing procedure using standard operating positions with the phone transmitting at its highest permitted power level in all tested frequency bands. While there may be differences between the SAR levels of various phones and at various positions, they all meet the MIC's technical regulation. Although the SAR is determined at the highest certified power level, the actual SAR of the phone during operation can be well below the maximum value. For further information about SAR, please see the following websites:

| World Health Organization (WHO) | http://www.who.int/peh-emf/ |
|-----------------------------------|--|
| 0 () | |
| ICNIRP | http://www.icnirp.de/ |
| MIC | http://www.tele.soumu.go.jp/e/ele/body/index.htm |
| TELEC | http://www.telec.or.jp/ENG/Index_e.htm |
| NTT DoCoMo | http://www.nttdocomo.co.jp/english/product/ |
| SHARP Corporation | http://www.sharp.co.jp/products/menu/phone/cellular/sar/index.html |
| * Ministry of Internal Affairs on | d Communications |

- Ministry of Internal Affairs and Communications
- The technical regulation is provided in Article 14-2 of the Ministry Ordinance Regulating Radio Equipment.
- *** International Commission on Non-Ionizing Radiation Protection

European RF Exposure Information

Your mobile device is a radio transmitter and receiver. It is designed not to exceed the limits for exposure to radio waves recommended by international guidelines. These guidelines were developed by the independent scientific organization ICNIRP and include safety margins designed to assure the protection of all persons, regardless of age and health. The guidelines use a unit of measurement known as the Specific Absorption Rate, or SAR. The SAR limit for mobile devices is 2 W/kg and the highest SAR value for this device when tested at the ear was 1.54 W/kg*.

As SAR is measured utilizing the devices highest transmitting power the actual SAR of this device while operating is typically below that indicated above. This is due to automatic changes to the power level of the device to ensure it only uses the minimum level required to reach the network.

The World Health Organization has stated that present scientific information does not indicate the need for any special precautions for the use of mobile devices. They note that if you want to reduce your exposure then you can do so by limiting the length of calls or using a hands-free device to keep the mobile phone away from the head.

The tests are carried out in accordance with international guidelines for testing

Declaration of Conformity

E 0168

Hereby, Sharp Telecommunications of Europe Ltd. declares that this FOMA SH903i is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC.

A copy of the original declaration of conformity can be found at the following Internet address: http://www.sharp.co.jp/k-tai/

Japan Export Control Regulation/Export Administration Regulation

The Japan Export Control Regulation ("Foreign Exchange and International Trade Law" and its related laws) will be applied to this product and its accessories under certain conditions. The Export Administration Regulation is also applied. To export or reexport this terminal and its accessories, conduct all legally required procedures at your own risk and expense. For details on the procedures, contact the Ministry of Economy, Trade and Industry or the US Department of Commerce.

Index/Quick Manual

| • Index | 464 |
|----------------|-----|
| • Quick Manual | 474 |

Index

How to Use Index

This index lists function names, words, and key words in the order of the "Japanese alphabet" and "alphanumeric characters". If you cannot remember a function name, search with key words.

<Example: When searching "Omakase lock">

| 1 | 0 | searc | h with | n funct | tion | name | S |
|---|---|-------|--------|---------|------|------|---|
| | | | | | | | |

| OCR |
|-------------------------|
| Omakase lock |
| On hold |
| Operation guidance27 |
| Options and accessories |
| |

| | To search with key words |
|---|--------------------------|
| Ē | ock function 151 |
| | All lock 152 |
| | Function lock 154 |
| | Keypad dial lock 155 |
| 1 | Multi easy lock 156 |
| C | Omakase lock 153 |
| | Self mode 154 |

Numerics

| 186/184 57 |
|--------------------------|
| 1-touch conversion |
| 1-touch single character |
| memory 404 |
| Predictive headword |
| conversion 404 |
| 2-touch dialing 113 |
| 2-touch input 410 |
| Change input mode 410 |
| Conversion method 410 |
| Key assignments 430 |
| Text input 410 |
| 3D sound 121 |
| 5-touch input 402 |
| Key assignments 428 |

A

| About this manual | . 1 |
|-----------------------|------------|
| AC adapter | 40 |
| Accept calls | 158 159 |
| Save list | 158 |
| Settings | 159 |
| Active marker | 363 |
| Delete history | 364 |
| Display calendar/date | |
| | 364 |
| Screen theme | 364 |
| Set background | 364 |
| Set display category | |
| | 365 |
| Additional services | |
| Reply message | |

| After-sales service 449 |
|---|
| Alarm |
| All lock 152 Disable 152 Settings 152 |
| Animate notices 134 |
| Answering calls/Videophone calls |
| Any key answer 65 |
| Arrival call action 394 |
| ASF file 305 |
| Authentication password |
| |
| Auto power OFF 366 |
| Auto power ON 365 |
| AV output 350 |

В

| Bar code reader |
|------------------------|
| Battery |
| Battery pack 38 |
| Charging 39 |
| Check battery level 42 |
| Times of use |
| Bookmark 194 |
| Attach to mail 195 |
| Display 195 |
| Bookmark folder 196 |
| |

| BookReader | 344 |
|---------------------------------------|----------------|
| Copy text | 346 |
| Current location | 346 |
| Delete | 349 |
| Display history | 344 |
| File property 345, | 349 |
| Font size | 346 |
| Insert bookmark | 345 |
| Link | 347 |
| Mail To | 347 |
| Mask | 347 |
| Move | 349 |
| Move to bookmark | 345 |
| Phone To (AV Phone T | o) |
| · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · | <u></u> 347 |
| Ruby text | 346 |
| Save to My picture | 347 |
| Search dictionary | 346 |
| Set % move | 346 |
| Switch folder | 345 |
| Table of contents | 346 |
| Text direction | 346 |
| To end | 346 |
| To top | 344 |
| Web To | 347 |
| Brightness | 133 |

С

| 191 |
|-----|
| 380 |
| |
| 434 |
| 369 |
| |
| 372 |
| 369 |
| 369 |
| 372 |
| |

| Set vacations | 372 |
|---------------------------|-----|
| Switch view mode | 370 |
| Call forwarding Service | |
| | 390 |
| Forward calls | 391 |
| Forwarded party busy | 001 |
| | 392 |
| Register number | 391 |
| Status request | 392 |
| | |
| Call waiting | 390 |
| Call/Receive display | 129 |
| Caller ID Request Service | |
| ····· | 393 |
| Activate | 393 |
| Deactivate | 393 |
| Status request | 393 |
| | |
| Camera | 166 |
| Activate/Deactivate | 170 |
| Auto save mode | 182 |
| Auto timer | 177 |
| Bar code reader | 182 |
| Brightness | 174 |
| Character reader | 185 |
| Continuous mode | 172 |
| Display indicators | 168 |
| Display light time | 180 |
| Effect shot | 179 |
| File size limit | 177 |
| Fix camera shake | 179 |
| Focus lock | 180 |
| Full-screen mode | 181 |
| Hi-quality & long | 176 |
| Image quality | 176 |
| Image size | 167 |
| Key list | 171 |
| Main/sub camera | 175 |
| Noise reduction | 180 |
| Number of recordable | 100 |
| images | 167 |
| Picture light | 175 |
| Save camera settings | 170 |
| | 182 |
| Select size | 176 |
| Send message | 182 |
| Shoot 171, | 173 |
| | 179 |
| Shoot by scene | |
| Shoot movie | 173 |
| Shoot still picture | 171 |
| Shoot with frame | 178 |
| Shooting settings | 181 |
| Shutter sound | 181 |
| Switch AF mode | 177 |
| Switch camera-mode | 4 |
| ····· | 174 |
| Switch image/voice | 178 |
| Switch phone⇔SD | 181 |
| Zoom in and out | 174 |

| Change certificate issue 211 Download 210 Invalidate 210 Issue 210 Site access 210 Certificates 209 Chaku-moji 55 Create message 55 Message display 56 Chaku-uta full [®] 354, 356 Download 356 Chaku-uta full [®] 354, 356 Download 356 Edit information 355 Ring tone 355 Change i-mode password 193 Character reader 185 Add bookmark 186 Add to phonebook 186 Search dictionary 186 Chara-den 310 Action list 75, 312 Backlight time 311 Change action 76 Change Chara-den 76 Change Chara-den 76 Change Chara-den 310 Chara-den call 311 Chara-den player 310 Chara-den settings 110 Chara-den settings 111 Delete 314 Download 201 File property 314 Image for call 311 Move 313 Playback 310 Shoot movie 312 Shoot still picture 312 Check memory 229 Check new messages 207, 231 Check settings 362 Clear memory terms 409 Component names and 201 |
|--|
| Download210Invalidate210Issue210Site access210Certificates209Chaku-moji55Create message55Message display56Chaku-uta full®354, 356Download355Change i-mode password193Character reader185Add bookmark186Add to phonebook186Search dictionary186Chara-den310Action list75, 312Backlight time311Chara-den call311Chara-den call311Chara-den call311Chara-den settings100, 311Delete314Download201File property314Image for call311Move313Shoot still picture312Shoot still picture312Shoot still picture312Shoot still picture312Check memory329Check settings362Clear memory terms409Component names and |
| Invalidate210Issue210Site access210Certificates209Chaku-moji55Create message55Message display56Chaku-uta full®354, 356Download356Edit information355Change i-mode password193Character reader185Add bookmark186Add to phonebook186Search dictionary186Chara-den75, 312Backlight time311Chara den call311Chara den call311Chara den call311Chara den call311Chara den settings100, 311Delete314Download201File property314Image for call311Move313Substitute image311Check memory329Check memory329Check new messages207, 231Check settings362Clear memory terms409Component names and30 |
| Issue210Site access210Certificates209Chaku-moji55Create message55Message display56Chaku-uta full®354, 356Download356Edit information355Change i-mode password193Character reader185Add bookmark186Search dictionary186Chara-den310Action list75, 312Backlight time311Chara-den76Change Chara-den76Chara-den player310Chara-den settings100, 311Delete314Download201File property314Image for call311Move312Shoot still picture312Shoot still picture312Shoot still picture312Check memory329Check settings362Clear memory terms409Component names and |
| Site access210Certificates209Chaku-moji55Create message55Message display56Chaku-uta full®354, 356Download356Edit information355Change i-mode password193Character reader185Add bookmark186Search dictionary186Chara-den310Action list75, 312Backlight time311Chara-den76Change Chara-den76Chara-den call311Chara-den player310Chara-den settings100, 311Delete314Download201File property314Image for call311Move312Shoot still picture312Shoot still picture312Shoot still picture312Check memory329Check new messages207, 231Check settings362Clear memory terms409Component names and30 |
| Chaku-moji55Create message55Message display56Chaku-uta full®354, 356Download356Edit information355Ring tone355Change i-mode password193Character reader185Add bookmark186Search dictionary186Chara-den310Action list75, 312Backlight time311Chara-den76Change Chara-den76Chara-den call311Chara-den call311Chara-den player310Chara-den settings100, 311Delete314Download201File property314Image for call311Move312Shoot still picture312Shoot still picture312Shoot still picture312Shoot still picture312Check memory329Check settings362Clear memory terms409Component names and30 |
| Create message |
| Create message |
| Chaku-uta full®354, 356Download356Edit information355Ring tone355Change i-mode password193Character reader185Add bookmark186Add to phonebook186Search dictionary186Chara-den310Action list75, 312Backlight time311Change action76Change action76Change bara-den76Change chara-den76Change send image74Chara-den call311Chara-den player310Chara-den settings100, 311Delete314Download201File property314Move313Playback310Shoot still picture312Shoot still picture312Shoot still picture313Check memory329Check new messages207, 231Check settings362Clear memory terms409Component names and |
| Download356Edit information355Ring tone355Change i-mode password193Character reader185Add bookmark186Add to phonebook186Search dictionary186Chara-den310Action list75Backlight time311Change action76Change Chara-den76Change Chara-den76Change Send image74Chara-den call311Chara-den player310Chara-den settings100, 311Delete314Download201File property314Move313Playback310Shoot still picture312Shoot still picture313Substitute image311Check memory329Check new messages207, 231Check settings362Clear memory terms409Component names and |
| Ring tone355Change i-mode password193Character reader185Add bookmark186Add to phonebook186Search dictionary186Chara-den310Action list75, 312Backlight time311Change action76Change chara-den76Change chara-den76Change send image74Chara-den call311Chara-den player310Chara-den settings100, 311Delete314Download201File property314Move313Playback310Shoot movie312Shoot still picture312Shoot still picture313Check memory329Check new messages207, 231Check settings362Clear memory terms409Component names and |
| Ring tone355Change i-mode password193Character reader185Add bookmark186Add to phonebook186Search dictionary186Chara-den310Action list75, 312Backlight time311Change action76Change chara-den76Change chara-den76Change send image74Chara-den call311Chara-den player310Chara-den settings100, 311Delete314Download201File property314Move313Playback310Shoot movie312Shoot still picture312Shoot still picture313Check memory329Check new messages207, 231Check settings362Clear memory terms409Component names and |
| Change i-mode password193Character reader185Add bookmark186Add to phonebook186Search dictionary186Chara-den310Action list75, 312Backlight time311Change action76Change Chara-den76Change chara-den76Change send image74Chara-den call311Chara-den player310Chara-den settings100, 311Delete314Download201File property313Playback310Shoot movie312Shoot still picture313Substitute image311Check memory329Check new messages207, 231Check settings362Clear memory terms409Component names and |
| 193Character reader185Add bookmark186Add to phonebook186Search dictionary186Chara-den310Action list75, 312Backlight time311Change action76Change Chara-den76Change chara-den76Chara-den call311Chara-den call311Chara-den player310Chara-den settings100, 311Delete314Download201File property314Move313Playback310Shoot movie312Shoot still picture312Sort313Substitute image311Check memory329Check new messages207, 231Check settings362Clear memory terms409Component names and30 |
| Character reader185Add bookmark186Add to phonebook186Search dictionary186Chara-den310Action list75, 312Backlight time311Chara-den76Change Chara-den76Charge Chara-den call311Chara-den call311Chara-den call311Chara-den player310Chara-den settings100, 311Delete314Download201File property314Image for call311Move313Playback310Shoot movie312Shoot still picture313Substitute image311Check memory329Check new messages207, 231Check settings362Clear memory terms409Component names and30 |
| Add bookmark186Add to phonebook186Search dictionary186Chara-den310Action list75, 312Backlight time311Change action76Change Chara-den76Charge send image74Chara-den call311Chara-den call311Chara-den player310Chara-den settings100, 311Delete314Download201File property314Move313Playback310Shoot movie312Shoot still picture313Substitute image311Check memory329Check new messages207, 231Check settings362Clear memory terms409Component names and30 |
| Add to phonebook186Search dictionary186Chara-den310Action list75, 312Backlight time311Change action76Change Chara-den76Charge chara-den call311Chara-den call311Chara-den call311Chara-den player310Chara-den settings100, 311Delete314Download201File property314Image for call311Move313Playback310Shoot movie312Shoot still picture313Substitute image311Check memory329Check new messages207, 231Check settings362Clear memory terms409Component names and301 |
| Search dictionary186Chara-den310Action list75, 312Backlight time311Change action76Change Chara-den76Charage Send image74Chara-den call311Chara-den call311Chara-den player310Chara-den settings100, 311Delete314Download201File property313Playback310Shoot movie312Shoot still picture313Substitute image311Check memory329Check new messages207, 231Check settings362Clear memory terms409Component names and310 |
| Chara-den.310Action list.75, 312Backlight time.311Change chara-den76Change Chara-den76Charage send image74Chara-den call311Chara-den player310Chara-den settings100, 311Delete314Download201File property313Playback310Shoot movie312Shoot still picture313Substitute image311Check memory329Check new messages207, 231Check settings362Clear memory terms409Component names and |
| Action list 75, 312 Backlight time 311 Change action 76 Change Chara-den 76 Change Send image 74 Chara-den call 311 Chara-den call 311 Chara-den call 311 Chara-den player 310 Chara-den settings 100, 311 Delete 314 Download 201 File property 313 Playback 310 Shoot movie 312 Shoot still picture 312 Shoot still picture 313 Substitute image 311 Check memory 329 Check new messages 207, 231 Check settings 362 Clear memory terms 409 Component names and 109 |
| Backlight time311Change action.76Change Chara-den.76Change send image.74Chara-den call.311Chara-den player.310Chara-den settings |
| Change send image74Chara-den call311Chara-den player310Chara-den settings100, 311Delete314Download201File property314Image for call311Move313Playback310Shoot movie312Shoot still picture313Substitute image311Check memory329Check new messages207, 231Check settings362Clear memory terms409Component names and |
| Change send image74Chara-den call311Chara-den player310Chara-den settings100, 311Delete314Download201File property314Image for call311Move313Playback310Shoot movie312Shoot still picture313Substitute image311Check memory329Check new messages207, 231Check settings362Clear memory terms409Component names and |
| Chara-den call311Chara-den player310Chara-den settings100, 311Delete314Download201File property314Image for call311Move313Playback310Shoot still picture312Sort313Substitute image311Check mail address379Check new messages207, 231Check settings362Clear memory terms409Component names and |
| Chara-den player310Chara-den settings100, 311Delete314Download201File property314Image for call311Move313Playback310Shoot movie312Shoot still picture313Substitute image311Check memory329Check new messages207, 231Check settings362Clear memory terms409Component names and |
| Chara-den settings100, 311Delete314DownloadFile property314Image for call313Playback310Shoot movie312Shoot still picture313Substitute image311Check memory329Check new messages207, 231Check settings362Clear memory terms409Component names and |
| 100, 311 Delete 314 Download 201 File property 314 Image for call 311 Move 313 Playback 310 Shoot movie 312 Shoot still picture 312 Sort 313 Substitute image 311 Check memory 329 Check new messages 207, 231 Check settings 362 Clear memory terms 409 Component names and 311 |
| Download201File property314Image for call311Move313Playback310Shoot movie312Shoot still picture312Sort313Substitute image311Check mail address379Check new messages207, 231Check settings362Clear memory terms409Component names and301 |
| File property314Image for call311Move313Playback310Shoot movie312Shoot still picture312Sort313Substitute image311Check mail address379Check new messages207, 231Check settings362Clear memory terms409Component names and |
| Image for call311Move313Playback310Shoot movie312Shoot still picture312Sort313Substitute image311Check mail address379Check new messages207, 231Check settings362Clear memory terms409Component names and |
| Move313Playback310Shoot movie312Shoot still picture312Sort313Substitute image311Check mail address379Check new messages207, 231Check settings362Clear memory terms409Component names and |
| Playback 310 Shoot movie 312 Shoot still picture 312 Sort 313 Substitute image 311 Check mail address 379 Check memory 329 Check new messages 207, 231 Check settings 362 Clear memory terms 409 Component names and 10 |
| Shoot movie312Shoot still picture312Sort313Substitute image311Check mail address379Check new messages329Check new messages207, 231Check settings362Clear memory terms409Component names and |
| Shoot still picture |
| Substitute image 311 Check mail address 379 Check memory 329 Check new messages |
| Check mail address 379 Check memory 329 Check new messages |
| Check memory |
| Check new messages |
| Check settings |
| Check settings |
| Clear memory terms 409 Component names and |
| Component names and |
| |
| functions 24 |
| Contents transfer compatible |
| |
| 0 |
| Continuous mode 172 |
| Continuous mode 172 Copy |

| 407 | | | |
|---------------------------|--|--|--|
| 407 | | | |
| 408 | | | |
| Create/Edit/Delete folder | | | |
| 326 | | | |
| 407 | | | |
| | | | |

D

| Data communication | 398 |
|--------------------------------|--------------|
| Data Link Software | 438 |
| Data Security Service | |
| 112, 114, | |
| Connect to the data stora | |
| center | 114 237 |
| Mail Phonebook 112, | |
| Send phonebook image | |
| | 114 |
| Show phonebook transf | |
| history Still picture | 114 304 |
| | |
| Date settings | |
| DC adapter | |
| Deco-mail Compose Deco-mail | 222 |
| Compose Deco-mail | 224 |
| Edit template | 226 |
| Open template | 225 |
| Save template | 234 |
| View image in mail | 233 |
| Delete | |
| Download dictionary | 409 |
| PDF files | 409 341 |
| Phonebook | 112 |
| PushTalk phonebook | . 92 |
| Record message/Voice | |
| memo Redial/Received calls | . 74 . 53 |
| Register words | 408 |
| Schedule | 375 |
| Shortcut menu | 378 |
| SMS | 250 |
| Text | 404 |
| | 377 |
| Delete all data | 385 |
| Delete secret data | 386 |
| Desktop holder | |
| Disable PIN lock | 151 |
| Disable/Delete/Change ala | |
| settings | 369 |
| Display light time | 131 |
| Document Viewer | 341 |
| Backlight time | 343 |

| Cut image 342 |
|---------------------------------|
| Delete |
| Display |
| File property 344 |
| Light up 343 |
| Magnifier 343 |
| Move spec page 343 |
| Move within screen 343 |
| Rotate view |
| Save image |
| Shortcut key 343 |
| Sort |
| Switch AV output 343 |
| Zoom/Shrink 343 |
| Download |
| Chaku-uta full [®] 356 |
| Chara-den 201 |
| Client certificate 210 |
| Deco-mail template 198 |
| Dictionary file 200 |
| Download icons collectively |
| |
| i-αppli 253 |
| i-melody |
| i-motion 212 |
| Kisekae Tool 200 |
| PDF files 199 |
| ToruCa |
| Download dictionary 409 |
| Check 409 |
| Delete 409 |
| Set/Clear 409 |
| DPOF (Print setting) 349 |
| Dual Network Service 393 |
| Status request 393 |
| |

Е

| Earphone/Microphone 383 |
|--------------------------|
| Earphone/Microphone with |
| switch 383 |
| Answering calls 384 |
| Earphone/Microphone auto |
| calling 384 |
| Making calls 384 |
| Set auto answer 385 |
| Earpiece volume 66, 119 |
| Edit image 299 |
| Change face position |
| |
| Character stamp 303 |
| Check image 300 |
| Correct image 302 |
| Face effects 302 |
| Face stamp 302 |
| Facial treatment 304 |
| Frame |

| Image editing screen |
|-----------------------------|
| |
| Image effect 301 |
| Image stamp 302 |
| Resize image 301 |
| Rotate 301 |
| Trimming 300 |
| Edit movie |
| Capture still 310 |
| File property 309 |
| Image cutter |
| Movie editing screen |
| |
| Show ticker 309 |
| Edit phonebook entries |
| 111 |
| Emoticon |
| Emoticon list 433 |
| Enter 406 |
| English guidance |
| Status request 394 |
| Enter alphabet 405 |
| Enter numbers 405 |
| Enter PIN1 code at power on |
| |
| Equalizer 122 |
| Error messages list 441 |

F

| Face authentication 148 |
|--|
| FeliCa |
| IC card lock |
| Precautions for using Osaifu-Keitai 269 |
| Use Osaifu-Keitai 269 |
| File playback |
| FirstPass |
| Flash movie |
| Display 190 |
| Playback |
| Sound fx setting 203 |
| Use phone information |
| |
| Focus lock 180 |
| FOMA card 35 |
| FOMA card (UIM) settings |
| DIN1 and /DIN2 and a |
| PIN1 code/PIN2 code |
| FOMA card phonebook |
| Copy to FOMA terminal |
| phonebook 103 |
| Save 103 |
| |

| FOMA terminal phonebool Copy to FOMA card | < |
|--|-----|
| phonebook | 103 |
| Save | |
| Font style | 143 |
| Frame | |
| Shoot with frame | 178 |
| Full Browser | 290 |
| Access setting | 294 |
| Add bookmark | 291 |
| Cookie setting | 293 |
| Display | 290 |
| Download | 293 |
| Font size | 294 |
| Key list | 293 |
| Multiple windows | 292 |
| Referer setting | 294 |
| Reset full browser | 294 |
| Script setting | 294 |
| Search page | 293 |
| Search web | 293 |
| Set image display | 294 |
| Switch to Full Browser | |
| | 293 |
| Upload file | 293 |
| Window open guard | |
| | 294 |
| Function lock | 154 |

G

| GPSGPS button setting | 278 279 |
|----------------------------|------------|
| GPS compatible i-appli | |
| | 279 |
| Host setting | 285 |
| Location history | 286 |
| Location notification | 285 |
| Location request | 283 |
| Location service client li | |
| | 286 |
| Position location | 278 |
| Position location set | 279 |
| Positioning mode | 279 |
| Service settings | 285 |
| Using location information | |
| | 287 |
| Group settings | 105 |
| Called LED color | 106 |
| Called LED pattern | 106 |
| Edit group name | 105 |
| Mail LED color | 106 |
| Mail LED pattern | 106 |
| Mail ring tone | 105 |
| Picture call set | 106 |
| Select ring tone | 105 |

н

| Handling precautions | 18 |
|-----------------------|----|
| Hands-free | |
| In-car hands-free | 62 |
| PushTalk | 94 |
| Voice call/Videophone | |
| | 79 |
| Hold | |
| Hold active call | 51 |
| On hold | 67 |
| Hold active call | 51 |

l

| i-αppli | |
|--|-----|
| Auto startChange tone/image | 201 |
| | 256 |
| Delete | 265 |
| Error display | 264 |
| i-αppli stand-by Icon information set | 263 |
| Icon information set | 256 |
| Location usage | 257 |
| Network set. | |
| Run i-appli | 234 |
| | 254 |
| Sort | 264 |
| Upgrade | 264 |
| View phonebook/history | 0-0 |
| | |
| i-αppli To function 202, | |
| i-αppli used data | |
| iC transmission | 334 |
| Receive | 335 |
| Receive Receive all Send | 335 |
| Send | 334 |
| Send all | |
| i-Channeli-Channel ticker setting | 213 |
| I-Channel licker setting | 215 |
| Reset i-Channel Showing i-Channel | 216 |
| Showing i-Channel | 215 |
| Sound fx setting | 215 |
| Image mail | |
| Create | 202 |
| Send | |
| View/Save | 233 |
| Image output (AV output) | |
| | 350 |
| Image Viewer | 296 |
| i-mode | |
| i-mode arrival action | 205 |
| i-mode host selection | 204 |

| i-mode mail |
|---|
| i-mode password 146 |
| i-motion 211 |
| Automatic replay 213 |
| Download 212 |
| File property 213 |
| i-motion type setting |
| Mail To function 213 |
| Phone To (AV Phone To) |
| function |
| Save |
| Standard type |
| Streaming type |
| i-motion mail |
| Import |
| |
| In-car hands-free |
| Infrared remote control 333 |
| Initial settings 44 |
| Intellectual property 20 |
| International call 58 |
| International dial assist 59 |
| Auto conversion 59 International call 60 |
| International prefix 59 |
| Set country code 60 |
| International prefix 61 |
| Select prefix 61 |
| International Roaming |
| (WORLD WING) 412 |
| Call barring 415 International services |
| |
| Making calls 413 |
| Network search mode |
| |
| Operator name display |
| PLMN setting 415 |
| Receiving calls 414 |
| Roaming guidance 415 |
| Internet web page 193 |
| Ir Exchange 330 |
| High-speed Ir exchange |
| |
| Receive |
| Send |
| Send all 333 |
| IrSS function 299 |
| ISP connection transmission |
| |
| |

J

| JAN code | 183 |
|---------------------------|-----|
| Japan export control | |
| regulation/Export | |
| administration regulation | 1 |
| | 462 |

Κ

| Kana/Alphanumeric | |
|------------------------|-----|
| conversion | 405 |
| Katakana (single-byte) | 405 |
| Keypad dial lock | 155 |
| Keypad light setting | 132 |
| Kisekae Tool | 137 |
| Download | 200 |
| Reset | 138 |
| Kuten code input | 408 |

L

| Last URL | 189 |
|---------------------------------------|-----|
| LED settings | 139 |
| Alarm/Timer LED | 141 |
| Called LED color | 139 |
| Charge end LED | 141 |
| Closed/Viewer position | |
| · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · | 142 |
| GPS LED | 140 |
| IC card LED | 142 |
| In-call LED | 141 |
| LED pattern settings | |
| | 140 |
| Mail send/receive LED | |
| | 140 |
| Link alarm/power ON | 365 |
| Lock function | 151 |
| All lock | 152 |
| Function lock | 154 |
| Keypad dial lock | 155 |
| Multi easy lock | 156 |
| Omakase lock | 153 |
| Self mode | 154 |
| Side key guard | 157 |
| ende neg guarannin | |

Μ

| Mail | 217 |
|--------------------------|-----|
| Add to phonebook | 232 |
| Attached files for manua | al |
| reception | 232 |
| Attachment | 226 |
| BOX list | 235 |
| Broadcast | 222 |
| Check address | 239 |
| | |

| Compose | 220 |
|--|--|
| Compose | 240 |
| Forward | 232 |
| i-mode mail | 218 |
| i-motion mail | 308 |
| Inbox | 234 |
| Mail list layout | 235 |
| Mail menu | 220 |
| Message screen | 235 |
| Move | 239 |
| Outbox | 233 |
| Protect | 239 |
| Quick reply | 231 |
| Receive option | 230 |
| Register address | 232 |
| Reply | 232 |
| Ring time setting | 123 |
| Save | 228 |
| Send | 220 |
| Signature | 220 |
| 0 | 239 |
| Sort Store at center | 239 |
| | 237 |
| Unsent Messages View attachment | 234 |
| | |
| Mail member | 243 |
| Delete | 244 |
| Edit member | 244 |
| Register address | 243 |
| Mail setting | |
| Check mail settings | 245 |
| Check new messages | |
| • | |
| | 243 |
| Font size | |
| Font size Mail member | 242 243 |
| Font size | 242 243 |
| Font size | 242 243 |
| Font size Mail member Melody Auto replay Quick reply mail Receive attached file | 242 243 244 |
| Font size Mail member Melody Auto replay Quick reply mail | 242 243 244 |
| Font size Mail member Melody Auto replay Quick reply mail Receive attached file | 242 243 244 244 245 |
| Font size Mail member Melody Auto replay Quick reply mail Receive attached file | 242 243 244 244 245 |
| Font size Mail member Melody Auto replay Quick reply mail Receive attached file Receive display Receive option setting | 242 243 244 244 245 245 245 243 |
| Font size Mail member Melody Auto replay Quick reply mail Receive attached file Receive display Receive option setting Reset mail settings | 242 243 244 244 245 245 245 243 245 |
| Font size Mail member Melody Auto replay Quick reply mail Receive attached file Receive display Receive option setting Reset mail settings Save signature | 242 243 244 244 245 245 245 243 245 243 |
| Font size Mail member Melody Auto replay Quick reply mail Receive attached file Receive display Receive option setting Reset mail settings | 242 243 244 244 245 245 245 243 245 243 |
| Font size Mail member Melody Auto replay Quick reply mail Receive attached file Receive display Receive option setting Reset mail settings Save signature Sort rules | 242 243 244 244 245 245 245 243 243 242 |
| Font size Mail member Melody Auto replay Quick reply mail Receive attached file Receive display Receive option setting Reset mail settings Save signature. Sort rules Mail To function | 242 243 244 244 245 245 245 243 245 243 242 202 |
| Font size Mail member Melody Auto replay Quick reply mail Receive attached file Receive display Receive option setting Reset mail settings Save signature Sort rules Mail To function Main specifications | 242 243 244 245 245 245 243 245 243 242 202 460 |
| Font size | 242 243 244 245 245 245 243 245 243 242 202 460 calls |
| Font size Mail member Melody Auto replay. Quick reply mail Receive attached file Receive display Receive option setting Reset mail settings Save signature Sort rules Mail To function Main specifications Making calls/Videophone | 242 243 244 245 245 245 243 245 243 242 202 460 calls . 48 |
| Font size Mail member Melody Auto replay Quick reply mail Receive attached file Receive display Receive option setting Reset mail settings Save signature Sort rules Mail To function Main specifications Making calls/Videophone Manner mode | 242 243 244 245 245 245 243 245 243 242 202 460 calls . 48 124 |
| Font size | 242 243 244 245 245 245 243 245 243 242 202 460 calls . 48 124 125 |
| Font size | 242 243 244 245 245 245 243 245 243 242 202 460 calls . 48 124 |
| Font size | 242 243 244 245 245 243 245 243 242 202 460 calls . 48 124 125 125 |
| Font size Mail member Melody Auto replay. Quick reply mail Receive attached file Receive display Receive option setting Reset mail settings Save signature Sort rules Mail To function Main specifications Making calls/Videophone Manner mode Auto disable Disable Original manner mode | 242 243 244 245 245 245 243 245 243 245 243 242 202 460 calls 124 125 125 |
| Font size | 242 243 244 245 245 245 243 245 243 245 243 242 202 460 calls 124 125 |
| Font size | 242 243 244 245 245 245 243 245 243 245 243 242 202 460 calls 124 125 |
| Font size | 242 243 244 245 245 245 243 245 243 245 243 245 243 242 202 460 calls . 48 124 125 125 126 125 314 |
| Font size | 242 243 244 245 245 245 243 245 243 245 243 245 243 242 202 460 calls . 48 124 125 125 126 125 314 315 |
| Font size | 242 243 244 245 245 245 243 245 243 245 243 245 243 242 202 460 calls . 48 124 125 125 126 125 314 315 |

| Ring tone Send message Set volume Start position | 315 314 |
|--|------------|
| Memory number | . 99 |
| Menu list | 418 |
| Camera | |
| Data Box | |
| i-αppli i-mode | |
| LifeKit | |
| Mail | 419 |
| Media tool | |
| Phonebook | |
| Settings | |
| Menu selections | |
| Function number | |
| Top menu | |
| Zoom menu | . 33 |
| Message | |
| Auto message display | 205 |
| | 206 |
| Delete | 208 |
| Display | 207 |
| Message F | 205 |
| Message R | |
| Protect set | |
| | |
| View attachment View image in mail | |
| - | |
| Message service | |
| microSD Memory Card Backup/restore | 316 |
| Backup/restore Copy to microSD Copy to the phone | 320 |
| | 320 |
| Format | 323 |
| Move to the microSD | |
| | 319 |
| Move to the phone | 319 |
| New manager information | |
| \/; | 324 |
| View data | |
| Missed call notice | |
| Missed calls | . 70 |
| Multi Assistant (Multitask) | |
| Combinations | 362 |
| 00110111210113 | 400 |
| Multi easy lock | |
| Disable | 156 |
| Multi lock auto-set | 156 |
| Multi number | 395 |
| Number setting | 395 |
| Set multi number | 396 |
| Status request | 396 |

Playback effects 314

| Multiaccess | 362 |
|------------------------|------|
| Combinations | 434 |
| Multi-guide key | . 27 |
| Music playback | 353 |
| Music player | 354 |
| Chaku-uta full® downlo | ad |
| | 356 |
| Create playlist | 357 |
| Edit information | 355 |
| Play playlist | 357 |
| Ring tone | 355 |
| Save i-motion | 356 |
| Save WMA files | 356 |
| My menu | 193 |
| N | |
| | |
| Network connection | . 91 |
| Network security code | 146 |
| Network service | 387 |

| Additional services | 396 |
|---|------|
| Arrival call action | 394 |
| Call forwarding Service | ~~~ |
| | 390 |
| Call waiting Caller ID Request Servi | 390 |
| | 393 |
| Dual Network Service | 000 |
| | 393 |
| English guidance | 394 |
| Multi number | 395 |
| Nuisance Call Barring | |
| Service | 392 |
| Remote control | 395 |
| Set arrival action | 395 |
| Voice Mail Service | 388 |
| Network services from the | |
| FOMA terminal | 388 |
| New unread mail notice | |
| | 142 |
| Next word guess | 402 |
| Noise reduction | |
| Normal position | . 27 |
| Notify caller ID | . 46 |
| Nuisance Call Barring Serv | |
| | 392 |
| Check No of entries | 392 |
| Delete all entries | 392 |
| | 392 |
| Register selected No. | |
| | 392 |

0

| OCR | | | | | | | | | | 185 |
|-----|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|-----|
| | | | | | | | | | | |

| Omakase lock 153 |
|--------------------------|
| On hold 67 |
| Operation guidance 27 |
| Options and accessories |
| 437 |
| Original manner mode 126 |
| Osaifu-Keitai |
| i-αppli |
| IC card lock 276 |
| i-mode FeliCa 268 |
| Own number 46 |
| Owner information 379 |

Ρ

| Packet transmission arriva | I |
|----------------------------|------|
| action | |
| Paging service 57, | 402 |
| Paste | 408 |
| Pause Dial | . 57 |
| PDF Viewer | |
| Add i-mode bookmark | |
| | 338 |
| Add mark | 338 |
| Cut image | 339 |
| Delete | 341 |
| Delete one bookmark | |
| | 338 |
| Delete one mark | |
| Display | 336 |
| Display bookmark | |
| Display link | 339 |
| Display mark | 338 |
| Document properties | |
| Developed remains | |
| Download remains | |
| File property | |
| Full-screen | 339 |
| Light up | 220 |
| Magnification | 338 |
| Move | |
| Move page | |
| Page layout. | |
| Page numbers | |
| Rotate view | |
| Save | |
| Scroll bar | |
| Search criteria | |
| Search text string | 338 |
| Search text string | 339 |
| Shortcut key | 339 |
| Sort | 340 |
| Switch AV output | 339 |
| Zoom in/Zoom out | 338 |

| Personalize |
|---|
| 129 Picture call set 130 Send/Receive display |
| Signal/battery/small clock |
| 134 Submenu image 134 Theme color 135 |
| Personalize menu 135 Phone ring volume 119 |
| Mail ring volume 119 PushTalk tone volume |
| Phone To (AV Phone To) |
| function |
| phonebook |
| Called LED color 00, 100, 106 Called LED pattern |
| 100, 106Chaku-moji55, 110Connect to the data storagecenter114Connection speed.110Copy item111Copy to FOMA card103Delete112Group settings99 |
| Image transfer 111 Location information 99 Mail LED color 100, 106 Mail LED pattern |
| 100, 106 Mail ring tone Making calls 100 Memo 100 Phonebook entry screen |
| 97 Picture call set 100, 106 Postal address 99 Postal code 99 Save 96 Save to FOMA card |
| 103 Search by 107 Secret code 100 Select ring tone 100, 105 Set secret 100 Substitute image 100 Switch view mode 110 Videophone image 110 |

| Dhrace | |
|--|---|
| Phrase Edit Insert phrase Phrase list Reset Save | 407 406 433 407 407 |
| Pictograph | |
| Pictograph Deco-mail pictograph lis Enter Pictograph list Picture call set Picture light. PIN1 code/PIN2 code Change Disable lock. FOMA card (UIM) settir | 432 406 431 130 175 146 150 151 |
| PIN1 code input set | 150 |
| Play melody | 314 |
| Power ON/OFF | |
| Power saver mode | 131 |
| Prefer playback sound | |
| | 122 |
| Print setting (DPOF) | 349 |
| Priority | |
| Auto start LED settings Light duration Picture call PushTalk caller ID Schedule alarm Select ring tone Substitute image | 262 139 132 130 93 372 117 78 |
| Private filter setting | 144 |
| Filter density | 144 |
| Linked manner | 144 |
| Public mode (Drive mode) | |
| Public mode (Power OFF) | |
| | |
| PushTalk | 89 86 1, 93 92 89 94 205 91 89 88 87 62 123 |
| | |

| Set auto answer 385 |
|------------------------|
| Set mute ring time 162 |
| Set PushTalk arrival |
| actions 90, 93 |
| Set when folded 66 |
| PushTalk Plus 84 |

Q

| QR code | 183 |
|------------------|-----|
| Quality alarm | 123 |
| Quick alarm | 367 |
| Quick dictionary | 402 |
| Quick manual | 474 |
| Quick silent | 125 |

R

| Receive | |
|------------------------|------|
| i-mode mail | 228 |
| Inbox | 234 |
| Received messages | |
| | 240 |
| SMS | 247 |
| Receive option (mail) | |
| Received calls | |
| Received messages | |
| Add to phonebook | |
| Send message | |
| Reconnect | |
| | . 02 |
| Record | I) |
| Voice memo (during cal | |
| | 380 |
| Voice memo (stand-by) | 200 |
| | 380 |
| Record message/Record | |
| memo | . 71 |
| Answering duration | . 72 |
| Delete | . 74 |
| Disable | |
| Play | |
| Quick message | . 73 |
| Reply message | . 72 |
| Settings | . 71 |
| V.phone reply image | |
| Redial | . 52 |
| Delete | |
| Save to phonebook | . 00 |
| (handset) | 104 |
| () | |
| Register words | |
| | |
| Edit | |
| Register | 408 |
| Reject by reason of | |
| non-disclosure | 161 |

| 470 | Index/Quick Manual |
|-----|--------------------|

| Reasons 161 |
|---------------------------|
| Reject calls 160 |
| Disable 161 |
| Save list 160 |
| Settings 161 |
| Reject payphone 161 |
| Reject unknown 162 |
| Reject unsupported ID 161 |
| Reject user unset 161 |
| Remote control 395 |
| Activate 395 |
| Deactivate |
| Status request 395 |
| Replace with Download |
| dictionary 409 |
| Reset i-mode 205 |
| Reset settings 385 |
| Ring output 124 |

| S |
|--|
| |
| Safety precautions 12 |
| SAR 462 |
| Save original phrase 407 |
| Save task 375 |
| Schedule 369 |
| Attach to mail |
| Change alarm tone 372 Change alarm volume |
| |
| |
| Check |
| Сору |
| Create i-mode mail 373 |
| Delete |
| Edit 374 |
| Making calls 373 |
| Quick alarm |
| Ring duration |
| Save 370 |
| Save from icon calendar |
| |
| Save from mail 374 |
| Save from My picture |
| |
| Save from Received calls |
| |
| Save from text memo |
| |
| Secret data 372 |
| Show all schedules 373 |
| Show by category 373 |
| Show by contact 373 |
| Screen display time 132 |
| Screen memo 196 |
| Display 197 |

| File property | 197 197 |
|-----------------------------------|------------|
| Screen saver | 133 |
| SD-Audio | 358 |
| Delete track | 360 |
| Edit track information | |
| | 360 |
| Equalizer 122, | 360 |
| Manner playback | 360 |
| Play | 359 |
| Playback screen | 360 |
| Playlist | 360 358 |
| SaveSave Search track | 360 |
| Set playback mode | 359 |
| Search dictionary | 346 |
| Character reader | 347 |
| Search phonebook | 107 |
| By group | 109 |
| By memory number | 108 |
| By reading | 108 |
| Secret mode | 158 |
| Disable | 158 |
| Settings | 158 |
| Security codes | 146 |
| Security scan (Scanning | |
| function) | 457 |
| Security settings | 145 |
| Accept/reject calls | |
| | 160 152 |
| All lock Change PIN1 code/PIN2 | |
| code | 150 |
| Face authentication | 148 |
| Function lock | 154 |
| Keypad dial lock | 155 |
| PIN1 code input set | 150 |
| Secret mode | 158 |
| Show call/received | 157 |
| Show sent/received | 157 |
| Select language | . 44 |
| Select ring tone | 116 |
| Mail ring tone | 117 |
| Payphone ring tone | 116 |
| Phone ring tone | 116 117 |
| Videophone ring tone | |
| | 116 |
| Select shutter sound | 181 |
| Select volume | 119 |
| Charge end sound | 120 |
| Charge start sound | 120 |
| Earpiece volume | |
| 66, | 119 |
| GPS volume | 120 |

Key/Standby i-motion Mail ring volume 119 Phone ring volume 119 PushTalk tone volume Timer sound 118, 120 Self mode 154 Send Movie/i-motion ... 226.308 Sent messages 220 SMS 245 Still picture 226, 299 Send own no./No caller ID Send/Receive display 130 Sent messages 240 Send message 241 Services available from the Set arrival action..... 395 Status request 395 Set hold tone 67 Set mute ring time 162 Set on hold tone 67 Set screen 299 Set sounds/Set volume Charge end sound 120 Charge start sound 120 GPS tone..... 118, 120 Key/Standby i-motion Shutter sound..... 181 Timer sound 118, 120 Set when folded 66 Shoot still picture 171 Action focus 378 Icon image settings 378 Reset menu 379 Save 377 Set background 379 Show by contact (Schedule)

| Show call/received 157 Save to schedule 374 Show sent/received 157 Side key guard 157 Signal/battery/small clock |
|---|
| 134 Signature Add signature 221 Save signature 243 Silent 66 Slideshow 298 |
| SMS Compose/Send |
| 249 Software update |
| 122 Stereo effects 121 Specific absorption rate 462 SSL 209 Certificates 209 Standard parts packaged with unit and main optional parts 22 |
| Stand-by display126Calendar display127Clock display128Stereo effects121Still pictureDisplayDisplay296Download198Store at center304Stock icon30 |

| Sub address 61 |
|-----------------------------|
| Submenu |
| Submenu image 134 |
| Supportbook 34 |
| Surround 3D sound 121 |
| Switch display to English |
| |
| Switch to videophone |
| 51, 65 |
| Switch to voice call 51, 65 |
| Symbol/Special character |
| Enter 406 |
| List 430 |
| |

Т

| Talk time/cost | 381 |
|---|------------|
| Auto reset | 382 |
| Display | 381 |
| Limit settings | 382 |
| Reset | 382 |
| Ferminal security code | 146 |
| Change | 147 |
| Fext input | 402 |
| 1 kanji conversion | 403 |
| 1-character conversion | 400 |
| 1 touch conversion | 403 |
| 1-touch conversion 1-touch single characte | 403 r |
| memory | 404 |
| 2-touch input | 410 |
| 5-touch input | 402 |
| Add space | 403 |
| Alphabet | 405 |
| Alphanumeric character | s |
| | 405 |
| Change | 404 |
| Clear memory terms | 400 |
| Conv | 409 407 |
| Copy | 407 |
| Dakuten/Handakuten m | |
| | 403 |
| Delete | 404 |
| Edit | 404 |
| Emoticon | 406 |
| Font size | 403 |
| Insert phrase | 406 |
| Katakana (single-byte) | 40E |
| Key list | 405 403 |
| Lower case | 403 |
| Next word guess | 400 |
| 402, | 410 |
| Numbers | 405 |
| Pictograph | 406 |
| Index/Quick Man | ual |

| Predictive headword conversion Quick dictionary | 404 |
|---|--|
| 402, Register words Symbol input Text input methods Undo With emoticons | 410 408 406 402 403 410 |
| Text input methods | 402 |
| Text memo Delete Edit Save to schedule | 382 383 383 374 |
| Theme color | 135 |
| Time | . 45 |
| Timer | 366 |
| ToDo list Attach to mail Change status Check Delete Edit Save Secret data Set alarm Show by category Show by status Top menu Action focus Icon image Key list | 375 377 377 376 377 377 375 376 376 376 376 377 377 . 32 136 135 137 |
| Personalize menu | 135 137 |
| Set background | 136 |
| ToruCa Add to phonebook Add to phonebook Attach to mail Copy Delete Move Retrieve from IC Save image Search Settings Sort Sort rules View | 270 273 275 274 275 274 275 274 275 275 275 275 274 273 271 |
| Touch-tone signals Troubleshooting | . 57 438 |

U

| Undo 40 |
|---------|
|---------|

URL

| URL |
|-----------------------------|
| Delete URL history 194 |
| History 194 |
| Last URL |
| USB mode setting 324 |
| Communication mode |
| |
| microSD mode 324 |
| MTP mode 324 |
| Use phone information 204 |
| User dictionary 408 |
| Delete 408 |
| Edit 408 |
| Register 408 |
| Replace with Download |
| dictionary 409 |
| Using with external devices |
| |
| |

V

| Vibrant image mode 143 |
|--|
| Vibrator 122 |
| Video player 304 |
| Backlight time 306 |
| Change size |
| Continuous play 307 |
| Frame rate |
| Light up 306 |
| Repeat playback 305 |
| Resume settings 306 |
| Set volume 306 |
| Surround 306 |
| Wide mode 305 |
| Videophone 48 |
| Brightness |
| Change send image 77 Connection speed |
| Connection speed |
| • |
| 81, 110 |
| Display setting 81, 110 |
| Display setting 81, 110 Display control 80 Hold active call 51 |
| 81, 110 Display setting 80 Hold active call 51 Hold image 78 |
| Display setting 81, 110 Display control 80 Hold active call 51 |
| 81, 110Display setting80Hold active call51Hold image78Lighting80Main/sub camera77Notify switch-mode |
| 81, 110 Display setting 80 Hold active call 51 Hold image 78 Lighting 80 Main/sub camera 77 Notify switch-mode 82 On hold image 78 |
| 81, 110 Display setting 80 Hold active call 51 Hold image 78 Lighting 80 Main/sub camera 77 Notify switch-mode 82 On hold image 78 Packet transmission arrival |
| 81, 110 Display setting 80 Hold active call 51 Hold image 78 Lighting 80 Main/sub camera 77 Notify switch-mode 82 On hold image 78 Packet transmission arrival action 82 |
| 81, 110 Display setting 80 Hold active call 51 Hold image 78 Lighting 80 Main/sub camera 77 Notify switch-mode 82 On hold image 78 Packet transmission arrival action 82 Picture memo 82 |
| 81, 110 Display setting |
| 81, 110 Display setting |
| 81, 110 Display setting |
| 81, 110Display setting80Hold active call51Hold image78Lighting80Main/sub camera77Notify switch-mode82On hold image78Packet transmission arrivalactionaction82Picture memo82Redial voice call81Reverse on/off80Self-portrait81Subscreen display80Substitute image78 |
| 81, 110Display setting80Hold active call51Hold image78Lighting80Main/sub camera77Notify switch-mode82On hold image78Packet transmission arrivalactionaction82Picture memo82Redial voice call81Reverse on/off80Self-portrait81Subscreen display80 |

| Visual preference | . 79 |
|--------------------------------------|------------|
| | 188 |
| View sites Access FirstPass cente | |
| | |
| Add to phonebook | 209 192 |
| Bookmark | 192 |
| Certification | 210 |
| Character code | 194 |
| Connection timeout | 203 |
| Download PDF | 199 |
| Font size | 190 |
| i-melody | 190 |
| i-motion. | 211 |
| Reload | 192 |
| | 192 |
| Save image | 196 |
| Screen memo | 204 |
| Set Image display | |
| Sound fx setting | 190 |
| SSL | 189 |
| | 194 |
| View Flash movies | 190 |
| View URL | 192 |
| View the display | . 28 |
| View URL | 192 |
| Viewer position | . 27 |
| Voice Mail Service | 388 |
| Activate/Deactivate | 388 |
| Check messages | 389 |
| Delete display | 389 |
| Play messages | 388 |
| Start/Stop notification | |
| | 389 |
| Status request | 389 |
| Voice mail alarm | 389 |
| Voice mail setting | 389 |
| Voice memo | 380 |
| Voice memo (during cal | |
| , " | 380 |
| Voice memo (stand-by) | 300 |
| | 380 |
| | 300 |
| Voice memo (during call) | |
| | |
| Delete | . 74 |
| Play | . 73 |
| Voice memo (stand-by) | |
| | 380 |
| Voice recorder | 335 |
| Settings | 336 |
| | |

W

| Warranty | 449 |
|-----------------|------|
| Web To function | 203 |
| WORLD CALL | . 58 |

Ζ

Zoom

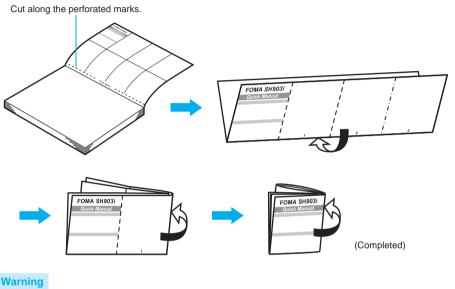
| Camera | 174 |
|--------------|-----|
| Image Viewer | 296 |
| PDF Viewer | 338 |

Quick Manual

How to Use the Quick Manual

Remove the Quick Manual attached to the end of this manual by cutting along the perforated marks and fold it as shown below. Carry the Quick Manual (Overseas Use) when the mobile phone is used with the international roaming (WORLD WING) overseas.

Folding the Quick Manual



• Be careful of injuries when cutting out Quick Manual.

This manual is produced of recyclable material. Please recycle when no longer needed.



Quick Manual

Registration/Contacts

General contact for the DoCoMo Information Center When calling from DoCoMo mobile phones or PHS phones: 151 (no area code) (toll free) (in Japanese only) You cannot call this number from an ordinary (landline) phone. When calling from ordinary (landline) phones

0120-005-250 (toll free) (in English)

You can also call this number from mobile phones and PHS phones.

· Check the phone number carefully before dialing.

If you have problems with your FOMA

When calling from DoCoMo mobile phones or PHS phones: **113** (no area code) (toll free) (in Japanese only) You cannot call this number from an ordinary (landline) phone. When calling from ordinary (landline) phones:

0120-800-000 (toll free) (in Japanese only) You can also call this number from mobile phones and PHS phones.

- Check the phone number carefully before dialing.
- Refer to 全国サービスステーション一覧 (Service Station)

| List) provided with the FOMA terminal for details. | | -1- |
|--|---|---|
| Entering lower case letters In double-byte/single-byte alphanumeric mode, press Q. Lower case input mode is enabled. To convert to lower case after entering text: Press Q. 1-touch conversion After entering text, press C. Entering pictographs/symbols/Deco-mail pict In text input screen, press Q. [Pict/Sym]. | 会日。 今日。 り り し 、 の し 、 の し 、 の し 、 | Enter hiragana Every time the l the character of Closest entry a each character Select convers Press I for I To enter multi assigned to th press to p |
| Switch between modes. To enter Deco-mail pictographs: Press in pictograph mode. The input mode switches from Pictograph 1 Pictograph 2 Pictograph D (Deco-mail pictograph) Pictograph 1 | 2 の 8に 3中 9と 9も 9までで 5こそ 見から 6この頃 第で | cursor or, afte character, pre key for 1+ sec |
| Deleting text | 2 Press ▶ Ø ▶ | |
| Move the cursor to text, and press @. To erase all text: Press @. (for 1+ seconds). | 3 Press 4 5 3 ▶ . |) ▶ テニス ▶ ● Use (*) for 1 |
| Using phrases | 回 9988 今日のテニス(| Ose los ion i conversion. |
| In text input screen, press 🖾 (for 1+ seconds). | | |

Categorize phrase

Select phrase (...)

Entering emoticons

emoticon •

Example

Ex.) 今日のテニス3時気 1 In text input screen, press 2 twice ▶ . ▶ 今日 ▶ . -4-

Add to Phonebook

- 1 In stand-by, press ☐ (for 1+ seconds) 1 [Phone] or 2 [UIM].
 - Enter name > > 8/100 + phone number > phone number type (not applicable for FOMA) card) ▶ • ▶ औ/, • ▶ mail address ▶ • ▶ mail address type (not applicable for FOMA card) . * For FOMA cards
- Press F [Complete] > memory number (not applicable for FOMA card).
- Select PushTalk phonebook entry (not applicable for FOMA card).

| Items to add | | |
|--------------|--------------|--|
| lcon | Item | Details |
| 1 | Name | Up to 32 single-byte (16 double-byte). For FOMA card, up to 21 single-byte (10 double-byte) characters. |
| R | Reading | Automatically entered. (Up to 32 single-byte. For FOMA card, up to 25 single-byte (12 double-byte) characters.) |
| 粘 | Group | 20 groups. For FOMA card, 11 groups. |
| 3 B | Phone number | Three entries. For FOMA card, one entry. |
| -1- | | |

4 Press five times 3.

今日のテニス34

Enter hiragana with the dial key.

the character changes.

 Closest entry appears after each character is entered.

Press ☐ for lower case.

To enter multiple characters

press - to move the

key for 1+ seconds.

gerer • Use - for 1-touch

mode.

5 Press □ twice ▶ ③ twice ▶ ★ ▶ . ▶ 時 ▶ ■.

-5-

assigned to the same key.

cursor or, after entering a

character, press the same

Press III five times for

single-byte alphanumeric

Every time the key is pressed.

Select conversion candidates.

| ICOII | nem | Detalls |
|--------------------------------|-------------------|------------------------------|
| 8 🛛 🖉 | Phone number | Seven types |
| 8 ê 8 | type" | |
| 48 | Mail address | Three entries. For FOMA |
| 25 0 | | card, one entry. |
| d d 🗗 🖂 | Mail address | Four types |
| | type | |
| Ŧ | Postal code* | Seven single-byte characters |
| •= | Postal address* | Up to 100 single-byte (50 |
| | | double-byte) characters |
| | Location info* | - |
| 1 | Birthday* | Only single-byte numbers |
| | Memo* | Up to 200 single-byte (100 |
| - | | double-byte) characters |
| ©~~ | Secret* | Not displayed in phonebook |
| ŝ | Secret code* | Four-digit number |
| ٦, | Select ring tone* | - |
| P | Mail ring tone* | - |
| 8 | Called LED color* | - |
| 4 | Called LED | |
| | pattern* | - |
| P | Mail LED color* | - |
| ŝ | Mail LED pattern* | - |
| 2 | | One |
| ۲ | Substitute | |
| • | image settings* | - |
| Cannot b | be saved to FON | /A card. |
| | -2- | |
| | | |
| 9985 • Use 🔀 for dakuten mark. | | |
| 00000000 | | |
| 今日のテニス | (3時) | |

lcon

Item

Details

6 Press **i** [Pict/Sym] ▶ ... ▶ ... ▶ ...



Camera - Still Pictures

In stand-by, press 🖾. Press . 3

<Cut here>

-6-

Editing Entries

edit.

Making Calls from Phonebook Entries 1 In stand-by, press .

- To change search method: Press 1 > search method > .
- 3 Press 🝙 or 🗉.

Adding Location Information

Example: For phonebook

 In the phonebook entry screen, select ▶ ● ■. To add location information: Press 1 > • > Yes > •. To add from location history: Press 2 > select location history > T > Yes > . To add from an image: Press 3 > select folder > • > select image I [OK]. To check added location information: Press 4. To delete added location information: Press 5.

Text Input

Changing input mode

 In text input screen, press □. Press I to switch from 1 (single-byte numbers) katakana) $\overline{\mathcal{V}}$ (single-byte katakana) \triangle (double-byte alphanumerics) A (single-byte alphanumerics). -3-

Camera - Movies

- In still picture shooting screen, press 12.
 - Press [Rec] (record).
- 2 Press IStopl.
- Press 1 [Save].

Viewing Still Pictures

In stand-by, press • 9 1 1 • folder • • • still picture .

Viewing Movies

1 In stand-by, press ■ 9 1 3 ▶ folder ▶ ■ ▶ movie .

Recording with Voice Recorder

1 In stand-by, press ■ 9 3 2 ▶ ■ [Record] ▶ (record) ▶ • [Stop] ▶ 1 [Save].

Videophone

Making Videophone calls

1 In stand-by, enter phone number) .

Receiving Videophone calls

Incoming Videophone ▶

Sending Chara-den as a substitute image during call

1 Press
3 3 € folder
• • Enara-den
1.

BookReader

Displaying e-dictionary and e-book

In stand-by, press • 9 3 3 > folder > • > e-book/e-dictionary) . To scroll lines: Press : (horizontal)/. (vertical). To view next/previous page: Press [1] [Page]/[2] [Page].

Displaying PDF files

In stand-by, press •935 select folder ■ ▶ PDF file ▶ ■. To scroll screen: Press . To display entire page: Press . To cut from displayed image: Press . (Cut image) ▶ Yes ▶ •.

Creating/Sending i-mode Mail

| 1 | In stand-by, press 🖾 (for | Compose message |
|---|--|---|
| 2 | 1+ seconds) > To > Press (2) > enter address > To select from phonebook: Press (1) > conjent) To select from Sent/ Received messages history: Press (3) or (4) > recipient) to select from mail members: Press (5) > member > | To Sub (No attachment) Msg 0.0KB |
| | -8 | 3- |

| Function menu | Function number |
|---------------------|-----------------------------|
| Stereo effects | 191 |
| Equalizer | 192 |
| Pref playback sound | 193 |
| | Stereo effects Equalizer |

| Display | | | | | |
|-------------|---------------------|-----------------------|------|--|--|
| | Function number | | | | |
| Stand-by | Stand-by | ^r display | 211 | | |
| display | Clock dis | splay | 212 | | |
| | Calenda | r display | 213 | | |
| Font style | | | 22 | | |
| Personalize | Call/Rcv | display | 231 | | |
| | Send/Rc | v display | 232 | | |
| | Submen | u image | 233 | | |
| | Animate | notices | 234 | | |
| | Signal/batt/s clock | | 235 | | |
| | Theme c | olor | 236 | | |
| LED | Called | Phone | 2411 | | |
| settings | LED | Video-phone | 2412 | | |
| | | PushTalk | 2413 | | |
| | | Missed call notice | 2414 | | |
| | Mail | Mail/Message LED | 2421 | | |
| | LED | Mail send/rcv LED | 2422 | | |
| | GPS | Position location | 2431 | | |
| | LED | Location notification | 2432 | | |
| | | Loc provision/accept | 2433 | | |

3 Select Sub > • > enter subject > • > Msa > • ▶ enter message ▶ ■.

Press i [Send].

Sending Deco-mail

- In message entry screen, press 1 [Decorate mail]. Select decoration I enter text.
- 3 Press 1 (8) [Preview] . 4
 - Press Fill [Send].

Sending Images/Melodies

- 1 In stand-by, press 9 1 1. To send movies/i-motion: Press •913. To send melodies: Press •914. 2 Select folder ▶ • ▶ file.
- 3 Press ☑ [Mail].
- Creating/Sending SMS (Short Messages) In stand-by, press [5]. Select $To \rightarrow (2)$ 2
- ▶ enter message ▶ ■. 3 Press i [Send].

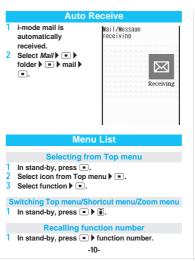
Check New Messages

In stand-by, press @ 6 1. For SMS: Press @ 6 2.

-9-

| | Function menu Function number | | | | |
|-------------|-------------------------------|----------------------|-----------------|--|--|
| LED | | Loc provision/notify | (2)(4)(3)(4) | | |
| settings | In-call LED | | 2(4)(4) | | |
| - | Charge e | end LED | 245 | | |
| | Alarm/Tir | ner LED | 246 | | |
| | IC card L | .ED | 247 | | |
| | Closed/V | iewer pos | 248 | | |
| Vibrant ima | ge mode | | 25 | | |
| Power | Normal (| auto bright) | 261 | | |
| saver set | Normal (| fixed bright) | 262 | | |
| | Power saver mode | | 263 | | |
| | User | Display light time | 2641 | | |
| | set | Screen dsp time | 2642 | | |
| | | Screen Saver | 2643 | | |
| | | Brightness | 2644 | | |
| | | Keypad light setting | 2645 | | |
| Private | Linked m | anner | 271 | | |
| filter | Filter der | nsity | 272 | | |
| | General Settings | | | | |
| | Function | menu | Function number | | |
| Check | | formation | 311 | | |
| status | Check m | | 312 | | |
| | Battery le | | 313 | | |
| | Check se | ettings | 314 | | |

-13-



| | Function number | |
|------------------|---------------------|-----|
| Text input | User dictionary | 321 |
| setting | Dwnld dictionary | 322 |
| | Edit phrase | 323 |
| | Clear memory terms | 324 |
| Auto | Auto power ON | 331 |
| power ON/ | Auto power OFF | 332 |
| OFF | Link alarm/power ON | 333 |
| Date settings | | 34 |
| Select language | | 35 |
| USB mode setting | | 36 |
| Scanning | Update | 371 |
| function | Set auto-update | 372 |
| | Set scan | 373 |
| | Version | 374 |
| Software up | odate | 38 |
| Reset settings | | 39 |

NW Services

| | Function number | | |
|------------|----------------------|-----|--|
| Voice Mail | Check messages | 411 | |
| | Play Messages | 412 | |
| | Activate VoiceMail | 413 | |
| | Set ring time | 414 | |
| | Deactivate VoiceMail | 415 | |
| | Status(Voice Mail) | 416 | |
| 14 | | | |

| | Function menu | Function number |
|--------------|--------------------|-----------------|
| Select | phone ring vol | 111 |
| volume | Mail ring vol | 112 |
| | PushTalk tone vol | 113 |
| | Setting sound vol | 114 |
| | GPS volume | 115 |
| Select | Select ring tone | 121 |
| sound | Select mail tone | 122 |
| | PushTalk tone | 123 |
| | Setting sounds | 124 |
| | GPS tone | 125 |
| Vibrator | Vibration mode | 131 |
| | Mail vibration | 132 |
| | GPS vibrator | 133 |
| | IC card vibrator | 134 |
| Manner | Normal | 1411 |
| mode | Silent | 1412 |
| | Original | 1413 |
| Ring output | - | 15 |
| Ring time | Mail ring time set | 161 |
| setting | PT ring time set | 162 |
| | GPS ring time set | 163 |
| Set mute rin | | 17 |
| Hold/On | Set on hold tone | 181 |
| hold tone | Set hold tone | 182 |
| | -11- | |

Sound

| | Function menu | Function number | |
|--------------|----------------------|-----------------|--|
| Voice Mail | Voice Mail setting | 417 | |
| | Notification setting | 418 | |
| | Notification | 419 | |
| Call | Activate | 421 | |
| waiting | Deactivate | 422 | |
| | Status request | 423 | |
| Call | Activate | 431 | |
| forwarding | Deactivate | 432 | |
| | Register number | 433 | |
| | Forwarding No. busy | 434 | |
| | Status request | 435 | |
| Bar | Register caller | 441 | |
| nuisance | Register selected No | 442 | |
| calls | Delete all entries | 443 | |
| | Delete last entry | 444 | |
| | Check No of entries | 445 | |
| Notify | Status request | 451 | |
| caller ID | Notify caller ID | 452 | |
| Caller ID | Activate | 461 | |
| request | Deactivate | 462 | |
| | Status request | 463 | |
| Talk time/co | st | 47 | |
| Set arrival | Activate | 481 | |
| act | Deactivate | 482 | |
| | Status request | 483 | |
| -15- | | | |

-12-

<Cut here>

| | Function menu | |
|--------------|-----------------|-----------|
| Arrival Call | Voice Mail | 491 |
| Act | Call forwarding | 492 |
| | Call Rejection | 493 |
| | Answer | (4)(9)(4) |

Other NW Services

| | Function menu | Function number |
|------------|------------------|-----------------|
| Remote | Activate | 511 |
| control | Deactivate | 512 |
| | Status request | 513 |
| Dual | Switching | 521 |
| network | Status request | 522 |
| English | Guidance setting | 531 |
| guidance | Status request | 532 |
| Service | ドコモ故障問合せ | 541 |
| number | ドコモ総合案内・受付 | 542 |
| Additional | USSD | 551 |
| service | Reply message | 552 |
| Multi | Set multi number | 561 |
| number | Status request | 562 |
| | Number setting | 563 |
| Chaku-moji | Create message | 571 |
| | Message display | 572 |
| Roaming | Activate | 581 |
| guidance | Deactivate | 582 |
| | Status request | 583 |
| | -16- | |

| Function menu | Function number |
|---------------------|-----------------|
| My Documents | 915 |
| Chara-den | 916 |
| Kisekae Tool | 917 |
| Print setting(DPOF) | 918 |

| Li | | |
|----|--|--|
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |

| | Function menu | Function number |
|-----------------|--------------------|-----------------|
| Bar code reader | | 921 |
| Receive Ir d | lata | 922 |
| ToruCa | | 923 |
| IC card cont | tent | 924 |
| IC card | IC lock(power-on) | 9251 |
| lock | IC lock(power-off) | 9252 |
| microSD | View microSD data | 9261 |
| manager | Backup/restore | 9262 |
| | Import | 9263 |
| | New manager info | 9264 |
| | Format | 9265 |
| | USB mode setting | 9266 |
| GPS menu | Position location | 9271 |
| | i-αppli | 9272 |
| | Location history | 9273 |
| | Set Position Loc. | 9274 |

Phone settings

| | • | |
|--------------|----------------------|-----------------|
| | Function menu | Function number |
| n-call | Noise reduction | 611 |
| settings | Reconnect | 612 |
| 0 | Quality alarm | 613 |
| Ear/mic aute | o calling | 62 |
| ncoming | Any key answer | 631 |
| settings | Set auto answer | 632 |
| Videophone | Redial voice call | 641 |
| set | Set sending image | 642 |
| | Display setting | 643 |
| | Subscreen position | 644 |
| | Visual preference | 645 |
| | Notify switch mode | 646 |
| Videophone | Hands-free V.phone | 647 |
| set | Packet trans arr act | 648 |
| | | |

| | Function menu | Function number |
|-----------|-----------------------|-----------------|
| GPS menu | Loc. Notification/set | 9275 |
| | Loc. request menu | 9276 |
| Schedule | Schedule | 9281 |
| | ToDo list | 9282 |
| Useful | Calculator | 9291 |
| functions | Text memo | 9292 |
| | Timer | 9293 |
| | Alarm | 9294 |
| | Voice memo/Rec msg | 9295 |
| | Character reader | 9296 |
| | Data Sec. Service | 9297 |
| | 10 N A | |

Media tool

| Function menu | Function number |
|-----------------|-----------------|
| SD-Audio | 931 |
| Voice recorder | 932 |
| BookReader | 933 |
| Document Viewer | 934 |
| PDF Viewer | 935 |

Other Functions

| Manner mode enable/disable | (for 1+ seconds) | |
|---|-----------------------|--|
| Public mode (Drive mode) activate/deactivate | (for 1+ seconds) ★ | |
| -21- | | |

| | Function menu | Function number |
|-----------|---------------------|-----------------|
| Record | Record message | 651 |
| message | Answering duration | 652 |
| | Reply message | 653 |
| | V.phone reply image | 654 |
| Set | Caller ID setting | 661 |
| PushTalk | Set PT arrival act | 662 |
| | Hands-free PT | 663 |
| Set when | Phone/Videophone | 671 |
| folded | PushTalk | 672 |
| Self mode | - | 68 |
| Other | Int'l prefix | 691 |
| settings | Sub address | 692 |
| | Int'l dial assist | 693 |

Security

| | Function menu | Function number |
|--------------|---------------------|-----------------|
| Secret mod | e | 71 |
| UIM | PIN1 code input set | 721 |
| Settings | Change PIN1 code | 722 |
| | Change PIN2 code | 723 |
| Accept/ | Accept calls | 731 |
| Reject calls | Reject calls | 732 |
| | Reject unknown | 733 |
| | Reject user unset | 734 |
| Accept/ | Reject payphone | 735 |
| Reject calls | Reject not support | 736 |
| | -18- | |

| Multi easy lock activate/deactivate | (for 1+ seconds) | |
|---|---|--|
| Show redial | | |
| Show received calls | · | |
| Show i-Channel properties | CLR/CLR (for 1+ seconds) | |
| Show Active marker | | |
| Show i-mode menu | | |
| Show i-appli screen | (for 1+ seconds) | |
| Activate Record message/ Voice memo | 7 (for 1+ seconds) | |
| Display Mail menu | | |
| View phonebook | Ξ | |
| Activate camera (still picture mode) | 8 | |
| Activate camera (movie mode) | In still picture shooting screen, press 112 | |
| Display Data box | (for 1+ seconds) | |
| Supportbook (preset) | In stand-by, press 🔤 | |
| Activate Multi Assistant (Multitask) | with running an application | |
| Register Shortcut menu | If or 1+ seconds) when | |
| Earpiece Volume | During call, press 🔿/🔔 | |
| Private filter ON/OFF | ▲ (Ø) | |
| Activate Music player Play/End | ((for 1+ seconds) when FOMA terminal is closed | |
| -22- | | |

| | Function menu | Function number |
|-------------|---------------------|-----------------|
| Show call/ | Show rcvd calls | 741 |
| received | Show redial | 742 |
| Show sent/ | Show sent messages | 751 |
| received | Show rcvd messages | 752 |
| Lock | All lock | 761 |
| settings | Keypad dial lock | 762 |
| | Function lock | 763 |
| | IC card lock | 764 |
| | Multi lock auto-set | 765 |
| Change sec | | 77 |
| Face auther | ntication | 78 |
| Delete all | Delete user data | 791 |
| data | Del secret data | 792 |

Other settings

| Function menu | Function number |
|-----------------|-----------------|
| nitial settings | 8 |
| Own number | 0 |

Data box

| Function menu | Function number |
|---------------|-----------------|
| My picture | 911 |
| MUSIC | 912 |
| i-motion | 913 |
| Melody | 914 |

-19-

Network Services

In the confirmation screen, select Yes and press .

Voice Mail Service

Voice Mail Service is a paid option (monthly fees apply) that requires subscription.

STEP 1 Activate Voice Mail Service.

STEP 2 Voice/Videophone call is received.

STEP 3 Call is connected to Voice Mail Service center if not answered.

STEP 4 Caller records a message.

STEP 5 Play message.

| Activate | In stand-by, press •4131 |
|--|---|
| Set ringing time before activating | In stand-by, press ●413 ② ▶ enter ringing time ▶ ● |
| Deactivate | In stand-by, press •415 |
| Play messages | In stand-by, press •412 |
| Set Voice Mail Service with voice guidance | In stand-by, press •417 |
| Check new message | In stand-by, press •411 |
| Check and change Voice Mail Service settings | In stand-by, press ●416 ► setting |

<Cut here>

-23-

| Voice mail alarm | In stand-by, press ● 4 1 8 1 ▶ 1 [ON] |
|--------------------------------|--|
| Delete display | In stand-by, press •4182 |
| Start notification | In stand-by, press •4191 |
| Stop notification | In stand-by, press •4192 |
| Check status (notification) | In stand-by, press •4193 |

Call Waiting

Call waiting is a paid option (monthly fees apply) that requires subscription.

| Activate | In stand-by, press •42 |
|---|--|
| Deactivate | In stand-by, press •42 |
| Status request | In stand-by, press •42 |
| Place current call on hold and answer a voice call | Beeps during call ▶ 	 call ▶ 	 call ▶ 	 call ▶ |
| Disconnect current call and answer a voice call | Beeps during call 🕨 🖀 🕨 🕿 🕨 call |
| Place current call on hold and place a separate call | Dial during call ▶ |

-24-

| | Icon List |
|-------------|---|
| | 123456789 |
| | |
| | |
| | 18 17 16 15 14 13 12 11 10 19 20 21 26 25 |
| | self 💿 🐟 🕹 |
| | |
| | |
| | 50 23 27 24 23 22 |
| 1 2 3 | ™: Signal strength indicator うく氏晶 いいでの 第: i-mode/Full Browser 1000: SSL indicator |
| | -28- |

Call Forwarding Service

Call forwarding Service is a free option that requires subscription. STEP 1 Register forwarding destination.

- STEP 2 Activate Call forwarding Service.
- STEP 3 Voice/Videophone call is received.

STEP 4 Call is automatically forwarded to the destination if not answered.

| Activate | In stand-by, press • 4 3 1 • 3 1 • enter forwarding number • • • 2 • enter ringing time • • 1 |
|--|--|
| Deactivate | In stand-by, press •43 |
| Register number | In stand-by, press ■ 4 3 3 1 ▶ edit forwarding number ▶ ■ ▶ 1 |
| Use Voice Mail Service when forward party busy | In stand-by, press •43 4 |
| Status request | In stand-by, press •43 5 |
| Forward calls received while receiving call or during call | While receiving call or during call, press @2 |

-25-

7

9

10

11

12

13

14 15

16

17

18

19

20

21

4 Ω G dx Da: i-αppli indicator 22 5 GPS indicator 23 3 : Location provision ON/Location provision 24 25 26 27 permission schedule set GPS positioning 6 🖙 🐨 📅 🗄 🎬 🖉 🖉 🕼 : Restriction enabled (grav) : microSD Memory Card is inserted (gidy) : Data on microSD Memory Card is being 28 viewed 8 IIII : Battery level Charging : Charging Clock display ER : IC Card lock △ : Alarm/Schedule alarm Record message to mail: Number of messages B: Earphone/Microphone connected : Public mode (Drive mode) Sa : Silent : Vibrator enabled 😨 : Manner mode active . FOMA USB cable is connected FOMA card error 1 Appears when FOMA card is malfunctioning or not inserted 2 : Non-DoCoMo FOMA card is inserted S0 Multitask 98f : Self mode enabled O : PushTalk in progress -29-<Cut here>

Nuisance Call Barring Service

Nuisance Call Barring Service is a free option that requires subscription.

| Register last caller for Nuisance Call Barring Service | In stand-by, press •44 |
|---|-----------------------------|
| Register selected numbers for Nuisance Call Barring Service | In stand-by, press •44 2 |
| Delete all entries | In stand-by, press •44 |
| Deleting last saved entry | In stand-by, press • 4 4 4 |
| Confirm total numbers | In stand-by, press • 4 4 |

Caller ID Request Service

Subscription is not required, (no monthly fees)

| Activate | In stand-by, press •461 |
|----------------|-------------------------|
| | In stand-by, press •462 |
| Status request | In stand-by, press •463 |

Dual Network Service

Dual Network Service is a paid option (monthly fees apply) that requires subscription.

-26-

- 💓 🖬 (green) 🖬 (red) 📲: Ir exchange/External device indicator If : Private filter Shortcut menu registration indicator : View ToruCa (red) (red) (green): Hands-free Image: Mail being held at the center : Mail being held at the center full i-mode mail/SMS received 🖂 (green) 📾 : Unread mail (red) 🔄 : Inbox full (red font) : Unread SMS (blue font) : SMS is full Message R/F icon RF (green) : Unread Message R/F RE (yellow) : Received Message R/F full RF : Message R/F being held at the center R F : Message R/F being held at the center full R F : Unread Message R/F, Message R/F being held at the center R F: Unread Message R/F, Message R/F being held at the center full Received Message R/F full, Message R/F being held at the center R F : Received Message R/F and Message R/F being held at the center full
 - Refer to P. 28 to P. 30 of Manual for detailed explanations on displayed icons.

-30-

Switch to FOMA I ▶ enter network security terminal code (four digits) Status request

Using Services from the FOMA Terminal

| Service | Phone number |
|--|---------------------------------------|
| Collect call (recipient is charged for call) | (No area code) 106 |
| Standard directory assistance calls or calls to DoCoMo directory assistance for mobile phones (fees apply) (Only registered users appear in directory assistance.) | (No area code) 104 |
| Send telegram (fees apply: telegram charge) 8 AM to 10 PM | (No area code) 115 |
| Time (fees apply) | (No area code) 117 |
| | Area code of area to inquire + 177 |
| Police | (No area code) 110 |
| Fire/ambulance | (No area code) 119 |
| Maritime emergency | (No area code) 118 |
| Busy line inquiry | (No area code) 114 |
| Disaster message (fees apply) | (No area code) 171 |

-27-

<Emergency contacts in case of loss or other accidents>

Omakase lock

Enable/Disable Omakase lock 0120-524-360 Office hours: 24hours

Other contacts

| <contacts:< th=""><th>></th></contacts:<> | > |
|---|---|
| <contacts:< td=""><td>></td></contacts:<> | > |
| <contacts:< td=""><td>></td></contacts:<> | > |
| Check the phone number carefully before dialing. | e |



Quick Manual "Overseas Use"

For lost, stolen, and cost settlement overseas

<DoCoMo Information Center> (24-hour service)

Universal number

International prefix number -800-0120-0151

Communication charges to your country of stay will apply.

- If the above universal number is not available: International call access code of your country of stay
 -81-3-5366-3114*
 - Communication charges to Japan will apply.

Dial +81-3-5366-3144 when calling from SH903i. (Press the key "0" for 1+ seconds for "+".) Refer to "DoCoMo WORLD SERVICE User's Guide" for international prefix number for the universal number/ International call access code of major country.

Making a call to the phone in your country of stay

Enter phone number (© [Phone]/() (V.phone]. Even when making a call to the phone in your country of stay, make an international call to Japan if the call recipient is a "WORLD WING" subscriber.

International call settings

Entering + and selecting the country code to add automatically

In stand-by, press ● 6 9 3 1 ▶ Int'l prefix conv ▶ ■ ▶ ON ▶ Country code conv ▶ ■ ▶ ON ▶ ■ ▶ Country (code) ▶ ■ ▶ (a).

Saving international call access code

Saving country codes

In stand-by, press • 6 9 3 3 • [------------] • • • • enter the country name • • • • enter the country code • •.

For repairs overseas

<Network Technical Support and Operation Center> (24-hour service)

Universal number

International prefix number for the universal number -800-5931-8600

Communication charges to your country of stay will apply.

- If the above universal number is not available:
 International call access code
 -81-3-6718-1414*
- of your country of stay
 Communication charges to Japan will apply.
- The forms of international prefix number for the universal number/International call access code of
- major country may be changed.

Dial +81-3-6718-1414 when calling from SH903i. (Press the key "0" for 1+ seconds for "+".) Refer to "DoCoMo WORLD SERVICE User's Guide" for international prefix number for the universal number/ International call access code of major country.

-1-

Receiving Calls

Enter the phone number in the same way as it is entered in

Having calls to your FOMA phone made

Having calls to your FOMA phone made

Enter international call access code of the country of the

from countries other than Japan

caller-81-user's phone number excluding "0".

Press (to answer an incoming call.

from Japan

Japan.

Use at Your Country of Stay

The service is available when the FOMA terminal is located in the 3G roaming area.

The FOMA terminal is set to automatically search for the network when the power is turned on, and to be connected to the available carrier in your country of stay.

- If the connected carrier is changed when Auto time correction is set to ON, a confirmation screen asking whether to correct time difference may appear.
 Select Yes to start correcting time difference to adjust to the local time.
- When Operator name disp is set to display ON, the carrier connected appears in stand-by.
- When Clock display is set to ON (Large), Japan time appears below the local time. (excluding regions keeping the same standard time as Japan time)

Making Calls

Making a call to Japan or other countries from your country of stay

Making an international call outside your country of stay using phonebook In stand-by, press ⊇ > select person to call > < [Phone]/ <a>[V.phone]> Call>

Use "+" to make an international call

Enter "81" as a country code to make an international call to Japan.

When the area code (city code) begins with "0", omit the "0" when dialing. (However, include "0" when making a call to some countries or regions such as Italy.)

International call

Save a country number using Set country code to select a country code before making an international call. The following operation is available overseas only:

Enter phone number) @ 3 ([International Call]) select country code) • (Phone)/(iii [V.phone].

-2-

Setting a Search Method of Carrier

Default setting: *Auto* (Automatically switches to a telecommunications carrier)

In stand-by, press • 5 9 1 • 1 [Auto] • •.

 To manually switch telecommunications carriers: Press (2) [Manual] > select a telecommunications carrier > .

Searching the host network again

In stand-by, press • 5 9 1 3.

- When Network setting is Auto: Automatically switches an available carrier.
- When Network setting is *Manual*: Displays the list of carriers. Select a carrier and press .

-6-

Setting a Carrier to Preferentially Connect to

-3-

- 2 Press 1 ▶ enter country code (MCC) ▶ ▶ enter network code (MNC) ▶ ● ▶ Yes ▶ ●.
 - To select from a telecommunications carrier list: Press
 Select a telecommunications carrier > > Yes>
 - To save the telecommunications carrier currently connected to: Press ③ ▶ Yes ▶ ■.
 - To change priority: Press 4 > select a destination >
 Yes > .

Displaying a Carrier on the Stand-by

-7-

In stand-by, press ● 5 9 2 ▶ 1 [display ON]/2 [display OFF] ▶ Yes ▶ ●.

-4-

-5-

<Cut here>

| ng Roam | |
|---------|--|
| | |
| | |

In stand-by, press • 581.

To deactivate Roaming guidance In stand-by, press • 582. To check setting In stand-by, press • 583. **Call Barring**

Activating call barring

In stand-by, press • 5 9 8 1 1 [Bar all incoming] enter the network security code • •.

 To reject Videophone and 64K data transmission calls: Press 2 [Bar V.phone/64K] + enter the network security code - .

Deactivating call barring

In stand-by, press • 5 9 8 2 enter the network security code • .

Check setting

In stand-by, press • 5 9 8 3.

Using Network Service

Voice Mail

Activate

In stand-by, press • 5931 • operate according to voice guidance.

Deactivate

In stand-by, press • 5932 • operate according to voice guidance.

Play messages

In stand-by, press • 5 9 3 3 • operate according to voice guidance.

Voice Mail settings

In stand-by, press • 5934 • operate according to voice guidance.

Set ring time

In stand-by, press • 5935 • operate according to voice guidance.

-10-

Call Forwarding

Activate

In stand-by, press •5941 • operate according to voice guidance.

Deactivate

In stand-by, press •5942 • operate according to voice guidance.

Settings

In stand-by, press 5943 b operate according to voice guidance.

Setting Roaming guidance

In stand-by, press •597 > operate according to voice guidance.

Setting Remote Access

In stand-by, press $\textcircled{\baselineskip}$ 5 $\textcircled{\baselineskip}$ operate according to voice guidance.

Caller ID Request Service

In stand-by, press \bullet 596 \blacktriangleright operate according to voice guidance.

-11-

-8-

Setting After Homecoming

At the time of purchase, the FOMA terminal is set to automatically search for the network when the power is turned on and to be connected to the FOMA network. Reset Network search mode to the FOMA network (DoCoMo).

 If Network search mode is set to *Manual*, switch to the FOMA network manually or change to *Auto*. Reset Network search mode to the FOMA network (DoCoMo).

-9-About Inquiries Overseas

For lost, stolen, and cost settlement, or malfunction of the FOMA terminal overseas, refer to "For lost, stolen, and cost settlement overseas" on the cover of Quick Manual "Overseas Use" or "For repairs overseas" on P.1.

 Add "international prefix number for the universal number" that is assigned to your country of stay, or the "international call access code of your country of stay", to the head of your phone number for inquiries. Refer to "DoCoMo WORLD SERVICE User's Guide" or the DoCoMo global service web page for the international prefix number for the universal number and international call access code of your country stay.

-12-

<Cut here>

-14-

Please Follow Proper Etiquette

When using your FOMA terminal, please be considerate of those around you.

Turn Off Your FOMA Terminal in the Following Places

When in an area where use is prohibited

There are places where the use of mobile phones is prohibited. Be sure to turn off your FOMA terminal in the following places.

On an airplane In a hospital

There are people outside hospital wards who also use electric medical equipment. Please make sure that your FOMA terminal is turned off in the lobby and waiting room.

While driving

Talking on FOMA terminal while driving is dangerous and may result in an accident. Please pull over to a safe place and use your FOMA terminal or set Public mode (Drive mode).

When in crowded places such as rush-hour trains in case somebody nearby is using an implanted cardiac pacemaker or implanted cardioverter-defibrillator

Your FOMA terminal may affect the operation of such equipment.

When in public places such as theaters, movie theaters, or museums Use of your FOMA terminal in quiet public places will annoy others.

Be Careful of Where You Use Your FOMA Terminal and the Volume of Your Voice and the Ring Tone

When using your FOMA terminal in a restaurant or a hotel lobby, lower your voice. In crowded places, be careful not to obstruct other pedestrians.

Be Considerate of the Privacy of the Individuals Around You



Please be considerate of the privacy of individuals around you when taking and sending images using camera-equipped mobile phones.

The Following Functions Will Help You to Keep Your Manners in Public

There are useful functions you can use to set your FOMA terminal not to answer incoming calls, and to silence all sounds.

Manner mode (P. 124)/Original manner mode (P. 126)

Silences the keypad/stand-by i-motion sound and all the sounds from the FOMA terminal, and Record message is set (Manner mode). When in Manner mode, automatically set functions (Record message, Vibrator, Mic sensitivity up, Ring tone, Mail ring tone, alarm tone, keypad/stand-by i-motion sound and Low battery alarm) can be set to ON (enable) or OFF (disable) (Original manner mode).

Public mode (Drive mode) (P. 68)

The caller hears a guidance message that informs the receiver is driving and unable to answer. The call then disconnects. Your FOMA terminal does not sound even when it receives calls, so you can drive safely.

Vibration mode (P. 122)

Notifies incoming calls by vibration.

Record message (P. 71)

When you are unable to take a call, the Record message function records the caller's message.

You can also use optional services such as Voice Mail Service (IPP. 388) and Call forwarding Service (IPP. 390).



NTT DoCoMo Hokkaido, Inc. NTT DoCoMo Tokai. Inc. NTT DoCoMo Chugoku, Inc.

NTT DoCoMo Tohoku, Inc. NTT DoCoMo Hokuriku, Inc. NTT DoCoMo Shikoku, Inc.

NTT DoCoMo. Inc. NTT DoCoMo Kansai, Inc. NTT DoCoMo Kyushu, Inc.

Manufacturer: SHARP Corporation



To protect the environment, return used batteries to NTT DoCoMo, any NTT DoCoMo retailer, or a recycling agency.





PRINTED WITH '06.10 (1.1 Edition) SOY INK TINSEA122AFZZ This manual is made of 100% recycled paper. This manual is printed with soy based ink. 06K 3.73 DS SM484①

FOMA[®] SH903i Manual for Data Communication

| • Data Communication |
|---|
| • Before Use |
| General Flow to Prepare for Data Communication |
| Connecting the FOMA Terminal to Your PC |
| Installing the Communication Setting File4 |
| Communication Settings with the FOMA PC Setup Software |
| Communication Settings Without the FOMA PC Setup Software16 |
| Sending and Receiving Data (OBEX) |
| • AT Command List |

Data Communication manual

This manual explains the necessary items to perform the data communication with FOMA SH903i and the installation methods of "SH903i Communication Setting File (Driver)" and "FOMA PC Setting Software" in the CD-ROM.

For Windows XP operation

This manual is compliant with Windows XP Service Pack 2. The operation procedure and screens may be partly different depending on the use environment.

Data Communication

Data Communication Available from the FOMA Terminal

FOMA terminal communication formats fall into three categories: packet transmission, 64K data communication and data transfer.

- FOMA terminal does not support fax transmissions.
- FOMA terminal supports data communication with musea, sigmarion and sigmarion . Update musea and sigmarion before using.

Refer to the DoCoMo web page for details on how to update.

- The FOMA terminal is not compatible with Remote Wakeup.
- Packet transmission and 64K data communications are not available overseas.

Packet transmission

Charges incurred are based on the amount of data sent and received. When you are only connected to the network and are not sending or receiving data. no communication charges are incurred. Remain connected to the network, with no charge, and only send or receive data when necessary. Uses access points that are compatible with FOMA packet transmission, such as the DoCoMo Internet Connection Services "mopera U" and "mopera", and sends and receives data at speeds up to 64 kbps and 384 kbps respectively. (A best-effort connection is provided in which transmission speeds vary depending on the transmission environment and network traffic conditions.) For packet transmission, connect the FOMA terminal to a device such as a PC and perform appropriate settings. Best suited for when sending and receiving mail text data or other relatively small amounts of data at high speeds. Sending or receiving large files will lead to higher transmission charges.

Making voice calls while performing packet transmissions with a PC or other devices is possible.

64K data communications

Charges incurred are based on the connection time. Uses access points that are compatible with FOMA 64K data communications, such as the DoCoMo Internet Communication Services "mopera U" and "mopera", or a synchronous ISDN 64K access point. Connect the FOMA terminal to a device such as a PC and perform appropriate settings to use 64K data communications. Best suited for sending and receiving relatively large amounts of data, such as downloading Data box contents. Note that long-time communication leads to higher transmission charges.

Data transfer

Transfer or exchange data using a FOMA USB cable (sold separately) or Ir exchange without charges. Send or receive data such as phonebook entries, sent/received messages, and bookmarks. Use infrared communication when connecting the FOMA terminal to another FOMA USB cable or infrared communication when connecting the FOMA terminal to a PC.

Things to Keep in Mind

Internet service provider fees

When using the Internet, usage fees are charged by the Internet service provider. These usage fees, paid to the Internet service provider, are separate from the FOMA service fee. Contact your Internet service provider for more information about usage fees.

Use the DoCoMo Internet Connection Services "mopera U" and "mopera". Subscription to "mopera U" requires a charge. "mopera" requires no subscription and charges no monthly usage fee.

Host (Internet service provider, etc.) settings

Hosts for packet transmission and 64K data communications differ. For packet transmission, use a host that supports FOMA packet transmission, and for 64K data communications, use a host that supports FOMA 64K data communications or synchronous ISDN 64K communication.

- Connecting to DoPa access points is not possible.
- Connecting to PHS 64K/32K data communication data access points (such as PIAFS) is not possible.

User authentication

Depending on the host, user authentication (ID and password) may be necessary when connecting. In such cases, enter your ID and password using communication software (dial-up network) to connect. Your ID and password are provided by your host Internet service provider or host network administrator. Contact your host Internet service provider or host network administrator for more information.

Packet transmission and 64K data communications conditions

The following conditions are necessary for communication using the FOMA terminal.

- PC must support FOMA USB cable.
- Must be within the FOMA service area.
- For packet transmission, access point must be compatible with FOMA packet transmission.
- For 64K data communications, host must support FOMA 64K data communications or synchronous ISDN 64K communications.

However, even if above conditions are met, communication may not be possible due to a busy base station or poor signal conditions.

Note

 When performing packet transmission, the device connected to your FOMA terminal must be a JATE (Japan Approvals Institute for Telecommunications Equipment) authorized product.

Before Use

Confirming the Operating Environment

Communication setting file, FOMA PC Setup Software and FirstPass PC Software have the following system requirements.

| | System requirements | | |
|---------------------|---|--|--|
| ltem | Communication setting file/FOMA PC Setup Software | FirstPass PC Software | |
| PC | PC/AT compatible A USB port (USB specification 1.1/ 2.0-compliant) is required. | PC/AT compatible | |
| OS | Windows 2000, Windows XP (all Japanese versions) | | |
| Required memory* | Windows 2000: At least 64 MB Windows XP: At least 128 MB | Windows 2000: At least 32 MB Windows XP: At least 128 MB | |
| Hard disk* | At least 5 MB free space | At least 10 MB free space | |
| Browser | | Windows 2000: Internet Explorer 5.5 and above Windows XP: Internet Explorer 6.0 and above | |

Required memory and hard disk are for the "FOMA PC Setup Software" and "FirstPass PC Software" operating environment. May differ depending on the PC system configuration.

- The operation in an upgraded OS cannot be guaranteed.
- Depending on the operating environment, use of the software may not be possible. DoCoMo holds no responsibility for responding to inquiries or guaranteeing operation in environments other than those specified above.

Required Equipment

The following hardware and software are required besides the FOMA terminal and a PC.

- FOMA USB cable (sold separately)
- CD-ROM "FOMA SH903i CD-ROM"

Note

• Purchase a dedicated USB cable "FOMA USB cable". USB cables for PC are not available since the connector shape is different.

Data communication terminology

APN (Access Point Name)

A character string used by Internet service providers and corporate LANs for identification purposes. The APN of the DoCoMo Internet Connection Service mopera U is *mopera.net* and mopera is *mopera.ne.jp*.

cid (Context Identifier)

Registration number assigned when an APN is registered to the FOMA terminal. On the FOMA terminal, numbers 1 to 10 can be used.

DNS (Domain Name System)

System that converts domain names (for example, *nttdocomo.co.jp*) into IP addresses used on the PC.

IrDA (Infrared Data Association)

Organization that establishes the standard for infrared exchange.

IrMC (Ir Mobile Communications)

Standard created for the purpose of transferring data between mobile phones or PDAs (Personal Digital Assistants). Exchange phone numbers and schedules between mobile phones or PDAs with IrMC-compliant infrared terminals.

OBEX (Object Exchange)

One of the international data communication standards. Enables sending and receiving data between OBEX-compatible devices such as mobile phones, PCs, digital cameras and printers.

QoS (Quality of Service)

Service quality. Technology for using lines as the user intends, during communication. Set communication speed for connection, etc. on the FOMA terminal. (127 P. 28 and P. 34)

W-CDMA

One of the third-generation mobile communication systems (IMT-2000) recognized as a global standard. The FOMA terminal is compliant with the W-CDMA standard.

W-TCP

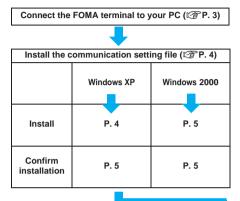
A TCP parameter for maximizing TCP/IP transfer capabilities when using packet transmission on the FOMA network. Use this communication setting to maximize the communication performance of the FOMA terminal.

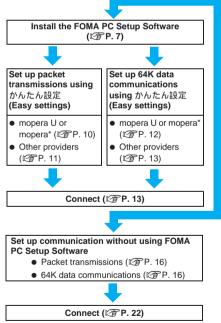
Users with PC administrator rights

Authority that makes access to all OS systems possible. On a single PC, at least one person is set as a user with PC administrator rights. Normally, users without PC administrator rights cannot install or uninstall drivers or software.

General Flow to Prepare for Data Communication

This section describes the preparation required to connect the FOMA terminal to your PC, and use packet transmission and 64K data communications. The general flow is as shown below.





* Use "mopera U" (subscription necessary) for the broadband Internet connection, etc. Subscribe to a plan that only charges for months which the service was used. Also available is "mopera", a simple Internet connection service with no subscription necessary.

Communication Setting File

To connect the FOMA terminal to your PC for data communication, installation of the communication setting file from the included CD-ROM is required. (27 P. 4 to P. 7)

Note

- If installation fails and FOMA SH903i is not listed in the screens of step 3 on P. 6, uninstall the communication setting file (P. 6) and install it again.
- If, for some reason, the PC is unable to recognize the FOMA terminal, uninstall the communication setting file (27 P. 6) and install it again.
- If the wrong OS driver is installed using auto-search settings, it will not run properly. Uninstall the communication setting file (P. 6) and install it again.

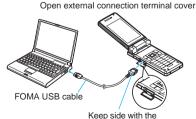
FOMA PC Setup Software/FirstPass PC Software

Install the FOMA PC Setup Software from the included CD-ROM to PC and make a variety of necessary settings to perform packet transmission and 64K data communications connecting the FOMA terminal to PC. (IPP. 7) FirstPass PC Software enables access to FirstPass supported sites via a PC Web browser with user certificates obtained by the FOMA terminal. Refer to "FirstPassManual" on the CD-ROM for details. Adobe Reader (version 6.0 and above is recommended) is required to view "FirstPassManual" (PDF format).

Connecting the FOMA Terminal to Your PC

Connect the FOMA terminal to your PC with both devices turned on. If the communication setting file is already installed, so appears on the FOMA terminal screen.

Connecting Using the FOMA USB Cable



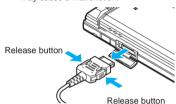
Keep side with the arrows up Insert the FOMA side of the FOMA USB cable (sold separately) into the external connection terminal on the FOMA terminal. ()

Insert the PC side of the FOMA USB cable into the PC USB connector.

- ()
- When connecting for the first time, the PC automatically recognizes that the FOMA USB cable is connected and a wizard screen appears. (PP. 4)

How to remove

Press the release buttons () on the FOMA terminal side of the FOMA USB cable, and pull out from the FOMA terminal (). Pull by force may cause a malfunction.



Pull the FOMA USB cable out from the PC.

Note

- Connecting the FOMA terminal while charging in the desktop holder is also possible.
- Do not remove the FOMA USB cable during data transmission. Otherwise, transmission disconnection, malfunctions or data loss may occur.

Installing the Communication Setting File

Installing the Communication Setting File (Driver)

Installing on Windows XP

Install on the PC using a user with administrator riahts.

Insert the included CD-ROM into your PC.

- When the initial screen appears, exit the screen. (Close the screen.) This screen may not appear when the CD-ROM is inserted into the PC depending on your settings.
- Connect the FOMA terminal to your PC.
 - A wizard startup screen appears.

Select いいえ、今回は接続しません (No, not this time) and click 次へ (Next).



• Depending on the PC, screen may not appear.

Select 一覧または特定の場所からイ ンストールする (詳細)(Install from the list or a particular location (Advanced)) and click 次へ (Next).



Search location screen appears.

Specify the search location.



- Select 次の場所で最適のドライバを検索する (Find best driver in the next location).
- 2 Select 次の場所を含める (Include next) location) and click 参照 (Browse). Specify the directory below. <CD-ROM drive name>:¥USBDRV
- 3 Click 次へ (Next). Installation begins. When installation is completed, the finish screen of the search wizard appears.
- 🔓 When 新しいハードウェアの検索ウィ ザードの完了 (Search wizard for new hardware completed) appears,

click 完了 (Finish).

- Installation finishes, and the search window for the next driver appears.
- The USB driver is installed first.

Continue to install other drivers.

• Repeat steps 3 to 6 above, and install the following drivers in order.

Modem driver OBEX port driver Command port driver

When installation of all the drivers is completed, a pop-up screen with the message 新しいハー ドウェアがインストールされ、使用準備がで きました (New hardware has been installed and is ready to be used) appears from the task bar indicator for several seconds.

 Confirm the types and names of the devices to be installed. (P. 5)

Installing on Windows 2000

Install on the PC using a user with administrator rights.

- Insert the included CD-ROM into your PC.
 - When the initial screen appears, exit the screen. (Close the screen.) This screen may not appear when the CD-ROM is inserted into the PC depending on your settings.

Connect the FOMA terminal to your PC and click 次へ (Next).



- Search method selection screen appears.
- Select デバイスに最適なドライバを検 索する(推奨)(Find the best driver for this device (Recommended)) and click 次へ (Next).



• Search location screen appears.

Select 場所を指定 (Specify location) and click 次へ (Next).

 A screen to specify the location to copy from appears.

Specify the location to copy from and click *OK*.



- A search completed screen appears.
- Specify the directory below as the location to copy from.
 <CD-ROM drive name>:¥USBDRV
- When 参照 (Browse) is clicked, select any file from the directory above and click 開く (Open).
- When ドライバファイルの検索 ハード ウェアデバイスのドライバファイル検 索が終了しました (Driver file search for hardware device completed) appears, click 次へ (Next).
 - Installation begins. When installation is completed, the finish screen of the search wizard appears.
 - The folder name that appears will differ depending on the PC you are using.

Click 完了 (Finish).

- Installation finishes, and the search window for the next driver appears.
- The USB driver is installed first.

Continue to install other drivers.

- Click 次へ (Next), repeat steps 3 to 7, and install the following drivers in order.
 Modem driver
 OBEX port driver
 Command port driver
- Confirm the types and names of the devices to be installed. (P. 5)

Confirming the Installed Communication Setting File (Driver)

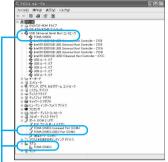
If the FOMA terminal is not properly recognized by the PC, set up and communications are not possible. Example: Confirming Windows XP drivers.

• The screens are different for other operating systems.

- Click スタート (Start) menu → コン トロールパネル (Control Panel), and then click the パフォーマンスとメン テナンス(Performance and Maintenance) icon システム (System) icon. ● System properties screen appears.
 - Windows 2000
 - Select スタート (Start) menu → 設定 (Settings) → コントロールパネル (Control Panel), and then double-click the システム (System) icon.
- Click the ハードウェア (Hardware) tab and then click デバイスマネー ジャ (Device Manager).
 - The device manager screen appears.

Click on each device, and confirm the name of the installed device.

Confirm that the names of all the installed devices are displayed for **USB (Universal Serial Bus)** $\exists \lor \vdash \vdash \Box \neg \exists$ (USB (Universal Serial Bus) controllers) or $\vec{n} \vdash \vdash (COM \succeq LPT)$ (Ports (COM & LPT)) and $\exists \vec{\tau} \vdash (Modems)$.



If recognized, they will appear in this manner.

• The following drivers are installed when the communication setting file is installed.

| Device type | Device name |
|---|---|
| USB (Universal Serial Bus) controllers | FOMA SH903i |
| Ports (COM and LPT) | FOMA SH903i Command Port (COMx) FOMA SH903i OBEX Port (COMx) |
| Modem | FOMA SH903i |

The "x" from "COMx" is a number and differs depending on the PC.

Related Operations

If installation fails or *FOMA SH903i* does not appear in the screen of step 3

 Uninstall the file, and then install again. Refer to "Uninstalling the Communication Setting File (Driver)" for steps on uninstalling.

Uninstalling the Communication Setting File (Driver)

This section describes how to uninstall the communication setting file. Screens differ depending on the OS.

 When uninstalling the Communication Setting File, be sure to use a user with administrator rights. An error will occur when other users attempt to uninstall this software.

Contact the computer manufacturer or Microsoft Corporation for information about configuring the administrator rights setting.

Uninstalling from the included CD-ROM

Example: Uninstalling from Windows XP.

The screens are different for other operating systems.

Insert the included CD-ROM into your PC.

• When the initial screen appears, exit the screen. (Close the screen.) This screen may not appear when the CD-ROM is inserted into the PC depending on your settings.

Click スタート (Start) menu → ファ イル名を指定して実行 (Run).

The ファイル名を指定して実行 (Run) screen appears.

Enter <CD-ROM drivename>: ¥USBDRV¥SH903IU.EXE and click OK.

| 0 | 実行するプログラム名、または間(フォルダやドキュ ットリソース名を入力してください。 | メント名、インターネ |
|-----|---|------------|
| 名前② | D¥USBDRV#SH903IU.EXE | ۲ |
| | 0K **`/†u | 参照(B) |

When お使いのパソコンからFOMA SH903iが使用しているファイルをア ンインストールいたします。 (Uninstall the file that FOMA SH903i is using from your PC) appears, click 実行 (Run).

- Uninstallation of the communication setting file begins.
- 5 When アンインストールが完了しました。(Uninstallation completed.) appears, click 完了 (Complete).
 - Uninstallation of the communication setting file finishes.

Uninstalling from the control panel

Example: Uninstalling from Windows XP.

- The screens are different for other operating systems.
 - Click スタート (Start) menu → コン トロールパネル (Control panel) and click the プログラムの追加と削除 (Add/Remove programs) icon.
 - The プログラムの追加と削除 (Add/Remove programs) screen appears.

Windows 2000

 Click スタート (Start) menu → 設定 (Settings) → コントロールパネル (Control panel) and double-click the アプリケーションの追加と削 除 (Add/Remove application) icon. The アプリケーションの追加と削除 (Add/ Remove application) screen appears.

Select FOMA SH903i USB and click 変更と削除 (Change and Delete).

- When お使いのパソコンからFOMA SH903iが使用しているファイルをア ンインストールいたします。 (Uninstall the file that FOMA SH903i is using from your PC) appears, click 実行 (Run).
 - Uninstallation of the communication setting file begins.
- When アンインストールが完了しました。(Uninstallation completed.) appears, click 完了 (Complete).
 - Uninstallation of the communication setting file finishes.

Communication Settings with the FOMA PC Setup Software

FOMA PC Setup Software

Various network settings are required to connect the FOMA terminal to a PC to send packet transmissions and 64K data communications. Use the FOMA PC Setup Software to easily make the following settings.

Easy settings

Follow the menu to easily create dial-up settings for FOMA data transmissions and configure the W-TCP setting.

W-TCP settings

This optimizes the network settings in the PC before using *FOMA packet transmission*. Use the *W-TCP settings* to optimize the transmission settings and fully utilize the transmission performance.

Setting the Host (APN)

This configures the host (APN) required for packet transmissions.

Unlike in the case of 64K data communications, the host for FOMA packet transmissions does not use a telephone number. A host name, called an APN (Access Point Name), is registered to the FOMA terminal for each host in advance. The registration number (cid) of the APN is assigned to the host telephone number field and a connection is established. The APN *mopera.ne.jp* is registered in the first cid (cid1) and *mopera.ne.jp* is registered in the third cid (cid3) at the time of purchase for connection to mopera or mopera U. Configure a separate APN to connect to another provider or a corporate LAN. cid [Context Identifier] ...

This number is a number for managing hosts (APNs) used for packet transmission, registered in the FOMA terminal. This is configured when an APN is registered in the FOMA terminal.

Note

 Alternatively, configure packet transmissions and 64K data communications without using the FOMA PC Setup Software. (127 P. 16)

From installing the FOMA PC Setup Software to connecting to the Internet

Check the operating environment of the FOMA PC Setup Software. (12) P. 2)

STEP 1 Install the FOMA PC Setup Software If the W-TCP System Setup Software (earlier version W-TCP Setup Software), FOMA Data Transmission Setup Software (earlier version FOMA Data Transmission Setup Software) or FOMA PC Setup Software (version earlier than 3.0.1) supplied with a FOMA terminal released before this handset is installed in the PC, uninstall these programs in advance. (ICP P. 9)

STEP 2 Setup preparation

Check the following before making any settings.

- The FOMA terminal is connected to a PC (P. 3)
- The FOMA terminal is recognized on the PC (P P. 5)
- If the FOMA terminal is not properly recognized by the PC, setup and communications are not possible. Install the communication setting file. (127 P. 4)

STEP 3 Use Easy settings to configure the network

- Packet transmissions using mopera U or mopera (P. 10)
- Packet transmissions using other providers (P. 11)
- 64K data communications using mopera U or mopera (P. 12)
- 64K data communications using other providers (P. 13)

Refer to P. 16 and following pages for other settings.

STEP 4 Establish a connection (CPP. 13) Connect to the Internet.

Installing the FOMA PC Setup Software/FirstPass PC Software

- To install the FOMA PC Setup or FirstPass PC Software on a PC, the PC user must have administrative rights. An error will occur when other users attempt to install this software.
 Contact the computer manufacturer or Microsoft Corporation for information about configuring the administrator rights setting.
- Close all other programs before beginning installation. If other programs are running, click キャンセル (Cancel) on the FOMA PC Setup Software screen, close all other programs after saving, then restart installation.

Example: Installing on Windows XP.

The screens are different for other operating systems.

Insert the included CD-ROM into your PC.

Click データリンクソフト・各種設定 ソフト (Data link software/Setting software) インストール (Install) in the FOMA PC設定ソフト (FOMA PC Setup Software) column 実行 (OK) 実行する (Start).

 If the initial screen does not appear, click ファ イル名を指定して実行 (Run) in the スタート (Start) menu, specify <CD-ROM drive name>: ¥FOMA_PCSET¥SETUP.EXE and click OK.

To install FirstPass PC Software

- In the initial screen, click データリンクソフト・ 各種設定ソフト (Data link software/Setting software) インストール (Install) in the *FirstPass PC*ソフト (FirstPass PC Software) column 実行 (OK) 実行する (Start).
- Follow the instructions in *FirstPassManual* found in the FirstPassPCSoft folder of the CD-ROM to install.

Windows 2000

 In the initial screen, click データリンクソフト・ 各種設定ソフト (Data link software/Setting software) インストール (Install) in the FOMA PC設定ソフト (FOMA PC Setup Software)/FirstPass PCソフト (FirstPass PC Software) column 開く (Open).

Click 次へ (Next).

 Refer to P. 8 if a screen appears, stating that an earlier version of W-TCP Setup Software, an earlier version of FOMA Data Transmission Setup Software or the FOMA PC Setup Software is already installed.

Read the licensing agreement and click はい (Yes) to agree.



- This is the user licensing agreement for the FOMA PC Setup Software. Clicking L1L17 (No) cancels the installation.
- Make sure that タスクトレイに常駐 する (Resident in task tray) is checked ☑ and click 次へ (Next).

| FOMA PG語論ソフトセットドゥブ | X |
|--|--|
| たかドアップ \$42* ニースで読み通いたやパテップ \$42*を選択して(だちい。 | |
| W-TOP設定をタスクトレービに開催させますか? | |
| 回復スクトレールに推動する | |
| | |
| | |
| | |
| InitalShield | |
| | < <u>R5/8</u> / (<u>201 N</u>) 46/82 |

 After setup, the W-TCP Settings icon is added to the task tray. (IGP P. 14)
 Adding the icon to the task tray is recommended, as it enables optimization setting of W-TCP transmissions.
 This icon can be removed or added after installation.

Confirm the destination program folder and click 次へ (Next).

| インストーあ先の選択 ファイルをインストールするフルバクを選択します。 | |
|---|---------------------|
| もポアップは、次の7×14年 FONA PO訳定ソフト き | を行われールします。 |
| このフォルダヘのインストールは、ルなヘルギタンをクルがしま | đ. |
| 9はフォルがへ行ストールする場合は、漫伝体的/約 | がっつして144のを運動してください。 |
| | |
| - (12) | |
| Col-Manaki Cifrogram FileNFONA POIRED/75 | ●積俗 |
| | ●概念 |

 To change the destination program folder, click 参照 (Browse), select a destination for installation and click 次へ (Next).

Confirm the program folder name and click 次へ (Next).

| フログラムフィルダウ酸酸 フログラムフォルダを電視してくまさい。 | |
|--|--------------------------|
| 1.4アップは、次についるれているアログラム 244月に7日グラム アイ または利用ののよび うとからしつかばかすることもごがあます。 | このも思知します。 新しんりゃんが名を入力するの |
| 70/51.7469/02 | |
| 20112-1005137-0092 | |
| 既存の1ヵ431回 | |
| Evide Access ED Evide Access ED Evide Access Evidence Data Access Evidence Accesses | |
| Instal Sheld | |
| | 現る(数) 次へ(数) キャンセル |

- To change, enter a new folder name and click 次へ (Next).
- Click 完了 (Finish) on the InstallShield Wizardの完了 (Installshield Wizard completed) screen.
 - The FOMA PC Setup Software restarts. Now configure the settings. (PP. 10)

Notes about installing the FOMA PC Setup Software

 If an earlier version of W-TCP Setup Software, FOMA Data Transmission Software or FOMA PC Setup Software is installed

If an earlier version of W-TCP Setup Software, FOMA Data Transmission Software or FOMA PC Setup Software is installed, a warning screen appears. Click **OK** and uninstall the software using アプリケーション(プログラム)の追加と 削除 (Add/Remove application (programs)) before installing the FOMA PC Setup Software (Ver. 3.0.1).

If キャンセル (Cancel) is clicked during installation

The setup cancellation screen appears if $\mp \forall \nu$ $\forall J \downarrow$ (Cancel) or $I \downarrow I \downarrow \bar{\lambda}$ (No) is clicked during setup to cancel installation. To continue with the installation, click $I \downarrow I \downarrow \bar{\lambda}$ (No). To cancel the installation, click $|J \downarrow \downarrow \bar{\lambda}$ (No).

Checking the FOMA PC Setup Software version

In the startup screen of the FOMA PC Setup Software, select メニュー (Menu) パージョン 情報 (Version information) to view version information.

Uninstalling the FOMA PC Setup Software/FirstPass PC Software

Before uninstalling the software

Return the transmission settings changed for the FOMA back to their original settings before uninstalling the FOMA PC Setup Software.

 To uninstall the FOMA PC Setup or FirstPass PC Software on a PC, the PC user must have administrative rights. An error will occur when other users attempt to uninstall this software. Contact the computer manufacturer or Microsoft Corporation for information about configuring the administrator rights setting.

Right-click 盟 in the task tray and click 終了 (Exit).



Click



End any programs that are running.



 The above screen will appear when attempting to uninstall, while FOMA PC setup Software or W-TCP Setup Software are running. Cancel the uninstallation program and close the running programs.

Uninstalling the software

Example: Uninstalling from Windows XP.

• The screens are different for other operating systems.

Click スタート (Start) menu →コント ロールパネル (Control panel) and click the プログラムの追加と削除 (Add/Remove programs) icon.

The プログラムの追加と削除 (Add/Remove programs) screen appears.

Windows 2000

 Click スタート (Start) menu → 設定 (Settings)
 → コントロールパネル (Control panel) and double-click the アプリケーションの追加と削 除 (Add/Remove application) icon.
 The アプリケーションの追加と削除 (Add/ Remove application) screen appears.

Select NTT DoCoMo FOMA PC 設定 ソフト (NTT DoCoMo FOMA PC Setup Software) and click 削除 (Remove).

Select NTT DoCoMo FOMA PC 設定ソフト (NTT DoCoMo FOMA PC Setup Software).



To uninstall FirstPass PC Software

 Select FirstPass PC ソフト (FirstPass PC Software) and click 変更と削除 (Change/Remove).

Confirm the program name to delete and click はい (Yes).

• Uninstallation of the FOMA PC Setup Software begins.

Click 完了 (Complete).

 Uninstallation of the FOMA PC Setup Software is completed.

Disabling W-TCP optimization

- The screen below appears when W-TCP is optimized.
- Click Ltl (Yes) to disable optimization.
 W-TCP optimization is disabled after the PC is restarted.



Setting Up Communication

Use this setup software to easily create a dial-up setting for FOMA data communications.

 Check that the FOMA terminal is correctly connected to the PC before making any settings. (IPP P. 3)



 Click スタート (Start) menu → すべてのプログ ラム (All Programs) (for Windows 2000, select プログラム (Programs)) → FOMA PC 設定ソフ ト (FOMA PC Setup Software) → FOMA PC 設 定ソフト (FOMA PC Setup Software). The screen above appears when FOMA PC Setup Software starts.

Easy Settings

Communication setting

Start the FOMA PC Setup Software and click メニュー (Menu) 通信設 定 (Communication setting).

- Select 通信ポート指定 (Specify communication port) and click *OK*.
 - Normally, select 自動設定(推奨)(Automatic setting (recommended)). The connected FOMA terminal is automatically specified.
 - To specify a COM port, select COMボート指定 (Specify COM port) and specify a COM port number (COM 1 to 99) to which the FOMA terminal is connected.

| ④ 自動設定(推奨) | C COM林-H指定 |
|------------|------------|
| | 00H - |
| | COM T |

Note

 Refer to "Confirming the Installed Communication Setting File (Driver)" on P. 5 for the checking method of COM ports.

Selecting packet transmission from Easy settings (with mopera U or mopera)

The setting is made for high-speed packet transmissions* at a maximum speed of 384 kbps. The provider uses mopera U or mopera, the DoCoMo Internet Connection Service.



| 福続方法の選択 ・ パケット通信 パケット通信 量に応じて新 | は、通信時期の指数に関係なく送受信されたデー 9金が現金される通信方式です。(最大384Kbps) |
|---|--|
| パケット通信 量に応じてす | 1は、時間に応じて料金が混金される通信方式で |
| | < 戻5(8) (次へ傾) キャ |

Select『mopera U』への接続 (mopera U connection) or 『mopera』への接続 (mopera connection) and click 次へ (Next).



- mopera U is a paid service that requires subscription. A subscription confirmation message appears when mopera U is selected.
- Using another provider (P. 11)
- 4 Click OK on the FOMA 端末設定取得 (FOMA terminal setting acquisition) screen.
 - The Host (APN) setting is acquired from the FOMA terminal connected to the PC.
 Wait until acquisition is complete.

5 Enter the connection name and click 次へ (Next).

• Select a connecting method. mopera U supports both PPP and IP connections.

mopera supports only IP connection.

| 搞彿名: | foma |
|--|--|
| モデム名: | FOMA SH903i |
| 搞梳方式: | |
| ○ 発信者番号: | 通知を行う |
| ○ 発信者番号 ○ NNサービスに | |
| ※mopera U及び。 でご利用の場合は | nopera機続では能信者番号が必要で 、「NWサービスに従う」をチェックしてください |

- Enter a name in the 接続名 (Connection name) field.
- The following single-byte characters cannot be entered.
 - ¥/:*?!<>|"
- When connecting to mopera U or mopera, select 発信者番号通知を行う (Enable Notify caller ID).

Click 次へ (Next).

- When using mopera U or mopera, ユーザー名 (User name) and パスワード (Password) can be left blank to connect.
- · Specify the users to whom rights are granted.

| 使用可能ユーザーの近 | | |
|-------------------|-------------------------------|---|
| この接続を利 | 用できるユーザーを指定してください | |
| | てのユーザー | |
| C 85 | 90æ | |
| ユーザー名・パスワード | 散定 | |
| アカウントをお | 持ちの方は入力して下さい。 「場合は入力不要です。) | |
| いけ行らにはい フーザー名: | 「場合は人力」不要です。) | |
| | | _ |
| パスワード: | | |
| | ▶ パスワードを保存する | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |

Make sure that 最適化を行う(Optimize) is checked ☑ and click 次へ (Next).

| 現在、FOMAパケット用 | | | 10 |
|---------------------------|---------------|----------|-----|
| FOMAパクット通信を利 定を最適化します。 | H 9 9 KID, 1K | XIDAMBIE | aR. |
| ☞ 廣適化相行 | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |

 The W-TCP setting required for packet transmissions is optimized. This screen does not appear if the W-TCP setting has already been optimized.

Confirm the setting information and click 完了 (Finish).

• The settings appear in a list. Check that the settings are correct.

If デスクトップにダイヤルアップのショート カットを作成する (Create dial-up shortcut on desktop) is checked ☑, a shortcut is created automatically.

To change the settings, click 戻る (Back).

/ Click OK on the 完了 (Finish) screen.

- Restart the PC to enable the changes to the settings. Click はい (Yes) when a message appears prompting to restart the PC.

Selecting packet transmission from Easy settings (with other providers)

The setting is made for high-speed packet transmissions* at a maximum speed of 384 kbps.

High-speed packet transmissions (@P. 10)

Follow steps 1 to 4 of "Easy Settings" on P. 10.

• Select その他 (Other) for the host in step 3.

2 Enter the connection name and click 接続先 (APN) 設定 (Host (APN) settings).

| 接続名: | foma | |
|--|-------------|-----------|
| モデム名: | FOMA SH903 | d |
| 擴現先(APN)の選択: | moperane.jp | PPP擁續) |
| ○ 発信者番号通知吃! | 70 | 抽线先(APN)酸 |
| ○ 発信者番号道動時代 ● NWサービスに従う | 510720 | 詳細情報の設定 |

- Enter a name in the 接続名 (Connection name) field.
- The following single-byte characters cannot be entered.

¥/:*?!<>|"

 If 発信者番号通知を行う (Send caller ID) is selected, the caller ID is sent when transmission is executed.

Advanced settings (TCP/IP settings)

 Click 詳細情報の設定 (Advanced) and the IP Address/Name server setting screen appears. To enter dial-up information, such as the provider or corporate LAN, register the necessary addresses according to the instructions.

Configure the host (APN).

 The default setting for the first cid is mopera.ne,jp, the APN used to connect to mopera. The default setting for the third cid is mopera.net, the APN used to connect to mopera U.

I Click 追加 (Add).

The 接続先 *(APN)* の追加 (Add host (APN)) screen appears.

Properly enter the FOMA packet transmission supported host name (APN) for the provider in the 接続先 (APN) (Host (APN)) field, and click OK.

The 接続先 *(APN)* 設定 (Host (APN) settings) screen reappears.

 Enter only single-byte alphanumeric characters, hyphen (-) or period (.) for 接続先 (APN) (Host (APN)). Register up to ten cids.

Click *OK* on the 接続先 *(APN)* 設定 (Host (APN) settings) screen.

- The screen in step 2 reappears. The host (APN) set in step 3 appears in 接続先 (APN) の 選択 (Selected host (APN)).
- Check the host name (APN) in 接続 先 (APN) の選択 (Selected host (APN)) and click 次へ (Next).

Enter the user name and password and click 次へ (Next).

- Enter the user name and password provided by the provider while making sure that the use of upper and lower case characters is correct.
- Specify the users to whom rights are granted.

| この時代にす何できる」サートを指定してください | ● 伊衣でのユーザー ● 自分のき ● 分のき ● 少のき ● クリントをお待ちの方は入力して下さい。 ● お持ちない場合は入力が要です。) |
|--|---|
| (自分のあ) (リーネ・パスワード数定 アカウントをお持ちの方は入力して下さい。 の持ちていからきは入力力で更です。) ユーザーを: | C 自分のみ と-ザー名・パスワード設定 アカワントをお持ちの方は入力して下さい。 な持ちでない場合は入力不要です。) |
| サー名・パスフード設定 アカウントをお持ちの方は入力して下さい。 な持ちでない場合は入力不要です。) ユーザー名: | レーザー名・パスワード設定 アガウントをお持ちの方は入力して下さい。 は持ちでない場合は入力不要です。) |
| アカウントをお持ちの方は入力して下さい。 は持ちでない場合は入力不要です。) ユーザー名: | アカウントをお持ちの方は入力して下さい。 切持ちでない場合は入力不要です。) |
| は持ちでない場合は入力不要です。) ユーザー名: | (お持ちでない場合は入力不要です。) |
| | 7-#-名: |
| /129-1: | |
| | /(27-1: |
| ▶ パスワードを保存する | ▼ パスワードを保存する |

Make sure that 最適化を行う (Optimize) is checked ☑ and click 次へ (Next).

| 现在、FOMA | パケット用に銀道们 | されていません。 | |
|--------------------|-----------------|-----------|-------|
| FOMAパクット 定を最適化し | 通信を利用するた はす。 | ゆ、パノエン内の) | B1889 |
| ☑ 漫道化を | 173 | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |

 The W-TCP setting required for packet transmissions is optimized. This screen does not appear if the W-TCP setting has already been optimized.

Confirm the setting information and click 完了 (Finish).

• The settings appear in a list. Check that the settings are correct.

If デスクトップにダイヤルアップのショート カットを作成する (Create dial-up shortcut on desktop) is checked ☑, a shortcut is created automatically.

To change the settings, click 戻る (Back).

Ilick OK on the 完了 (Finish) screen.

- Restart the PC to enable the changes to the settings. Click はい (Yes) when a message appears prompting to restart the PC.
- Sending and receiving transmissions (P. 13)

Selecting 64K data communications from Easy settings (with mopera U or mopera)

The setting is made for 64K data communications. The provider uses mopera U or mopera, the DoCoMo Internet Connection Service.

Follow steps 1 to 4 of "Easy Settings" on P. 10.

 Select 64K データ通信 (64K data communications) for the connection method in step 2.

2 Enter the connection name, select a modem and click 次へ (Next).



- Enter a name in the 接続名 (Connection name) field.
- The following single-byte characters cannot be entered.

¥/:*?!<>|"

- Make sure that FOMA SH903i is set in モデム の選択 (Selected modem).
- When connecting to mopera U or mopera, select 発信者番号通知を行う (Enable Notify caller ID).

<mark>子</mark> Click 次へ (Next).

- When using mopera U or mopera, ユーザー名 (User name) and パスワード (Password) can be left blank to connect.
- Specify the users to whom rights are granted.



Confirm the setting information and click 完了 (Finish).

• The settings appear in a list. Check that the settings are correct.

If デスクトップにダイヤルアップのショート カットを作成する (Create dial-up shortcut on desktop) is checked ☑, a shortcut is created automatically.

To change the settings, click 戻る (Back).

Click OK on the 完了 (Finish) screen.

• Sending and receiving transmissions (P P. 13)

Selecting 64K data communications from Easy settings (with other providers)

The setting is made for 64K data communications.

Follow steps 1 to 4 of "Easy Settings" on P. 10.

 Select 64K データ通信 (64K data communications) in step 2 and その他 (Other) in step 3.

2 Make the settings and click 次へ (Next).



- To connect to a provider with an ISDN synchronous 64K access point, make the following settings when creating a dial-up setting.
 - Connection name: Enter a connection name.
 - Selected modem: FOMA SH903i
 - Phone Number: Enter the phone number provided by the provider.

- The following single-byte characters cannot be entered for the connection name.
 ¥/: * ?!<>! "
- The following characters can be entered for the phone number.
 0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 A B C D P T W a b c d p t w !

@ \$ - . () + * # , & and single-byte space

 If 発信者番号通知を行う (Send caller ID) is selected, the caller ID is sent when transmission is executed.

Advanced settings (TCP/IP settings)

 Click 詳細情報の設定 (Advanced) and the IP Address/Name server setting screen appears. To enter dial-up information, such as the provider or corporate LAN, register the necessary addresses according to the instructions.

3 Enter the user name and password and click 次へ (Next).

- Enter the user name and password provided by the provider while making sure that the use of upper and lower case characters is correct.
- Specify the users to whom rights are granted.

| この接続を利用できるユーザーを指定してください の「何べてのユーザー」 | |
|---|---|
| | |
| | |
| ○ 自分のみ | |
| ユーザー名・パスワード設定 | |
| アカウントをお持ちの方は入力して下さい。 の持ちでない場合は入力不実です。) | |
| 2-ザー名: | - |
| | _ |
| /12/2-1: | |
| ▶ パスワードを保存する | |

- 4 Confirm the setting information and click 完了 (Finish).
 - The settings appear in a list. Check that the settings are correct.

If デスクトップにダイヤルアップのショート カットを作成する (Create dial-up shortcut on desktop) is checked ☑, a shortcut is created automatically.

To change the settings, click 戻る (Back).

Click OK on the 完了 (Finish) screen.

Executing the Configured Transmission

Example: Executing the configured trasndmission from Windows XP.

• The screens are different for other operating systems.

Double-click the connection icon on the desktop.

- The connection screen appears.
- The name of the connection icon is the connection name entered in the earlier setting.



Establish a connection.



- When using mopera U or mopera, ユーザー名 (User name) and パスワード (Password) can be left blank to connect.
- If a user name and password are entered in step 3 on P. 13, that information is entered automatically into the ユーザー名 (User name) and パスワード (Password) fields.
- When using other providers or dial-up to connect, enter the ユーザー名 (User name) and パスワード (Password) and click ダイヤル (Dial).
- When Save user name and password field is checked ☑, the user name and password do not need to be entered next time.

Note

• When there is no connection icon on the desktop <Windows XP>

Click スタート (Start) menu \rightarrow すべてのプログラム (All programs) \rightarrow アクセサリ (Accessories) \rightarrow 通信 (Communications) \rightarrow ネットワーク接続 (Network connections).

<Windows 2000>

Click スタート (Start) menu \rightarrow プログラム (Programs) \rightarrow アクセサリ (Accessories) \rightarrow 通信 (Communications) \rightarrow ネットワークとダイヤルアッ プ接続 (Network and dial-up connections).

- A screen appears on the FOMA terminal showing the calling for packet transmission or dialing for 64K data communications.
- The transmission speed shown on the PC may differ from the actual transmission speed.

Disconnecting

Simply closing the browser may not disconnect the connection. Follow the steps below to properly disconnect.

Click 🛃 in the task tray and click 切断 (Disconnect).

• The connection is disconnected.

W-TCP Setting

W-TCP function

W-TCP Setup Software is a TCP parameter setup tool used to optimize the TCP/IP transmission capacity when sending and receiving packet transmissions over the FOMA network. Configure the transmission settings with this software to fully utilize the transmission performance of the FOMA terminal.

Enabling and disabling optimization

For Windows XP

On Windows XP, configuring optimization for each dial-up setting is possible.

Start the FOMA PC Setup Software and click *W-TCP* 設定 (W-TCP setting).



To use the W-TCP setting icon in the task tray

Click I in the task tray to start W-TCP settings.



Perform the next operation.

- When the system setting is not optimized
 The following screen appears.
 - The following screen appears.
 Select 384 kbps and click 最適化を行う (Optimize).

The W-TCP setting (Dial-up) screen appears. Select the dial-up setting to optimize and click 実行 (Run). Optimization of the system setting and dial-up setting begins.

Follow the instructions on the screen to restart the PC. After the PC is restarted, optimization of the system setting is enabled.

| <mark>點</mark> ₩-TCP設定 | D |
|-----------------------------|---------------|
| FOMAバケット通信を利用 設定を最適化します。 | するため、パソコン内の通信 |
| 現在、FOMAバケット用 | に最適化されていません。 |
| 量通信 | LEITO |
| 384 Kbps 💌 | 変更を行わず閉じる |

When the system setting is optimized

• The following screen appears.

To change the dial-up, select and optimize the dial-up to be set.

The changes to the settings take effect after the PC is restarted.

| 最適化 | 法正 | 法度 | 現在 | ダイヤルアップ名 | モデム名 |
|-----|----|---------|-----|----------|-------------|
| マする | | 384Kbpe | 最適化 | foma | FOMA SH903i |
| | | | | | |
| | | | | | |

Disabling optimization

 Click システム設定 (System settings) on the W-TCP setting (Dial-up) screen. The following screen appears.

Click 最適化を解除する (Disable optimization) to disable the setting, for example, in order to send and receive transmissions without the use of the FOMA terminal. The restart confirmation screen appears. End all currently running programs and restart the PC to disable the optimization setting.



• For Windows 2000

Perform the operation in step 1 of "For Windows XP".

Perform the next operation. When the system setting is not optimized

 The following screen appears.
 Select 384 kbps and click 最適化を行う (Optimize), end all currently running programs and restart the PC to enable the optimization setting.

| FOMM パケット通信を利用するため、パソコン内の通 設定を最適化します。 現在、FOMAバケット用に最適化されていません。 | | パソコン内の: | 意利用する | W-TCP設定 OMA/ (ケット) |
|--|--------|---------|-------|-----------------------|
| | | | | |
| | 最適化を行う | いていません | | 現在、FOMA |

When the system setting is optimized

- The following screen appears.
 - Click 最適化を解除する (Disable optimization) to disable the setting, for example, in order to send and receive transmissions without the use of the FOMA terminal. The restart confirmation screen appears. End all currently running programs and restart the PC to disable the optimization setting.

| at 2 - at 2 - C L ス 9 。 現在、384 Kbps用に最適化されています。 | 現在、384Kbps用に最適化されています。 | FOMA/「ケット通信を利用するため 設定を最適化します。 | な、パンコン内の通 |
|--|------------------------|----------------------------------|-----------|
| | 無面比を解除する | | |
| 最適化を解除する | | 現在、384Kbps用に最適化。 | きれています。 |
| | | 最適化を解除す | 5 |

Host (APN) Settings

Reading Host (APN) information from the FOMA terminal

Click 接続先 (APN) 設定 (Host (APN) settings) and on the retrieve setting from FOMA terminal screen, click **OK** The

| MANE来訳定 HIR先モ(APNOの | \$C | |
|------------------------|-----------|------------------------|
| 출축(cid) | 18的先(APIO | FOMARDEA DETERBRIDE |
| 3 | noperanet | 1825 |
| | | |

connected FOMA terminal is accessed automatically and the registered host (APN) information is read. (This operation is not performed if the FOMA terminal is not connected.) The setting information can also be read by selecting from the toolbar ファイル (File) \rightarrow **FOMA** 端末から設定を取得 (Retrieve setting from FOMA terminal).

Adding, editing or deleting a host (APN)

• To add a host (APN)

Click 追加 (Add) on the host (APN) settings screen.

• To edit a registered host (APN)

On the host (APN) settings screen, select the host (APN) and click 編集 (Edit).

• To delete a registered host (APN)

On the host (APN) settings screen, select the host (APN) and click 削除 (Delete).

 The host (APN) registered to the first and third cid cannot be deleted. (When the third number (cid) is selected and 削除 (delete) is clicked, the number is not actually deleted. The number returns to *mopera.net*.)

Saving to a file

Select $\mathcal{P}\mathcal{P}\mathcal{I}\mathcal{V}$ (File) from the toolbar to back up the host (APN) settings registered to the FOMA terminal or to save settings being edited.

Loading settings from a file

To load saved host (APN) settings in order to reedit them or write them onto the FOMA terminal, select the appropriate function from the 7 r f J k(File) menu on the toolbar.

Writing host (APN) information onto the FOMA terminal

To write the indicated host (APN) setting to the FOMA terminal, click *FOMA* 端末へ設定を書き込 む (Write settings onto FOMA terminal) on the Host (APN) setting screen.

Creating dial-up settings

On the host (APN) settings screen, select an added or edited host (APN) and click ダイヤルアップ作成 (New dial-up). A screen confirming the writing of the setting to the FOMA terminal appears. Click は い(Yes). After the setting is written to the host (APN), the パケット通信用ダイヤルアップの作成 (New dial-up for packet transmission) screen appears.

Enter a connection name and click アカウント・パ スワードの設定 (Set account and password). (Can be left blank to connect when using mopera U or mopera.)

Enter a ユーザー名 (User name) and パスワード (Password) and specify the users to whom rights are granted and click **OK**.

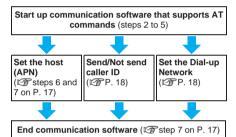
If the IP and DNS information from your provider are available, click 詳細情報の設定 (Advanced), enter the necessary information and click **OK**. After entering the information, click **FOMA** 端末へ 設定を書き込む (Write settings onto FOMA terminal), confirm that the old setting is to be overwritten and then write the settings.

Communication Settings Without the FOMA PC Setup Software

Setting Communications for Packet Transmissions and 64K Data Communications

This section describes how to set up packet transmission and 64K data communications without using the FOMA PC Setup Software. To make the settings, communication software for entering AT commands are required. "Hyper Terminal", which is included as standard with Windows, is used here.

- The flow for setting up with use of AT commands is as follows.
- To use 64K data communications, there is no host (APN) setting.



Note

- Install communication setting file before making settings for packet transmission and 64K data communications. (IPP. 4)
- AT commands are commands for controlling the modem. The FOMA terminal is compliant with AT commands and also supports some extended commands, as well as some unique AT commands.
- Making host (APN) settings is not necessary when using mopera U or mopera, the DoCoMo Internet Connection Service, since it is set as the default.
- Set Notify caller ID as necessary. (When using mopera U or mopera, set *Send*.) The default setting is *Not send*.
- Set other settings as necessary. Use is possible with the default settings.

Setting the Host (APN)

Set the host (APN) for using packet transmission. Register up to 10 numbers. Hosts are managed using cid numbers from 1 to 10 (127 P. 17). The default setting for the first cid is **mopera.ne.jp**, the APN used to connect to mopera.**net**, the APN used to connect to mopera U. Save hosts (APN) to cid2 or 4 to 10.

- The registered cid is the connection number set in the dial-up connection settings.
- Contact the Internet service provider or network administrator for hosts (APNs) other than mopera U or mopera.

Example: For Windows XP

The screens are different for other operating systems.

Connect the FOMA terminal to your PC.

2 Select スタート (Start) menu → すべ てのプログラム (All Programs) → ア クセサリ (Accessories) → 通信 (Communications) → ハイパーター ミナル (Hyper terminal). • Hyper terminal starts up.

For Windows 2000

 Select スタート (Start) menu → プログラム (Programs) → アクセサリ (Accessories) → 通 信 (Communications) → ハイパーターミナル (Hyper terminal).

Enter a name in the 名前 (Name) field and click *OK*.



• The advanced settings screen for phone number appears.

Select FOMA SH903i from

接続方法 (Connection method), enter a temporary number in 電話番号 (Phone number) field that does not actually exist (such as *0*), and click *OK*.

| Sample sample | | |
|---------------------|-------------|---|
| 電話番号の情報を | 入力してください | |
| 国/地域番号(<u>C</u>): | 日本 (81) | 7 |
| 市外局番(E): | 0 | |
| 電話番号(P): | 0 | |
| 接続方法(N): | FOMA SH903i | ~ |

 For the area code, the default setting in Windows (such as 03), appears. Set any number for the area code, since it is not related to the host (APN) setting.) When the connection screen appears, click キャンセル (Cancel).

Enter host (APN) and press 🖵.

| 's sumple - 15/18-3-19.6 | |
|---|--|
| > 40 MRC 850 MSC 850 -470</th <th></th> | |
| AT+CGDCONT=2, "PPP", "XXX. abc"_ | |
| | |
| | |
| | |
| | |
| THE BROKE BROKE LCROX CAPE HOW TO THE | |

- Enter host (APN) in the format: AT+CGDCONT=<cid>, "PPP", "APN".
 (127 P. 27)
 <cid>: Enter 2 or any of 4 to 10.
 "PPP": Enter "PPP" as is.
 "APN": Enter the host (APN) enclosed in " ".
- If OK appears, the APN is set successfully.
- To check the current host (APN) setting, enter AT+CGDCONT?, and the settings appear in a list.

When nothing appears on the screen when AT commands are entered

● ATE1

Refer to P. 31 for details on AT commands. When resetting APN settings using AT commands

- AT+CGDCONT= : To reset all the cids
- AT+CGDCONT=<cid>: To reset only specific cids

When reset, <cid>=1 returns to "mopera.ne.jp" (default setting), <cid>=3 returns to "mopera.net" (default setting) and settings for <cid>=2 or 4 to 10 are unregistered.

When confirming APN settings using AT commands

- AT+CGDCONT?
 - Refer to P. 27 for details on AT commands.

| 244 B 2 102 B 244 B 2 102 B | |
|---|--|
| AT-C6DCONT? +C6DCONT:1, "PPP", "mopera.ne. jp", 0, 0 +C6DCONT:2, "PPP", "XXX, abc", 0, 0 +C6DCONT:3, "PPP", "NXX, abc", 0, 0 | |
| ОК - | |
| | |
| | |
| E BRANE BEARE DOOL CARE AND 12-60 | |

Confirm that *OK* appears and select ハイパーターミナルの終了 (Exit hyper terminal) from the ファイル (File) menu.

| AT+CGBDONT=2, "PPP", "XXX.abc"_ OK | |
|---------------------------------------|--|
| | |
| | |

- Hyper terminal ends.
- セッション×××を保存しますか? (Save session xxx?) appears. However there is no need to save.

Setting Send/Not Send Caller ID

Handset number (Caller ID) is important personal information. Use caution when setting.

- Follow steps 1 to 5 of "Setting the Host (APN)" on P. 17.
- Set either Send caller ID (186) or Not send caller ID (184) during packet transmission.

| 2000년 - AAR 3-19A 2014년 488일 88일 88일 88일 88일 - AARS 다양 월 3:10년 월 | C (1) |
|--|-------|
| AT+DGPIR=1_ | |
| | |
| | |
| 28 6946 8846 2000 000 100 100 10 10 10 | |

Enter in the format: "AT*DGPIR=<n>".
 (© P. 27)

AT*DGPIR=1

Adds "184" when packet transmission is established with the host (APN).

AT*DGPIR=2-

Adds "186" when packet transmission is established with the host (APN).

Confirm that OK appears.

| AT+DGP1R=1 DK - | |
|-----------------------|--|
| | |
| | |

Send/Not send setting on dial-up networks

Adding "186" (Send) and "184" (Not send) to the host number in dial-up networks is also possible. Setting "186" (Send) and "184" (Not send) in both the *DGPIR command setting and the dial-up network setting results in the following.

| Dial-up network setting (when <cid>=1)</cid> | Using the *DGPIR command Send/Not send setting | Send/Not send caller ID |
|--|---|------------------------------|
| *99***1# | Not set (default setting) | Send |
| | Not send | Not send |
| | Send | Send |
| 184*99***1# | Not set (default setting) | Not send (dial-up network |
| | Not send | "184" is given priority) |
| | Send | phonty) |
| 186*99***1# | Not set (default setting) | Send (dial-up network |
| | Not send | "186" is given priority) |
| | Send | phoney) |

- Enter "AT*DGPIR=0" to return "186" (Send)/"184" (Not send) to *Not set* (default setting).
- Set Send for sending caller ID when using mopera U or mopera, the DoCoMo Internet Connection Service.

Setting the Dial-up Network

Set the host and TCP/IP protocol. Contact the Internet service provider or network administrator for more information on settings.

Hosts

For packet transmissions, set the host (APN) in advance. Register numbers (cid) 1 to 10 for the host (APN) in advance, to enable using packet transmission by specifying control numbers. Host (APN) settings are the equivalent to a phonebook for packet transmissions on a PC. Compared to normal phonebook entries, they appear as follows.

| In phonebook | In Packet transmission setting |
|--------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| Registered number (memory number) | Control numbers (cids) 1 to 10 |
| Other party's name | Host name (host (APN)) |
| Other party's phone number | *99*** <cid>#</cid> |

For example, when the mopera host (APN), **mopera.ne.jp**, is registered for cid1, connecting to mopera is possible by specifying the host number "*99***1#". Other registered cids can be used similarly.

- *99***1#: Connects to host (APN) registered to cid1. Alternatively, connect with just *99#.
- *99***2#: Connects to host (APN) registered to cid2.
- *99***10#: Connects to host (APN) registered to cid10.

As the default setting, *mopera.ne.jp*, the APN used to connect to mopera is registered for cid1, and *mopera.net*, the APN used to connect to mopera U is registered for cid3. When connecting to a corporate LAN or Internet service providers other than mopera or mopera U, register the host (APN) using cid2 or cid4 to 10. (PP 17) For 64K data communications, enter the access point phone number supplied by the Internet service provider or network administrator.

- Contact the Internet service provider or network administrator for more information on settings.
- Access point phone number is "*8701" for mopera U and "*9601" for mopera when using 64K data communications.
- When using packet transmissions, enter "*99***3#" for mopera U and "*99***1#" for mopera. (Default setting)

Setting a dial-up network on Windows XP

On Windows XP, use ネットワークの接続ウィ ザード (Network connection wizard) to set both the host (APN) and TCP/IP protocol.

- Example: Using <cid>=3 to connect to mopera U, the DoCoMo Internet Connection Service. (Subscription to mopera U requires a charge.)
 - Click スタート (Start) menu \rightarrow すべ てのプログラム (All programs) \rightarrow アクセサリ (Accessories) \rightarrow 通信 (Communications) \rightarrow ネットワーク 接続 (Network connections).

• The network connections screen appears.

- 2 Click 新しい接続を作成する (Create new connection) in ネットワークタ スク (Network tasks).
 - A new connection wizard screen appears.
 - Click 次へ (Next).
 - The screen to select network connection type appears.
 - Select インターネットに接続する (Dialup to the Internet) and click 次へ (Next).
 - A preparation screen appears.
 - Select 接続を手動でセットアップす る (Manually set up Internet connection) and click 次へ (Next). • The Internet connection screen appears.
- Select ダイヤルアップモデムを使用し て接続する (Connect through phone line and modem) and click 次へ (Next).
 - A screen to specify the device appears.

Select モデム - FOMA SH903i (COMx) (Modem - FOMA SH903i (COMx)) and click 次へ (Next).

- A number will replace "x".
- The connection name screen appears.
- Screen does not appear when no modems other than FOMA SH903i are installed.

Enter a connection name in the *ISP*名 (ISP name) field and click 次へ (Next).

| 構築名 インターネット接続を提供するサービスの名前に | diel কে বিশ্ব বিশ্ব বিশ্ব বিশ্ব বিশ্ব বিশ্ব বিশ্ব বিশ্ব বিশ্ব বিশ্ব বিশ্ব বিশ্ব বিশ্ব বিশ্ব বিশ্ব বিশ্ব বিশ্ব ব |
|-------------------------------|---|
| はのボックスに ISP の名前を入力して(きたい。 | |
| ISP 名(A) | |
| forse | |
| | |
| | |

- The phone number to dial screen appears.
- The *ISP*名 is the name of the internet service provider.

Enter the host number in 電話番号 (Phone number) field and click 次へ (Next).

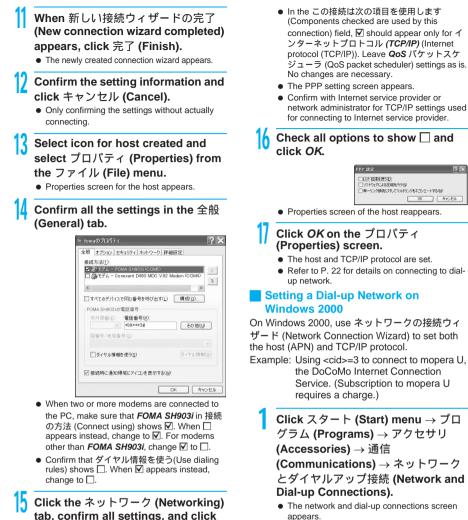


- The Internet account connection information screen appears.
- To connect to <cid>=3 (mopera U), enter "*99***3#".

) Set options in the screen, as shown below and click 次へ (Next).

| インターネット アカウント情報 インターネット アカウントにサイ | ンインオをははアカウントをとりスワード外企業です。 |
|-------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| 59 アカウントをおよびパワク のアカウンドをまたはパワク- | |
| 1-ザー名(1) | [|
| 11217-F@ | |
| パスワードの確認入力(②) | |
| 回このためとコーダカイン | ーネットに接続するとかは、だれでもこのアカウント名あよびパスワードを使用 |
| | -2.9/18後上す2.00 |
| COMMENTED122 | |

- The new connection wizard completed screen appears.
- When using mopera U or mopera, ユーザー名 (User name) and パスワード (Password) can be left blank to connect.
- When connection to the Internet using a provider other than mopera U or mopera, enter the user name and password for the provider in the ユーザー名 (User name) and パスワード (Password) fields.



tab, confirm all settings, and click 設定 (Settings).



● Set 呼び出すダイヤルアップサーバーの種類 (Type of dial-up server to call) to PPP: Windows95/98/NT4/2000, Internet.

- Double-click the 新しい接続の作成 (Create new connection) icon.
 - The location information screen appears.
 - This screen appears the first time the 新しい接 続の作成 (Create new connection) icon is double-clicked
 - For the second and subsequent times, proceed to step 5

Enter 市外局番 (Area code) and click OK.

• The phone and modem options screen appears.

Click OK.

A network connection wizard screen appears.

- Click 次へ (Next). The screen to select network connection type appears. Select インターネットにダイヤル アップ接続する(Dial-up to the Internet) and click 次へ (Next). • A wizard startup screen appears. Select インターネット接続を手動で 設定するか、またはローカルエリア ネットワーク (LAN) を使って接続し ます (Connect to Internet manually or through local area network (LAN)) and click 次へ (Next). • The screen to select the Internet appears. Select 電話回線とモデムを使ってイ ンターネットに接続します (Connect through phone line and modem) and click 次へ (Next). • A screen to specify the modem appears. Confirm that FOMA SH903i is set in インターネットへの接続に使うモデム を選択する (Select modem to use to connect to the Internet) and click 次 \land (Next). • The Internet account connection information screen appears. • Set to FOMA SH903i if not set. • Screen does not appear when no modems other than FOMA SH903i are installed. Enter the host number in 電話番号 (Phone number) field and click 詳細 設定 (Advanced). ステップ 1: インターネット アカウントのお SP への時間に使う電話委員会入力して(のおい (15日(小)) 電話都号(①). 一日本教堂を行るたち満知を持ちのの 線統のプロパティを設定するには「開始開放定」をクリックしてください 国とんどの159 では、詳細語を定は必要を行きせん。 THERE OF < 展る(図) 次へ(図) キャンセル Advanced connection properties screen appears. ● Confirm that 市外局番とダイヤル情報を使う
 - Confirm that 市外局番とダイヤル情報を使う (Use area code and dial-up information) shows
 □. When ☑ appears instead, change to □.

Confirm that all settings in the 接続 (Connection) tab are set as shown in the example screen below.

| C SLIP Serial Live Internet プロトコルトジン C O-SLIP (Compressed Serial Line Internet プロトコルトリン ログオンの手続き で なし(型) | ● PPP (Point to Point プロトコルジャント □ LCP 拡張を無効にする(D) | |
|---|--|--------------------|
| ログオンの手続き | | |
| | | verver > 0 r 3/w/b |
| | | |
| ○ 手動でログオン900 | ○ 手動でログオン(例) | |
| ○ ログオン スクリプトの使用(型): | ○ ログオン スクリプトの使用(①): | |
| 2017年回: 参照 | 20071-00 | 参照(6) |

Click the アドレス (Addresses) tab and confirm that all settings are set as shown in the example screen below.

| 1.0 | アドレス • オンターネット サービ | スプロバイ例による自動割 | 0570) |
|-----|---------------------------|-------------------------------------|-------|
| | **に使用する設定(P アドレスの) | ю Г | |
| | SISP (C.) & DNS (F. | ネーム サービス) アドレスの メイン ネーム サービス) アド | |
| | *に使用する設定(プライマリ DNS サー | | |
| | | 0.5 | |

 Confirm with Internet service provider or network administrator for TCP/IP settings used for connecting to Internet service provider.

Click OK.

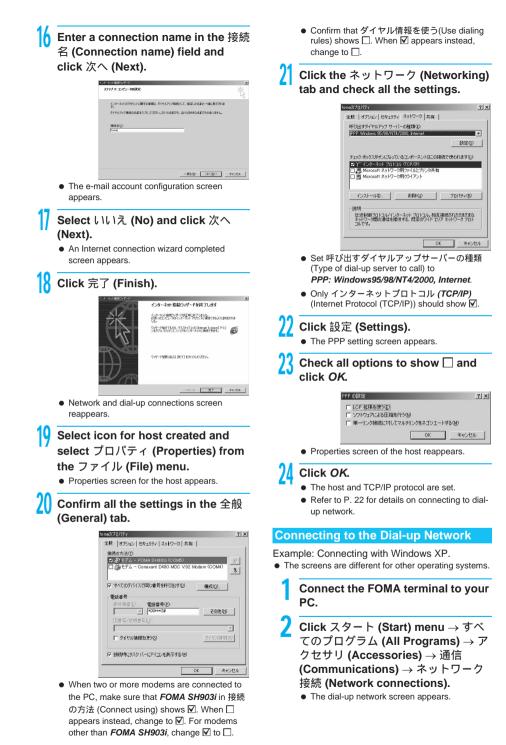
Internet account connection screen reappears.

Click 次へ (Next).

 The Internet account login information screen appears.

)Confirm all settings and click 次へ (Next).

- The PC configuration screen appears.
- When using mopera U or mopera, ユーザー名 (User name) and パスワード (Password) can be left blank to connect.
- When connection to the Internet using a provider other than mopera U or mopera, enter the user name and password for the provider in the ユーザー名 (User name) and パスワード (Password) fields.



Double-click the connection icon.



- The connection screen appears.
- Select the host icon and then select 接続 (Connect) in the ファイル (File) menu to display the connection screen.

Confirm the settings and click ダイ ヤル (Dial-up).

| 5 | 05 | X |
|---|---|------------|
| | 20 | |
| ユーザー名(U) パスワード(E): | | |
| - パスワード(2): つ次のユーザー を保存するの のこのユー | が接続するとき使用するために、このユ・ シー ニークみ(い) ニークを使うすべてのユーザー(A) | ーザー名とパスワード |

- The FOMA is connected to the host.
- The phone number set in "Setting the Dial-up Network" (ビア P. 18) appears in the ダイヤル (Dial-up) field.
- When using mopera U or mopera, ユーザー名 (User name) and パスワード (Password) can be left blank to connect.

Disconnecting

Simply closing the browser may not disconnect the connection. Follow the steps below to properly disconnect.

Click I in the task tray and click 切断 (Disconnect).

• The connection is disconnected.

Sending and Receiving Data (OBEX)

Sending/Receiving FOMA Terminal Data to/from a PC

- The FOMA terminal has OBEX as a data communication protocol. OBEX data communication enables sending and receiving phonebook, owner information from the Own number screen, Schedule, ToDo list, sent mail (including SMS), received mail (including SMS), unsent mail (including SMS), text memos, melodies, My picture, i-motion and bookmark data to and from a PC. The FOMA SH903i is also equipped with an Ir exchange function. Send and receive phonebook entries or data from received mail to/from other FOMA terminals also equipped with the Ir exchange function. Also, transfer data using microSD Memory Card.
- Use the following three types of data communication with the FOMA terminal.
 - Send data one item at a time, from a PC to a FOMA terminal (Write 1).
 - Send data in bulk, from a PC to a FOMA terminal (Write all).
 - Send data in bulk, from a FOMA terminal to a PC (Read all).
- During data communication, the handset will be outside the service area, and functions such as voice/ Videophone call, i-mode, i-mode mail, packet transmission, and PushTalk will not be available.
- Even after completion of data communication, (outside the service area) may be displayed for a short time.

Note

- Make sure the FOMA terminal is properly connected to the PC. If not connected properly, sending and receiving data may not be possible, or data may be lost.
- Check whether there is enough remaining battery power of the FOMA terminal. If data communication is performed when the battery level is low or empty, sending and receiving data may not be possible, or data may be lost. Performing operations while charging the FOMA terminal in the desktop holder is recommended.
- Check the PC power supply as well. If not turned on, sending and receiving data may not be possible, or data may be lost.
- Perform data communication with the FOMA terminal in stand-by. When movie/i-motion is set as the standby display, stop movie/i-motion playback before performing data communication.
- During communication (voice/Videophone call, data communication, and PushTalk), data cannot be sent or received. Also, when sending and receiving data, other data communication cannot be performed. However, receiving a call, right after data communication has begun, may be possible. In such cases, the sending or receiving of data is canceled.

Note

- FOMA card phonebook data cannot be sent.
- During Ir exchange, melodies, still pictures, i-motion or PDF files with restrictions for mail attachment and output from the FOMA terminal cannot be sent. However, still pictures and movies shot with the built-in camera can be sent even if File restriction is set to *Restricted*.
- Mail with i-αppli start up designations can be sent after attached data has been deleted.
- Mail attachment data exceeding 100 KB (including the message text) are deleted and only message is sent.
- Data such as phonebook entries cannot be sent or received while All lock, or Self mode is set. Data of locked functions cannot be sent or received while Function lock is set.
- Phonebook data cannot be sent or received when Keypad dial lock is set.
- Depending on data size, data communication may take some time. In addition, the FOMA terminal may not be able to receive data due to data size.
- When receiving phonebook data, data will be added from memory number 010 for single entry, or in accordance with memory number information when receiving all entries.
- When receiving all phonebook entries, Owner information (excluding first phone number) registered in Own number will be overwritten.
- Phonebook entries are sent in memory number order.
- When sending all phonebook entries, Owner information from own number screen is also sent.
- PDF files which exceed 2 MB cannot be sent.

Devices required for data communication (OBEX)

- To perform data communication, downloading OBEXcompliant data transfer software from the Internet, and installing this software to your PC is necessary. Refer to the software manual for information on operating environment and installation methods. In addition, installation of the FOMA SH903i Communication setting file (27 P. 4 to P. 6) is necessary beforehand.
- A FOMA USB cable is required to connect the FOMA terminal to a PC.

Note

 The FOMA terminal data communication (OBEX) function conforms with IrMC1.1. However, depending on the function, some data may not be sent or received even when the other party's terminal complies with IrMC1.1.

Sending Single Data Item (Write 1)

- Send data from a PC to a FOMA terminal one item at a time.
- Sending one item at a time from a FOMA terminal to a PC is not possible.

 Data transfer operating methods differ depending on the software used. Refer to the software manual for details.

Send data from a PC using data transfer software (Write 1).

• Refer to the software manual for details on sending data.

Note

- When phonebook data is sent (from a PC to the FOMA terminal handset) one entry at a time, entries are saved to the smallest available memory number from 010 to 749. If all memory numbers from 010 to 749 are already used, entries are saved to the smallest available memory number between 000 and 009.
- When phonebook data is received and 750 entries (names, phone numbers, or mail addresses) are already registered, or more than 750 entries have been registered, a message appears notifying that no further entries can be saved.

Sending All Data (Write All/Read All)

- Send and receive all data at once, between a PC and the FOMA terminal.
- "Write all" and "Read all" operations require data transfer software and your FOMA terminal authentication password.
- Data transfer operating methods differ depending on the software used. Refer to the software manual for details.

Send data from a PC using data transfer software (Forward all).

- Refer to the software manual for details on sending data.
- Entering your authentication password on the PC will be necessary.
- Enter your authentication password (four digits).
- 2 Enter terminal security code (four to eight digits) and the authentication password (four digits).

Start data transmission.

Note

 Performing Write all from a PC to your FOMA terminal replaces all data stored in the FOMA terminal. All data previously stored in your FOMA terminal will be deleted. This includes phonebook, Schedule, and protected mail data saved as secret data.

Note

- If an error occurs during data transmission from a PC to the FOMA terminal, all data stored in the FOMA terminal may be deleted. Check the cable connection, the FOMA terminal battery level, and the PC power supply before performing Write all. Performing operations while charging the FOMA terminal in the desktop holder is recommended.
- Depending on the connected device, the transmission status (bar display) may not appear.

AT Command List

AT Commands

AT commands are commands used to set FOMA terminal functions from a PC. When AT commands are entered from a PC, the FOMA terminal performs the corresponding operations.

AT command input format

AT commands must always start with "AT". Enter in single-byte alphanumeric characters. Below is an input example.

ATD*99***1#

Return symbol: Entered by pressing the Enter key. Used to separate commands.

Parameter: The command argument

Command: The command name

Each AT command including parameter (number or symbol) following the command must be entered on a single line. A single line means the characters from the first character until the character directly before the is pressed. Up to 160 characters (including "AT") can be entered.

AT command input modes

To operate the FOMA terminal using AT commands, set the PC to terminal mode. In terminal mode, the characters entered from the keyboard are sent directly to the communication port to operate the FOMA terminal.

- Offline mode The FOMA terminal is in stand-by. Normally, this mode is used to operate the FOMA terminal using AT commands.
- Online data mode

The FOMA terminal is connected and performing data communication. When an AT command is entered in this mode, the characters are sent directly to the receiver, and may cause the receiver's modem to malfunction. Do not enter AT commands in this mode. • Online command mode

Even when the FOMA terminal is connected and performing communication, with special operations, operation by AT commands is possible. When in this mode, AT commands are executed while remaining connected to the receiver, and communications can be resumed after the operation is completed.

Note

 Terminal mode enables a single PC to operate like a communication terminal. Characters entered from the keyboard are sent to the device or line connected to the communication port.

Switching between online data mode and online command mode

Use either of the following methods to switch the FOMA terminal from online data mode to online command mode.

- Enter "+++" command, or enter the set code in the "S2" register.
- Turn the RS-232C* ER signal OFF when set to "AT&D1".

To switch from online command mode to online data mode, enter "ATO,".

* USB interface emulates an RS-232C signal line, enabling RS-232C signal line control by the communication application.

[M]: AT commands that can be used with the FOMA SH903i Modem Port.

| AT Command | Overview | Parameter/Explanation | Execution Example |
|---|---|---|---|
| AT [M] | | The modem function of the FOMA terminal can be controlled by adding commands in the list to the end of this command. Returns OK if only AT is entered. | AT. OK |
| AT%V | Displays FOMA terminal version.*2 | Returns OK II Only AT IS entered. | AT%V Ver1.00 |
| [M] | | | ок |
| AT&C <n></n> | Sets operating condition for circuit CD (DCD) signals sent to DTE.*1 | n=0: Circuit CD always ON n=1: Circuit CD signal changes according to line connection status (default setting) When "&C1" is set, the CD signal is turned "ON" directly before the CONNECT signal is sent when connection is completed. The CD signal is turned "OFF" right before "NO CARRIER" is sent when the circuit is disconnected. | AT&C1+ OK |
| [M] | Sets the operation when the circuit ER (DTR) signal received from DTE changes from "ON" to "OFF" during online data mode.*1 | n=0: Ignores status (always considers signal ON) n=1: Sets online command mode when signal changes from ON to OFF n=2: Disconnects line and activates offline mode when signal changes from ON to OFF (default setting) | AT&D1 OK |
| AT&E <n></n> | Selects speed display specifications when connecting.*1 | n=0: Wireless area transmission speed appears. n=1: DTE serial transmission speed appears. (Default setting) | AT&E0 OK |
| AT&F <n></n> | Resets the FOMA terminal's AT command settings to their default settings. If this command is entered during communication, the settings are reset after disconnected." ² | Can only be set as n=0 (can be omitted). | AT&F OK |
| AT&S <n> [M]</n> | Controls when the signal of data set ready (DR) is set to DTE.*1 | n=0: Always ON (default setting) n=1: DR signal ON when line is connected | AT&SOJ OK |
| AT&W <n> [M]</n> | Stores the current settings in the FOMA terminal's memory.*2, 5 | Can only be set as n=0 (can be omitted). | AT&WI OK |
| AT*DANTE | Displays number of antennas on TE.*2 | The result from this command is in the following format. *DANTE: <m></m> | AT*DANTE *DANTE:3 OK |
| [M] | | <m></m> Status where outside the service area appears on the FOMA terminal Status where zero or one antenna appears on the FOMA terminal Status where two antennas appears on the FOMA terminal Status where three antennas appears on the FOMA terminal | |
| AT*DGANSM= <n></n> | Sets Accept/Reject call modes for incoming packet communications. This setting is only valid for incoming packet communications after entering setup commands. ² | n=0: Sets Reject call and Accept call settings to OFF (Default setting) n=1: Sets Reject call settings to ON n=2: Sets Accept call settings to ON | AT*DGANSM=0+ OK AT*DGANSM?+ *DGANSM:0 |
| [M] AT*DGAPL= <n> [,<cid>]</cid></n> | Sets host (APN) to accept transmissions for incoming packet communications. APN settings use <cid> parameter defined by "+CGDCONT"."2</cid> | Adds or deletes from Accept calls list with <n> parameter. If <cid> parameter is abbreviated, adds (<n>=0) or deletes (<n>=1) all of <cid> to list. Adds (deletes) <cid> not defined with "+CGDCONT" to list with this command. n=0: Adds to list (Adds APN defined by <cid> to Accept calls list.) n=1: Deletes from list (Deletes APN defined by <cid> from Accept calls list.)</cid></cid></cid></cid></n></n></cid></n> | OK AT*DGAPL=0,1 OK AT*DGAPL? *DGAPL:1 OK |

| AT Command | Overview | Parameter/Explanation | Execution Example |
|--|---|---|--|
| AT*DGARL= <n> [,<cid>]</cid></n> | Sets host (APN) to reject transmissions for incoming packet communications. APN settings use <cid> parameter defined by "+CGDCONT"."2</cid> | Adds or deletes from Reject calls list with <n> parameter. If <cid> parameter is abbreviated, adds (<n>=0) or deletes (<n>=1) all of <cid> to list. Adds (deletes) <cid> not defined with "+CGDCONT" to list with this command. n=0: Adds to list (Adds APN defined by <cid> to Reject calls list.) n=1: Deletes from list (Deletes APN defined by <cid> from Reject calls list.)</cid></cid></cid></cid></n></n></cid></n> | AT*DGARL=0,1 OK AT*DGARL? *DGARL:1 OK |
| AT*DRPW | Displays the reception power sent from FOMA terminal.*2 | The result from this command is in the following format. * DRPW: <m></m> | AT*DRPW *DRPW:0 OK |
| [M] | | m: 0 to 75 (reception power) | OK |
| AT*DGPIR= <n></n> | Setting this command is valid when establishing communication. Enables adding 186 (send caller ID) and 184 (not send caller ID) to host number. Also available in dial-up network settings.*2 | n=0: When establishing packet transmission, connects to a host (APN) directly (default setting) n=1: When establishing packet transmission, adds 184 and connects to host (APN) n=2: When establishing packet transmission, adds 186 and connects to host (APN) When 186 (send caller ID)/184 (not send caller ID) are set by this command and in the dial-up network settings, refer to the table on P. 18. | AT*DGPIR=0. OK AT*DGPIR?. *DGPIR:0 OK |
| +++ [M] | Switches the FOMA terminal mode from online data mode to online command mode. Escape guard interval is fixed at one second. ² | | (During communication) +++ (Does not appear.) OK |
| AT+CACM= [<passwd>]</passwd> | Resets the total accumulated cost recorded on the UIM.*2 | Resets the total accumulated cost recorded on the UIM, if the password matches. | AT+CACM="0123" J OK |
| [M] | | <pre><passwd>: SIM PIN2 Encloses this string parameter with quotation marks (" ") when entering.</passwd></pre> | |
| AT+CAOC= [<mode>]</mode> | Inquires the current accumulated cost.*2 | <mode> 0: Inquires the cost of current call.</mode> | AT+CAOC +CAOC:"00001E" |
| [M] | | The result from this command is in the following format. +CAOC:" <ccm>"</ccm> | ОК |
| AT+CBC | Inquires the battery status.*2 | The result from this command is in the following format. +CBC: <bcs>,<bcl></bcl></bcs> | AT+CBC +CBC:0,80 |
| | | <bcs> 0: The battery operates the FOMA terminal 1: Charging the battery 2: The battery is unconnected 3: Reducing the power <bcl></bcl></bcs> | ок |
| [M] | | 0 ~ 100 (remaining battery power) | |
| AT+CBST=[<sp eed>[,<name>[, <ce>]]]</ce></name></sp | Sets the bearer service when establishing transmission. This setting is only valid when AT+FCLASS= <n> command (@P. 30) = 0.*1</n> | <speed> 116: 64K data communications (default setting) <name> 1: fixed value <ce></ce></name></speed> | AT+CBST=116,1, 0 OK |
| [M] | . | 0: fixed value | |
| AT+CEER | Displays disconnection reason for preceding communication session.*2 | Refer to "Reasons for Disconnection". (1277 P. 34) | AT+CEER +CEER:36 |
| [M] | | | OK |
| AT+CGDCONT [M] | Sets host (APN) accessed when establishing packet transmission.*2 | Refer to "More on AT Commands". (☞ P. 34) | Refer to "More on AT Commands". (1277 P. 34) |

| AT Command | Overview | Parameter/Explanation | Execution Example |
|-------------------------|---|---|---|
| AT+CGEQMIN [M] | Registers criterion determining whether to permit QoS (Quality of Service) sent from network when establishing packet transmission." ² | Refer to "More on AT Commands". (☞ P. 34) | Refer to "More on AT Commands". (IPP P. 34) |
| AT+CGEQREQ [M] | Sets QoS (Quality of Service) requested of network during packet transmission. ^{*2} | Refer to "More on AT Commands". (1277 P. 35) | Refer to "More on AT Commands". (© P. 35) |
| AT+CGMR | Displays FOMA terminal version.*2 | | AT+CGMR 12345678901234 56 |
| [M] | | | ок |
| AT+CGREG= <n></n> | Sets whether to send network registration status. Service area information (inside/outside) is sent.*1 | <n> O: Does not set (default setting) 1: Sets When "AT+CGREG=1" is set, information is sent in the format "+CGREG:<stat>". 0, 1, 4 or 5 can be set for the <stat> parameter. <stat> O: Outside area 1: Inside area (home) 4: Unknown 5: Inside area (visitor)</stat></stat></stat></n> | AT+CGREG=1 OK (Set to send) AT+CGREG? +CGREG:1,0 OK (Indicates outside area) +CGREG:1 (Moved from outside area to |
| [M] | | | inside area) |
| AT+CGSN | Displays the FOMA terminal's serial number. ^{*2} | | AT+CGSN 123456789012345 OK |
| [M] AT+CLIP= <n></n> | Shows PC calling number when | <n></n> | AT+CLIP=0 |
| ſMI | receiving 64K data communications. ^{*1} | 0: Does not output results (default setting) 1: Outputs results Displays +CLIP : <n>,<m> for "AT+CLIP?"</m></n> <m> 0: NW setting to not send own number during transmissions</m> 1: NW setting to send own number during transmissions 2: Unknown | OK AT+CLIP? +CLIP:0,1 OK |
| AT+CLIR= <n></n> | Sets whether to send terminal's phone number when establishing 64K data communications. ^{*2} | <n> 0: Follows the service agreement 1: Does not send 2: Sends (default setting)</n> | AT+CLIR=0 OK AT+CLIR? |
| [M] | | Clarks (clark setting) Displays +CLIR: <n>, for AT+CLIR?</n> CLIR is not running (always send) CLIR is always running (never send) Unknown CLIR temporary mode (default setting is "Do not send") CLIR temporary mode (default setting is "Send") | +CLIR:2,3 |
| AT+CMEE= <n></n> | Sets the manner to display FOMA terminal error reports. ¹ | Sets whether to display errors only as "ERROR", or to display reason with text or numerical value. <n> 0: Displays "ERROR" and no result codes (default setting) 1: Displays result codes with numerical values 2: Displays result codes with text When reports are set to display by setting "n=1" or "n=2", they are displayed in the following format: +CME ERROR:xxxx (xxxx is a numerical value or text. Refer to "Error Reports" (27 P. 34.)</n> | AT+CMEE=0 OK AT+CNUM ERROR AT+CMEE=1 OK AT+CMEE=1 +CME ERROR:10 |

| AT Command | Overview | Parameter/Explanation | Execution Example |
|--|--|--|---|
| AT+CNUM | Displays FOMA terminal phone number.*2 | number: Phone number type: 129 or 145 | AT+CNUM +CNUM:,"+8190 12345678",145 |
| [M] | | 129: Does not include + international access code145: Includes + international access code | OK |
| AT+COPS=[<m ode>[,<format>[,<oper>]]]</oper></format></m | Selects a telecommunications carrier to be connected. ¹² | <mode> (mode> O: Auto (Automatically searches network and switch telecommunications carriers) 1: Manual (Connects to the telecommunications carrier specified in <oper> (oper>) 2: Cancels (disconnects) the connection to the telecommunications carrier Unsupported. 3: Does not make mapping 4: Mannual auto (Performs <i>Auto</i> processing if not connected to the telecommunications carrier specified in <oper> (oper>) Unsupported. 4: Gromat> 2: Fixed value (oper> is indicated by a hexadecimal number consistent of a switch (MCC) and be</oper></oper></mode> | AT+COPS =1,2,"44F001" OK (Connects to MCC:440MNC:10) |
| [M] | | consisting of a country code (MCC) and a network code (MNC). The formats are shown below. Digit 1 of MCCoctet 1 bits 1 to 4. Digit 2 of MCCoctet 1 bits 5 to 8. Digit 3 of MCCoctet 2 bits 1 to 4. Digit 3 of MNCoctet 2 bits 5 to 8. Digit 2 of MNCoctet 3 bits 5 to 8. Digit 1 of MNCoctet 3 bits 5 to 8. | |
| AT+CPAS | Inquires the activity status of the FOMA terminal.*2 | The result from this command is in the following format. +CPAS: <pas></pas> | AT+CPAS +CPAS:0 OK |
| ſM] | | <pre>cpas></pre> AT commands can be sent/received AT commands cannot be sent/received (does not send the +CPAS:<pre>presult</pre> Unknown AT commands can be sent/received and the FOMA terminal is receiving a call AT commands can be sent/received and performing data communication | |
| AT+CPIN= <pin >[,<newpin>]</newpin></pin | Enters the UIM password (PIN1, PIN2) .*2 | Enters PIN1 while waiting for PIN1 input. ((< | AT+CPIN? +CPIN:SIM PIN1 OK (Indicates waiting status for PIN1 input) AT+CPIN="1234" OK AT+CPIN? +CPIN:SIM PUK1 OK (Indicates waiting |
| [M] | | quotation marks (" ") when entering. | status for PUK1 input) AT+CPIN="12345 678","1234" OK |

| AT Command | Overview | Parameter/Explanation | Execution Example |
|---|---|--|---|
| AT+CR= <mode></mode> | Sets whether to display packet transmission/64K data communications before "CONNECT" result code is displayed during line connection."1 "GPRS" is displayed for packet transmission, and "SYNC" is | <mode> 0: Does not display when line is connected (default setting) 1: Displays when line is connected</mode> | AT+CR=1 OK ATD*99***1# +CR:GPRS CONNECT |
| [M] | displayed for 64K data communications. | | |
| AT+CRC= <n> [M]</n> | Sets to use extended results code at reception.*1 | n=0: Does not use extended results code (Default setting) n=1: Uses extended result codes | AT+CRC=0+ OK |
| AT+CREG= <n></n> | Sets service area information on or off. ⁻¹ | When "AT+CREG=1" is set, information is set in the format "+CREG:stat>". 0, 1, 4 or 5 can be set for the <stat> parameter. <n> 0: Does not send (default setting) 1: Sends <stat></stat></n></stat> | AT+CREG=1 OK (Set to send) AT+CREG? +CREG:1,0 OK |
| [M] | | 0: Outside area 1: Inside area (home) 4: Unknown 5: Inside area (visitor) | (Indicates outside area) +CREG:1 (Moved from outside area to inside area) |
| AT+CUSD=[<n >[,<str>[,<dcs>]]]</dcs></str></n | Changes setting toward net for optional services, etc.*1 | <n> Answers without intermediate result (default setting) Answers with intermediate result <str> Service code Refer to "Network Services Operation Guide". <dcs></dcs> (c): fixed value </str> </n> | AT+CUSD=0,"xxx xxx" OK |
| [M] AT+FCLASS=< | Sets the mode. ^{*1} | | |
| n> [M] | Sets the mode. | <n> 0: data (fixed value)</n> | AT+FCLASS=0 |
| AT+GCAP | Displays the ability list of the FOMA terminal.*2 | | AT+GCAP +GCAP:+CGSM, +FCLASS,+W |
| [M] | | | ОК |
| AT+GMI | Displays FOMA terminal maker name in single-byte alphanumeric characters.*2 | | AT+GMI↓ SHARP |
| [M] | | | ОК |
| AT+GMM | Displays abbreviated FOMA terminal product name (FOMA SH903i) in alphanumeric characters. ^{*2} | | AT+GMM FOMA SH903i OK |
| [M] AT+GMR | Displays FOMA terminal version. ^{*2} | | AT+GMR Ver1.00 |
| [M] | | | ок |
| AT+IFC= <n,m></n,m> | Sets local flow control format between the PC and FOMA terminal.*1 | DCE by DTE (<n>) 0: No flow control 1: XON/XOFF flow control 2: RS/CS (RTS/CTS) flow control (default setting) DTE by DCE (<m>) 0: No flow control 1: XON/XOFF flow control 2: RS/CS (RTS/CTS) flow control (default setting)</m></n> | AT+IFC=2,2 |
| AT+WS46= <n></n> | Sets wireless network used to call. Incoming signals are not affected. ^{*1} | n=22: FOMA network (fixed value) | AT+WS46=22 |
| A/ [M] | Performs the preceding executed command.*2 | | A/ OK |

| AT Command | Overview | Parameter/Explanation | Execution Example |
|---------------------|---|---|---|
| ATA [M] | Performs incoming process for packet or 64K data if entered when receiving the data.*2 | Enter "ATA184," (arrival call action for anonymous call) or "ATA186," (arrival call action for identified call) while receiving packets. | RING ATA CONNECT |
| ATD [M] | Establishes communication.*2.3 | Packet transmission ATD *99 ** *<cid>#_</cid> When "ATD *99#" is entered: Uses <cid>=1 (default setting). (When <cid> is not entered, setting becomes "<cid>=1".)</cid></cid></cid> When syntax starting with "ATD184*99**<cid>#" is entered: "184" is added to host (APN) defined by specified <cid>. (Alternatively, "186" can be added by same operation to turn caller ID sending to ON.)</cid></cid> 64K data communications ATD [parameter] [phone number] _ Number cannot be dialed if characters other than 0 to 9, *, #, +, A, a, B, b, C, c, D, d, hyphens (-), spaces, T, t, P, p, !, W, w, @, or commas (,) are included. Characters highlighted with are ignored during dialing. | ATD*99***1# CONNECT |
| ATE <n></n> | Sets whether the FOMA terminal returns echo of AT commands sent from the PC.*1 | n=0: Does not return echo n=1: Returns echo (default setting) Normally, set to n=1. If the PC has an echo function, set to n=0. | ATE1 OK |
| ATH | Disconnects line when entered during packet transmission or 64K data communications.*2 | | (During communication) +++ (Does not appear.) OK ATH NO CARRIER |
| ATI <n></n> | Displays the verification code.*2 | n=0: NTT DoCoMo n=1: Displays abbreviated product name (FOMA SH903) n=2: Displays the product version in a format such as "VerX.XX" n=3: Displays each element of ACMP signals n=4: Displays details of the communication functions provided in the FOMA terminal | ATIO NTT DoCoMo OK |
| ATO [M] | Returns to online data mode from online command mode during communication. ^{*2} | | ATO CONNECT |
| ATQ <n> [M]</n> | Sets whether to display result codes.*1 | n=0: Displays result codes (default setting) n=1: Does not display result codes | ATQ0₽ OK |
| ATV <n></n> | Sets manner of displaying result codes.*1 | Displays all result codes with numbers or text. n=0: Displays result codes with numbers n=1: Displays result codes with text (default setting) | ATV1 OK |
| ATX <n></n> | Sets whether to include speed in the CONNECT display when connecting. Also detects busy tone or dial tone."1 | Busy tone detection: Sends BUSY response when number dialed is busy. Dial tone detection: Determines whether FOMA terminal is connected. Speed display: Sets whether to include speed in the CONNECT display when connecting. n=0: No busy tone detection, no dial tone detection, no speed display n=1: No busy tone detection, no dial tone detection, speed display n=2: No busy tone detection, dial tone detection, speed display n=3: Busy tone detection, dial tone detection, speed display n=3: Busy tone detection, dial tone detection, dial tone detection, dial tone detection, speed display (default setting) | ATX1 |

| AT Command | Overview | Parameter/Explanation | Execution Example |
|-----------------------|--|--|---|
| ATZ <n></n> | Resets the FOMA terminal's AT command settings. ^{*2, 4} | Resets the FOMA terminal's AT command settings to the values set in non-volatile memory. If this command is entered during communication, the settings are reset after disconnected. Can only be set as n=0 (can be omitted). | (When online) ATZ NO CARRIER (When offline) ATZ OK |
| ATS0= <n> [M]</n> | Sets number of rings before FOMA terminal automatically receives.*1 | n=0: No automatic receiving (Default setting) n=1 to 255: Automatically receives after sets number of rings | ATS0=0 OK |
| ATS2= <n></n> | Sets the escape character. | n=0 to 127 (default setting: n=43) When n=127 is set, escape is disabled. | ATS2=43 OK ATS2? 043 |
| [M] | | | OK |
| ATS3= <n></n> | Sets the carriage return (CR) character. | Defines the character used to recognize the end of a AT command character string. Appended to the end of the echoed command character string and result code. The settings cannot be changed (default setting: n=13). | ATS3=13 OK ATS3? 013 |
| [M] | | | ОК |
| ATS4= <n></n> | Sets the line feed (LF) character. | Appended after the CR character, when result codes are displayed as text. The settings cannot be changed (default setting: n=10). | ATS4=10 OK ATS4? 010 |
| [M] | | | ОК |
| ATS5= <n></n> | Sets the backspace (BS) character. | When detected while entering an AT command, the last character in the input buffer is deleted. The settings cannot be changed (default setting: n=8). | ATS5=8 OK ATS5? 008 |
| [M] | | | ок |
| ATS6= <n> [M]</n> | Sets pause time (seconds) until dialing. | Sets a register, but has no other effect. n: 2 to 10 (default setting: n=5) | ATS6=10↓ OK |
| ATS8= <n></n> | Sets pause time (seconds) until comma dialing. | Sets a register but does not affect the pause time (3 seconds). n=0: Does not pause n: 1 to 255 (default setting: n=3) | ATS8=3 OK |
| ATS10= <n></n> | Sets the delay time (seconds) for automatic disconnection (1/10 seconds).*1 | Sets a register, but has no other effect. n: 1 to 255 (default setting: n=1) | ATS10=1 |
| ATS30= <n></n> | Disconnects when no data is sent/ received for at least this amount of time. | Only valid during 64K data communications. <pre><pre><pre><pre><pre><pre><pre><pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre> | ATS30=3- OK |
| ATS103= <n></n> | Sets delimiter used when adding an incoming sub-address to number dialed. | Only valid during 64K data communications. n=0: *Asterisk n=1: /Slash (default setting) n=2: ¥Yen mark or backslash | ATS103=0₽ OK |
| ATS104= <n></n> | Sets delimiter used when adding an outgoing sub-address to number dialed. | Only valid during 64K data communications. n=0: #Pound sign n=1: %Percent symbol (default setting) n=2: &Ampersand | ATS104=0₊ OK |

| Displays current command and | | |
|--|---|--|
| S régister settings. ^{*2} | | AT¥S. E1 Q0 V1 X4 &C1 &D2 &S0 &E1 ¥V0 S000=000 S002=043 S004=010 S005=008 S006=005 S007=060 S008=003 S010=001 S030=000 S103=001 S104=001 OK |
| Selects response code type used during connection.*1 | Only valid when the ATX <n> command (☞ P. 31) setting is not n=0. n=0: Does not use extended result codes (default setting)</n> | AT¥V1 OK |
| | Selects response code type used during connection.*1 | during connection. ^{*1} ((27 P. 31) setting is not n=0. n=0: Does not use extended result codes |

*1 Stored in FOMA terminal's memory using AT&W commands.

*4 If the ATZ command is executed before the AT&W command is used, terminal settings return to last written memory, and prior changes are erased.

*2 Not stored in FOMA terminal's memory using AT&W commands. Not reset with AT&F or ATZ commands.

*3 Perform Redial with ATDN = or ATDL =.

*5 Settings written into the FOMA terminal's memory using the AT&W command is stored as non-volatile data when power is turned off.

Reasons for Disconnection

Packet transmissions

| Value | Reason |
|-------|--|
| 27 | Host (APN) does not exist, or was incorrect. |
| 30 | Disconnected by network. |
| 33 | No packet transmission subscription. |
| 36 | Disconnected properly. |

64K data communications

| Value | Reason | | | | |
|-------|--|--|--|--|--|
| 1 | Specified number does not exist. | | | | |
| 16 | Disconnected properly. | | | | |
| 17 | Line busy. | | | | |
| 18 | Number was dialed, but no response received within specified time. | | | | |
| 19 | Dialed number is making a call. | | | | |
| 21 | Dialed number refused incoming call. | | | | |
| 63 | Network service or option is not valid. | | | | |
| 65 | Transmission capacity not provided was specified. | | | | |
| 88 | Dialed number of terminal with different terminal attribute, or call was received. | | | | |

Error Reports

| Numerical display | Text display | Reason |
|----------------------|-----------------------|---|
| 10 | SIM not inserted | FOMA card not inserted. |
| 15 | SIM wrong | A non-DoCoMo SIM (IC card equivalent to FOMA card) is inserted. |
| 16 | incorrect password | Password is incorrect. |
| 100 | unknown | Unknown error occurred. |

More on AT Commands

Command name: +CGDCONT= [parameter]

Overview

Sets host (APN) accessed when establishing packet transmission.

Not stored in FOMA terminal's memory with AT&W commands. Not reset with AT&F or ATZ commands.

Syntax

+CGDCONT=[<cid>[,"PPP"[,"<APN>"]]]

Parameter description

<cid>* : 1 to 10 <APN>* : Any number

<cid> is a number for managing hosts (APNs) used for packet transmission, registered in the FOMA terminal. It can be set between 1 and 10 in the FOMA. The default settings are *mopera.ne.jp* for <cid>=1 and *mopera.net* for <cid>=3. Set cid in 2 or 4 to 10. APN is a user-specified character string for each connection, indicating the host.

Execution example

Command when registering host (APN) name "abc" (for <cid>=2) AT+CGDCONT=2, "PPP", "abc", OK

Operation when parameter is abbreviated AT+CGDCONT=

Clears all <cid> settings. Resets <cid>=1 and 3 settings to default values.

AT+CGDCONT=<cid>

Clears specified <cid> setting. Resets <cid>=1 and 3 settings to default values.

AT+CGDCONT=?

Displays list of values that can be set.

AT+CGDCONT? Displays current settings.

Command name: +CGEQMIN= [parameter]

Overview

Registers criterion determining whether to permit QoS (Quality of Service) sent from the network when establishing PPP packet transmission. The command execution examples below describe the four available setting patterns. Not stored in FOMA terminal's memory with AT&W commands. Not reset with AT&F or ATZ commands.

Syntax

AT+CGEQMIN=[<cid> [,, <Maximum bitrate UL> [, <Maximum bitrate DL>]]]

Parameter description

<cid>* : 1 to 10 <Maximum bitrate UL>* : None (initial setting) or 64 <Maximum bitrate DL>* : None (initial setting) or 384 <cid> is a number for managing hosts (APNs) used for packet transmission, registered in the FOMA terminal. It can be set between 1 and 10 in the FOMA terminal. The default settings are

mopera.ne.jp for <cid>= 1 and **mopera.net** for <cid>=3. Set cid in 2 or 4 to 10. **Maximum bitrate UL** and **Maximum bitrate DL** set the minimum uplink and downlink transmission speed (kbps) between the FOMA and base station. When set to **None** (default setting), all speeds are permitted. Note that when set to "64" and "384", connections established under these speeds are not permitted, so packet transmission connection may not be established.

Execution examples

Set one of the following four patterns. Setting (1) is the initial setting for all cid.

 (1) Command permitting all uplink/downlink speeds (for <cid>=2) AT+CGEQMIN=2 OK

- (2) Command permitting only uplink speeds of 64 kbps and downlink speeds of 384 kbps (for <cid>=3) AT+CGEQMIN=3,,64,384, OK
- (3) Command permitting uplink speeds of 64 kbps and all downlink speeds (for <cid>=4) AT+CGEQMIN=4,,64, OK
- (4) Command permitting all uplink speeds and downlink speeds of 384 kbps (for <cid>=5) AT+CGEQMIN=5,,,384, OK

Operation when parameter is omitted

AT+CGEQMIN=

Clears all <cid> settings.

AT+CGEQMIN=<cid>

Returns specified <cid> setting to default setting. AT+CGEQMIN=? Displays list of values that can be set.

AT+CGEQMIN?

Displays current settings.

Command name: +CGEQREQ= [parameter]

Overview

Sets QoS (Quality of Service) required of the network when establishing PPP packet transmission.

The command execution example below

describes the setting pattern which is also set as the initial setting.

Not stored in FOMA terminal's memory with AT&W commands. Not reset with AT&F or ATZ commands.

Syntax

AT+CGEQREQ=[<cid>]

Parameter description

This setting is assigned to each cid by default value.

<cid>*: 1 to 10

<cid> is a number for managing hosts (APNs) used for packet transmission, registered in the FOMA terminal. It can be set between 1 and 10 in the FOMA. The default settings are *mopera.ne.jp* for <cid>= 1 and *mopera.net* for <cid>=3. Set cid in 2 or 4 to 10.

Command when requesting connection at uplink speed of 64 kbps, or downlink speed of 384 kbps

Execution example

For <cid>=3 AT+CGEQREQ=3 OK

Operation when parameter is abbreviated AT+CGEQREQ=

Returns all <cid> settings to default settings. AT+CGEQREQ=<cid> Returns specified <cid> setting to default setting. AT+CGEQREQ=? Displays list of values that can be set. AT+CGEQREQ? Displays current settings.

Result Codes

Result codes

| Numerical display | Text display | Meaning | | |
|----------------------|--------------|--|--|--|
| 0 | OK | Successfully executed. | | |
| 1 | CONNECT | Connected to number dialed. | | |
| 2 | RING | Call detected. | | |
| 3 | NO CARRIER | Line disconnected. | | |
| 4 | ERROR | Command not accepted. | | |
| 6 | NO DIAL TONE | No dial tone detected. | | |
| 7 | BUSY | Detecting busy tone. | | |
| 8 NO ANSWER | | Connection completed. The server connection timed out. | | |
| 100 | RESTRICTION | Network restricted. | | |
| 101 | DELAYED | Redial restricted. | | |

Extended result codes

| Numerical display | Text display | Meaning | | |
|----------------------|---|--|--|--|
| 5 | CONNECT 1200 | FOMA terminal and PC connected at 1,200 bps. | | |
| 10 | 10 CONNECT FOMA terminal and 2400 connected at 2,400 | | | |
| 11 | CONNECT 4800 | FOMA terminal and PC connected at 4,800 bps. | | |
| 13 | CONNECT 7200 | FOMA terminal and PC connected at 7,200 bps. | | |
| 12 | CONNECT 9600 | FOMA terminal and PC connected at 9,600 bps. | | |
| 16 | CONNECT 19200 | FOMA terminal and PC connected at 19,200 bps. | | |
| 17 | CONNECT 38400 | FOMA terminal and PC connected at 38,400 bps. | | |
| 18 | CONNECT 57600 | FOMA terminal and PC connected at 57,600 bps. | | |
| 19 | CONNECT 115200 | FOMA terminal and PC connected at 115,200 bps. | | |
| 20 | CONNECT 230400 | FOMA terminal and PC connected at 230,400 bps. | | |
| 21 | CONNECT 460800 | FOMA terminal and PC connected at 460,800 bps. | | |

Note

When n=1 is set for the ATV<n> command
 (P. 31), result codes are displayed as text
 (default setting). When set to n=0, they are displayed as numerical values.

Note

- Transmission speed is displayed to maintain compatibility with conventional modems connected by RS-232C. However, since the FOMA terminal is connected to the PC via FOMA USB cable, the displayed speed will differ from the actual speed of connection.
- When **RESTRICTION** (Number: 100) appears, the transmission network is congested. Try connecting again later.

Communication Protocol Result Codes

| Numerical display | Text display | Meaning |
|----------------------|--------------|---|
| 1 | PPPoverUD | Connected with 64K data communications |
| 5 | PACKET | Connected with packet transmission |

Result code display examples

When ATX0 is set

The CONNECT display appears only when connection is completed, regardless of the AT¥V<n> command (27 P. 33) setting.

Text display example: ATD*99***1# CONNECT Numerical display example: ATD*99***1# 1

- When ATX1 is set
- When ATX1 and AT¥V0 are set (initial value)

When connection is completed, CONNECT <speed between FOMA terminal and PC> appears in the syntax.

Text display example: ATD*99***1# CONNECT 460800 Numerical display example:

ATD*99***1# 1 21 When ATX1 and AT¥V1 are set*

When connection is completed, the information below appears in the syntax.

CONNECT <speed between FOMA terminal and PC> PACKET <host (APN)>/<maximum uplink speed (FOMA terminal to mobile network base station)>/<maximum downlink speed (mobile network base station to FOMA terminal)> Text display example:

ATD*99***1# CONNECT 460800 PACKET mopera.ne.jp/64/384 (Indicates terminal connected to *mopera.ne.jp*, at maximum uplink speed of 64 kbps and maximum

downlink speed of 384 kbps.)

Numerical display example:

ATD*99^{**}*1#

1 21 5

 Dial-up connection may not be processed correctly when ATX1 and AT¥V1 are simultaneously set. Using only AT¥V0 is recommended.

Kuten Code List

'06.10 (1st Edition) TINSEA134AFZZ

Use four-digit kuten codes to enter kanji, hiragana, katakana, symbol, and alphanumeric characters.

- Each kuten code corresponds to a particular character. Refer to "Inputting Kuten Code" of the user's guide for details.
 If an unregistered kuten code is entered, either a space or nothing will be entered.
- Some entries in the kuten code list may differ from on the screen.

| Kuten | Kuten 4th digit | Kuten K | Cuten 4th digit | Kuten | Kuten 4th digit |
|---|--|--|---|---|---|
| 1 to 3 | 0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 | | 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 | 1 to 3 | 0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 |
| 010 011 012 013 014 015 016 | 1 (100) 0 1 <td>073 074 075 076 K 077 078</td> <td></td> <td>187 188 189 190 191 192 193</td> <td>0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 8 9 8 0 7 7 8 4 5 5 6 7 7 8 8 0 8 0 7 7 8 8 0 7 7 8 8 8 8 8 7 7 8 9 8 8 8 8 8 8 8 8 7 7 8 9 8 8 8 8</td> | 073 074 075 076 K 077 078 | | 187 188 189 190 191 192 193 | 0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 8 9 8 0 7 7 8 4 5 5 6 7 7 8 8 0 8 0 7 7 8 8 0 7 7 8 8 8 8 8 7 7 8 9 8 8 8 8 8 8 8 8 7 7 8 9 8 8 8 8 |
| 017 018 019 020 021 022 | + - ± × ÷ = < > | 080 081 082 083 130 | | 194 195 196 197 198 199 | 督拡減 転 |
| 022 023 024 026 027 028 | - ‰ +±¶ | 131 | リ ^キ ロ なンメーグラト・アーベル レーンル ケル ー ル たいたい シー mm cm g cc m g cx m g ck (人) | 200 201 202 203 204 205 | ¹¹¹ 物州2/动喚堪姦完官尾尾 動對巻感慣憾 推調 新 動 教 告 思 所 門 伯 2/ 之 瓦 定 電 見 に 定 定 定 定 定 定 定 定 定 定 定 定 定 定 定 定 定 定 |
| 028 029 031 032 | 0123 | 137 ⊕®® 138 139 | 〕 ⑥ (株) (株) (用) (H) < | 205 206 207 207 | │ 「唯 順 顔 願 ──── き ──── |
| 033 034 035 036 | A B C D E F G H I J K L M N O P Q R S T U V W X Y Z a b c d e | 160 亜 呵 161 葵茜和 162 梓 庄 斡 163 鮎 或 粟 | 重娃阿哀愛挨姶逢 а悪握渥旭葦芦鯵 а扱宛姐虻飴絢綾 髦袷安庵按暗案闇 | 208 209 210 211 | 企伎危喜器 「 「 「 「 」 」 」 位 危 喜 器 和 心 、 後 忌 一 輝 机 歳 一 転 、 二 二 和 机 た 、 巻 、 二 二 和 机 た 、 二 二 和 れ た 、 二 二 和 れ た 、 二 二 和 れ 、 二 二 和 れ 、 二 二 和 れ 、 二 二 和 れ 、 二 二 和 れ 、 二 二 和 れ 、 二 二 和 れ 、 二 二 和 れ 、 二 二 和 れ 、 二 二 和 れ 、 二 二 和 れ 、 二 二 和 れ 、 二 二 和 れ 、 二 二 和 れ 、 二 二 和 れ 新 二 系 二 和 れ 二 二 和 和 二 二 和 和 二 二 和 和 二 二 和 和 二 二 和 和 二 二 和 和 二 二 二 二 二 二 二 二 二 二 二 二 二 |
| 037 038 039 040 | fghijklmno pqrstuvwxy z _ ああいいううええき | 164 鞍 否 | | 212 213 214 215 | 旗 職員 法的 化加速 化加速 化加速 化加速 化加速 化加速 化加速 化加速 化加速 化加速 |
| 041 042 043 044 045 | たまでは、 あかざしちにふった。 おごぞとびび おこでとびび たとびび たとびび たとびび たとびび たとびび たとびび たとびび | 166 移維維 167 井亥均 168 稲茨亨 169 引飲消 170 院隊 | 中 一 た で た で た に で に で に た に で に し ま の こ で た の に し ま の に っ で し 思 え で 一 四 員 て の 町 四 し て で し 、 で の に っ で う に う い う に う い う に う い い い う い い い い い い い い い い い い い | 216 217 218 219 220 | 一一一一一一一一一一一一一一一一一一一一一一一一一一一一一一一一一一一一一一一 |
| 046 047 048 050 | ははまみむのもややゆ ゆょよらりるれろわわ ゐゑをん | 170 171 注雨 (i) | ーーう 右宇烏羽 〕鵜窺丑碓臼渦嘘 討鰻姥厩浦瓜閠噂 | 221 222 223 224 225 | 卿叫喬境峡強彊 蛅恐 卿 |
| 051 052 053 054 055 | オコゾデバボ オコゾデスマリッ オコゾデスフムリッ オコゾデスフムリッ オコゾデバボャワ オコゾデバボャワ オコソデバボャワ | | 、 在 家 で 、 家 で 電 要 親 影 影 読 兵 立 雪 嬰 影 影 読 英 益 歌 領 英 益 歌 領 英 益 歌 領 英 益 歌 領 美 記 歌 気 之 歌 気 記 気 気 気 気 気 気 気 気 気 気 気 気 気 | 226 227 | 九 俱句区狗玖矩苦躯駆駈 |
| 056 057 058 | ッティンシュン シング シング シング シング シング シング シング シング シング シン | 178 | | 229 230 231 232 | 串櫛釧屑屈 掘窟沓靴轡窪熊隈粂 栗繰桑鍬勲君薫訓群軍 郡 |
| 060 061 062 063 064 065 | П Ф | 182 | E横欧殴王翁襖鴬 列沖荻億屋憶臆桶 E卸恩温穏音 か | 232 233 234 235 236 | |
| 070 071 072 | | 183 仮何伽 184 家寡科 185 禍禾和 186 蝦課團 | I 価 佳 加 可 嘉 夏 嫁 | 237 | 《保久》 家 行 朱 御 慶 志 懸 拳 捲 |

| Kuten | Kuten 4th digit | Kuten | Kuten 4th digit | Kuten | Kuten 4th digit |
|---------------|---|---------------|--|---------------|---|
| 1 to 3 241 | 0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 肩見謙賢軒遣鍵険顕験 | 1 to 3 309 | 0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 醸錠嘱埴飾 | 1 to 3 370 | 0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 邸鄭釘鼎泥摘擢敵滴 |
| 242 | 於元原厳幻弦減源玄現 絃舷言諺限 | 310 | ○○○○○○○○○○○○○○○○○○○○○○○○○○○○○○○○○○○○ | 371 | 的笛適鏑溺哲徹撤轍迭 鉄典填天展店添纏甜貼 転顛点伝殿澱田電 |
| 243 | | 311 312 | 凹 | 372 373 | |
| 243 244 | 乎個古呼固 姑孤己庫弧戸故枯湖狐 | 313 314 | 疹真神秦紳臣芯薪親診 | 373 | と |
| 245 | 糊袴股胡菰虎誇跨鈷雇 | 315 | 尋甚尽腎訊迅陣靭 | 374 | 堵塗妬屠徒斗杜渡登菟 |
| 246 247 | 湖德股胡菰虎誇跨鈷雇 顧鼓五互伍午呉吾娯後 御悟告信胡碁語誤護朝 | 315 | | 375 376 | 賭 途 都 鍍 砒 砺 努 度 土 奴 怒 倒 党 冬 凍 刀 唐 塔 塘 耷 |
| 248 | 四倍佔領域 复 品 | 316 | 須酢図厨逗吹垂帥推水 | 377 | 之一一一天中 一天中 一天中 一天中 一天中 一天中 一天中 一天中 一天中 一天 |
| 249 250 | 》 勾厚口问 后喉坑垢好孔孝宏工 巧巷幸広庚康弘恒慌抗 | 317 318 | 須酢図厨逗吹垂帥推水 炊睡粋翠衰遂酔錐錘随 瑞髄崇嵩数枢趨雛据杉 | 378 379 | |
| 251 252 | 巧巷幸広庚康弘恒慌抗 拘控攻昂晃更杭校梗構 江洪浩港開皇硬稿糠 | 319 320 | 椙菅 頗 雀 裾 澄 摺 寸 | 380 381 | ̄ 董蕩藤討謄豆踏逃透 鐙陶頭騰闘働動同堂導 憧撞洞瞳童胴萄道銅峠 |
| 253 | 江洪浩港溝甲皇硬稿糠 | | | 382 | 鐙陶頭騰闘働動同堂導 憧撞洞鐘童胴萄道銅峰 |
| 254 255 | 紅 | 320 321 | 世 | 383 384 | Г |
| 256 257 | 磁鋼 閤 降 項 香 高 鴻 剛 劫 吕 今 停 堵 亮 亮 專 執 古 刻 | 322 323 | 栖正清牲生盛精聖声製 西減哲慧逝醒書静音超 | 385 386 | 寅酉瀞噸屯惇敦沌豚遁 頓呑曇鈍 |
| 258 | 巧拘江紅航磁号店。 一次 一次 一次 一次 一次 一次 一次 一次 一次 一次 一次 一次 一次 | 324 | 脆隻席惜戚斥昔析石積 | | な |
| 259 260 | 22 12 12 12 12 12 12 12 12 12 12 12 12 1 | 325 326 | 耤 縝 脊 貢 亦 跡 蹎 傾 切 拙 接 摂 折 設 窃 節 説 雪 絶 舌 | 386 387 | 奈那内乍凪薙 謎灘捺鍋楢馴縄畷南楠 |
| 261 | 昏昆根梱混痕紺良魂 | 327 328 | 蝉仙先千占宣専尖川戦 | 388 | 軟難汝 に ――― |
| 261 | 此 | 329 | 世成空程。 整理 整理 整理 建 電 大 中 大 中 大 中 大 中 大 中 大 中 大 中 大 中 大 中 大 中 大 中 大 中 大 中 大 中 大 中 大 中 大 中 大 中 大 中 大 小 春 青 吉 青 前 む の い の 前 言 寺 石 切 二 着 音 情 一 方 窃 占 与 泉 秋 一 新 前 前 前 言 設 二 午 春 清 吉 折 氏 - 泉 泉 代 一 大 二 本 新 前 前 言 設 二 大 本 本 新 の 前 言 読 二 和 新 新 前 前 言 読 二 和 新 前 前 言 設 二 大 本 本 新 の 前 に 寺 末 つ ら 泉 泉 代 一 宗 染 い 二 和 二 和 二 和 新 前 前 言 設 二 大 本 新 の 前 に う 泉 、 か 節 言 設 二 、 染 か 前 前 言 設 二 大 本 一 泉 泉 和 二 二 大 二 本 二 二 二 二 二 二 二 二 二 二 二 二 二 | 388 | 二尼弐迩匂賑肉 |
| 262 263 | 佐叉唆嵯左差査沙瑳砂 詐鎖裟坐座挫債催再最 | 330 331 | | 389 390 | 虹廿日乳入 如尿韮任妊忍認 |
| 264 265 | 計載 素 要 本 型 本 型 本 型 本 型 本 型 本 型 本 型 本 型 本 型 本 型 本 型 本 型 本 型 本 型 本 二 才 採 栽 歳 済 裁 版 、 二 、 、 、 、 、 、 、 、 、 、 、 、 、 | 332 | 全禅繕膳糎 そ | | ∣ — k∆~on — — |
| 266 | 載際剤在材罪財冴坂阪 | 332 | A4 HL D.L D. A6 | 390 | ~ |
| 267 268 | 堺榊肴咲崎埼碕鷺作削 咋搾昨朔柵窄策索錯桜 | 333 334 | 目 楚 狙 疏 疎 礎 祖 相 粗 素 組 蘇 訴 阳 溯 鼠 僧 創 双 叢 | 392 393 | 粘 乃 |
| 269 270 | 鮭 笹 匙 冊 刷 | 335 | 管組制制制用的 | 202 | |
| 271 | 察拶撮擦札殺薩雑皐 鯖捌錆鮫皿晒三傘参山 惨撒散桟燦珊産算纂蚕 | 336 337 | 渂 揥 伊 痋 探 千 音 果 信 借 漕 燥 争 痩 相 窓 糟 総 綜 聡 | 393 394 | 」 った 御 朝 杞 波 派 琶 破 婆 罵 芭 馬 俳 廃 |
| 272 273 | 惨 撒 敢 桟 燦 珊 産 算 纂 蚕 讃 賛 酸 餐 斬 暫 残 | 338 339 | 草 荘 葬 蒼 藻 装 走 送 遭 鎗 霜 騒 像 増 憎 | 395 396 | 拝 排 敗 杯 盃 牌 背 肺 輩 配 倍 培 媒 梅 棋 煤 狥 胃 売 賠 |
| | υ | 340 | [| 397 | 世二世代 一世代 一世代 一世代 一世代 一世代 一世代 一世代 一世代 一世代 一 |
| 273 274 | 仕仔伺 使刺司史嗣四士始姉姿 | 341 342 | 來 袖 其 揃 存 孫 尊 損 村 遜 | 398 399 | 柏 |
| 275 276 | 使灵屍市 一次 使子屍 市師 志思指 支 近 始 政 影 時 志 思 指 支 和 師 志 思 指 支 和 師 志 思 指 支 和 前 市 師 志 思 指 支 孔 校 衣 約 、 約 、 約 、 約 、 約 、 一 、 の 、 の 、 の 、 の 、 の 、 の 、 の 、 の 、 の | 343 | た 他多大汰詑唾堕妥惰打 | 400 401 | 函箱硲箸肇筈櫨幡肌 畑島八鈢 |
| 277 | 紙紫肢脂至視詞詩試詰 | 344 | 他柁岱腿台宅諾爾爾爾 一次院 小 市 | 402 | 抜筏閥 鳩噺塙蛤隼伴判 |
| 278 279 | 浴 頁 畅 雌 則 凿 爭 似 侍 兄 字 寺 慈 持 時 | 345 346 | 岱 帝 侍 忌 態 艱 晉 泰 <i>而 脂</i> 腿 苔 袋 貸 退 逮 隊 黛 鯛 代 | 403 404 | 手 反 |
| 280 281 | 常寺慈持時 次滋治爾璽痔磁示而 耳自時辞》鹿式識高 | 347 348 | 台大第醍題鷹滝瀧卓啄 字托択拓況濯琢託霉濁 | 405 | 頒飯挽晩番盤磐蕃蛮 ひ |
| 282 | 軸深疾質写射 捨 那斜着 | 349 | 諾茸凧蛸只 | 105 | III |
| 283 284 | | 350 351 | | 406 407 | 卑否妃庇彼悲扉批披斐 比泌疲皮碑秘緋罷肥被 誹費避非飛樋簸備尾微 |
| 285 286 | 社紗者謝車遮蛇邪借勺 | 352 353 | 4762 些 一 一 一 一 一 一 一 一 一 一 一 一 一 | 408 409 | 誹費避非飛樋簸備尾微 壯毘琵眉羊 |
| 287 | 度社代意志 一個 一個 一個 一個 一個 一個 一個 一個 一個 一個 | 354 | 暖檀段男談 | 410 | 卑比症 定 成 皮 成 皮 成 成 成 成 成 成 成 成 成 れ 総 能 能 肥 肥 た 彼 総 維 能 肥 肥 能 能 能 能 能 能 肥 肥 た 微 遊 非 れ 義 美 に た 端 能 能 能 に れ 能 能 能 に れ に 数 術 能 に 微 が 本 、 に 数 本 に 数 、 本 、 に 数 、 本 、 に 数 、 本 、 、 の で 、 の む れ 、 、 の で 、 の で 、 の で 、 の で 、 の で 、 の で 、 の の の の の の の の の の の の の |
| 288 289 | 腥趣 य 自 儒 受 呪 寿 授 倒 綬 需 囚 収 周 | 354 | <u>5</u> 值知地弛恥 | 411 412 | In) m 必 華 聿 理 伝 娖 烟 油 百 謬 俵 彪 標 氷 漂 瓢 票 表 |
| 290 291 | 綬 斋宗 當 前 四 収 尚 修 充 第 器 治 襲 法 決 襲 法 終 襲 法 完 課 習 酬 洗 泉 計 彩 響 六 宗 諸 習 酬 計 系 調 器 計 約 泉 洗 製 子 洗 線 一 約 島 歌 光 泉 浩 光 泉 浩 光 泉 浩 光 泉 浩 光 泉 二 二 編 道 西 柔 八 紀 森 訳 訳 泉 二 次 編 調 之 二 次 編 二 之 派 初 の の 院 歌 開 、 二 編 調 四 二 八 編 二 之 派 初 男 二 次 編 二 二 派 初 四 二 二 派 初 四 二 二 派 初 四 二 二 派 初 四 二 二 派 初 四 二 二 派 初 四 二 二 派 初 四 二 二 二 派 初 四 二 二 二 二 (二 二 二 二 二 二 (二 二 二 二 (二 二 二 (二 二 (二 二 (二 二 (二 (二 (二) (二 (二 | 355 356 | 智池痴稚置致蜘遅馳築畜竹筑蓄逐秩窒茶嫡着 | 413 414 | 斻蕌謬俵彪橿氷 薀瓢票表 評豹廟描病秒苗錨鋲蒜 蛭鰭品彬斌浜瀕貧賓頻 |
| 292 | 輯週酉酬集醜什住充十 | 357 | 中仲宙忠抽昼柱注虫衷 | 414 | 政 瓶 |
| 293 294 | 促 戎 柔 汁 渋 獸 縦 重 銃 叔 夙 宿 淑 祝 縮 粛 塾 熟 出 術 | 358 359 | 目的知 推 至 立 均 筑 志 北 室 秋 室 柱 室 花 空 末 主 志 北 屋 秋 室 花 注 本 主 社 屋 花 注 本 主 社 屋 花 注 本 主 社 屋 茶 注 本 注 末 主 木 室 花 注 本 主 古 書 添 九 雪 満 玉 古 雪 満 玉 古 雪 満 玉 古 雪 満 玉 古 雪 満 玉 古 雪 満 先 古 吉 玉 情 満 着 茶 古 玉 吉 木 雪 茶 玉 古 雪 満 れ 一 著 満 先 一 著 満 先 一 著 新 二 で 書 本 長 末 言 本 品 玉 信 満 雅 一 新 新 、 歌 歌 で 龍 歌 歌 歌 歌 歌 歌 歌 歌 歌 歌 歌 歌 歌 | 415 | │ ふ │ 不付埠夫婦富冨布 |
| 295 | 述俊峻春瞬竣舜駿准循 | 360 361 | 帖帳庁弔張彫徵懲挑 | 416 417 | 不付埠夫婦富富布 府怖扶敷斧普浮父符腐 盧芙謹負賦赴島附侮撫 |
| 290 | 醇順処初所暑曙渚庶緒 | 362 | 調業超跳銚長頂鳥勅捗 | 417 | 膚芙譜負賦赴阜附侮撫 武舞葡蕪部封楓風葺蕗 |
| 298 299 | 著 | 363 | 直朕沈珍賃鎮陳 | 419 420 | 伏 副 復 幅 服 |
| 300 301 | 旬醇署恕 要訪 松照 約 加 | 363 364 | 津 墜 椎 槌 追 鎚 痛 通 塚 栂 掴 槻 佃 | 421 422 | 福腹複覆淵弗払沸仏 物鮒分吻噴墳憤扮焚奮 粉糞紛雰文聞 |
| 302 | 彰承抄招掌捷昇昌昭 晶 | 365 | 清柘 辻 蔦 綴 鍔 椿 潰 坪 壷 | | ^ |
| 303 304 | 松 稍 樟 樵 沼 消 渉 湘 焼 焦 照 症 省 硝 礁 祥 称 章 笑 粧 | 366 | 嬬紬爪吊釣鶴 ———て——— | 422 423 | 丙 併 兵 塀 幣 平 弊 柄 並 蔽 閉 陛 米 頁 |
| 305 | 紹肖菖蒋蕉衝裳訟証詔 詳免賞遷鉦 鳒 險跨 | 366 | 亭低停值 | 424 | 幣平弊柄並蔽閉陛米貢 僻壁癖碧別瞥蔑箆偏変 片篇編辺返遍便勉娩弁 |
| 306 307 | 日本東西北理理厚明上 | 367 368 | 剃 貞 呈 堤 定 帝 底 庭 廷 弟 悌 抵 挺 提 梯 汀 碇 禎 程 締 | 425 426 | 斤 扁 編 辺 返 嘸 |
| 308 | 情擾条杖浄状畳穰蒸讓 | 369 | 艇訂諦蹄逓 | | |

| Kuten | Kuten 4th digit | Kuten | Kuten 4th digit | Kuten Kuten 4th digit |
|--|---|---|---|---|
| 1 to 3 | 0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 | 1 to 3 | | 1 to 3 0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 |
| 426 427 428 | →→→→ ほ→→→→ 保舗鋪圃捕歩甫補輔 穂募墓慕戊暮母簿菩倣 俸包呆報奉宝峰峯崩庖 | 474 475 476 477 | 枠 鷲 亙 亘 鰐 詫 藁 蕨 椀 湾 碗 腕 | 548 幟幢幣幇幵并幺麼广庠 549 廁廂廈廐廠 550 廖廣廝廚廛廢廡廨廩 551 廬廱廳廰廴廸廾弃弉彝 |
| 429 430 431 432 433 | 把 挥 放 万 册 法泡 烹 砲 縫 胞 芳 萌 蓬 略 亮 註 ᄈ 邦 悠 絇 鳳 聰 毛 | 478 479 480 481 482 | 弐 丐 丕 个 丱 丶 丼 丿 乂 乖乘亂 亅 豫 亊 舒 弐 于 亞 亟 二 亢 亰 亳 亶 从 仍 仄 仆 | 551 廬廱廳 應 廳 應 定 建 式 552 聲 553 聲 雪 4 2 3 5 5 5 5 5 5 5 5 5 5 5 5 5 |
| 433 434 435 436 | 釋亡望的最大。 一望的是一些。 我们的一个,我们的一个,我们的一个。 我们的一个,我们的一个,我们的一个。 我们的一个,我们的一个。 我们的一个,我们的一个。 我们的一个,我们的一个。 我们的一个,我们的一个。 我们的一个,我们的一个。 我们的一个,我们的一个。 我们的一个,我们的一个。 我们的一个,我们的一个。 我们的一个,我们的一个,我们的一个。 我们的一个,我们的一个,我们的一个。 我们的一个,我们的一个,我们的一个。 我们的一个,我们的一个,我们的一个。 我们的一个,我们的一个,我们的一个。 我们的一个,我们的一个,我们的一个。 我们的一个,我们的一个,我们的一个。 我们的一个,我们的一个,我们的一个。 我们的一个,我们的一个,我们的一个。 我们的一个,我们的一个,我们的一个,我们的一个。 我们的一个,我们的一个,我们的一个,我们的一个,我们的一个,我们的一个,我们的一个。 我们的一个,我们的一个,我们的一个,我们的一个,我们的一个,我们的一个,我们的一个,我们的一个,我们的一个,我们的一个,我们的一个,我们的一个,我们的一个,我们的一个,我们就是我们的一个,我们也不是我们的话,我们就是我们的话,我们也不是我们的,我们也不是我们的话,我们也不是我们的,我们也不是我们的,我们也不是我们的,我们还是我们的你们也不是我们的你们也不是我们的你们也不是我们的,我们也不是我们的你们也不是我们的你们也不是我们的你们也不是我们的你们也不是我们的你们也不是我们的你们也不是我们的你们也不是我们的你们也不是我们们的你们也不是我们们也不是我们的你们也不是我们也不是我们们也不是我们的你们也不是我们的你们也不是我们们也不是我们的你们也不是我们的你们也不是我们们也不是我们也不是我们的你们也不是我们们也不是我们也不是我们的你们也不是我们也不是我们的你们也不是我们们也不是我们的你们也不是我们们也不是我们们也不是我们的你们也不是我们们也你你们还你你们还你你们还你你们你你你们还你你们你你你们还你你你你你们你你你们 | 482 483 484 485 486 | 仂仗 仞 仭 仟 价 伉 佚 估 佛 佝佗 佇 佶 侈 侏 侘 佻 佩 佰 侑佯 來 侖 儘 俔 俟 俎 俘 俛 俑 俚 俐 俤 俥 倚 倨 倔 倪 倥 | 354 任復福祉 555 標金 556 恵念怡恠怙怐怩怎怱 557 怕佛怦快泳恚怕 557 怕佛怦快泳恚恤恂 558 協恆恍恣恃恤恂 559 肩惺惧恆 559 肩惺惧恆 559 肩惺惧恆 559 肩惺惧恆 550 筒俊使兔 |
| 436 437 438 439 440 | 摩磨魔麻埋妹 昧枚毎哩槙幕膜枕鮪柾 鱒桝亦俣又抺末沬迄侭 繭麿万慢満 漫蔓 | 487 488 489 490 491 | 倅伜俶倡倩倬俾俯們倆 偃假會偕谚偈做偖偬偸 俛儹傴傲 贪僊傳僂傗鳫爲僥僣僣 僮僵偒儉僬儂鷢儕懤儚 | 561 惠惓悴忰悽惆悵惘慍愕 562 愆惶惷愀惴惺愃熜惻惱 563 愍愎影愾愨愧慊愿愼戀 564 愴傳慂慄慳懅慘慙慚慫 565 慴傷慥慱懄慝慓慵憙愁 |
| 440 441 | ーーーみーーー 味未魅巳箕岬密 蜜湊蓑稔脈妙粍民眠 ーーむーー | 492 493 494 495 | 偏儺儷儼黛儿兀兒兌兔 兢競兩兪兮冀囗囘册冉 冏冑冓冕冖冤冦冢寫冪 冫决冱冲冰况冽涸凉凛 | 566 |
| 441 442 442 | 務 夢無牟矛霧鵡椋婿娘 め | 496 497 498 499 | 几處 | 570 夏戡截戮戰戲戳扁扎 571 扞扣扛扠扨扼抂抉找抒 |
| 443 444 | 名命明盟迷銘鳴姪牝滅 免棉綿緬面麺 ———も——— | 500 501 502 | 副刻辞費副科科 新物助訪勤勤勤勤勤勤勤 新物助訪勤助」 可用 面 定 區 杂 卅 世 五 元 世 子 王 之 一 代 一 一 一 四 一 四 一 四 一 約 約 5 一 5 一 5 一 5 一 5 一 5 一 5 一 5 一 5 | 576 掉掟掵捫捩掾揩揀揆揣 |
| 444 445 446 447 | 摸模茂妄 孟毛猛盲網耗蒙儲木黙 目杢勿餅尤戻籾貰問悶 紋門匁 や | 503 504 505 506 507 | 厄 夘 卻 卷 尨 則 厦 脥 斯 厰 厶 參 簒 雙 叟 曼 燮 叮 叨 叭 叺 吀 吽 呀 听 吭 吼 吮 吶 | 570 |
| 447 448 449 | 也冶夜爺耶野弥 矢厄役約薬訳躍靖柳薮 鑓ゆ | 508 509 510 511 | 吩吝呢咏问咎呟呱 呷咢 哈呢呶咄哈 哈哈 吃 。 哈 。 。 。 。 。 。 。 。 。 。 。 。 。 。 。 | 「COO」 1四 松林 100 1回 1座 1扶 120 4回 上 |
| 449 450 451 452 | 愉愈油癒 諭輪唯佑優勇友宥幽 悠憂揖有柚湧涌猶猷由 祐裕誘遊邑本融会 | 512 513 514 515 516 | 咯喴喟啻啾喘唧單啼喃 喩喇喨嗚嗅嗟嗄嗜嗤嗔 嘔嗷嘖嗾嗽嘛嗹噎噐營 嘴嘶嘲嘸噫蓙嘨啼噪 | 586 无旱杲昊昃旻杳昵昶昴 587 易晏晄晉晁唏雪暄喘曉 588 晟哲晰暃暈暎暉暄暘暝 589 暨暹曉暾瞥 590 曄暸曖曚曠昿曦曩曰 |
| 452 453 454 455 456 | 予 余与誉 輿預 傷 | 517 518 519 520 521 | 灣○國國國國國國國國國國國國國國國國國國國國國國國國國國國國國國國國國國國國 | 591 曳曷朏朖朞朦朧霸朮束 592 朶杁朸朷杆杞杠杙杣杤 593 枉杰枩杼杪枌枋栌枡杤 594 枷柯枴束枳柩枸柦柞柝 595 柢枇枹枹杝柧檜栞框栩 |
| 456 457 458 | 6 螺裸来莱頼雷洛絡落酪 乱剛嵐欄濫藍蘭覧 1 | 522 523 524 525 | 坿垉垓堒垳垤垪垰埃埆 埔埒埓堊埖埣堋堙堝塲 堡塢塋塰毀榯堽塹塹塹 壉墝爅櫰墻撯墮靊 譃摢 | 596 |
| 458 459 460 461 462 463 | 利 吏 履 李梨理理里離陸律率立 葎掠略劉流溜琉虜了亮僚 僅 竜龍 侶 慮旅 虜 了亮僚 | 526 527 528 529 530 531 532 | ^祉 墙啃夭奢 栗外 城市 「 「 「 「 「 「 「 「 「 「 「 「 「 「 「 「 」 「 「 」 「 」 「 」 「 」 「 」 「 」 「 」 「 」 「 」 「 」 「 」 「 」 「 」 「 」 「 」 「 」 「 」 「 」 」 「 」 」 「 」 」 「 」 」 「 」 」 「 」 「 」 「 」 」 「 」 」 「 」 」 「 」 」 「 」 」 「 」 」 「 」 」 「 」 」 「 」 」 「 」 」 「 」 」 「 」 」 「 」 」 「 」 」 「 」 」 「 」 」 「 」 」 「 」 」 「 」 | 600 601 棹棠裕術樓 602 档椰椰榆楞楝植 603 樹椰榆楞楝 花 4 604 岩 市 都 都 榆 橋 橋 橋 橋 橋 橋 橋 橋 橋 橋 橋 橋 橋 橋 橋 橋 橋 |
| 464 465 466 | 種 民 訳 返 重 陵 領 刀 緑 備 厘 林 淋 燐 琳 臨 輪 隣 鱗 麟 る ~ れ 瑠 塁 涙 累 類 令 伶 例 冷 励 | 533 534 535 536 | 嫋嫂媽嫣嫗嫦嬓嫖嫺嫻 嬌嬋嬖嬲嫐嬪嬶櫴孃孅 孀孑孕孚孛孥孩孰孳孵 學斈孺宀它宦宸寃寇寉 | 607 樔槫樊樒櫁樣樓橄樌橲 608 樶橸橇橢橙橦橈 609 檍檠檄檢檣 610 檗葉檻櫃櫂檸檳懞櫞 |
| 467 468 469 470 | ○○○ 「「一」、「「」」、「「」」、「「」」、「「」、」、「」、「」、「」、「」、「」、「」 | 537 538 539 540 541 | 嫋嬌孀學寔寶尹 岑峇崗嵌嶋嶬龗 爈嬲雺乊寛割厧屬岻峺菎嵬灆已巏 嫐嬶孩宸寥尠 乢岼嶌崢嵶薿쫀冟寬籿厧屬岻峺菎嵬蓬已 嘊 嬎 | 607 操標檔案 608 操總 609 權權權 609 權權權 610 611 備權 611 備權 612 權權 612 權權 613 款珍強强發壓 614 殀珍強强發壓 615 殯殲毫毫汕沒沒沾沾 616 程家汞讵気沒透已流淌 617 氣況沾沒沾沾 11週,沮追沒沾沾 618 流況 617 氣況沿流 616 百13 款沿 617 氣況 71 氣況 71 (13) 72 (13) 72 (13) 73 (13) 74 (13) 74 (13) 75 (13) 76 (13) 76 (13) 76 (13) 76 (13) 76 (13) 76 (13) 76 (13) 76 (13) 76 (13) 76 (13) 76 (13) 76 (13) 76 (13) 76 (13) 76 (13) 76 (13) 76 (13) 76 (13) 76 (13) 76 (13) 76 (13) 76 (13) 76 (13) 76 (13) 76 (13) 76 (13) 76 (13) 76 (13) 76 (13) 76 (13) 76 (13) 76 (13) |
| 470 471 472 473 | 呂魯櫓炉賂路 露労婁廊弄朗楼榔浪漏 牢狼篭老聾蝋郎六麓禄 肋録論 | 541 542 543 544 545 | ¬」 峇嵜 先 玉 崎 義 士 幅 城 町 町 町 町 町 町 町 町 町 町 町 町 町 町 町 町 町 町 | 616 |
| 473 | ーーー わーーー 倭和話歪賄脇惑 | 546 547 | 顚巒 嚴 巛 坐 ヒ 巵 帋 帚 쯗 帑 帛 帶 帷 幄 幃 幀 幎 幗 幔 | 620 |

| Kuten | Kuten 4th digit | Kuten | Kuten 4th digit | Kuten | Kuten 4th digit |
|------------|--|------------|---|------------|--|
| 1 to 3 | 0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 | 1 to 3 | 0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 | 1 to 3 | 0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 |
| 622 | > 渊淒菏渟溘溏漿 > 渊淒菏渟溘溏漿 > 湯淨湮湍溪滕滾 > 漂泳淪湫淪滄灌 > 浸浴淪湫淪滄灌 > 浸添淪湫淪滄灌 > 浸添淪湫淪滄灌 > 浸滴浴滴滴滴灌 > 湯清渣滴溶頭洗滴濱灌 > 浸滴滴滴滴 > 運過旅運渤源頭漲滴滴濱 > 運過旅運滴滴滴 > 運滴滴滴滴 > 運滴滴滴滴 > 運滴滴滴滴 > 運滴 > 運 > > | 695 | 縡縒縱縟縉縋縢繆繦緳 | 768 | 跟 跣 跼 踈 踉 跿 踝 踞 踐 踟 |
| 623 | 涵淇淦涸淆淬淞淌淨淒 | 696 | 脌疺辴嶎艒譝嚺渿閷鏾繞 縵縹繃貗縲縺繧繝鏾繞 緖繚繹繪繩繼繻纃緕繽 辮繿纈燲顈 | 769 | 瞛踲睮旝膎 騥 蹇蹉蹌蹐蹈蹙瞛蹠踪 罿 躣 鷢 躑 躔 躙 龗 野 踏 麗 丁 蹈 盤 踏 路 了 蹈 蹙 蹤 臨 路 了 蹈 蹙 蹤 臨 路 了 蹈 蹙 蹤 臨 路 了 蹈 蹙 蹤 臨 路 了 蹈 蹙 蹤 路 二 路 路 了 蹈 蹙 之 》 四 蹙 之 》 四 之 之 門 、 列 系 列 系 列 系 列 系 列 系 列 系 列 系 列 系 列 系 列 |
| 624 625 | | 697 698 | <i>````</i> | 770 771 | |
| 626 | 湃渺湎渤滿渝游溂溪溘 | 699 | 繊素纜缸缺 | 772 | 躊躓躑躔躙躪躡躬躰軆 |
| 627 | 滉溷滓溽溯滄溲滔滕溏 | 700 | | 773 | 躱躾軅軈軋軛軣軼軻軫 |
| 628 629 | | 701 702 | 舌 民 奄 卓 菻 討 絹 熊 幕 韉 展 主 关 羊 粁 챗 君 钽 恙 羨 | 774 775 | 부러 부분 부증 뿌뜨 뿌肌 뿌沢 뿌꾸 뿌끔 뿌증 뿌ጪ |
| 630 | 「蒸滴滷澆潺潸澁澀潯」 | 702 | ^{辦繊} 置器 臺 整 整 整 電 電 電 電 電 電 電 電 電 電 電 電 電 | 776 | 轆轎轗轜鱳轣轤辜辟辣 |
| 631 | 闣灒潭澂 遧 潘澎澑濂遼 | 704 | 翦翩翳翹飜耆耄耋耒耘 | 777 | 辭辯:::::::::::::::::::::::::::::::::::: |
| 632 633 | 奥 屛 淉 涬 澹 湏 泈 酒 濕 浄 濁 漓 漓 漄 違 涼 涼 濺 湿 満 | 705 706 | 記書: 一, 一, 一, 一, 一, 一, 一, 一, 一, 一, 一, 一, 一, | 778 779 | 应 迹 |
| 634 | 深漸 演演 演演 演演 演演 演演 演演 演演 演演 演演 演演 演演 演演 演演 | 707 | | 780 | 湯 ぉ 湯 湯 洒 洒 泊 滴 液 満 |
| 635 | 瀲灑灣炙炒炯烱炬炸炳 | 708 | 胛 晋 胙 胝 冑 肧 胖 脉 胯 胱 | 781 | 滤 滶 诼 禕 隨 遲 解 遽 邁 激 |
| 636 637 | 泡 烟 沈 梁 烙 焉 烽 堀 焙 燠 配 몞 昫 榙 惶 怿 悍 毒 挿 垍 | 709 710 | 脛 脩 脣 脯 腋 隋 腆 脾 腓 腑 胼 腱 腮 腥 | 782 783 | 濱 楂 進 Ψ 바 파 邰 邦 郃 尾 噺 雪 叡 駅 翫 翫 翫 翫 翫 翫 |
| 638 | 血炮風加加加加加加加加加加加加加加加加加加加加加加加加加加加加加加加加加加加加 | 711 | 巡 啪 呾 唁 晡 晬 趂 聰 蹰 晒 | 784 | 酥酪 酳 酲 醋 醉 醂 醢 醫 醯 |
| 639 | 燠燬燧燵燼 | 712 | 隋 腦 脾 膃 膈 膊 膀 臀 膠 膕 臍 膀 臀 膠 膕 臍 膀 臀 膠 膕 臍 膀 臀 膠 膕 臍 膀 臀 膠 膕 臍 膀 臀 膠 膕 臍 膀 臀 膠 膕 臍 膀 臀 膠 膕 臍 路 雪 野 膕 酒 門 一 四 四 四 四 四 四 四 四 四 四 四 四 四 | 785 | 醪醵醴醺釀釁釉釋釐釖 |
| 640 641 | 發催傑溫 爛 爨 争 爬 苃 舀 ǒ 껆 늬 蚞 摔 帴 疇 坁 ᅜ | 713 714 | 筲 膺 腏 臍 臑 臕 膍 腸 膒 膕 戀 蝛 喜 臻 8 8 8 寿 畠 船 萑 | 786 787 | <u> </u> |
| 642 | 闣柔曐 <u>昇</u> ニニニニュ 犂犁犇犒犖犢犧犹犲狃 | 715 | 含舐舖舩舫舸舳艀艙艘 | 788 | <u>鲍鉐銜銖銓銛鉚鋏銹銷</u> |
| 643 | 屡歴煠爧爐 屬型 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 | 716 | | 789 | 邉郛鮇醦釟鈤鉋鋩 鎭鄿酟髗鍂貁鈶鍄鋍鎑鏃爒鐰鑎閠閴阠 ଦ ଦ 耶 萷 鄿 齝 匷 醶 貁 む 欶 齨 龗 鄒 酟 髗 ô 數 鈷 囊 。 鄂 い ะ 立 彩 計 麗 奇 鈔 。 。 郭 い 部 輩 ൺ 麗 金 豹 士 。 。 新 計 麗 奇 。 。 歌 許 離 體 訪 約 む 金 紡 訪 。 。 新 計 麗 奇 。 。 歌 許 麗 奇 新 記 靈 幼 訂 。 。 新 計 麗 奇 。 。 。 新 記 二 二 二 二 二 二 二 二 二 二 二 二 二 二 二 二 二 二 |
| 644 645 | 淌 況 猜 狷 猝 猴 猯 猩 猥 猾 將 獏 獸 獗 淪 濡 齋 獸 淄 斟 | 717 718 | 艶艸艾勺芒芫芟芻芬苡 苦菇苗甘芨莁萄菇苁芸 | 790 791 | |
| 646 | | 710 | 苞茆苜葉苙 | 791 | 鏨鏥鏘鏃 鏝鏐鏈鏤 鐚鐔 |
| 647 | [`] 獭珈玳珎玻珀珥珮珞璢 [·] 琅琅菇珠菇 環瑟 | 720 | 茵萸茖茲茱萸茹荐苔 | 793 | 鐓鐃鐇鐐鐶鐫鐵鐡鐺鑁 |
| 648 649 | 瑁瑜瑩瑰瑣瑪瑶瑾璋璞 璧瓊瓏瓔珱 狐瓣瓧瓩瓮瓲瓰瓱巸 | 721 722 | 伏 汇 名 刕 位 延 我 含 夾 巠 菖 荪 喆 茈 苯 苗 苔 芴 苿 莉 | 794 795 | 簺 錆 瀕 礫 繩 繩 繩 鈩 彌 蕹 憄 礬 鐟 鑼 龻 彃 鼢 門 閂 問 |
| 650 | 蕴 瓣 瓧 瓩 瓮 瓲 瓰 瓱 瓸 | 723 | 莨菴萓菫菎菽萃菘萋菁 | 796 | 関節節間間 |
| 651 | 瓷甄甃甅甌甎甍甕甓甞 瓷甄甃甅甌甎甍甓 甦甬甼畄畍畊畉畛畆 蘬 畤 島 島 店 店 店 毘 宅 毘 管 君 男 当 い 時 町 で 席 の 島 の 島 の 一 の の 男 の の の の 男 の の の の の の の の の の | 724 | 幕萇菠菲萍萢萠莽萸蓤 | 797 | 灛閖匔郬閠篂閧閭閼閶 峎閖閘郬閠篂閧閭閼閶 闧闊濶闃闍闌闕闔闖 鬬朣睯啠阨 |
| 652 653 | 些 角 甼 畄 畍 畊 畉 畛 畆 畚 �� �� � = 幸 �� | 725 726 | 林葭科咢甹冠軍胡芻段 | 798 799 | 蘭 闡 闥 闢 阡 阨 阮 阯 陂 陌 |
| 654 | 疊疊疊疔疚疝疥疣痂疳 | 727 | 〒 昭 保 禹 約 施 尚 羽 金 兼 蒿 蒟 蓙 蓍 蒻 蓚 蓐 蓁 蓆 蓖 | 800 | 隋 随 陷 陝 陟 畴 陸 隆 隆 隆 隆 隆 隆 隆 隆 隆 隆 隆 隆 隆 隆 隆 隆 隆 隆 |
| 655 | 痃 疵 疽 疸 疼 疱 痍 痊 痒 痙 | 728 | 蒡蔡蓿蓴蔗蔘蔬蔟蔕蔔 | 801 | 險隧隱隲隰隴隶隸佳雎 |
| 656 657 | 痣痞痾痿痼瘁痰痺痲痳 瘋瘍瘉瘟瘧瘠瘡瘢瘤瘴 | 729 730 | >> > > > 泰 泰 莽 蓉 森 莽 楚 蓝 蕕 藻 蕋 蕕 藩 薀 落 藩 蓋 齋 藩 三 章 三 章 章 三 章 章 章 章 章 章 章 章 章 章 章 章 章 | 802 803 | 做雋霈靃顫歡說。 |
| 658 | 瘰瘻癇癈癆癜 瘽瘴癔 | 731 | - 琴樂與酒溫煙曾量 <u>則</u> 薨蕭薔薛藪薇薜蕷蕾薐 | 803 | 霹靂靏靄靆靈靂靉靜靠 |
| 659 | 瘰瘻癇癈癆癜癘癡癢癨 瘷癪癧 <i>癬龝</i> | 132 | 秸 齊 臧 量 貌 耦 霒 樂 黎 謁 | 805 | 靤靦靨勤靫靱靹鞅靼鞁 |
| 660 661 | 癲癶癸發皀皃皈皋皎 皖皓晳皚皰皴皸皹皺盂 | 733 734 | 蘊 蘓 蘋 藾 藺 蘆 蘢 蘚 蘰 蘿 贞 토 皮 蛯 虧 司 妃 쌍 <u></u> 半 ស | 806 807 | 靺鞆鞋輦鞐鞜鞨鞦韖鞳 鞲韃韆韈韋韜韭齏韲竟 |
| 662 | 远后自 ^也 | 735 | 奶蚌蚶虾蛄蛆蚰蚙蠣蚫 | 808 | 開報 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 |
| 663 | 眈 眇 晒 眩 眤 旨 呰 眦 眛 眷 | 736 | 縺虍蚋蛔蜀蜷蝹唟 蚼蛔蜀蝰蟙 靏 胒 蚌 蛞 監 蚄 蛞 蛟 蛟 蛞 蝠 號 蝠 號 蝠 號 蛤 蛟 蛟 蛟 蛟 | 809 | 韶韵頏頌頸頤頡頷頺顆 顏顋顫顯顰 。 |
| 664 665 | 能時期的時間的 | 737 738 | 勤 | 810 811 | 顧顴顳颪颯颱颶飄飃 |
| 666 | 習 腔 腹 崔 聶 鵬 矜 左 铱 亻 | 739 | ^{按 捐 珈 姠 虽 퍀 琑 珦 쌁 鸿 蝴 蝗 蝨 蝮 蝙} | 812 | 飆飩飫餃餉 餒餔餘餡餝 餞餤餠餬餥餽餾鰛饉饅 |
| 667 | 砌砒礦砠礪硅碎硴碆硼 碚碌碣碵碪碯磑磆磋磔 | 740 | 蝓蝣蝪蠅螢螟螂螯蟋 | 813 | 戍饐溤騈驅黸髏颩 眑鐖鄎駖顠韀驫 彲 蝔 |
| 668 669 | í 伝 G G G G G G G G G G G G G G G G G G | 741 742 | 螽蟀蟐雖螫蟄螳蟇蟆螻 蟯蟲蟠蠏蠍蟾蟶蟷蠎蟒 | 814 815 | 馮 駅 駅 駅 駅 駘 篤 駁 駁 駱 |
| 670 | 磧磚磽磴礇礒礑 礙 礬 | 743 | 哗 唯 哩 <u>在</u> 紊 蝨 賀 壹 壹 鑾 | 816 | 驅驂驀驃騾驕驍驛驗驟 |
| 671 | 磧磚磽磴礇礒礑礙礬 礫祀祠祗祟祚袐 峳 褀祿 | 744 | 衄 蚵 衒 衙 衞 衢 衫 袁 衾 袞 | 817 | 驢驥驤驩驫驪骬骰骼髀 |
| 672 673 | 傑 俊 侶 齋 俾 僼 儀 禺 禺 秉 批 独 珩 狧 秙 稈 琑 玵 珛 稠 | 745 746 | 祖衽 袵 衲 袂 袗 袒 祢 袙 袢 約 素 母 社 袱 裃 祢 奈 枣 裙 | 818 819 | 臒 簡 髄 體 髞 髟 毡 髣 笔 髥 髰 髟 髬 髰 髟 |
| 674 | 味裡 和稟 穢窖 騎 売 郡 報 電 程 和 程 程 窓 窓 記 空 室 窓 記 近 空 空 窓 窓 ら 空 窓 窓 ら 空 家 窓 記 ら 空 窓 窓 ら 空 家 窓 ら 空 変 い ら 空 の 窓 の ら の の の の の の の の の の の の の の の の | 747 | 祒袲袰袿絥裃裄裔袰裙 裝裹褂裼裴裨裲褄禈褊 褓裦褞褥褪禠祒襄褻褶 褸褝忂儅襞 | 820 | 髫髪髴髱髷 髺鬆壨 目 開 問 問 問 問 問 問 問 |
| 675 | 穢穩龝穰穹穽窈窗窕窘 | 748 | 褓裦褞褥褪褫襁襄褻褶 | 821 | 鬠鬆鬘鬚鬟鬢鬛鬥鬧 鬨鬩鬪斸鮕鉓铔粅蜤躹鮒 |
| 676 677 | 告 局 鼁 | 749 750 | 褸襌褝襠襞 襦襤襭襪襯襴襷襾覃 | 822 823 | 児園 児島 周辺 田方 田と 田平 田川 田右 田冬 田安 |
| 678 | 竦竭 竰 笂 笏 笊 笆 笳 笘 笙 | 751 | 覈 覊 覓 覘 覡 覩 覦 覬 覯 覲 | 824 | ^頾 鮠鮨鮴鯀鯊鮹鯆鯏鯑鰕 鯣鯢鯤鯔鰆鱳鰒鯟鰄鰮 鰔鰉鰓輶鰆鰈鰒鯟鰄鰮 |
| 679 | 谷笵笨笑筐 | 752 | 覺覽覿觀觚觜觝觧觴觸 訃訖訐訌訛訝訥訶詁詛 | 825 | 鰔鰉鰓鰌鰆鰈鰒鯟鰄鰮 |
| 680 681 | 匤 开 旬 尹 全 先 延 吕 夾 笛 筰 | 753 754 | l f r i c i f i l i i i i i i i i i i i i i i i i | 826 827 | 輪 縣 聊 黯 辨 騾 鯊 瞑 驃 鱚 輪 朇 鰆 �� 烏 烏 / 皂 兎 瓸 叵 |
| 682 | 箚箋箒箏箏箙篋篁篌篏 | 755 | 誨誡誑誥誦誚誣 諄 静諂 | 828 | <u></u> |
| 683 | 箴篆篝篩簑簔篦篥籠簀 | 756 | 諚諌諳諧諤諱謔諠 譂 諷 | 829 | 鵁鴿鴾鵆鵈 鵯豑鯓鴠 <u>폠</u> 鯓 |
| 684 685 | 族 彫 畢 達 梁 婁 焉 貴 黄 朁 晉 簅 篕 答 筀 餧 簕 篩 籡 篠 | 757 758 | 調 武 祠 奮 쓻 謚 浚 謐 淓 謠 謳 鞫 磬 謪 謾 荁 譁 揺 濼 譎 | 830 831 | 」 |
| 686 | 籘籟籖籖籥籬粁粃粐彆 | 759 | 證證諸言語 | 832 | 鶸鶺鷆鷏鷂騺鷓鷸鷦鷭 |
| 687 | 粭粱粫粡粨粳 粲粱粮粹 | 760 | 髞 譬 譯 譴 譽 讀 讌 讎 讒 | 833 | 鷯鷪鸚鸛鸞鹵鹹鹽麁麈 <u>鹿鹿朝鹿鹿</u> 鹿田 井井 |
| 688 689 | 标 | 761 762 | 裱 諷 | 834 835 | 保 虞 麒 闣 麂 罻 |
| 690 | 約 紜 紕 紊 絅 絋 紮 紲 紿 | 763 | 狸貎貔豼貘戝貭貪貽 貲 | 836 | 點黥黨黯黴黳黷黹黻黼 |
| 691 | 紵絆絳絖絎絲絨 毅 絏絣 | 764 | 貳貳貶賈賁賤賣 賚賽賺 | 837 | 1 距 鼇 핲 皷 鼕 鼡 鼬 鼾 齊 齒 |
| 692 693 | 读笞 筧箚葴蔟藚籘粭粽糲 っ笼等う篮等薏薯簘籖粫糅糧乣絥緱總 約пс 至箝嚴隻窶籏摍粆粮藼 筎筳笶筍筬箏籂篷竂簀簫粕粶粱糀糴紂菾紡組 っпс 至箝嚴隻籔貴蠢鮒糧粱糀糴約 系方箧竽箽簝簔籇籪輡糘紆紊弣絽闧 熂欦 <table-cell> 乞箔髲篦簀齹簕籵粱稧 鯬影</table-cell> | 765 766 | 時 員 員 頁 頁 贏 賠 薀 貭 贓 肝 晶 | 838 839 | 彩 彩 |
| 694 | 緇綽綫總綢綯緜綸綟綰 緘緝緤緞緻緲緡縅縊縣 | 767 | 扑詒誨諚諞謳證 讓豐貍貳賻賍趾 訫詒誨諚諞謳證 讓豐貂貂貪賣贐趁跋 訶誹諄諠謐謳 講覽銘貂貪賣贐趁跋 訶訴謂謹讀寶諸劉寶賣 私勁 副 話 訪 前 题 語 謂 言 驚 紹 乳 員 賣 品 送 跋 治 詩 理 紊 約 王 慶 訪 新 題 王 慶 新 約 王 慶 訪 新 討 王 慶 訪 新 詞 王 慶 訪 新 詞 王 慶 訪 新 詞 王 慶 訪 新 詞 王 慶 訪 新 詞 王 慶 訪 新 詞 王 慶 訪 新 詞 王 慶 訪 約 王 四 新 詩 四 路 約 3 八 貫 員 品 跃 四 第 約 3 八 員 四 務 3 3 八 員 四 務 約 3 八 員 四 務 約 3 八 員 四 務 約 3 八 員 四 務 約 3 八 員 四 務 約 3 八 員 四 務 約 3 八 員 四 務 約 3 八 員 四 務 約 3 八 員 四 務 約 3 八 員 四 務 約 3 八 員 四 務 約 5 四 第 記 詞 書 二 》 第 約 5 四 第 5 第 約 5 四 第 5 二 》 第 第 二 第 約 5 二 》 5 二 》 第 5 四 5 二 》 5 二 》 5 二 第 5 二 第 5 二 第 5 二 5 二 第 5 二 第 5 四 5 二 第 5 二 第 5 二 第 5 二 5 二 第 5 二 第 5 二 第 5 二 第 5 二 第 5 二 第 5 二 第 5 二 第 5 二 第 5 二 第 5 二 第 5 二 第 5 二 第 第 第 第 | 840 | 堯槇遙瑤凜熙 |
| | | | | | |